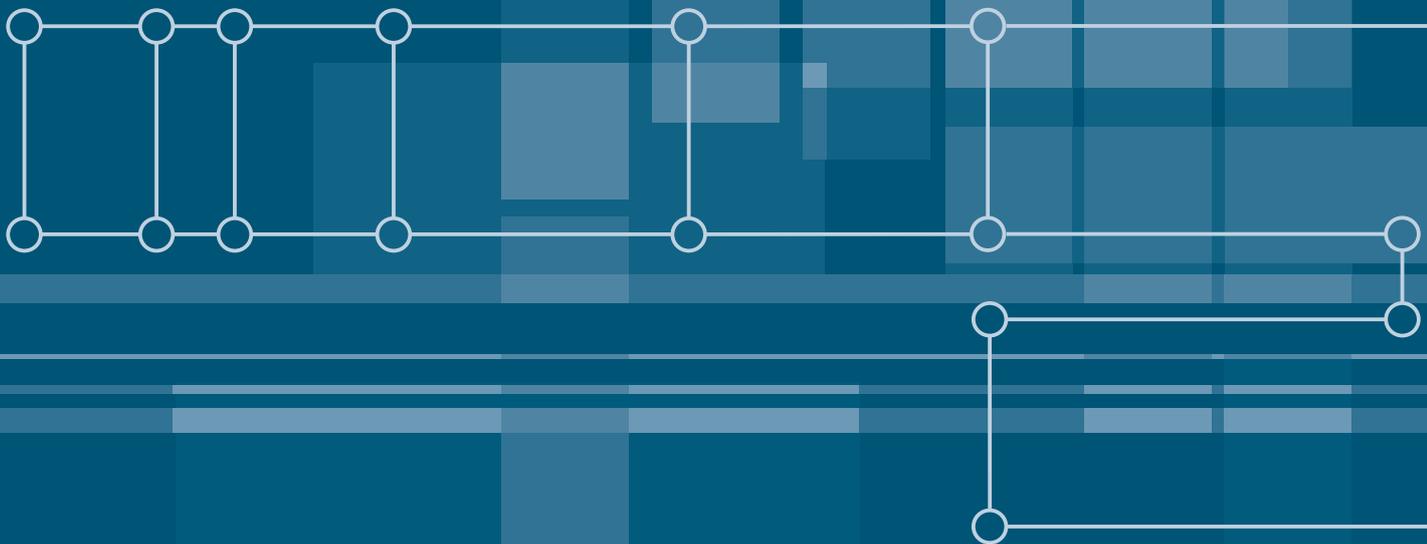


Software Reference for x230 Series Switches

AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System Version 5.4.4-1.x or later



x230-10GP
x230-18GP

Acknowledgments

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

Copyright ©1982, 1986, 1990, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California.

All rights reserved.

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. For information about this see www.openssl.org/

Copyright ©1998-2008 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

This product includes software licensed under the GNU General Public License available from: www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl2.html

Source code for all GPL licensed software in this product can be obtained from the Allied Telesis GPL Code Download Center at: www.alliedtelesis.com/support/default.aspx

Allied Telesis is committed to meeting the requirements of the open source licenses including the GNU General Public License (GPL) and will make all required source code available.

If you would like a copy of the GPL source code contained in Allied Telesis products, please send us a request by registered mail including a check for US\$15 to cover production and shipping costs and a CD with the GPL code will be mailed to you.

GPL Code Request
Allied Telesis Labs (Ltd)
PO Box 8011
Christchurch
New Zealand

©2014 Allied Telesis Inc. All rights reserved.

This documentation is subject to change without notice. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's internal use without the written permission of Allied Telesis, Inc.

Allied Telesis, AlliedWare Plus, EPSRing, SwitchBlade, and VCStack are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States and elsewhere of Allied Telesis, Inc. Adobe, Acrobat, and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Additional brands, names and products mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Getting the most from this manual

Although you can view this document using Acrobat version 5, to get the best from this manual, we recommend using Adobe Acrobat Reader version 8. You can download Acrobat Reader 8 free from www.adobe.com/.

Table of Contents

Part 1: Setting up the Switch

Chapter 1: Getting Started

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 1.2 |
| How to Login..... | 1.2 |
| How to Get Command Help | 1.3 |
| Viewing a List of Valid Parameters | 1.3 |
| Completing Keywords | 1.5 |
| Viewing Command Error Messages | 1.6 |
| How to Work with Command Modes..... | 1.7 |
| Entering Privileged Exec Commands when in a Configuration Mode..... | 1.9 |
| How to See the Current Configuration..... | 1.10 |
| Default Settings..... | 1.11 |
| The Default Configuration..... | 1.12 |
| How to Change the Password..... | 1.13 |
| How to Set Strong Passwords..... | 1.14 |
| How to Set an IP Address on VLAN 1 | 1.16 |
| How to Save and Boot from the Current Configuration..... | 1.17 |
| How to Save to the Default Configuration File..... | 1.17 |
| How to Create and Use a New Configuration File | 1.17 |
| How to Return to the Factory Defaults | 1.19 |
| How to See System Information | 1.20 |
| Viewing Overall System Information..... | 1.20 |
| Viewing Voltage, Fan Status, and Temperature | 1.20 |
| Viewing the Serial Number | 1.21 |
| How to Set System Parameters | 1.22 |
| How to Change the Telnet Session Timeout | 1.22 |
| How to Name the Switch | 1.23 |
| How to Display a Text Banner at Login..... | 1.24 |
| How to Set the Time and Date..... | 1.25 |
| How to Show Current Settings | 1.25 |
| How to Set the Time and Date..... | 1.25 |
| How to Set the Timezone | 1.26 |
| How to Configure Summer-Time..... | 1.26 |
| How to Add and Remove Users..... | 1.27 |
| Pre-Encrypted Passwords | 1.28 |
| How to Undo Settings..... | 1.29 |
| How to Use the <i>no</i> Parameter | 1.29 |
| How to Use the <i>default</i> Parameter | 1.29 |
| How to Upgrade the Firmware..... | 1.30 |
| Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature..... | 1.31 |
| Eco-Friendly | 1.31 |
| Trouble-shoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues..... | 1.32 |
| Using the Find Me feature | 1.33 |
| Controlling “show” Command Output..... | 1.34 |
| AlliedWare Plus GUI | 1.36 |

Chapter 2: Command Syntax Conventions in this Software Reference

Chapter 3: Start-Up Sequence

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| AlliedWare Plus Start-Up..... | 3.2 |
| Diagnostic Menu..... | 3.3 |
| Bootloader Menu..... | 3.4 |
| Start-Up Sequence..... | 3.8 |

Chapter 4: CLI Navigation Commands

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| Command List..... | 4.2 |
|-------------------|-----|

Chapter 5: User Access Commands

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| Introduction..... | 5.2 |
| Command List..... | 5.2 |

Chapter 6: Creating and Managing Files

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction..... | 6.2 |
| SD Support..... | 6.2 |
| Working with Files..... | 6.2 |
| Listing Files..... | 6.2 |
| Displaying the Contents of Configuration and Text Files..... | 6.4 |
| Navigating Through the File System..... | 6.4 |
| Using the Editor..... | 6.6 |
| Creating and Using Configuration Files..... | 6.8 |
| Creating a Configuration File..... | 6.8 |
| Specifying the Start-Up Configuration Script..... | 6.8 |
| Working with Configuration Files..... | 6.9 |
| The Configuration File Fallback Order..... | 6.10 |
| Copying Files to and from Your Device..... | 6.12 |
| URL Syntax..... | 6.12 |
| Copying Files..... | 6.13 |
| Copying from a Server to Running Configuration..... | 6.16 |
| The Autoboot Feature..... | 6.17 |
| Restoring a Switch Using Autoboot from External Media..... | 6.18 |
| Configure Autoboot..... | 6.20 |

Chapter 7: File Management Commands

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Introduction..... | 7.3 |
| URL Syntax and Keyword Usage..... | 7.3 |
| Command List..... | 7.5 |

Chapter 8: System Configuration and Monitoring Commands

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| Command List..... | 8.2 |
|-------------------|-----|

Chapter 9: Debugging and Logging

| | |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Introduction..... | 9.2 |
| Debugging..... | 9.2 |
| Logging to a Terminal..... | 9.2 |
| Turning Off Debugging..... | 9.3 |
| Logging..... | 9.3 |
| Log Outputs..... | 9.4 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Chapter 10: Logging Commands | |
| Command List..... | 10.2 |
| Chapter 11: Scripting Commands | |
| Command List..... | 11.2 |
| Chapter 12: Interface Commands | |
| Command List..... | 12.2 |
| Chapter 13: Interface Testing Commands | |
| Command List..... | 13.2 |

Part 2: Layer Two Switching

| | |
|---|-------|
| Chapter 14: Switching Introduction | |
| Introduction..... | 14.2 |
| Physical Layer Information..... | 14.3 |
| Switch Ports..... | 14.3 |
| Activating and Deactivating Switch Ports..... | 14.4 |
| Autonegotiation..... | 14.4 |
| Duplex Mode..... | 14.4 |
| Speed Options..... | 14.4 |
| MDI/MDIX Connection Modes..... | 14.5 |
| The Layer 2 Switching Process..... | 14.7 |
| The Ingress Rules..... | 14.7 |
| The Learning Process..... | 14.8 |
| The Forwarding Process..... | 14.9 |
| The Egress Rules..... | 14.9 |
| Layer 2 Filtering..... | 14.11 |
| Ingress Filtering..... | 14.11 |
| Storm Control..... | 14.12 |
| Loop Protection..... | 14.13 |
| Loop Detection..... | 14.13 |
| Thrash Limiting..... | 14.14 |
| Support for Jumbo Frames..... | 14.16 |
| Port Mirroring..... | 14.17 |
| Port Security..... | 14.18 |
| IEEE 802.1X..... | 14.18 |
| Quality of Service..... | 14.19 |
| IGMP Snooping..... | 14.20 |
| Chapter 15: Switching Commands | |
| Command List..... | 15.2 |
| Chapter 16: VLAN Introduction | |
| VLANs Introduction..... | 16.2 |
| Virtual LANs (VLANs)..... | 16.2 |
| Configuring VLANs..... | 16.3 |
| Private VLANs..... | 16.5 |
| Private VLANs for Ports in Access Mode..... | 16.5 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Private VLAN Operation with Ports in Access Mode | 16.7 |
| Access Mode Private VLAN Configuration Example | 16.8 |
| Private VLANs for Trunked Ports | 16.11 |
| Trunked Port Private VLAN Configuration Example | 16.12 |
| Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example | 16.14 |

Chapter 17: VLAN Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 17.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 18: Spanning Tree Introduction: STP, RSTP, and MSTP

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 18.2 |
| Overview of Spanning Trees..... | 18.2 |
| Spanning Tree Operation | 18.2 |
| Spanning Tree Modes | 18.4 |
| Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)..... | 18.5 |
| Configuring STP | 18.6 |
| Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | 18.8 |
| Configuring RSTP | 18.9 |
| Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)..... | 18.11 |
| Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTI)..... | 18.12 |
| MSTP Regions..... | 18.13 |
| Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) | 18.15 |
| MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) | 18.17 |
| Configuring MSTP..... | 18.19 |

Chapter 19: Spanning Tree Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 19.3 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 20: Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction and Overview | 20.2 |
| Static and Dynamic (LACP) Link Aggregation | 20.3 |
| Static Channel Groups | 20.3 |
| Dynamic (LACP) Channel Groups | 20.3 |
| Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)..... | 20.3 |
| Configuring an LACP Channel Group..... | 20.5 |
| Minimal LACP Group Configuration | 20.8 |
| Configuring a Static Channel Group..... | 20.9 |

Chapter 21: Link Aggregation Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 21.2 |
| Command List..... | 21.3 |

Chapter 22: Power over Ethernet Introduction

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 22.2 |
| PoE Standards | 22.2 |
| PoE (all standards) | 22.3 |
| PoE (IEEE 802.3af)..... | 22.3 |
| PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at)..... | 22.3 |
| Differences Between PoE and PoE+..... | 22.4 |
| LLDP-MED (TIA-1057) with PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at)..... | 22.4 |
| PoE and PoE+ Applications..... | 22.4 |
| Power Device (PD) Discovery | 22.4 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Power Classes..... | 22.5 |
| Power through the Cable | 22.6 |
| Power Threshold | 22.7 |
| Negotiating Power Requirements..... | 22.7 |
| PoE Port Management..... | 22.7 |
| Powered Device (PD) Detection..... | 22.8 |
| Port Prioritization..... | 22.8 |
| Software Monitoring | 22.10 |
| PoE and PoE+ Configuration | 22.11 |
| Add a Description for a PoE or PoE+ Port | 22.11 |
| Configuring Capacity and Priority on a PoE or PoE+ Port..... | 22.12 |
| Remotely Monitoring Power for all Connected PDs | 22.13 |

Chapter 23: Power over Ethernet Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 23.2 |
| Command List..... | 23.2 |

Part 3: Layer Three, Switching and Routing

Chapter 24: Internet Protocol (IP) Addressing and Protocols

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 24.2 |
| Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) | 24.3 |
| Static ARP Entries..... | 24.3 |
| Timing Out ARP Entries | 24.3 |
| Deleting ARP Entries..... | 24.4 |
| ARP Logging | 24.5 |
| Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)..... | 24.6 |
| Checking IP Connections..... | 24.7 |
| Ping..... | 24.7 |
| Traceroute | 24.7 |

Chapter 25: IP Addressing and Protocol Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 25.2 |
| Command List..... | 25.3 |

Chapter 26: IPv6 Introduction

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 26.2 |
| Overview | 26.2 |
| IPv6 Addresses and Prefixes | 26.3 |
| Address Types..... | 26.3 |
| IPv6 Headers..... | 26.4 |
| The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6)..... | 26.7 |
| IPv6 Routing | 26.10 |
| Integration of IPv4 and IPv6 | 26.10 |
| IPv6 on your Switch | 26.11 |
| Enabling IPv6..... | 26.11 |
| IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) | 26.11 |
| IPv6 EUI-64 Addressing..... | 26.11 |
| IPv6 Link-local Addresses..... | 26.12 |
| IPv6 RA Guard | 26.13 |
| RA Guard Introduction..... | 26.13 |
| Enabling IPv6 RA Guard..... | 26.13 |

Chapter 27: IPv6 Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 27.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 28: Static Routing Commands for Management Purposes

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 28.2 |
| Command List..... | 28.3 |

Part 4: Multicast Applications

Chapter 29: IGMP Snooping Introduction

| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction..... | 29.2 |
| IGMP | 29.3 |
| Joining a Multicast Group (Membership Report)..... | 29.4 |
| Staying in the Multicast Group (Query Message) | 29.4 |
| Leaving the Multicast Group (Leave Message) | 29.4 |
| IGMP Snooping..... | 29.5 |
| How IGMP Snooping Operates..... | 29.5 |
| IGMP Snooping Configuration Example | 29.6 |
| Query Solicitation | 29.8 |
| How Query Solicitation Works | 29.8 |
| Query Solicitation Operation..... | 29.8 |
| Speeding up IGMP Convergence in a Non-Looped Topology..... | 29.11 |
| Enabling Query Solicitation on Multiple Switches in a Looped Topology | 29.11 |

Chapter 30: IGMP Snooping Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 30.2 |
| Command List..... | 30.2 |

Chapter 31: MLD Snooping Introduction and Commands

| | |
|--|------|
| MLD Introduction | 31.2 |
| MLD Snooping | 31.2 |
| MLD Snooping Configuration Examples..... | 31.3 |
| Command List..... | 31.6 |

Part 5: Access and Security

Chapter 32: Access Control Lists Introduction

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 32.2 |
| Overview | 32.2 |
| ACL Rules | 32.3 |
| ACL Source and Destination Addresses | 32.3 |
| ACL Reverse Masking | 32.3 |
| Hardware and Software ACL Types..... | 32.4 |
| Defining Hardware MAC ACLs | 32.5 |
| Defining Hardware IP ACLs | 32.6 |
| Actions for Hardware ACLs..... | 32.7 |
| Attaching Hardware ACLs to Interfaces | 32.7 |
| Hardware ACLs and QoS Classifications..... | 32.8 |
| Classifying Your Traffic..... | 32.8 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Security ACLs..... | 32.8 |
| QoS ACLs..... | 32.8 |
| Attaching Hardware ACLs Using QoS | 32.9 |
| Filtering Hardware ACLs with QoS | 32.11 |
| Using QoS Match Commands with TCP Flags | 32.11 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Numbers | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Applicability..... | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Types | 32.15 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Configuration..... | 32.17 |
| Creating ACLs in Global Configuration Mode | 32.19 |
| Display the ACL configuration details..... | 32.20 |

Chapter 33: IPv4 Hardware Access Control List (ACL) Commands

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction..... | 33.2 |
| IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts | 33.3 |
| Command List..... | 33.4 |

Chapter 34: IPv4 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 34.2 |
| IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts..... | 34.3 |
| Command List..... | 34.4 |

Chapter 35: IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | 35.2 |
| IPv6 Software Access List Commands and Prompts..... | 35.3 |
| Command List..... | 35.4 |

Chapter 36: Quality of Service (QoS) Introduction

| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction..... | 36.2 |
| QoS Operations | 36.2 |
| QoS Packet Information | 36.3 |
| Link Layer QoS | 36.3 |
| Differentiated Services Architecture..... | 36.4 |
| The Differential Services Field..... | 36.5 |
| Processing Pre-Marked Packets..... | 36.6 |
| Applying QoS on Your Switch..... | 36.7 |
| Classifying Your Data | 36.8 |
| Class Maps..... | 36.8 |
| Policy Maps | 36.10 |
| Premarking and Remarketing Your Traffic | 36.12 |
| CoS to Egress Queue Premarking | 36.12 |
| DSCP to Egress Queue Premarking..... | 36.13 |
| Rate Limiting Traffic..... | 36.15 |
| Policing (Metering) Your Data..... | 36.16 |
| Single-Rate Three-Color Policing | 36.16 |
| Two-Rate Three-Color Policing..... | 36.17 |
| Configuring and Applying a Policer..... | 36.18 |
| Remarketing Your Data | 36.19 |
| Configuring the Egress Queues..... | 36.20 |
| Egress Queues and QoS markers | 36.20 |
| Egress Queue Commands Hierarchy | 36.20 |
| Egress Queue Shaping..... | 36.22 |
| Scheduling | 36.22 |

| | |
|-----------------------|-------|
| Drop Mode..... | 36.23 |
| Storm Protection..... | 36.24 |

Chapter 37: QoS Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 37.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 38: 802.1X Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 38.2 |
| 802.1X System Components | 38.2 |
| The 802.1X Implementation | 38.6 |
| Configuring 802.1X | 38.7 |

Chapter 39: 802.1X Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 39.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 40: Authentication Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---|-------|
| Authentication Introduction | 40.2 |
| Configuring a Guest VLAN..... | 40.2 |
| 802.1X-Authentication | 40.3 |
| Web-Authentication..... | 40.4 |
| What is Web-Authentication? | 40.4 |
| Web-Authentication Basics..... | 40.4 |
| Configuring Web-Authentication..... | 40.6 |
| Starting a Web-Authentication Session | 40.8 |
| Support for Protocols Underlying Web-Authentication | 40.10 |
| Web-Authentication Timeout Connect..... | 40.14 |
| Web Authorization Proxy..... | 40.14 |
| MAC-Authentication..... | 40.15 |
| Why is MAC-Authentication Required? | 40.15 |
| How Does MAC-Authentication Work? | 40.15 |
| Configuring MAC-Authentication | 40.16 |
| Tri-Authentication | 40.17 |
| Tri-Authentication Configuration | 40.18 |
| Two-Step Authentication | 40.19 |
| Ensuring Authentication Methods Require Different Usernames and Passwords | 40.20 |
| Roaming Authentication | 40.21 |
| Roaming Authentication Overview | 40.22 |
| Roaming Authentication Feature Interactions | 40.22 |
| Unauthenticated Supplicant Traffic..... | 40.23 |
| Deciding When a Supplicant Fails Authentication..... | 40.25 |
| Failed Authentication VLAN | 40.26 |
| Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations..... | 40.26 |

Chapter 41: Authentication Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 41.3 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 42: AAA Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|------|
| AAA Introduction..... | 42.2 |
| Available Functions and Server Types | 42.2 |
| Server Groups and Method Lists | 42.3 |
| Configuring AAA Login Authentication | 42.5 |
| AAA Configuration Tasks | 42.5 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Sample Authentication Configurations..... | 42.7 |
| Sample 802.1X-Authentication Configuration | 42.7 |
| Sample MAC-Authentication Configuration | 42.8 |
| Sample Web-Authentication Configuration..... | 42.9 |
| Sample Tri-Authentication Configuration | 42.10 |

Chapter 43: AAA Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 43.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 44: RADIUS Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction..... | 44.2 |
| RADIUS Packets | 44.3 |
| RADIUS Attributes | 44.4 |
| RADIUS Security | 44.5 |
| RADIUS Proxy | 44.6 |
| RADIUS Accounting | 44.7 |
| RADIUS Configuration | 44.9 |
| Switch Configuration Tasks..... | 44.9 |
| Switch to RADIUS Server Communication | 44.10 |
| AAA Server Groups Configuration..... | 44.12 |
| RADIUS Configuration Examples | 44.15 |
| RADIUS Authentication | 44.15 |
| Single RADIUS Server Configuration | 44.16 |
| Multiple RADIUS Server Configuration | 44.17 |
| RADIUS Server Group Configuration | 44.17 |
| RADIUS Server Configuration using Server Groups | 44.18 |

Chapter 45: RADIUS Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 45.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 46: TACACS+ Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction..... | 46.2 |
| TACACS+ Overview..... | 46.2 |
| The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ Implementation | 46.2 |
| Authentication..... | 46.3 |
| Authorization | 46.3 |
| Accounting..... | 46.4 |
| Configuration | 46.5 |
| Configure TACACS+..... | 46.5 |
| TACACS+ Configuration Example | 46.7 |

Chapter 47: TACACS+ Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 47.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 48: Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---|------|
| Local RADIUS Server Introduction..... | 48.2 |
| Enable the Local RADIUS Server..... | 48.2 |
| Add the Local RADIUS Server as a RADIUS Server | 48.3 |
| Add Authenticators to the List of Authenticators..... | 48.3 |
| Configure the Local RADIUS Server User Database | 48.3 |
| Authenticating Login Sessions | 48.5 |
| RADIUS Authentication with User Privileges | 48.5 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Creating Certificates for Single Users and All Users | 48.8 |
| Defined RADIUS Attributes List | 48.9 |

Chapter 49: Local RADIUS Server Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 49.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 50: Secure Shell (SSH) Introduction

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 50.2 |
| Secure Shell on the AlliedWare Plus OS..... | 50.2 |
| Configuring the SSH Server | 50.4 |
| Creating a Host Key..... | 50.4 |
| Enabling the Server..... | 50.4 |
| Modifying the Server | 50.5 |
| Validating the Server Configuration | 50.6 |
| Adding SSH Users | 50.6 |
| Authenticating SSH Users..... | 50.7 |
| Adding a Login Banner | 50.7 |
| Monitoring the Server and Managing Sessions..... | 50.8 |
| Debugging the Server..... | 50.8 |
| Configuring the SSH Client | 50.9 |
| Modifying the Client..... | 50.9 |
| Adding SSH Servers | 50.10 |
| Authenticating with a Server..... | 50.10 |
| Connecting to a Server and Running Commands..... | 50.11 |
| Copying files to and from the Server..... | 50.11 |
| Debugging the Client | 50.11 |

Chapter 51: Secure Shell (SSH) Configuration

| | |
|--|------|
| SSH Server Configuration Example | 51.2 |
|--|------|

Chapter 52: Secure Shell (SSH) Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 52.2 |
| Command List..... | 52.2 |

Chapter 53: DHCP Snooping Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 53.2 |
| DHCP Snooping..... | 53.2 |
| DHCP Snooping Database..... | 53.3 |
| Traffic Filtering with DHCP Snooping | 53.4 |
| ARP Security..... | 53.6 |
| MAC Address Verification | 53.6 |
| DHCP Snooping Violations..... | 53.6 |
| Interactions with Other Features | 53.7 |
| Configuration | 53.8 |
| Configure DHCP Snooping..... | 53.8 |
| Disabling DHCP Snooping..... | 53.13 |
| Related Features | 53.13 |

Chapter 54: DHCP Snooping Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 54.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Part 6: Network Availability

Chapter 55: EPSR Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 55.2 |
| Ring Components and Operation | 55.2 |
| Fault Detection and Recovery..... | 55.4 |
| Fault Recovery | 55.4 |
| Restoring Normal Operation | 55.5 |
| Managing Rings with Two Breaks..... | 55.6 |
| Recovery When One Break is Restored | 55.8 |
| Configuration Examples..... | 55.10 |
| Single Domain, Single Ring Network..... | 55.10 |
| Single Ring, Dual Domain Network..... | 55.15 |
| Interconnected Rings | 55.16 |
| Superloop Protection | 55.17 |
| EPSR Superloop Prevention | 55.18 |
| Configuring a Basic Superloop Protected Two Ring EPSR Network..... | 55.21 |
| Sample Show Output | 55.37 |
| Adding a New Data VLAN to a Functioning Superloop Topology..... | 55.40 |
| EPSR and Spanning Tree Operation..... | 55.43 |

Chapter 56: EPSR Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 56.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 57: RRP Snooping Introduction and Commands

| | |
|---------------------------------|------|
| RRP Snooping Introduction | 57.2 |
| Command List..... | 57.3 |

Part 7: Network Management

Chapter 58: AMF Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction to AMF | 58.2 |
| AMF Supported Products and Software Versions..... | 58.2 |
| Key Benefits of AMF | 58.3 |
| Unified Command-Line | 58.3 |
| Configuration Backup and Recovery | 58.3 |
| Rolling-Reboot Upgrade | 58.3 |
| Node Provisioning..... | 58.4 |
| AMF Terminology and Introduction | 58.5 |
| AMF Network | 58.5 |
| AMF Nodes..... | 58.5 |
| Node Licensing..... | 58.5 |
| Node Interconnection..... | 58.6 |
| AMF Domains..... | 58.6 |
| AMF Network Operational Concepts | 58.8 |
| Retention and Use of the 'Manager' Username..... | 58.8 |
| Working-Set..... | 58.8 |
| AMF Restricted-Login..... | 58.9 |
| Loop-Free Data Plane..... | 58.9 |
| Aggregators..... | 58.9 |
| VCStacks..... | 58.9 |
| AMF External Removable Media | 58.9 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| AMF Interaction with QoS and ACLs..... | 58.10 |
| NTP and AMF | 58.10 |
| Configuring AMF..... | 58.11 |
| AMF Tunneling (Virtual Links) | 58.17 |
| Verifying the AMF Network..... | 58.21 |
| AMF Backups | 58.23 |
| Using External Media Storage..... | 58.23 |
| Performing a Manual Backup | 58.24 |
| Backing up to Remote Servers | 58.27 |
| Node Recovery | 58.30 |
| Automatic Node Recovery | 58.30 |
| Restoring a Node to a “Clean” State..... | 58.31 |
| Manual Node Recovery | 58.32 |
| Node Recovery on VCStacks | 58.33 |
| AMF Safe Configuration | 58.34 |
| Detecting AMF Safe Configuration Operation..... | 58.34 |
| AMF Safe Configuration Procedures | 58.34 |
| Undoing an AMF Safe Configuration | 58.35 |
| Using the Unified CLI with Working-Sets..... | 58.36 |
| Working-Set Groups | 58.37 |
| Executing Commands on Working-Sets..... | 58.39 |
| Interactive Commands | 58.42 |
| Rolling-Reboot Firmware Upgrade | 58.43 |
| Performing a Rolling-Reboot Upgrade | 58.45 |
| Node Provisioning..... | 58.47 |

Chapter 59: AMF Commands

| | |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 59.3 |
| AMF Naming Convention | 59.3 |

Chapter 60: NTP Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|----------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 60.2 |
| Overview | 60.2 |
| NTP on the Switch | 60.3 |
| Troubleshooting | 60.4 |
| Configuration Example..... | 60.5 |

Chapter 61: NTP Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 61.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 62: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Introduction

| | |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 62.2 |
| Configuring the DHCP Client..... | 62.3 |

Chapter 63: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 63.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 64: DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| DHCPv6 Introduction | 64.2 |
| DHCPv6 for IPv6 | 64.3 |
| DHCPv6 RFCs..... | 64.3 |
| DHCPv6 Messages..... | 64.4 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| DHCPv6 Renewal and Rebinding..... | 64.6 |
| Stateful DHCPv6 Message Exchange..... | 64.8 |
| Stateless DHCPv6 Message Exchange | 64.9 |
| DHCPv6 Client and Server Identification | 64.10 |
| DHCPv6 Client Functionality | 64.11 |
| DHCPv6 Server Selection by a DHCPv6 Client | 64.11 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Stateful Client (Prefix)..... | 64.12 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Stateless Client..... | 64.13 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Client | 64.14 |

Chapter 65: DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 65.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 66: SNMP Introduction

| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction..... | 66.2 |
| Network Management Framework..... | 66.2 |
| Structure of Management Information | 66.4 |
| Names | 66.5 |
| Instances | 66.6 |
| Syntax | 66.7 |
| Access | 66.7 |
| Status | 66.7 |
| Description..... | 66.7 |
| The SNMP Protocol | 66.8 |
| SNMP Versions..... | 66.8 |
| SNMP Messages | 66.9 |
| Polling versus Event Notification | 66.9 |
| Message Format for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c..... | 66.10 |
| SNMP Communities (Version v1 and v2c) | 66.11 |
| SNMPv3 Entities | 66.11 |
| SNMPv3 Message Protocol Format..... | 66.12 |
| SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c | 66.13 |
| SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c | 66.13 |
| SNMP Communities..... | 66.13 |
| Configuration Example (SNMPv1 and v2) | 66.15 |
| SNMPv3 | 66.18 |
| SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv3 | 66.18 |
| SNMP Groups | 66.18 |
| SNMP Users | 66.18 |
| Configuration Example (SNMPv3) | 66.19 |
| Using SNMP to Manage Files and Software | 66.20 |
| Copy a File to or from a TFTP Server | 66.20 |
| Upgrade Software and Configuration Files..... | 66.22 |

Chapter 67: SNMP Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 67.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 68: SNMP MIBs

| | |
|------------------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 68.2 |
| About MIBs..... | 68.2 |
| About SNMP | 68.2 |
| Obtaining MIBs..... | 68.2 |
| Loading MIBs..... | 68.3 |
| Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB..... | 68.5 |

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| AT-ALMMON-MIB | 68.6 |
| AT-ATMF-MIB | 68.8 |
| AT-BOARDS-MIB | 68.13 |
| AT-DHCPSN-MIB | 68.17 |
| AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB..... | 68.20 |
| AT-ENVMONv2-MIB..... | 68.21 |
| AT-EPSRv2-MIB | 68.29 |
| AT-FILEv2-MIB | 68.32 |
| AT-IP-MIB | 68.39 |
| AT-LICENSE-MIB | 68.41 |
| AT-LOG-MIB | 68.43 |
| AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB | 68.45 |
| AT-MIBVERSION-MIB..... | 68.47 |
| AT-NTP-MIB..... | 68.48 |
| AT-PRODUCTS-MIB..... | 68.51 |
| AT-RESOURCE-MIB | 68.54 |
| AT-SETUP-MIB | 68.56 |
| AT-SMI-MIB..... | 68.65 |
| AT-SYSINFO-MIB..... | 68.67 |
| AT-TRIGGER-MIB..... | 68.72 |
| AT-USER-MIB | 68.74 |
| Other Enterprise MIBs | 68.78 |
| sFlow-MIB | 68.78 |
| Public MIBs..... | 68.79 |

Chapter 69: LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 69.2 |
| Link Layer Discovery Protocol..... | 69.2 |
| LLDP-MED..... | 69.3 |
| Voice VLAN..... | 69.3 |
| LLDP Advertisements..... | 69.4 |
| Type-Length-Value (TLV) | 69.4 |
| LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV..... | 69.7 |
| Transmission and Reception | 69.8 |
| LLDP-MED Operation | 69.9 |
| Storing LLDP Information..... | 69.10 |
| Configuring LLDP | 69.11 |
| Configure LLDP..... | 69.12 |
| Configure LLDP-MED..... | 69.14 |
| Configure Authentication for Voice VLAN..... | 69.19 |

Chapter 70: LLDP Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 70.2 |
| Command List..... | 70.2 |

Chapter 71: SMTP Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 71.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 72: RMON Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 72.2 |
| Overview | 72.2 |
| RMON Configuration Example..... | 72.3 |

Chapter 73: RMON Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 73.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 74: Triggers Introduction

| | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Introduction..... | 74.2 |
| Trigger Facility | 74.2 |
| Configuring a Trigger | 74.2 |
| Troubleshooting Triggers..... | 74.5 |

Chapter 75: Triggers Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction..... | 75.2 |
| Restrict Internet Access | 75.2 |
| Capture Unusual CPU and RAM Activity | 75.4 |
| See Daily Statistics..... | 75.6 |
| Turn Off Power to Port LEDs | 75.7 |
| Capture Show Output and Save to an SD Card | 75.9 |
| Load a Release File From an SD Card | 75.10 |

Chapter 76: Trigger Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 76.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 77: Ping Polling Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction..... | 77.2 |
| How Ping Polling Works..... | 77.2 |
| Configuring Ping Polling..... | 77.4 |
| Creating a Polling Instance | 77.4 |
| Customizing a Polling Instance | 77.5 |
| Troubleshooting Ping Polling | 77.6 |
| Interaction with Other Protocols | 77.7 |

Chapter 78: Ping-Polling Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 78.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Chapter 79: sFlow Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| sFlow Introduction | 79.2 |
| The sFlow Agent | 79.3 |
| Sampling Methods..... | 79.3 |
| The sFlow Collector..... | 79.5 |
| Configuring sFlow on your Switch | 79.6 |
| Configuration Procedure | 79.7 |
| Configuration Example..... | 79.8 |
| sFlow Datagrams | 79.13 |
| The sFlow MIB | 79.14 |

Chapter 80: sFlow Commands

| | |
|-------------------|------|
| Command List..... | 80.2 |
|-------------------|------|

Appendix A: Command List

Appendix B: GUI Reference

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction..... | B.3 |
| Install the GUI and set the switch | B.4 |
| System Requirements | B.4 |
| Install the GUI to your switch using an SD card..... | B.4 |
| Install the GUI to your switch via TFTP server | B.5 |
| Set up your switch and log into the GUI | B.6 |
| Using the GUI | B.10 |
| System > Status > System Details..... | B.12 |
| System > Status > System Date and Time | B.12 |
| System > Status > Top Ten Utilised Ports | B.13 |
| System > File Management > Copy File..... | B.19 |
| System > File Management > Move File | B.19 |
| System > File Management > Download File | B.20 |
| System > File Management > Upload File..... | B.21 |
| System > File Management > Delete File | B.22 |
| System > File Management > Delete Folder | B.22 |
| System > License Management > Add Feature License..... | B.24 |
| System > License Management > Delete Feature License..... | B.25 |
| Switching > Ports > Monitor Port | B.28 |
| Switching > Ports > Configure Port | B.29 |
| Switching > VLANs > Add VLAN..... | B.32 |
| Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE..... | B.39 |
| Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port | B.40 |
| IP > IP Interfaces > Configure Primary IP Address | B.43 |
| IP > IP Interfaces > Add Secondary IP Address | B.44 |
| IP > Static Routes > Add Static Route..... | B.46 |
| IP > DNS > Add DNS Server..... | B.50 |
| IP > IGMP Snooping > Configure Interface | B.52 |
| Management > NTP > Add NTP Association | B.61 |
| Management > Remote CLI Access > Telnet Settings | B.64 |
| Management > Remote CLI Access > SSH Settings | B.64 |
| Management > Logs > Export Logs..... | B.66 |

Appendix C: Glossary

| | |
|---------------|------|
| Numerics..... | C.2 |
| A..... | C.2 |
| B..... | C.5 |
| C..... | C.6 |
| D..... | C.7 |
| E..... | C.9 |
| F..... | C.10 |
| G..... | C.11 |
| H..... | C.11 |
| I..... | C.11 |
| L..... | C.13 |
| M..... | C.15 |
| N..... | C.17 |
| P..... | C.17 |
| Q..... | C.19 |
| R..... | C.20 |

| | |
|--------|------|
| S..... | C.21 |
| T..... | C.25 |
| U..... | C.26 |
| V..... | C.27 |
| W..... | C.28 |

Part 1: Setting up the Switch



- **Chapter 1** Getting Started
- **Chapter 2** Command Syntax Conventions in this Software Reference
- **Chapter 3** Start-Up Sequence
- **Chapter 4** CLI Navigation Commands
- **Chapter 5** User Access Commands
- **Chapter 6** Creating and Managing Files
- **Chapter 8** System Configuration and Monitoring Commands
- **Chapter 9** Debugging and Logging
- **Chapter 10** Logging Commands
- **Chapter 11** Scripting Commands
- **Chapter 12** Interface Commands
- **Chapter 13** Interface Testing Commands

Chapter 1: Getting Started



| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction | 1.2 |
| How to Login | 1.2 |
| How to Get Command Help | 1.3 |
| Viewing a List of Valid Parameters..... | 1.3 |
| Completing Keywords..... | 1.5 |
| Viewing Command Error Messages | 1.6 |
| How to Work with Command Modes | 1.7 |
| Entering Privileged Exec Commands when in a Configuration Mode | 1.9 |
| How to See the Current Configuration | 1.10 |
| Default Settings | 1.11 |
| The Default Configuration | 1.12 |
| How to Change the Password | 1.13 |
| How to Set Strong Passwords..... | 1.14 |
| How to Set an IP Address on VLAN 1 | 1.16 |
| How to Save and Boot from the Current Configuration | 1.17 |
| How to Save to the Default Configuration File | 1.17 |
| How to Create and Use a New Configuration File..... | 1.17 |
| How to Return to the Factory Defaults..... | 1.19 |
| How to See System Information | 1.20 |
| Viewing Overall System Information | 1.20 |
| Viewing Voltage, Fan Status, and Temperature | 1.20 |
| Viewing the Serial Number..... | 1.21 |
| How to Set System Parameters | 1.22 |
| How to Change the Telnet Session Timeout | 1.22 |
| How to Name the Switch | 1.23 |
| How to Display a Text Banner at Login | 1.24 |
| How to Set the Time and Date | 1.25 |
| How to Show Current Settings | 1.25 |
| How to Set the Time and Date | 1.25 |
| How to Set the Timezone..... | 1.26 |
| How to Configure Summer-Time | 1.26 |
| How to Add and Remove Users | 1.27 |
| Pre-Encrypted Passwords | 1.28 |
| How to Undo Settings | 1.29 |
| How to Use the <i>no</i> Parameter | 1.29 |
| How to Use the <i>default</i> Parameter..... | 1.29 |
| How to Upgrade the Firmware | 1.30 |
| Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature | 1.31 |
| Eco-Friendly | 1.31 |
| Trouble-shoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues | 1.32 |
| Using the Find Me feature | 1.33 |
| Controlling “show” Command Output..... | 1.34 |
| AlliedWare Plus GUI..... | 1.36 |

Introduction

This chapter introduces a number of commonly-used management features of the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System (OS).

How to Login

Step 1: Set the console baud rate if necessary

The default baud rate is 9600.

By default the AlliedWare Plus™ OS supports VT100 compatible terminals on the console port. This means that the terminal size is 80 columns by 24 rows.

Step 2: Login with manager/friend

The defaults are:

```
username: manager
password: friend
```

The switch logs you into User Exec mode. From User Exec mode, you can perform high-level diagnostics (some **show** commands, ping, traceroute, for example), start sessions (Telnet, SSH), and change mode.

How to Get Command Help

The following kinds of command help are available:

- lists of valid parameters with brief descriptions (the ? key)
- completion of keywords (the Tab key)
- error messages for incomplete or incorrect syntax

Command Abbreviations

The AlliedWare Plus™ CLI contains a number of abbreviations for its commands. For example, the **show interface** command can be entered in the abbreviated form shown below:

```
awplus# sh in vlan100
```

Viewing a List of Valid Parameters

To get syntax help, type ? (i.e. "space question mark") after:

- the prompt. This will list all commands available in the mode you are in.
- one or more parameters. This will list parameters that can come next in the partial command.
- one or more letters of a parameter. This will list matching parameters.



Note The AlliedWare Plus™ OS only displays one screenful of text at a time, with the prompt "--More--" at the end of each screenful. Press the space bar to display the next screenful or the Q key to return to the command prompt.

Example To see which commands are available in Privileged Exec mode, enter "?" at the Privileged Exec mode command prompt:

```
awplus# ?
```

This results in output as shown in **Figure 1-1** below:

Figure 1-1: Example output from the ? command

```
Exec commands:
activate      Activate a script
cd            Change the current working directory
clear        Reset functions
clock        Manage clock
configure    Enter configuration mode
copy        Copy from one file to another
.
.
.
```

Example To see which **show** commands that start with "i" are available in Privileged Exec mode, enter "?" after **show i**:

```
awplus# show i?
```

This results in the following output:

Figure 1-2: Example output from the show i? command

```
interface      Select an interface to configure
ip             Internet Protocol (IP)
ipv6          Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6)
```

Examples To use the ? help to work out the syntax for the **clock timezone** command, enter the following sequence of commands:

```
awplus(config)# clock ?
```

```
summer-time  Manage summer-time
timezone     Set clock timezone
```

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone ?
```

```
TIMEZONE    Timezone name, up to 5 characters
```

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone NZST ?
```

```
minus  negative offset
plus   positive offset
```

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone NZST plus ?
```

```
<0-12>    Time zone offset to UTC
```

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone NZST plus 12
```

The above example demonstrates that the ? help only indicates what you can type **next**. For commands that have a series of parameters, like **clock timezone**, the ? help does not make the number of parameters obvious.

Completing Keywords

To complete keywords, type the Tab key after part of the command.

If only one keyword matches the partial command, the AlliedWare Plus™ OS fills in that keyword. If multiple keywords match, it lists them.

Examples In this example we use Tab completion in successive steps to build the complete command **show ip dhcp snooping**. We have included "<Tab>" to show where to type the Tab key — this is not displayed on screen.

Figure 1-3: Example output after entering the command show ip <Tab>

```

dhcp                dhcp-relay          domain-list
domain-name         extcommunity-list  filter
forwarding          igmp                interface
irdp                mroute             mvif
name-server         nat
pim                 protocols           rip
route               rpf
    
```

Figure 1-4: Example output after entering the command, show ip d<Tab>

```

awplus#show ip d<Tab>
dhcp                dhcp-relay          domain-list          domain-name
    
```

Figure 1-5: Example output from the show ip dhcp <Tab> command

```

awplus#show ip dhcp <Tab>
binding  pool      server  snooping
    
```

Figure 1-6: Example output from the show ip dhcp s<Tab> command

```

awplus#show ip dhcp s<Tab>
server  snooping
    
```

Viewing Command Error Messages

The switch displays the following generic error messages about command input:

% Incomplete command—this message indicates that the command requires more parameters. Use the ? help to find out what other parameters are available.

```
awplus# interface
```

```
% Incomplete command.
```

% Invalid input detected at '^' marker—this indicates that the switch could not process the command you entered. The switch also prints the command and marks the first invalid character by putting a '^' under it. Note that you may get this error if you enter a command in the wrong mode, as the following output shows.

```
awplus# interface port1.0.1
```

```
interface port1.0.1
  ^
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
```

% Unrecognized command—when you try to use ? help and get this message, it indicates that the switch can not provide help on the command because it does not recognize it. This means the command does not exist, or that you have entered it in the wrong mode, as the following output shows.

```
awplus# interface ?
```

```
% Unrecognized command
```



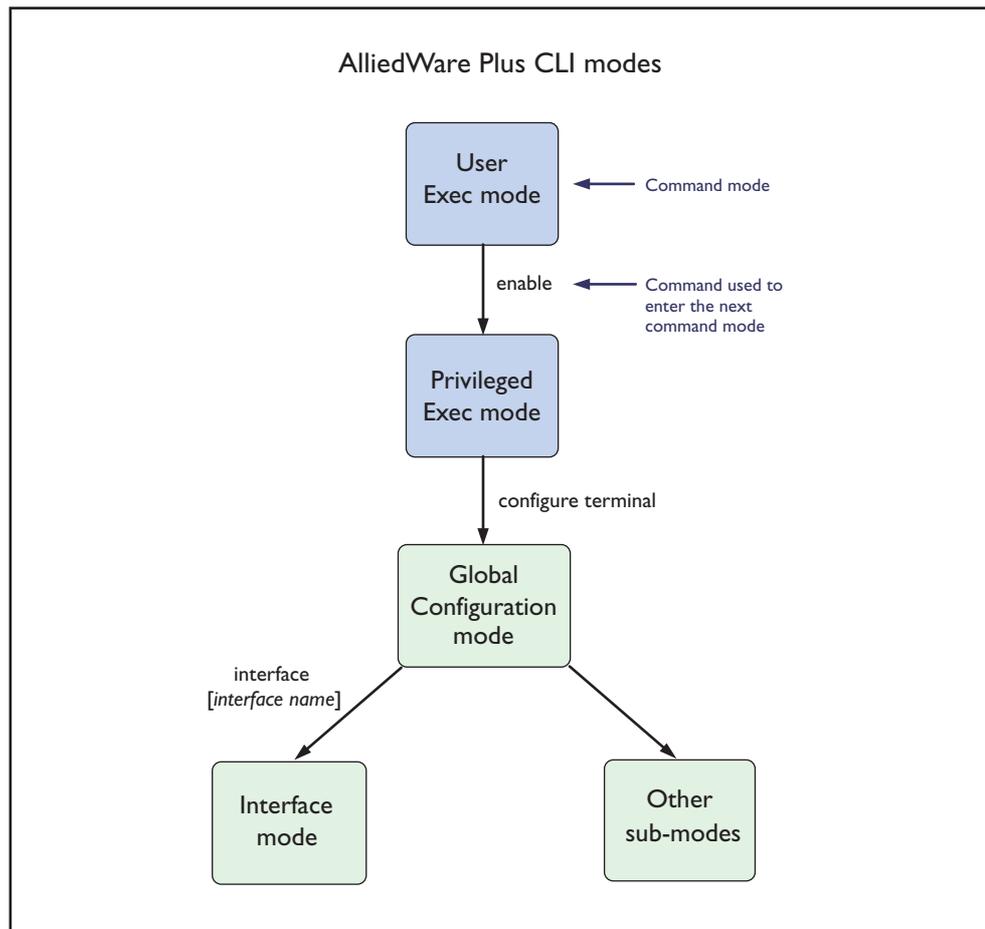
Note The AlliedWare Plus™ OS does not tell you when commands are successful. If it does not display an error message, you can assume the command was successful.

How to Work with Command Modes

The following figure shows the command mode hierarchy and the commands you use to move to lower-level modes.

Multiple users can telnet and issue commands using the User Exec mode and the Privileged Exec mode. However, only one user is allowed to use the Configure mode at a time. This prevents multiple users from issuing configuration commands simultaneously.

Figure 1-7: AlliedWare Plus™ CLI modes



User Exec mode User Exec mode is the mode you log into on the switch.

It lets you perform high-level diagnostics (**show** commands, ping, traceroute, for example), start sessions (Telnet, SSH), and change mode.

The default User Exec mode prompt is **awplus>**

Privileged Exec mode To change from User Exec to Privileged Exec mode, enter the command:

```
awplus> enable
```

Privileged Exec mode is the main mode for monitoring—for example, running **show** commands and debugging. From Privileged Exec mode, you can do all the commands from User Exec mode plus many system commands.

The default Privileged Exec mode prompt is **awplus#**

Global Configuration mode

To change from Privileged Exec to Global Configuration mode, enter the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
```

From Global Configuration mode, you can configure most aspects of the switch.

The default Global Configuration mode prompt is **awplus(config)#**

Lower-level configuration modes

A number of features are configured by entering a lower-level mode from Global Configuration mode.

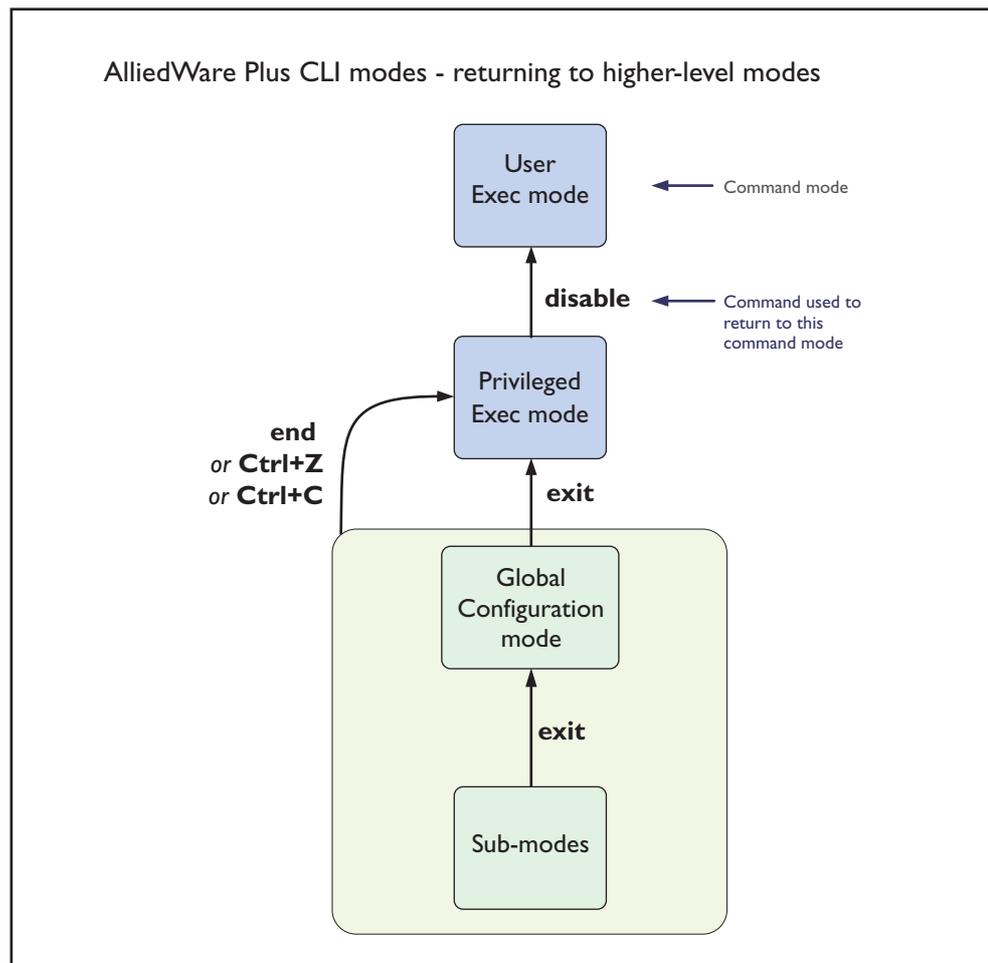
Some protocols have commands in both Global Configuration mode and lower-level configuration modes. For example, to configure MSTP, you use:

- Global Configuration mode to select MSTP as the spanning tree mode
- MST mode to create instances and specify other MSTP settings
- Interface Configuration mode to associate the instances with the appropriate ports.

Returning to higher-level modes

The following figure shows the commands to use to move from a lower-level mode to a higher-level mode.

Figure 1-8: Returning to higher-level modes



Examples To go from Interface Configuration to Global Configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)#
```

To go from Interface Configuration to Privileged Exec mode:

```
awplus(config-if)# end
awplus#
```

To go from Privileged Exec to User Exec:

```
awplus# exit
awplus>
```

Entering Privileged Exec Commands when in a Configuration Mode

As you configure the switch you will be constantly entering various **show** commands to confirm your configuration. This requires constantly changing between configuration modes and Privileged Exec mode.

However, you can run Privileged Exec commands without changing mode, by using the command:

```
do <command you want to run>
```

You cannot use the ? help to find out command syntax when using the **do** command.

Example To display information about the IP interfaces when in Global Configuration mode, enter the command:

This results in the following output:

```
awplus(config)# do show ip int brief
```

Figure 1-9: Example output after entering the command “do show ip int brief”

| Interface | IP-Address | Status | Protocol |
|-----------|------------|----------|----------|
| vlan1 | unassigned | admin up | running |
| vlan2 | unassigned | admin up | running |

How to See the Current Configuration

The current configuration is called the running-config. To see it, enter the following command in either Privileged Exec mode or any configuration mode:

```
awplus# show running-config
```

To see only part of the current configuration, enter the command:

```
awplus# show running-config|include <word>
```

This displays only the lines that contain *word*.

To start the display at a particular place, enter the command:

```
awplus# show running-config|begin <word>
```

This searches the running-config for the first instance of *word* and begins the display from that line.

 **Note** The **show running-config** command works in all modes except User Exec mode.

Default Settings

When the switch first starts up with the AlliedWare Plus™ OS, it applies default settings and copies these defaults dynamically into its running-config.

These default settings mean that the AlliedWare Plus™ OS:

- encrypts passwords, such as user passwords
- records log message priority in log messages
- turns on the telnet server so that you can telnet to the switch
- enables the switch to look up domain names (but for domain name lookups to work, you have to configure a DNS server)
- turns off L3 multicast packet switching in the switch's hardware. This prevents L3 multicast from flooding the switch's CPU in its default state as an L2 switch
- turns on RSTP on all ports. Note that the ports are not set to be edge ports
- sets all the switch ports to access mode. This means they are untagged ports, suitable for connecting to hosts
- creates VLAN 1 and adds all the switch ports to it
- allows logins on the serial console port
- allows logins on VTY sessions (for telnet, for example)
- has switching enabled, so Layer 2 traffic is forwarded appropriately without further configuration
- has ports set to autonegotiate their speed and duplex mode
- has copper ports set to auto MDI/MDI-X mode

The Default Configuration

Most of the above default settings are in the form of commands, which the switch copies to its running-config when it first boots up.

For more information about start-up files, see [“How to Save and Boot from the Current Configuration” on page 1.17](#).

How to Change the Password

To change the password for the manager account, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the following command:

```
awplus(config)# username manager password <new-password>
```

The password can be up to 23 characters in length and include characters from up to four categories. The password categories are:

- uppercase letters: A to Z
- lowercase letters: a to z
- digits: 0 to 9
- special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. The question mark ? cannot be used as it is reserved for help functionality.

How to Set Strong Passwords

The password security rules are disabled by default. To set password security rules for users with administrative rights, or privilege level 15, enter Global Configuration mode.

You can then either specify whether the user is forced to change an expired password at the next login, or specify whether the user is not allowed to login with an expired password. You will need to specify a password lifetime greater than 0 before selecting either of these features. Note that the **security-password forced-change** and the **security-password reject-expired-pwd** commands cannot be enabled concurrently.

Password lifetime Enter the following command to specify the password lifetime in days:

```
awplus(config)# security-password lifetime <0-1000>
```

Note that the value 0 will disable lifetime functionality and passwords will never expire. If lifetime functionality is disabled, the **security-password forced-change** command and the **security-password warning** command are also disabled.

Password forced change To specify that a user is forced to change an expired password at the next login, enter the following command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password forced-change
```

If the **security-password forced-change** command is enabled, users with expired passwords are forced to change to a password that must comply with the current password security rules at the next login.

Reject expired password To specify that a user is not allowed to login with an expired password, enter the following command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password reject-expired-pwd
```

If the **security-password reject-expired-pwd** command is enabled, users with expired passwords are rejected at login. Users then have to contact the Network Administrator to change their password.

Caution  Once all users' passwords are expired you are unable to login to the device again if the **security-password reject-expired-pwd** command has been executed. You will have to reboot the device with a default configuration file, or load an earlier software version that does not have the security password feature.
We recommend you never have the command line "security-password reject-expired-pwd" in a default config file.

Use other password security rules to further configure password security settings.

Password warning To specify the number of days before the password expires that the user will receive a warning message specifying the remaining lifetime of the password, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password warning <0-1000>
```

The value 0 will disable warning functionality and the warning period must be less than, or equal to, the password lifetime.

Password history To specify the number of previous passwords that are unable to be reused enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password history <0-15>
```

The value 0 will disable history functionality. If history functionality is disabled, all users' password history is reset and all password history is lost. A new password is invalid if it matches a password retained in the password history.

Password minimum length To specify the minimum allowable password length, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password minimum-length <1-23>
```

Password minimum categories To specify the minimum number of categories that the password must contain in order to be considered valid, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# security-password minimum-categories <1-4>
```

The password categories are:

- uppercase letters: A to Z
- lowercase letters: a to z
- digits: 0 to 9
- special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. The question mark ? cannot be used as it is reserved for help functionality

To ensure password security, the minimum number of categories should align with the lifetime selected, i.e. the fewer categories specified the shorter the lifetime specified.

How to add a user is described in [“How to Add and Remove Users” on page 1.27](#).

Display security password settings To list the configuration settings for the various security password rules, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# show security-password configuration
```

To list users remaining lifetime or last password change, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# show security-password user
```

How to Set an IP Address on VLAN 1

This section describes how to set an IP address on the default VLAN (vlan1).

Step 1: If desired, check the current configuration

After logging in, enter Privileged Exec mode by using the command:

```
awplus># enable
```

Then check the current configuration by using one of the following commands:

```
awplus# show ip interface vlan1 brief
```

The output looks like this:

| Interface | IP-Address | Status | Protocol |
|-----------|--------------|----------|----------|
| vlan1 | 172.28.8.200 | admin up | running |

```
awplus# show running-config interface vlan1
```

This output looks like this:

```
!  
interface vlan1  
 ip address 172.28.8.200/16  
!
```

Step 2: Enter Interface Configuration mode for the vlan1 interface

Enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# interface vlan1
```

Step 3: Enter the IP address and mask

Enter the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address <address/mask>
```

For example, to set the address to 172.28.8.210/16, enter the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address 172.28.8.210/16
```

How to Save and Boot from the Current Configuration

This section tells you how to save your configuration and run the saved configuration when the switch starts up.

You can either:

- save the configuration to the switch's default configuration file (called "default.cfg"). By default, the switch uses that file at start-up.
- create a new configuration file and set the switch to use the new configuration file at start-up.

How to Save to the Default Configuration File

Enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config startup-config
```

The parameter **startup-config** is a short-cut for the current boot configuration file, which will be the default configuration file unless you have changed it, as described in the next section.

How to Create and Use a New Configuration File

Step 1: Copy the current configuration to a new file

Enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config <destination-url>
```

Example To save the current configuration in a file called `example.cfg`, enter the command

```
awplus# copy running-config example.cfg
```

Step 2: Set the switch to use the new file at startup

To run the new file's configuration when the switch starts up, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file <filepath-filename>
```

Note that you can set the switch to use a configuration file on an SD card if you have saved the configuration file to a card. You can only specify that the configuration file is on an SD card if there is a backup configuration file already specified in Flash.

To set a backup configuration file to load if the main configuration file cannot be loaded, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file backup <filepath-filename>
```

For an explanation of the configuration fallback order, see ["The Configuration File Fallback Order" on page 6.10](#).

Example To run the commands in `example.cfg` on startup, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file flash:/example.cfg
```

To set `backup.cfg` as the backup to the main configuration file, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file backup flash:/backup.cfg
```

Step 3: Display the new settings

To see the files that the switch uses at startup, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

The output looks like this:

```
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: card:/example.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config: flash:/backup.cfg (file exists)
```

Step 4: Continue updating the file when you change the configuration

When you next want to save the current configuration, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config startup-config
```

The parameter **startup-config** is a short-cut for the current boot configuration file.

How to Return to the Factory Defaults

The switch dynamically adds the default settings to the running-config at start-up if the default file is not present. This section describes how to use this feature to return to the factory defaults.

Note  After reboot the show running-config output will show the default factory settings for your switch once you have removed the default.cfg file. To recreate the default.cfg file enter copy running-config startup-config. When you enter copy running-config startup-config commands the default.cfg file is updated with the startup-config.

Completely restore defaults

To completely remove your configuration and return to the factory default configuration, delete or rename the default file and make sure no other file is set as the start-up configuration file.

To find the location of the default boot configuration file, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

To delete the default file when it is the current boot configuration file, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter either of the commands:

```
awplus# delete force <filename>
```

or:

```
awplus# erase startup-config
```

Note that erasing startup-config deletes the current boot configuration file—it does not simply stop the file from being the boot file.

To make sure that no other file is loaded at start-up, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# no boot config-file
```

Partially restore defaults

To partially restore the default settings, make a configuration file that contains the settings you want to keep and set this as the start-up configuration file. On start-up, the switch will add the missing settings to the running-config.

How to See System Information

This section describes how to view the following system information:

- overview information
- details of temperature and voltage
- serial number

Viewing Overall System Information

To display an overview of the switch hardware, software, and system settings, enter User Exec or Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show system
```

The output looks like this:

```
show system
Switch System Status                               Thu May 29 02:32:56 2014

Board      ID  Bay  Board Name          Rev  Serial number
-----
Base       404      x230-10GP          X1-1  X230-10GP PT1 #4
-----
RAM:  Total: 252944 kB Free: 171672 kB
Flash: 61.9MB Used: 37.9MB Available: 24.0MB
-----
Environment Status : Normal
Uptime              : 59 days 02:17:00
Bootloader version  : 3.0.3-devel

Current software    : Version 5.4.4-1.x or later-1.1.rel
Software version    : Version 5.4.4-1.x or later
Build date          : Mon Mar 31 12:15:16 NZDT 2014

Current boot config: flash:/default.cfg (file exists)

System Name
awplus
System Contact

System Location

awplus#
```

Viewing Voltage, Fan Status, and Temperature

The switch monitors the environmental status of the switch and its power supplies and fan. To display this information, enter User Exec or Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show system environment
```

The output looks like this:

```
awplus#show system environment
Environment Monitoring Status

Overall Status: Normal

Resource ID: 1 Name: x230-10GP
ID Sensor (Units) Reading Low Limit High Limit Status
1 Fan: Fan 1 (Rpm) 4825 2025 - Ok
2 Voltage: 2.5V (Volts) 2.476 2.339 2.859 Ok
3 Voltage: 1.0V (Volts) 1.006 0.896 1.099 Ok
4 Voltage: 3.3V (Volts) 3.325 3.028 3.545 Ok
5 Voltage: 1.5V (Volts) 1.538 1.335 1.649 Ok
6 Voltage: 12V (Volts) 11.905 10.767 13.166 Ok
7 Temp: Unused (Degrees C) 53 -11 80 Ok
awplus#
```

Viewing the Serial Number

The switch's serial number is displayed in the output of the [show system command on page 8.40](#), but for convenience, you can also display it by itself. To do this, enter User Exec or Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show system serialnumber
```

The output looks like this:

```
P1FY7502C
```

How to Set System Parameters

You can set system parameters to personalize the switch and make it easy to identify it when troubleshooting. This section describes how to configure the following system parameters:

- telnet session timeout
- switch name
- login banner

How to Change the Telnet Session Timeout

By default, telnet sessions time out after 10 minutes of idle time. If desired, you can change this.

To change the timeout for all telnet sessions, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the commands:

```
awplus(config)# line vty 0 32
awplus(config-line)# exec-timeout <new-timeout>
```

The new timeout value only applies to new sessions, not current sessions.

Examples To set the timeout to 30 minutes, enter the command:

```
awplus(config-line)# exec-timeout 30
```

To set the timeout to 30 seconds, enter the command:

```
awplus(config-line)# exec-timeout 0 30
```

To set the timeout to infinity, so that sessions never time out, enter either of the commands:

```
awplus(config-line)# no exec-timeout
awplus(config-line)# exec-timeout 0 0
```

How to Name the Switch

To give the switch a name, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# hostname <name>
```

For example, to name the switch "mycompany":

```
awplus(config)# hostname mycompany
```

The prompt displays the new name:

```
mycompany(config)#
```

The name can contain hyphens and underscore characters, for example:

```
mycompany(config)#hostname mycompany_more_words
mycompany_more_words(config)#hostname mycompany-hyphenated
mycompany-hyphenated(config)
```

However, the name must be a single word, as the following example shows.

```
mycompany(config)#hostname mycompany more words
^
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
```

It also cannot be surrounded by quote marks, as the following example shows.

```
awplus(config)#hostname "mycompany more words"
% hostname contains invalid characters
```

Removing the name

To remove the hostname, enter the command:

```
mycompany(config)# no hostname
```

The prompt changes back to the default prompt:

```
awplus(config)#
```

How to Display a Text Banner at Login

By default, the switch displays the AlliedWare Plus™ OS version and build date before login. You can customize this by changing the Message of the Day (MOTD) banner.

To enter a new MOTD banner, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner motd <banner-text>
```

The text can contain spaces and other printable characters. You do not have to surround words with quote marks.

Example To display “this is a new banner” when someone logs in, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner motd this is a new banner
```

This results in the following output at login:

```
awplus login: manager
Password:
this is a new banner
awplus>
```

Removing the banner To return to the default banner (AlliedWare Plus™ OS version and build date), enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner motd default
```

To remove the banner instead of replacing it, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# no banner motd
```

How to Set the Time and Date

There are three aspects to setting the time and date:

- setting the current time and date (“[How to Set the Time and Date](#)” on page 1.25)
- setting the timezone (“[How to Set the Timezone](#)” on page 1.26)
- configuring the switch to automatically change the time when summer-time begins and ends (“[How to Configure Summer-Time](#)” on page 1.26)

Instead of manually setting the time, you can use NTP to automatically get the time from another device.

How to Show Current Settings

To display the current time, timezone and date, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show clock
```

The output looks like this:

```
UTC Time:   Wed, 16 May 2013 16:08:14 +0000
Timezone:  UTC
Timezone Offset: +00:00
Summer time zone: None
```

How to Set the Time and Date

To set the time and date, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the **clock set** command:

```
clock set <hh:mm:ss> <day> <month> <year>
```

:where:

- *hh* is two digits giving the hours in 24-hour format (e.g. 14)
- *mm* is two digits giving the minutes
- *ss* is two digits giving the seconds
- *day* is two digits giving the day of the month
- *month* is the first three letters of the month name (e.g. **sep**)
- *year* is four digits giving the year

Example To set the time to 14:00:00 on 25 January 2012, use the command:

```
awplus# clock set 14:00:00 25 jan 2012
```

How to Set the Timezone

To set the timezone, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the **clock timezone** command:

```
clock timezone <timezone-name> {plus|minus} <0-12>
```

The <timezone-name> can be any string up to 6 characters long.

To return the timezone to UTC+0, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# no clock timezone
```

Example To set the timezone to Eastern Standard Time, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone EST minus 5
```

How to Configure Summer-Time

There are two approaches for setting summer-time:

- *recurring*, when you specify the week when summer-time starts and ends and each year the switch changes the time at those weeks. For example, Eastern Daylight Time (EDT) starts at 2 am on the second Sunday in March and ends at 2 am on the first Sunday in November.
- *date-based*, when you specify the start and end dates for summer-time for a particular year. For example, Eastern Daylight Time (EDT) starts at 2 am on Sunday, 8 March 2008 and ends at 2 am on Sunday, 2 November 2008.

Recurring To set summer-time with recurring dates, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the **clock summer-time recurring** command:

```
clock summer-time <zone-name> recurring <start-week> <start-day> <start-month> <start-time> <end-week> <end-day> <end-month> <end-time> <1-180>
```

The <zone-name> can be any string up to 6 characters long.

The <start-time> and <end-time> are in the form hh:mm, in 24-hour time.

Note that if you specify 5 for the week, this changes the time on the last day of the month, not the 5th week.

Example To configure EDT, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock summer-time EDT recurring 2 Sun Mar 02:00 1 Sun Nov 02:00 60
```

Date-based To set summer-time for a single year, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the **clock summer-time date** command:

```
clock summer-time <zone-name> date <start-day> <start-month> <start-year> <start-time> <end-day> <end-month> <end-year> <end-time> <1-180>
```

The <zone-name> can be any string up to 6 characters long.

The <start-time> and <end-time> are in the form hh:mm, in 24-hour time.

Example For example, to configure EDT for 2008 enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock summer-time EDT date 8 Mar 2008 02:00 2 Nov 2008 02:00 60
```

How to Add and Remove Users

Adding users To add a new user with administrative rights, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# username <name> privilege 15 password
<password>
```

Both *<name>* and *<password>* can contain any printable character and are case sensitive.

When you add a user with administrative rights, *<password>* will have to conform to the following rules:

- [security-password minimum-categories](#) command on page 5.20
- [security-password minimum-length](#) command on page 5.21
- [security-password history](#) command on page 5.17. If this command is enabled, *<password>* is invalid if it matches a password retained in the password history.

The AlliedWare Plus™ OS gives you a choice of 1 or 15 for the privilege level. Level 1 users are limited to User Exec mode so you need to set most users to level 15.

For example, to add user Bob with password 123\$%^, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# username Bob privilege 15 password 123$%^
```

Removing users To remove a user, enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
no username <name>
```

For example, to remove user Bob, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# no username Bob
```

Note that you can delete all users, including the user called “manager” and the user you are logged in as. If all privilege 15 user accounts are deleted, a warning message is generated:

```
% Warning: No privileged users exist.
```

If all privilege level 15 user accounts are deleted, and there are no other users configured for the device, you may have to reboot with the default configuration file.

If there is a user account on the device with a lower privilege level and a password has already been set with the [enable password](#) command on page 5.4, you can login and still enter privileged mode. When executing the **enable** command, enter the password created with the **enable password** command. For example, if the password is mypassword:

```
awplus> enable mypassword
awplus#
```

Displaying users To list the currently logged-in users, enter User Exec or Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show users
```

The output looks like this:

| Line | User | Host(s) | Idle | Location | Priv | Idletime | Timeout |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|-------------|------|----------|---------|
| con 0 | manager | idle | 00:00:00 | ttyS0 | 15 | 10 | N/A |
| vty 0 | bob | idle | 00:00:03 | 172.16.11.3 | 1 | 0 | 5 |

To list all configured users, enter User Exec or Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show running-config |include username
```

The output looks like this:

```
username manager privilege 15 password 8 $1$bJoVec4D$JwOJGPr7YqoExA0GVasdE0
username Bob privilege 15 password 8 $1$gXJLY8dw$iqkMXLgQxbzSOutNUa5E2.
```

Pre-Encrypted Passwords

The running-config output above includes the number 8 after the **password** parameter. This indicates that the password is displayed in its encrypted form.

You can enter the number 8 and a pre-encrypted password on the command line. You may want to pre-encrypt passwords if you need to load them onto switches via an insecure method (such as HTTP, or by emailing them to remote users).



Caution Only enter the number 8 if you are entering a pre-encrypted password—otherwise, you will be unable to log in using the password and will be unable to access the switch through that username. The next section describes why.

Testing this feature

If you want to test the effect of this, *create a new user* for the test instead of using the manager user. The test stops you from logging in as the test user, so you need to have the manager user available to log in as.

The following output shows how specifying the number 8 puts the password into the running-config exactly as you typed it:

```
awplus(config)#username Bob privilege 15 password 8 friend
awplus(config)#show running-config |include username Bob
username Bob privilege 15 password 8 friend
```

After entering the command above, logging in as “Bob” with a password of “friend” does not work. This is because the switch takes the password you enter (“friend”), hashes it, and compares the hash with the string in the running-config (“friend”). The hashed value and “friend” are not the same, so the switch rejects the login.

How to Undo Settings

There are two possibilities for undoing settings: the **no** parameter and the **default** parameter.

How to Use the *no* Parameter

To undo most settings, simply re-enter the first parameters of the configuration command with the parameter **no** before them.

Example You can set the timezone to Eastern Standard Time by entering the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone EST minus 5
```

To remove the timezone setting, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# no clock timezone
```

How to Use the *default* Parameter

Some commands have a **default** parameter that returns the feature to its default setting.

Example You can change the login banner to "this is a new banner" by entering the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner motd this is a new banner
```

To return to the default banner, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner motd default
```

Note that this command also has a **no** parameter that lets you remove the banner altogether.

How to Upgrade the Firmware

New releases of the AlliedWare Plus™ OS become available regularly. Contact your customer support representative for more information.

Step 1: Put the new release onto your TFTP server

Step 2: If necessary, create space in the switch's Flash memory for the new release

Note that you cannot delete the current release file.

To see how much space is free, use the command:

```
awplus# show file systems
```

Step 3: Copy the new release from your TFTP server onto the switch

Follow the relevant instructions in [“Copying with Trivial File Transfer Protocol \(TFTP\)” on page 6.15](#).

Step 4: Set the switch to boot from the new release

Enter Global Configuration mode and enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot system <filepath-filename>
```

You can set a backup release file to load if the main release file cannot be loaded. Enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot system backup <filepath-filename>
```

Step 5: Check the boot settings

Enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

Step 6: Reboot

Enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# reboot
```

Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature

Eco-Friendly

You can conserve power by enabling the eco-friendly LED (Light Emitting Diode) feature either by entering the [ecofriendly led command on page 8.11](#) or by pressing the eco-friendly button on the front panel. This feature disables power to the port LEDs, but not the power indicator LED.

The eco-friendly LED feature is disabled by default. To globally enable the feature for all LED ports on the switch, either push the eco-switch button or enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ecofriendly led
```

For an example of how to configure a trigger to enable the eco-friendly LED feature, see [“Turn Off Power to Port LEDs” on page 75.7](#).

Trouble-shoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues

Digital Diagnostics Monitoring (DDM) for SFP (1 Gigabit Small Form-factor Pluggable) transceivers allows you to measure optical parameters for pluggables installed in a switch and trouble shoot fiber issues.

Fiber cable can be vulnerable to damage. Patch panels and patch cables can be connected with the wrong type of fiber, fiber splices can become faulty and fiber cables can be cut accidentally. Trouble shooting fiber issues has required special equipment and expertise to find the source of a problem causing signal attenuation. Digital monitoring features help find fiber issues.

Different types of transceivers are supported in different models of switch. See your Allied Telesis dealer for more information about the particular models of pluggables that your switch supports, and if these transceivers also support digital monitoring.

To display information about transceivers installed on your switch, enter the following command:

```
awplus# show system pluggable diagnostics
```

The following parameters are measured and are displayed in **show system pluggable diagnostics** command output:

- Temperature (Centigrade) inside the transceiver
- Vcc (Volts) voltage supplied to the transceiver
- Tx Bias (mA) current to the Laser Diode in the transceiver
- Tx Power (mW) the amount of light transmitted from the transceiver
- Rx Power (mW) the amount of light received in the transceiver

You can track Tx Bias to find out how the Laser Diode in the transceiver is aging by comparing the Tx Bias for one transceiver against Tx Bias for others. You can use this information to see if any transceivers may need replacement.

You can trouble shoot fiber connectivity issues by checking the Tx Power at one end of the fiber link against the Rx Power at the other end of the fiber link to measure the attenuation. Knowing the attenuation enables you to determine if there are anomalies in the fiber cable.

Note that Tx Power differences between the same type of transceivers installed on a switch may indicate that a transceiver is not seated or locked. Ensuring transceivers are seated and locked in place with the retaining clip will keep the fiber link up if there is any vibration or movement that can dislodge a fiber cable. Rx Power differences may indicate poor fiber patch cables, poor connectors or poor splices. Tracking Tx Bias for installed transceivers and measuring attenuation for fiber links allows you to perform periodic preventative maintenance, instead of reacting to a failure. Tracking Tx Power differences can be used as an indicator of failure in an which may need replacing.

Using the Find Me feature

The Find Me feature enables you to physically locate a specific device from a group of similar devices.

Running the **findme** command on [page 8.12](#) causes the device's LEDs to alternately flash green and amber at a rate of 1 Hz. If the switch has no amber LED, then the green LED will flash on/off at a rate of 1 Hz.

An optional **interface** parameter specifies one or more interfaces to flash. If no **interface** parameter is specified, then all ports on the device are flashed.

An optional **timeout** parameter specifies the flash behavior **duration**. The default time is one minute (60 seconds). Normal LED behavior is restored automatically after either the default time, or a specified time, has elapsed or a **no findme** command is used.

Controlling “show” Command Output

You can control the output of **show** commands by using the `|` and `>` or `>>` tokens in the following ways:

- To display only part of the output, follow the command with `|` and then other keywords (see **Output modifiers** below)
- To save the output to a file, follow the command with `> filename`
- To append the output to an existing file, follow the command with `>> filename`

Using the `?` after typing the **show** command displays the following information about these tokens:

```
awplus# show users
```

```
| Output modifiers
> Output redirection
>> Output redirection (append)
```

Output modifiers Type the `|` (vertical bar) to use **output modifiers**.

```
append      Append output
begin       Begin with the first line that contains
            matching output
exclude     Exclude lines that contain matching output
include     Include lines that contain matching output
redirect    Redirect output
```

Begin The **begin** parameter causes the display to begin at the first line that contains the input string.

```
awplus# show run | begin vlan1
```

```
...skipping
interface vlan1
 ip address 192.168.14.1
 !!
line con 0
 login
line vty 0 4
 login
!
end
```

Exclude The **exclude** parameter excludes all lines of output that contain the input string. In the following output all lines containing the word "input" are excluded:

```
awplus# show interface vlan1 | exclude input
```

```
Interface vlan1
Scope: both
Hardware is Ethernet, address is 192.168.14.1
index 3 metric 1 mtu 1500 <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
Label switching is disabled
No Virtual Circuit configured
Administrative Group(s): None
DSTE Bandwidth Constraint Mode is MAM
  output packets 4438, bytes 394940, dropped 0
  output errors 0, aborted 0, carrier 0, fifo 0, heartbeat 0,
window 0
  collisions 0
```

Include The **include** parameter includes only those lines of output that contain the input string. In the output below, all lines containing the word "input" are included:

```
awplus# show interface vlan1 | include input
```

```
input packets 80434552, bytes 2147483647, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
input errors 0, length 0, overrun 0, CRC 0, frame 0, fifo 1, missed 0
```

Redirect The **redirect** parameter puts the lines of output into the specified file. If the file already exists, the new output overwrites the file's contents; the new output is not appended to the existing file contents.

| **redirect** and **>** are synonyms.

```
awplus# show history | redirect history.txt
```

Output redirection The output redirection token **>** puts the lines of output into the specified file. If the file already exists, the new output overwrites the file's contents; the new output is not appended to the existing file contents.

| **redirect** and **>** are synonyms.

```
awplus# show history > history.txt
```

Append output The append output token **>>** adds the lines of output into the specified file. The file must already exist, for the new output to be added to the end of the file's contents; the new output is appended to the existing file contents.

| **append** and **>>** are synonyms.

```
awplus# show history >> history.txt
```

AlliedWare Plus GUI

Information on loading and using the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI is outside the scope of the main body of this reference manual. This topic is covered in a separate appendix to this document. See [“Appendix B: GUI Reference”](#).

Chapter 2: Command Syntax Conventions in this Software Reference

The following table describes how command line interface syntax is shown in this Software Reference.

| Syntax element | Example | What to enter in the command line |
|---|--|--|
| Keywords are shown in lowercase fixed-width font or bold variable-width font. | <pre>show spanning-tree mst or show ip route</pre> | Some keywords are required, and others are optional parameters. Type keywords exactly as they appear in the command syntax. |
| Number ranges are enclosed in angle-brackets <> and separated by a hyphen. | <pre><0-255></pre> | Enter a number from the range. Do not enter the angle brackets. |
| Placeholders are shown in lowercase italics within angle-brackets <>, or in uppercase italics. | <pre><port-list> or ip dhcp pool NAME</pre> | Replace the placeholder with the value you require. The placeholder may be an IP address, a text string, or some other value. See the parameter table for the command for information about the type of value to enter. Do not enter the angle-brackets. |
| Repeats are shown with ellipsis. | <pre>param1...</pre> | Enter the parameter one or more times. |
| Optional elements are shown in brackets: [] | <pre>vlan <vid> [name <vlan-name>]</pre> | If you need the optional parameter, enter it. Do not enter the brackets. |
| Required choices are enclosed in braces and separated by a vertical bar (pipe): {} | <pre>spanning-tree {mstp rstp stp} enable</pre> | Enter one only of the options. Do not enter the braces or vertical bar. |
| Optional choices are enclosed in or brackets and separated by a vertical bar (pipe): [] | <pre>[param1 param2]</pre> | If needed, enter one only of the options. Do not enter the brackets or vertical bar. |
| Inclusive options are enclosed in braces, and separated by brackets: {[] } | <pre>{[param1] [param2] [param3]}</pre> | Enter one or more of the options and separate them with a space. Do not enter the braces or brackets. |

Chapter 3: Start-Up Sequence

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| AlliedWare Plus Start-Up | 3.2 |
| Diagnostic Menu | 3.3 |
| Bootloader Menu | 3.4 |
| Start-Up Sequence..... | 3.8 |

AlliedWare Plus Start-Up

Every switch has a start-up process. A specified version of product software must be loaded and executed. The bootloader is the executable code responsible for setting up the system and loading the release software.

The bootloader is the software that runs the unit when it first powers up, performing basic initialization and executing the product software release. As part of the start-up process of the switch, the bootloader allows you various options before running the product release software.

Previous versions of AlliedWare provide the option to boot to EPROM if a software release cannot be loaded, is unlicensed, or if selected by the user. The EPROM provides enough basic functionality to get a working software release loaded and operational on the switch. In AlliedWare Plus™ this task is handled by the bootloader.

As AlliedWare Plus™ begins its start-up process; there are two options that allow you to access either the diagnostic menu, or the bootloader menu. The following prompt is displayed when these options are temporarily available:

```
Bootloader 3.0.0-devel loaded
Press <Ctrl+B> for the Boot Menu
```

You can now enter one of the following two options to determine how the start-up process proceeds:

- Enter Ctrl+D to display the diagnostic menu.
- Enter Ctrl+B to display the bootloader menu.

Diagnostic Menu

Enter Ctrl+D during start-up to access the bootloader diagnostic menu, and provide options for performing various hardware tests. This can be useful as a tool for confirming a suspected hardware problem at the direction of network engineering personnel. When you enter Ctrl+D, the stage 1 diagnostics menu is displayed:

```

Bootup Stage 1 Diagnostics Menu:
 0. Restart
 1. Full RAM test
 2. Quick RAM test
 3. Battery backed RAM (NVS) test
 4. Bootloader ROM checksum test
-----
 7. Bootup stage 2 diagnostics menu
-----
 8. Quit to U-Boot shell
 9. Quit and continue booting
Enter selection ==>
    
```

The options in the stage 1 diagnostics menu allow you to initiate the following tests:

- **RAM:** The Bootloader fully tests any/all SDRAM installed in the system.
- **NVS:** The Bootloader fully tests any/all non-volatile (battery backed) SRAM installed in the system.
- **checksum:** The Bootloader checksum ROM memory for error detection.

For example, enter "2" to select a Quick RAM test:

```

Quick RAM test - press Q to quit, S to skip when failing
Writing pattern .....
Checking pattern .....
Writing complemented pattern .....
Checking complemented pattern .....
Pass 1 total errors 0
    
```

Enter "7" to display the stage 2 diagnostics menu:

```

Entering stage 2...
Bootup Stage 2 Diagnostics Menu:
 0. Restart
 2. Test FLASH (Filesystem only)
 4. Erase FLASH (Filesystem only)
 5. Card slot test
-----
 8. Quit to U-Boot shell
 9. Quit and continue booting
    
```

The options in the stage 2 diagnostics menu allow you to initiate the following tests:

- **Flash:** The Bootloader tests the user file system area of Flash. The bootloader is stored in a protected area of Flash that is not accessed by the user file system.
- **Flash Erase:** The Bootloader erases the user file system area of Flash only.
- **SD (and SDHC) Card slot:** The Bootloader tests the Card slot.

Once any required tests are completed from the diagnostics menu, enter "9" to quit the diagnostic menu and continue the switch boot-up process.

Bootloader Menu

Enter Ctrl+B during start-up to access the bootloader menu where boot options can be set. The boot options shown are explained in detail under this example.

```

Boot Menu:

-----
B. Boot backup software
-----
0. Restart
1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source
2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)
3. Update Bootloader
4. Adjust the console baud rate
5. Special boot options
6. System information
7. Restore Bootloader factory settings
-----
9. Quit and continue booting

```

Boot options A powerful feature of AlliedWare Plus™ is the ability to boot from a variety of sources. Previously the switch was constrained to just booting off the release loaded into Flash memory. The only software release upgrade path being to load a new release into Flash memory and then set this release to be loaded at the next restart.

With AlliedWare Plus™ the switch can boot from other sources, such as an SD card or network server. This provides a very flexible system, with multiple options to upgrade software releases and for system recovery.

Details of the bootloader menu options are as follows:

1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source

Enter "1" in the top-level menu to provide the following one-off boot options:

```

Enter selection ==> 1
Select device:

0. Return to previous menu
-----
1. Flash (flash:)
2. SD Card (card:)
3. TFTP (tftp://)
4. YMODEM (ymodem:)

Enter selection ==>

```

You can select a one-off boot from Flash, SD (or SDHC) card, network server (TFTP), or ymodem. The selected option will be used for the next restart (only) of the switch. If you select to boot from the network, the bootloader prompts the user for the required network address details.

Note  These settings are specific to the Bootloader. They are not related in any way to what may be configured by the main software release.

When the switch is booted up using the 'one-off' selected source for the software release, it provides the option to copy the release just used to Flash for further/permanent use:

```
login: manager
Password: *****
The system has been booted using the one off boot/recovery
mechanism.
Bootup has successfully completed.
Write this release to flash? (y/n):
```

2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)

```
Boot Menu:
-----
B. Boot backup software
-----
0. Restart
1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source
2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)
3. Update Bootloader
4. Adjust the console baud rate
5. Special boot options
6. System information
7. Restore Bootloader factory settings
-----
9. Quit and continue booting
```

Entering "2" in the top-level menu provides the option to set the boot source permanently.

```
Enter selection ==> 2
NOTE: These settings are specific to the Bootloader.
They are not related in any way to what may be configured
by the 'boot system' command in the main software release.
Select device:
0. Return to previous menu
-----
1. Flash (flash:)
2. SD Card (card:)
3. TFTP (tftp://)
4. YMODEM (ymodem:)
-----
9. Boot from default (determined by main CLI)
Enter selection ==>
```

The same boot source options are provided as with the one-off selection, but this time every restart of the switch will result in the unit booting from the selected source.

3. Update Bootloader

This option allows for the bootloader code to be updated. It is not detailed here, as it is envisioned that this would rarely need to be done, and only at the request of (and with support from) Allied Telesis engineering.

4. Adjust the console baud rate

```

Boot Menu:

-----
B. Boot backup software
-----
0. Restart
1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source
2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)
3. Update Bootloader
4. Adjust the console baud rate
5. Special boot options
6. System information
7. Restore Bootloader factory settings
-----
9. Quit and continue booting

```

The baud rate of the console session is set here to match the terminal program being used for management of the switch when connected directly to the asynchronous port. The switch's default value is 9600. The baud rate selected can be set as the 'new' default for future use if preferred.

```

Select baud rate:

0. Return to previous menu
-----
1. 9600
2. 19200
3. 38400
4. 57600
5. 115200
6. 230400 (Setting can't be made permanent)
7. 460800 (Setting can't be made permanent)

Enter selection ==> 1

Change your terminal program baud rate to 9600 and press
enter... if for some reason you are unable to do this,
power cycle the device and the existing baud rate will be
restored.
Use this baud rate by default? (Y/N) ==> n

```

5. Special boot options

```

Boot Menu:

-----
B. Boot backup software
-----
0. Restart
1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source
2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)
3. Update Bootloader
4. Adjust the console baud rate
5. Special boot options
6. System information
7. Restore Bootloader factory settings
-----
9. Quit and continue booting

```

The special boot options allow for system recovery in the event of a forgotten password or to the default configuration.

```
Special boot options menu:
  0. Return to previous menu
-----
  1. Skip startup script (Use system defaults)
Enter selection ==>
```

6. System information

```
Boot Menu:
-----
B. Boot backup software
-----
  0. Restart
  1. Perform one-off boot from alternate source
  2. Change the default boot source (for advanced users)
  3. Update Bootloader
  4. Adjust the console baud rate
  5. Special boot options
  6. System information
  7. Restore Bootloader factory settings
-----
  9. Quit and continue booting
```

The system information option provides some details on the hardware platform in use, such as CPU, memory, hardware (MAC) address and so on.

7. Restore Bootloader factory settings

This option allows the bootloader to be set back to factory defaults.

Caution This option erases any settings that may have been configured by this menu
 Are you sure? (Y/N) ==>

The bootloader menu provides a powerful set of options for flexibility in the way software releases are upgraded on the switch, and system recovery is performed.

Start-Up Sequence

The start-up sequence for a device running AlliedWare Plus™ under normal circumstances will be as seen in the following pages. This sequence will be seen when everything loads and runs as expected.

Note  To enter the bootloader or diagnostic menus discussed previously, Ctrl+B or Ctrl+D must be entered when prompted before the software modules start loading.

There are three possible status results displayed for each module loaded - OK, INFO, ERROR:

- OK means that the module has loaded correctly.
- INFO means that an error occurred, but the device is usable.
- ERROR means that an error occurred and device operation may be affected.

Additional specific information accompanies an INFO or ERROR status result. For example, if a corrupt release file was set as the startup release, the following error message would be seen:

```
Bootloader 3.0.0-devel loaded
Press <Ctrl+B> for the Boot Menu
Reading filesystem...
Error: Release filename is invalid (should be x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel)
Error: There is no backup release file set
Error: Boot failed. Please recover the system using the Boot Menu
Restarting...Bootloader 3.0.0-devel loaded
Press <Ctrl+B> for the Boot Menu
```

Whether an error message results in a case of the device being unusable will depend on the specific error and message, so will need to be dealt with on a case by case basis. If a software release has been corrupted, as shown on start-up, a new release may need to be loaded.

Chapter 4: CLI Navigation Commands



| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Command List | 4.2 |
| configure terminal | 4.2 |
| disable (Privileged Exec mode) | 4.2 |
| do | 4.3 |
| enable (Privileged Exec mode) | 4.4 |
| end | 4.6 |
| exit | 4.6 |
| help | 4.7 |
| logout | 4.7 |
| show history | 4.8 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for the commands used to navigate between different modes. This chapter also provides a reference for the help and show commands used to help navigate within the CLI.

configure terminal

This command enters the Global Configuration command mode.

Syntax `configure terminal`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To enter the Global Configuration command mode (note the change in the command prompt), enter the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)#
```

disable (Privileged Exec mode)

This command exits the Privileged Exec mode, returning the prompt to the User Exec mode. To end a session, use the **exit** command.

Syntax `disable`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To exit the Privileged Exec mode, enter the command:

```
awplus# disable
awplus>
```

Related Commands **enable (Privileged Exec mode)**
end
exit

do

This command lets you to run User Exec and Privileged Exec mode commands when you are in any configuration mode.

Syntax `do <command>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><command></code> | Specify the command and its parameters. |

Mode Any configuration mode

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# do ping 192.0.2.23
```

enable (Privileged Exec mode)

This command enters the Privileged Exec mode and optionally changes the privilege level for a session. If a privilege level is not specified then the maximum privilege level (15) is applied to the session. If the optional privilege level is omitted then only users with the maximum privilege level can access Privileged Exec mode without providing the password as specified by the **enable password** or **enable secret** commands. If no password is specified then only users with the maximum privilege level set with the **username** command can access Privileged Exec mode.

Syntax `enable [<privilege-level>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><privilege-level></code> | Specify the privilege level for a CLI session in the range <1-15>, where 15 is the maximum privilege level, 7 is the intermediate privilege level and 1 is the minimum privilege level. The privilege level for a user must match or exceed the privilege level set for the CLI session for the user to access Privileged Exec mode. Privilege level for a user is configured by username . |

Mode User Exec

Usage Many commands are available from the Privileged Exec mode that configure operating parameters for the switch, so you should apply password protection to the Privileged Exec mode to prevent unauthorized use. Passwords can be encrypted but then cannot be recovered. Note that non-encrypted passwords are shown in plain text in configurations.

The **username** command sets the privilege level for the user. After login, users are given access to privilege level 1. Users access higher privilege levels with the **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command. If the privilege level specified is higher than the users configured privilege level specified by the **username** command, then the user is prompted for the password for that level.

Note that a separate password can be configured for each privilege level using the **enable password** and the **enable secret** commands from the Global Configuration mode. The **service password-encryption** command encrypts passwords configured by the **enable password** and the **enable secret** commands, so passwords are not shown in plain text in configurations.

Example The following example shows the use of the **enable** command to enter the Privileged Exec mode (note the change in the command prompt).

```
awplus> enable
awplus#
```

The following example shows the **enable** command enabling access the Privileged Exec mode for users with a privilege level of 7 or greater. Users with a privilege level of 7 or greater do not need to enter a password to access Privileged Exec mode. Users with a privilege level 6 or less need to enter a password to access Privilege Exec mode. Use the **enable password** command or the **enable secret** commands to set the password to enable access to Privileged Exec mode.

```
awplus> enable 7
awplus#
```

Related Commands

- disable (Privileged Exec mode)**
- enable password**
- enable secret**
- exit**
- service password-encryption**
- username**

end

This command returns the prompt to the Privileged Exec command mode from any other advanced command mode.

Syntax end

Mode All advanced command modes, including Global Configuration and Interface Configuration modes.

Example The following example shows the use of the `end` command to return to the Privileged Exec mode directly from Interface mode.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# end
awplus#
```

Related Commands [disable \(Privileged Exec mode\)](#)
[enable \(Privileged Exec mode\)](#)
[exit](#)

exit

This command exits the current mode, and returns the prompt to the mode at the previous level. When used in User Exec mode, the `exit` command terminates the session.

Syntax exit

Mode All command modes, including Global Configuration and Interface Configuration modes.

Example The following example shows the use of `exit` command to exit Interface mode, and return to Configure mode.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)#
```

Related Commands [disable \(Privileged Exec mode\)](#)
[enable \(Privileged Exec mode\)](#)
[end](#)

help

This command displays a description of the AlliedWare Plus™ OS help system.

Syntax help

Mode All command modes

Example To display a description on how to use the system help, use the command:

```
awplus# help
```

Output **Figure 4-1: Example output from the help command**

```
When you need help at the command line, press '?'.

If nothing matches, the help list will be empty. Delete
characters until entering a '?' shows the available options.

Enter '?' after a complete parameter to show remaining valid
command parameters (e.g. 'show ?').

Enter '?' after part of a parameter to show parameters that
complete the typed letters (e.g. 'show ip?').
```

logout

This command exits the User Exec or Privileged Exec modes and ends the session.

Syntax logout

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To exit the User Exec mode, use the command:

```
awplus# logout
```

show history

This command lists the commands entered in the current session. The history buffer is cleared automatically upon reboot.

The output lists all command line entries, including commands that returned an error.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show history

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the commands entered during the current session, use the command:

```
awplus# show history
```

Output **Figure 4-2: Example output from the show history command**

```
1 en
2 show ru
3 con t
4 route-map er deny 3
5 exit
6 ex
7 di
```

Chapter 5: User Access Commands



| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction | 5.2 |
| Command List | 5.2 |
| clear line console..... | 5.2 |
| clear line vty | 5.3 |
| enable password | 5.4 |
| enable secret..... | 5.7 |
| exec-timeout..... | 5.10 |
| flowcontrol hardware (asyn/console)..... | 5.11 |
| length (asyn) | 5.13 |
| line | 5.14 |
| privilege level | 5.16 |
| security-password history | 5.17 |
| security-password forced-change | 5.18 |
| security-password lifetime..... | 5.19 |
| security-password minimum-categories..... | 5.20 |
| security-password minimum-length | 5.21 |
| security-password reject-expired-pwd | 5.22 |
| security-password warning | 5.23 |
| service advanced-vty | 5.24 |
| service http..... | 5.25 |
| service password-encryption..... | 5.26 |
| service telnet..... | 5.27 |
| service terminal-length..... | 5.28 |
| show security-password configuration..... | 5.29 |
| show security-password user | 5.30 |
| show privilege | 5.31 |
| show telnet..... | 5.32 |
| show users | 5.33 |
| telnet..... | 5.34 |
| telnet server | 5.35 |
| terminal length | 5.36 |
| terminal resize | 5.37 |
| username | 5.38 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure user access.

Command List

clear line console

This command resets a console line. If a terminal session exists on the line then the terminal session is terminated. If console line settings have changed then the new settings are applied.

Syntax `clear line console 0`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To reset the console line (asyn), use the command:

```
awplus# clear line console 0
% The new settings for console line 0 have been
applied
```

Related Commands [clear line vty](#)
[flowcontrol hardware \(asyn/console\)](#)
[line](#)
[show users](#)

clear line vty

This command resets a VTY line. If a session exists on the line then it is closed.

Syntax `clear line vty <0-32>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <0-32> | Line number |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To reset the first vty line, use the command:

```
awplus# clear line vty 1
```

Related Commands

- [privilege level](#)
- [line](#)
- [show telnet](#)
- [show users](#)

enable password

To set a local password to control access to various privilege levels, use the **enable password** Global Configuration command. Use the **enable password** command to modify or create a password to be used, and use the **no enable password** command to remove the password.

Note that the **enable secret** command is an alias for the **enable password** command, and the **no enable secret** command is an alias for the **no enable password** command. Issuing a **no enable password** command removes a password configured with the **enable secret** command. The **enable password** command is shown in the running and startup configurations. Note that if the **enable secret** command is entered then **enable password** is shown in the configuration.

Syntax `enable password [<plain>|8 <hidden>|level <1-15> 8 <hidden>]`
`no enable password [level <1-15>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><plain></code> | Specifies the unencrypted password. |
| 8 | Specifies a hidden password will follow. |
| <code><hidden></code> | Specifies the hidden encrypted password. Use an encrypted password for better security where a password crosses the network or is stored on a TFTP server. |
| level | Privilege level <1-15>. Level for which the password applies. You can specify up to 16 privilege levels, using numbers 1 through 15. Level 1 is normal EXEC-mode user privileges for User Exec mode. If this argument is not specified in the command or the no variant of the command, the privilege level defaults to 15 (enable mode privileges) for Privileged Exec mode. A privilege level of 7 can be set for intermediate CLI security. |

Default The privilege level for enable password is level 15 by default. Previously the default was level 1.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command enables the Network Administrator to set a password for entering the Privileged Exec mode when using the **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command. There are three methods to enable a password. In the examples below, for each method, note that the configuration is different and the configuration file output is different, but the password string to be used to enter the Privileged Exec mode with the **enable** command is the same (**mypasswd**).

A user can now have an intermediate CLI security level set with this command for privilege level 7 to access all the show commands in Privileged Exec mode and all the commands in User Exec mode, but not any configuration commands in Privileged Exec mode.

Note that the **enable password** command is an alias for the **enable secret** command and one password per privilege level is allowed using these commands. Do not assign one password to a privilege level with **enable password** and another password to a privilege level with **enable secret**. Use **enable password** or **enable secret** commands. Do not use both on the same level.

Using Plain Passwords

The plain password is a clear text string that appears in the configuration file as configured.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable password mypasswd
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password mypasswd
!
interface lo
```

Using Encrypted Passwords

Configure an encrypted password using the **service password-encryption** command. First, use the enable password command to specify the string that you want to use as a password (**mypasswd**). Then, use the **service password-encryption** command to encrypt the specified string (**mypasswd**). The advantage of using an encrypted password is that the configuration file does not show **mypasswd**, it will only show the encrypted string **fU7zHzuutY2SA**.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable password mypasswd
awplus(config)# service password-encryption
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
service password-encryption
!
interface lo
```

Using Hidden Passwords

Configure an encrypted password using the **HIDDEN** parameter (**8**) with the **enable password** command. Use this method if you already know the encrypted string corresponding to the plain text string that you want to use as a password. It is not required to use the **service password-encryption** command for this method. The output in the configuration file will show only the encrypted string, and not the text string.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable password 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
!
interface lo
```

Related Commands

- enable (Privileged Exec mode)**
- enable secret**
- service password-encryption**
- privilege level**
- show privilege**
- username**
- show running-config**

enable secret

To set a local password to control access to various privilege levels, use the **enable secret** Global Configuration command. Use the **enable secret** command to modify or create a password to be used, and use the **no enable secret** command to remove the password.

Note that the **enable secret** command is an alias for the **enable password** command, and the **no enable secret** command is an alias for the **no enable password** command. Issuing a **no enable password** command removes a password configured with the **enable secret** command. The **enable password** command is shown in the running and startup configurations. Note that if the **enable secret** command is entered then **enable password** is shown in the configuration

Syntax `enable secret [<plain>|8 <hidden>|level <0-15> 8 <hidden>]`
`no enable secret [level <1-15>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <plain> | Specifies the unencrypted password. |
| 8 | Specifies a hidden password will follow. |
| <hidden> | Specifies the hidden encrypted password. Use an encrypted password for better security where a password crosses the network or is stored on a TFTP server. |
| level | Privilege level <1-15>. Level for which the password applies. You can specify up to 16 privilege levels, using numbers 1 through 15. Level 1 is normal EXEC-mode user privileges for User Exec mode. If this argument is not specified in the command or the no variant of the command, the privilege level defaults to 15 (enable mode privileges) for Privileged Exec mode. A privilege level of 7 can be set for intermediate CLI security. |

Default The privilege level for enable secret is level 15 by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command enables the Network Administrator to set a password for entering the Privileged Exec mode when using the **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command. There are three methods to enable a password. In the examples below, for each method, note that the configuration is different and the configuration file output is different, but the password string to be used to enter the Privileged Exec mode with the **enable** command is the same (**mypasswd**).

A user can have an intermediate CLI security level set with this command for privilege level 7 to access all the show commands in Privileged Exec mode and all the commands in User Exec mode, but not any configuration commands in Privileged Exec mode.

Note that the **enable secret** command is an alias for the **enable password** command and one password per privilege level is allowed using these commands. Do not assign one password to a privilege level with **enable password** and another password to a privilege level with **enable secret**. Use **enable password** or **enable secret** commands. Do not use both on the same level.

Using plain passwords

The plain password is a clear text string that appears in the configuration file as configured.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable secret mypasswd
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password mypasswd
!
interface lo
```

Using encrypted passwords

Configure an encrypted password using the **service password-encryption** command. First, use the enable password command to specify the string that you want to use as a password (**mypasswd**). Then, use the **service password-encryption** command to encrypt the specified string (**mypasswd**). The advantage of using an encrypted password is that the configuration file does not show **mypasswd**, it will only show the encrypted string **fU7zHzuutY2SA**.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable secret mypasswd
awplus(config)# service password-encryption
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
service password-encryption
!
interface lo
```

Using Hidden Passwords

Configure an encrypted password using the **HIDDEN** parameter (**8**) with the **enable password** command. Use this method if you already know the encrypted string corresponding to the plain text string that you want to use as a password. It is not required to use the **service password-encryption** command for this method. The output in the configuration file will show only the encrypted string, and not the text string:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# enable secret 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
awplus(config)# end
```

This results in the following show output:

```
awplus#show run
Current configuration:
hostname awplus
enable password 8 fU7zHzuutY2SA
!
interface lo
```

Related Commands

- enable (Privileged Exec mode)**
- enable secret**
- service password-encryption**
- privilege level**
- show privilege**
- username**
- show running-config**

exec-timeout

This command sets the interval your device waits for user input from either a console or VTY connection. Once the timeout interval is reached, the connection is dropped. This command sets the time limit when the console or VTY connection automatically logs off after no activity.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified timeout and resets to the default timeout (10 minutes).

Syntax `exec-timeout {<minutes>} [<seconds>]`
`no exec-timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><minutes></code> | <code><0-35791></code> Required integer timeout value in minutes |
| <code><seconds></code> | <code><0-2147483></code> Optional integer timeout value in seconds |

Default The default for the **exec-timeout** command is 10 minutes and 0 seconds (**exec-timeout 10 0**).

Mode Line Configuration

Usage This command is used set the time the telnet session waits for an idle VTY session, before it times out. An **exec-timeout 0 0** setting will cause the telnet session to wait indefinitely. The command **exec-timeout 0 0** is useful while configuring a device, but reduces device security.

If no input is detected during the interval then the current connection resumes. If no connections exist then the terminal returns to an idle state and disconnects incoming sessions.

Examples To set VTY connections to timeout after 2 minutes, 30 seconds if there is no response from the user, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 32
awplus(config-line)# exec-timeout 2 30
```

To reset the console connection to the default timeout of 10 minutes 0 seconds if there is no response from the user, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# no exec-timeout
```

Validation Commands **show running-config**

Related Commands **line**
service telnet

flowcontrol hardware (asyn/console)

Use this command to enable RTS/CTS (Ready To Send/Clear To Send) hardware flow control on a terminal console line (asyn port) between the DTE (Data Terminal Equipment) and the DCE (Data Communications Equipment).

Syntax flowcontrol hardware
no flowcontrol hardware

Mode Line Configuration

Default Hardware flow control is disabled by default.

Usage Hardware flow control makes use of the RTS and CTS control signals between the DTE and DCE where the rate of transmitted data is faster than the rate of received data. Flow control is a technique for ensuring that a transmitting entity does not overwhelm a receiving entity with data. When the buffers on the receiving device are full, a message is sent to the sending device to suspend the transmission until the data in the buffers has been processed.

Hardware flow control can be configured on terminal console lines (e.g. asyn0). For Reverse Telnet connections, hardware flow control must be configured to match on both the Access Server and the Remote Device. For terminal console sessions, hardware flow control must be configured to match on both the DTE and the DCE. Settings are saved in the running configuration. Changes are applied after reboot, clear line console, or after closing the session.

Use **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands to view hardware flow control settings that take effect after reboot for a terminal console line. See the **show running-config** command output:

```
awplus#show running-config
!
line con 1
  speed 9600
  mode out 2001
  flowcontrol hardware
!
```

Note that line configuration commands do not take effect immediately. Line configuration commands take effect after one of the following commands or events:

- issuing a **clear line console** command
- issuing a **reboot** command
- logging out of the current session

Examples To enable hardware flow control on terminal console line asyn0, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# flowcontrol hardware
```

To disable hardware flow control on terminal console line asyn0, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# no flowcontrol hardware
```

Related Commands **clear line console**
 show running-config
 speed (asyn)

length (asyn)

Use this command to specify the number of rows of output that the device will display before pausing, for the console or VTY line that you are configuring.

The **no** variant of this command restores the length of a line (terminal session) attached to a console port or to a VTY to its default length of 22 rows.

Syntax length <0-512>
no length

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <0-512> | Number of lines on screen. Specify 0 for no pausing. |

Mode Line Configuration

Default The length of a terminal session is 22 rows. The **no length** command restores the default.

Usage If the output from a command is longer than the length of the line the output will be paused and the '-More-' prompt allows you to move to the next screen full of data.

A length of 0 will turn off pausing and data will be displayed to the console as long as there is data to display.

Examples To set the terminal session length on the console to 10 rows, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# length 10
```

To reset the terminal session length on the console to the default (22 rows), use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# no length
```

To display output to the console continuously, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# length 0
```

Related Commands [service terminal-length](#)
[terminal length](#)
[terminal resize](#)

line

Use this command to enter line configuration mode for the specified VTYS or the console. The command prompt changes to show that the switch is in Line Configuration mode.

Syntax `line vty <first-line> [<last-line>]`
`line console 0`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><first-line></code> | <code><0-32></code> Specify the first line number. |
| <code><last-line></code> | <code><0-32></code> Specify the last line number. |
| <code>console</code> | The console terminal line(s) for local access. |
| <code>vty</code> | Virtual terminal for remote console access. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage In Line Configuration mode, you can configure console and virtual terminal settings, including setting **speed (asyn)**, **length (asyn)**, **privilege level**, and authentication (**login authentication**) or accounting (**accounting login**) method lists.

To change the console (asyn) port speed, use this **line** command to enter Line Configuration mode before using the **speed (asyn) command on page 8.55**. Set the console speed (Baud rate) to match the transmission rate of the device connected to the console (asyn) port on your switch.

Note that line configuration commands do not take effect immediately. Line configuration commands take effect after one of the following commands or events:

- issuing a **clear line console** command
- issuing a **reboot** command
- logging out of the current session

Examples To enter Line Configuration mode in order to configure all VTYS, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 32
awplus(config-line)#
```

To enter Line Configuration mode to configure the console (asyn 0) port terminal line, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)#
```

Related Commands **accounting login**
clear line console
clear line vty
flowcontrol hardware (asyn/console)
length (asyn)
login authentication
privilege level
speed (asyn)

privilege level

This command sets a privilege level for VTY or console connections. The configured privilege level from this command overrides a specific user's initial privilege level at the console login.

Syntax `privilege level <1-15>`

Mode Line Configuration

Usage You can set an intermediate CLI security level for a console user with this command by applying privilege level 7 to access all show commands in Privileged Exec and all User Exec commands. However, intermediate CLI security will not show configuration commands in Privileged Exec.

Examples To set the console connection to have the maximum privilege level, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# privilege level 15
```

To set all vty connections to have the minimum privilege level, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 5
awplus(config-line)# privilege level 1
```

To set all vty connections to have an intermediate CLI security level, to access all show commands, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 5
awplus(config-line)# privilege level 7
```

Related Commands [enable password](#)
[line](#)
[show privilege](#)
[username](#)

security-password history

This command specifies the number of previous passwords that are unable to be reused. A new password is invalid if it matches a password retained in the password history.

The **no security-password history** command disables the security password history functionality.

Syntax `security-password history <0-15>`

`no security-password history`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <0-15> | The allowable range of previous passwords to match against. A value of 0 will disable the history functionality and is equivalent to the no security-password history command. If the history functionality is disabled, all users' password history is reset and all password history is lost. |

Default The default history value is 0, which will disable the history functionality.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To restrict reuse of the three most recent passwords, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password history 3
```

To allow the reuse of recent passwords, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no security-password history
```

Validation Commands `show running-config security-password`
`show security-password configuration`

Related Commands `security-password forced-change`
`security-password lifetime`
`security-password minimum-categories`
`security-password minimum-length`
`security-password reject-expired-pwd`
`security-password warning`

security-password forced-change

This command specifies whether or not a user is forced to change an expired password at the next login. If this feature is enabled, users whose passwords have expired are forced to change to a password that must comply with the current password security rules at the next login.

Note that to use this command, the lifetime feature must be enabled with the **security-password lifetime** command and the reject-expired-pwd feature must be disabled with the **security-password reject-expired-pwd** command.

The **no security-password forced-change** command disables the forced-change feature.

Syntax security-password forced-change
no security-password forced-change

Default The forced-change feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To force a user to change their expired password at the next login, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password forced-change
```

Validation Commands show running-config security-password
show security-password configuration

Related Commands security-password history
security-password lifetime
security-password minimum-categories
security-password minimum-length
security-password reject-expired-pwd
security-password warning

security-password lifetime

This command enables password expiry by specifying a password lifetime in days.

Note that when the password lifetime feature is disabled, it also disables the **security-password forced-change** command and the **security-password warning** command.

The **no security-password lifetime** command disables the password lifetime feature.

Syntax `security-password lifetime <0-1000>`
`no security-password lifetime`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><0-1000></code> | Password lifetime specified in days. A value of 0 will disable lifetime functionality and the password will never expire. This is equivalent to the no security-password lifetime command. |

Default The default password lifetime is 0, which will disable the lifetime functionality.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To configure the password lifetime to 10 days, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password lifetime 10
```

Validation Commands **show running-config security-password**
show security-password configuration

Related Commands **security-password history**
security-password forced-change
security-password minimum-categories
security-password minimum-length
security-password reject-expired-pwd
security-password warning
show security-password user

security-password minimum-categories

This command specifies the minimum number of categories that the password must contain in order to be considered valid. The password categories are:

- uppercase letters: A to Z
- lowercase letters: a to z
- digits: 0 to 9
- special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. The question mark (?) cannot be used as it is reserved for help functionality.

Note that to ensure password security, the minimum number of categories should align with the lifetime selected, i.e. the fewer categories specified the shorter the lifetime specified.

Syntax `security-password minimum-categories <1-4>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-4> | Number of categories the password must satisfy, in the range 1 to 4. |

Default The default number of categories that the password must satisfy is 1.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To configure the required minimum number of character categories to be 3, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password minimum-categories 3
```

Validation Commands `show running-config security-password`
`show security-password configuration`

Related Commands `security-password history`
`security-password forced-change`
`security-password lifetime`
`security-password minimum-length`
`security-password reject-expired-pwd`
`security-password warning`
`username`

security-password minimum-length

This command specifies the minimum allowable password length. This value is checked against when there is a password change or a user account is created.

Syntax `security-password minimum-length <1-23>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><1-23></code> | Minimum password length in the range from 1 to 23. |

Default The default minimum password length is 1.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To configure the required minimum password length as 8, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password minimum-length 8
```

Validation Commands `show running-config security-password`
`show security-password configuration`

Related Commands `security-password history`
`security-password forced-change`
`security-password lifetime`
`security-password minimum-categories`
`security-password reject-expired-pwd`
`security-password warning`
`username`

security-password reject-expired-pwd

This command specifies whether or not a user is allowed to login with an expired password. Users with expired passwords are rejected at login if this functionality is enabled. Users then have to contact the Network Administrator to change their password.

Caution



Once all users' passwords are expired you are unable to login to the device again if the `security-password reject-expired-pwd` command has been executed. You will have to reboot the device with a default configuration file, or load an earlier software version that does not have the security password feature.

We recommend you never have the command line "`security-password reject-expired-pwd`" in a default config file.

Note that when the `reject-expired-pwd` functionality is disabled and a user logs on with an expired password, if the `forced-change` feature is enabled with `security-password forced-change` command, a user may have to change the password during login depending on the password lifetime specified by the `security-password lifetime` command.

The `no security-password reject-expired-pwd` command disables the `reject-expired-pwd` feature.

Syntax `security-password reject-expired-pwd`
`no security-password reject-expired-pwd`

Default The `reject-expired-pwd` feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To configure the system to reject users with an expired password, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password reject-expired-pwd
```

Validation Commands `show running-config security-password`
`show security-password configuration`

Related Commands `security-password history`
`security-password forced-change`
`security-password lifetime`
`security-password minimum-categories`
`security-password minimum-length`
`security-password warning`
`show security-password user`

security-password warning

This command specifies the number of days before the password expires that the user will receive a warning message specifying the remaining lifetime of the password.

Note that the warning period cannot be set unless the lifetime feature is enabled with the **security-password lifetime** command.

The **no security-password warning** command disables this feature.

Syntax `security-password warning <0-1000>`

`no security-password warning`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><0-1000></code> | Warning period in the range from 0 to 1000 days. A value 0 disables the warning functionality and no warning message is displayed for expiring passwords. This is equivalent to the no security-password warning command. The warning period must be less than, or equal to, the password lifetime set with the security-password lifetime command. |

Default The default warning period is 0, which disables warning functionality.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To configure a warning period of three days, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# security-password warning 3
```

Validation Commands **show running-config security-password**
show security-password configuration

Related Commands **security-password history**
security-password forced-change
security-password lifetime
security-password minimum-categories
security-password minimum-length
security-password reject-expired-pwd

service advanced-vty

This command enables the advanced-vty help feature. This allows you to use TAB completion for commands. Where multiple options are possible, the help feature displays the possible options.

The **no service advanced-vty** command disables the advanced-vty help feature.

Syntax `service advanced-vty`
`no service advanced-vty`

Default The advanced-vty help feature is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To disable the advanced-vty help feature, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service advanced-vty
```

To re-enable the advanced-vty help feature after it has been disabled, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service advanced-vty
```

service http

This command enables the HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) service. The HTTP service is enabled by default and is required to support the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI Java applet on a Java enabled browser. See [Appendix B: GUI Reference](#) for further information about installing and using the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI.

The **no service http** command disables the HTTP feature.

Syntax service http
no service http

Default The HTTP service is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To disable the HTTP service, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service http
```

To re-enable the HTTP service after it has been disabled, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service http
```

service password-encryption

Use this command to enable password encryption. This is enabled by default. When password encryption is enabled, the device displays passwords in the running config in encrypted form instead of in plain text.

Use the **no service password-encryption** command to stop the device from displaying newly-entered passwords in encrypted form. This does not change the display of existing passwords.

Syntax `service password-encryption`
`no service password-encryption`

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service password-encryption
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `enable password`

service telnet

Use this command to enable the telnet server. The server is enabled by default. Enabling the telnet server starts the switch listening for incoming telnet sessions on the configured port.

The server listens on port 23, unless you have changed the port by using the [privilege level command on page 5.16](#).

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the telnet server. Disabling the telnet server will stop the switch listening for new incoming telnet sessions. However, existing telnet sessions will still be active.

Syntax `service telnet [ip|ipv6]`
`no service telnet [ip|ipv6]`

Default The IPv4 and IPv6 telnet servers are enabled by default.
The configured telnet port is TCP port 23 by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable both the IPv4 and IPv6 telnet servers, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service telnet
```

To enable the IPv6 telnet server only, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service telnet ipv6
```

To disable both the IPv4 and IPv6 telnet servers, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service telnet
```

To disable the IPv6 telnet server only, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service telnet ipv6
```

Related Commands [clear line vty](#)
[show telnet](#)
[telnet server](#)

service terminal-length

Use this command to specify the number of rows of output that the device will display before pausing, for all console and VTY lines.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the length specified by this command. The default length will apply unless you have changed the length for some or all lines by using the **length (asyn)** command on page 5.13.

Syntax `service terminal-length <lines>`
`no service terminal-length <lines>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>terminal-length</code> | Establish system-wide terminal length configuration. |
| <code><lines></code> | <0-512> Number of rows that the device will display before pausing. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command overrides any lengths set by using the **length (asyn)** command on page 5.13 in Line mode.

Example To display 60 rows of text before pausing, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service terminal-length 60
```

Related Commands **service terminal-length**
terminal length
terminal resize

show security-password configuration

This command displays the configuration settings for the various security password rules.

Syntax show security-password configuration

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the current security-password rule configuration settings, use the command:

```
awplus# show security-password configuration
```

Output **Figure 5-1: Example output from the show security-password configuration command**

```
Security Password Configuration
Minimum password length ..... 8
Minimum password character categories to match ..... 3
Number of previously used passwords to restrict..... 4
Password lifetime ..... 30 day(s)
  Warning period before password expires ..... 3 day(s)
Reject expired password at login ..... Disabled
  Force changing expired password at login ..... Enabled
```

Related Commands [show running-config security-password](#)
[show security-password user](#)

show security-password user

This command displays user account and password information for all users.

Syntax `show security-password user`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the system users' remaining lifetime or last password change, use the command:

```
awplus# show security-password user
```

Output **Figure 5-2: Example output from the show security-password user command**

| User account and password information | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|
| UserName | Privilege | Last-PWD-Change | Remaining-lifetime |
| ----- | | | |
| manager | 15 | 4625 day(s) ago | No Expiry |
| bob15 | 15 | 0 day(s) ago | 30 days |
| ted7 | 7 | 0 day(s) ago | No Expiry |
| mike1 | 1 | 0 day(s) ago | No Expiry |

Related Commands [show running-config security-password](#)
[show security-password configuration](#)

show privilege

This command displays the current user privilege level, which can be any privilege level in the range <1-15>. Privilege levels <1-6> allow limited user access (all User Exec commands), privilege levels <7-14> allow restricted user access (all User Exec commands plus Privileged Exec show commands). Privilege level 15 gives full user access to all Privileged Exec commands.

Syntax show privilege

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage A user can have an intermediate CLI security level set with this command for privilege levels <7-14> to access all show commands in Privileged Exec mode and all commands in User Exec mode, but no configuration commands in Privileged Exec mode.

Example To show the current privilege level of the user, use the command:

```
awplus# show privilege
```

Output **Figure 5-3: Example output from the show privilege command**

```
awplus#show privilege
Current privilege level is 15
awplus#disable
awplus>show privilege
Current privilege level is 1
```

Related Commands [privilege level](#)

show telnet

This command shows the Telnet server settings.

Syntax `show telnet`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the Telnet server settings, use the command:

```
awplus# show telnet
```

Output **Figure 5-4: Example output from the show telnet command**

```
Telnet Server Configuration
-----
Telnet server           : Enabled
Protocol                : IPv4, IPv6
Port                    : 23
```

Related Commands

- `clear line vty`
- `service telnet`
- `show users`
- `telnet server`

show users

This command shows information about the users who are currently logged into the device.

Syntax `show users`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the users currently connected to the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show users
```

Output **Figure 5-5: Example output from the show users command**

| | | | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|-------------|------|----------|---------|
| Line | User | Host(s) | Idle | Location | Priv | Idletime | Timeout |
| con 0 | manager | idle | 00:00:00 | ttyS0 | 15 | 10 | N/A |
| vtty 0 | bob | idle | 00:00:03 | 172.16.11.3 | 1 | 0 | 5 |

Table 5-1: Parameters in the output of the show users command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Line | Console port user is connected to. |
| User | Login name of user. |
| Host(s) | Status of the host the user is connected to. |
| Idle | How long the host has been idle. |
| Location | URL location of user. |
| Priv | The privilege level in the range 1 to 15, with 15 being the highest. |
| Idletime | The time interval the device waits for user input from either a console or VTY connection. |
| Timeout | The time interval before a server is considered unreachable. |

telnet

Use this command to open a telnet session to a remote device.

Syntax `telnet {<hostname>|[ip] <ipv4-addr>|[ipv6] <ipv6-addr>} [<port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><hostname></code> | The host name of the remote system. |
| <code>ip</code> | Keyword used to specify the IPv4 address or host name of a remote system. |
| <code><ipv4-addr></code> | An IPv4 address of the remote system. |
| <code>ipv6</code> | Keyword used to specify the IPv6 address of a remote system |
| <code><ipv6-addr></code> | Placeholder for an IPv6 address in the format <code>x:x::x:x</code> , for example, <code>2001:db8::8a2e:7334</code> |
| <code><port></code> | Specify a TCP port number (well known ports are in the range 1-1023, registered ports are 1024-49151, and private ports are 49152-65535). |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To connect to TCP port 2602 on the device at 10.2.2.2, use the command:

```
awplus# telnet 10.2.2.2 2602
```

To connect to the telnet server `host.example`, use the command:

```
awplus# telnet host.example
```

To connect to the telnet server `host.example` on TCP port 100, use the command:

```
awplus# telnet host.example 100
```

telnet server

This command enables the telnet server on the specified TCP port. If the server is already enabled then it will be restarted on the new port. Changing the port number does not affect the port used by existing sessions.

Syntax `telnet server {<1-65535>|default}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code><1-65535></code> | The TCP port to listen on. |
| <code>default</code> | Use the default TCP port number 23. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To enable the telnet server on TCP port 2323, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# telnet server 2323
```

Related Commands [show telnet](#)

terminal length

Use the **terminal length** command to specify the number of rows of output that the device will display before pausing, for the currently-active terminal only.

Use the **terminal no length** command to remove the length specified by this command. The default length will apply unless you have changed the length for some or all lines by using the **length (asyn)** command on page 5.13.

Syntax `terminal length <length>`
`terminal no length [<length>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><length></code> | <code><0-512></code> Number of rows that the device will display on the currently-active terminal before pausing. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples The following example sets the number of lines to 15:

```
awplus# terminal length 15
```

The following example removes terminal length set previously:

```
awplus# terminal no length
```

Related Commands **length (asyn)**
service terminal-length
terminal resize

terminal resize

Use this command to automatically adjust the number of rows of output on the console, which the device will display before pausing, to the number of rows configured on the user's terminal.

Syntax terminal resize

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage When the user's terminal size is changed, then a remote session via SSH or TELNET adjusts the terminal size automatically. However, this cannot normally be done automatically for a serial or console port. This command automatically adjusts the terminal size for a serial or console port.

Examples The following example automatically adjusts the number of rows shown on the console:

```
awplus# terminal resize
```

Related Commands [length \(asyn\)](#)
[service terminal-length](#)
[terminal length](#)

username

This command creates or modifies a user to assign a privilege level and a password.

 **Note** The default username privilege level of 1 is not shown in running-config output. Any username privilege level that has been modified from the default is shown.

Syntax `username <name> privilege <0-15> [password [8] <password>]`
`username <name> password [8] <password>`
`no username <name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><name></code> | The login name for the user. Do not use punctuation marks such as single quotes ('), double quotes (""), or colons (:) with the user login name. |
| <code>privilege</code> | The user's privilege level. Use the privilege levels to set the access rights for each user. <code><0-15></code> A privilege level: either 0 (no access), 1-14 (limited access) or 15 (full access). A user with privilege level 1-14 can only access higher privilege levels if an enable password has been configured for the level the user tries to access and the user enters that password. A user at privilege level 1 can access the majority of show commands. A user at privilege level 7 can access the majority of show commands including platform show commands. Privilege Level 15 (to access the Privileged Exec command mode) is required to access configuration commands as well as show commands in Privileged Exec. |
| <code>password</code> | A password that the user must enter when logging in. <code>8</code> Specifies that you are entering a password as a string that has already been encrypted, instead of entering a plain-text password. The running-config displays the new password as an encrypted string even if password encryption is turned off. Note that the user enters the plain-text version of the password when logging in. <code><password></code> The user's password. The password can be up to 23 characters in length and include characters from up to four categories. The password categories are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ uppercase letters: A to Z ■ lowercase letters: a to z ■ digits: 0 to 9 ■ special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. The question mark ? cannot be used as it is reserved for help functionality. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default The privilege level is 1 by default. Note the default is not shown in running-config output.

Usage An intermediate CLI security level (privilege level 7 to privilege level 14) allows a CLI user access to the majority of show commands, including the platform show commands that are available at privilege level 1 to privilege level 6). Note that some show commands, such as show running-configuration and show startup-configuration, are only available at privilege level 15.

A privilege level of 0 can be set for port authentication purposes from a RADIUS server.

Examples To create the user `bob` with a privilege level of 15, for all show commands including show running-configuration and show startup-configuration and to access configuration commands in Privileged Exec command mode, and the password `bobs_secret`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# username bob privilege 15 password
bobs_secret
```

To create a user `junior_admin` with a privilege level of 7, for intermediate CLI security level access for most show commands, and the password `show_only`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# username junior_admin privilege 7
password show_only
```

Related Commands [enable password](#)
[security-password minimum-categories](#)
[security-password minimum-length](#)

Chapter 6: Creating and Managing Files



| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction | 6.2 |
| SD Support | 6.2 |
| Working with Files | 6.2 |
| Listing Files | 6.2 |
| Displaying the Contents of Configuration and Text Files | 6.4 |
| Navigating Through the File System | 6.4 |
| Using the Editor | 6.6 |
| Creating and Using Configuration Files | 6.8 |
| Creating a Configuration File | 6.8 |
| Specifying the Start-Up Configuration Script | 6.8 |
| Working with Configuration Files | 6.9 |
| The Configuration File Fallback Order | 6.10 |
| Copying Files to and from Your Device | 6.12 |
| URL Syntax | 6.12 |
| Copying Files | 6.13 |
| Copying from a Server to Running Configuration | 6.16 |
| The Autoboot Feature | 6.17 |
| Restoring a Switch Using Autoboot from External Media | 6.18 |
| Configure Autoboot | 6.20 |

Introduction

This chapter provides information on:

- [SD Support](#)
- [Working with Files](#)
- [Creating and Using Configuration Files](#)
- [Copying Files to and from Your Device](#)

SD Support

Your switch supports both SD and SDHC cards.

Working with Files

The AlliedWare Plus™ OS lets you create directory trees for file storage. This section shows:

- [“Listing Files” on page 6.2](#)—listing files and seeing how much free space you have
- [“Displaying the Contents of Configuration and Text Files” on page 6.4](#)
- [“Navigating Through the File System” on page 6.4](#)—identifying the current directory, changing directories, and creating and deleting directories
- [“Using the Editor” on page 6.6](#)

Flash compaction

The Flash memory on the switch automatically compacts itself to recover space available from deleted files. The switch only does this when necessary, and not every file deletion causes Flash compaction. Flash compaction can occur after a file of any size is added to or deleted from the switch.

Caution While Flash is compacting, the console is unresponsive. Do not restart the switch, as interrupting Flash compaction can damage files.



Listing Files

To list files, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# dir
```

The output lists files and directories in order of modification date, descending. It looks like this:

```
-rw-      534 Jul 12 2011 17:52:50  stp.cfg
-rw-      534 Jul 12 2011 17:12:50  example.cfg
-rw- 12429011 Jul 12 2011 16:26:06  x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

Listing files including hidden system files

The `dir` command does not list all files—it hides system files and directories because users generally do not need to create or edit them. To list all files including system files, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# dir all
```

The output looks like this:

```
drwx      0 Jul 12 2011 17:16:32 ./
-rw-     401 Jul 12 2011 17:16:32 example.cfg
-rw-     534 Jul 12 2011 17:52:50 stp.cfg
-rw- 12429011 Jul 12 2011 16:26:06 x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
drwx     216 Jul  9 2011 11:31:18 ../
drwx      0 Jun 13 2011 04:31:51 .configs/
-rw-     17 Jun 13 2011 04:27:27 .release
drwx      0 Jul 10 2011 23:40:00 .ssh/
```

The hidden files and directories begin with a dot.

Seeing information about the filesystem

To display information about the different memory types on the switch, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show file systems
```

The output includes the amount of free memory and the prefix you type to access that memory type, and looks like this:

| Size (b) | Free (b) | Type | Flags | Prefixes | S/D/V | Lcl/Ntwk | Avail |
|----------|----------|--------|-------|----------|---------|----------|-------|
| 31.0M | 6.0M | flash | rw | flash: | static | local | Y |
| - | - | system | rw | system: | virtual | local | - |
| 499.0k | 444.0k | nvs | rw | nvs: | static | local | Y |
| - | - | sdcard | rw | card: | dynamic | local | N |
| - | - | tftp | rw | tftp: | - | network | - |
| - | - | scp | rw | scp: | - | network | - |
| - | - | sftp | ro | sftp: | - | network | - |
| - | - | http | ro | http: | - | network | - |

Listing files in a subdirectory

To list the contents of a directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# dir <directory-name>
```

Tip You can specify the directory with or without a `/` after the directory name.

Example To display the contents of a directory called “example”, enter the command:

```
awplus# dir example
```

Listing files in NVS memory or on an SD (or SDHC) card

To list the contents of a directory in NVS, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# dir nvs:<directory-name>
```

To list the contents of a directory on an SD card, enter the command:

```
awplus# dir card:<directory-name>
```

Example To display the contents of a directory in NVS called “example”, enter the command:

```
awplus# dir nvs:example
```

Displaying the Contents of Configuration and Text Files

To display the contents of a file, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# show file <filename>
```

Example To display the contents of the file called “example.cfg”, enter the command:

```
awplus# show file example.cfg
```

Navigating Through the File System

Showing the current directory

To see which directory you are currently in, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# pwd
```

For the top-level directory, the output looks like this:

```
flash:/
```

Changing directories

To change to another directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# cd <directory-name>
```

To go to a directory one level higher in the directory tree, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd ..
```

Example To change to a directory called “example”, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd example
```

To go up one level, which returns you to the top level directory, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd ..
```

Changing to a directory in NVS memory or on an SD card

To change to the top-level directory in the NVS memory filesystem, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# cd nvs:
```

To change to the top-level directory on an SD card, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd card:/
```

Note that the prefix for the SD card is “card” not “sdcard”.

Next, you can change to other directories by entering the command:

```
awplus# cd <directory-name>
```

Alternatively, you can go straight from Flash to a subdirectory in the alternative filesystem, by entering one of the commands:

```
awplus# cd nvs:<directory-name>
```

```
awplus# cd card:<directory-name>
```

```
awplus# cd usb:<directory-name>
```

To return to the Flash filesystem, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd flash:/
```

Example To change to the directory within NVS called “example”, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd nvs:example
```

To go up one level, which returns you to the top-level directory of NVS memory, enter the command:

```
awplus# cd ..
```

Creating new directories

To create a directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# mkdir <directory-name>
```

Example To make a directory called “example” within the Flash filesystem, enter the command:

```
awplus# mkdir example
```

Deleting directories

To delete an empty directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# rmdir <directory-name>
```

To delete a directory and all its contents, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# delete recursive <directory-name>
```

The switch prompts you for confirmation.

Example To delete an empty directory called “example” from within the Flash filesystem, enter the command:

```
awplus# rmdir example
```

Using the Editor

The inbuilt editor is JOE (Joe’s Own Editor).

To edit an existing file, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# edit <filename>
```

To open the editor with an empty file, enter the command:

```
awplus# edit
```

When you save the new file, you may need to specify the filesystem to store it on. For Flash, use **flash:/<filename>**.

Using JOE To format and manipulate text in JOE, you use control-character sequences. The following table summarizes a few useful sequences—for details, see:

joe-editor.sourceforge.net/manpage.html.

| Function | Control-character sequence |
|--|----------------------------|
| Access the help | Ctrl-K-H |
| Save the file without exiting (for new files, this prompts for a filename) | Ctrl-K-D |

| Function | Control-character sequence |
|--|---|
| Save the file and exit (this prompts for a filename) | Ctrl-K-X |
| Exit without saving the file | Ctrl-C |
| Go to the beginning of the file | Ctrl-K-U |
| Go to the end of the file | Ctrl-K-V |
| Go up one full screen of text in the file | Ctrl-U |
| Go down one full screen of text in the file | Ctrl-V |
| Select a block of text: | |
| Mark the beginning of the block | Ctrl-K-B |
| Mark the end of the block | Ctrl-K-K |
| Copy and paste a selected block of text | Place cursor at destination then enter Ctrl-K-C |
| Move a selected block of text | Place cursor at destination then enter Ctrl-K-M |
| Delete a selected block of text | Ctrl-K-Y |

Creating and Using Configuration Files

This section provides instructions on:

- [Creating a Configuration File](#)
- [Specifying the Start-Up Configuration Script](#)
- [Working with Configuration Files](#)

Creating a Configuration File

A **configuration file** is a text file that contains a sequence of standard commands for a specific purpose. Configuration files have a **.cfg** extension.

You can create and edit configuration files on your device by:

- saving the dynamic configuration on the device, known as the **running-config** (see [“Working with Configuration Files”](#)). Use the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config (destination-URL)
```

where URL specifies a file in Flash. If you do not specify a file name, the switch names the file **default.cfg**.

- using the device's text editor. Use the command:

```
awplus# edit (source-URL)
```

where **source-URL** is the name of the copied file in Flash memory.

- creating a file on a remote PC, then copying it to onto your device. See [“Copying Files”](#) for more information about using the **copy** commands.

Once you have created a configuration file, you can use it as the **startup-config** file. See [“Specifying the Start-Up Configuration Script”](#) for more information.

Specifying the Start-Up Configuration Script

When you restart your device, or when it automatically restarts, it executes the pre-configured commands in a configuration script known as the **boot config** or **startup-config** file.

When you first start your device, the script set as the startup-config file is **default.cfg**. If desired, you can overwrite **default.cfg** with another configuration. Alternatively, you can change the startup-config by specifying a new file as the startup-config. Use the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file backup URL
```

where **URL** specifies the name and location of a configuration file. At the next restart, the device executes the commands in the specified file.

You can specify that the configuration file is either in the Flash or the SD card filesystem. However, if you specify that the configuration file is on an SD card then you must first create a backup configuration file stored in Flash.

To specify a backup configuration file, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# boot config-file backup backup URL
```

where **URL** specifies the name and location of a configuration file.

You can change the content of the file set as the startup-config file by:

- entering commands directly into the CLI, then saving this configuration using the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config startup-config
```

This command saves the device's dynamic configuration into the file that is currently configured as the startup-config file.

- writing commands into a configuration file (see **"Creating a Configuration File"** below), then using the command:

```
awplus# copy SOURCE-URL startup-config
```

This command saves the script from the source file into the file that is currently configured as the startup-config file.

To display the name of the configuration file that is set to execute when the device restarts, enter the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

To see the commands in the startup-config file, use the command:

```
awplus# show startup-config
```

To erase the file set as the startup-config file, use the command:

```
awplus# erase startup-config
```

At the next restart that occurs after you've erased the file, the device loads the configuration in the file **default.cfg**. This file is set on the system as a backup configuration file that loads if no other file is set as the startup-config file.

Working with Configuration Files

When you use the CLI or GUI to configure your device, it stores this dynamic configuration as a list of commands called the **running-config**. To view the device's running-config, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config
```

If you turn off the device or restart it, any unsaved changes to the running-config are lost. To save the running-config as a configuration script, use the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config destination-url
```

You may have many configuration files. Storing them on a device allows you to keep a backup device with configuration scripts for every device in the network to speed up network recovery time. Multiple scripts also let you test new configuration scripts before setting them as the startup-config. For example, to test a new script named test.cfg, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy flash:/test.cfg running-config
```

This allows you to run a configuration file any time without restarting the device, by replacing the system's current dynamic configuration with the script in the configuration file. However, note that some commands require you to restart the device before they can take effect, such as the **platform** commands.

You can also set a trigger to automatically execute a configuration script when a predetermined event occurs. For information about creating triggers, see [Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction](#).

The Configuration File Fallback Order

The configuration fallback order is: configuration file, backup configuration file, default configuration file and then the factory default configuration. It is important to note there is a distinction in system behavior between when writing to the startup-config file and when the system boots up.

When you copy a configuration script from a source file into the startup-config file the system will write to the first file that is configured. Potentially, this means that if a configuration file and a backup configuration file are not set you will write to the default.cfg.

At system startup the device goes through the fallback sequence until it finds a file that exists. For example, if the configuration file is not found then the backup configuration file becomes the current boot configuration, or startup-config, and so on. In the output displayed by the **show boot** command, the **Current boot config** parameter shows the startup-config file that the switch will load during the next boot cycle. The fallback sequence when configuration files are deleted is shown below in output from the **show boot** command.

In the example output below, the current boot configuration file, **my.cfg**, is set on the SD card. This is the startup-config file that the device loads at the next boot cycle.

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: card:/my.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config: flash:/backup.cfg (file exists)
```

In the example output below, the **no boot-config** command has been used to delete the configuration file **my.cfg** on the SD card. The backup configuration file **backup.cfg** in Flash then becomes the current boot config.

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: flash:/backup.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config: flash:/backup.cfg (file exists)
```

In the example output below, the **no boot-config backup** command has been used to delete the backup configuration file **backup.cfg**. The default configuration file **default.cfg** then becomes the current boot config.

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: flash:/default.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config: Not set
```

If the current boot configuration file is set on an SD card and then this card has been removed from the switch, the **Current boot config** parameter field indicates that this file cannot be found, as shown in the following example output.

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: card:/my.cfg (file not found)
Backup boot config: flash:/backup.cfg (file exists)
```

At system startup the switch will load the backup configuration file as the startup-config.

Copying Files to and from Your Device

This section provides instructions on:

- [URL Syntax](#)
- [Copying Files](#)

URL Syntax

Many of the file management commands use the placeholder "URL" to represent the name and location of the file that you want to act on. The following table explains the syntax of this URL for each different type of file location.

| When you copy a file... | Use this syntax: |
|---|---|
| In local Flash memory | <code>flash: [/] [<directory> /] <filename></code> |
| To or from an SD (or SDHC) card | <code>card: [/] [<directory> /] <filename></code> |
| Copying with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) | <code>http:// [[<username> : <password>] @] { <hostname> <host-ip> } [/ <filepath>] / <filename></code> |
| Copying with Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) | <code>tftp:// [[<location>] / <directory>] / <filename></code> |
| Copying with Secure Copy (SCP) | <code>scp:// <username> @ <location> [/ <directory>] [/ <filename>]</code> |
| Copying with SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) | <code>sftp:// [[<location>] / <directory>] / <filename></code> |

The URL can include characters from up to four categories. The URL categories are:

1. uppercase letters: A to Z
2. lowercase letters: a to z
3. digits: 0 to 9
4. special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. Including the following characters:

« -
 « /
 « .
 « _
 « @
 « "
 « '
 « *
 « :
 « ~
 « ?

Do not use spaces or parentheses within filenames. Use hyphens or underlines instead.

Copying Files

To copy files, use the **copy** commands. These commands allow you to copy files:

- between different memory types attached to your device. Use the command:

```
awplus# copy <local-source> <local-destination> <filename>
```

See **“Copying within a filesystem”** and **“”** for further details.

- across a serial connection using ZMODEM. Use the command:

```
awplus# copy zmodem
```

See **“Copying with ZMODEM”** for further details.

- from your device onto a remote device, or to your device from a remote device. To copy a file across an interface with IP configured, use the command:

```
awplus# copy SOURCE-URL DESTINATION-URL
```

To copy files across these interfaces you can use the following protocols:

- « **“Copying with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)”**
- « **“Copying with Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)”**
- « **“Copying with Secure Copy (SCP)”**
- « **“Copying with SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP)”**

Copying within a filesystem

Within a directory

To copy a file within the same directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy <source-filename> <destination-filename>
```

If the file already exists, the switch asks whether to overwrite it, with a message like this:

```
Overwrite flash:/example.cfg? (y/n) [n]:
```

To overwrite, press the “y” key then the Enter key.

Between directories

To copy a file to another directory within the same filesystem, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy <source-filename> <directory-name>
```

The / after the directory name is required. Otherwise the switch displays an error (“37: Destination file is a directory”).

The switch then prompts you for the destination filename. To give the copy a new name, type the name at the prompt. You can include directory names in the path.

To use the same filename as the original, press the Enter key (do not press the “y” key—that names the copy “y”).

Example To put a copy of `example.cfg` into the `example` directory, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy example.cfg example/
```

The prompt and messages look like this:

```
Enter destination file name [example.cfg]:  
Copying from source file, please wait...  
Copying to destination file, please wait...  
0: Successful operation
```

Copying to and from NVS or SD (or SDHC) card

To copy between filesystems, you need to specify the filesystem prefix (`nvs:` or `card:`).

For example, to copy from Flash to SD card when your current directory is the top-level Flash directory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy <source-filename> sd:
```

The switch prompts you for the filename, as described in the previous section.

To copy from NVS to Flash when your current directory is the top-level Flash directory, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy nvs:<source-filename> <destination-filename>
```

Example To copy the file “`example.txt`” from the directory called “`example`” in NVS, to the top level of Flash, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy nvs:example/example.txt example.txt
```

Copying with ZMODEM

ZMODEM allows you to copy files from a network host over an asynchronous port. Use the command:

```
awplus# copy zmodem
```

to open Minicom and transfer a file. Alternatively you can specify the file name within the command:

```
awplus# copy SOURCE-URL zmodem
```

For example, to copy the file "july.cfg" from Flash memory using ZMODEM, use the command:

```
awplus# copy flash:/july.cfg zmodem
```

Copying with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)

Your device has a built-in HTTP client. The HTTP client enables the device to act as a browser by sending HTTP "get" or "post" requests to an HTTP server. The client is enabled by default.

For example, to load the file "bob.key" onto Flash from the security directory on the web server at www.company.com, use the command:

```
awplus# copy http://www.company.com/security/bob.key  
flash:/bob.key
```

Copying with Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)

TFTP runs over User Datagram Protocol (UDP). It is simpler and faster than FTP but has minimal capability, such as no provisions for user authentication.

To copy a file from a TFTP server to Flash memory, enter Privileged Exec mode and enter the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp flash
```

 **Note** You can specify the server and filename in the command instead of waiting for prompts. Use a format like the following:

```
copy tftp://172.1.1.1/example.cfg flash
```

The switch prompts you for the:

- TFTP server hostname (you can enter its IP address instead)
- source filename on the TFTP server
- destination filename in Flash on the switch

To copy a file from Flash to a TFTP server, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy flash tftp
```

Follow the prompts for source filename, server, and destination filename.

If the file is not in the top level of the TFTP server, include the path as part of the filename.

Example To copy `example.cfg` to the TFTP server at `172.1.1.1`, enter the command:

```
awplus# copy flash tftp
```

The prompts, responses, and messages look like this:

```
Enter source file name []:example.cfg
Enter destination host name []:172.1.1.1
Enter destination file name [example.cfg]:
Copying from source file, please wait...
Copying to destination file, please wait...
0: Successful operation
```

To load the file “`bob.key`” from a TFTP server, where the file is in the folder “`security`”, use the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp://security/bob.key flash:/bob.key
```

Copying with Secure Copy (SCP)

Secure Copy (SCP) provides a secure way to copy files to and from a remote device using SSH. The AlliedWare Plus™ OS includes both a SSH server and a SSH client. You must enable the SSH server before your device accepts connections from SCP clients. See the [Chapter 50, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Introduction](#) for more information.

For example, to load the file “`beth.key`” onto Flash from the `key` directory on a remote SSH server at `10.10.0.12`, using the username “`bob`”, use the command:

```
awplus# copy scp://bob@10.10.0.12/key/beth.key
flash:/beth.key
```

Copying with SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP)

SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) provides a secure way to copy files onto your device from a remote device. The AlliedWare Plus™ OS includes both a SSH server and a SSH client. SFTP provides additional features from SCP, such as allowing you to manipulate the remote files, and halt or resume file transfers without closing the session.

For example, to load the file “`rei.cfg`” onto Flash memory from the remote server at `10.0.0.5`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy sftp://10.0.0.5/rei.cfg flash:/rei.cfg
```

Copying from a Server to Running Configuration

Use the `copy tftp` variant of the `copy running-config` command on [page 7.14](#) to load a configuration file from a server to the running configuration of the switch.

The configuration will be added to the running configuration as if the commands were typed in the command line interface.

The resulting configuration file will be a combination of the previous running configuration and the loaded configuration file. The loaded configuration file has precedence.

The Autoboot Feature

The Autoboot feature enables your switch to automatically load a specific release file and/or configuration file from external media, such as SD card, into Flash memory, providing there is enough free space available.

If there is not enough free space, the Autoboot feature will exit and booting will revert to what was previously set by the CLI. This feature is enabled only the first time the device is powered up in the field. Subsequently, the Autoboot feature is disabled by default.

The Autoboot feature minimizes network downtime by avoiding the need for manual configuration of a replacement device.

If you use prepared external media for the first time boot, the Autoboot feature gives you the ability to easily ensure the device boots with your desired release and configuration files. You must prepare the external media for this purpose using an initiation file, `autoboot.txt`, and accompanying release and configuration files.

Use the **create autoboot** command to create an `autoboot.txt` file on external media. This command will automatically ensure that the keys and values that are expected in this file are correct. After the file is created the command will copy the current release and configuration files across to the external media. The `autoboot.txt` file is read/writable by any desktop operating system currently supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. Note that the external media file system is not case sensitive.

When the Autoboot feature is enabled, the device on boot-up:

- checks for a special file called `autoboot.txt` on external media, and if this file exists,
- checks in the file for the “key=value” pair “`Copy_from_external_media_enabled=yes`”, and if this enable flag is set,
- loads the release file and/or configuration file from external media.

An example of a valid `autoboot.txt` file is shown in **Figure 6-1** below.

Figure 6-1: Example autoboot.txt file

```
; J Smith, x610-24Ts/XP, 16 July 2012
[AlliedWare Plus]
Copy_from_external_media_enabled=yes
Boot_Release=x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Boot_Config=network1.cfg
```

If external media is not present, cannot be read, or the internal enable flag is not set to **yes** in the switch, the switch will boot as normal. Incompatible release files are prevented from loading onto the switch, even if the enable flag is set on the switch. If there is an incompatible release file then the configuration file referenced in the `autoboot.txt` file is also not loaded onto the switch.

We recommend that no directories are present on external media used to hold the `autoboot.txt` file. In addition, large numbers of files on external media may slow the booting process.

Note Do not remove external media part way through the copy process as this may leave the device in an unstable state.



Configuration files placed on external media reduce security. Therefore, ensure adequate security precautions are taken with external media holding configuration files.

Configuration commands that rely on the presence of a feature license will fail when executed in the replacement switch if the replacement switch does not have the same feature license present.

The bootloader version on the device must be 1.1.6 or greater to support external media. An `autoboot.txt` file on an SD card will not be detected on a device with a bootloader version less than 1.1.6.

Restoring a Switch Using Autoboot from External Media

The example below describes the sequence of events when a switch in the field fails and is restored using this feature:

1. Using the **create autoboot** command, a network engineer has previously manually created a restore external media device, such as an SD card. The external media device contains the following components:
 - « An `autoboot.txt` file with required contents
 - « An appropriate release file
 - « A configuration file
2. A switch fails in the field.
3. A replacement switch of same model is installed.
4. The previously created external media device is placed into the replacement switch.
5. The switch powers up using its pre-installed release if present. It automatically checks the external media device for the `autoboot.txt` file.
6. The switch finds a valid `autoboot.txt` file on the external media device, with the value "Copy_from_external_media_enabled" set. The release file and configuration file both exist on the external media device.
7. The MD5sum of pre-installed Flash release file is compared to the MD5sum of the release file stored in the external media device. If they do not match, because the release file in the replacement switch is either missing or different, then the release is restored from the external media device. If the release files already match, then the release file is not copied from the external media device.
8. The MD5sum of the Flash configuration file `default.cfg` (if pre-installed in the replacement switch) is compared to the MD5sum of the configuration file stored in the external media device. If they do not match, because the configuration file in the

replacement switch is either missing or different, then the configuration file is restored from the external media device. If the configuration files already match, then the configuration file is not copied from the external media device.

9. The memory space available in the switch Flash is checked to ensure the release and configuration files stored in the external media device will fit. If there is not enough space the Autoboot feature will exit.
10. The release file and configuration files are automatically copied from the external media device to switch Flash memory. The switch release and configuration files are updated to contain the appropriate names.
11. The switch is automatically rebooted.
12. The replacement switch is now running the restored release and configuration files. Subsequent reboots are based on the restored release and configuration files stored in the switch Flash memory.
13. If you want to Autoboot from external media on this specific switch in the future, you must now manually enable the Autoboot feature in the configuration menu via the **autoboot enable** command. This command resets the enable flag stored internally in the switch NVS memory.

Configure Autoboot

This section describes the commands used to configure the Autoboot feature.

Table 6-1: Configuration procedures for the Autoboot feature

| | |
|--|---|
| Create an Autoboot file (autoboot.txt) | |
| <pre>awplus# create autoboot [card]</pre> | Create an autoboot.txt file on external media. |
| Enable the Autoboot feature | |
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# autoboot enable</pre> | The Autoboot feature is enabled by default the first time the device is powered up in the field. Use this command to enable the feature subsequently. |
| Disable the Autoboot feature | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# no autoboot enable</pre> | Use this command to disable the Autoboot feature. |
| Display Autoboot configuration and status | |
| <pre>awplus# show autoboot</pre> | Display detailed information about the current Autoboot configuration and status. |
| <pre>awplus# show boot</pre> | Display the status of the Autoboot feature; either enabled or disabled. |

Chapter 7: File Management Commands

| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction | 7.2 |
| URL Syntax and Keyword Usage..... | 7.2 |
| Command List | 7.4 |
| autoboot enable..... | 7.4 |
| boot config-file | 7.5 |
| boot config-file backup..... | 7.7 |
| boot system..... | 7.8 |
| boot system backup..... | 7.10 |
| cd..... | 7.11 |
| copy current-software | 7.11 |
| copy debug | 7.12 |
| copy running-config | 7.13 |
| copy startup-config..... | 7.14 |
| copy (URL)..... | 7.15 |
| copy zmodem..... | 7.17 |
| create autoboot..... | 7.18 |
| delete..... | 7.19 |
| delete debug | 7.20 |
| dir | 7.21 |
| edit..... | 7.23 |
| edit (URL)..... | 7.24 |
| erase startup-config | 7.25 |
| mkdir..... | 7.26 |
| move | 7.27 |
| move debug..... | 7.28 |
| pwd | 7.29 |
| rmdir | 7.30 |
| show autoboot..... | 7.31 |
| show boot..... | 7.32 |
| show file..... | 7.34 |
| show file systems | 7.35 |
| show running-config | 7.36 |
| show running-config access-list | 7.38 |
| show running-config as-path access-list | 7.39 |
| show running-config dhcp | 7.40 |
| show running-config full | 7.41 |
| show running-config interface..... | 7.42 |
| show running-config ipv6 access-list | 7.44 |
| show running-config key chain | 7.45 |
| show running-config lldp..... | 7.46 |
| show running-config power-inline..... | 7.47 |
| show running-config router-id | 7.48 |
| show running-config security-password..... | 7.49 |
| show startup-config..... | 7.50 |
| show version | 7.51 |
| write file | 7.52 |
| write memory | 7.52 |
| write terminal | 7.52 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of AlliedWare Plus™ OS file management commands.

URL Syntax and Keyword Usage

Many of the commands in this chapter use the placeholder “URL” to represent the name and location of the file that you want to act on. The following table explains the syntax of this URL for each different type of file location.

| When you copy a file... | Use this syntax: |
|---|---|
| In local Flash memory | <code>flash: [/] [<directory> /] <filename></code> |
| To or from an SD (or SDHC) card | <code>card: [/] [<directory> /] <filename></code> |
| Copying with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) | <code>http:// [[<username> : <password>] @] { <hostname> <host-ip> } [/ <filepath>] / <filename></code> |
| Copying with Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) | <code>tftp:// [[<location>] / <directory>] / <filename></code> |
| Copying with Secure Copy (SCP) | <code>scp:// <username> @ <location> [/ <directory>] [/ <filename>]</code> |
| Copying with SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) | <code>sftp:// [[<location>] / <directory>] / <filename></code> |

The URL can include characters from up to four categories. The URL categories are:

1. uppercase letters: A to Z
2. lowercase letters: a to z
3. digits: 0 to 9
4. special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. Including the following characters:

« -
 « /
 « .
 « _
 « @
 « "
 « '
 « *
 « :
 « ~
 « ?

Do not use spaces or parentheses within filenames. Use hyphens or underlines instead.

Note  When the Flash base directory is required for local filesystems you may use **flash** or **flash:** or **flash:/**. and similarly, when the SD (or SDHC) card base directory is required you may use **card** or **card:** or **card:/**.

The keywords **flash**, **nvs**, **card**, **tftp**, **scp**, **sftp** and **http** are reserved for tab completion when using the **copy**, **move**, **delete**, **cd**, and **dir** commands.

The keywords **flash**, **nvs**, **card**, **tftp**, **scp**, **sftp** and **http** cannot be applied as directory or subdirectory names when using a **mkdir** command.

A leading slash (/) indicates the root of the current filesystem location.

Command List

autoboot enable

This command enables the device to restore a release file and/or a configuration file from external media, such as an SD card.

When the Autoboot feature is enabled, the device looks for a special file called `autoboot.txt` on the external media. If this file exists, the device will check the key and values in the file and recover the device with a new release file and/or configuration file from the external media. An example of a valid `autoboot.txt` file is shown in [Figure 7-1](#) below.

Figure 7-1: Example autoboot.txt file

```
[AlliedWare Plus]
Copy_from_external_media_enabled=yes
Boot_Release=x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Boot_Config=network1.cfg
```

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the Autoboot feature.

Syntax `autoboot enable`
`no autoboot enable`

Default The Autoboot feature operates the first time the device is powered up in the field, after which the feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To enable the Autoboot feature, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# autoboot enable
```

To disable the Autoboot feature, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no autoboot enable
```

Related Commands [create autoboot](#)
[show autoboot](#)
[show boot](#)

boot config-file

Use this command to set the configuration file to use during the next boot cycle.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configuration file.

 **Note** To ensure correct operation of the chassis and in particular of any cards inserted after issuing this command, the chassis should be rebooted.

Syntax `boot config-file <filepath-filename>`
`no boot config-file`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><filepath-filename></code> | Filepath and name of a configuration file. The specified configuration file must exist in the Flash, SD card, or SDHC card filesystem. Valid configuration files must have a .cfg extension. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You can only specify that the configuration file is on an SD card if there is a backup configuration file already specified in Flash. If you attempt to set the configuration file on an SD card and a backup configuration file is not specified in Flash, the following error message is displayed:

```
% Backup configuration files must be stored in the flash
filesystem
```

For an explanation of the configuration fallback order, see [“The Configuration File Fallback Order” on page 6.10](#).

Examples To run the configuration file `branch.cfg` stored on the switch’s Flash filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot config-file flash:/branch.cfg
```

To remove the configuration file `branch.cfg` stored on the switch’s Flash filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot config-file flash:/branch.cfg
```

To run the configuration file `branch.cfg` stored on the switch's SD card filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot config-file card:/branch.cfg
```

To remove the configuration file `branch.cfg` stored on the switch's SD card filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot config-file card:/branch.cfg
```

Related Commands

- [boot config-file backup](#)
- [boot system](#)
- [boot system backup](#)
- [show boot](#)

boot config-file backup

Use this command to set a backup configuration file to use if the main configuration file cannot be accessed.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the backup configuration file.

Syntax `boot config-file backup <filepath-filename>`
`no boot config-file backup`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><filepath-filename></code> | Filepath and name of a backup configuration file. Backup configuration files must be in the Flash filesystem. Valid backup configuration files must have a .cfg extension. |
| <code>backup</code> | The specified file is a backup configuration file. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage For an explanation of the configuration fallback order, see [“The Configuration File Fallback Order” on page 6.10.](#)

Examples To set the configuration file `backup.cfg` as the backup to the main configuration file, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot config-file backup flash:/backup.cfg
```

To remove the configuration file `backup.cfg` as the backup to the main configuration file, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot config-file backup flash:/backup.cfg
```

Related Commands [boot config-file](#)
[boot system](#)
[boot system backup](#)
[show boot](#)

boot system

Use this command to set the release file to load during the next boot cycle.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the release file as the boot file.

Syntax `boot system <filepath-filename>`

`no boot system`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><filepath-filename></code> | Filepath and name of a release file. The specified release file must exist and must be stored in the root directory of the Flash, SD card, or SDHC card filesystem. Valid release files must have a .rel extension. |

Mode Global Configuration

You can only specify that the release file is on an SD card if there is a backup release file already specified in Flash. If you attempt to set the release file on an SD card and a backup release file is not specified in Flash, the following error message is displayed:

```
% A backup boot image must be set before setting a current boot image on card
```

Examples To run the release file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` stored on the switch's Flash filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot system flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

To remove the release file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` stored on the switch's Flash filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot system flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

To run the release file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` stored on the switch's SD card filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot system card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

To remove the release file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` stored on the switch's SD card filesystem the next time the device boots up, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot system card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

Related Commands

- boot config-file**
- boot config-file backup**
- boot system backup**
- show boot**

boot system backup

Use this command to set a backup release file to load if the main release file cannot be loaded.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the backup release file as the backup boot file.

Syntax `boot system backup <filepath-filename>`
`no boot system backup`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><filepath-filename></code> | Filepath and name of a backup release file. Backup release files must be in the Flash filesystem. Valid release files must have a <code>.rel</code> extension. |
| <code>backup</code> | The specified file is a backup release file. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To specify the file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` as the backup to the main release file, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# boot system backup flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

To remove the file `x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel` as the backup to the main release file, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no boot system backup flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
```

Related Commands [boot config-file](#)
[boot config-file backup](#)
[boot system](#)
[show boot](#)

cd

This command changes the current working directory.

Syntax `cd <directory-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code><directory-url></code> | URL of the directory. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To change to the directory called `images`, use the command:

```
awplus# cd images
```

Related Commands [dir](#)
[pwd](#)
[show file systems](#)

copy current-software

This command copies the AlliedWare Plus™ OS software that the device has booted from, to a destination file. Specify whether the destination is Flash or card when saving the software to the local filesystem.

Syntax `copy current-software <destination-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL where you would like the current running-release saved. This command creates a file if no file exists with the specified filename. If a file already exists, then the CLI prompts you before overwriting the file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To copy the current software as installed in the working directory with the file name `my-release.rel`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy current-software my-release.rel
```

Related Commands [boot system backup](#)
[show boot](#)

copy debug

This command copies a specified debug file to a destination file. Specify whether the destination is Flash or Card when saving the software to the local filesystem.

Syntax `copy debug {<destination-url>|card|debug|flash|nvs|scp|tftp} {<source-url>|card|debug|flash|nvs|scp|tftp}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL where you would like the debug output saved. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL where the debug output originates. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To copy debug output to an SD (or SDHC) card with a filename `my-debug`, use the following command:

```
awplus# copy debug card:mydebug
```

Output **Figure 7-2: CLI prompt after entering the copy debug command**

```
Enter source file name []:
```

Related Commands [delete debug](#)
[move debug](#)

copy running-config

This command copies the running-config to a destination file, or copies a source file into the running-config. Commands entered in the running-config do not survive a device reboot unless they are saved in a configuration file.

Syntax `copy <source-url> running-config`
`copy running-config [<destination-url>]`
`copy running-config startup-config`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL of a configuration file. This must be a valid configuration file with a .cfg filename extension. Specify this when you want the script in the file to become the new running-config. The URL can contain the following protocols or location words. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL where you would like the current running-config saved. This command creates a file if no file exists with the specified filename. If a file already exists, then the CLI prompts you before overwriting the file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. If you do not specify a file name, the switch saves the running-config to a file called default.cfg. |
| <code>startup-config</code> | Copies the running-config into the file set as the current startup-config file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To copy the running-config into the startup-config, use the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config startup-config
```

To copy the file `layer3.cfg` into the running-config, use the command:

```
awplus# copy layer3.cfg running-config
```

To use SCP to copy the running-config as `current.cfg` to the remote server listening on TCP port 2000, use the command:

```
awplus# copy running-config scp://user@server:2000/
config_files/current.cfg
```

Related Commands [copy startup-config](#)
[write file](#)
[write memory](#)

copy startup-config

This command copies the startup-config script into a destination file, or alternatively copies a configuration script from a source file into the startup-config file. Specify whether the destination is Flash or card when loading from the local filesystem.

Syntax `copy <source-url> startup-config`
`copy startup-config <destination-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL of a configuration file. This must be a valid configuration file with a .cfg filename extension. Specify this to copy the script in the file into the <i>startup-config</i> file. Note that this does not make the copied file the new startup file, so any further changes made in the configuration file are not added to the startup-config file unless you reuse this command. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><destination-url></code> | The destination and filename that you are saving the startup-config as. This command creates a file if no file exists with the specified filename. If a file already exists, then the CLI prompts you before overwriting the file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To copy the file `Layer3.cfg` to the `startup-config`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy Layer3.cfg startup-config
```

To copy the `startup-config` as the file `oldconfig.cfg` in the current directory, use the command:

```
awplus# copy startup-config oldconfig.cfg
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)

copy (URL)

This command copies a file. This allows you to:

- copy files from your device to a remote device
- copy files from a remote device to your device
- copy files stored on Flash memory to or from a different memory type, such as an SD card
- create two copies of the same file on your device

Syntax `copy <source-url> <destination-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL of the source file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL for the destination file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The URL can include characters from up to four categories. The URL categories are:

1. uppercase letters: A to Z
2. lowercase letters: a to z
3. digits: 0 to 9
4. special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. Including the following characters:

```
« -
« /
« .
« _
« @
« "
« '
« *
« :
« ~
« ?
```

Do not use spaces or parentheses within filenames. Use hyphens or underlines instead.

Examples To use TFTP to copy the file `bob.key` into the current directory from the remote server at `10.0.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp://10.0.0.1/bob.key bob.key
```

To use SFTP to copy the file `new.cfg` into the current directory from a remote server at `10.0.1.2`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy sftp://10.0.1.2/new.cfg bob.key
```

To use SCP with the username `beth` to copy the file `old.cfg` into the directory `config_files` on a remote server that is listening on TCP port 2000, use the command:

```
awplus# copy scp://beth@serv:2000/config_files/old.cfg old.cfg
```

To copy the file `newconfig.cfg` onto your device's Flash from an SD (or SDHC) Card, use the command:

```
awplus# copy card:/newconfig.cfg flash:/newconfig.cfg
```

To copy the file `newconfig.cfg` to an SD (or SDHC) Card from your device's Flash, use the command:

```
awplus# copy flash:/newconfig.cfg card:/newconfig.cfg
```

To copy the file `config.cfg` into the current directory from an SD (or SDHC) Card, and rename it to `configtest.cfg`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy card:/config.cfg configtest.cfg
```

To copy the file `config.cfg` into the current directory from a remote file server, and rename it to `configtest.cfg`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy fserver:/config.cfg configtest.cfg
```

Related Commands

- [copy zmodem](#)
- [edit \(URL\)](#)
- [show file systems](#)

copy zmodem

This command allows you to copy files using ZMODEM using Minicom. ZMODEM works over a serial connection and does not need any interfaces configured to do a file transfer.

Syntax `copy <source-url> zmodem`
`copy zmodem`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL of the source file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To copy the local file `asuka.key` using ZMODEM, use the command:

```
awplus# copy asuka.key zmodem
```

Related Commands [copy \(URL\)](#)
[show file systems](#)

create autoboot

Use this command to create an `autoboot.txt` file on external media. This command will automatically ensure that the keys and values that are expected in this file are correct. After the file is created the **create autoboot** command will copy the current release and configuration files across to the external media. The external media is then available to restore a release file and/or a configuration file to the device.

Syntax `create autoboot [card]`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To create an `autoboot.txt` file on external media, use the command:

```
awplus# create autoboot card
```

Related Commands

- [autoboot enable](#)
- [show autoboot](#)
- [show boot](#)

delete

This command deletes files or directories.

Syntax `delete [force] [recursive] <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>force</code> | Ignore nonexistent filenames and never prompt before deletion. |
| <code>recursive</code> | Remove the contents of directories recursively. |
| <code><url></code> | URL of the file to delete. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To delete the file `temp.cfg` from the current directory, use the command:

```
awplus# delete temp.cfg
```

To delete the read-only file `one.cfg` from the current directory, use the command:

```
awplus# delete force one.cfg
```

To delete the directory `old_configs`, which is not empty, use the command:

```
awplus# delete recursive old_configs
```

To delete the directory `new_configs`, which is not empty, without prompting if any read-only files are being deleted, use the command:

```
awplus# delete force recursive new_configs
```

Related Commands [erase startup-config](#)
[rmdir](#)

delete debug

Use this command to delete a specified debug output file.

Syntax `delete debug <source-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL where the debug output originates. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete debug output, use the following command:

```
awplus# delete debug
```

Output **Figure 7-3: CLI prompt after entering the delete debug command**

```
Enter source file name []:
```

Related Commands [copy debug](#)
[move debug](#)

dir

This command lists the files on a filesystem. If no directory or file is specified then this command lists the files in the current working directory.

Syntax `dir [all] [recursive] [sort [reverse] [name|size|time]] [<url>|card|debug|flash|nvs]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| all | List all files. |
| recursive | List the contents of directories recursively. |
| sort | Sort directory listing. |
| reverse | Sort using reverse order. |
| name | Sort by name. |
| size | Sort by size. |
| time | Sort by modification time (default). |
| <url> | URL of the directory or file. If no directory or file is specified, then this command lists the files in the current working directory. |
| card | SD (or SDHC) card root directory |
| debug | Debug root directory |
| flash | Flash memory root directory |
| nvs | NVS memory root directory |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To list the files in the current working directory, use the command:

```
awplus# dir
```

To list the non-hidden files in the root of the Flash filesystem, use the command:

```
awplus# dir flash
```

To list all the files in the root of the Flash filesystem, use the command:

```
awplus# dir all flash:
```

To list recursively the files in the Flash filesystem, use the command:

```
awplus# dir recursive flash:
```

To list the files in alphabetical order, use the command:

```
awplus# dir sort name
```

To list the files by size, smallest to largest, use the command:

```
awplus# dir sort reverse size
```

To sort the files by modification time, oldest to newest, use the command:

```
awplus# dir sort reverse time
```

Related Commands [cd](#)
[pwd](#)

edit

This command opens a text file in the AlliedWare Plus™ text editor. Once opened you can use the editor to alter to the file.

If a filename is specified and it already exists, then the editor opens it in the text editor.

If no filename is specified, the editor prompts you for one when you exit it.

Before starting the editor make sure your terminal, terminal emulation program, or Telnet client is 100% compatible with a VT100 terminal. The editor uses VT100 control sequences to display text on the terminal.

For more information about using the editor, including control sequences, see [“Using the Editor” on page 6.6](#).

Syntax `edit [<filename>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><filename></code> | Name of a file in the local Flash filesystem. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To create and edit a new text file, use the command:

```
awplus# edit
```

To edit the existing configuration file `myconfig.cfg` stored on your device's Flash memory, use the command:

```
awplus# edit myconfig.cfg
```

Related Commands [edit \(URL\)](#)
[show file](#)

edit (URL)

This command opens a remote text file as read-only in the AlliedWare Plus™ text editor.

Before starting the editor make sure your terminal, terminal emulation program, or Telnet client is 100% compatible with a VT100 terminal. The editor uses VT100 control sequences to display text on the terminal.

Syntax `edit <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code><url></code> | The URL of the remote file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The URL can include characters from up to four categories. The URL categories are:

1. uppercase letters: A to Z
2. lowercase letters: a to z
3. digits: 0 to 9
4. special symbols: all printable ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. Including the following characters:

```
« -
« /
« .
« _
« @
« "
« '
« *
« :
« ~
« ?
```

Do not use spaces or parentheses within filenames. Use hyphens or underlines instead.

Example To view the file `bob.key` stored in the security directory of a TFTP server, use the command:

```
awplus# edit tftp://security/bob.key
```

Related Commands

- [copy \(URL\)](#)
- [edit](#)
- [show file](#)

erase startup-config

This command deletes the file that is set as the startup-config file, which is the configuration file that the system runs when it boots up.

At the next restart, the device loads the default configuration file, default.cfg. If default.cfg no longer exists, then the device loads with the factory default configuration. This provides a mechanism for you to return the device to the factory default settings.

Syntax `erase startup-config`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete the file currently set as the startup-config, use the command:

```
awplus# erase startup-config
```

Related Commands [boot config-file backup](#)
[copy running-config](#)
[copy startup-config](#)
[show boot](#)

mkdir

This command makes a new directory.

Syntax `mkdir <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code><url></code> | URL of the directory that you are creating. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The keywords **flash**, **nvs**, **card**, **tftp**, **scp**, **sftp** and **http** are reserved for tab completion when using the **copy**, **move**, **delete**, **cd** and **dir** command. Keywords **flash**, **nvs**, **card**, **tftp**, **scp**, **sftp** and **http** cannot be applied as directory or subdirectory names when using a **mkdir** command.

Example To make a new directory called `images` in the current directory, use the command:

```
awplus# mkdir images
```

Related Commands **cd**
dir
pwd

move

This command renames or moves a file.

Syntax `move <source-url> <destination-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL of the source file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL of the destination file. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To rename the file `temp.cfg` to `startup.cfg`, use the command:

```
awplus# move temp.cfg startup.cfg
```

To move the file `temp.cfg` from the root of the Flash filesystem to the directory `myconfigs`, use the command:

```
awplus# move temp.cfg myconfigs/temp.cfg
```

Related Commands

- [delete](#)
- [edit](#)
- [show file](#)
- [show file systems](#)

move debug

This command moves a specified debug file to a destination debug file.

Specify whether the destination is Flash or Card when saving the software to the local filesystem.

Syntax `move debug {<destination-url>|card|debug|flash|nvs} {<source-url>|card|debug|flash|nvs}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><destination-url></code> | The URL where you would like the debug output moved to. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |
| <code><source-url></code> | The URL where the debug output originates. See “URL Syntax and Keyword Usage” on page 7.3 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To move debug output onto an SD (or SDHC) card with a filename `my-debug`, use the following command:

```
awplus# move debug card:my-debug
```

Output **Figure 7-4: CLI prompt after entering the move debug command**

```
Enter source file name []:
```

Related Commands [copy debug](#)
[delete debug](#)

pwd

This command prints the current working directory.

Syntax `pwd`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To print the current working directory, use the command:

```
awplus# pwd
```

Related Commands `cd`

rmdir

This command removes a directory. The directory must be empty for the command to work unless the optional **force** keyword is used to remove all subdirectories or files in a directory.

Syntax `rmdir [force] <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>force</code> | Optional keyword that allows you to delete any directories that are not empty and may contain files or subdirectories. |
| <code><url></code> | The URL of the directory. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To remove the directory `images` from the top level of the Flash filesystem, use the command:

```
awplus# rmdir flash:/images
```

To force the removal of directory `level1` containing subdirectory `level2`, use the command:

```
awplus# mkdir level1
awplus# mkdir level1/level2
awplus# rmdir force level1
```

Related Commands

- cd**
- dir**
- mkdir**
- pwd**

show autoboot

This command displays the Autoboot configuration and status.

Syntax show autoboot

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To show the Autoboot configuration and status, use the command:

```
awplus# show autoboot
```

Output **Figure 7-5: Example output from the show autoboot command**

```
awplus#show autoboot
Autoboot configuration
-----
Autoboot status           : enabled
SD Card file autoboot.txt exists : yes

Restore information on SD card
Autoboot enable in autoboot.txt : yes
Restore release file       : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel (file exists)
Restore configuration file  : network_1.cfg (file exists)
```

Figure 7-6: Example output from the show autoboot command when an external media source is not present

```
awplus#show autoboot
Autoboot configuration
-----
Autoboot status           : enabled
External media source     : SD card not found.
```

Related Commands [autoboot enable](#)
[create autoboot](#)
[show boot](#)

show boot

This command displays the current boot configuration.

Syntax show boot

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To show the current boot configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

Output **Figure 7-7: Example output from the show boot command with current boot config set on an SD card**

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software      : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image   : card:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image    : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config  : flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config  : card:/my.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config   : flash:/backup.cfg (file not found)
Autoboot status      : enabled
```

Figure 7-8: Example output from the show boot command

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software      : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image   : flash:/SBx81CFC960-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image    : flash:/SBx81CFC960-5.4.4-1.1.rel
Default boot config  : flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config  : flash:/my.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config   : flash:/backup.cfg (file not found)
```

Table 7-1: Parameters in the output of the show boot command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Current software | The current software release that the device is using. |
| Current boot image | The boot image currently configured for use during the next boot cycle. |
| Backup boot image | The boot image to use during the next boot cycle if the device cannot load the main image. |
| Default boot config | The default startup configuration file. The device loads this configuration script if no file is set as the startup-config file. |
| Current boot config | The configuration file currently configured as the startup-config file. The device loads this configuration file during the next boot cycle if this file exists. |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Backup boot config | The configuration file to use during the next boot cycle if the main configuration file cannot be loaded. |
| Autoboot status | The status of the Autoboot feature; either enabled or disabled. |

Related Commands

- autoboot enable**
- boot config-file backup**
- boot system backup**
- show autoboot**

show file

This command displays the contents of a specified file.

Syntax `show file {<filename>|<url>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><filename></code> | Name of a file on the local Flash filesystem. |
| <code><url></code> | URL of a file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the contents of the file `oldconfig.cfg`, which is in the current directory, use the command:

```
awplus# show file oldconfig.cfg
```

Related Commands

- [edit](#)
- [edit \(URL\)](#)
- [show file systems](#)

show file systems

This command lists the filesystems and their utilization information where appropriate.

Syntax `show file systems`

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display the filesystems, use the command:

```
awplus# show file systems
```

Output **Figure 7-9: Example output from the show file systems command**

```
awplus#show file systems
Size(b)  Free(b)  Type    Flags  Prefixes  S/D/V  Lcl/Ntwk  Avail
-----
 63.0M   28.5M   flash   rw     flash:    static  local     Y
-        -       system  rw     system:   virtual local     -
10.0M    9.8M    debug   rw     debug:    static  local     Y
499.0K   431.0K  nvs     rw     nvs:      static  local     Y
-        -       tftp    rw     tftp:     -       network   -
-        -       scp     rw     scp:      -       network   -
-        -       sftp    ro     sftp:     -       network   -
-        -       http    ro     http:     -       network   -
-        -       rsync   rw     rsync:    -       network   -
```

Table 7-2: Parameters in the output of the show file systems command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Size (B) Available | The total memory available to this filesystem. The units are given after the value and are M for Megabytes or k for kilobytes. |
| Free (B) | The total memory free within this filesystem. The units are given after the value and are M for Megabytes or k for kilobytes. |
| Type | The memory type used for this filesystem: flash, system, nvs, sdcard, tftp, scp, sftp, or http. |
| Flags | The file setting options: rw (read write), ro (read only). |
| Prefixes | The prefixes used when entering commands to access the filesystems: flash, system, nvs, card, tftp, scp, sftp, or http. |
| S/V/D | The memory type: static, virtual, dynamic. |
| Lcl / Ntwk | Whether the memory is located locally or via a network connection. |
| Avail | Whether the memory is accessible: Y (yes), N (no), - (not appropriate) |

Related Commands

- [edit](#)
- [edit \(URL\)](#)
- [show file](#)

show running-config

This command displays the current configuration of the device. The output includes all non-default configuration; default settings are not displayed.

You can control the output in any one of the following ways:

- To display only lines that contain a particular word, enter | **include word** after the command
- To start the display at the first line that contains a particular word, enter | **begin word** after the command
- To save the output to a file, enter > **filename** after the command

For more information, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show running-config`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current dynamic configuration of your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config
```

Output Figure 7-10: Example output from the show running-config command

```
awplus#show running-config
!
service password-encryption
!
username manager privilege 15 password 8 $1$bJoVec4D$JwOJGPr7YqoExA0GVasdE0
!
service telnet
!
no clock timezone
ip domain-lookup
!
spanning-tree mode rstp
no platform e2efc
!
interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
  switchport
  switchport mode access
!
!
service telnet
!
no clock timezone
!
!
stack virtual-mac
stack virtual-chassis-id 2111
!
!
ip domain-lookup
!
spanning-tree mode rstp
no platform e2efc
!
interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
  switchport
  switchport mode access
!
interface vlan2
  ip address 172.28.8.210/16
!
ip route 0.0.0.0/0 172.28.0.1
!
line con 0
line vty 0 4
!
end
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config access-list](#)

show running-config access-list

Use this command to show the running system status and configuration details for access-list.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show running-config access-list`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the running system status and configuration details for access-list, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config access-list
```

Output **Figure 7-11: Example output from the show running-config access-list command**

```
!
access-list abc remark annai
access-list abc deny any
access-list abd deny any
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config as-path access-list

Use this command to show the running system status and configuration details for as-path access-list.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show running-config as-path access-list`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the running system status and configuration details for as-path access-list, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config as-path access-list
```

Output **Figure 7-12: Example output from the show running-config as-path access-list command**

```
!  
ip as-path access-list wer permit knsmk  
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config dhcp

Use this command to display the running configuration for DHCP server, DHCP snooping, and DHCP relay.

Syntax show running-config dhcp

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display to display the running configuration for DHCP server, DHCP snooping, and DHCP relay:

```
awplus# show running-config dhcp
```

Output **Figure 7-13: Example output from the show running-config dhcp command**

```
!  
#show running-config dhcp  
no service dhcp-server  
!  
service dhcp-snooping  
!  
interface port1.0.1  
 ip dhcp snooping trust  
!  
interface port1.0.3  
 ip dhcp snooping max-bindings 25  
 access-group dhcpsnooping  
!  
interface port1.0.4  
 ip dhcp snooping max-bindings 25  
 access-group dhcpsnooping  
!  
interface po1  
 ip dhcp snooping max-bindings 25  
 arp security violation log  
!  
interface sa1  
 ip dhcp snooping max-bindings 25  
 access-group dhcpsnooping  
 arp security violation log  
!  
interface vlan100  
 ip dhcp snooping  
 arp security  
!  
interface vlan200  
 ip dhcp snooping  
 arp security  
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config full

Use this command to show the complete status and configuration of the running system.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show running-config full

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the complete status and configuration of the running system, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config full
```

Output **Figure 7-14: Example output from the show running-config full command**

```
awplus#show running-config full
!
no service password-encryption
!
interface lo
ip address 127.0.0.1/8
ipv6 address ::1/128
!
interface vlan1
ip address 10.92.0.16/24
ipv6 address fe80::202:b3ff:fea1:2159/64
!
interface vlan2
ip address 20.10.10.54/24
ipv6 address fe80::200:5eff:fe00:101/64
ipv6 address fe80::202:b3ff:fea1:1567/64
ipv6 address fe80::204:76ff:fee6:6c1c/64
!
end
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config interface

This command displays the current configuration of one or more interfaces on the switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show running-config interface [<interface-list>] [dot1x|ip igmp|lACP|mstp|rstp|stp]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <interface-list> | <p>The interfaces or ports to display information about. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above, e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| dot1x | Displays running configuration for 802.1X port authentication for the specified interfaces. |
| lACP | Displays running configuration for LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) for the specified interfaces. |
| ip igmp | Displays running configuration for IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) for the specified interfaces. |
| ip multicast | Displays running configuration for general multicast settings for the specified interfaces. |
| mstp | Displays running configuration for MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol) for the specified interfaces. |
| rstp | Displays running configuration for RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) for the specified interfaces. |
| stp | Displays running configuration for STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) for the specified interfaces. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To display the current running configuration of your switch for ports 1 to 4, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
```

To display the current running configuration of a switch for VLAN 1, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config interface vlan1
```

To display the current running configuration of a switch for VLANs 1 and 3-5, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config interface vlan1,vlan3-vlan5
```

Output **Figure 7-15: Example output from a show running-config interface port1.0.2 command**

```
awplus#sh running-config interface port1.0.2
!
interface port1.0.2
 switchport
 switchport mode access
!
```

Figure 7-16: Example output from the show running-config interface command

```
awplus#sh running-config interface
interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
 switchport
 switchport mode access
!
interface vlan1
 ip address 192.168.1.1/24
 ip rip authentication mode md5
 ip rip authentication string mykey
 ip irdp
!
interface vlan2
 ip address 192.168.2.2/24
 ip rip authentication mode md5
 ip rip authentication key-chain cars
!
```

Related Commands **copy running-config**
show running-config

show running-config ipv6 access-list

Use this command to show the running system status and configuration for IPv6 ACLs.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show running-config ipv6 access-list

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the running system status and configuration for IPv6 ACLs, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config ipv6 access-list
```

Output **Figure 7-17: Example output from the show running-config ipv6 access-list command**

```
!  
ipv6 access-list abc permit any  
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config key chain

Use this command to show the running system key-chain related configuration.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show running-config key chain

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the running system key-chain related configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config key chain
```

Output **Figure 7-18: Example output from the show running-config key chain command**

```
!  
key chain 12  
key 2  
key-string 234  
!  
key chain 123  
key 3  
key-string 345  
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config lldp

This command shows the current running configuration of LLDP.

Syntax `show running-config lldp`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration of LLDP, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config lldp
```

Output **Figure 7-19: Example output from the show running-config lldp command**

```
awplus#show running-config lldp

lldp notification-interval 10
lldp timer 20
!
interface port1.0.1
  lldp notifications
  lldp tlv-select port-description
  lldp tlv-select system-name
  lldp tlv-select system-description
  lldp tlv-select management-address
  lldp transmit receive
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)
[show lldp interface](#)

show running-config power-inline

Use this command to show the Power over Ethernet (PoE) running system status and configuration details. The PoE usage-threshold percentage as specified by the **power-inline usage-threshold** command is displayed in the **running-config** using this command.

See [Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction](#) and [Chapter 23, Power over Ethernet Commands](#) for more information about PoE.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show running-config power-inline

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the PoE running system status and configuration details, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config power-inline
```

Output **Figure 7-20: Example output from the show running-config power-inline command**

```
!  
power-inline usage-threshold 90  
!
```

Related Commands [power-inline usage-threshold](#)
[show power-inline](#)

show running-config router-id

Use this command to show the running system global router ID configuration.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show running-config router-id

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the running system global router ID configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config router-id
```

Output **Figure 7-21: Example output from the show running-config router-id command**

```
!  
router-id 3.3.3.3  
!
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[show running-config](#)

show running-config security-password

This command displays the configuration settings for the various security-password rules. If a default parameter is used for a security-password rule, therefore disabling that rule, no output is displayed for that feature.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show running-config security-password

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current security-password rule settings in the running-config, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config security-password
```

Output **Figure 7-22: Example output from the show running-config security-password command**

```
security-password minimum-length 8
security-password minimum-categories 3
security-password history 4
security-password lifetime 30
security-password warning 3
security-password forced-change
```

Related Commands [show security-password configuration](#)
[show security-password user](#)

show startup-config

This command displays the contents of the start-up configuration file, which is the file that the device runs on start-up.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show startup-config

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the contents of the current start-up configuration file, use the command:

```
awplus# show startup-config
```

Output **Figure 7-23: Example output from the show startup-config command**

```
awplus#show startup-config
!
service password-encryption
!
username manager privilege 15 password 8 $1$bJoVec4D$JwOJGPr7YqoExA0GVasdE0
!
no service ssh
!
service telnet
!
service http
!
no clock timezone
.
.
.
line con 0
line vty 0 4
!
end
```

Related Commands [boot config-file backup](#)
[copy running-config](#)
[copy startup-config](#)
[erase startup-config](#)
[show boot](#)

show version

This command displays the version number and copyright details of the current AlliedWare Plus™ OS your device is running.

For information on output options, see **“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.**

Syntax show version

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the version details of your currently installed software, use the command:

```
awplus# show version
```

Output **Figure 7-24: Example output from the show version command**

```
awplus#show version
AlliedWare Plus (TM) 5.4.3 19/11/12 13:22:32

Build name : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Build date : Fri Jun 6 13:22:32 NZST 2014
Build type : RELEASE
NET-SNMP SNMP agent software
(c) 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California.
All rights reserved;
(c) 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All rights reserved.
(c) 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd. All rights reserved.
(c) 2003, Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
(c) 2003-2006, Sparta, Inc. All rights reserved.
(c) 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network
Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications.
All rights reserved.
RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm
(c) 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.
OpenSSL Library
Copyright (C) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
Original SSLeay License
Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).
sFlow(R) Agent Software
Copyright (c) 2002-2006 InMon Corp.
DHCP Library
Copyright (c) 2004-2012 by Internet Systems Consortium, Inc. ("ISC")
Copyright (c) 1995-2003 by Internet Software Consortium.
DHCP Bind
Copyright (c) 2005 - 2008, Holger Zuleger HZnet. All rights reserved.
Application Interface Specification Framework
Copyright (c) 2002-2004 MontaVista Software, Inc;
Copyright (c) 2005-2010 Red Hat, Inc.
Hardware Platform Interface Library
Copyright (c) 2004 by Intel Corp.
Copyright (C) IBM Corp. 2004-2008.
Corosync Cluster Engine
Copyright (c) 2002-2004 MontaVista Software, Inc. All rights reserved.
Copyright (c) 2005-2010 Red Hat, Inc. File Utility Library
Copyright (c) Ian F. Darwin 1986-1987, 1989-1992, 1994-1995.
Software written by Ian F. Darwin and others;
maintained 1994- Christos Zoulas.
ProL2TP
Copyright Katalix Systems Ltd, 2010, 2011.
All rights reserved.

Portions of this product are covered by the GNU GPL, source code may be
downloaded from: http://www.alliedtelesis.co.nz/support/gpl/awp.html
```

Related Commands **boot system backup**
show boot

write file

This command copies the running-config into the file that is set as the current startup-config file. This command is a synonym of the **write memory** and **copy running-config startup-config** commands.

Syntax write [file]

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To write configuration data to the start-up configuration file, use the command:

```
awplus# write file
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[write memory](#)
[show running-config](#)

write memory

This command copies the running-config into the file that is set as the current startup-config file. This command is a synonym of the **write file** and **copy running-config startup-config** commands.

Syntax write [memory]

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To write configuration data to the start-up configuration file, use the command:

```
awplus# write memory
```

Related Commands [copy running-config](#)
[write file](#)
[show running-config](#)

write terminal

This command displays the current configuration of the device. This command is a synonym of the **show running-config** command.

Syntax write terminal

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the current configuration of your device, use the command:

```
awplus# write terminal
```

Related Commands [show running-config](#)

Chapter 8: System Configuration and Monitoring Commands

| | |
|---|------|
| Command List | 8.2 |
| banner exec | 8.2 |
| banner login (system) | 8.4 |
| banner motd | 8.5 |
| clock set | 8.6 |
| clock summer-time date | 8.7 |
| clock summer-time recurring | 8.8 |
| clock timezone | 8.10 |
| ecofriendly led | 8.11 |
| findme | 8.12 |
| hostname | 8.13 |
| max-fib-routes | 8.15 |
| max-static-routes | 8.16 |
| no debug all | 8.17 |
| reboot | 8.18 |
| reload | 8.18 |
| show clock | 8.19 |
| show cpu | 8.20 |
| show cpu history | 8.23 |
| show debugging | 8.25 |
| show ecofriendly | 8.26 |
| show interface memory | 8.27 |
| show memory | 8.29 |
| show memory allocations | 8.31 |
| show memory history | 8.32 |
| show memory pools | 8.34 |
| show memory shared | 8.35 |
| show process | 8.36 |
| show reboot history | 8.38 |
| show router-id | 8.39 |
| show system | 8.40 |
| show system environment | 8.41 |
| show system interrupts | 8.42 |
| show system mac | 8.43 |
| show system pluggable | 8.44 |
| show system pluggable detail | 8.46 |
| show system pluggable diagnostics | 8.49 |
| show system serialnumber | 8.51 |
| show tech-support | 8.52 |
| speed (asyn) | 8.55 |
| system territory | 8.56 |
| terminal monitor | 8.57 |
| undebg all | 8.58 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands for configuring and monitoring the system.

banner exec

This command configures the User Exec mode banner that is displayed on the console after you login. The **banner exec default** command restores the User Exec banner to the default banner. Use the **no banner exec** command to disable the User Exec banner and remove the default User Exec banner.

Syntax banner exec <banner-text>

```
banner exec default
```

```
no banner exec
```

Default By default, the AlliedWare Plus™ version and build date is displayed at console login, such as:

```
AlliedWare Plus (TM) Version 5.4.4-1.x or later 03/31/14 00:44:25
```

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure a User Exec mode banner after login, enter the following commands:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#banner exec enable to move to Priv Exec mode
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

awplus login: manager
Password:
enable to move to Priv Exec mode
awplus>
```

To restore the default User Exec mode banner after login, enter the following commands:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#banner exec default
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

awplus login: manager
Password:
AlliedWare Plus (TM) Version 5.4.4-1.x or later 03/31/14 13:03:59

awplus>
```

To remove the User Exec mode banner after login, enter the following commands:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#no banner exec
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

awplus login: manager
Password:
awplus>
```

Related Commands **banner login (system)**
 banner motd

banner login (system)

This command configures the login banner that is displayed on the console when you login. The login banner is displayed on all connected terminals. The login banner is displayed after the MOTD (Message-of-the-Day) banner and before the login username and password prompts.

Use the **no banner login** command to disable the login banner.

Syntax banner login
no banner login

Default By default, no login banner is displayed at console login.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure a login banner to be displayed when you login, enter the following commands:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#banner login
Type CNTL/D to finish.
authorised users only
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

authorised users only
awplus login: manager
Password:

AlliedWare Plus (TM) Version 5.4.4-1.x or later 03/31/14 13:03:59

awplus>
```

To remove the login banner, enter the following commands:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#no banner login
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

awplus login: manager
Password:

awplus>
```

Related Commands banner exec
banner motd

banner motd

Use this command to change the text MOTD (Message-of-the-Day) banner displayed before login. The MOTD banner is displayed on all connected terminals. The MOTD banner is useful for sending messages that affect all network users, for example, any imminent system shutdowns.

Use the **no** variant of this command to not display a text MOTD (Message-of-the-Day) banner on login.

Syntax banner motd <motd-text>
no banner motd

Default By default, the switch displays the AlliedWare Plus™ OS version and build date before login.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure a MOTD banner to be displayed when you login, enter the following commands:

```
awplus>enable
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#banner motd system shutdown at 6pm
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

system shutdown at 6pm
awplus login: manager
Password:

AlliedWare Plus (TM) Version 5.4.4-1.x or later 03/31/14 13:03:59
```

To remove the login banner, enter the following commands:

```
awplus>enable
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#no banner motd
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#exit

awplus login: manager
Password:

AlliedWare Plus (TM) Version 5.4.4-1.x or later 03/31/14 13:03:59

awplus>
```

Related Commands [banner exec](#)
[banner login \(system\)](#)

clock set

This command sets the time and date for the system clock.

Syntax `clock set <hh:mm:ss> <day> <month> <year>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <hh:mm:ss> | Local time in 24-hour format |
| <day> | Day of the current month <1-31> |
| <month> | The first three letters of the current month. |
| <year> | Current year <2000-2035> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Configure the timezone before setting the local time. Otherwise, when you change the timezone, the device applies the new offset to the local time.

Note  If Network Time Protocol (NTP) is enabled, then you cannot change the time or date using this command. NTP maintains the clock automatically using an external time source. If you wish to manually alter the time or date, you must first disable NTP.

Example To set the time and date on your system to 2pm on the 2nd of April 2007, use the command:

```
awplus# clock set 14:00:00 2 apr 2007
```

Related Commands [clock timezone](#)

clock summer-time date

This command defines the start and end of summertime for a specific year only, and specifies summertime's offset value to Standard Time for that year.

The **no** variant of this command removes the device's summertime setting. This clears both specific summertime dates and recurring dates (set with the [clock summer-time recurring command on page 8.8](#)).

By default, the device has no summertime definitions set.

Syntax `clock summer-time <timezone-name> date <start-day> <start-month>
<start-year> <start-time> <end-day> <end-month> <end-year>
<end-time> <1-180>`

`no clock summer-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><timezone-name></code> | A description of the summertime zone, up to 6 characters long. |
| <code>date</code> | Specifies that this is a date-based summertime setting for just the specified year. |
| <code><start-day></code> | Day that the summertime starts, in the range 1-31. |
| <code><start-month></code> | First three letters of the name of the month that the summertime starts. |
| <code><start-year></code> | Year that summertime starts, in the range 2000-2035. |
| <code><start-time></code> | Time of the day that summertime starts, in the 24-hour time format HH:MM. |
| <code><end-day></code> | Day that summertime ends, in the range 1-31. |
| <code><end-month></code> | First three letters of the name of the month that the summertime ends. |
| <code><end-year></code> | Year that summertime ends, in the range 2000-2035. |
| <code><end-time></code> | Time of the day that summertime ends, in the 24-hour time format HH:MM. |
| <code><1-180></code> | The offset in minutes. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set a summertime definition for New Zealand using NZST (UTC+12:00) as the standard time, and NZDT (UTC+13:00) as summertime, with the summertime set to begin on the 1st October 2007 and end on the 18th of March 2008:

```
awplus(config)# clock summer-time NZDT date 1 oct 2:00 2007 18
mar 2:00 2008 60
```

To remove any summertime settings on the system, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no clock summer-time
```

Related Commands [clock summer-time recurring](#)
[clock timezone](#)

clock summer-time recurring

This command defines the start and end of summertime for every year, and specifies summertime's offset value to Standard Time.

The **no** variant of this command removes the device's summertime setting. This clears both specific summertime dates (set with the **clock summer-time date** command on page 8.7) and recurring dates.

By default, the device has no summertime definitions set.

Syntax `clock summer-time <timezone-name> recurring <start-week> <start-day> <start-month> <start-time> <end-week> <end-day> <end-month> <end-time> <1-180>`

`no clock summer-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code><timezone-name></code> | A description of the summertime zone, up to 6 characters long. |
| <code>recurring</code> | Specifies that this summertime setting applies every year from now on. |
| <code><start-week></code> | Week of the month when summertime starts, in the range 1-5. The value 5 indicates the last week that has the specified day in it for the specified month. For example, to start summertime on the last Sunday of the month, enter 5 for <code><start-week></code> and sun for <code><start-day></code> . |
| <code><start-day></code> | Day of the week when summertime starts. Valid values are mon, tue, wed, thu, fri, sat or sun . |
| <code><start-month></code> | First three letters of the name of the month that summertime starts. |
| <code><start-time></code> | Time of the day that summertime starts, in the 24-hour time format HH:MM. |
| <code><end-week></code> | Week of the month when summertime ends, in the range 1-5. The value 5 indicates the last week that has the specified day in it for the specified month. For example, to end summertime on the last Sunday of the month, enter 5 for <code><end-week></code> and sun for <code><end-day></code> . |
| <code><end-day></code> | Day of the week when summertime ends. Valid values are mon, tue, wed, thu, fri, sat or sun . |
| <code><end-month></code> | First three letters of the name of the month that summertime ends. |
| <code><end-time></code> | Time of the day that summertime ends, in the 24-hour time format HH:MM. |
| <code><1-180></code> | The offset in minutes. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set a summertime definition for New Zealand using NZST (UTC+12:00) as the standard time, and NZDT (UTC+13:00) as summertime, with summertime set to start on the 1st Sunday in October, and end on the 3rd Sunday in March, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock summer-time NZDT recurring 1 sun oct 2:00  
3 sun mar 2:00 60
```

To remove any summertime settings on the system, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no clock summer-time
```

Related Commands [clock summer-time date](#)
[clock timezone](#)

clock timezone

This command defines the device's clock timezone. The timezone is set as a offset to the UTC.

The **no** variant of this command resets the system time to UTC.

By default, the system time is set to UTC.

Syntax `clock timezone <timezone-name> {minus|plus} [<0-13>|<0-12>:<00-59>]`
`no clock timezone`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <timezone-name> | A description of the timezone, up to 6 characters long. |
| minus or plus | The direction of offset from UTC. The minus option indicates that the timezone is behind UTC. The plus option indicates that the timezone is ahead of UTC. |
| <0-13> | The offset in hours or from UTC. |
| <0-12>:<00-59> | The offset in hours or from UTC. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Configure the timezone before setting the local time. Otherwise, when you change the timezone, the device applies the new offset to the local time.

Examples To set the timezone to New Zealand Standard Time with an offset from UTC of +12 hours, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone NZST plus 12
```

To set the timezone to Indian Standard Time with an offset from UTC of +5:30 hours, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone IST plus 5:30
```

To set the timezone back to UTC with no offsets, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no clock timezone
```

Related Commands [clock set](#)
[clock summer-time date](#)
[clock summer-time recurring](#)

ecofriendly led

Use this command to enable the eco-friendly LED (Light Emitting Diode) feature, which turns off power to the port LEDs. Power to the system status LED is not disabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the eco-friendly LED feature.

Syntax `ecofriendly led`
`no ecofriendly led`

Default The eco-friendly LED feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When the eco-friendly LED feature is enabled, a change in port status will not affect the display of the associated LED. When the eco-friendly LED feature is disabled and power is returned to port LEDs, the LEDs will correctly show the current state of the ports.

For an example of how to configure a trigger to enable the eco-friendly LED feature, see [“Turn Off Power to Port LEDs” on page 75.7](#). See also the section [“Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature” on page 1.31](#).

Examples To enable the eco-friendly LED feature which turns off power to all port LEDs, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ecofriendly led
```

To disable the eco-friendly LED feature, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ecofriendly led
```

Related Commands [show ecofriendly](#)

findme

Use this command to physically locate a specific device from a group of similar devices. Activating the command causes a selected number of port LEDs to alternately flash green then amber (if that device has amber LEDs) at a rate of 1 Hz.

Use the **no** variant of this command to deactivate the Find Me feature prior to the timeout expiring.

Syntax `findme [interface <port-list>] [timeout <duration>]`

`no findme`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to flash. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port, e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code> ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.5-1.0.6</code>. |
| <code><duration></code> | Specify the duration in seconds within the range of 5-3600 seconds. |

Default By default all port LEDs flash for 60 seconds.

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Running the **findme** command causes the device's port LEDs to flash. An optional **timeout** parameter specifies the flash behavior duration. Normal LED behavior is restored automatically after either the default time, or a specified time has elapsed, or a **no findme** command is used. You can specify which interface or interfaces are flashed with the optional **interface** parameter.

Example To activate the Find Me feature for the default duration (60 seconds) on all ports, use the following command:

```
awplus# findme
```

To activate the Find Me feature for 120 seconds on all ports, use the following command:

```
awplus# findme timeout 120
```

To activate the Find Me feature for the default duration (60 seconds) on switch port interfaces `port1.0.2` through `port1.0.4`, use the following command:

```
awplus# findme interface port1.0.2-1.0.4
```

In the example above, ports 2 to 4 will flash 4 times and then all ports will flash twice. Each alternate flash will be amber (if that device has amber LEDs). This pattern will repeat until **timeout** (default or set) or **no findme** commands are used.

To deactivate the Find Me feature, use the following command:

```
awplus# no findme
```

hostname

This command sets the name applied to the device as shown at the prompt. The hostname is:

- displayed in the output of the **show system** command
- displayed in the CLI prompt so you know which device you are configuring
- stored in the MIB object sysName

Use the **no** variant of this command to revert the hostname setting to its default (awplus).

Syntax `hostname <hostname>`
`no hostname [<hostname>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><hostname></code> | Specifies the name given to a specific switch. Also referred to as the Node Name in AMF output screens. |

Default awplus

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The name must also follow the rules for ARPANET host names. The name must start with a letter, end with a letter or digit, and use only letters, digits, and hyphens. Refer to RFC 1035.

Note  Within an AMF network, any switch without a hostname applied will automatically be assigned a name based on its MAC address.

To efficiently manage your network using AMF, we strongly advise that you devise a naming convention for your network switches and accordingly apply an appropriate hostname to each switch.

Example To set the system name to HQ-Sales, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# hostname HQ-Sales
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
HQ-Sales(config)#
```

To revert to the default hostname `awplus`, use the command:

```
HQ-Sales(config)#no hostname
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
awplus(config)#
```

 **Note** When AMF is configured, running the **no hostname** command will apply a hostname that is based on the MAC address of the switch node, for example, **node_0016_76b1_7a5e**.

Related Commands [show system](#)

max-fib-routes

This command enables you to control the maximum number of FIB routes configured. It operates by providing parameters that enable you to configure preset maximums and warning message thresholds. The operation of these parameters is explained in the Parameter / Descriptions table shown below.

Note To set static routes, use the [max-static-routes](#) command on page 8.16.



Use the **no** variant of this command to set the maximum number of fib routes to the default of 4294967294 fib routes.

Syntax `max-fib-routes <1-4294967294> [<1-100>|warning-only]`
`no max-fib-routes`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| max-fib-routes | This is the maximum number of routes that can be stored in the switch's Forwarding Information dataBase. In practice, other practical system limits would prevent this maximum being reached. |
| <1-4294967294> | The allowable configurable range for setting the maximum number of FIB-routes. |
| <1-100> | This parameter enables you to optionally apply a percentage value. This percentage will be based on the maximum number of FIB routes you have specified. This will cause a warning message to appear when your routes reach your specified percentage value. Routes can continue to be added until your configured maximum value is reached. |
| warning-only | This parameter enables you to optionally apply a warning message. If you set this option a warning message will appear if your maximum configured value is reached. Routes can continue to be added until your switch reaches either the maximum capacity value of 4294967294, or a practical system limit. |

Default The default number of fib routes is the maximum number of fib routes (4294967294).

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the maximum number of dynamic routes to 2000 and warning threshold of 75%, use the following commands:

```
awplus# config terminal
awplus(config)# max-fib-routes 2000 75
```

max-static-routes

Use this command to set the maximum number of static routes, excluding FIB (Forwarding Information Base) routes. Note that FIB routes are set and reset using [max-fib-routes](#).

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the maximum number of static routes to the default of 1000 static routes.

Syntax `max-static-routes <1-1000>`
`no max-static-routes`

Default The default number of static routes is the maximum number of static routes (1000).

Mode Global Configuration

Example To reset the maximum number of static routes to the default maximum, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no max-static-routes
```



Note Static routes are applied before adding routes to the RIB (Routing Information Base). Therefore, rejected static routes will not appear in the running config.

Related Commands [max-fib-routes](#)

no debug all

This command disables the debugging facility for all features on your device. This stops the device from generating any diagnostic debugging messages.

The debugging facility is disabled by default.

Syntax `no debug all [dot1x|ipv6|nsm]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| dot1x | Turns off all debugging for IEEE 802.1X port-based network access-control. |
| ipv6 | Turns off all debugging for IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6). |
| nsm | Turns off all debugging for the NSM (Network Services Module). |

Mode Global Configuration and Privileged Exec

Example To disable debugging for all features, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug all
```

To disable all 802.1X debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug all
```

To disable all IPv6 debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug all
```

To disable all NSM debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug all
```

Related Commands [undebug all](#)

reboot

This command halts the device and performs a cold restart (also known as reload). It displays a confirmation request before restarting.

Syntax `reboot`
`reload`

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The **reboot** and **reload** commands perform the same action.

Examples To restart the device, use the command:

```
awplus# reboot
reboot system? (y/n): y
```

reload

This command performs the same function as the **reboot** command on page 8.18.

show clock

This command displays the system's current configured local time and date. It also displays other clock related information such as timezone and summertime configuration.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show clock

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the system's current local time, use the command:

```
awplus# show clock
```

Output **Figure 8-1: Example output from the show clock command for a switch using New Zealand time**

```
Local Time: Mon,  6 Aug 2007 13:56:06 +1200
UTC Time:   Mon,  6 Aug 2007 01:56:06 +0000
Timezone:  NZST
Timezone Offset: +12:00
Summer time zone: NZDT
Summer time starts: Last Sunday in September at 02:00:00
Summer time ends: First Sunday in April at 02:00:00
Summer time offset: 60 mins
Summer time recurring: Yes
```

Table 8-1: Parameters in the output of the show clock command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Local Time | Current local time. |
| UTC Time | Current UTC time. |
| Timezone | The current configured timezone name. |
| Timezone Offset | Number of hours offset to UTC. |
| Summer time zone | The current configured summertime zone name. |
| Summer time starts | Date and time set as the start of summer time. |
| Summer time ends | Date and time set as the end of summer time. |
| Summer time offset | Number of minutes that summer time is offset from the system's timezone. |
| Summer time recurring | Whether the device will apply the summer time settings every year or only once. |

Related Commands

- [clock set](#)
- [clock summer-time date](#)
- [clock summer-time recurring](#)
- [clock timezone](#)

show cpu

This command displays a list of running processes with their CPU utilization.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show cpu [sort {thrds|pri|sleep|runtime}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| sort | Changes the sorting order using the following fields. If you do not specify a field, then the list is sorted by percentage CPU utilization. |
| thrds | Sort by the number of threads. |
| pri | Sort by the process priority. |
| sleep | Sort by the average time sleeping. |
| runtime | Sort by the runtime of the process. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To show the CPU utilization of current processes, sorting them by the number of threads the processes are using, use the command:

```
awplus# show cpu sort thrds
```

Output Figure 8-2: Example output from the show cpu command

```

CPU averages:
 1 second: 12%, 20 seconds: 2%, 60 seconds: 2%
System load averages:
 1 minute: 0.03, 5 minutes: 0.02, 15 minutes: 0.00
Current CPU load:
 userspace: 6%, kernel: 4%, interrupts: 1% iowaits: 0%

user processes
=====
 pid name          thrds  cpu%   pri  state  sleep%  runtime
1544 hostd          1     2.8   20   run    0        120
1166 exfx           17     1.8   20   sleep  0       3846
1198 stackd         1     0.9   20   sleep  0        459
1284 aisexec        44     0.9   -2   sleep  0       2606
   1 init            1     0.0   20   sleep  0        120
9772 sh              1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
9773 corerotate     1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
   853 syslog-ng     1     0.0   20   sleep  0        356
   859 klogd         1     0.0   20   sleep  0         1
   910 inetd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         3
   920 portmap        1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
   931 crond           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         1
1090 openhpid       11     0.0   20   sleep  0        233
1111 hpilogd         1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
1240 hsl             1     0.0   20   sleep  0         79
1453 authd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         85
1497 cntrd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         2
1520 epsrd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         56
1571 imi             1     0.0   20   sleep  0       275
1594 irdpd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         23
1617 lacpd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         87
1638 mstpd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         75
1662 nsm             1     0.0   20   sleep  0        163
1685 ospfd          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         35
1708 pdmd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         23
1729 pimd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         32
1751 ripd            1     0.0   20   sleep  0         33
1775 ripngd         1     0.0   20   sleep  0         25
1797 rmond          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         64
1963 ntpd            1     0.0   20   sleep  0         15
2102 atlgetty       1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
2712 rpc.statd      1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
2716 rpc.statd      1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
2722 rpc.mountd     1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
2821 automount      1     0.0   20   sleep  0         82
2892 ntpd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         17
2912 sshd           1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0
 9774 login         1     0.0   20   sleep  0         2
12689 more          1     0.0   20   sleep  0         0

.
.
.
    
```

Table 8-2: Parameters in the output of the show cpu command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| CPU averages | Average CPU utilization for the periods stated. |
| System load averages | The average number of processes waiting for CPU time for the periods stated. |
| Current CPU load | Current CPU utilization specified by load types. |
| pid | Identifier number of the process. |

Table 8-2: Parameters in the output of the show cpu command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| name | A shortened name for the process |
| thrds | Number of threads in the process. |
| cpu% | Percentage of CPU utilization that this process is consuming. |
| pri | Process priority state. |
| state | Process state; one of "run", "sleep", "zombie", and "dead". |
| sleep% | Percentage of time that the process is in the sleep state. |
| runtime | The time that the process has been running for, measured in jiffies. A jiffy is the duration of one tick of the system timer interrupt. |

Related Commands

- [show memory](#)
- [show memory allocations](#)
- [show memory history](#)
- [show memory pools](#)
- [show process](#)

show cpu history

This command prints a graph showing the historical CPU utilization.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show cpu history`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This command’s output displays three graphs of the percentage CPU utilization:

- per second for the last minute, then
- per minute for the last hour, then
- per 30 minutes for the last 30 hours.

Examples To display a graph showing the historical CPU utilization of the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show cpu history
```

Output Figure 8-3: Example output from the show cpu history command

```

Per second CPU load history

100
 90
 80
 70
 60
 50
 40
 30
 20
 10 *****
 |...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...
 Oldest                                         Newest
      CPU load% per second (last 60 seconds)
      * = average CPU load%

Per minute CPU load history

100      *+
 90      +
 80
 70
 60
 50
 40
 30
 20
 10      *****
 |...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...
 Oldest                                         Newest
      CPU load% per minute (last 60 minutes)
      * = average CPU load%, + = maximum

Per (30) minute CPU load history

100
 90
 80
 70
 60
 50
 40
 30
 20
 10
 |...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...
 Oldest                                         Newest
      CPU load% per 30 minutes (last 60 values / 30 hours)
      * = average, - = minimum, + = maximum

.
.
.
    
```

- Related Commands**
- [show memory](#)
 - [show memory allocations](#)
 - [show memory pools](#)
 - [show process](#)

show debugging

This command displays information for all debugging options.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show debugging`

Default This command runs all the **show debugging** commands in alphabetical order.

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This command displays all debugging information, similar to the way the **show tech-support** command displays all show output for use by Allied Telesis authorized service personnel only.

Example To display all debugging information, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging
```

Output **Figure 8-4: Example output from the show debugging command**

```
awplus#show debugging
AAA debugging status:
  Authentication debugging is off
  Accounting debugging is off
  % DHCP Snooping service is disabled

802.1X debugging status:

EPSR debugging status:
  EPSR Info debugging is off
  EPSR Message debugging is off
  EPSR Packet debugging is off
  EPSR State debugging is off
IGMP Debugging status:
  IGMP Decoder debugging is off
  IGMP Encoder debugging is off
.
.
.
```

Related Commands

- show debugging aaa**
- show debugging dot1x**
- show debugging epsr**
- show debugging igmp**
- show debugging lacp**
- show debugging lldp**
- show debugging mstp**
- show debugging radius**
- show debugging snmp**

show ecofriendly

This command displays the switch's eco-friendly configuration status. The **ecofriendly led** configuration status are shown in the **show ecofriendly** output.

Syntax show ecofriendly

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the switch's eco-friendly configuration status, use the following command:

```
awplus# show ecofriendly
```

Output **Figure 8-5: Example output from the show ecofriendly command**

```
awplus#show ecofriendly
Front panel port LEDs          normal

Energy efficient ethernet
Port      Name          Configured  Status
port1.0.1 Port 1          off         -
port1.0.2                off         off
port1.0.3                off         -
port1.0.4 Port 4          off         -
port1.0.5                off         -
...
```

Table 8-3: Parameters in the output of the show ecofriendly command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| normal | The eco-friendly LED feature is disabled and port LEDs show the current state of the ports. This is the default setting. |
| off | The eco-friendly LED feature is enabled and power to the port LEDs is disabled. |
| Port | Displays the port number as assigned by the switch. |
| Name | Displays the port name if a name is configured for a port number. |
| Configured | Because LPI is not supported, this entry always shows "off" or a dash (-). |
| Status | Because LPI is not supported, this entry always shows "off" or a dash (-). |

Related Commands **ecofriendly led**

show interface memory

This command displays the shared memory used by either all interfaces, or the specified interface or interfaces. The output is useful for diagnostic purposes by Allied Telesis authorized service personnel.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show interface memory`
`show interface <port-list> memory`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>) a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix switch ports, static channel groups, and dynamic (LACP) channel groups in the same list |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the shared memory used by all interfaces, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface memory
```

To display the shared memory used by `port1.0.1` and `port1.0.5` to `port1.0.6`, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface port1.0.1,port1.0.5-1.0.6 memory
```

Output **Figure 8-6: Example output from the show interface <port-list> memory command**

```
awplus#show interface port1.0.1,port1.0.5-1.0.6 memory
Vlan blocking state shared memory usage
-----
Interface      shmidx      Bytes Used      natch      Status
port1.0.1      393228      512             1
port1.0.5      491535      512             1
port1.0.6      557073      512             1
```

Figure 8-7: Example output from the show interface memory command

```
awplus#show interface memory
Vlan blocking state shared memory usage
-----
Interface      shmidx      Bytes Used      natch      Status
port1.0.1      393228      512             1
port1.0.2      458766      512             1
port1.0.3      360459      512             1
port1.0.4      524304      512             1
port1.0.5      491535      512             1
port1.0.6      557073      512             1
port1.0.7      327690      512             1
port1.0.8      655380      512             1
port1.0.9      622611      512             1
.
.
port1.0.21     950301      512             1
port1.0.22     1048608     512             1
port1.0.23     1015839     512             1
port1.0.24     1081377     512             1
lo             425997      512             1
po1            1179684     512             1
po2            1212453     512             1
sa3            1245222     512             1
```

Related Commands

- show interface brief**
- show interface status**
- show interface switchport**

show memory

This command displays the memory used by each process that is currently running

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show memory [sort {size|peak|stk}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| sort | Changes the sorting order for the list of processes. If you do not specify this, then the list is sorted by percentage memory utilization. |
| size | Sort by the amount of memory the process is currently using. |
| peak | Sort by the amount of memory the process is currently using. |
| stk | Sort by the stack size of the process. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the memory used by the current running processes, use the command:

```
awplus# show memory
```

Output **Figure 8-8: Example output from the show memory command**

```
awplus#show memory sort stk
RAM total: 124384 kB; free: 64236 kB; buffers: 15888 kB

user processes
=====
 pid name          mem%  size(kB)  peak(kB)  data(kB)  stk(kB)  virt(kB)
 490 openhpid      1.5    1988     7480     1308      528      6704
 578 hsl           7.1   8940    29312     5148      312     21052
18986 imish        1.3    1660    13668     3876      172     13668
18931 imish        3.6    4548    13668     3876      172     13668
 576 imi           4.6    5772    14532     4428      144     14532
 572 nsm           4.9    6128    15092     4480      140     15092
 574 hostd        1.6    2048     8116     1876      140      8116
 586 cntrd        2.5    3168    12140     3288      140     12136
 606 sflowd       2.8    3564    12336     3408      140     12336
 610 authd        3.0    3808    12604     3472      140     12604
 616 mstpd        3.1    3856    12652     3480      140     12652
.
.
.
```

Table 8-4: Parameters in the output of the show memory command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| RAM total | Total amount of RAM memory free. |
| free | Available memory size. |
| buffers | Memory allocated kernel buffers. |
| pid | Identifier number for the process. |
| name | Short name used to describe the process. |
| mem% | Percentage of memory utilization the process is currently using. |
| size | Amount of memory currently used by the process. |
| peak | Greatest amount of memory ever used by the process. |
| data | Amount of memory used for data. |

Related Commands

- [show memory allocations](#)
- [show memory history](#)
- [show memory pools](#)
- [show memory shared](#)

show memory allocations

This command displays the memory allocations used by processes.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show memory allocations [<process>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <process> | Displays the memory allocation used by the specified process. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the memory allocations used by all processes on your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show memory allocations
```

Output **Figure 8-9: Example output from the show memory allocations command**

```
awplus#show memory allocations
Memory allocations for imi
-----

Current 15093760 (peak 15093760)

Statically allocated memory:
- binary/exe           : 1675264
- libraries            : 8916992
- bss/global data     : 2985984
- stack                : 139264

Dynamically allocated memory (heap):
- total allocated      : 1351680
- in use               : 1282440
- non-mmapped          : 1351680
- maximum total allocated : 1351680
- total free space     : 69240
- releasable           : 68968
- space in freed fastbins : 16

Context
filename:line  allocated  freed
+             lib.c:749    484
.
.
.
```

Related Commands

- [show memory](#)
- [show memory history](#)
- [show memory pools](#)
- [show memory shared](#)
- [show tech-support](#)

show memory history

This command prints a graph showing the historical memory usage.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show memory history`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This command’s output displays three graphs of the percentage memory utilization:

- per second for the last minute, then
- per minute for the last hour, then
- per 30 minutes for the last 30 hours.

Examples To show a graph displaying the historical memory usage, use the command:

```
awplus# show memory history
```

Output Figure 8-10: Example output from the show memory history command

```

Per minute memory utilization history
100
 90
 80
 70
 60
 50
 40*****
 30
 20
 10
 |...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...
 Oldest                                     Newest
   Memory utilization% per minute (last 60 minutes)
     * = average memory utilisation%.
.
.
.
-----

Per minute memory utilization history
100
 90
 80
 70
 60
 50
 40*****
 30
 20
 10
 |...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...|...
 Oldest                                     Newest
   Memory utilization% per minute (last 60 minutes)
     * = average memory utilisation%.
.
.
.

```

- Related Commands**
- [show memory allocations](#)
 - [show memory pools](#)
 - [show memory shared](#)
 - [show tech-support](#)

show memory pools

This command shows the memory pools used by processes.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show memory pools [<process>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><process></code> | Displays the memory pools used by the specified process. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the memory pools used by processes, use the command:

```
awplus# show memory pools
```

Output **Figure 8-11: Example output from the show memory pools command**

```
awplus#show memory pools
Memory pools for imi
-----

Current 15290368 (peak 15290368)

Statically allocated memory:
- binary/exe           : 1675264
- libraries            : 8916992
- bss/global data     : 2985984
- stack                : 139264

Dynamically allocated memory (heap):
- total allocated      : 1548288
- in use               : 1479816
- non-mmapped         : 1548288
- maximum total allocated : 1548288
- total free space    : 68472
- releasable          : 68200
- space in freed fastbins : 16
.
.
.
```

Related Commands

- [show memory allocations](#)
- [show memory history](#)
- [show tech-support](#)

show memory shared

This command displays shared memory allocation information. The output is useful for diagnostic purposes by Allied Telesis authorized service personnel.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show memory shared

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display information about the shared memory allocation used on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show memory shared
```

Output **Figure 8-12: Example output from the show memory shared command**

```
awplus#show memory shared
Shared Memory Status
-----
Segment allocated   = 39
Pages allocated     = 39
Pages resident      = 11

Shared Memory Limits
-----
Maximum number of segments           = 4096
Maximum segment size (kbytes)        = 32768
Maximum total shared memory (pages) = 2097152
Minimum segment size (bytes)         = 1
```

Related Commands [show memory allocations](#)
[show memory history](#)
[show memory sort](#)

show process

This command lists a summary of the current running processes.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show process [sort {cpu|mem}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| sort | Changes the sorting order for the list of processes. |
| cpu | Sorts the list by the percentage of CPU utilization. |
| mem | Sorts the list by the percentage of memory utilization. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display a summary of the current running processes, use the command:

```
awplus# show process
```

Output **Figure 8-13: Example output from the show process command**

```

CPU load for 1 minute: 0%; 5 minutes: 3%; 15 minutes: 0%
RAM total: 514920 kB; free: 382600 kB; buffers: 16368 kB

user processes
=====
pid name          thrds  cpu%  mem%  pri  state  sleep%
962 pss            12    0    6    25  sleep    5
1  init             1    0    0    25  sleep    0
797 syslog-ng      1    0    0    16  sleep   88

kernel threads
=====
pid name          cpu%  pri  state  sleep%
71  aio/0           0    20  sleep  0
3   events/0       0    10  sleep  98
.
.
.

```

Table 8-5: Parameters in the output from the show process command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| CPU load | Average CPU load for the given period. |
| RAM total | Total memory size. |
| free | Available memory. |
| buffers | Memory allocated to kernel buffers. |
| pid | Identifier for the process. |

Table 8-5: Parameters in the output from the show process command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| name | Short name to describe the process. |
| thrds | Number of threads in the process. |
| cpu% | Percentage of CPU utilization that this process is consuming. |
| mem% | Percentage of memory utilization that this process is consuming. |
| pri | Process priority. |
| state | Process state; one of "run", "sleep", "stop", "zombie", or "dead". |
| sleep% | Percentage of time the process is in the sleep state. |

Related Commands [show cpu](#)
[show cpu history](#)

show reboot history

Use this command to display the switch's reboot history.

Syntax `show reboot history`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the reboot history, use the command:

```
awplus# show reboot history
```

Output **Figure 8-14: Example output from the show reboot history command**

```
awplus#show reboot history

<date>      <time>      <type>      <description>
-----
2014-01-10  01:42:04    Expected    User Request
2014-01-10  01:35:31    Expected    User Request
2014-01-10  01:16:25    Unexpected  Rebooting due to critical process (network/nsm)
failure!
2014-01-10  01:11:04    Unexpected  Rebooting due to critical process (network/nsm)
failure!
2014-01-09  19:56:16    Expected    User Request
2014-01-09  19:51:20    Expected    User Request
```

Table 8-6: Parameters in the output from the show reboot history command

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Unexpected | Reboot is counted by the continuous reboot prevention feature if the reboot event occurs in the time period specified for continuous reboot prevention. |
| Expected | Reboot is not counted by continuous reboot prevention feature. |
| user request | User initiated reboot via the CLI. |

Related Commands [show tech-support](#)

show router-id

Use this command to show the Router ID of the current system.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show router-id

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the Router ID of the current system, use the command:

```
awplus# show router-id
```

Output **Figure 8-15: Example output from the show router-id command**

```
awplus>show router-id
Router ID: 10.55.0.2 (automatic)
```

show system

This command displays general system information about the device, including the hardware installed, memory, and software versions loaded. It also displays location and contact details when these have been set.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show system

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display configuration information, use the command:

```
awplus# show system
```

Output **Figure 8-16: Example output from the show system command**

```
awplus#show system
Switch System Status                               Mon Mar 10 04:12:14 2014

Board      ID  Bay  Board Name                Rev  Serial number
-----
Base       367      x210-16XT                B-0  G22SC403U
-----
RAM:   Total: 124384 kB   Free: 64324kB
Flash: 63.0MB Used: 34.4 MB Available: 28.6MB
-----
Environment Status: Normal
Uptime: 0 days 04:26:02
Bootloader version : 1.0.9

Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Software version  : 5.4.4
Build date        : Mon Mar 03 09:27:05 NZST 2014

Current boot config: flash:/default.cfg (file exists)
User Configured Territory: japan

System Name
awplus

System Contact

System Location
```

Related Commands [show system environment](#)

show system environment

This command displays the current environmental status of your device and any attached PSU, XEM, or other expansion option. The environmental status covers information about temperatures, fans, and voltage.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show system environment`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the system’s environmental status, use the command:

```
awplus# show system environment
```

Output **Figure 8-17: Example output from the show system environment command**

```
awplus#show system environment
Environment Monitoring Status

Overall Status: Normal

Resource ID: 1 Name: x230-10GP
ID Sensor (Units) Reading Low Limit High Limit Status
1 Fan: Fan 1 (Rpm) 4825 2025 - Ok
2 Voltage: 2.5V (Volts) 2.476 2.339 2.859 Ok
3 Voltage: 1.0V (Volts) 1.006 0.896 1.099 Ok
4 Voltage: 3.3V (Volts) 3.325 3.028 3.545 Ok
5 Voltage: 1.5V (Volts) 1.538 1.335 1.649 Ok
6 Voltage: 12V (Volts) 11.905 10.767 13.166 Ok
7 Temp: Unused (Degrees C) 53 -11 80 Ok
```

Related Commands [show system](#)

show system interrupts

Use this command to display the number of interrupts for each IRQ (Interrupt Request) used to interrupt input lines on a PIC (Programmable Interrupt Controller) on your switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show system interrupts`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display information about the number of interrupts for each IRQ in your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show system interrupts
```

Output **Figure 8-18: Example output from the show system interrupts command**

```
awplus#show system interrupts
CPU0
27: 1387835593      GIC Disabled  1  iproc_gtimer
29:          0      GIC Disabled  1  twd
62:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
63:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
64:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
65:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
66:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
67:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
68:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
69:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
70:          0      GIC Enabled  0  IDM
```

Related Commands [show system environment](#)

show system mac

This command displays the physical MAC address of the switch.

Syntax `show system mac`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the physical MAC address enter the following command:

```
awplus# show system mac
```

Output **Figure 8-19: Example output from the show system mac command**

```
awplus#show system mac  
eccd.6d9d.4eed
```

show system pluggable

This command displays **brief** pluggable transceiver information showing the pluggable type, the pluggable serial number, and the pluggable port on the switch. Different types of pluggable transceivers are supported in different models of switch. See your Allied Telesis dealer for more information about the models of pluggables that your switch supports.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show system pluggable [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.9</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.9-1.0.10</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.9,port1.0.10.</code> |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display brief information about all installed pluggable transceivers, use the command:

```
awplus# show system pluggable
```

Output **Figure 8-20: Example output from the show system pluggable command**

```
awplus#show system pluggable
System Pluggable Information
```

| Port | Vendor | Device | Serial Number | Datecode | Type |
|-------|--------|-----------|------------------|----------|------------|
| 1.0.9 | ATI | AT-SP10SR | A04440R112200058 | 11052300 | 10GBASE-SR |

Table 8-7: Parameters in the output from the show system pluggables command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Port | Specifies the vendor's name for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Vendor Name | Specifies the vendor's name for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Device Name | Specifies the device name for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Device Type | Specifies the device type for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Serial Number | Specifies the serial number for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Manufacturing Datecode | Specifies the manufacturing datecode for the installed pluggable transceiver. Checking the manufacturing datecode with the vendor may be useful when determining Laser Diode aging issues. See the Troubleshoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues section in the System Configuration and Monitoring Commands chapter. |
| SFP Laser Wavelength | Specifies the laser wavelength of the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Datecode | Specifies the manufacturing datecode for the installed pluggable transceiver. Checking the manufacturing datecode with the vendor may be useful when determining Laser Diode aging issues. See the Troubleshoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues section in the System Configuration and Monitoring Commands chapter. |
| Device Type | Specifies the device type for the installed pluggable transceiver |

Related Commands

- show system environment**
- show system pluggable detail**
- show system pluggable diagnostics**

show system pluggable detail

This command displays detailed pluggable transceiver information showing the pluggable type, the pluggable serial number, and the pluggable port on the switch. Different types of pluggable transceivers are supported in different models of switch. See your Allied Telesis dealer for more information about the models of pluggables that your switch supports.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show system pluggable [<port-list>] detail`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | <p>The ports to display information about. The port list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.9</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.9-1.0.10</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.9, port1.0.10.</code> |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

In addition to the information about pluggable transceivers displayed using the [show system pluggable](#) command (port, manufacturer, serial number, manufacturing datecode, and type information), the [show system pluggable detail](#) command displays the following information:

- **SFP Laser Wavelength:** Specifies the laser wavelength of the installed pluggable transceiver
- **Single mode Fiber:** Specifies the link length supported by the pluggable transceiver using single mode fiber
- **OM1 (62.5µm) Fiber:** Specifies the link length (in µm - micron) supported by the pluggable transceiver using 62.5 micron multi-mode fiber.
- **OM2 (50 µm) Fiber:** Specifies the link length (in µm - micron) supported by the pluggable transceiver using 50 micron multi-mode fiber.
- **Diagnostic Calibration:** Specifies whether the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM Internal or External Calibration.
 - « **Internal** is displayed if the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM Internal Calibration.
 - « **External** is displayed if the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM External Calibration.
 - « - is displayed if SFP DDM Internal Calibration or External Calibration is not supported.
- **Power Monitoring:** Displays the received power measurement type, which can be either **OMA** (Optical Module Amplitude) or **Avg** (Average Power) measured in µW.

Note For parameters that are not supported or not specified, a hyphen is displayed instead.



Example To display detailed information about the pluggable transceivers installed in a particular port on the switch, use a command like:

```
awplus# show system pluggable port1.0.9 detail
```

To display detailed information about all the pluggable transceivers installed on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show system pluggable detail
```

Output **Figure 8-21: Example output from the show system pluggable detail command on a switch**

```
awplus#show system pluggable detail
System Pluggable Information Detail

Port1.0.9
=====
Vendor Name:           ATI
Device Name:          AT-SP10SR
Device Type:          10GBASE-SR
Serial Number:        A04440R1112200058
Manufacturing Datecode: 11052300
SFP Laser Wavelength: 850nm
Link Length Supported
  Single Mode Fiber : -
  OM1 (62.5um) Fiber: 30m
  OM2 (50um) Fiber  : 80m
Diagnostic Calibration: Internal
Power Monitoring:     Average
FEC BER support:      -
```

Table 8-8: Parameters in the output from the show system pluggables detail command:

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Port | Specifies the port the pluggable transceiver is installed in. |
| Vendor Name | Specifies the vendor's name for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Device Name | Specifies the device name for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Device Type | Specifies the device type for the installed pluggable transceiver.. |
| Serial Number | Specifies the serial number for the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Manufacturing Datecode | Specifies the manufacturing datecode for the installed pluggable transceiver. Checking the manufacturing datecode with the vendor may be useful when determining Laser Diode aging issues. See the Trouble-shoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues section in the System Configuration and Monitoring Commands chapter. |
| SFP Laser Wavelength | Specifies the laser wavelength of the installed pluggable transceiver. |
| Single Mode Fiber | Specifies the link length supported by the pluggable transceiver using single mode fiber. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| OM1 (62.5um) Fiber | Specifies the link length (in μm - micron) supported by the pluggable transceiver using 62.5 micron multi-mode fiber. |
| OM2 (50um) Fiber | Specifies the link length (in μm - micron) supported by the pluggable transceiver using 50 micron multi-mode fiber. |
| Diagnostic Calibration | Specifies whether the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM Internal or External Calibration: Internal is displayed if the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM Internal Calibration. External is displayed if the pluggable transceiver supports DDM or DOM External Calibration. - is displayed if SFP DDM Internal Calibration or External Calibration is not supported. |
| Power Monitoring | Displays the received power measurement type, which can be either OMA (Optical Module Amplitude) or Avg (Average Power) measured in μW . |

Related Commands [show system environment](#)
[show system pluggable](#)
[show system pluggable diagnostics](#)

show system pluggable diagnostics

This command displays diagnostic information about SFP pluggable transceivers, which support Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM).

Different types of pluggable transceivers are supported in different models of switch. See your switch's Datasheet for more information about the models of pluggables that your switch supports.

For information on output options, see **“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.**

Syntax `show system pluggable [<port-list>] diagnostics`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. port1.0.9) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.9-1.0.10 ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.9, port1.0.10. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Modern optical SFP transceivers support Digital Diagnostics Monitoring (DDM) functions.

Diagnostic monitoring features allow you to monitor real-time parameters of the pluggable transceiver, such as optical output power, optical input power, temperature, laser bias current, and transceiver supply voltage. Additionally, RX LOS (Loss of Signal) is shown when the received optical level is below a preset threshold. Monitor these parameters to check on the health of all transceivers, selected transceivers or a specific transceiver installed in a switch.

Examples To display detailed information about all pluggable transceivers installed on a standalone switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show system pluggable diagnostics
```

Output **Figure 8-22: Example output from the show system pluggable diagnostics command on a switch**

```
awplus#show system pluggable diagnostics
System Pluggable Information Diagnostics
```

| Port1.0.9 | Status Reading | Alarm | Alarms | | Warning | Warnings | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------|--------|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| | | | Max | Min | | Max | Min |
| Temp: (Degrees C) | 31.105 | - | 78.00 | -13.00 | - | 73.000 | -8.000 |
| Vcc: (Volts) | 3.283 | - | 3.800 | 2.800 | - | 3.500 | 3.100 |
| Tx Bias: (mA) | - | Low | 15.440 | 0.440 | Low | -12.440 | 2.440 |
| Tx Power: (mW) | 0.357 | Low | 1.175 | 0.200 | Low | 0.933 | 0.251 |
| Rx Power: (mW) | - | Low | 1.259 | 0.049 | Low | 1.000 | 0.062 |
| Rx LOS: | Rx Down | | | | | | |

Output **Table 8-9: Parameters in the output from the show system pluggables diagnostics command**

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Temp (Degrees C) | Shows the temperature inside the transceiver. |
| Vcc (Volts) | Shows voltage supplied to the transceiver. |
| Tx Bias (mA) | Shows current to the Laser Diode in the transceiver. |
| Tx Power (mW) | Shows the amount of light transmitted from the transceiver. |
| Rx Power (mW) | Shows the amount of light received in the transceiver. |
| Rx LOS | Shows when the received optical level falls below a preset threshold. |

Related Commands [show system environment](#)
[show system pluggable](#)
[show system pluggable detail](#)

show system serialnumber

This command shows the serial number information for the switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show system serialnumber`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the serial number information for the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show system serialnumber
```

Output **Figure 8-23: Example output from the show system serialnumber command**

```
awplus#show system serialnumber
45AX5300X
```

show tech-support

This command generates system and debugging information for the switch and saves it to a file. You can optionally limit the command output to display only information for a given protocol or feature.

The command generates a large amount of output, which is saved to a file in compressed format. The output file name can be specified by outfile option. If the output file already exists, a new file name is generated with the current time stamp. If the output filename does not end with ".gz", then ".gz" is appended to the filename. Since output files may be too large for Flash on the switch we recommend saving files to either an SD card or a USB storage device whenever possible to avoid switch lockup. This method is not likely to be appropriate when running the working set option of ATMF across a range of physically separated switches.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

The output of this command may include the result of the following commands:

Syntax `show tech-support {all|[atmf|dhcpcsn|epsr|igmp|ip|ipv6|mld|pim|stp|system|tacacs+]} [outfile <filename>]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| all | Display full information |
| atmf | Display ATMF- specific information |
| dhcpcsn | Display DHCP Snooping specific information |
| epsr | Display EPSR specific information |
| igmp | Display IGMP specific information |
| ip | Display IP specific information |
| ipv6 | Display IPv6 specific information |
| mld | Display MLD specific information |
| outfile | Output file name |
| pim | Display PIM related information |
| stp | Display STP specific information |
| system | Display general system information |
| tacacs+ | Display TACACS+ information |
| | Output modifier |
| > | Output redirection |
| >> | Output redirection (append) |
| <filename> | Specifies a name for the output file. If no name is specified, this file will be saved as: tech-support.txt.gz. |

Default Captures **all** information for the switch.

By default the output is saved to the file 'tech-support.txt.gz' in the current directory. If this file already exists in the current directory then a new file is generated with the time stamp appended to the file name, for example 'tech-support20080109.txt.gz', so the last saved file is retained.

Usage This command is useful for collecting a large amount of information about all protocols or specific protocols on your switch so that it can then be analyzed for troubleshooting purposes. The output of this command can be provided to technical support staff when reporting a problem.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples show tech-support

```
awplus# show tech-support
```

Note  You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see **[“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)**

Output The output of this command may include the result of the following commands:

```
show arp
show arp security
show arp security interface
show arp security statistics
show boot
show counter dhcp-client
show counter log
show counter mail
show counter ntp
show counter ping-poll
show counter snmp-server
show cpu
show cpu history
show diagnostic channel-group
show etherchannel
show etherchannel detail
show exception log
show interface
show interface brief
show ip dhcp snooping
show ip dhcp snooping acl
show ip dhcp snooping binding
show ip dhcp snooping interface
show ip dhcp snooping statistics
show ip igmp groups
show ip igmp interface
show ip interface
show ip route
show ip source binding
show lacp-counter
show lacp sys-id
show log
show log permanent
```

show memory
show memory allocations
show memory history
show memory pools
show ntp associations
show ntp status
show platform
show platform port
show reboot history
show running-config
show spanning-tree
show startup-config
show static-channel-group
show system
show system environment
show system pluggable
show users
show vlan brief (see the **show vlan** command)

speed (asyn)

This command changes the console speed from the switch. Note that a change in console speed is applied for subsequent console sessions. Exit the current session to enable the console speed change using the **clear line console** command.

Syntax `speed <console-speed-in-bps>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <code><console-speed-in-bps></code> | Console speed Baud rate in bps (bits per second). |
| 1200 | 1200 Baud |
| 2400 | 2400 Baud |
| 9600 | 9600 Baud |
| 19200 | 19200 Baud |
| 38400 | 38400 Baud |
| 57600 | 57600 Baud |
| 115200 | 115200 Baud |

Default The default console speed baud rate is 9600 bps.

Mode Line Configuration

Usage This command is used to change the console (asyn) port speed. Set the console speed to match the transmission rate of the device connected to the console (asyn) port on your switch.

Example To set the terminal console (asyn0) port speed from the switch to 57600 bps, then exit the session, and log in again to enable the change, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# speed 57600
awplus(config-line)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# exit
```

The new console speed of 57600 bps is applied after exiting the session and before login.

```
awplus login:
Password:
awplus>
```

Related Commands

- line**
- clear line console**
- show running-config**
- show startup-config**
- speed**

system territory

This command sets the territory of the system.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return the territory to its default setting of `japan`.

For information on output options, see **“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.**

Syntax `system territory {australia|nz|europe|japan|usa|china|korea}`
`no system territory`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-------------|
| <code>australia</code> | Australia |
| <code>nz</code> | New Zealand |
| <code>europe</code> | Europe |
| <code>japan</code> | Japan |
| <code>usa</code> | USA |
| <code>china</code> | China |
| <code>korea</code> | Korea |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the territory to USA, enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# system territory usa
```

Validation Commands `show system`

terminal monitor

Use this command to display debugging output on a terminal.

To display the cursor after a line of debugging output, press the Enter key.

Use the command **terminal no monitor** to stop displaying debugging output on the terminal, or use the timeout option to stop displaying debugging output on the terminal after a set time.

Syntax `terminal monitor [<1-60>]`

`terminal no monitor`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-60> | Set a timeout between 1 and 60 seconds for terminal output. |

Default Disabled

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display debugging output on a terminal, enter the command:

```
awplus# terminal monitor
```

To specify timeout of debugging output after 60 seconds, enter the command:

```
awplus# terminal monitor 60
```

To stop displaying debugging output on the terminal, use the command:

```
awplus# terminal no monitor
```

Related Commands All debug commands

undebug all

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug all** command.

Chapter 9: Debugging and Logging



| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Introduction | 9.2 |
| Debugging | 9.2 |
| Logging to a Terminal | 9.2 |
| Turning Off Debugging | 9.3 |
| Logging..... | 9.3 |
| Log Outputs | 9.4 |

Introduction

AlliedWare Plus™ has a comprehensive debugging and logging facility in various protocols and components. This chapter describes how to start/stop debugging and logging. For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure logging, see [Chapter 10, Logging Commands](#).

Debugging

Many protocols have debug commands. Debug commands, when used with the parameters, log protocol-specific information. For example, using the **debug mstp protocol** command, results in the device writing all debugging messages generated by the MSTP algorithm to the logging system.

On using a debug command, the protocol continues to generate output until the **no** parameter is used with the command. To specify where logging output is sent, and the level of events to log, use the **log** commands in [Chapter 10, Logging Commands](#).

Logging to a Terminal

To start debugging to the terminal:

Step 1: Turn on the debug options by using the relevant debug command

Step 2: Run the terminal monitor command

```
awplus> enable
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug <protocol> (parameter)
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# terminal monitor
```

Sample Output This is a sample output of the **debug rsvp events** command displayed on the terminal:

```
awplus#terminal monitor
Dec  2 16:41:49 localhost RSVP[6518]: RSVP: RSVP message sent to
10.10.23.60/32 via interface vlan2
Dec  2 16:41:57 localhost RSVP[6518]: RSVP: Received an RSVP message
of type RSVP Reservation from 192.168.0.60 via interface vlan2
Dec  2 16:41:57 localhost RSVP[6518]: RSVP: Received a RESV message
from 10.10.23.60/32
```

Turning Off Debugging

To turn off debugging, use the `no debug` or `undebug` command. When a protocol is specified with the `no debug` or `undebug` commands, debugging is stopped for the specified protocol. To stop all debugging, use the `all` parameter with these commands.

```
awplus(config)# no debug rstp
```

or

```
awplus#undebug all
```

Logging

Protocols generate important debugging messages by default, and send them to the logging system. Additional more detailed messages can be generated by enabling debugging ([“Debugging” on page 9.2](#)).

Messages can be filtered based on: the program that generated the message, the severity level of the message, the type of facility that generated the message, substrings within the message text.

The severity levels in order are:

- emergencies
- alerts
- critical
- errors
- warnings
- notifications
- informational
- debugging

The facility categories are:

- auth Security/authorization messages
- authpriv Security/authorization messages (private)
- cron Clock daemon
- daemon System daemons
- ftp FTP daemon
- kern Kernel messages
- lpr Line printer subsystem
- mail Mail system
- news Network news subsystem
- syslog Messages generated internally by syslogd
- user Random user-level messages
- uucp UUCP subsystem

Log Outputs

The following types of logging output are available:

- buffered
- permanent
- terminal
- console
- host
- email

Buffered log

The buffered log is a file stored in RAM on the device. Because it is stored in RAM its content does not survive a reboot of the device. A device can only have one instance of the buffered log. The buffered log is enabled by default and has a filter to include messages with a severity level of 'notifications' and above. The buffered log can be enabled or disabled using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered
awplus(config)# no log buffered
```

Additional filters can be added and removed using the commands described in [log buffered \(filter\) command on page 10.8](#):

```
awplus(config)# log buffered {facility|level|msgtext|program}
awplus(config)# no log buffered {facility|level|msgtext|
program}
```

The following log buffered commands are available:

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>show log</code> | Displays the entire contents of the buffered log |
| <code>show log tail</code> | Displays the 10 most recent entries in the buffered log. |
| <code>show log tail <10-250></code> | Displays a specified number of the most recent entries in the buffered log. |
| <code>show log config</code> | Displays the configuration of all log outputs |
| <code>log buffered size</code> | Specify the amount of memory the buffered log may use. |
| <code>clear log</code> | Remove the contents of the buffered log (and permanent log if it exists) |
| <code>clear log buffered</code> | Remove the contents of the buffered log only |
| <code>default log buffered</code> | Restore the buffered log to its default configuration |

Permanent log The permanent log is a file stored in NVS on the device. The content of the permanent log is retained over a reboot.

A device can only have one instance of the permanent log. The permanent log is enabled by default and has a filter to include messages with a severity level of 'warning' and above. The permanent log can be disabled using the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log permanent
```

Additional filters can be added and removed using the commands described in **log permanent (filter)**:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log permanent {facility|level|msgtext|
program}
awplus(config)# no log permanent {facility|level|msgtext|
program}
```

Table 9-1: Permanent log commands

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>show log permanent</code> | Display the entire contents of the permanent log |
| <code>show log permanent tail</code> | Display the 10 most recent entries in the permanent log |
| <code>show log permanent tail <10-250></code> | Display a specified number of the most recent entries in the permanent log |
| <code>show log config</code> | Display the configuration of all log outputs |
| <code>log permanent size</code> | Specify the amount of memory the permanent log may use |
| <code>clear log</code> | Remove the contents of the buffered log and permanent log |
| <code>clear log permanent</code> | Remove the contents of the permanent log only |
| <code>default log permanent</code> | Restore the permanent log to its default configuration |

Host log A host log sends log messages to a remote syslog server. A device may have many syslog hosts configured. To configure or remove a host use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host <ip-addr>9
awplus(config)# no log host <ip-addr>9
```

where <ip-addr> is the IP address of the remote syslog server.

There are no default filters associated with host outputs when they are created. Filters can be added and removed with the **log host (filter)** command on page 10.23.

It is not possible to view the log messages sent to this type of output as they are not retained on the device. They must be viewed on the remote device. The other host log commands are:

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>show log config</code> | Displays the configuration of all log outputs |
| <code>log host time</code> | Adjust the time information in messages to a time zone other than the one configured on this device |
| <code>default log host <ip-address></code> | Restores the device default settings for log sent to a remote syslog server. |

Email log An email log sends log messages to an email address. A device may have many email logs configured. To configure or remove an email log use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email <email-address>
awplus(config)# no log email <email-address>
```

where <email-address> is the destination email address.

There are no default filters associated with email outputs when they are created. Filters can be added and removed with the commands described in **log email (filter)**:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email <email-address> {facility|level|
msgtext|program}
awplus(config)# no log email <email-address> {facility|
level|msgtext|program}
```

It is not possible to view the log messages sent to this type of output as they are not retained on the device. They must be viewed by the email recipient.

The other email log commands are:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>show log config</code> | Displays the configuration of all log outputs |
| <code>log email time</code> | Adjust the time information in messages to a time zone other than the one configured on this device |
| <code>default log email</code> | Restores the device default settings for log messages sent to an email address. |

Note  An email server and "from" address must be configured on the device in order for email logs to work:

- mail from <email-address>
- mail smtpserver <ip-address>

where the <email-address> is the 'From:' field on the sent email, and the <ip-address> is the email's destination SMTP server.

Email logs are sent in batches of approximately 20 messages and have the subject line "Log messages"

Chapter 10: Logging Commands



| | |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 10.2 |
| clear exception log | 10.2 |
| clear log | 10.2 |
| clear log buffered | 10.3 |
| clear log permanent | 10.3 |
| default log buffered | 10.4 |
| default log console | 10.4 |
| default log email | 10.5 |
| default log host | 10.5 |
| default log monitor | 10.6 |
| default log permanent | 10.6 |
| log buffered | 10.7 |
| log buffered (filter) | 10.8 |
| log buffered size | 10.11 |
| log console | 10.12 |
| log console (filter) | 10.13 |
| log email | 10.16 |
| log email (filter) | 10.17 |
| log email time | 10.20 |
| log host | 10.22 |
| log host (filter) | 10.23 |
| log host time | 10.26 |
| log monitor (filter) | 10.28 |
| log permanent | 10.30 |
| log permanent (filter) | 10.31 |
| log permanent size | 10.33 |
| log-rate-limit nsm | 10.34 |
| show counter log | 10.35 |
| show exception log | 10.36 |
| show log | 10.37 |
| show log config | 10.39 |
| show log permanent | 10.42 |
| show running-config log | 10.43 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure logging.

clear exception log

This command resets the contents of the exception log, but does not remove the associated core files.

Syntax `clear exception log`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear exception log
```

clear log

This command removes the contents of the buffered and permanent logs.

Syntax `clear log`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete the contents of the buffered and permanent log use the command:

```
awplus# clear log
```

**Validation
Commands** [show log](#)

Related Commands [clear log buffered](#)
[clear log permanent](#)

clear log buffered

This command removes the contents of the buffered log.

Syntax `clear log buffered`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete the contents of the buffered log use the following commands:

```
awplus# clear log buffered
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log`

Related Commands `clear log`
`clear log permanent`

clear log permanent

This command removes the contents of the permanent log.

Syntax `clear log permanent`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete the contents of the permanent log use the following commands:

```
awplus# clear log permanent
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log`

Related Commands `clear log`
`clear log buffered`

default log buffered

This command restores the default settings for the buffered log stored in RAM. By default the size of the buffered log is 50 kB and it accepts messages with the severity level of “warnings” and above.

Syntax `default log buffered`

Default The buffered log is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the buffered log to its default settings use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log buffered
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log config`

Related Commands `log buffered`
`log buffered size`

default log console

This command restores the default settings for log messages sent to the terminal when a `log console` command is issued. By default all messages are sent to the console when a `log console` command is issued.

Syntax `default log console`

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the log console to its default settings use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log console
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log config`

Related Commands `log console`
`log console (filter)`

default log email

This command restores the default settings for log messages sent to an email address. By default no filters are defined for email addresses. Filters must be defined before messages will be sent. This command also restores the remote syslog server time offset value to local (no offset).

Syntax `default log email <email-address>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><email-address></code> | The email address to send log messages to |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the default settings for log messages sent to the email address `admin@alliedtelesis.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log email admin@alliedtelesis.com
```

Related Commands [show log config](#)

default log host

This command restores the default settings for log sent to a remote syslog server. By default no filters are defined for remote syslog servers. Filters must be defined before messages will be sent. This command also restores the remote syslog server time offset value to local (no offset).

Syntax `default log host <ip-addr>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-addr></code> | The IP address of a remote syslog server |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the default settings for messages sent to the remote syslog server with IP address `10.32.16.21` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log host 10.32.16.21
```

Validation Commands [show log config](#)

Related Commands [log email](#)

default log monitor

This command restores the default settings for log messages sent to the terminal when a **terminal monitor** command is used.

Syntax `default log monitor`

Default All messages are sent to the terminal when a **terminal monitor** command is used.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the log monitor to its default settings use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log monitor
```

Related Commands [log monitor \(filter\)](#)
[show log config](#)

default log permanent

This command restores the default settings for the permanent log stored in NVS. By default, the size of the permanent log is 50 kB and it accepts messages with the severity level of warnings and above.

Syntax `default log permanent`

Default The permanent log is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To restore the permanent log to its default settings use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# default log permanent
```

Related Commands [log permanent](#)
[log permanent size](#)
[show log config](#)

log buffered

This command configures the device to store log messages in RAM. Messages stored in RAM are not retained on the device over a restart. Once the buffered log reaches its configured maximum allowable size old messages will be deleted to make way for new ones.

Syntax log buffered
no log buffered

Default The buffered log is configured by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configured the device to store log messages in RAM use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered
```

To configure the device to not store log messages in a RAM buffer use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log buffered
```

**Validation
Commands** show log config

Related Commands default log buffered
log buffered (filter)
log buffered size

log buffered (filter)

Use this command to create a filter to select messages to be sent to the buffered log. Selection can be based on the priority/ severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a sub-string within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

The **no** variant of this command removes the corresponding filter, so that the specified messages are no longer sent to the buffered log.

Syntax `log buffered [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
[facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]`

`no log buffered [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
[facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]`

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|--|----------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|---|------|---|------|---------------------------------------|------|-------------------|----------|-----------------|--------|-------------------------|
| level | Filter messages to the buffered log by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <level> | <p>The minimum severity of message to send to the buffered log. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity:</p> <table> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages to the buffered log by program. Include messages from a specified program in the buffered log. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> | <p>The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case-sensitive) that you find in the log output.</p> <table> <tr> <td>rsvp</td> <td>Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dot1x</td> <td>IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control</td> </tr> <tr> <td>lacp</td> <td>Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>stp</td> <td>Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rstp</td> <td>Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mstp</td> <td>Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imi</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface (IMI)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imish</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>epsr</td> <td>Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>irdp</td> <td>ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rmon</td> <td>Remote Monitoring</td> </tr> <tr> <td>loopprot</td> <td>Loop Protection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dhcpsn</td> <td>DHCP snooping (DHCP SN)</td> </tr> </table> | rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | rmon | Remote Monitoring | loopprot | Loop Protection | dhcpsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) |
| rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rmon | Remote Monitoring | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| loopprot | Loop Protection | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dhcpsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|--|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---|------------------|------------|
| <code>facility</code> | Filter messages to the buffered log by syslog facility. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><facility></code> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from in the buffered log: <table border="0"> <tr> <td><code>kern</code></td> <td>Kernel messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>user</code></td> <td>Random user-level messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>mail</code></td> <td>Mail system</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>daemon</code></td> <td>System daemons</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>auth</code></td> <td>Security/authorization messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>syslog</code></td> <td>Messages generated internally by syslogd</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>lpr</code></td> <td>Line printer subsystem</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>news</code></td> <td>Network news subsystem</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>uucp</code></td> <td>UUCP subsystem</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>cron</code></td> <td>Clock daemon</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>authpriv</code></td> <td>Security/authorization messages (private)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>ftp</code></td> <td>FTP daemon</td> </tr> </table> | <code>kern</code> | Kernel messages | <code>user</code> | Random user-level messages | <code>mail</code> | Mail system | <code>daemon</code> | System daemons | <code>auth</code> | Security/authorization messages | <code>syslog</code> | Messages generated internally by syslogd | <code>lpr</code> | Line printer subsystem | <code>news</code> | Network news subsystem | <code>uucp</code> | UUCP subsystem | <code>cron</code> | Clock daemon | <code>authpriv</code> | Security/authorization messages (private) | <code>ftp</code> | FTP daemon |
| <code>kern</code> | Kernel messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>user</code> | Random user-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>mail</code> | Mail system | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>daemon</code> | System daemons | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>auth</code> | Security/authorization messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>syslog</code> | Messages generated internally by syslogd | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>lpr</code> | Line printer subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>news</code> | Network news subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>uucp</code> | UUCP subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>cron</code> | Clock daemon | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>authpriv</code> | Security/authorization messages (private) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>ftp</code> | FTP daemon | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>msgtext</code> | Select messages containing a certain text string (maximum 128 characters). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><text-string></code> | A text string to match (maximum 128 characters). This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Default By default the buffered log has a filter to select messages whose severity level is “notices (5)” or higher. This filter may be removed using the **no** variant of this command.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To add a filter to send all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the buffered log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered level notices program epsr
```

To add a filter to send all messages containing the text “Bridging initialization”, to the buffered log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered msgtext Bridging initialization
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the buffered log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log buffered level notices program epsr
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization", to the buffered log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log buffered msgtext Bridging initialization
```

**Validation
Commands** **show log config**

Related Commands **default log buffered**
 log buffered
 log buffered size

log buffered size

This command configures the amount of memory that the buffered log is permitted to use. Once this memory allocation has been filled old messages will be deleted to make room for new messages.

Syntax `log buffered size <50-250>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code><50-250></code> | Size of the RAM log in kilobytes |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To allow the buffered log to use up to 100 kB of RAM use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered size 100
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log config`

Related Commands `default log buffered`
`log buffered`

log console

This command configures the device to send log messages to consoles. The console log is configured by default to send messages to the devices main console port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to configure the device not to send log messages to consoles.

Syntax log console
no log console

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure the device to send log messages use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log console
```

To configure the device not to send log messages in all consoles use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log console
```

**Validation
Commands** show log config

Related Commands log console (filter)

log console (filter)

This command creates a filter to select messages to be sent to all consoles when the log console command is given. Selection can be based on the priority/severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a sub-string within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

Syntax

```
log console [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
           [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]

no log console [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
              [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]
```

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|--|----------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|---|------|---|------|---------------------------------------|------|-------------------|----------|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|
| level | Filter messages by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <level> | <p>The minimum severity of message to send. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages by program. Include messages from a specified program. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> | <p>The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case-sensitive) that you find in the log output.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>rsvp</td> <td>Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dot1x</td> <td>IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control</td> </tr> <tr> <td>lACP</td> <td>Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>stp</td> <td>Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rstp</td> <td>Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mstp</td> <td>Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imi</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface (IMI)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imish</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>epsr</td> <td>Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>irdp</td> <td>ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rmon</td> <td>Remote Monitoring</td> </tr> <tr> <td>loopprot</td> <td>Loop Protection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dhcpcsn</td> <td>DHCP snooping (DHCP SN)</td> </tr> </table> | rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | lACP | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | rmon | Remote Monitoring | loopprot | Loop Protection | dhcpcsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) |
| rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lACP | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rmon | Remote Monitoring | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| loopprot | Loop Protection | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dhcpcsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| facility | Filter messages to the buffered log by syslog facility. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><facility></code> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from: kern Kernel messages user Random user-level messages mail Mail system daemon System daemons auth Security/authorization messages syslog Messages generated internally by syslogd lpr Line printer subsystem news Network news subsystem uucp UUCP subsystem cron Clock daemon authpriv Security/authorization messages (private) ftp FTP daemon |
| <code>msgtext</code> | Select messages containing a certain text string |
| <code><text-string></code> | A text string to match. This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. |

Default By default the buffered log has a filter to select messages whose severity level is `critical` or higher. This filter may be removed using the `no` variant of this command. This filter may be removed and replaced by filters that are more selective.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create a filter to send all messages generated by MSTP that have a severity of `info` or higher to console instances where the log console command has been given, remove the default filter that includes everything use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log console level info program mstp
```

and then use the command:

```
awplus(config)# log console level info program mstp
```

To create a filter to send all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization" to console instances where the log console command has been given use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log console msgtext "Bridging initialization"
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to consoles use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log console level notices program epsr
```

To remove a default filter that includes sending `critical`, `alert` and `emergency` level messages to the console use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log console level critical
```

**Validation
Commands** **show log config**

Related Commands **log console**

log email

This command configures the device to send log messages to an email address. The email address is specified in this command.

Syntax `log email <email-address>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><email-address></code> | The email address to send log messages to |

Default By default no filters are defined for email log targets. Filters must be defined before messages will be sent.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To have log messages emailed to the email address `admin@alliedtelesis.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@alliedtelesis.com
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log config`

Related Commands `default log email`
`log email`

log email (filter)

This command creates a filter to select messages to be sent to an email address. Selection can be based on the priority/ severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a sub-string within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

The **no** variant of this command configures the device to no longer send log messages to a specified email address. All configuration relating to this log target will be removed.

Syntax

```
log email <email-address> [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
    [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]

no log email <email-address> [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
    [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]
```

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--|----------------|--------------------|----------|----------------------------------|------------|---------------------|----------|------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| <i><email-address></i> | The email address to send logging messages to | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| level | Filter messages by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <i><level></i> | <p>The minimum severity of messages to send. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages by program. Include messages from a specified program in the log. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i><program-name></i> | The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case-sensitive) that you find in the log output. rsvp Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) dot1x IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control lacp Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) stp Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) rstp Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) mstp Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) imi Integrated Management Interface (IMI) imish Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) epsr Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) irdp ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) rmon Remote Monitoring loopprot Loop Protection dhcpcn DHCP snooping (DHPCPSN) |
| <i>facility</i> | Filter messages to the log by syslog facility. |
| <i><facility></i> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from in the log: kern Kernel messages user Random user-level messages mail Mail system daemon System daemons auth Security/authorization messages syslog Messages generated internally by syslogd lpr Line printer subsystem news Network news subsystem uucp UUCP subsystem cron Clock daemon authpriv Security/authorization messages (private) ftp FTP daemon |
| <i>msgtext</i> | Select messages containing a certain text string |
| <i><text-string></i> | A text string to match. This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create a filter to send all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the email address `admin@homebase.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@homebase.com level notices
program epsr
```

To create a filter to send all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization", to the email address `admin@homebase.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@homebase.com msgtext
                  "Bridging initialization"
```

To create a filter to send messages with a severity level of `informational` and above to the email address `admin@alliedtelesis.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@alliedtelesis.com level
                  informational
```

To stop the device emailing log messages emailed to the email address `admin@alliedtelesis.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log email admin@homebase.com
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the email address `admin@homebase.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log email admin@homebase.com level
                  notices program epsr
```

To remove a filter that sends messages with a severity level of `informational` and above to the email address `admin@alliedtelesis.com` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log email admin@alliedtelesis.com level
                  informational
```

Related Commands [default log email](#)
[log email](#)
[show log config](#)

log email time

This command configures the time used in messages sent to an email address. If the syslog server is in a different time zone to your switch then the time offset can be configured using either the **utc-offset** parameter option keyword or the **local-offset** parameter option keyword, where **utc-offset** is the time difference from UTC (Universal Time, Coordinated) and **local-offset** is the difference from local time.

Syntax `log email <email-address> time {local|local-offset|utc-offset {plus|minus}<0-24>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code><email-address></code> | The email address to send log messages to |
| <code>time</code> | Specify the time difference between the email recipient and the switch you are configuring. |
| <code>local</code> | The switch is in the same time zone as the email recipient |
| <code>local-offset</code> | The switch is in a different time zone to the email recipient. Use the plus or minus keywords and specify the difference (offset) from local time of the switch to the email recipient in hours. |
| <code>utc-offset</code> | The switch is in a different time zone to the email recipient. Use the plus or minus keywords and specify the difference (offset) from UTC time of the switch to the email recipient in hours. |
| <code>plus</code> | Negative offset (difference) from the switch to the email recipient. |
| <code>minus</code> | Positive offset (difference) from the switch to the email recipient. |
| <code><0-24></code> | World Time zone offset in hours |

Default The default is **local** time.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use the **local** option if the email recipient is in the same time zone as this device. Messages will display the time as on the local device when the message was generated.

Use the **offset** option if the email recipient is in a different time zone to this device. Specify the time offset of the email recipient in hours. Messages will display the time they were generated on this device but converted to the time zone of the email recipient.

Examples To send messages to the email address `test@home.com` in the same time zone as the switch's local time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@base.com time local 0
```

To send messages to the email address `admin@base.com` with the time information converted to the time zone of the email recipient, which is 3 hours ahead of the switch's local time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email admin@base.com time local-offset
plus 3
```

To send messages to the email address `user@remote.com` with the time information converted to the time zone of the email recipient, which is 3 hours behind the switch's UTC time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log email user@remote.com time utc-offset
minus 3
```

**Validation
Commands** **show log config**

Related Commands **default log buffered**

log host

This command configures the device to send log messages to a remote syslog server via UDP port 514. The IP address of the remote server must be specified. By default no filters are defined for remote syslog servers. Filters must be defined before messages will be sent.

Syntax `log host <ip-addr>`
`no log host <ip-addr>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><ip-addr></code> | The IP address of a remote syslog server in dotted decimal format A.B.C.D |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure the device to send log messages to a remote syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.99 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.99
```

To stop the device from sending log messages to the remote syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.99 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log host 10.32.16.99
```

Validation Commands `show log config`

Related Commands `default log host`

log host (filter)

This command creates a filter to select messages to be sent to a remote syslog server. Selection can be based on the priority/severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a substring within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

The **no** variant of this command configures the device to no longer send log messages to a remote syslog server. The IP address of the syslog server must be specified. All configuration relating to this log target will be removed.

Syntax

```
log host <ip-addr> [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
    [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]

no log host <ip-addr> [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
    [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]
```

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|---------------------|----------|------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| <ip-addr> | The IP address of a remote syslog server | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| level | Filter messages by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <level> | <p>The minimum severity of messages to send. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages by program. Include messages from a specified program in the log. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> | <p>The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case-sensitive) that you find in the log output.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>rsvp</td> <td>Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dot1x</td> <td>IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control</td> </tr> </table> | rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <i><program-name></i> (cont.) | lACP Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) STP Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) RSTP Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) MSTP Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) IMI Integrated Management Interface (IMI) IMISH Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) EPSR Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) IRDP ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) RMON Remote Monitoring LOOPROT Loop Protection DHCPSPN DHCP snooping (DHCPSPN) |
| <i>facility</i> | Filter messages to the log by syslog facility. |
| <i><facility></i> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from in the log: kern Kernel messages user Random user-level messages mail Mail system daemon System daemons auth Security/authorization messages syslog Messages generated internally by syslogd lpr Line printer subsystem news Network news subsystem uucp UUCP subsystem cron Clock daemon authpriv Security/authorization messages (private) ftp FTP daemon |
| <i>msgtext</i> | Select messages containing a certain text string |
| <i><text-string></i> | A text string to match. This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create a filter to send all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to a remote syslog server with IP address `10.32.16.21` use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.21 level notices program epsr
```

To create a filter to send all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization", to a remote syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.21 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.21 msgtext "Bridging
initialization"
```

To create a filter to send messages with a severity level of informational and above to the syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.21 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.21 level informational
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of notices or higher to a remote syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.21 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log host 10.32.16.21 level notices program
epsr
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization", to a remote syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.21 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log host 10.32.16.21 msgtext "Bridging
initialization"
```

To remove a filter that sends messages with a severity level of informational and above to the syslog server with IP address 10.32.16.21 use the following commands:

```
awplusawplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log host 10.32.16.21 level informational
```

Related Commands [default log host](#)
[show log config](#)

log host time

This command configures the time used in messages sent to a remote syslog server. If the syslog server is in a different time zone to your switch then the time offset can be configured using either the **utc-offset** parameter option keyword or the **local-offset** parameter option keyword, where **utc-offset** is the time difference from UTC (Universal Time, Coordinated) and **local-offset** is the difference from local time.

Syntax `log host <email-address> time {local|local-offset|utc-offset {plus|minus} <0-24>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <email-address> | The email address to send log messages to |
| time | Specify the time difference between the email recipient and the switch you are configuring. |
| local | The switch is in the same time zone as the email recipient |
| local-offset | The switch is in a different time zone to the email recipient. Use the plus or minus keywords and specify the difference (offset) from local time of the switch to the email recipient in hours. |
| utc-offset | The switch is in a different time zone to the email recipient. Use the plus or minus keywords and specify the difference (offset) from UTC time of the switch to the email recipient in hours. |
| plus | Negative offset (difference) from the switch to the syslog server. |
| minus | Positive offset (difference) from the switch to the syslog server. |
| <0-24> | World Time zone offset in hours |

Default The default is **local** time.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use the **local** option if the remote syslog server is in the same time zone as the switch. Messages will display the time as on the local device when the message was generated.

Use the **offset** option if the email recipient is in a different time zone to this device. Specify the time offset of the remote syslog server in hours. Messages will display the time they were generated on this device but converted to the time zone of the remote syslog server.

Examples To send messages to the remote syslog server with the IP address 10.32.16.21 in the same time zone as the switch's local time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.21 time local 0
```

To send messages to the remote syslog server with the IP address 10.32.16.12 with the time information converted to the time zone of the remote syslog server, which is 3 hours ahead of the switch's local time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.12 time local-offset plus 3
```

To send messages to the remote syslog server with the IP address 10.32.16.02 with the time information converted to the time zone of the email recipient, which is 3 hours behind the switch's UTC time zone, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log host 10.32.16.02 time utc-offset minus 3
```

**Validation
Commands** **show log config**

Related Commands **default log buffered**

log monitor (filter)

This command creates a filter to select messages to be sent to the terminal when the terminal monitor command is given. Selection can be based on the priority/severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a sub-string within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

Syntax

```
log monitor [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
           [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]

no log monitor [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
           [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]
```

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|----------------|---|----------|---|------------|--|----------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| level | Filter messages to the permanent log by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <level> | The minimum severity of message to send to the log. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity: <table border="0"> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages to the permanent log by program. Include messages from a specified program in the log. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> | The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case-sensitive) that you find in the log output. <table border="0"> <tr> <td>rsvp</td> <td>Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dot1x</td> <td>IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control</td> </tr> <tr> <td>lacp</td> <td>Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>stp</td> <td>Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rstp</td> <td>Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mstp</td> <td>Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imi</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface (IMI)</td> </tr> </table> | rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | | |
| rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> (cont.) | <table border="0"> <tr> <td>imish</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>epsr</td> <td>Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>irdp</td> <td>ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rmon</td> <td>Remote Monitoring</td> </tr> <tr> <td>loopprot</td> <td>Loop Protection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dhcpsn</td> <td>DHCP snooping (DHCP SN)</td> </tr> </table> | imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | rmon | Remote Monitoring | loopprot | Loop Protection | dhcpsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) | | | | |
| imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rmon | Remote Monitoring | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| loopprot | Loop Protection | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dhcpsn | DHCP snooping (DHCP SN) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| facility | Filter messages to the permanent log by syslog facility. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><facility></code> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from in the log: kern Kernel messages user Random user-level messages mail Mail system daemon System daemons auth Security/authorization messages syslog Messages generated internally by syslogd lpr Line printer subsystem news Network news subsystem uucp UUCP subsystem cron Clock daemon authpriv Security/authorization messages (private) ftp FTP daemon |
| <code>msgtext</code> | Select messages containing a certain text string |
| <code><text-string></code> | A text string to match. This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. |

Default By default there is a filter to select all messages. This filter may be removed and replaced by filters that are more selective.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create a filter to send all messages generated by MSTP that have a severity of `info` or higher to terminal instances where the terminal monitor command has been given use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log monitor level info program mstp
```

To remove a filter that sends all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the terminal use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log monitor level notices program epsr
```

To remove a default filter that includes sending everything to the terminal use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log monitor level debugging
```

Validation Commands `show log config`

Related Commands `terminal monitor`

log permanent

This command configures the device to send permanent log messages to non-volatile storage (NVS) on the device. The content of the permanent log is retained over a reboot. Once the permanent log reaches its configured maximum allowable size old messages will be deleted to make way for new messages.

The **no** variant of this command configures the device not to send any messages to the permanent log. Log messages will not be retained over a restart.

Syntax log permanent
no log permanent

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable permanent logging use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log permanent
```

To disable permanent logging use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log permanent
```

**Validation
Commands** show log config

Related Commands default log permanent
log permanent (filter)
log permanent size
show log permanent

log permanent (filter)

This command creates a filter to select messages to be sent to the permanent log. Selection can be based on the priority/ severity of the message, the program that generated the message, the logging facility used, a sub-string within the message or a combination of some or all of these.

The **no** variant of this command removes the corresponding filter, so that the specified messages are no longer sent to the permanent log.

Syntax

```
log permanent [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
               [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]

no log permanent [level <level>] [program <program-name>]
                 [facility <facility>] [msgtext <text-string>]
```

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|--|----------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|---|------|---|------|---------------------------------------|------|-------------------|----------|-----------------|---------|------------------------|
| level | Filter messages to the permanent log by severity level. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <level> | <p>The minimum severity of message to send to the log. The level can be specified as one of the following numbers or level names, where 0 is the highest severity and 7 is the lowest severity:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>0 emergencies:</td> <td>System is unusable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 alerts</td> <td>Action must be taken immediately</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 critical</td> <td>Critical conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 errors</td> <td>Error conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 warnings</td> <td>Warning conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 notices</td> <td>Normal, but significant, conditions</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 informational</td> <td>Informational messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 debugging</td> <td>Debug-level messages</td> </tr> </table> | 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | 2 critical | Critical conditions | 3 errors | Error conditions | 4 warnings | Warning conditions | 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | 6 informational | Informational messages | 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 emergencies: | System is unusable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 alerts | Action must be taken immediately | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 critical | Critical conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 errors | Error conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 warnings | Warning conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 notices | Normal, but significant, conditions | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 informational | Informational messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 debugging | Debug-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| program | Filter messages to the permanent log by program. Include messages from a specified program in the log. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <program-name> | <p>The name of a program to log messages from, either one of the following predefined program names (not case-sensitive), or another program name (case -sensitive) that you find in the log output.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>rsvp</td> <td>Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dot1x</td> <td>IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control</td> </tr> <tr> <td>lacp</td> <td>Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>stp</td> <td>Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rstp</td> <td>Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mstp</td> <td>Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imi</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface (IMI)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>imish</td> <td>Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>epsr</td> <td>Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>irdp</td> <td>ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>rmon</td> <td>Remote Monitoring</td> </tr> <tr> <td>loopprot</td> <td>Loop Protection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>dhcpcsn</td> <td>DHCP snooping (DHPCSN)</td> </tr> </table> | rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | rmon | Remote Monitoring | loopprot | Loop Protection | dhcpcsn | DHCP snooping (DHPCSN) |
| rsvp | Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dot1x | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lacp | Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| stp | Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rstp | Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| mstp | Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imi | Integrated Management Interface (IMI) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| imish | Integrated Management Interface Shell (IMISH) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| epsr | Ethernet Protection Switched Rings (EPSR) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| irdp | ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rmon | Remote Monitoring | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| loopprot | Loop Protection | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dhcpcsn | DHCP snooping (DHPCSN) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| facility | Filter messages to the permanent log by syslog facility. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|------|-----------------|------|----------------------------|------|-------------|--------|----------------|------|---------------------------------|--------|--|-----|------------------------|------|------------------------|------|----------------|------|--------------|----------|---|-----|------------|
| <code><facility></code> | Specify one of the following syslog facilities to include messages from in the log: <table border="0"> <tr><td>kern</td><td>Kernel messages</td></tr> <tr><td>user</td><td>Random user-level messages</td></tr> <tr><td>mail</td><td>Mail system</td></tr> <tr><td>daemon</td><td>System daemons</td></tr> <tr><td>auth</td><td>Security/authorization messages</td></tr> <tr><td>syslog</td><td>Messages generated internally by syslogd</td></tr> <tr><td>lpr</td><td>Line printer subsystem</td></tr> <tr><td>news</td><td>Network news subsystem</td></tr> <tr><td>uucp</td><td>UUCP subsystem</td></tr> <tr><td>cron</td><td>Clock daemon</td></tr> <tr><td>authpriv</td><td>Security/authorization messages (private)</td></tr> <tr><td>ftp</td><td>FTP daemon</td></tr> </table> | kern | Kernel messages | user | Random user-level messages | mail | Mail system | daemon | System daemons | auth | Security/authorization messages | syslog | Messages generated internally by syslogd | lpr | Line printer subsystem | news | Network news subsystem | uucp | UUCP subsystem | cron | Clock daemon | authpriv | Security/authorization messages (private) | ftp | FTP daemon |
| kern | Kernel messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| user | Random user-level messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| mail | Mail system | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| daemon | System daemons | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| auth | Security/authorization messages | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| syslog | Messages generated internally by syslogd | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| lpr | Line printer subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| news | Network news subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| uucp | UUCP subsystem | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| cron | Clock daemon | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| authpriv | Security/authorization messages (private) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ftp | FTP daemon | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>msgtext</code> | Select messages containing a certain text string | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><text-string></code> | A text string to match. This is case sensitive, and must be the last text on the command line. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Default By default the buffered log has a filter to select messages whose severity level is `notices` (5) or higher. This filter may be removed using the **no** variant of this command.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create a filter to send all messages generated by EPSR that have a severity of `notices` or higher to the permanent log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log permanent level notices program epsr
```

To create a filter to send all messages containing the text "Bridging initialization", to the permanent log use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log permanent msgtext Bridging initialization
```

Validation Commands [show log config](#)

Related Commands [default log permanent](#)
[log permanent](#)
[log permanent size](#)
[show log permanent](#)

log permanent size

This command configures the amount of memory that the permanent log is permitted to use. Once this memory allocation has been filled old messages will be deleted to make room for new messages.

Syntax `log permanent size <50-250>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code><50-250></code> | Size of the permanent log in kilobytes |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To allow the permanent log to use up to 100 kB of NVS use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log permanent size 100
```

**Validation
Commands** `show log config`

Related Commands `default log permanent`
`log permanent`

log-rate-limit nsm

This command limits the number of log messages generated by the switch for a given interval.

Use the **no** variant of this command to revert to the default number of log messages generated by the switch of up to 200 log messages per second.

Syntax `log-rate-limit nsm messages <message-limit> interval <time-interval>`
`no log-rate-limit nsm`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><message-limit></code> | <code><1-65535></code> The number of log messages generated by the switch. |
| <code><time-interval></code> | <code><0-65535></code> The time period for log message generation in 1/100 seconds. If an interval of 0 is specified then no log message rate limiting is applied. |

Default By default, the switch will allow 200 log messages to be generated per second.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Previously, if the switch received a continuous stream of IGMP packets with errors, such as when a packet storm occurs because of a network loop, then the switch generates a lot of log messages using more and more memory, which may ultimately cause the switch to shutdown. This log rate limiting feature constrains the rate that log messages are generated by the switch.

Note that if within the given time interval, the number of log messages exceeds the limit, then any excess log messages are discarded. At the end of the time interval, a single log message is generated indicating that log messages were discarded due to the log rate limit being exceeded.

Thus if the expectation is that there will be a lot of discarded log messages due to log rate limiting, then it is advisable to set the time interval to no less than 100, which means that there would only be one log message, indicating log excessive log messages have been discarded.

Examples To limit the switch to generate up to 300 log messages per second, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log-rate-limit nsm messages 300 interval 100
```

To return the switch the default setting, to generate up to 200 log messages per second, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no log-rate-limit nsm
```

show counter log

This command displays log counter information.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show counter log

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the log counter information, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter log
```

Output **Figure 10-1: Example output from the show counter log command**

```
Log counters
Total Received           ..... 2328
Total Received P0       ..... 0
Total Received P1       ..... 0
Total Received P2       ..... 1
Total Received P3       ..... 9
Total Received P4       ..... 32
Total Received P5       ..... 312
Total Received P6       ..... 1602
Total Received P7       ..... 372
```

Table 10-1: Parameters in output of the show counter log command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Total Received | Total number of messages received by the log |
| Total Received P0 | Total number of Priority 0 (Emergency) messages received |
| Total Received P1 | Total number of Priority 1 (Alert) messages received |
| Total Received P2 | Total number of Priority 2 (Critical) messages received |
| Total Received P3 | Total number of Priority 3 (Error) messages received |
| Total Received P4 | Total number of Priority 4 (Warning) messages received |
| Total Received P5 | Total number of Priority 5 (Notice) messages received |
| Total Received P6 | Total number of Priority 6 (Info) messages received |
| Total Received P7 | Total number of Priority 7 (Debug) messages received |

Related Commands [show log config](#)

show exception log

This command displays the contents of the exception log.

Syntax `show exception log`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the exception log, use the command:

```
awplus# show exception log
```

Output **Figure 10-2: Example output from the show exception log command on a switch that has never had an exception occur**

```
awplus#show exception log
<date> <time> <facility>.<severity> <program[<pid>]>: <message>
-----
None
-----
awplus#
```

show log

This command displays the contents of the buffered log.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show log [tail [<10-250>]]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| tail | Display only the latest log entries. |
| <10-250> | Specify the number of log entries to display. |

Default By default the entire contents of the buffered log is displayed.

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Usage If the optional **tail** parameter is specified only the latest 10 messages in the buffered log are displayed. A numerical value can be specified after the **tail** parameter to select how many of the latest messages should be displayed.

Examples To display the contents of the buffered log use the command:

```
awplus# show log
```

To display the 10 latest entries in the buffered log use the command:

```
awplus# show log tail 10
```

Output **Figure 10-3: Example output from the show log command**

```
awplus#show log
<date> <time> <facility>.<severity> <program[<pid>]>: <message>
-----
2011 Aug 29 07:55:22 kern.notice awplus kernel: Linux version 2.6.32.12-at1 (mak
er@awpmaker03-dl) (gcc version 4.3.3 (Gentoo 4.3.3-r3 pl.2, pie-10.1.5) ) #1 Wed
Dec 8 11:53:40 NZDT 2010
2011 Aug 29 07:55:22 kern.warning awplus kernel: No pci config register base in
dev tree, using default
2011 Aug 29 07:55:23 kern.notice awplus kernel: Kernel command line: console=tty
S0,9600 releasefile=x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel ramdisk=14688 bootversion=1.1.0-rc12
loglevel=1
extraflash=00000000
2011 Aug 29 07:55:25 kern.notice awplus kernel: RAMDISK: squashfs filesystem fou
nd at block 0
2011 Aug 29 07:55:28 kern.warning awplus kernel: ipifwd: module license 'Proprie
tary' taints kernel.
.
.
.
```

Figure 10-4: Example output from the show log tail command

```
awplus#show log tail
<date> <time> <facility>.<severity> <program[<pid>]>: <message>
-----
2006 Nov 10 13:30:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 469 cmd logrotate /
etc/logrotate.conf
2006 Nov 10 13:30:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 471 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
2006 Nov 10 13:35:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 472 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
2006 Nov 10 13:40:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 477 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
2006 Nov 10 13:44:36 syslog.notice syslog-ng[67]: Log statistics;
processed='\center(queued)=70\' , processed='\2006 Nov 10 13:45:01 cron.notice
crond[116]: USER manager pid 478 cmd logrotate /etc/logrotate.conf
2006 Nov 10 13:45:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 480 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
2006 Nov 10 13:49:32 syslog.notice syslog-ng[67]: SIGHUP received, reloading
configuration;
2006 Nov 10 13:50:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 482 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
2006 Nov 10 13:55:01 cron.notice crond[116]: USER manager pid 483 cmd nbqueue --
wipe
.
.
.
```

Related Commands [show log config](#)
 [show log permanent](#)

show log config

This command displays information about the logging system. This includes the configuration of the various log destinations, buffered, permanent, syslog servers (hosts) and email addresses. This also displays the latest status information for each of these destinations.

Syntax show log config

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the logging configuration use the command:

```
awplus# show log config
```

Output Figure 10-5: Example output from the show log config command

```

Buffered log:
Status ..... enabled
Maximum size ... 100kb
Filters:
*1 Level ..... notices
  Program ..... any
  Facility ..... any
  Message text . any
  2 Level ..... informational
    Program ..... mstp
    Facility ..... daemon
    Message text . any
  Statistics ..... 1327 messages received, 821 accepted by filter (2006 Dec 11
10:36:16)
Permanent log:
Status ..... enabled
Maximum size ... 60kb
Filters:
  1 Level ..... error
    Program ..... any
    Facility ..... any
    Message text . any
  *2 Level ..... warnings
    Program ..... dhcp
    Facility ..... any
    Message text . "pool exhausted"
  Statistics ..... 1327 messages received, 12 accepted by filter (2006 Dec 11
10:36:16)
Host 10.32.16.21:
Time offset .... +2:00
Offset type .... UTC
Filters:
  1 Level ..... critical
    Program ..... any
    Facility ..... any
    Message text . any
  Statistics ..... 1327 messages received, 1 accepted by filter (2006 Dec 11
10:36:16)
Email admin@alliedtelesis.com:
Time offset .... +0:00
Offset type .... Local
Filters:
  1 Level ..... emergencies
    Program ..... any
    Facility ..... any
    Message text . any
  Statistics ..... 1327 messages received, 0 accepted by filter (2006 Dec 11
10:36:16)
Monitor log:
Filters:
*1 Level ..... debugging
  Program .... any
  Facility ... any
  Msg text ... any
  Statistics ..... Not available
Console log:
Status ..... enabled
List of consoles:
  1 ..... ttyS0
Filters:
*1 Level ..... critical
  Program .... any
  Facility ... any
  Msg text ... any
  Statistics ..... 1327 messages received, 1 accepted by filter (2006 Dec 11
10:36:16)

```

In the above example the '*' next to filter 1 in the buffered log configuration indicates that this is the default filter. The permanent log has had its default filter removed, so none of the filters are marked with "*".

 **Note** Terminal log and console log cannot be set at the same time. If console logging is enabled then the terminal logging is turned off.

Related Commands [show counter log](#)
[show log](#)
[show log permanent](#)

show log permanent

This command displays the contents of the permanent log.

Syntax `show log permanent [tail [<10-250>]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>tail</code> | Display only the latest log entries. |
| <code><10-250></code> | Specify the number of log entries to display. |

Default If the optional `tail` parameter is specified only the latest 10 messages in the permanent log are displayed. A numerical value can be specified after the `tail` parameter to select how many of the latest messages should be displayed.

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the permanent log, use the command:

```
awplus# show log permanent
```

Output **Figure 10-6: Example output from the show log permanent command**

```
awplus#show log permanent
<date> <time> <facility>.<severity> <program[<pid>]>: <message>
-----
2014 Jun 10 09:30:09 syslog.notice syslog-ng[67]: syslog-ng starting up;
version='2.0rc3\'
2014 Jun 10 09:30:09 auth.warning portmap[106]: user rpc not found, reverting to
user bin
2014 Jun 10 09:30:09 cron.notice crond[116]: crond 2.3.2 dillon, started, log
level 8
2014 Jun 10 09:30:14 daemon.err snmpd[181]: /flash/.configs/snmpd.conf: line 20:
Error: bad SUBTREE object
2014 Jun 10 09:30:14 user.info HSL[192]: HSL: INFO: Registering port port1.0.1
```

Related Commands [show log](#)

show running-config log

This command displays the current running configuration of the Log utility.

Syntax `show running-config log`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration of the log utility, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config log
```

Related Commands [show log](#)
[show log config](#)

Chapter 11: Scripting Commands



| | |
|--------------------|------|
| Command List | 11.2 |
| activate..... | 11.2 |
| echo..... | 11.3 |
| wait..... | 11.4 |

Command List

This chapter provides commands used for command scripts.

activate

This command activates a script file.

Syntax `activate [background] <script>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>background</code> | Activate a script to run in the background. A process that is running in the background will operate as a separate task, and will not interrupt foreground processing. Generally, we recommend running short, interactive scripts in the foreground and longer scripts in the background. The default is to run the script in the foreground. |
| <code><script></code> | The file name of the script to activate. The script is a command script consisting of commands documented in this software reference. Note that you must use either a <code>.scp</code> or a <code>.sh</code> filename extension for a valid script text file, as described below in the usage section for this command. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage When a script is activated, the privilege level is set to 1 enabling User Exec commands to run in the script. If you need to run Privileged Exec commands in your script you need to add an **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command to the start of your script. If you need to run Global Configuration commands in your script you need to add a **configure terminal** command after the **enable** command at the start of your script.

The **activate** command executes the script in a new shell. A **terminal length** shell command, such as **terminal length 0** may also be required to disable a delay that would pause the display.

A script must be a text file with a filename extension of either `.sh` or `.scp` only for the AlliedWare Plus™ CLI to activate the script file. The `.sh` filename extension indicates the file is an ASH script, and the `.scp` filename extension indicates the file is an AlliedWare Plus™ script.

Examples To activate a command script to run as a background process, use the command:

```
awplus# activate background test.scp
```

Related Commands **configure terminal**
echo
enable (Privileged Exec mode)
wait

echo

This command echoes a string to the terminal, followed by a blank line.

Syntax `echo <line>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| <code><line></code> | The string to echo |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This command may be useful in CLI scripts, to make the script print user-visible comments.

Example To echo the string `Hello World` to the console, use the command:

```
awplus# echo Hello World
```

Output

```
Hello World
```

Related Commands [activate](#)
[wait](#)

wait

This command pauses execution of the active script for the specified period of time.

Syntax `wait <delay>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code><delay></code> | <code><1-65335></code> Specify the time delay in seconds |

Default No wait delay is specified by default to pause script execution.

Mode Privileged Exec (when executed from a script not directly from the command line)

Usage Use this command to pause script execution in an `.scp` (AlliedWare Plus™ script) or an `.sh` (ASH script) file executed by the `activate` command. The script must contain an `enable (Privileged Exec mode)` command since the `wait` command is only executed in the Privileged Exec mode. When a script is activated, the privilege level is set to 1 enabling User Exec commands to run in the script. If you need to run Privileged Exec commands in your script you need to add an `enable (Privileged Exec mode)` command to the start of your script.

Example See an example `.scp` script file extract below that will show port counters for interface `port1.0.1` over a 10 second interval:

```
enable
show interface port1.0.1
wait 10
show interface port1.0.1
```

Related Commands `activate`
`echo`
`enable (Privileged Exec mode)`

Chapter 12: Interface Commands



| | |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 12.2 |
| description (interface) | 12.2 |
| interface (to configure) | 12.3 |
| mru | 12.5 |
| mtu | 12.7 |
| show interface | 12.9 |
| show interface brief..... | 12.12 |
| show interface status..... | 12.13 |
| shutdown | 12.15 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure and display interfaces.

description (interface)

Use this command to add a description to a specific port or interface.

Syntax `description <description>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><description></code> | Text describing the specific interface. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Example The following example uses this command to describe the device that a switch port is connected to.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# description Boardroom PC
```

interface (to configure)

Use this command to select one or more interfaces to configure.

Syntax `interface <interface-list>`

`interface lo`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.6</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>lo</code> | The local loopback interface. |

Usage A local loopback interface is one that is always available for higher layer protocols to use and advertise to the network. Although a local loopback interface is assigned an IP address, it does not have the usual requirement of connecting to a lower layer physical entity. This lack of physical attachment creates the perception of a local loopback interface always being accessible via the network.

Local loopback interfaces can be utilized by a number of protocols for various purposes. They can be used to improve access to the switch and also increase its reliability, security, scalability and protection. In addition, local loopback interfaces can add flexibility and simplify management, information gathering and filtering.

One example of this increased reliability is for OSPF to advertise a local loopback interface as an interface-route into the network irrespective of the physical links that may be “up” or “down” at the time. This provides a higher probability that the routing traffic will be received and subsequently forwarded.

Mode Global Configuration

Example The following example shows how to enter Interface mode to configure `vlan1`. Note how the prompt changes.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan1
awplus(config-if)#
```

The following example shows how to enter Interface mode to configure the local loopback interface.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface lo
awplus(config-if)#
```

Related Commands

- [ip address](#)
- [show interface](#)
- [show interface brief](#)

mrु

Use this command to set the Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) size for switch ports, where MRU is the maximum frame size (excluding headers) that switch ports can receive. For more information, see [“Support for Jumbo Frames” on page 14.16](#).

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a previously specified Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) size for switch ports, and restore the default MRU size (1500 bytes) for switch ports.

Note  The figure of 1500 bytes specifies the payload only. For an IEEE 802.1q frame, provision is made (internally) for the following additional components:

- Source and Destination addresses
- EtherType field
- Priority and VLAN tag fields
- FCS

These additional components increase the frame size internally to 1522 bytes.

Syntax `mrु <mrु-size>`

`no mrु`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><mrु-size></code> | <code><68-16357></code> Specifies the Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) size in bytes, where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1500 bytes is the default Ethernet MRU size for an interface. |

Default The default MRU size is 1500 bytes for switch ports.

Mode Interface Configuration for switch ports.

Usage Note that **show interface** output will only show MRU size for switch ports.

Examples To configure an MRU of 16357 bytes on `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# mrु 16357
```

To configure an MRU of 1500 bytes on `port1.0.2` to `port1.0.4` use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# mrु 1500
```

To restore the MRU size of 1500 bytes on port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no mru
```

Related Commands [show interface](#)

mtu

Use this command to set the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size for VLANs, where MTU is the maximum packet size that VLANs can transmit. The MTU size setting is applied to both IPv4 and IPv6 packet transmission.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a previously specified Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size for VLANs, and restore the default MTU size (1500 bytes) for VLANs.

Syntax `mtu <mtu-size>`

`no mtu`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><mtu-size></code> | <code><68-1500></code> Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size in bytes, where 1500 bytes is the default Ethernet MTU size for an interface. |

Default The default MTU size is 1500 bytes for VLAN interfaces.

Mode Interface Configuration for VLAN interfaces.

Usage If a switch receives an IPv4 packet for Layer 3 switching to another VLAN with an MTU size smaller than the packet size, and if the packet has the **'don't fragment'** bit set, then the switch will send an ICMP **'destination unreachable'** (3) packet type and a **'fragmentation needed and DF set'** (4) code back to the source. For IPv6 packets bigger than the MTU size of the transmitting VLAN interface, an ICMP **'packet too big'** (ICMP type 2 code 0) message is sent to the source.

Note that **show interface** output will only show MTU size for VLAN interfaces.

Examples To configure an MTU size of 1500 bytes on interface `vlan2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# mtu 1500
```

To configure an MTU size of 1500 bytes on interfaces `vlan2` to `vlan4`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# mtu 1500
```

To restore the MTU size to the default MTU size of 1500 bytes on `vlan2`, use the commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no mtu
```

To restore the MTU size to the default MTU size of 1500 bytes on `vlan2` and `vlan4`, use the commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# no mtu
```

Related Commands [show interface](#)

show interface

Use this command to display interface configuration and status.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show interface [<interface-list>]`

`show interface lo`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.6</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>lo</code> | The local loopback interface. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Note that the output displayed with this command will show MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size for VLAN interfaces, and MRU (Maximum Received Unit) size for switch ports.

Example To display configuration and status information for interfaces `port1.0.1` and `port1.0.4`, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface port1.0.1,port1.0.4
```

Figure 12-1: Example output from the show interface command

```

awplus#show interface
Interface port1.0.1
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Thrash-limiting
    Status Not Detected, Action learn-disable, Timeout 1(s)
  Hardware is Ethernet, address is 001a.eb54.f3ae
  index 5001 metric 1 mru 1500
  configured duplex auto, configured speed auto, configured polarity auto
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
    input packets 4368, bytes 420692, dropped 0, multicast packets 56
    output packets 85254, bytes 10912512, multicast packets 85254 broadcast
packets 0
  Time since last state change: 36 days 01:33:20
Interface port1.0.2
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Thrash-limiting
    Status Not Detected, Action learn-disable, Timeout 1(s)
  Hardware is Ethernet, address is 001a.eb54.f3ae
  index 5002 metric 1 mru 1500
  configured duplex auto, configured speed auto, configured polarity auto
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 0, bytes 0, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 120 days 22:42:01

Interface lo
  Scope: both
  Link is UP, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is Loopback
  index 1 metric 1
  <UP,LOOPBACK,RUNNING>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 0, bytes 0, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 0 days 16:35:52

Interface vlan1
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0000.cd24.daa8
  index 201 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  VRF Binding: Not bound
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
  Bandwidth 1g
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 29, bytes 1334, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 0 days 05:36:40

```

To display configuration and status information for interface lo, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface lo
```

Figure 12-2: Example output from the show interface lo command

```
awplus#show interface lo
Interface lo
  Scope: both
  Link is UP, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is Loopback
  index 1 metric 1
  <UP,LOOPBACK,RUNNING>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 0, bytes 0, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 69 days 01:28:47
```

To display configuration and status information for interfaces vlan1 and vlan2, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface vlan1,vlan2
```

Figure 12-3: Example output from the show interface vlan1,vlan2 command

```
awplus#show interface vlan1,vlan2
Interface vlan1
  Scope: both
  Link is UP, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0015.77e9.5c50
  IPv4 address 192.168.1.1/24 broadcast 192.168.1.255
  index 201 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
  Bandwidth 1g
    input packets 295606, bytes 56993106, dropped 5, multicast packets 156
    output packets 299172, bytes 67379392, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 0 days 14:22:39

Interface vlan2
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0015.77e9.5c50
  IPv4 address 192.168.2.1/24 broadcast 192.168.2.255
  Description: ip_phone_vlan
  index 202 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Disabled
  Bandwidth 1g
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 90, bytes 4244, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
  Time since last state change: 0 days 14:22:39
```

Related Commands [mru](#)
[mtu](#)
[show interface brief](#)

show interface brief

Use this command to display brief interface, configuration, and status information, including provisioning information.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show interface brief`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 12-4: Example output from the show interface brief command**

```
awplus#show int brief
Interface      Status      Protocol
port1.0.1     admin up    down
port1.0.2     admin up    down
port1.0.3     admin up    down
port1.0.4     admin up    down
port1.0.5     admin up    down
port1.0.6     admin up    running
lo             admin up    running
vlan1         admin up    down
vlan2         admin up    down
```

Table 12-1: Parameters in the output of the show interface brief command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Interface | The name or type of interface. |
| Status | The administrative state. This can be either admin up or admin down . |
| Protocol | The link state. This can be either down , running , or provisioned . |

Related Commands [show interface](#)
[show interface memory](#)

show interface status

Use this command to display the status of the specified interface or interfaces. Note that when no interface or interfaces are specified then the status of all interfaces on the switch are shown.

Syntax `show interface [<port-list>] status`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. port1.0.6) a static channel group (e.g. sa2) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-1.0.6, or sa1-2, or po1-2 ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6. Do not mix switch ports, static channel groups, and dynamic (LACP) channel groups in the same list |

Examples To display the status of ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.5, use the commands:

```
awplus# show interface port1.0.1-1.0.4 status
```

Figure 12-5: Example output from the show interface <port-list> status command

```
awplus#show interface port1.0.1 -1.0.5 status
```

| Port | Name | Status | Vlan | Duplex | Speed | Type |
|-----------|------|------------|------|--------|-------|------------|
| port1.0.1 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | 1000BASE-T |
| port1.0.2 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | 1000BASE-T |
| port1.0.3 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | 1000BASE-T |
| port1.0.4 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | 1000BASE-T |

To display the status of all ports, use the commands:

```
awplus# show interface status
```

Figure 12-6: Example output from the show interface status command

```
awplus#sho int status
```

| Port | Name | Status | Vlan | Duplex | Speed | Type |
|------------|--------------|------------|-------|--------|--------|-------------|
| port1.0.1 | Trunk_Net | connected | trunk | a-full | a-1000 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.2 | Access_Net1 | connected | 5 | full | 100 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.3 | Access_Net1 | disabled | 5 | auto | auto | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.4 | Access_Net2 | connected | 6 | a-half | a-100 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.5 | Private_Prom | connected | 10 | a-full | a-100 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.6 | Private_Net1 | connected | 10,11 | a-full | a-100 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.7 | Private_Net2 | connected | 10,12 | a-full | a-100 | 1000BaseTX |
| port1.0.8 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | 1000BaseTX |
| . | | | | | | |
| port1.0.23 | | disabled | 1 | auto | auto | not present |
| port1.0.24 | | notconnect | 1 | auto | auto | unknown |
| sa1 | | notconnect | trunk | auto | auto | |

Table 12-2: Parameters in the output from the show interface status command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Port | Name/Type of the interface. |
| Name | Description of the interface. |
| Status | The administrative and operational status of the interface; one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ disabled: the interface is administratively down. ■ connect: the interface is operationally up. ■ notconnect: the interface is operationally down. |
| Vlan | VLAN type or VLAN IDs associated with the port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ When the VLAN mode is trunk, it displays trunk (it does not display the VLAN IDs). ■ When the VLAN mode is access, it displays the VLAN ID. ■ When the VLAN mode is private promiscuous, it displays the primary VLAN ID if it has one, and promiscuous if it does not have a VLAN ID. ■ When the VLAN mode is private host, it displays the primary and secondary VLAN IDs. ■ When the port is an Eth port, it displays none: there is no VLAN associated with it. ■ When the VLAN is dynamically assigned, it displays the current dynamically assigned VLAN ID (not the access VLAN ID), or dynamic if it has multiple VLANs dynamically assigned. |
| Duplex | The actual duplex mode of the interface, preceded by a- if it has autonegotiated this duplex mode. If the port is disabled or not connected, it displays the configured duplex setting. |
| Speed | The actual link speed of the interface, preceded by a- if it has autonegotiated this speed. If the port is disabled or not connected, it displays the configured speed setting. |
| Type | The type of interface, e.g. 1000BaseTX. For SFP bays, it displays Unknown if it does not recognize the type of SFP installed, or Not present if an SFP is not installed or is faulty. |

Related Commands [show interface](#)
[show interface memory](#)

shutdown

This command shuts down the selected interface. This administratively disables the link and takes the link down at the physical (electrical) layer.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this function and therefore to bring the link back up again.

Syntax shutdown

no shutdown

Mode Interface Configuration

Example The following example shows the use of the `shutdown` command to shut down port1.0.2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# shutdown
```

The following example shows the use of the `no shutdown` command to bring up port1.0.2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no shutdown
```

The following example shows the use of the `shutdown` command to shut down vlan2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# shutdown
```

The following example shows the use of the `no shutdown` command to bring up vlan2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no shutdown
```


Chapter 13: Interface Testing Commands



| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| Command List | 13.2 |
| clear test interface..... | 13.2 |
| service test..... | 13.3 |
| test interface | 13.4 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used for testing interfaces.

clear test interface

This command clears test results and counters after issuing a test interface command. Test results and counters must be cleared to issue subsequent test interface commands later on.

Syntax `clear test interface {<port-list>|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | <p>The ports to test. A port-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.1-port1.0.6</code> ■ a comma-separated list of the above, e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.5-1.0.6</code> <p>The specified ports must exist.</p> |
| <code>all</code> | All interfaces |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To clear the counters for `port1.0.1` use the command:

```
awplus# clear test interface port1.0.1
```

To clear the counters for all interfaces use the command:

```
awplus# clear test interface all
```

Related Commands [test interface](#)

service test

This command puts the device into the interface testing state, ready to begin testing. After entering this command, enter Interface Configuration mode for the desired interfaces and enter the command **test interface**.

Do not test interfaces on a device that is part of a live network—disconnect the device first.

Use the **no** variant of this command to stop the test service.

Syntax `service test`
`no service test`

Mode Global Configuration

Example To put the device into a test state, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# service test
```

Related Commands [test interface](#)

test interface

This command starts a test on a port or all ports or a selected range or list of ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this function. The test duration can be configured by specifying the time in minutes after specifying a port or ports to test.

For an example of all the commands required to test switch ports, see the Examples section in this command. To test the Eth port, set its speed to 100 by using the command **speed 100**.

 **Note** Do not run test interface on live networks because this will degrade network performance.

Syntax test interface {<port-list>|all} [time{<1-60>|cont}]
no test interface {<port-list>|all}

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <port-list> | The ports to test. A port-list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. port1.0.6) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-port1.0.6 ■ a comma-separated list of the above, e.g. port1.0.1,port1.0.5-1.0.6 The specified ports must exist. |
| all | All ports |
| time | Keyword entered prior to the value for the time duration of the interface test. |
| <1-60> | Specifies duration of time to test the interface or interfaces in minutes (from a minimum of 1 minute to a maximum of 60 minutes). The default is 4 minutes. |
| cont | Specifies continuous interface testing until canceled with command negation. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To test the switch ports in VLAN 1, install loopbacks in the ports, and enter the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# service test
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree rstp enable bridge-forward
awplus(config)# interface vlan1
awplus(config-if)# shutdown
awplus(config-if)# end
awplus# test interface all
```

To see the output, use the commands:

```
awplus# show test
```

```
awplus# show test count
```

To start the test on all interfaces for 1 minute use the command:

```
awplus# test interface all time 1
```

Related Commands [clear test interface](#)

Part 2: Layer Two Switching



- **Chapter 14 Switching Introduction**
- **Chapter 15 Switching Commands**
- **Chapter 16 VLAN Introduction**
- **Chapter 17 VLAN Commands**
- **Chapter 18 Spanning Tree Introduction: STP, RSTP, and MSTP**
- **Chapter 19 Spanning Tree Commands**
- **Chapter 20 Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 21 Link Aggregation Commands**
- **Chapter 22 Power over Ethernet Introduction**
- **Chapter 23 Power over Ethernet Commands**

Chapter 14: Switching Introduction



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 14.2 |
| Physical Layer Information | 14.3 |
| Switch Ports | 14.3 |
| Activating and Deactivating Switch Ports | 14.4 |
| Autonegotiation | 14.4 |
| Duplex Mode | 14.4 |
| Speed Options | 14.4 |
| MDI/MDIX Connection Modes | 14.5 |
| The Layer 2 Switching Process | 14.7 |
| The Ingress Rules | 14.7 |
| The Learning Process | 14.8 |
| The Forwarding Process | 14.9 |
| The Egress Rules | 14.9 |
| Layer 2 Filtering | 14.11 |
| Ingress Filtering | 14.11 |
| Storm Control | 14.12 |
| Loop Protection | 14.13 |
| Loop Detection | 14.13 |
| Thrash Limiting | 14.14 |
| Support for Jumbo Frames | 14.16 |
| Port Mirroring | 14.17 |
| Port Security | 14.18 |
| IEEE 802.1X | 14.18 |
| Quality of Service | 14.19 |
| IGMP Snooping | 14.20 |

Introduction

This chapter gives an overview of Layer 1 and 2 switching.

Layer 2 switches are used to connect multiple Local Area Network (LAN) segments together to form an extended LAN. Stations connected to different LANs can be configured to communicate with one another as if they were on the same LAN. They can also divide one physical LAN into multiple Virtual LANs (VLANs). Stations connected to each other on the same extended LAN can be grouped in separate VLANs, so that a station in one VLAN can communicate directly with other stations in the same VLAN, but must go through higher layer routing protocols to communicate with those stations in other VLANs.

Layer 2 switches appear transparent to higher layer protocols, transferring frames between the data link layers of the networks to which they are attached. A Layer 2 switch accesses each physical link according to the rules for that particular network. Access may not always be instant, so the switch must be capable of storing and forwarding frames.

Storing and forwarding enables the switch to examine both the VLAN tag fields and Ethernet MAC address fields in order to forward the frames to their appropriate destination. In this way, the switch can act as an intelligent filtering device, redirecting or blocking the movement of frames between networks.

Because switch ports can sometimes receive frames faster than it can forward them, the switch has Quality of Service (QoS) queues in which frames await transmission according to their priority. Such a situation could occur where data enters a number of input ports all destined for the same output port.

The switch can be used to:

- Increase both the physical extent and the maximum number of stations on a LAN. LANs are limited in their physical extent by the signal distortion and propagation delay characteristics of the media. The switch overcomes this limitation by receiving a frame on one LAN and then retransmitting it to another. The physical characteristics of the LAN media also place a practical limit on the number of stations that can be connected to a single LAN segment. The switch overcomes this limitation by joining LAN segments to form an extended LAN capable of supporting more stations than either of the individual LAN segments.
- Connect LANs that have a common data link layer protocol but different physical media, for example, Ethernet 10BASET, 100BASET, and 10BASEF.
- Increase the availability of LANs by allowing multiple redundant paths to be physically configured and selected dynamically, using the Spanning Tree algorithm.
- Reduce the load on a LAN or increase the effective bandwidth of a LAN, by filtering traffic.
- Prioritize the transmission of data with high Quality of Service requirements.

By using Virtual LANs (VLANs), a single physical LAN can be separated into multiple Virtual LANs. VLANs can be used to:

- Further improve LAN performance, as broadcast traffic is limited to LAN segments serving members of the VLAN to which the sender belongs.
- Provide security, as frames are forwarded to those stations belonging to the sender's VLAN, and not to stations in other VLANs on the same physical LAN.
- Reduce the cost of moving or adding stations to function or security based LANs, as this generally requires only a change in the VLAN configuration.

Physical Layer Information

Switch Ports

A unique port number identifies each switch port. The software supports a number of features at the physical level that allow it to be connected in a variety of physical networks. This physical layer (Layer 1) versatility includes:

- Enabling and disabling of ports
- Auto negotiation of port speed and duplex mode, where supported by the port type
- Manual setting of port speed and duplex mode, where supported by the port type
- Link up and link down triggers
- Packet storm protection
- Port mirroring
- Support for SNMP management

Port numbering

Ports are numbered using a 3 digit format `1.0.z` where `z` is the port number. For example, `port1.0.6` represents port 6.

Adding a description

You can add a description to an interface to help identify its purpose or position. For example, to add the description "connected to Nerv" to `port1.0.3`, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# description connected to Nerv
```

Port ranges

Continuous To configure a continuous range of ports at the same time, enter the range in the format:

```
portx.y.z-portx.y.z
```

For example, to configure the same interface setting on `port1.0.1` to `port1.0.2`, enter the Global Configuration mode command:

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.2
```

Non-continuous To configure a non-continuous set of ports at the same time, enter a comma-separated list:

```
portx.y.z,portx.y.z
```

For example, to configure the same interface setting on `port1.0.1` and `port1.0.5`, enter the Global Configuration mode command:

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.5
```

You can combine a hyphen-separated range and a comma-separated list. To configure the same setting on `port1.0.1` to `port1.0.3` and `port1.0.5`, enter the Global Configuration mode command:

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.3,port1.0.5
```

Activating and Deactivating Switch Ports

An active switch port is one that is available for packet reception and transmission. Disabling a switch port does not affect the STP operation on the port. By default ports and VLANs are activated.

To shutdown a port or VLAN use the [shutdown command on page 12.15](#). Use the `no` variant of this command to reactivate it.

Autonegotiation

Autonegotiation lets the port adjust its speed and duplex mode to accommodate the device connected to it. When the port connects to another autonegotiating device, they negotiate the highest possible speed and duplex mode for both of them.

By default, all ports autonegotiate. Setting the port to a fixed speed and duplex mode may be necessary when connecting to a device that cannot autonegotiate.

Duplex Mode

Ports can operate in full duplex or half duplex mode depending on the type of port it is. When in full duplex mode, a port transmits and receives data simultaneously. When in half duplex mode, the port transmits or receives but not both at the same time.

You can set a port to use either of these options, or allow it to autonegotiate the duplex mode with the device at the other end of the link. To configure the duplex mode, use these commands:

```
awplus#
configure terminal Enter Global Configuration mode

awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.1 Enter Interface Configuration mode for port 1.0.1

awplus(config-if)#
duplex {auto|full|half} Enter the Duplex mode for port 1.0.1
```

Speed Options

Before configuring a port's speed, check the hardware limit for the particular port type. The following list can be used as a guide:

- non-SFP RJ-45 copper switch ports: 10, 100 or 1000 Mbps
- supported tri-speed copper SFPs: 10, 100 or 1000 Mbps
- fiber SFPs: 100 Mbps to 1000Mbps, depending on the SFP type
- SFP+ / XFP modules: 10 Gbps

For the latest list of approved SFP transceivers either contact your authorized distributor or reseller, or visit www.alliedtelesis.com.

You can set a port to use one of these speed options, or allow it to autonegotiate the speed with the device at the other end of the link.

Most types of switch port can operate in either full duplex or half duplex mode. In full duplex mode a port can transmit and receive data simultaneously. In half duplex mode the port can either transmit or receive, but not at the same time.

Make sure that the configuration of the switch matches the configuration of the device at the far end of the link. In particular, avoid having one end autonegotiate duplex mode while the other end is fixed. For example, if you set one end of a link to autonegotiate and fix the other end at full duplex, the autonegotiating end cannot determine that the fixed end is full duplex capable. Therefore, the autonegotiating end selects half-duplex operation. This results in a duplex mismatch and packet loss. To avoid this, either fix the mode at both ends, or use autonegotiation at both ends.

Configuring the port speed

To set the port speed to 1000 Mbps on port 1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus#  
configure terminal  Enter the Global Configuration mode.  
awplus(config)#  
interface port1.0.1  Enter Interface Configuration mode for port  
1.0.1  
awplus(config-if)#  
speed 1000  Set the port speed for port 1.0.1 to 1000 Mbps.
```

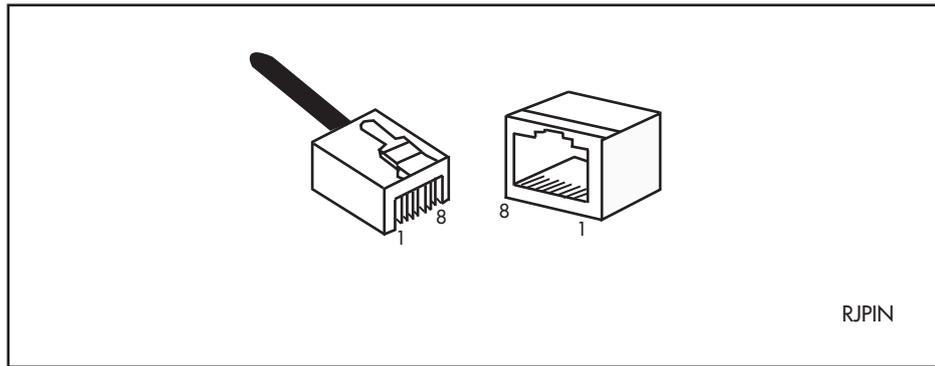
MDI/MDIX Connection Modes

By default, copper 10Base-T, 100Base-T, and 1000Base-T ports on the switch automatically set the Media Dependant Interface mode to MDI or MDIX for successful physical connections. We recommend using this default setting. However, you can configure them to have either fixed MDI mode or fixed MDIX mode by using the **polarity** command on [page 15.26](#). MDI/MDIX mode polarity does not apply to fiber ports.

Connections to 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T, and 1000BASE-T networks may either be straight through (MDI) or crossover (MDIX). The crossover connection can be achieved by using either a crossover cable or by integrating the crossover function within the device. In the latter situation, the connector is referred to as an MDIX connection. Refer to your switch's Hardware Reference for more detailed information on physical connections cabling.

The IEEE 802.3 standard defines a series of Media Dependant Interface types and their physical connections. For twisted pair (10BASE-T) networking, the standard defines that connectors that conform to the IEC 60603-7 standard. The [Figure 14-1f](#) shows a connector of this type.

Figure 14-1: Connector used for 10BASE-T networks



The Layer 2 Switching Process

The Layer 2 switching process comprises these related but separate processes:

- **The Ingress Rules**
- **The Learning Process**
- **The Forwarding Process**
- **The Egress Rules**

Ingress rules admit or discard frames based on their VLAN tagging.

The Learning process learns the MAC addresses and VLAN membership of frames admitted on each port.

The Forwarding process determines which ports the frames are forwarded to, and the Quality of Service priority with which they are transmitted.

Finally, Egress rules determine for each frame whether VLAN tags are included in the Ethernet frames that are transmitted.

These processes assume that each station on the extended LAN has a unique data link layer address, and that all data link layer frames have a header which includes the source (sender's) MAC address and destination (recipient's) MAC address.

The Ingress Rules

All frames, tagged and untagged, that a VLAN-aware switch receives must be classified into a VLAN. Each received frame is mapped to exactly one VLAN. If an incoming frame is tagged with a valid VLAN identifier (VID) then that VID is used. If an incoming frame is untagged or is priority tagged (a tagged frame with a VID of all zeros), then the switch uses internal VLAN association rules to determine the VLAN it belongs to. The default settings for the ingress rules are to Admit All Frames, and for Ingress Filtering to be on.

Every port belongs to one or more VLANs so every incoming frame has a VID to show which VLAN it belongs. The final part of the Ingress Rules depends on whether Ingress Filtering is enabled for the port. If Ingress Filtering is disabled, all frames are passed on to the Learning process, regardless of which VLAN they belong to. If Ingress Filtering is enabled (by default), frames are admitted only when they have the VID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. Frames are discarded when they do not have an associated VID matching the VLAN assigned to a port.

The possible association rules, in order of precedence, are:

- IP subnet/IPX network classification
- protocol classification
- port classification

The default VLAN classification is based upon the port on which the incoming frame (untagged, or priority tagged) was received. It is possible for an incoming untagged, or priority tagged, frame to match more than one of the association rules.

Each port on the switch can be configured to be one of two modes:

- only untagged frames - access mode
- VLAN-tagged frames - trunk mode

Access mode

This mode can be used to connect to VLAN unaware devices. Frames to and from access mode ports carry no VLAN tagging information.

Trunk mode

This mode is used to connect VLAN capable devices. All devices that connect using trunk mode ports must be VLAN aware.

You can specify a “native” VLAN on a trunk port. When the port receives untagged packets, it will tag the packets with the VID of the native VLAN. Note that packets from the native VLAN egress the port untagged.

To specify the native VLAN, use the [switchport trunk native vlan command on page 17.28](#).

The Learning Process

The learning process uses an adaptive learning algorithm, sometimes called **backward learning**, to discover the location of each station on the extended LAN.

All frames admitted by the ingress rules on any port are passed on to the forwarding process when they are for destinations in the same VLAN. Frames destined for other VLANs are passed to a Layer 3 protocol, such as IP. For every frame admitted, the frame's source MAC address and VID are compared with entries in the forwarding database for the VLAN (also known as a **MAC Address table**) maintained by the switch. When the frame's source address is not in the forwarding database for the VLAN, the address is added and an ageing timer for that entry is started. When the frame's source address is already in the forwarding database, the ageing timer for that entry is restarted.

By default, switch learning is enabled. It can be disabled with the [no mac address-table acquire](#) command, and re-enabled using the [mac address-table acquire](#) command on [page 15.17](#).

If the ageing timer for an entry in the forwarding database expires before another frame with the same source address is received, the entry is removed from the forwarding database. This prevents the forwarding database from being filled with information about stations that are inactive or have been disconnected from the network. It also ensures that entries for active stations are kept alive in the forwarding database.

By default, the ageing timer is enabled with a default ageing-time. The ageing timer can be reset to the default with the [no mac address-table ageing-time](#) command. The ageing timer can be increased or decreased using the [mac address-table ageing-time](#) command.

If switch learning is disabled and the ageing timer has aged out all dynamically learned filter entries, only statically entered MAC source addresses decide the packets to forward or discard. When the switch finds no matching entries in the forwarding database during the forwarding process, all switch ports in the VLAN are flooded with the packet, except the port that received it.

The default for the mac address-table ageing-time is 300 seconds (5 minutes) and can be modified by using the command [mac address-table ageing-time](#). The [no mac address-table ageing-time](#) command will reset the ageing-time back to the default (5 minutes).

To set the mac address-table ageing-time to 1000 seconds:

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter the config terminal mode |
| <pre>awplus(config)# mac address-table ageing-time 1000</pre> | Set the ageing time to 1000 seconds |

To display general switch settings, including settings for switch learning and the switch ageing timer, use the **show system** command on page 8.40.

The Forwarding Process

After a VID is assigned to a frame using the ingress rules, the switch forwards it to the destination MAC address specified in the frame. To do this the switch must learn which MAC addresses are available on each port for each VLAN. When the destination MAC address is not found, the switch floods the frame on all ports that are members of the VLAN except the port on which the frame was received.

The forwarding database (also known as the **MAC Address table**) determines the egress port on which the destination MAC address has been learned. MAC addresses are learned dynamically as part of the Layer 2 switching process.

The forwarding database is ordered according to MAC address and VLAN identifier. This means a MAC address can appear more than once in the forwarding database having been learned on the same port but for different VLANs. This could occur if the IP address of an end station is changed thereby moving the end station to a different IP subnet-based VLAN while still connected to the same switch port. When the forwarding database ageing process is enabled, old entries in the forwarding database are deleted after a user-configurable period.

If the destination address is found, the switch discards the frame when the port is not in the STP forwarding or disabled state if the destination address is on the same port as the source address, or if there is a static filter entry for the destination address set to **discard** (see **“Layer 2 Filtering”** on page 14.11). Otherwise, the frame is forwarded on the indicated port.

Forwarding occurs only when the port on which the frame was received is in the Spanning Tree forwarding or disabled state. The destination address is then looked up in the forwarding database for the VLAN.

The Egress Rules

After the forwarding process has determined from which ports and transmission queues to forward a frame, the egress rules for each port determine whether the outgoing frame is VLAN-tagged with its numerical VLAN identifier (VID).

A port must belong to a VLAN at all times unless the port has been set as the mirror port for the switch.

A port can transmit VLAN-tagged frames for any VLAN to which the port belongs. A port can transmit untagged frames for any VLAN for which the port is configured, e.g. IP subnet-based or protocol-based, unless prevented by the port-based VLAN egress rules. A port that belongs to a port-based VLAN can transmit untagged packets for only one VLAN. For more information about VLANs and VLAN tagging, see [Chapter 16, VLANs Introduction](#).

For more information on port tagging see the following commands:

[switchport mode access](#) command on page 17.16

[switchport mode trunk](#) command on page 17.22

Layer 2 Filtering

The switch has a forwarding database (also known as the **MAC address table**) whose entries determine whether frames are forwarded or discarded over each port. Entries in the forwarding database are created dynamically by the learning process. A dynamic entry is automatically deleted from the forwarding database when its ageing timer expires.

The forwarding database supports queries by the forwarding process as to whether frames with given values of the destination MAC address field should be forwarded to a given port.

For each VLAN, the destination MAC address of a frame to be forwarded is checked against the forwarding database. If there is no entry for the destination address and VLAN, the frame is transmitted on all ports in the VLAN that are in the forwarding state, except the port on which the frame was received. This process is referred to as **flooding**. If an entry is found in the forwarding database but the entry is not marked **forwarding** or the entry points to the same port the frame was received on, the frame is discarded. Otherwise, the frame is transmitted on the port specified by the forwarding database.

Ingress Filtering

The **ingress-filter** parameter of the **switchport mode trunk** command on page 17.22 and the **switchport mode access** command on page 17.16, enables or disables ingress filtering of frames entering the specified port (or port range).

Each port on the switch belongs to one or more VLANs. If ingress filtering is enabled, any frame received on the specified port is only admitted if its VID matches one for which the port is tagged. Any frame received on the port is discarded if its VID does not match one for which the port is tagged.

Untagged frames are admitted and are assigned the VLAN Identifier (VID) of the port's native VLAN. Ingress filtering can be turned off by setting the **disable** parameter of the above two commands. The default setting of the **enable / disable** parameter option is **enable**.



Note Enabling the **vlan-disable** parameter of the **thrash-limiting** command on page 15.50 will also enable ingress filtering, and will override the setting of the switchport mode access, and trunk commands

Storm Control

The packet storm-control feature enables you to set limits on the reception rate of broadcast, multicast frames and destination lookup failures. You can set separate limits beyond which each of the different packet types are discarded.

 **Note** A destination lookup failure (DLF) is the event of receiving a unicast Ethernet frame with an unknown destination address.

For more information on applying storm-control, see the [storm-control level command on page 15.49](#).

To apply storm-control by limiting broadcasts to 30% on `port1.0.4`:

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.4</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode for the selected port. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>storm-control broadcast level 30</code> | Configure the interface. |

To turn off storm protection on `port1.0.4`:

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.4</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode for the selected port. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>no storm-control broadcast level</code> | Configure the interface. |

Loop Protection

Loop protection is a general term that embraces several different methods you can apply to protect your network from effects such as broadcast storms that can result from data loops or equipment malfunction.

Presently two methods of loop protection are available:

- **Loop Detection**
- **Thrash Limiting**

Loop Detection

Introduction

This feature is used to detect loops with a network segment. If a loop is detected then a selected protection mechanism is applied to limit the effect of the loop. The loop protection actions can be applied either to the port at which the loop is detected or to the VLAN within which the loop was detected.

Limiting Actions You can configure loop detection to apply one of the following mechanisms when a loop condition is detected:

- Block all traffic on the port (or aggregated link) that detected the loop, and take **down** the link.
- Block all traffic on the port (or aggregated link) that detected the loop, but keep the link in the **up** state.
- Block all traffic on a vlan. Note that setting this parameter will also enable ingress filtering. This is the default action.
- Take no action, but log the details.
- Take no action.

Operation

To detect loops this feature operates by transmitting a series of Loop Detection Frames (LDFs) from each switch port out into the network. If no loops exist, then none of these frame should ever return. If a frame returns to its original port, the detection mechanism assumes that there is a loop somewhere in the network and offers a number of protective options.

Each LDF is a Layer 2 LLC frame that contains the following components:

- the source MAC address of the originating switch
- the destination MAC address of the non-existent end station 00-00-F4-27-71-01
- VLAN ID (where the port is a tagged member of a VLAN).
- a randomly generated LDF ID number.

You can set the detection mechanism to remember the LDF ID of up to 5 of the most recently transmitted LDF frames. Each of the 5 most recently transmitted frames is compared with every frame that arrives at that same port.

Configuration

To enable loop protection and configure its basic parameters, you use the **loop-protection** command on page 15.14.

Example To enable the loop-detect mechanism, and generate loop-detect frames once every 5 seconds, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# loop-protection loop-detect ldf-interval 5
```

Note  LDFs are sent sequentially for each VLAN defined to a particular port. For example, if a particular port in this example is a member of 4 VLANs, then the LDFs will be sent from this port at the rate of 4 frames every 5 seconds.

You can now use the **loop-protection action** command on page 15.15 configure the action that the switch will take if a loop is detected.

Example To disable an interface, and bring the link down, when a network loop is detected, use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# loop-protection action link-down
```

Now decide how long you want the protective action to apply for. You configure this function by using the **loop-protection timeout** command on page 15.16.

Example To configure a loop protection action timeout of 10 seconds, use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# loop-protection timeout 10
```

Thrash Limiting

MAC address thrashing occurs when MAC addresses move rapidly between one or more ports or trunks, for example, due to a network loop.

Thrash limiting enables you to apply actions to a port when thrashing is detected. It is supported on all port types and also on aggregated ports.

Limiting Actions There are several different thrash actions that you can apply to a port when thrashing is detected. These actions are:

- **learnDisable:** MAC address learning is temporarily disabled on the port.
- **portDisable:** The port is logically disabled. Traffic flow is prevented, but the link remains up. The device at the other end does not notice that the port has changed status, and the link LEDs at both ends stay on.
- **linkDown:** The port is physically disabled and the link is down. This is equivalent to entering the **shutdown** command on page 12.15.
- **vlanDisable:** The port is disabled only for the VLAN on which thrashing has occurred. It can still receive and transmit traffic for any other VLANs of which it is a member.

When a MAC address is thrashing between two ports, one of these ports (the first to cross its thrashing threshold) is disabled. All other ports on the device will then have their threshold counters reset.

To set a thrash action for a port, use the **thrash-limiting** command on page 15.50:

To view the thrash action that is set for a port, use the **show interface switchport** command on page 15.29:

Re-enabling a port When a port is disabled, either completely or for a specific VLAN, it remains disabled until it is manually re-enabled in any of the following ways:

- by using SNMP
- by rebooting the switch
- by specifying a thrash timeout value along with the thrash action
- via the CLI

Support for Jumbo Frames

Jumbo frames are frames with more than 1500 bytes of payload. You can enable jumbo frame support on the switch to improve throughput and network utilization. Jumbo frame support allows you to put more data in each packet that the switch has to process.

The maximum received packet size is 16357 bytes.

You can increase the Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) size for switch ports to receive jumbo frames with payload larger than 1500 bytes. To increase MRU size, use the [mru command](#) on page 12.5.

 **Note** Jumbo packet switching is supported for L2 and L3 traffic flows that have established traffic paths. Jumbo frames cannot be used for establishing these network paths. Please use frames less than 1518 bytes to establish the path, for example by pinging the destination.

Port Mirroring

Port mirroring enables traffic being received and transmitted on a switch port to be sent to another switch port, the mirror port, usually for the purposes of capturing the data with a protocol analyzer.

The mirror port is the only switch port that does not belong to a VLAN, and therefore does not participate in any other switching. Before the mirror port can be set, it must be removed from all trunk groups and all VLANs except the default VLAN.

The following example sets mirroring on ports 1.0.2 and 1.0.5 for both incoming and outgoing data.

 **Note** Due to the internal hardware properties of the switch, frames that are destined to leave the mirrored port untagged (i.e. will have their VLAN tag removed on egress) will be received by the mirror port with the tag retained. Consequently, if frames were being transmitted by the mirror port (into the network) at wire speed, then the mirror port might be unable to accept all the frames supplied to it.

To configure port 1.0.2 to mirror port 1.0.5:

| | |
|---|---|
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2</pre> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode for port1.0.2. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# mirror interface port1.0.5 direction both</pre> | Configure this port to mirror port 1.0.5. |

Port Security

The port security features provide control over the stations connected to each switch port.

IEEE 802.1X

IEEE 802.1X restricts unauthenticated devices from connecting to the switch. After authentication is successful, traffic is allowed through the switch. For more information see [Chapter 38, 802.1X Introduction and Configuration](#).

Quality of Service

Quality of Service (QoS) enables you to both prioritize traffic and limit its available bandwidth. The concept of QoS is a departure from the original networking protocols, in which all traffic on the Internet or within a LAN had the same available bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic types are equally likely to be dropped if a link becomes oversubscribed. This approach is now inadequate in many networks, because traffic levels have increased and networks often carry time-critical applications such as streams of real-time video data. QoS also enables service providers to easily supply different customers with different amounts of bandwidth.

Configuring Quality of Service involves two separate stages:

1. Classifying traffic into flows, according to a wide range of criteria. Classification is performed by the switch's class maps.
2. Acting on these traffic flows.

For more information on QoS see [Chapter 36, Quality of Service \(QoS\) Introduction](#) and [Chapter 37, QoS Commands](#).

IGMP Snooping

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is used by IP hosts to report their multicast group memberships to routers and switches. IP hosts join a multicast group to receive broadcast messages directed to the multicast group address. IGMP is an IP-based protocol and uses IP addresses to identify both the multicast groups and the host members. For a VLAN-aware devices, this means multicast group membership is on a per-VLAN basis. If at least one port in the VLAN is a member of a multicast group, by default multicast packets will be flooded onto all ports in the VLAN.

IGMP snooping enables the switch to forward multicast traffic intelligently on the switch. The switch listens to IGMP membership reports, queries and leave messages to identify the switch ports that are members of multicast groups. Multicast traffic will only be forwarded to ports identified as members of the specific multicast group.

IGMP snooping is performed at Layer 2 on VLAN interfaces automatically. By default, the switch will forward traffic only from those ports with multicast listeners, therefore it will not act as a simple hub and flood all multicast traffic out all ports. IGMP snooping is independent of the IGMP and Layer 3 configuration, so an IP interface does not have to be attached to the VLAN, and IGMP does not have to be enabled or configured.

IGMP snooping is enabled by default.

For more information on IGMP see [Chapter 29, IGMP Snooping Introduction](#) and [Chapter 30, IGMP Snooping Commands](#).

Chapter 15: Switching Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Command List | 15.2 |
| backpressure..... | 15.2 |
| clear loop-protection counters | 15.3 |
| clear mac address-table static | 15.4 |
| clear mac address-table dynamic..... | 15.5 |
| clear port counter | 15.7 |
| debug loopprot | 15.7 |
| debug platform packet | 15.8 |
| duplex..... | 15.10 |
| flowcontrol (switch port)..... | 15.11 |
| linkflap action | 15.13 |
| loop-protection..... | 15.14 |
| loop-protection action | 15.15 |
| loop-protection timeout | 15.16 |
| mac address-table acquire..... | 15.17 |
| mac address-table ageing-time | 15.18 |
| mac address-table static..... | 15.19 |
| mac address-table thrash-limit | 15.20 |
| mirror interface | 15.21 |
| platform load-balancing..... | 15.23 |
| platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding | 15.24 |
| polarity | 15.26 |
| show debugging loopprot | 15.27 |
| show debugging platform packet | 15.27 |
| show flowcontrol interface..... | 15.28 |
| show interface switchport | 15.29 |
| show loop-protection..... | 15.30 |
| show mac address-table..... | 15.31 |
| show mac address-table thrash-limit | 15.33 |
| show mirror | 15.34 |
| show mirror interface | 15.35 |
| show platform | 15.36 |
| show platform classifier statistics utilization brief | 15.37 |
| show platform port..... | 15.37 |
| show port-security interface | 15.44 |
| show port-security intrusion..... | 15.45 |
| show storm-control..... | 15.46 |
| speed | 15.47 |
| storm-control level | 15.49 |
| thrash-limiting..... | 15.50 |
| undebg platform packet..... | 15.51 |
| undebg loopprot..... | 15.51 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure switching. For more information see [Chapter 14, Switching Introduction](#).

backpressure

This command provides a method of applying flow control to ports running in half duplex mode. The setting will only apply when the link is in the half-duplex state.

You can disable backpressure on an interface using the **off** parameter or the **no** variant of this command.

Syntax `backpressure {on|off}`
`no backpressure`

| Parameters | Description |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>on</code> | Enables half-duplex flow control. |
| <code>off</code> | Disables half-duplex flow control. |

Default Backpressure is turned off by default. You can determine whether an interface has backpressure enabled by viewing the running-config output; **backpressure on** is shown for interfaces if this feature is enabled.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The backpressure feature enables half duplex Ethernet ports to control traffic flow during congestion by preventing further packets arriving. Back pressure utilizes a pre-802.3x mechanism in order to apply Ethernet flow control to switch ports that are configured in the half duplex mode.

The flow control applied by the [flowcontrol \(switch port\)](#) command on page 15.11 operates only on full-duplex links, whereas back pressure operates only on half-duplex links.

If a port has insufficient capacity to receive further frames, the switch will simulate a collision by transmitting a CSMACD jamming signal from this port until the buffer empties. The jamming signal causes the sending switch to stop transmitting and wait a random period of time, before retransmitting its data, thus providing time for the buffer to clear. Although this command is only valid for switch ports operating in half-duplex mode the remote switch (the one sending the data) can be operating in the full duplex mode.

To see the currently-negotiated duplex mode for ports whose links are up, use the command [show interface](#). To see the configured duplex mode (when different from the default), use the command [show running-config](#).

Examples To enable back pressure flow control on interfaces `port1.0.1-port1.0.2` enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# backpressure on
```

To disable back pressure flow control on interface `port1.0.2` enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# backpressure off
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`
`show interface`

Related Commands `duplex`

clear loop-protection counters

Use this command to clear the counters for the Loop Protection counters.

Syntax `clear loop-protection [interface <port-list>] counters`

| Parameters | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | The interface whose counters are to be cleared. |
| <code><port-list></code> | A port, a port range, or an aggregated link. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To clear the counter information:

```
awplus# clear loop-protection counters
awplus# clear loop-protection interface port1.0.1 counters
```

clear mac address-table static

Use this command to clear the filtering database of all statically configured entries for a selected MAC address, interface, or VLAN.

Syntax `clear mac address-table static [address <mac-address>|
interface <port>|vlan <vid>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| address | Specify a MAC (Media Access Control) address to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <mac-address> | Enter a MAC address to be cleared from the database in the format HHHH.HHHH.HHHH. |
| interface | Specify a switch port to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <port> | Specify the switch port from which address entries will be cleared. This can be a single switch port, (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa2), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2). |
| vlan | Specify a VLAN to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <vid> | Enter a VID (VLAN ID) in the range <1-4094> to be cleared from the filtering database. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Use this command with options to clear the filtering database of all entries made from the CLI for a given MAC address, interface or VLAN. Use this command without options to clear any entries made from the CLI.

Compare this usage with [clear mac address-table dynamic command on page 15.5](#).

Examples This example shows how to clear all filtering database entries configured through the CLI.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table static
```

This example shows how to clear all filtering database entries for a given interface configured through the CLI.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table static interface port1.0.3
```

This example shows how to clear filtering database entries filtering database entries configured through the CLI for a given mac address.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table static address 0202.0202.0202
```

Related Commands [clear mac address-table dynamic](#)
[mac address-table static](#)
[show mac address-table](#)

clear mac address-table dynamic

Use this command to clear the filtering database of all entries learned for a selected MAC address, an MSTP instance, a switch port interface or a VLAN interface.

Syntax `clear mac address-table dynamic [address <mac-address>|
interface <port> [instance <inst>]|vlan <vid>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| interface | Specify a switch port to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <port> | Specify the switch port from which address entries will be cleared. This can be a single switch port, (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |
| address | Specify a MAC (Media Access Control) address to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <mac-address> | Enter a MAC address to be cleared from the database in the format HHHH.HHHH.HHHH. |
| instance | Specify an MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree) instance to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <inst> | Enter an MSTP instance in the range <1-63> to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| vlan | Specify a VLAN to be cleared from the filtering database. |
| <vid> | Enter a VID (VLAN ID) in the range <1-4094> to be cleared from the filtering database. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Use this command with options to clear the filtering database of all entries learned for a given MAC address, interface or VLAN. Use this command without options to clear any learned entries.

Use the optional `instance` parameter to clear the filtering database entries associated with a specified MSTP instance. Note that you must first specify a switch port interface before you can specify an MSTP instance.

Compare this usage and operation with the [clear mac address-table static command on page 15.4](#). Note that an MSTP instance cannot be specified with `clear mac address-table static`.

Examples This example shows how to clear all dynamically learned filtering database entries for all interfaces, addresses, VLANs.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table dynamic
```

This example shows how to clear all dynamically learned filtering database entries when learned through switch operation for a given MAC address.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table dynamic address 0202.0202.0202
```

This example shows how to clear all dynamically learned filtering database entries when learned through switch operation for a given MSTP instance 1 on switch port interface port1.0.2.

```
awplus# clear mac address-table dynamic interface port1.0.2
instance 1
```

Related Commands [clear mac address-table static](#)
[show mac address-table](#)

clear port counter

Use this command to clear the packet counters of the port.

Syntax `clear port counter [<port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| <port> | The port number or range |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To clear the packet counter for `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# clear port counter port1.0.1
```

Related Commands [show platform port](#)

debug loopprot

This command enables Loop Protection debugging.

The **no** variant of this command disables Loop Protection debugging.

Syntax `debug loopprot {info|msg|pkt|state|nsm|all}`
`no debug loopprot {info|msg|pkt|state|nsm|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| info | General Loop Protection information. |
| msg | Received and transmitted Loop Detection Frames (LDFs). |
| pkt | Echo raw ASCII display of received and transmitted LDF packets to the console. |
| state | Loop Protection states transitions. |
| nsm | Network Service Module information. |
| all | All debugging information. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To enable debug for all state transitions, use the command:

```
awplus# debug loopprot state
```

Related Commands [show debugging loopprot](#)
[undebug loopprot](#)

debug platform packet

This command enables platform to CPU level packet debug functionality on the switch.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable platform to CPU level packet debug. If the result means both send and receive packet debug are disabled, then any active timeout will be canceled.

Syntax `debug platform packet [recv] [send] [sflow] [timeout <timeout>]
[vlan <vlan-id>|all]`

`no debug platform packet [recv] [send]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| recv | Debug packets received. |
| send | Debug packets sent. |
| sflow | Debug sFlow packets. |
| timeout | Stop debug after a specified time. |
| <timeout> | <0-3600>The timeout period, specified in seconds. |
| vlan | Limit debug to a single VLAN ID specified. |
| <vlan-id> | <1-4094> The VLAN ID to limit the debug output on. |
| all | Debug all VLANs (default setting). |

Default A 5 minute timeout is configured by default if no other timeout duration is specified.

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Usage This command can be used to trace packets sent and received by the CPU. If a timeout is not specified, then a default 5 minute timeout will be applied.

If a timeout of 0 is specified, packet debug will be generated until the **no** variant of this command is used or another timeout value is specified. The timeout value applies to both send and receive debug and is updated whenever the **debug platform packet** command is used.

Examples To enable both receive and send packet debug for the default timeout of 5 minutes, enter:

```
awplus# debug platform packet
```

To enable receive packet debug for 10 seconds, enter:

```
awplus# debug platform packet recv timeout 10
```

To enable packet debug for sFlow packets only for the default timeout of 5 minutes, enter:

```
awplus# debug platform packet sflow
```

To enable send packet debug with no timeout, enter:

```
awplus# debug platform packet send timeout 0
```

To enable VLAN packet debug for VLAN 2 with a timeout duration of 3 minutes, enter:

```
awplus# debug platform packet vlan 2 timeout 150
```

To disable receive packet debug, enter:

```
awplus# no debug platform packet recv
```

Related Commands **show debugging platform packet**
 undebug platform packet

duplex

This command changes the duplex mode for the specified port.

To see the currently-negotiated duplex mode for ports whose links are up, use the command **show interface**. To see the configured duplex mode (when different from the default), use the command **show running-config**.

Syntax `duplex {auto|full|half}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| auto | Auto-negotiate duplex mode. |
| full | Operate in full duplex mode only. |
| half | Operate in half duplex mode only. |

Default By default, ports auto-negotiate duplex mode (except for 100Base-FX ports which do not support auto-negotiation, so default to full duplex mode).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Switch ports in a static or dynamic (LACP) channel group must have the same port speed and be in full duplex mode. Once switch ports have been aggregated into a channel group, you can set the duplex mode of all the switch ports in the channel group by applying this command to the channel group.

Examples To specify full duplex for `port1.0.4`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# duplex full
```

To specify half duplex for `port1.0.4`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# duplex half
```

To auto-negotiate duplex mode for `port1.0.4`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# duplex auto
```

Related Commands

- backpressure**
- polarity**
- speed**
- show interface**

flowcontrol (switch port)

Use this command to enable flow control, and configure the flow control mode for the switch port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable flow control for the specified switch port.

Syntax `flowcontrol {send|receive} {off|on}`
`no flowcontrol`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| receive | When the port receives pause frames, it temporarily stops (pauses) sending traffic. |
| on | Enable the specified flow control. |
| off | Disable the specified flow control. |
| send | When the port is congested (receiving too much traffic), it sends pause frames to request the other end to temporarily stop (pause) sending traffic. |

Default By default, flow control is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The flow control mechanism specified by 802.3x is only for full duplex links. It operates by sending PAUSE frames to the link partner to temporarily suspend transmission on the link

Flow control enables connected Ethernet ports to control traffic rates during congestion by allowing congested nodes to pause link operation at the other end. If one port experiences congestion, and cannot receive any more traffic, it notifies the other port to stop sending until the condition clears. When the local device detects congestion at its end, it notifies the remote device by sending a pause frame. On receiving a pause frame, the remote device stops sending data packets, which prevents loss of data packets during the congestion period.

Flow control is not recommended when running QoS or ACLs, because the complex queuing, scheduling, and filtering configured by QoS or ACLs may be slowed by applying flow control.

For half-duplex links, an older form of flow control known as backpressure is supported. See the related [backpressure](#) command on page 15.2.

For flow control on async serial (console) ports, see [flowcontrol hardware \(async/console\)](#) command on page 5.11.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# flowcontrol receive on
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# flowcontrol receive off
```

**Validation
Commands** **show running-config**

Related Commands **backpressure**

linkflap action

Use this command to detect flapping on all ports. If more than 15 flaps occur in less than 15 seconds the flapping port will shut down.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable flapping detection at this rate.

Syntax `linkflap action [shutdown]`
`no linkflap action`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>linkflap</code> | Global setting for link flapping. |
| <code>action</code> | Specify the action for port. |
| <code>shutdown</code> | Shutdown the port. |

Default Linkflap action is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To enable the linkflap action command on the switch, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# linkflap action shutdown
```

loop-protection

Use this command to enable the loop-protection loop-detection feature, and configure the detection mechanism parameters.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the loop-protection loop-detection feature.

Syntax `loop-protection loop-detect [ldf-interval <period>]
[ldf-rx-window <frames>]`
`no loop-protection [loop-detect]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>loop-detect</code> | Enables loop detection when used with loop-protection keywords. Disables loop detection when used with no loop-protection keywords. |
| <code>ldf-interval</code> | The time (in seconds) between successive loop-detect frames being sent. |
| <code><period></code> | Specify a period between 1 and 600 seconds. The default is 10 seconds. |
| <code>ldf-rx-window</code> | The number of transmitted loop detection frames whose details are held for comparing with frames arriving at the same port. |
| <code><frames></code> | Specify a value for the window size between 1 and 5 frames. The default is 3 frames. |

Default The loop-protection loop-detection feature is disabled by default. The default interval is 10 seconds, and the default window size is 3 frames.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage See the **Loop Protection** section in **Chapter 14, Switching Introduction** for relevant conceptual, configuration, and overview information prior to applying this command.

Example To enable the loop-detect mechanism on the switch, and generate loop-detect frames once every 5 seconds, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# loop-protection loop-detect ldf-interval 5
```

Related Commands [loop-protection action](#)
[loop-protection timeout](#)
[show loop-protection](#)
[thrash-limiting](#)

loop-protection action

Use this command to specify the protective action to apply when a network loop is detected on an interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the loop protection actions to the default action, `vlan-disable`, on an interface.

Syntax `loop-protection action {link-down|log-only|port-disable|vlan-disable|none}`

`no loop-protection action`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>link-down</code> | Block all traffic on a port (or aggregated link) that detected the loop, and take down the link. |
| <code>log-only</code> | Details of loop conditions are logged. No action is applied to the port (or aggregated link). |
| <code>port-disable</code> | Block all traffic on interface for which the loop occurred, but keep the link in the up state. |
| <code>vlan-disable</code> | Block all traffic for the VLAN on which the loop traffic was detected. Note that setting this parameter will also enable ingress filtering. This is the default action. |
| <code>none</code> | Applies no protective action. |

Default `loop-protection action vlan-disable`

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage See the **Loop Protection** section in **Chapter 14, Switching Introduction** for relevant conceptual, configuration, and overview information prior to applying this command.

Example To disable an interface (`port1.0.4`), and bring the link down, when a network loop is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# loop-protection action link-down
```

Related Commands [loop-protection](#)
[loop-protection timeout](#)
[show loop-protection](#)
[thrash-limiting](#)

loop-protection timeout

Use this command to specify the Loop Protection recovery action duration on an interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the loop protection timeout to the default.

Syntax `loop-protection timeout <duration>`
`no loop-protection timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><duration></code> | The time (in seconds) for which the configured action will apply before being disabled. This duration can be set between 0 and 86400 seconds (24 hours). The set of 0 means infinity so timeout does not expire. |

Default The default is 7 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage See the **Loop Protection** section in **Chapter 14, Switching Introduction** for relevant conceptual, configuration, and overview information prior to applying this command.

Example To configure a loop protection action timeout of 10 seconds for `port1.0.4`, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# loop-protection timeout 10
```

Related Commands **loop-protection**
loop-protection action
show loop-protection
thrash-limiting

mac address-table acquire

Use this command to enable MAC address learning on the device.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable learning.

Syntax `mac address-table acquire`
`no mac address-table acquire`

Default Learning is enabled by default for all instances.

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mac address-table acquire
```

mac address-table ageing-time

Use this command to specify an ageing-out time for a learned MAC address. The learned MAC address will persist for at least the specified time.

The **no** variant of this command will reset the ageing-out time back to the default of 300 seconds (5 minutes).

Syntax `mac address-table ageing-time <ageing-timer> none`
`no mac address-table ageing-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <code><ageing-timer></code> | <code><10-1000000></code> The number of seconds of persistence. |
| <code>none</code> | Disable learned MAC address timeout. |

Default The default ageing time is 300 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following commands specify various ageing timeouts on the switch:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mac address-table ageing-time 1000
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mac address-table ageing-time none
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no mac address-table ageing-time
```

mac address-table static

Use this command to statically configure the MAC address-table to forward or discard frames with a matching destination MAC address.

Syntax `mac address-table static <mac-addr> {forward|discard} interface <port> [vlan <vid>]`
`no mac address-table static <mac-addr> {forward|discard} interface <port> [vlan <vid>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><mac-addr></code> | The destination MAC address in HHHH . HHHH . HHHH format. |
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |
| <code><vid></code> | The VLAN ID. If you do not specify a VLAN, its value defaults to vlan 1. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The **mac address-table static** command is only applicable to Layer 2 switched traffic within a single VLAN. Do not apply the **mac address-table static** command to Layer 3 switched traffic passing from one VLAN to another VLAN. Frames will not be discarded across VLANs because packets are routed across VLANs. This command only works on Layer 2 traffic.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mac address-table static 2222.2222.2222 forward
interface port1.0.4 vlan 3
```

Related Commands [clear mac address-table static](#)
[show mac address-table](#)

mac address-table thrash-limit

Use this command to set the thrash limit on the switch. Thrashing occurs when a MAC address table rapidly “flips” its mapping of a single MAC address between two subnets, usually as a result of a network loop.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable thrash limiting.

Syntax `mac address-table thrash-limit <rate>`
`no mac address-table thrash-limit`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><rate></code> | sets the maximum thrash rate at which limiting is applied. This rate can be set between 5 and 255 MAC thrashing flips per second. Once the thrash limit rate is reached, the port is considered to be thrashing. |

Default No thrash limiting

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to limit thrashing on the selected port range.

Example To apply a thrash limit of 100 MAC address flips per second:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mac address-table thrash-limit 100
```

Related Commands [show mac address-table thrash-limit](#)

mirror interface

Use this command to define a mirror port and mirrored (monitored) ports and direction of traffic to be mirrored. The port for which you enter interface mode will be the mirror port.

The destination port is removed from all VLANs, and no longer participates in other switching.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable port mirroring by the destination port on the specified source port.

Use the **none** variant of this command when using copy-to-mirror ACL and QoS commands.

Syntax `mirror interface <source-port-list> direction {both|receive|transmit}`
`mirror interface none`
`no mirror interface <source-port-list>`
`no mirror interface none`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code><source-port-list></code> | <p>The source switch ports to mirror. A port-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a port (e.g. <code>port1.0.2</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.1-1.0.2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code> <p>The source port list cannot include dynamic or static channel groups (link aggregators).</p> |
| <code>direction</code> | Specifies whether to mirror traffic that the source port receives, transmits, or both. |
| <code>both</code> | Mirroring traffic both received and transmitted by the source port. |
| <code>receive</code> | Mirroring traffic received by the source port. |
| <code>transmit</code> | Mirroring traffic transmitted by the source port. |
| <code>none</code> | Specify this parameter for use with the ACL (Access Control List) access-list and QoS (Quality of Service) default action commands when used with the copy-to-mirror parameter option, so you can specify the destination port (the analyzer port) for the traffic without specifying a source mirror port. See the ACL commands access-list (hardware IP numbered) and access-list (hardware MAC numbered) , and the QoS command default-action for further information. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Use this command to send traffic to another device connected to the mirror port for monitoring.

See [“Port Mirroring” on page 14.17](#).

A mirror port cannot be associated with a VLAN. If a switch port is configured to be a mirror port, it is automatically removed from any VLAN it was associated with.

This command can only be applied to a single mirror (destination) port, not to a range of ports, nor to a static or dynamic channel group. Do not apply multiple interfaces with an interface command before issuing the mirror interface command. One interface may have multiple mirror interfaces.

Example To mirror traffic received and transmitted on port1.0.4 and port1.0.5 to destination port1.0.3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# mirror interface port1.0.4,port1.0.5
direction both
```

To enable use with the **access-list (hardware IP numbered)** ACL and **default-action** QoS commands to destination port1.0.3 without specifying a source port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# mirror interface none
```

To mirror all TCP traffic, received or transmitted to analyzer port1.0.1, see the sample config below:

```
awplus#show running-config
!
mls qos enable
access-list 3000 copy-to-mirror tcp any any
access-group 3000
!
interface port1.0.1
 mirror interface none
 switchport
!
```

Related Commands [access-list \(hardware IP numbered\)](#)
[access-list \(hardware MAC numbered\)](#)
[default-action](#)

platform load-balancing

This command selects which address fields are used as inputs into the load balancing algorithm for aggregated links. The output from this algorithm is used to select which individual path a given packet will traverse within an aggregated link.

The **no** variant of this command applies its default setting.

Syntax `platform load-balancing {src-dst-mac|src-dst-ip}`
`no platform load-balancing`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>src-dst-mac</code> | Include the source and destination MAC addresses (Layer 2) |
| <code>src-dst-ip</code> | Include the source and destination IP addresses (Layer 3) and UDP/TCP source and destination ports. If you choose this option, the algorithm will use MAC addresses to calculate load balancing for Layer 2 and non-IP packets. |

Default The default is **src-dst-ip**.

Mode Global configuration

Examples To set the load balancing algorithm to include only Layer 2 MAC addresses, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# platform load-balancing src-dst-mac
```

To set the load balancing algorithm to include only Layer 3 IP addresses and L4 ports, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# platform load-balancing src-dst-ip
```

Related Commands [show platform](#)

platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding

This command stops multicast packets flooding out of all the ports in the VLAN until these packets are registered. This command does this by sending unregistered multicast packets to the switch processor, so there is no flooding of the multicast traffic onto the VLAN. Unregistered traffic will not flow until the switch has registered it, regardless of attempts to subscribe to it. Once the traffic is registered, it flows to registered subscribers and ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to revert to default behavior and disable this feature.

 **Note** This command should not be used within any IPv6 networks. IPv6 neighbor discovery operation is inhibited by this feature. This command does not stop reserved Local Network Control Block IPv4 multicast packets in the address range 224.0.0.1 to 224.0.0.255 (224.0.0/24). See www.iana.org/assignments/multicast-addresses/multicast-addresses.xml#multicast-addresses-1

Syntax platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding
no platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding

Default This feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command stops the periodic flooding of unknown or unregistered multicast packets when the Group Membership interval timer expires and there are no subscribers to a multicast group. If there is multicast traffic in a VLAN without subscribers, multicast traffic temporarily floods out of the VLAN when the Group Membership interval timer expires, which happens when the switch does not get replies from Group Membership queries.

For further information about query messages see the [Staying in the Multicast Group \(Query Message\)](#) section in [Chapter 29, IGMP Snooping Introduction](#).

This command also stops the initial flood of multicast packets that happens when a new multicast source starts to send traffic. This flooding lasts until snooping recognizes the multicast group. For example, in sites where IP cameras have multicast groups, traffic is flooded to the VLAN and causes large bursts of traffic. Use this command when there is limited processing available for large bursts of traffic, such as in sites with IP cameras.

Output See the console message warning about IPv6 operation after entering this command:

```
% WARNING: IPv6 will not work with this setting enabled
% Please consult the documentation for more information
```

See these sample console messages when the Group Membership interval timer expires, which happens when the switch does not get replies from Group Membership queries:

```
awplus: [MLD-EVENTS] Grp - Rec Liveness Timer: Expiry for Grp ff0e::1 on port1.2.7
awplus: [IGMP-EVENTS] : Expiry (Unreg MC Timer) for Grp 224.2.2.2 on vlan4
```

Examples To enable this feature and stop multicast packet flooding, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding
```

To disable this feature and allow multicast packet flooding, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding
```

Related Commands [show platform](#)
[show running-config](#)

polarity

This command sets the MDI/MDIX polarity on a copper-based switch port.

Syntax `polarity {auto|mdi|mdix}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| mdi | Sets the polarity to MDI (medium dependent interface). |
| mdix | Sets the polarity to MDI-X (medium dependent interface crossover). |
| auto | The switch port sets the polarity automatically. This is the default option. |

Default By default, switch ports set the polarity automatically (**auto**).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage We recommend the default **auto** setting for MDI/MDIX polarity. Polarity applies to copper 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T, and 1000BASE-T switch ports; It does not apply to fiber ports. For more information, see [“MDI/MDIX Connection Modes” on page 14.5](#).

Example To set the polarity for `port1.0.6` to fixed MDI mode, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# polarity mdi
```

show debugging loopprot

This command shows Loop Protection debugging information.

Syntax show debugging loopprot

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the enabled Loop Protection debugging modes, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging loopprot
```

Related Commands [debug loopprot](#)

show debugging platform packet

This command shows platform to CPU level packet debugging information.

Syntax show debugging platform packet

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the platform packet debugging information, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging platform packet
```

Related Commands [debug platform packet](#)
[undebug platform packet](#)

show flowcontrol interface

Use this command to display flow control information.

Syntax `show flowcontrol interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <port> | Specifies the name of the port to be displayed. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the flow control for the `port1.0.5`, use the command:

```
awplus# show flowcontrol interface port1.0.5
```

Output **Figure 15-1: Example output from the show flowcontrol interface command for a specific interface**

| Port | Send admin | FlowControl oper | Receive admin | FlowControl oper | RxPause | TxPause |
|-----------|---------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|
| port1.0.5 | on | on | on | on | 0 | 0 |

show interface switchport

Use this command to show VLAN information about each switch port.

Syntax `show interface switchport`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display VLAN information about each switch port, enter the command:

```
awplus# show interface switchport
```

Output **Figure 15-2: Example output from the show interface switchport command**

```
Interface name      : port1.0.1
Switchport mode    : access
Ingress filter      : enable
Acceptable frame types : all
Default Vlan       : 2
Configured Vlans   : 2

Interface name      : port1.0.2
Switchport mode    : trunk
Ingress filter      : enable
Acceptable frame types : all
Default Vlan       : 1
Configured Vlans   : 1 4 5 6 7 8
...
```

Related Commands [show interface memory](#)

show loop-protection

Use this command to display the current loop protection setup for the device.

Syntax `show loop-protection [interface <port-list>] [counters]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | The interface selected for display. |
| <code><port-list></code> | A port, a port range, or an aggregated link. |
| <code>counters</code> | Displays counter information for loop protection. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This command is used to display the current configuration and operation of the Loop Protection feature

Examples To display the current configuration status for `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# show loop-protection interface port1.0.1
```

Figure 15-3: Example output from the show loop-protection command

```
Loop-Detection:      Enabled
LDF Interval:       10 [sec]
Interface:          port1.0.1
Action:             port-disable
Timeout:            300 [sec]
Vlan:               1
  Status:           Blocking
  Timeout Remaining: 115 [sec]
Vlan:               2
  Status:           Normal
  Timeout Remaining: 0 [sec]
```

To display the counter information for `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# show loop-protection interface port1.0.1 counters
```

Figure 15-4: Example output from the show loop-protection interface counters command for port1.0.1

```
Interface:          port1.0.1
Vlan:               1
  LDF Tx:           3
  LDF Rx:           1
  Invalid LDF Rx:  1
  Action:           1
Vlan:               2
  LDF Tx:           3
  LDF Rx:           0
  Invalid LDF Rx:  0
  Action:           0
```

show mac address-table

Use this command to display the mac address-table for all configured VLANs.

Syntax show mac address-table

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage The **show mac address-table** command is only applicable to view a mac address-table for Layer 2 switched traffic within VLANs.

Example To display the mac address-table, use the following command:

```
awplus# show mac address-table
```

Output See the below sample output captured when there was no traffic being switched:

```
awplus#show mac address-table
VLAN Port      MAC           State
1     unknown    0000.cd28.0752 static
ARP   -          0000.cd00.0000 static
```

See the sample output captured when packets were switched and mac addresses were learned:

```
awplus#show mac address-table
VLAN Port      MAC           State
1     unknown    0000.cd28.0752 static
1     port1.0.6  0030.846e.9bf4 dynamic
1     port1.0.4  0030.846e.bac7 dynamic
ARP   -          0000.cd00.0000 static
```

Note the new mac addresses learned for port1.0.4 and port1.0.6 added as dynamic entries.

Note the first column of the output below shows VLAN IDs if multiple VLANs are configured:

```
awplus#show mac address-table
VLAN Port      MAC           State
1     unknown    0000.cd28.0752 static
1     port1.0.4  0030.846e.bac7 dynamic
2     unknown    0000.cd28.0752 static
2     port1.0.6  0030.846e.9bf4 dynamic
ARP   -          0000.cd00.0000 static
```

Also note manually configured static mac-addresses are shown to the right of the type column:

```
awplus(config)#mac address-table static 0000.1111.2222 for int
port1.0.3 vlan 2
awplus(config)#end
awplus#
awplus#show mac address-table
```

| VLAN | Port | MAC | State |
|------|-----------|----------------|---------|
| 1 | unknown | 0000.cd28.0752 | static |
| 1 | port1.0.2 | 0030.846e.bac7 | dynamic |
| 2 | port1.0.3 | 0000.1111.2222 | static |
| 2 | unknown | 0000.cd28.0752 | static |
| 2 | port1.0.5 | 0030.846e.9bf4 | dynamic |
| ARP | - | 0000.cd00.0000 | statics |

Related Commands **clear mac address-table dynamic**
clear mac address-table static
mac address-table static

show mac address-table thrash-limit

Use this command to display the current thrash limit set for all interfaces on the device.

Syntax `show mac address-table thrash-limit`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current, use the following command:

```
awplus# show mac address-table thrash-limit
```

Output **Figure 15-5: Example output from the show mac address-table thrash-limit command**

```
% Thrash-limit 7 movements per second
```

Related Commands [mac address-table thrash-limit](#)

show mirror

Use this command to display the status of all mirrored ports.

Syntax show mirror

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the status of all mirrored ports, use the following command:

```
awplus# show mirror
```

Output **Figure 15-6: Example output from the show mirror command**

```
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.1
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: both
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.2
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.3
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: receive
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.4
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.3
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: receive
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.1
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.1
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: receive
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.3
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.1
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: transmit
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.4
```

show mirror interface

Use this command to display port mirroring configuration for a mirrored (monitored) switch port.

Syntax `show mirror interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><port></code> | The monitored switch port to display information about. |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Example To display port mirroring configuration for the `port1.0.4`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# show mirror interface port1.0.4
```

Output **Figure 15-7: Example output from the show mirror interface command**

```
Mirror Test Port Name: port1.0.3
Mirror option: Enabled
Mirror direction: both
Monitored Port Name: port1.0.4
```

show platform

This command displays the settings configured by using the **platform** commands.

Syntax `show platform`

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command displays the settings in the running config. For changes in some of these settings to take effect, the switch must be rebooted with the new settings in the startup config.

Example To check the settings configured with **platform** commands on the switch, use the following command:

```
awplus# show platform
```

Output **Figure 15-8: Example output from the show platform command**

```
awplus# show platform
MAC vlan hashing algorithm          crc321
```

Table 15-1: Parameters in the output of the show platform command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| MAC vlan hashing algorithm | MAC based VLAN hash control. |

Related Commands

platform load-balancing

show platform classifier statistics utilization brief

This command displays the number of used entries available for various platform functions, and the percentage that number of entries represents of the total available.

Syntax `show platform classifier statistics utilization brief`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the platform classifier utilization statistics, use the following command:

```
awplus# show platform classifier statistics utilization brief
```

Output **Figure 15-9: Output from the show platform classifier statistics utilization brief command**

```
awplus#show platform classifier statistics utilization brief
[Instance 0]
Number of Entries:
Policy Type      Group ID      Used / Total
-----
ACL              1476395009   0 / 118 ( 0%)
Web Auth        Inactive      0 / 0 ( 0%)
QoS              0 / 128 ( 0%)
```

show platform port

This command displays the various port registers or platform counters for specified switchports.

Syntax `show platform port [<port-list>|counters]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to display information about. A port-list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-1.0.6 ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6. |
| <code>counters</code> | Show the platform counters. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display port registers for port1.0.1 and port1.0.2 use the following command:

```
awplus# show platform port port1.0.1-port1.0.2
```

To display platform counters for port1.0.1 and port1.0.2 use the following command:

```
awplus# show platform port port1.0.1-port1.0.2 counters
```

Output Figure 15-10: Example output from the show platform port command

```
awplus#show platform port port1.0.1
Phy register value for port1.0.1 (ifindex: 5001)

00:1140 01:7949 02:0020 03:60B1 04:01E1 05:0000 06:0004 07:2001
08:0000 09:0600 10:0000 11:0000 12:0000 13:0000 14:0000 15:0000
16:0000 17:0000 18:0000 19:0000 20:0000 21:0000 22:0000 23:0000
24:0000 25:0000 26:0000 27:0000 28:0000 29:0000 30:0000 31:0000

Port configuration for lport 0x08001000:
enabled: 1
loopback: 0
link: 0
speed: 0 max speed: 1000
duplex: 0
linkscan: 2
autonegotiate: 1
master: 2
tx pause: 1 rx pause: 1
untagged vlan: 1
vlan filter: 3
stp state: 1
learn: 5
discard: 0
max frame size: 1522
MC Disable SA: no
MC Disable TTL: no
MC egress untag: 0
MC egress vid: 0
MC TTL threshold: -1
```

Table 15-2: Parameters in the output from the show platform port command

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| Ethernet MAC counters | |
| Combined receive/transmit packets by size (octets) counters | Number of packets in each size range received and transmitted. |
| 64 | Number of 64 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 65 - 127 | Number of 65 - 127 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 128 - 255 | Number of 128 - 255 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 256 - 511 | Number of 256 - 511 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 512 - 1023 | Number of 512 - 1023 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 1024 - MaxPktSz | Number of packets received and transmitted with size 1024 octets to the maximum packet length. |
| 1519 - 1522 | Number of 1519 - 1522 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 1519 - 2047 | Number of 1519 - 2047 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 2048 - 4095 | Number of 2048 - 4095 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 4096 - 9216 | Number of 4096 - 9216 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| General Counters | |
| Receive | Counters for traffic received. |
| Octets | Number of octets received. |
| Pkts | Number of packets received. |
| FCSErrors | Number of FCS (Frame Check Sequence) error events received. |
| UnicastPkts | Number of unicast packets received. |
| MulticastPkts | Number of multicast packets received. |
| BroadcastPkts | Number of broadcast packets received. |
| PauseMACCtlFrms | Number of Pause MAC Control Frames received. |
| OversizePkts | Number of oversize packets received. |
| Fragments | Number of fragments received. |
| Jabbers | Number of jabber frames received. |
| UnsupportOpcode | Number of MAC Control frames with unsupported opcode received. |
| AlignmentErrors | Receive Alignment Error Frame Counter. |
| SysErDurCarrier | Receive Code Error Counter. |

Table 15-2: Parameters in the output from the show platform port command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| CarrierSenseErr | Receive False Carrier Counter. |
| UndersizePkts | Number of undersized packets received. |
| Transmit | Counters for traffic transmitted. |
| Octets | Number of octets transmitted. |
| Pkts | Number of packets transmitted. |
| UnicastPkts | Number of unicast packets transmitted. |
| MulticastPkts | Number of multicast packets transmitted. |
| BroadcastPkts | Number of broadcast packets transmitted. |
| PauseMACCtlFrms | Number of Pause MAC Control Frames transmitted. |
| OversizePkts | Number of oversize packets transmitted. |
| FrameWDeferrdTx | Transmit Single Deferral Frame counter. |
| FrmWExcesDefer | Transmit Multiple Deferral Frame counter. |
| SingleCollsnFrm | Transmit Single Collision Frame counter. |
| MultCollsnFrm | Transmit Multiple Collision Frame counter. |
| LateCollisions | Transmit Late Collision Frame counter. |
| ExcessivCollsns | Transmit Excessive Collision Frame counter. |
| Collisions | Transmit Total Collision counter |
| Layer 3 Counters | |
| ifInUcastPkts | Inbound interface Unicast counter. |
| ifInDiscards | Inbound interface Discarded Packets counter. |
| ipInHdrErrors | Inbound interface Header Errors counter. |
| ifOutUcastPkts | Outbound interface Unicast counter. |
| ifOutErrors | Outbound interface Error counter. |
| Miscellaneous Counters | |
| DropEvents | Drop Event counter |
| ifOutDiscards | Outbound interface Discarded Packets counter. |
| MTUExcdDiscard | Receive MTU Check Error Frame Counter |

Output Figure 15-11: Example output from the show platform port counters command

```

awplus#show platform port port1.0.1 counters

Switch Port Counters
-----

Port port1.0.1 Ethernet MAC counters:
Combined receive/transmit packets by size (octets) counters:
 64                               0 1024 - MaxPktSz           0
65 - 127                          0 1519 - 1522           0
128 - 255                          0 1519 - 2047           0
256 - 511                          0 2048 - 4095           0
512 - 1023                         0 4096 - 9216           0

General Counters:
Receive                               Transmit
Octets                               0 Octets                   0
Pkts                                 0 Pkts                     0
FCSErrors                           0
UnicastPkts                          0 UnicastPkts             0
MulticastPkts                        0 MulticastPkts           0
BroadcastPkts                        0 BroadcastPkts          0
PauseMACCtlFrms                      0 PauseMACCtlFrms        0
OversizePkts                          0
Fragments                             0
Jabbers                               0
UnsupportOpcode                       0
AlignmentErrors                       0
SymErDurCarrier                       0
CarrierSenseErr                       0
UndersizePkts                         0
                                         FrameWDeferrdTx         0
                                         FrmWExcesDefer          0
                                         SingleCollsnFrm        0
                                         MultCollsnFrm          0
                                         LateCollisions          0
                                         ExcessivCollsns        0
                                         Collisions              0

Layer 3 Counters:
ifInUcastPkts                        0 ifOutUcastPkts          0
ifInDiscards                          0 ifOutErrors              0
ipInHdrErrors                          0

Miscellaneous Counters:
DropEvents                            0
ifOutDiscards                          0
MTUExcdDiscard                         0
-----
    
```

Table 15-3: Output parameters from the show platform port counters command

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| Ethernet MAC counters | |
| Combined receive/transmit packets by size (octets) counters | Number of packets in each size range received and transmitted. |
| 64 | Number of 64 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 65 - 127 | Number of 65 - 127 octet packets received and transmitted. |

Table 15-3: Output parameters from the show platform port counters command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| 128 - 255 | Number of 128 - 255 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 256 - 511 | Number of 256 - 511 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 512 - 1023 | Number of 512 - 1023 octet packets received and transmitted. |
| 1024 - MaxPktSz | Number of packets received and transmitted with size 1024 octets to the maximum packet length. |
| General Counters | |
| Receive | Counters for traffic received. |
| Octets | Number of octets received. |
| Pkts | Number of packets received. |
| CRCErrors | Number of CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) error events received. |
| UnicastPkts | Number of unicast packets received. |
| MulticastPkts | Number of multicast packets received. |
| BroadcastPkts | Number of broadcast packets received. |
| FlowCtrlFrms | Number of good Flow Control frames received. |
| OversizePkts | Number of oversize packets received. |
| Fragments | Number of fragments received. |
| Jabbers | Number of jabber frames received. |
| UnsupportOpcode | Number of MAC Control frames with unsupported opcode received. |
| UndersizePkts | Number of undersized packets received. |
| Transmit | Counters for traffic transmitted. |
| Octets | Number of octets transmitted. |
| Pkts | Number of packets transmitted. |
| UnicastPkts | Number of unicast packets transmitted. |
| MulticastPkts | Number of multicast packets transmitted. |
| BroadcastPkts | Number of broadcast packets transmitted. |
| FlowCtrlFrms | Number of good Flow Control frames transmitted. |
| OversizePkts | Number of oversize packets transmitted. |
| FlowCtrlFrms | The number of Flow Control frames transmitted. |
| Collisions | Total number of collisions seen by the MAC. |
| LateCollisions | Total number of late collisions seen by the MAC. |
| ExcessivCollsns | Number of frames dropped in the transmit MAC due to excessive collisions. This is applicable for Half-Duplex mode only. |

Table 15-3: Output parameters from the show platform port counters command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Miscellaneous Counters | |
| Mac TxErr | Number of frames not transmitted correctly or dropped due to internal MAC transmit error. |
| Mac RxErr | Number of Receive Error events seen by the receive side of the MAC. |
| DropEvents | Number of instances that the port was unable to receive packets due to insufficient bandwidth to one of the PP internal resources, such as the DRAM or buffer allocation. |

show port-security interface

Use this command to show the current port-security configuration and the switch port status.

Syntax `show port-security interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <port> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa3</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po4</code>). |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To see the port-security status on `port1.0.1`, use the following command:

```
awplus# show port-security interface port1.0.1
```

Output **Figure 15-12: Example output from the show port-security interface command**

```
Port Security configuration
Security Enabled           : YES
Port Status                : ENABLED
Violation Mode             : TRAP
Aging                      : OFF
Maximum MAC Addresses      : 3
Total MAC ddresses        : 1
Lock Status                : UNLOCKED
Security Violation Count   : 0
Last Violation Source Address : None
```

show port-security intrusion

Shows the intrusion list. If the port is not specified, the entire intrusion table is shown.

Syntax `show port-security intrusion [interface <port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify a port |
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa3</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po4</code>). |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To see the intrusion list on `port1.0.1`, use the following command:

```
awplus# show port-security intrusion interface port1.0.1
```

Output **Figure 15-13: Example output from the show port-security intrusion command for port 1.0.1**

```
Port Security Intrusion List
Interface: port1.0.1 -3 intrusion(s) detected
11-22-33-44-55-04 11-22-33-44-55-06 11-22-33-44-55-08
```

show storm-control

Use this command to display storm-control information for all interfaces or a particular interface.

Syntax `show storm-control [<port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <port> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa2), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2). |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display storm-control information for port1.0.2, use the following command:

```
awplus# show storm-control port1.0.2
```

Output **Figure 15-14: Example output from the show storm-control command for port1.0.2**

| Port | BcastLevel | McastLevel | DlfLevel |
|-----------|------------|------------|----------|
| port1.0.2 | 40.0% | 100.0% | 100.0% |

Example To display storm-control information for all ports, use the following command:

```
awplus# show storm-control
```

Output **Figure 15-15: Example output from the show storm-control command for all ports**

```
awplus#show storm-control
Port      BcastLevel  McastLevel  DlfLevel
port1.0.1 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.2 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.3 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.4 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.5 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.6 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.7 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.8 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.9 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.10 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.11 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.12 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.13 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.14 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.15 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.16 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.17 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.18 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.19 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.20 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.21 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.22 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.23 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
port1.0.24 100.0%     100.0%     100.0%
```

Related Commands [storm-control level](#)

speed

This command changes the speed of the specified port. You can optionally specify the speed or speeds that get autonegotiated, so autonegotiation is only attempted at the specified speeds.

To see the currently-negotiated speed for ports whose links are up, use the **show interface** command. To see the configured speed (when different from the default), use the **show running-config** command.

Syntax `speed {10|100|1000|10000|auto [10] [100] [1000] [10000]}`

The following table shows the speed options for each type of port.

| Port type | Speed Options (units are Mbps) |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| RJ-45 and RJ.5copper ports | auto (default) 10 100 1000 |
| supported tri-speed copper SFPs | auto (default) 10 100 1000 |
| 100Mb fiber SFPs | 100 |
| 1000Mb fiber SFPs | auto (default) 1000 |
| 10000Mb fiber SFP+ | auto (default) 10000 |

Mode Interface Configuration

Default By default, ports autonegotiate speed (except for 100Base-FX ports which do not support auto-negotiation, so default to 100Mbps).

Usage Switch ports in a static or dynamic (LACP) channel group must have the same port speed and be in full duplex mode. Once switch ports have been aggregated into a channel group, you can set the speed of all the switch ports in the channel group by applying this command to the channel group.

Note  Note that if multiple speeds are specified after the auto option to autonegotiate speeds, then only those speeds specified are attempted for autonegotiation.

Examples To set the speed of a tri-speed port to 100Mbps, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# speed 100
```

To return the port to auto-negotiating its speed, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# speed auto
```

To set a port to auto-negotiate its speed at 100Mbps and 1000Mbps, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# speed auto 100 1000
```

To set a port to auto-negotiate its speed at 1000Mbps only, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# speed auto 1000
```

Related Commands [duplex](#)
[polarity](#)
[show interface](#)
[speed \(asyn\)](#)

storm-control level

Use this command to specify the threshold level for broadcasting, multicast, or destination lookup failure (DLF) traffic for the port. Storm-control limits the specified traffic type to the specified threshold.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable storm-control for broadcast, multicast or DLF traffic.

Syntax `storm-control {broadcast|multicast|dlf} level <level>`
`no storm-control {broadcast|multicast|dlf} level`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <level> | <0-100> Specifies the threshold as a percentage of the maximum port speed. |
| broadcast | Applies the storm-control to broadcast frames. |
| multicast | Applies the storm-control to multicast frames. |
| dlf | Applies the storm-control to destination lookup failure traffic. |

Default By default, storm-control is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Flooding techniques are used to block the forwarding of unnecessary flooded traffic. A packet storm occurs when a large number of broadcast packets are received on a port. Forwarding these packets can cause the network to slow down or time out.

Example To limit broadcast traffic on `port1.0.2` to 30% of the maximum port speed, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# storm-control broadcast level 30
```

Related Commands [show storm-control](#)

thrash-limiting

Sets and configures the thrash limit action that will be applied to any port on the switch when a thrashing condition is detected. The thrash-limiting timeout specifies the time, in seconds, for which the thrash action is employed.

Syntax `thrash-limiting {[action {learn-disable|link-down|port-disable|vlan-disable|none}] [timeout <0-86400>]}`
`no thrash-limiting {action|timeout}`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| action | The mac thrashing detected action. The default is vlan-disable. |
| learn-disable | Disable mac address learning |
| link-down | Block all traffic on an interface - link down |
| port-disable | Block all traffic on an interface - link remains up |
| vlan-disable | Block all traffic on a vlan. Note that setting this parameter will also enable ingress filtering. |
| none | No thrash action |
| timeout | Set the duration for the thrash action |
| <0-86400> | The duration of the applied thrash action in seconds. The default is 1 seconds. |

Default The default action is learn-disable.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage See the [Thrash Limiting](#) section in [Chapter 14, Switching Introduction](#) for relevant conceptual, configuration, and overview information prior to applying this command.

Examples To set the action to learn disable for port1.0.4, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# thrash-limiting action learn-disable
```

To block all traffic on a vlan, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# thrash-limiting action vlan-disable
```

To set the thrash limiting timeout to 5 seconds, use the following command:

```
awplus(config-if)# thrash-limiting timeout 5
```

To set the thrash limiting action to its default, use the following command:

```
awplus(config-if)# no thrash-limiting action
```

To set the thrash limiting timeout to its default, use the following command:

```
awplus(config-if)# no thrash-limiting timeout
```

Related Commands

- loop-protection**
- loop-protection action**
- loop-protection timeout**
- show loop-protection**

undebug platform packet

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug platform packet** command on [page 15.8](#).

undebug loopprot

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug loopprot** command on [page 15.7](#).

Chapter 16: VLAN Introduction



| | |
|--|-------|
| VLANs Introduction | 16.2 |
| Virtual LANs (VLANs) | 16.2 |
| Configuring VLANs | 16.3 |
| Private VLANs | 16.5 |
| Private VLANs for Ports in Access Mode | 16.5 |
| Private VLAN Operation with Ports in Access Mode | 16.7 |
| Access Mode Private VLAN Configuration Example..... | 16.8 |
| Private VLANs for Trunked Ports | 16.11 |
| Trunked Port Private VLAN Configuration Example..... | 16.12 |
| Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example..... | 16.14 |

VLANs Introduction

This chapter describes Virtual LANs (VLAN), VLAN features and configuration on the switch. For detailed descriptions of commands used to configure VLANs, see [Chapter 17, VLAN Commands](#). For information about Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED, see [Chapter 69, LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration](#).

Virtual LANs (VLANs)

A Virtual LAN (VLAN) is a logical, software-defined subnetwork. It allows similar devices on the network to be grouped together into one broadcast domain, irrespective of their physical position in the network. Multiple VLANs can be used to group workstations, servers, and other network equipment connected to the switch, according to similar data and security requirements.

Decoupling logical broadcast domains from the physical wiring topology offers several advantages, including the ability to:

- Move devices and people with minimal, or no, reconfiguration
- Change a device's broadcast domain and access to resources without physically moving the device, by software reconfiguration or by moving its cable from one switch port to another
- Isolate parts of the network from other parts, by placing them in different VLANs
- Share servers and other network resources without losing data isolation or security
- Direct broadcast traffic to only those devices which need to receive it, to reduce traffic across the network
- Connect 802.1Q-compatible switches together through one port on each switch

Devices that are members of the same VLAN only exchange data with each other through the switch's Layer 2 switching capabilities. To exchange data between devices that are located in different VLANs, the switch's Layer 3 (routing) capabilities are used.

Different IP subnets are associated with different VLANs. The switch's IP router table will be populated by the routes to the subnets on any active VLANs, and by routes statically configured over active VLAN interfaces, or learned via routing protocols operating over these interfaces.

The device supports up to 4094 VLANs (the maximum allowed by the VID field in the 802.1Q tag). On some devices a few of these VLANs may be reserved for management purposes.

When the switch is first powered up (and therefore unconfigured), it creates a default VLAN with a VID of 1 and an interface name of *vlan1*. In this initial condition, the switch attaches all its ports to this default VLAN.

The default VLAN cannot be deleted, and ports can only be removed from it if they also belong to at least one other VLAN. If all the devices on the physical LAN belong to the same logical LAN, that is, the same broadcast domain, then the default settings will be acceptable, and no additional VLAN configuration is required.

Configuring VLANs

Defaults By default, all switch ports are in access mode, are associated with the default VLAN (**vlan1**), and have ingress filtering on. You cannot delete **vlan1**.

VLAN names When you create a VLAN (using the **vlan** command), you give it a numerical VLAN Identifier (VID) - a number from 2 to 4094. If tagged frames are transmitted from this VLAN, they will contain this VID in their tag. You may also give it an arbitrary alphanumeric name containing a meaningful description, which is not transmitted to other devices.

When referring to a VLAN, some commands require the VLAN to be specified by its VID while some commands require it to be specified by its interface name: **vlan<VID>**. In command output, the VLAN may be referred to by its VID, its interface name (**vlan<VID>**), or its VLAN name (the arbitrary alphanumeric string).

You can name a VLAN with a string containing "vlan" and its VLAN Identifier (VID). To avoid confusion, we recommend not naming it "vlan" followed by any number different from its VID.

Access mode A switch port in access mode sends untagged Ethernet frames, that is, frames without a VLAN tag. Each port is associated with one VLAN (the port-based VLAN, by default, **vlan1**), and when it receives untagged frames, it associates them with the VID of this VLAN. You can associate the port with another VLAN (using the **switchport access vlan** command). This removes it from the default VLAN.

Use access mode for any ports connected to devices that do not use VLAN tagging, for instance PC workstations.

Trunk mode A switch port in trunk mode is associated with one or more VLANs for which it transmits VLAN-tagged frames, and for which it identifies incoming tagged frames with these VIDs.

To allow a switch port to distinguish and identify traffic from different VLANs, put it in trunk mode (using the **switchport mode trunk** command), and add the VLANs (using the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command). Use trunk mode for ports connected to other switches which send VLAN-tagged traffic from one or more VLANs.

A trunk mode port may also have a native VLAN (by default **vlan1**), for which it transmits untagged frames, and with which it associates incoming untagged frames (using the **switchport trunk native vlan** command).

Ports in trunk mode can be enabled as promiscuous ports for private VLANs (using the **switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous**) and secondary ports for private VLANs (using the **switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary**).

Mirror ports A mirror port cannot be associated with a VLAN. If a switch port is configured to be a mirror port (using the **mirror interface** command), it is automatically removed from any VLAN it was associated with.

VLANs and channel groups All the ports in a channel group must have the same VLAN configuration: they must belong to the same VLANs and have the same tagging status, and can only be operated on as a group.

Table 16-1: Configuration procedure for VLANs**Step 1. Create VLANs**

| | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan database</code> | Enter VLAN Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan <vid> [name <vlan-name>]</code> <code>[state {enable disable}]</code> | Create VLANs. |
| or | |
| <code>vlan <vid-range> [state {enable </code> <code>disable}]</code> | |

Step 2. Associate switch ports with VLANs

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>interface <port-list></code> | Associate switch ports in access mode with VLANs: |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports |
| <code>switchport access vlan <vlan-id></code> | that will be in access mode for a particular VLAN. |
| | Associate the VLAN with these ports in access mode. |
| | Repeat for other VLANs and ports in access mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>interface <port-list></code> | Associate switch ports in trunk mode with VLANs. Enter |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | Interface Configuration mode for all the switch ports that |
| <code>switchport mode trunk</code> | will be in trunk mode for a particular set of VLANs. |
| <code>[ingress-filter {enable disable}]</code> | Set these switch ports to trunk mode. |
| | Allow these switch ports to trunk this set of VLANs. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk allowed vlan all</code> | |
| or | |
| <code>switchport trunk allowed vlan add</code> <code><vid-list></code> | |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk native vlan</code> <code>{<vid> none}</code> | By default, a trunk mode switch port's native VLAN, the |
| | VLAN that the port uses for untagged packet, is VLAN 1. |
| | If required, change the native VLAN from the default. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>show vlan {all brief dynamic </code> <code>static auto static-ports<1-4094>}</code> | Confirm VLAN configuration. |

Private VLANs

Private VLANs combine the network advantages of conventional VLANs, with an added degree of privacy obtained by limiting the connectivity between selected ports.

This section provides an introduction to:

- Private VLANs for ports in access mode
- **Private VLANs for Trunked Ports**

Private VLANs for Ports in Access Mode

An example application of a private VLAN would be a library in which user booths each have a PC with Internet access. In this situation it would usually be undesirable to allow communication between these individual PCs. Connecting the PC to ports within a private isolated VLAN would enable each PC to access the Internet or a library server via a single connection, whilst preventing access between the PCs in the booths.

Another application might be to use private VLANs to simplify IP address assignment. Ports can be isolated from each other whilst still belonging to the same subnet.

A private VLAN comprises the following components:

- **a single promiscuous port**
- **one or more host ports.** There are two types of host port:
 - « **isolated ports:** These can only communicate with the promiscuous port that is associated with the isolated VLAN.
 - « **community ports:** These can communicate with their associated promiscuous port and other community ports within the community VLAN.
- **a single primary VLAN**
- **one or more secondary VLANs:** There are two types of secondary VLAN:
 - « **isolated VLANs:** In this VLAN type, communication can only take place between each host port and its associated promiscuous port.
 - « **community VLANs:** In this VLAN type, communication can take place between host ports and between each host port and its associated promiscuous port.

Membership rules for private VLANs in access mode

The following membership rules apply when creating and operating private VLANs in access mode.

Each private VLAN:

- must contain one promiscuous port (or aggregated link)
- may contain multiple host ports
- can be configured to span switch instances
- can only contain promiscuous and host ports
- cannot use the default VLAN (vlan1)
- a private *isolated* VLAN can only contain a single promiscuous port
- a private *community* VLAN can contain more than one promiscuous port

A promiscuous port:

- is a member of the primary VLAN and all its associated secondary VLANs
- cannot be a member of both private and non-private VLANs

A host port:

- can be a member of multiple private (community) VLANs, but all these VLANs must share the same promiscuous port
- cannot be a host port in some VLANs and a non-host port in others
- cannot be a promiscuous port in another VLAN

Promiscuous ports

A promiscuous port can communicate with all ports that are members of its associated secondary VLANs. Multiple promiscuous ports can exist in a primary VLAN, but only if the primary VLAN is only associated with community VLANs (that is, that there are no isolated VLANs associated with this port).

A promiscuous port is a member of the primary VLAN and all associated secondary VLANs. Its Port VID is set to the VLAN ID of the primary VLAN.

Host ports

Host ports have two levels of connectivity depending on whether they exist in an isolated or a community VLAN.

1. Host ports within an isolated VLAN

These ports are only allowed to communicate with their VLAN's promiscuous port, even though they share their secondary (isolated) VLAN with other hosts. The host ports receive their data from the promiscuous port via the primary VLAN, and individually transmit their data to the promiscuous port via their common secondary VLAN.

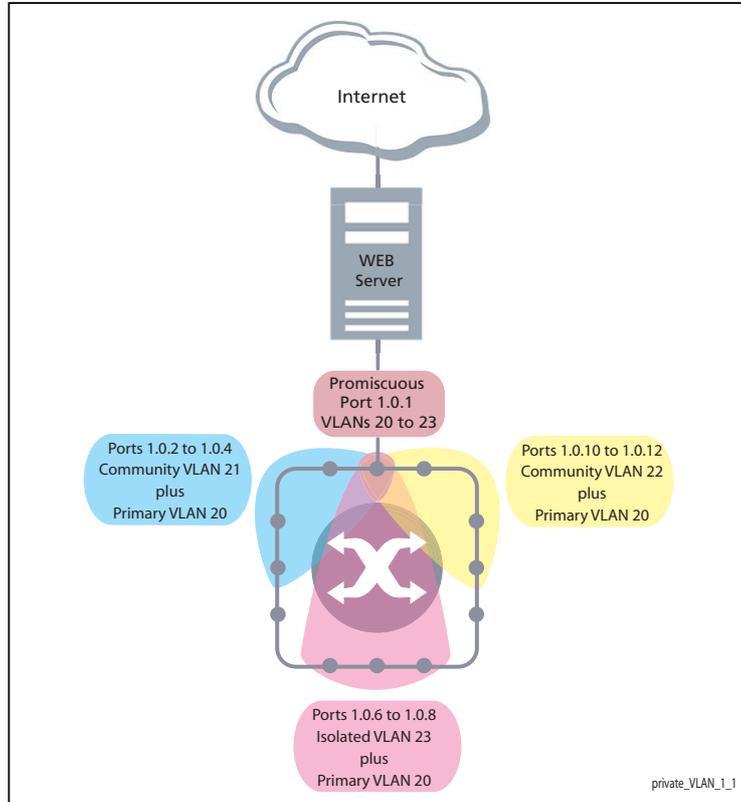
2. Host ports within a community VLAN

These ports are able to communicate with both the promiscuous port and the other ports within the community VLAN that they are associated with. They receive their data from the promiscuous port via the primary VLAN, and transmit their data to both the promiscuous port and the other host ports (within their community VLAN) via their common secondary VLAN. However, the only external path from a community VLAN is from its promiscuous port.

Private VLAN Operation with Ports in Access Mode

A basic private VLAN operation is shown in the following figure. It comprises a primary VLAN 20 plus community and isolated VLANs.

Figure 16-1: Private VLAN



The ports on this switch have the following configuration:

- Port 1.0.1 is the promiscuous port and is a member of the primary VLAN 20 and all its associated secondary VLANs.
- Ports 1.0.2 to 1.0.4 are members of the community VLAN 21 and are able to communicate with both the promiscuous port and all other ports in VLAN 21.
- Ports 1.0.10 to 1.0.12 are members of the community VLAN 22 and are able to communicate with both the promiscuous port and all other ports in VLAN 22.
- Ports 1.0.6 to 1.0.8 are members of the isolated VLAN 23. Each of these ports can only communicate with the promiscuous port.

Table 16-2: Private VLANs - Port Tagging

| Port | Mode | Untagged VLAN Membership | PVID |
|------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|------|
| 1.0.1 | Promiscuous | 20, 21, 22, 23 | 20 |
| 1.0.2 to 1.0.4 | Host | 20, 21 | 21 |
| 1.0.10 to 1.0.12 | Host | 20, 22 | 22 |
| 1.0.6 to 1.0.8 | Host | 20, 23 | 23 |
| 1.0.5 | Not members of the private VLAN | | - |
| 1.0.9 | Not members of the private VLAN | | - |

Private VLANs operate within a single switch and comprise one primary VLAN plus a number of secondary VLANs. All data enters the private VLAN ports untagged.

Using the example of [Figure 16-1](#), data enters the switch via the promiscuous port 1.0.1 and is forwarded to the host ports using VLAN 20, the primary VLAN. Data returning from the host ports to the promiscuous port (and exiting the switch) use the secondary VLAN associated with its particular host port, VLAN 21, 22, or 23 in the example.

Thus the data flows into the switch via the primary VLAN and out of the switch via the secondary VLANs. This situation is not detected outside of the switch, because all its private ports are untagged. Note however, that data flowing between ports within the same community VLAN will do so using the VID of the community VLAN.

Portfast on private VLANs

Within private VLANs, we recommend that you place all host ports into spanning-tree portfast mode and enable BPDU guard. Portfast assumes that because host ports will also be edge ports, they will have no alternative paths (loops) via other bridges. These ports are therefore allowed to move directly from the spanning-tree blocking state into the forwarding state, thus bypassing the intermediate states.

Applying BPDU guard is an extra precaution. This feature disables an edge port if it receives a BPDU frame, because receiving such a frame would indicate that the port has a connection to another network bridge.

For more information on BPDU guard and portfast, see their following commands:

- [spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard](#) command on page 19.64
- [spanning-tree portfast \(STP\)](#) command on page 19.60

Access Mode Private VLAN Configuration Example

Table 16-3: Configuration procedure for access mode private VLANs

| Command | Description |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Step 1. Create the VLANs | |
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 20-23 | Create the VLANs. |
| Step 2. Create the private VLANs and set the type | |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 20 primary | Create primary VLAN 20. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 21 community | Create community VLAN 21. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 22 community | Create community VLAN 22. |

Table 16-3: Configuration procedure for access mode private VLANs (cont.)

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| <pre>awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 23 isolated</pre> | Create isolated VLAN 23. |
| Step 3. Associate the secondary VLANs with the primary VLAN | |
| <pre>awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 20 association add 21</pre> | Associate secondary VLAN 21 with the primary VLAN 20. |
| <pre>awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 20 association add 22</pre> | Associate secondary VLAN 22 with the primary VLAN 20. |
| <pre>awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 20 association add 23</pre> | Associate secondary VLAN 23 with the primary VLAN 20. |
| Step 4. Set port 1.0.1 to be the promiscuous port | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for port1.0.1. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private- vlan promiscuous</pre> | Set the port as a promiscuous ports. |
| Step 5. Set the other ports to be host ports | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-1.0.4, port1.0.6</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the ports. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private- vlan host</pre> | Set the ports as host ports. |
| Step 6. On the promiscuous port, map the primary VLAN to each of the secondary VLANs | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for port1.0.1. |

Table 16-3: Configuration procedure for access mode private VLANs (cont.)

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping 20 add 21-23</pre> | Associate primary VLAN 20 and the secondary VLANs 21 to 23 to the promiscuous port. |
| Step 7. Associate the community host ports with the community VLANs | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-1.0.4</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.0.2 to 1.0.4. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 20 add 21</pre> | Associate primary VLAN 20 and secondary VLAN 21 to the host ports. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.10-1.0.12</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.0.10 to 1.0.12. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 20 add 22</pre> | Associate primary VLAN 20 and secondary VLAN 22 to the host ports. |
| Step 8. Associate the isolated host ports with the isolated VLAN 23 | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6-1.0.8</pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.0.6 to 1.0.8. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 20 add 23</pre> | Associate primary VLAN 20 and secondary VLAN 23 to the host ports. |

Private VLANs for Trunked Ports

Private VLAN trunk ports allow you to combine traffic for private isolated VLANs over a trunk. A port in trunk mode enabled as a promiscuous port with the **switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous** command can carry both multiple isolated private VLANs and non-private VLANs. A promiscuous port in trunk mode allows you to combine multiple isolated VLANs on a single trunk port. A port in trunk mode enabled as a secondary port with the **switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary** command can combine traffic for multiple isolated VLANs over a trunk.

 **Note** Private VLAN trunk ports are not supported by the current AlliedWare Plus GVRP implementation. Private VLAN trunk ports and GVRP are mutually exclusive.

A private VLAN group for trunked ports comprises the following components:

- **a single promiscuous port**
- **one or more isolated secondary ports:** These can only communicate with the associated promiscuous port.
- **isolated VLANs:** In this VLAN type, communication can only take place between each secondary port and its associated promiscuous port. Membership rules for private VLANs for trunked ports

The following membership rules apply when creating and operating private VLANs for trunked ports.

A promiscuous trunk port:

- must be in trunk mode
- can be a member of both isolated VLANs and non-isolated VLANs
- has a group ID that is solely used to associate the promiscuous port with secondary ports

A secondary trunk port:

- must be in trunk mode
- can only be a member of isolated VLANs
- cannot be a promiscuous port in another VLAN
- has a group ID that is solely used to associate the secondary port with its promiscuous port

Unlike private VLANs for ports in access mode, private VLANs for trunked ports have no secondary to primary VLAN mappings.

Trunked Port Private VLAN Configuration Example

The configuration procedure in [Table 16-4](#) show the steps to configure Switch A.

Table 16-4: Configuration procedure for Switch A

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| Step 1. Create the VLANs | |
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 10,20,30 | Create the VLANs. |
| Step 2. Create the private VLANs and set the type | |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 10 isolated | Create isolated VLAN 10. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 20 isolated | Create isolated VLAN 20. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 30 isolated | Create isolated VLAN 30. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of the port to trunk. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 10,20,30 | Add the VLANs to be trunked over this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of the port to trunk. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 10,20 | Add the VLANs to be trunked over this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of the port to trunk. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 10,20,30 | Add the VLANs to be trunked over this port. |

Table 16-4: Configuration procedure for Switch A(cont.)

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous group 1</pre> | Enable the port in trunk mode to be promiscuous port for isolated VLANs 10, 20 and 30 with a group ID of 1. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary group 1</pre> | Enable the port in trunk mode to be a secondary port for isolated VLANs 10 and 20 with a group ID of 1. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary group 1</pre> | Enable the port in trunk mode to be a secondary port for isolated VLANs 10, 20 and 30 with a group ID of 1. |

Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example

The configuration procedure in [Table 16-4](#) show the steps to configure Switch A.

Table 16-5: Configuration procedure for Switch A

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| Step 1. Create the VLANs 100 and 101 | |
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 100,101 | Create the VLANs. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# exit | Exit VLAN Configuration mode. |
| Step 2. Create two protocol type based VLAN classifier rules for IPv4 and IPv6 mapped to VLAN 100 and 101 | |
| awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 1 proto ip encap ethv2 vlan 100 | Create a VLAN classifier rule 1 for IPv4 packets on VLAN 100. |
| awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 2 proto ipv6 encap ethv2 vlan 101 | Create a VLAN classifier rule 2 for IPv6 packets on VLAN 101. |
| Step 3. Create a group of VLAN classifier rules and map the defined VLAN classifier rules 1 and 2 to the group | |
| awplus(config)# vlan classifier group 1 add rule 1 | Add VLAN classifier rule 1 to VLAN classifier group 1. |
| awplus(config)# vlan classifier group 1 add rule 2 | Add VLAN classifier rule 2 to VLAN classifier group 1. |

Chapter 17: VLAN Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Command List | 17.2 |
| private-vlan | 17.2 |
| private-vlan association | 17.3 |
| port-vlan-forwarding-priority | 17.4 |
| show port-vlan-forwarding-priority | 17.7 |
| show vlan | 17.8 |
| show vlan classifier group | 17.9 |
| show vlan classifier group interface | 17.10 |
| show vlan classifier interface group | 17.11 |
| show vlan classifier rule | 17.12 |
| show vlan private-vlan | 17.13 |
| switchport access vlan | 17.14 |
| switchport enable vlan | 17.15 |
| switchport mode access | 17.16 |
| switchport mode private-vlan | 17.17 |
| switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary | 17.18 |
| switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous | 17.20 |
| switchport mode trunk | 17.22 |
| switchport private-vlan host-association | 17.23 |
| switchport private-vlan mapping | 17.24 |
| switchport trunk allowed vlan | 17.25 |
| switchport trunk native vlan | 17.28 |
| switchport voice dscp | 17.29 |
| switchport voice vlan | 17.30 |
| switchport voice vlan priority | 17.32 |
| vlan | 17.33 |
| vlan classifier activate | 17.34 |
| vlan classifier group | 17.35 |
| vlan classifier rule ipv4 | 17.36 |
| vlan classifier rule proto | 17.37 |
| vlan database | 17.40 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure VLANs. For more information see [Chapter 16, VLANs Introduction](#).

private-vlan

Use this command to create a private VLAN. Private VLANs can be either primary or secondary. Secondary VLANs can be either community or isolated.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified private VLAN.

For more information, see the section [“Private VLANs” on page 16.5](#).

Syntax `private-vlan <vlan-id> {community|isolated|primary}`
`no private-vlan <vlan-id> {community|isolated|primary}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <vlan-id> | VLAN ID in the range <2-4094> for the VLAN which is to be made a private VLAN. |
| community | Community VLAN. |
| isolated | Isolated VLAN. |
| primary | Primary VLAN. |

Mode VLAN Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 2 name vlan2 state enable
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 3 name vlan3 state enable
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 4 name vlan4 state enable
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 2 primary
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 3 isolated
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 4 community
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# no private-vlan 2 primary
awplus(config-vlan)# no private-vlan 3 isolated
awplus(config-vlan)# no private-vlan 4 community
```

private-vlan association

Use this command to associate a secondary VLAN to a primary VLAN. Only one isolated VLAN can be associated to a primary VLAN. Multiple community VLANs can be associated to a primary VLAN.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove association of all the secondary VLANs to a primary VLAN.

For more information, see the section **“Private VLANs” on page 16.5**.

Syntax `private-vlan <primary-vlan-id> association {add <secondary-vlan-id> |
remove <secondary-vlan-id>}`
`no private-vlan <primary-vlan-id> association`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><primary-vlan-id></code> | VLAN ID of the primary VLAN. |
| <code><secondary-vlan-id></code> | VLAN ID of the secondary VLAN (either isolated or community). |

Mode VLAN Configuration

Examples The following commands associate primary VLAN 2 with secondary VLAN 3:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 2 association add 3
```

The following commands remove the association of primary VLAN 2 with secondary VLAN 3:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 2 association remove 3
```

The following commands remove all secondary VLAN associations of primary VLAN 2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# no private-vlan 2 association
```

port-vlan-forwarding-priority

Use this command to set the highest priority protocol to control transitions from blocking to forwarding traffic. This command prioritizes switch port forwarding mode control, when more than one of EPSR, Loop Protection, and MAC thrashing protection protocols are used on the switch.

EPSR, Loop Protection and MAC Thrashing use the same mechanism to block or forward traffic. This command sets the highest priority protocol to control transitions from blocking to forwarding traffic. Setting the priority stops contention between protocols.

For example, if EPSR is set to the highest priority protocol to block traffic on vlan10 on port1.0.2 then this stops MAC Thrashing from forwarding traffic on vlan10 on port1.0.2.



Caution **loop-protection** and **none** parameter options must not be set on an EPSR master node. Use the **epsr** parameter option on an EPSR master node instead. Setting this command incorrectly on an EPSR master node could cause unexpected broadcast storms.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default highest priority protocol back to the default of EPSR.

For more information about EPSR, see the section [“EPSR Introduction and Configuration” on page 55.1](#).

Syntax `port-vlan-forwarding-priority {epsr|loop-protection|none}`
`no port-vlan-forwarding-priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>epsr</code> | Sets EPSR as the highest priority protocol. Use this parameter on an EPSR master node to avoid unexpected broadcast storms. |
| <code>loop-protection</code> | Sets Loop Protection as the highest priority protocol. Note that this option must not be set on an EPSR master node. Use the epsr parameter option on an EPSR master node to avoid unexpected broadcast storms. |
| <code>none</code> | Sets the protocols to have equal priority. This was the previous behavior before this command was added, and allows protocols to override each other to set a port to forwarding a VLAN. Note that this option must not be set on a EPSR master node. Use the epsr parameter option on an EPSR master node to avoid unexpected broadcast storms. |

Default By default, the highest priority protocol is EPSR

Mode Global Configuration

Usage EPSR, Loop Protection and MAC Thashing protection do not usually need to be configured on a switch, because they perform similar functions—each prevents network loops by blocking a selected port for each (loop containing) VLAN.

However, if more than one of these three features is configured on a switch, you can use this command to prioritize either EPSR or Loop Protection when their effects on a port would conflict and override each other. Previously, each protocol could set a port to forwarding for a VLAN, sometimes overriding the previous setting by another protocol to block the port. This could sometimes lead to unexpected broadcast storms.

Now, when a protocol is set to have the highest priority over a data VLAN on a port, it will not allow other protocols to put that port-vlan into a forwarding state if the highest priority protocol blocked it.

The priority mechanism is only used for blocking-to-forwarding transitions; protocols remain independent on the forwarding-to-blocking transitions.

For example, with an EPSR master node in a two-node ESPR ring with the below settings:

- The EPSR master node primary port is configured to switchport interface **port1.0.1**
- The EPSR master node secondary port is configured to switchport interface **port1.0.2**
- The EPSR master node control VLAN is configured to VLAN interface **vlan10**
- The EPSR master node has a first data VLAN configured to VLAN interface **vlan20**
- The EPSR master node has a second data VLAN configured to VLAN interface **vlan30**.

Initially, the EPSR ring is complete, with **port1.0.2** blocking data VLANs **vlan20** and **vlan30** and some broadcast traffic flowing through. If the user removes **vlan30** from EPSR, a storm is created on **vlan30**. MAC thrashing protection detects it and blocks **vlan30**.

Then after the storm has stopped, MAC thrashing protection sets it to forwarding again and it keeps oscillating between forwarding and blocking. In the meantime, the user adds back **vlan30** to EPSR as a data VLAN and EPSR blocks it on **port1.0.2**.

If the priority is set to none (**port-vlan-forwarding-priority none**), MAC thrashing protection notices that the storm has stopped again and decides to put **vlan30** on **port1.0.2** into forwarding state. This overrides what EPSR requires for this port-VLAN and creates a storm. This matches the old behavior before this feature was implemented.

If the priority is set to EPSR or default (**port-vlan-forwarding-priority epsr**), MAC thrashing protection notices that the storm has stopped again and attempts to put **vlan30** on **port1.0.2** into forwarding state. The higher priority protocol (EPSR) is blocking the VLAN on this port, so it stays blocking and no storm occurs.

Example To prioritize EPSR over Loop Protection or MAC Thashing protection settings, so that Loop Protection or MAC Thashing protection cannot set a port to the forwarding state a VLAN if EPSR has set it to the blocking state, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# port-vlan-forwarding-priority epsr
```

To prioritize Loop Protection over EPSR or MAC Thashing protection settings, so that EPSR or MAC Thashing protection cannot set a port to the forwarding state a VLAN if Loop Protection has set it to the blocking state, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# port-vlan-forwarding-priority loop-
protection
```

To set EPSR, Loop Protection, and MAC Thashing protection protocols to have equal priority for port forwarding and blocking, which allows the protocols to override each other to set a port to the forwarding or blocking states, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# port-vlan-forwarding-priority none
```

To restore the default highest priority protocol back to the default of EPSR, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no port-vlan-forwarding-priority
```

Related Commands [show port-vlan-forwarding-priority](#)

show port-vlan-forwarding-priority

Use this command to display the highest priority protocol that controls port-vlan forwarding or blocking traffic. This command displays whether EPSR or Loop Protection is set as the highest priority for determining whether a port forwards a VLAN, as set by the [port-vlan-forwarding-priority](#) command.

For more information about EPSR, see the section [“EPSR Introduction and Configuration” on page 55.1](#).

Syntax show port-vlan-forwarding-priority

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the highest priority protocol, use the command:

```
awplus# show port-vlan-forwarding-priority
```

Output **Figure 17-1: Example output from the show port-vlan-forwarding-priority command**

```
Port-vlan Forwarding Priority: EPSR
```

Related Commands [port-vlan-forwarding-priority](#)

show vlan

Use this command to display information about a particular VLAN by specifying the VLAN ID. It displays information for all the VLANs configured.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show vlan {all|brief|dynamic|static|auto|static-ports<1-4094>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <1-4094> | Display information about the VLAN specified by the VLAN ID. |
| all | Display information about all VLANs on the device. |
| brief | Display information about all VLANs on the device. |
| dynamic | Display information about all VLANs learned dynamically. |
| static | Display information about all statically configured VLANs. |
| auto | Display information about all auto-configured VLANs. |
| static-ports | Display static egress/forbidden ports. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display information about VLAN 2, use the command:

```
awplus# show vlan 2
```

Output **Figure 17-2: Example output from the show vlan command**

| VLAN ID | Name | Type | State | Member ports (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged |
|---------|----------|--------|--------|--|
| 2 | VLAN0002 | STATIC | ACTIVE | port1.0.3(u) port1.0.4(u) port1.0.5(u) port1.0.6(u) |
| . | . | . | . | . |

Related Commands [vlan](#)

show vlan classifier group

Use this command to display information about all configured VLAN classifier groups or a specific group.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show vlan classifier group [<1-16>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| <1-16> | VLAN classifier group identifier |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage If a group ID is not specified, all configured VLAN classifier groups are shown. If a group ID is specified, a specific configured VLAN classifier group is shown.

Example To display information about VLAN classifier group 1, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan classifier group 1
```

Related Commands [vlan classifier group](#)

show vlan classifier group interface

Use this command to display information about a single switch port interface for all configured VLAN classifier groups.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show vlan classifier group interface <switch-port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><switch-port></code> | Specify the switch port interface classifier group identifier |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage All configured VLAN classifier groups are shown for a single interface.

Example To display VLAN classifier group information for switch port interface `port1.0.2`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan classifier group interface port1.0.2
```

Output **Figure 17-3: Example output from the show vlan classifier group interface port1.0.1 command:**

```
vlan classifier group 1 interface port1.0.1
```

Related Commands [vlan classifier group](#)
[show vlan classifier interface group](#)

show vlan classifier interface group

Use this command to display information about all interfaces configured for a VLAN group or all the groups.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show vlan classifier interface group [<1-16>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-16> | VLAN classifier interface group identifier |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage If a group ID is not specified, all interfaces configured for all VLAN classifier groups are shown. If a group ID is specified, the interfaces configured for this VLAN classifier group are shown.

Example To display information about all interfaces configured for all VLAN groups, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan classifier interface group
```

To display information about all interfaces configured for VLAN group 1, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan classifier interface group 1
```

Output **Figure 17-4: Example output from the show vlan classifier interface group command**

```
vlan classifier group 1 interface port1.0.1
vlan classifier group 1 interface port1.0.2
vlan classifier group 2 interface port1.0.3
vlan classifier group 2 interface port1.0.4
```

Output **Figure 17-5: Example output from the show vlan classifier interface group 1 command**

```
vlan classifier group 1 interface port1.0.1
vlan classifier group 1 interface port1.0.2
```

Related Commands [vlan classifier group](#)
[show vlan classifier group interface](#)

show vlan classifier rule

Use this command to display information about all configured VLAN classifier rules or a specific rule.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show vlan classifier rule [<1-256>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| <1-256> | VLAN classifier rule identifier |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage If a rule ID is not specified, all configured VLAN classifier rules are shown. If a rule ID is specified, a specific configured VLAN classifier rule is shown.

Example To display information about VLAN classifier rule 1, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan classifier rule 1
```

Output **Figure 17-6: Example output from the show vlan classifier rule 1 command**

```
vlan classifier group 1 add rule 1
```

Related Commands [vlan classifier activate](#)
[vlan classifier rule ipv4](#)
[vlan classifier rule proto](#)

show vlan private-vlan

Use this command to display the private VLAN configuration and associations.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show vlan private-vlan

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the private VLAN configuration and associations, enter the command:

```
awplus# show vlan private-vlan
```

Output **Figure 17-7: Example output from the show vlan private-vlan command**

| awplus#show vlan private-vlan | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PRIMARY | SECONDARY | TYPE | INTERFACES |
| ----- | ----- | ----- | ----- |
| 2 | 3 | isolated | |
| 2 | 4 | community | |
| | 8 | isolated | |

Related Commands [private-vlan](#)
[private-vlan association](#)

switchport access vlan

Use this command to change the port-based VLAN of the current port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to change the port-based VLAN of this port to the default VLAN, *vlan1*.

Syntax `switchport access vlan <vlan-id>`
`no switchport access vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><vlan-id></code> | <code><1-4094></code> The port-based VLAN ID for the port. |

Default Reset the default VLAN 1 to specified switchports using the negated form of this command.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Any untagged frame received on this port will be associated with the specified VLAN.

Examples To change the port-based VLAN to VLAN 3 for `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport access vlan 3
```

To reset the port-based VLAN to the default VLAN 1 for `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no switchport access vlan
```

Validation Command `show interface switchport`

Related Commands `show vlan`

switchport enable vlan

This command enables the VLAN on the port manually once disabled by certain actions, such as QSP (QoS Storm Protection) or EPSR (Ethernet Protection Switching Ring). Note that if the VID is not given, all disabled VLANs are re-enabled.

Syntax `switchport enable vlan [<1-4094>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>vlan</code> | Re-enables the VLAN on the port. |
| <code><1-4094></code> | VLAN ID. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To re-enable the `port1.0.1` from VLAN 1:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# switchport enable vlan 1
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface storm-status](#)
[storm-window](#)

switchport mode access

Use this command to set the switching characteristics of the port to access mode. Received frames are classified based on the VLAN characteristics, then accepted or discarded based on the specified filtering criteria.

Syntax `switchport mode access [ingress-filter {enable|disable}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>ingress-filter</code> | Set the ingress filtering for the received frames. |
| <code>enable</code> | Turn on ingress filtering for received frames. This is the default. |
| <code>disable</code> | Turn off ingress filtering to accept frames that do not meet the classification criteria. |

Default By default, ports are in access mode with ingress filtering on.

Usage Use access mode to send untagged frames only.

Mode Interface Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access ingress-filter
enable
```

Validation Command `show interface switchport`

switchport mode private-vlan

Use this command to make a Layer 2 port a private VLAN host port or a promiscuous port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configuration.

Syntax `switchport mode private-vlan {host|promiscuous}`
`no switchport mode private-vlan {host|promiscuous}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| host | This port type can communicate with all other host ports assigned to the same community VLAN, but it cannot communicate with the ports in the same isolated VLAN. All communications outside of this VLAN must pass through a promiscuous port in the associated primary VLAN. |
| promiscuous | A promiscuous port can communicate with all interfaces, including the community and isolated ports within a private VLAN. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# no switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous
```

Related Commands [switchport private-vlan mapping](#)

switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary

Use this command to enable a port in trunk mode to be a secondary port for isolated VLANs.

 **Note** Private VLAN trunk ports are not supported by the current AlliedWare Plus GVRP implementation. Private VLAN trunk ports and GVRP are mutually exclusive.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a port in trunk mode as a secondary port for isolated VLANs.

Syntax `switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary group <group-id>`
`no switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><group-id></code> | The group ID is a numeric value in the range 1 to 32 that is used to associate a secondary port with its promiscuous port. |

Default By default, a port in trunk mode is disabled as a secondary port.

When a port in trunk mode is enabled to be a secondary port for isolated VLANs, by default it will have a native VLAN of **none** (no native VLAN specified).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage A port must be put in trunk mode with **switchport mode trunk** command before the port is enabled as a secondary port in trunk mode.

To add VLANs to be trunked over the secondary port use the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command. These must be isolated VLANs and must exist on the associated promiscuous port.

To configure the native VLAN for the secondary port, use the **switchport trunk native vlan** command. The native VLAN must be an isolated VLAN and must exist on the associated promiscuous port.

For further information, see **“Private VLANs for Trunked Ports” on page 16.11**.

Examples To create isolated private VLAN 2 and then enable `port1.0.3` in trunk mode as a secondary port for the this VLAN with the group ID of 3, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 2
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 2 isolated
```

```
awplus(config-vlan)# exit
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk
secondary group 3
```

To remove `port1.0.3` in trunk mode as a secondary port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# no switchport mode private-vlan trunk
secondary
```

Related Commands

- [switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous](#)
- [switchport mode trunk](#)
- [switchport trunk allowed vlan](#)
- [switchport trunk native vlan](#)
- [show vlan private-vlan](#)

switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous

Use this command to enable a port in trunk mode to be promiscuous port for isolated VLANs.

 **Note** Private VLAN trunk ports are not supported by the current AlliedWare Plus GVRP implementation. Private VLAN trunk ports and GVRP are mutually exclusive.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a port in trunk mode as a promiscuous port for isolated VLANs. You must first remove the secondary port, or ports, in trunk mode associated with the promiscuous port with the **no switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary** command.

Syntax `switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous group <group-id>`
`no switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><group-id></code> | The group ID is a numeric value in the range 1 to 32 that is used to associate the promiscuous port with secondary ports. |

Default By default, a port in trunk mode is disabled as a promiscuous port.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage A port must be put in trunk mode with **switchport mode trunk** command before it can be enabled as a promiscuous port.

To add VLANs to be trunked over the promiscuous port, use the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command. These VLANs can be isolated VLANs, or non-private VLANs.

To configure the native VLAN for the promiscuous port, use the **switchport trunk native vlan** command. The native VLAN can be an isolated VLAN, or a non-private VLAN.

When you enable a promiscuous port, all of the secondary port VLANs associated with the promiscuous port via the group ID number must be added to the promiscuous port. In other words, the set of VLANs on the promiscuous port must be a superset of all the VLANs on the secondary ports within the group.

For further information, see **“Private VLANs for Trunked Ports” on page 16.11**.

Examples To create the isolated VLANs 2, 3 and 4 and then enable `port1.0.2` in trunk mode as a promiscuous port for these VLANs with the group ID of 3, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 2-4
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 2 isolated
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 3 isolated
```

```
awplus(config-vlan)# private-vlan 4 isolated
awplus(config-vlan)# exit
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-4
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk
promiscuous group 3
```

To remove `port1.0.2` in trunk mode as a promiscuous port for a private VLAN, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no switchport mode private-vlan trunk
promiscuous
```

Note that you must remove the secondary port or ports enabled as trunk ports that are associated with the promiscuous port before removing the promiscuous port.

Related Commands

- [switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary](#)
- [switchport mode trunk](#)
- [switchport trunk allowed vlan](#)
- [switchport trunk native vlan](#)
- [show vlan private-vlan](#)

switchport mode trunk

Use this command to set the switching characteristics of the port to trunk. Received frames are classified based on the VLAN characteristics, then accepted or discarded based on the specified filtering criteria.

Syntax `switchport mode trunk [ingress-filter {enable|disable}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>ingress-filter</code> | Set the ingress filtering for the frames received. |
| <code>enable</code> | Turn on ingress filtering for received frames. This is the default. |
| <code>disable</code> | Turn off ingress filtering to accept frames that do not meet the classification criteria. |

Default By default, ports are in access mode, are untagged members of the default VLAN (vlan1), and have ingress filtering on.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage A port in trunk mode can be a tagged member of multiple VLANs, and an untagged member of one native VLAN.

To configure which VLANs this port will trunk for, use the [switchport trunk allowed vlan](#) command.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk ingress-filter enable
```

Validation Command `show interface switchport`

switchport private-vlan host-association

Use this command to associate a primary VLAN and a secondary VLAN to a host port. Only one primary and secondary VLAN can be associated to a host port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the association.

Syntax `switchport private-vlan host-association <primary-vlan-id> add
<secondary-vlan-id>`

`no switchport private-vlan host-association`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><primary-vlan-id></code> | VLAN ID of the primary VLAN. |
| <code><secondary-vlan-id></code> | VLAN ID of the secondary VLAN (either isolated or community). |

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 2
                    add 3

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan host-association
```

switchport private-vlan mapping

Use this command to associate a primary VLAN and a set of secondary VLANs to a promiscuous port.

Use the **no** variant of this to remove all the association of secondary VLANs to primary VLANs for a promiscuous port.

Syntax

```
switchport private-vlan mapping <primary-vlan-id> add
    <secondary-vid-list>

switchport private-vlan mapping <primary-vlan-id> remove
    <secondary-vid-list>

no switchport private-vlan mapping
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <primary-vlan-id> | VLAN ID of the primary VLAN. |
| <secondary-vid-list> | VLAN ID of the secondary VLAN (either isolated or community), or a range of VLANs, or a comma-separated list of VLANs and ranges. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage This command can be applied to a switch port or a static channel group, but not a dynamic (LACP) channel group. LACP channel groups (dynamic/LACP aggregators) cannot be promiscuous ports in private VLANs.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping 2 add 3-4
awplus(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping 2 remove 3-4
awplus(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan mapping
```

Related Commands [switchport mode private-vlan](#)

switchport trunk allowed vlan

Use this command to add VLANs to be trunked over this switch port. Traffic for these VLANs can be sent and received on the port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset switching characteristics of a specified interface to negate a trunked configuration specified with **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command.

Syntax

```
switchport trunk allowed vlan all
switchport trunk allowed vlan none
switchport trunk allowed vlan add <vid-list>
switchport trunk allowed vlan remove <vid-list>
switchport trunk allowed vlan except <vid-list>
no switchport trunk
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| all | Allow all VLANs to transmit and receive through the port. |
| none | Allow no VLANs to transmit and receive through the port. |
| add | Add a VLAN to transmit and receive through the port. Only use this parameter if a list of VLANs are already configured on a port. |
| remove | Remove a VLAN from transmit and receive through the port. Only use this parameter if a list of VLANs are already configured on a port. |
| except | All VLANs, except the VLAN for which the VID is specified, are part of its port member set. Only use this parameter to remove VLANs after either this parameter or the all parameter have added VLANs to a port. |
| <vid-list> | <p><2-4094> The ID of the VLAN or VLANs that will be added to, or removed from, the port. A single VLAN, VLAN range, or comma-separated VLAN list can be set.</p> <p>For a VLAN range, specify two VLAN numbers: lowest, then highest number in the range, separated by a hyphen.</p> <p>For a VLAN list, specify the VLAN numbers separated by commas.</p> <p>Do not enter spaces between hyphens or commas when setting parameters for VLAN ranges or lists.</p> |

Default By default, ports are untagged members of the default VLAN (vlan1).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The **all** parameter sets the port to be a tagged member of all the VLANs configured on the device. The **none** parameter removes all VLANs from the port's tagged member set. The **add** and **remove** parameters will add and remove VLANs to and from the port's member set. See the note below about restrictions when using the **add**, **remove**, **except**, and **all** parameters.

Note: Only use the **add** or the **remove** parameters with this command if a list of VLANs are configured on a port. Only use the **except** parameter to remove VLANs after either the **except** or the **all** parameters have first been used to add a list of VLANs to a port.

Remove VLAN 3 by re-entering the **except** parameter with the list of VLANs to remove, instead of using the **remove** parameter, as shown in the command example below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan except 3,4
```

Then the configuration is changed after entering the above commands to remove VLAN 3:

```
awplus#show running-config
!
interface port1.0.6
switchport
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan except 3-4
```

To add a VLAN, where the configuration for `port1.0.6` shows the below output:

```
awplus#show running-config
!
interface port1.0.6
switchport
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan except 3-5
```

Add VLAN 4 by re-entering the **except** parameter with a list of VLANs to exclude, instead of using the **add** parameter to include VLAN 4, as shown in the command example below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan except 3,5
```

The configuration is changed after entering the above commands to add VLAN 4:

```
awplus#show running-config
!
interface port1.0.5
switchport
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan except 3,5
```

Examples The following shows adding a single VLAN to the port's member set.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2
```

The following shows adding a range of VLANs to the port's member set.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-4
```

The following shows adding a list of VLANs to the port's member set.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2,3,4
```

switchport trunk native vlan

Use this command to configure the native VLAN for this port. The native VLAN is used for classifying the incoming untagged packets. Use the **none** parameter with this command to remove the native VLAN from the port and set the acceptable frame types to vlan-tagged only.

Use the **no** variant of this command to revert the native VLAN to the default VLAN ID 1. Command negation removes tagged VLANs, and sets the native VLAN to the default VLAN.

Syntax `switchport trunk native vlan {<vid>|none}`
`no switchport trunk native vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <vid> | <2-4094> The ID of the VLAN that will be used to classify the incoming untagged packets. The VLAN ID must be a part of the VLAN member set of the port. |
| none | No native VLAN specified. This option removes the native VLAN from the port and sets the acceptable frame types to vlan-tagged only. Note: Use the no variant of this command to revert to the default VLAN 1 as the native VLAN for the specified interface switchport - not none . |

Default VLAN 1 (the default VLAN), which is reverted to using the **no** form of this command.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples The following commands show configuration of VLAN 2 as the native VLAN for interface port1.0.2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 2
```

The following commands show the removal of the native VLAN for interface port1.0.2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan none
```

The following commands revert the native VLAN to the default VLAN 1 for interface port1.0.2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no switchport trunk native vlan
```

switchport voice dscp

Use this command to configure the Layer 3 DSCP value advertised when the transmission of LLDP-MED Network Policy TLVs for voice devices is enabled. When LLDP-MED capable IP phones receive this network policy information, they transmit voice data with the specified DSCP value.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the DSCP value to the default, 0.

Syntax `switchport voice dscp <0-63>`
`no switchport voice dscp`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>dscp</code> | Specify a DSCP value for voice data. |
| <code><0-63></code> | DSCP value. |

Default A DSCP value of 0 will be advertised.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage LLDP-MED advertisements including Network Policy TLVs are transmitted via a port if:

- LLDP is enabled ([lldp run command on page 70.16](#))
- Voice VLAN is configured for the port ([switchport voice vlan command on page 17.30](#))
- The port is configured to transmit LLDP advertisements—enabled by default ([lldp transmit receive command on page 70.20](#))
- The port is configured to transmit Network Policy TLVs—enabled by default ([lldp med-tlv-select command on page 70.9](#))
- There is an LLDP-MED device connected to the port

Example To tell IP phones connected to `port1.0.5` to send voice data with DSCP value 27, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5
awplus(config-if)# switchport voice dscp 27
```

Related Commands [lldp med-tlv-select](#)
[show lldp](#)
[switchport voice vlan](#)

switchport voice vlan

Use this command to configure the Voice VLAN tagging advertised when the transmission of LLDP-MED Network Policy TLVs for voice endpoint devices is enabled. When LLDP-MED capable IP phones receive this network policy information, they transmit voice data with the specified tagging. This command also sets the ports to be spanning tree edge ports, that is, it enables spanning tree portfast on the ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove LLDP-MED network policy configuration for voice devices connected to these ports. This does not change the spanning tree edge port status.

Syntax `switchport voice vlan [<vid>|dot1p|dynamic|untagged]`
`no switchport voice vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <vid> | VLAN identifier, in the range 1 to 4094. |
| dot1p | The IP phone should send User Priority tagged packets, that is, packets in which the tag contains a User Priority value, and a VID of 0. (The User Priority tag is also known as the 802.1p priority tag, or the Class of Service (CoS) tag.) |
| dynamic | The VLAN ID with which the IP phone should send tagged packets will be assigned by RADIUS authentication. |
| untagged | The IP phone should send untagged packets. |

Default By default, no Voice VLAN is configured, and therefore no network policy is advertised for voice devices.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage LLDP-MED advertisements including Network Policy TLVs are transmitted via a port if:

- LLDP is enabled ([lldp run command on page 70.16](#))
- Voice VLAN is configured for the port using this command ([switchport voice vlan](#))
- The port is configured to transmit LLDP advertisements—enabled by default ([lldp transmit receive command on page 70.20](#))
- The port is configured to transmit Network Policy TLVs—enabled by default ([lldp med-tlv-select command on page 70.9](#))
- There is an LLDP-MED device connected to the port.

To set the priority value to be advertised for tagged frames, use the [switchport voice vlan priority command on page 17.32](#).

If the Voice VLAN details are to be assigned by RADIUS, then the RADIUS server must be configured to send the attribute “Egress-VLANID (56)” or “Egress-VLAN-Name (58)” in the RADIUS Accept message when authenticating a phone attached to this port.

To set these attributes on the local RADIUS server, use the [egress-vlan-id command on page 49.19](#) or the [egress-vlan-name command on page 49.20](#).

For more information about configuring authentication for Voice VLAN, “[Configuring LLDP](#)” on [page 69.11](#).

If the ports have been set to be edge ports by the **switchport voice vlan** command, the **no** variant of this command will leave them unchanged as edge ports. To set them back to their default non-edge port configuration, use the **spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)** command on page 19.39.

Examples To tell IP phones connected to port1.0.5 to send voice data tagged for VLAN 10, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5
awplus(config-if)# switchport voice vlan 10
```

To tell IP phones connected to ports 1.0.2-1.0.6 to send priority tagged packets (802.1p priority tagged with VID 0, so that they will be assigned to the port VLAN) use the following commands. The priority value is 5 by default, but can be configured with the **switchport voice vlan priority** command.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# switchport voice vlan dot1p
```

To dynamically configure the VLAN ID advertised to IP phones connected to port1.0.1 based on the VLAN assigned by RADIUS authentication (with RADIUS attribute "Egress-VLANID" or "Egress-VLAN-Name" in the RADIUS accept packet), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# switchport voice vlan dynamic
```

To remove the Voice VLAN, and therefore disable the transmission of LLDP-MED network policy information for voice devices on port1.0.6, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no switchport voice vlan
```

Related Commands **lldp med-tlv-select**
spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)
switchport voice dscp
switchport voice vlan priority
show lldp

switchport voice vlan priority

Use this command to configure the Layer 2 user priority advertised when the transmission of LLDP-MED Network Policy TLVs for voice devices is enabled. This is the priority in the User Priority field of the IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tag, also known as the Class of Service (CoS), or 802.1p priority. When LLDP-MED capable IP phones receive this network policy information, they transmit voice data with the specified priority.

Syntax `switchport voice vlan priority <0-7>`
`no switchport voice vlan priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>priority</code> | Specify a user priority value for voice data. |
| <code><0-7></code> | Priority value. |

Default By default, the Voice VLAN user priority value is 5.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage LLDP-MED advertisements including Network Policy TLVs are transmitted via a port if:

- LLDP is enabled ([lldp run command on page 70.16](#))
- Voice VLAN is configured for the port ([switchport voice vlan command on page 17.30](#))
- The port is configured to transmit LLDP advertisements—enabled by default ([lldp transmit receive command on page 70.20](#))
- The port is configured to transmit Network Policy TLVs—enabled by default ([lldp med-tlv-select command on page 70.9](#))
- There is an LLDP-MED device connected to the port.

To set the Voice VLAN tagging to be advertised, use the [switchport voice vlan command on page 17.30](#).

Example To remove the Voice VLAN, and therefore disable the transmission of LLDP-MED network policy information for voice devices on `port1.0.6`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no switchport voice vlan
```

Related Commands [lldp med-tlv-select](#)
[show lldp](#)
[switchport voice vlan](#)

vlan

This command creates VLANs, assigns names to them, and enables or disables them. Specifying the `disable` state causes all forwarding over the specified VLAN ID to cease. Specifying the `enable` state allows forwarding of frames on the specified VLAN.

The `no` variant of this command destroys the specified VLANs.

Syntax

```
vlan <vid> [name <vlan-name>] [state {enable|disable}]
vlan <vid-range> [state {enable|disable}]
vlan {<vid>|<vlan-name>} [mtu <mtu-value>]
no vlan {<vid>|<vid-range>} [mtu]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <vid> | The VID of the VLAN to enable or disable in the range <1-4094>. |
| <vlan-name> | The ASCII name of the VLAN. Maximum length: 32 characters. |
| <vid-range> | Specifies a range of VLAN identifiers. |
| <mtu-value> | Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size in bytes, in the range 68 to 1500 bytes, for the VLAN. |
| enable | Sets VLAN into an <code>enable</code> state. |
| disable | Sets VLAN into a <code>disable</code> state. |

Default By default, VLANs are enabled when they are created.

Mode VLAN Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 45 name accounts state enable

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# no vlan 45
```

Related Commands

- [mtu](#)
- [vlan database](#)
- [show vlan](#)

vlan classifier activate

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode to associate a VLAN classifier group with the switch port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the VLAN classifier group from the switch port.

Syntax `vlan classifier activate <vlan-class-group-id>`
`no vlan classifier activate <vlan-class-group-id>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><vlan-class-group-id></code> | Specify a VLAN classifier group identifier in the range <1-16>. |

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port.

Usage See the **Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example** section in **Chapter 16, VLANs Introduction** for a configuration example and network topology using this command.

Example To associate VLAN classifier group 3 with switch `port1.0.3`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# vlan classifier activate 3
```

To remove VLAN classifier group 3 from switch `port1.0.3`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# no vlan classifier activate 3
```

Related Commands [show vlan classifier rule](#)
[vlan classifier group](#)
[vlan classifier rule ipv4](#)
[vlan classifier rule proto](#)

vlan classifier group

Use this command to create a group of VLAN classifier rules. The rules must already have been created.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete a group of VLAN classifier rules.

Syntax `vlan classifier group <1-16> {add|delete} rule <vlan-class-rule-id>`
`no vlan classifier group <1-16>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <1-16> | VLAN classifier group identifier |
| add | Add the rule to the group. |
| delete | Delete the rule from the group. |
| <vlan-class-rule-id> | The VLAN classifier rule identifier. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan classifier group 3 add rule 5
```

Related Commands [show vlan classifier rule](#)
[vlan classifier activate](#)
[vlan classifier rule ipv4](#)
[vlan classifier rule proto](#)

vlan classifier rule ipv4

Use this command to create an IPv4 subnet-based VLAN classifier rule and map it to a specific VLAN. Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the VLAN classifier rule.

Syntax `vlan classifier rule <1-256> ipv4 <ip-addr/prefix-length> vlan <1-4094>`
`no vlan classifier rule <1-256>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <1-256> | Specify the VLAN Classifier Rule identifier. |
| <ip-addr/prefix-length> | Specify the IP address and prefix length. |
| <1-4094> | Specify a VLAN ID to which an untagged packet is mapped in the range <1-4094>. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage If the source IP address matches the IP subnet specified in the VLAN classifier rule, the received packets are mapped to the specified VLAN.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 3 ipv4 3.3.3.3/8 vlan 5
```

Related Commands [show vlan classifier rule](#)
[vlan classifier activate](#)
[vlan classifier rule proto](#)

vlan classifier rule proto

Use this command to create a protocol type-based VLAN classifier rule, and map it to a specific VLAN. See the published IANA EtherType IEEE 802 numbers here:

www.iana.org/assignments/ieee-802-numbers/ieee-802-numbers.txt.

Instead of a protocol name the decimal value of the protocol's EtherType can be entered. The EtherType field is a two-octet field in an Ethernet frame. It is used to show which protocol is encapsulated in the payload of the Ethernet frame. Note that EtherTypes in the IANA 802 numbers are given as hexadecimal values.

The **no** variant of this command removes a previously set rule.

Syntax `vlan classifier rule <1-256> proto <protocol> encap {ethv2|nosnapllc|snapllc} vlan <1-4094>`
`no vlan classifier rule <1-256>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <1-256> | VLAN Classifier identifier |
| proto | Protocol type |
| <protocol> | Specify a protocol either by its decimal number (0-65535) or by one of the following protocol names: |
| [arp 2054] | Address Resolution protocol |
| [atalkarp 33011] | Appletalk AARP protocol |
| [atalkddp 32923] | Appletalk DDP protocol |
| [atmmulti 34892] | MultiProtocol Over ATM protocol |
| [atmtransport 34948] | Frame-based ATM Transport protocol |
| [dec 24576] | DEC Assigned protocol |
| [deccustom 24582] | DEC Customer use protocol |
| [decdiagnostics 24581] | DEC Systems Comms Arch protocol |
| [decdnadumpload 24577] | DEC DNA Dump/Load protocol |
| [decdnaremoteconsole 24578] | DEC DNA Remote Console protocol |
| [decdnarouting 24579] | DEC DNA Routing protocol |
| [declat 24580] | DEC LAT protocol |
| [decsyscomm 24583] | DEC Systems Comms Arch protocol |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|------------------------|---|
| [g8bpqx25 2303] | G8BPQ AX.25 protocol |
| [ieeeaddrtrans 2561] | Xerox IEEE802.3 PUP Address |
| [ieeepup 2560] | Xerox IEEE802.3 PUP protocol |
| [ip 2048] | IP protocol |
| [ipv6 34525] | IPv6 protocol |
| [ipx 33079] | IPX protocol |
| [netbeui 61680] | IBM NETBIOS/NETBEUI protocol |
| [netbeui 61681] | IBM NETBIOS/NETBEUI protocol |
| [pppdiscovery 34915] | PPPoE discovery protocol |
| [pppsession 34916] | PPPoE session protocol |
| [rarp 32821] | Reverse Address Resolution protocol |
| [x25 2056] | CCITT.25 protocol |
| [xeroxaddrtrans 513] | Xerox PUP Address Translation protocol |
| [xeroxpup 512] | Xerox PUP protocol |
| ethv2 | Ethernet Version 2 encapsulation |
| nosnapllc | LLC without SNAP encapsulation |
| snapllc | LLC SNAP encapsulation |
| <1-4094> | Specify a VLAN ID to which an untagged packet is mapped in the range <1-4094> |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage If the protocol type matches the protocol specified in the VLAN classifier rule, the received packets are mapped to the specified VLAN. Ethernet Frame Numbers may be entered in place of the protocol names listed. For a full list please refer to the IANA list online: www.iana.org/assignments/ieee-802-numbers/ieee-802-numbers.txt

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 1 proto x25 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 2 proto 512 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 3 proto 2056 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 4 proto 2054 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 5 proto 34525 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 6 proto ipv6 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 7 proto 2048 encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
awplus(config)# vlan classifier rule 8 proto ip encaps ethv2
                vlan 2
```

Validation Output

```
awplus# show vlan classifier rule
```

```
vlan classifier rule 16 proto rarp encaps ethv2 vlan 2
vlan classifier rule 8 proto encaps ethv2 vlan 2
vlan classifier rule 4 proto arp encaps ethv2 vlan 2
vlan classifier rule 3 proto xeroxppp encaps ethv2 vlan 2
vlan classifier rule 2 proto ip encaps ethv2 vlan 2
vlan classifier rule 1 proto ipv6 encaps ethv2 vlan 2
```

Related Commands [show vlan classifier rule](#)
[vlan classifier activate](#)
[vlan classifier group](#)

vlan database

Use this command to enter the VLAN Configuration mode.

Syntax `vlan database`

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to enter the VLAN configuration mode. You can then add or delete a VLAN, or modify its values.

Example In the following example, note the change to VLAN configuration mode from Configure mode:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)#
```

Related Commands [vlan](#)

Chapter 18: Spanning Tree Introduction: STP, RSTP, and MSTP



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 18.2 |
| Overview of Spanning Trees | 18.2 |
| Spanning Tree Operation..... | 18.2 |
| Spanning Tree Modes | 18.4 |
| Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) | 18.5 |
| Configuring STP | 18.6 |
| Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) | 18.8 |
| Configuring RSTP | 18.9 |
| Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) | 18.11 |
| Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTI)..... | 18.12 |
| MSTP Regions..... | 18.13 |
| Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) | 18.15 |
| MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)..... | 18.17 |
| Configuring MSTP | 18.19 |

Introduction

This chapter describes and provides configuration procedures for:

- Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)
- Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

For detailed information about the commands used to configure spanning trees, see [Chapter 19, Spanning Tree Commands](#).

Overview of Spanning Trees

The concept of the spanning tree protocol was devised to address broadcast storming. The spanning tree algorithm itself is defined by the IEEE standard 802.1D and its later revisions.

The IEEE Standard 802.1 uses the term “bridge” to define the spanning tree operation, and uses terms such as Bridge Protocol Data Units and Root Bridge when defining spanning tree protocol functions.

When a bridge receives a frame, it reads the source and destination address fields. The bridge then enters the frame’s source address in its forwarding database. In doing this the bridge associates the frame’s source address with the network attached to the port on which the frame was received. The bridge also reads the destination address and if it can find this address in its forwarding database, it forwards the frame to the appropriate port. If the bridge does not recognize the destination address, it forwards the frame out from all its ports except for the one on which the frame was received, and then waits for a reply. This process is known as “flooding”.

A significant problem arises where bridges connect via multiple paths. A frame that arrives with an unknown destination address is flooded over all available paths. The arrival of these frames at another network via different paths and bridges produces major problems. The bridges can become confused about the location of the send and receive devices and begin sending frames in the wrong directions. This process is self-perpetuating and produces a condition known as a broadcast storm, where the increase of circulating frames can eventually overload the network.

Spanning Tree Operation

Where a LAN’s topology results in more than one path existing between bridges, frames transmitted onto the extended LAN circulate in increasing numbers around the loop, decreasing performance and potentially overloading the network. However, multiple paths through the extended LAN are often required in order to provide redundancy and backup in the event of a bridge or link failure.

The spanning tree is created through the exchange of Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) between the bridges in the LAN. The spanning tree algorithm operates by:

- Automatically computing a loop-free portion of the topology, called a *spanning tree*. The topology is dynamically pruned to the spanning tree by declaring certain ports on a switch to be redundant, and placing them into a ‘blocking’ state.
- Automatically recovering from a switch failure that would partition the extended LAN by reconfiguring the spanning tree to use redundant paths, if available.

The logical tree computed by the spanning tree algorithm has the following properties:

- A single bridge is selected to become the spanning tree's unique *root bridge*. This is the device that advertises the lowest Bridge ID. Each bridge is uniquely identified by its Bridge ID, which comprises the bridge's *root priority* (a spanning tree parameter) followed by its MAC address.
- Each bridge or LAN in the tree, except the root bridge, has a unique parent, known as the *designated bridge*. Each LAN has a single bridge, called the *designated bridge*, that connects it to the next LAN on the path towards the root bridge.
- Each port connecting a bridge to a LAN has an associated *cost*, called the *root path cost*. This is the sum of the costs for each path between the particular bridge port and the root bridge. The designated bridge for a LAN is the one that advertises the lowest *root path cost*. If two bridges on the same LAN have the same lowest root path cost, then the switch with the lowest bridge ID becomes the designated bridge.

The spanning tree computation is a continuous, distributed process to establish and maintain a spanning tree (**Table 18-1**). The basic algorithm is similar for STP, RSTP and MSTP modes.

Table 18-1: Spanning tree process

| The spanning tree algorithm ... | By ... |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Selects a root bridge | It selects as the root bridge for the spanning tree the device with the (numerically) lowest bridge identifier (that is, the device with lowest root bridge priority value, or if they have the same priority, the bridge with the lowest MAC address). |
| Selects root ports | On each device, it selects the root port according to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ the port with the lowest path cost to the root bridge ■ the port connected to the bridge with the lowest root identifier ■ MSTP and RSTP only: the port with the lowest port priority value ■ the port with the lowest port number |
| Blocks alternate ports | In order to prevent loops, it blocks alternate ports (discarding state) that provide higher cost paths to the root bridge. |
| Blocks backup ports | Where a second port connects one switch back to itself, it blocks the backup port that has the highest path cost or port number. |
| Selects designated ports | All other ports that are not disabled are selected as designated ports and are eventually made active (Forwarding state). |
| Maintains the spanning tree | If a switch or port fails, the spanning tree configures a new active topology, changing some port states, to reestablish connectivity and block loops. Depending on where the failure occurs, the changes may be widespread (e.g. if the root bridge fails), or local (e.g. if a designated port fails). |

The logical spanning tree, sometimes called the *active topology*, includes the root bridge and all designated bridges, meaning all ports that are to be used for communication within the spanning tree. These ports are in the forwarding state. Ports removed from the logical spanning tree are not in the forwarding state. To implement the spanning tree algorithm, devices communicate with one another using the Spanning Tree Protocol.

Spanning Tree Modes

STP can run in one of three modes: STP, RSTP or MSTP. A device running RSTP is compatible with other devices running STP; a device running MSTP is compatible with other devices running RSTP or STP. By default, on a device in MSTP mode each port automatically detects the mode of the device connected to it (MSTP, RSTP or STP), and responds in the appropriate mode by sending messages (BPDUs) in the corresponding format. Ports on a device in RSTP mode can automatically detect and respond to connected devices in RSTP and STP mode. Particular ports can also be forced to only operate in a particular mode ([spanning-tree force-version command on page 19.44](#)).

STP The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is the original protocol defined by IEEE standard 802.1D-1988. It creates a single spanning tree over a network.

STP mode may be useful for supporting applications and protocols whose frames may arrive out of sequence or duplicated, for example NetBeui.

RSTP Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) also creates a single spanning tree over a network. Compared with STP, RSTP provides for more rapid convergence to an active spanning tree topology. RSTP is defined in IEEE standard 802.1D-2004.

By default, the device operates in RSTP mode.

MSTP The Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) addresses the limitations in the previous spanning tree protocols, STP and RSTP, within networks that use multiple VLANs with topologies that employ alternative physical links. It supports multiple spanning tree instances on any given link within a network, and supports large networks by grouping bridges into regions that appear as a single bridge to other devices.

MSTP is defined in IEEE standard 802.1Q-2005. The protocol builds on, and remains compatible with, the previous IEEE standards defining STP and RSTP.

Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

STP uses the process described in [Table 18-1](#) to avoid loops.

STP port states In STP mode, each switch port can be in one of five spanning tree states, and one of two switch states. The state of a switch port is taken into account by STP. The STP port states ([Table 18-2](#)) affect the behavior of ports whose switch state is enabled.

Table 18-2: STP port states

| State | Meaning |
|------------|--|
| DISABLED | STP operations are disabled on the port. The port does not participate in the operation of the Spanning Tree Algorithm and Protocol. The port can still switch if its switch state is enabled. |
| BLOCKING | The forwarding process discards received frames and does not submit forwarded frames for transmission. This is the “standby” mode. The port does not participate in frame relay. |
| LISTENING | The port is enabled for receiving frames only. The port is preparing to participate in frame relay. The forwarding process discards received frames and does not submit forwarded frames for transmission. |
| LEARNING | The port is enabled for receiving frames only, and the Learning Process can add new source address information to the Forwarding Database. |
| FORWARDING | The normal state for a switch port. The forwarding process and the Spanning Tree entity are enabled for transmit and receive operations on the port. |

Configuring STP

By default, RSTP is enabled on all switch ports. This section provides a procedure for configuring STP (Table 18-3).

To configure other modes, see “Configuring RSTP” on page 18.9 or “Configuring MSTP” on page 18.19.

Table 18-3: Configuration procedure for STP

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| Step 1. Configure STP | |
| RSTP is enabled by default with default settings on all switch ports to prevent Layer 2 loops in your network. | |
| <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree mode stp</code> | By default, the device is in RSTP mode. Change to STP mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree enable</code> | By default, spanning tree is enabled on all switch ports. If it has been disabled, enable it for STP. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree priority <priority></code> | By default, all devices have the same root bridge priority, 32768 (8000 in hexadecimal), so the device with the lowest MAC address becomes the root bridge. If you want the device to be the root bridge, set the root bridge priority to a value lower than 32768. Enter a value in the range 0 to 61440. If you enter a number that is not a multiple of 4096, the switch rounds the number down. |
| Step 2. Configure Root Guard | |
| The Root Guard feature makes sure that the port on which it is enabled is a designated port. If the Root Guard enabled port receives a superior BPDU, it goes to a Listening state (for STP) or discarding state (for RSTP and MSTP). | |
| <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports you want to enable Root Guard for. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root</code> | Enable the Guard Root feature for these ports. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# exit</code> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |

Table 18-3: Configuration procedure for STP(cont.)

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| Step 3. Check STP configuration | |
| <pre>awplus# show spanning-tree [interface <port-list>]</pre> | <p>Display the spanning tree configuration for the device, and confirm the new root bridge priority (Bridge Priority). Note that the Bridge ID is in a form like this: 80000000cd240331, and that other IDs follow the same pattern. This is made up of:</p> <p>8000—the devices' root bridge priority in hexadecimal 0000cd240331—the devices' MAC address.</p> |

Advanced configuration: For most networks the default settings for path costs will be suitable, however, you can configure them if required (**spanning-tree path-cost**).

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)

RSTP uses the process described in [Table 18-1](#) to avoid loops.

A spanning tree running in STP mode can take up to one minute to rebuild after a topology or configuration change. The RSTP algorithm provides for a faster recovery of connectivity following the failure of a bridge, bridge port, or a LAN. RSTP provides rapid recovery by including port roles in the computation of port states, and by allowing neighboring bridges to explicitly acknowledge signals on a point-to-point link that indicate that a port wants to enter the forwarding mode.

In rapid mode, the rapid transition of a port to the forwarding state is possible when the port is considered to be part of a point-to-point link, or when the port is considered to be an *edge* port. An edge port is one that attaches to a LAN that has no other bridges attached.

Table 18-4: RSTP port states

| State | Meaning |
|------------|--|
| DISABLED | STP operations are disabled on the port. |
| DISCARDING | The port does not participate in frame relay. The forwarding process discards received frames and does not submit forwarded frames for transmission. |
| LEARNING | The port is enabled for receiving frames only, and the learning process can add new source address information to the forwarding database. The port does not forward any frames. |
| FORWARDING | The normal state for a switch port. The forwarding process and the Spanning Tree entity are enabled for transmit and receive operations on the port. |

Configuring RSTP

RSTP is enabled by default with default settings on all switch ports to prevent Layer 2 loops in your network. No further configuration is required if you want to use RSTP with these default settings. For further RSTP configuration, see [Table 18-5](#) below.

To configure other modes, see [“Configuring MSTP” on page 18.19](#) or [“Configuring STP” on page 18.6](#).

For detailed configuration examples, see the How To Note *How To Configure Basic Switching Functionality*, available from www.alliedtelesis.com.

Table 18-5: Configuration procedure for RSTP

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| Step 1. Configure RSTP RSTP is enabled by default with default settings on all switch ports to prevent Layer 2 loops in your network. No further configuration is required if you want to use RSTP with these default settings. If you need to restore the device to RSTP after it has been set to another mode, or modify the default RSTP settings, follow the procedure below. | |
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree mode rstp</pre> | By default, the device is in RSTP mode. If it has been changed to STP or MSTP mode, change it back to RSTP. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree enable</pre> | By default, spanning tree is enabled on all switch ports. If it has been disabled, enable it for RSTP. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree priority <priority></pre> | By default, all devices have the same root bridge priority, 32768 (8000 in hexadecimal), so the device with the lowest MAC address becomes the root bridge. If you want the device to be the root bridge, set the root bridge priority to a value lower than 32768. Enter a value in the range 0 to 61440. If you enter a number that is not a multiple of 4096, the switch rounds the number down. |
| Step 2. Configure edge ports If some switch ports are connected to devices that cannot generate BPDUs (such as workstations), you can set particular switch ports as edge ports, or set them to automatically detect whether they are edge ports. | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for these switch ports. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)</pre> | Set these ports to be edge ports, |
| or | or |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree autoedge (RSTP and MSTP)</pre> | set these ports to automatically detect whether they are edge ports. |

Table 18-5: Configuration procedure for RSTP(cont.)

| Command | Description |
|--|--|
| Step 3. Configure Root Guard | |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports you want to enable Root Guard for. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root</code> | The Root Guard feature makes sure that the port on which it is enabled is a designated port. If the Root Guard enabled port receives a superior BPDU, it goes to a Listening state (for STP) or discarding state (for RSTP and MSTP). Enable the Guard Root feature if required. |
| Step 4. Configure BPDU Guard | |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard</code> | If required, enable the BPDU Guard feature. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable</code> | Set a timeout for ports that are disabled due to the BPDU guard feature. |
| <code>awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval</code> | Specify the time interval after which a port is brought back up when it has been disabled by the BPDU guard feature. |
| Step 5. Check RSTP configuration | |
| <code>awplus(config)# exit</code> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| <code>awplus# show spanning-tree [interface <port-list>]</code> | Display the spanning tree configuration for the device, and confirm the new root bridge priority (Bridge Priority). Note that the Bridge ID is in a form like this: 8000000cd240331, and that other IDs follow the same pattern. This is made up of: 8000—the devices' root bridge priority in hexadecimal 0000cd240331—the devices' MAC address. |

Advanced configuration: For most networks the default settings for path costs will be suitable, however, you can configure them if required (**spanning-tree path-cost**).

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

Conceptually, MSTP views the total bridged network as one that comprises a number of *Multiple Spanning Tree Regions* (MSTRs), where each region can contain up to 64 spanning trees, which operate locally, called *Multiple Spanning Tree Instances* (MSTIs).

AlliedWare Plus™ supports up to 15 MSTIs. The regions are linked by the *Common Internal Spanning Tree* (CIST).

MSTP uses BPDUs to exchange information between spanning-tree compatible devices, to prevent loops in each MSTI and also in the CIST, by selecting active and blocked paths. This process is described in [Table 18-1](#).

If multiple ports are aggregated together into a dynamic (LACP) or static channel group, then the spanning-tree process is aware of the link aggregation and treats the aggregated ports as a single logical path.

Advantage of MSTP over RSTP

MSTP is similar to RSTP, in that it provides loop resolution and rapid convergence. However, RSTP can keep track of only one spanning-tree. MSTP can track many spanning-trees, referred to as *instances*. MSTP makes it possible to have different forwarding paths for different MST instances. This enables load balancing of network traffic across redundant links, so that all the links in a network can be used by at least one MSTI, and no link is left completely idle. That is to say that no link is unnecessarily shut down by spanning-tree.

Essentially, MSTP is VLAN aware and RSTP is not VLAN aware. MSTP BPDUs and RSTP BPDUs are compatible, so a network can have a mixture of MSTP and RSTP areas.

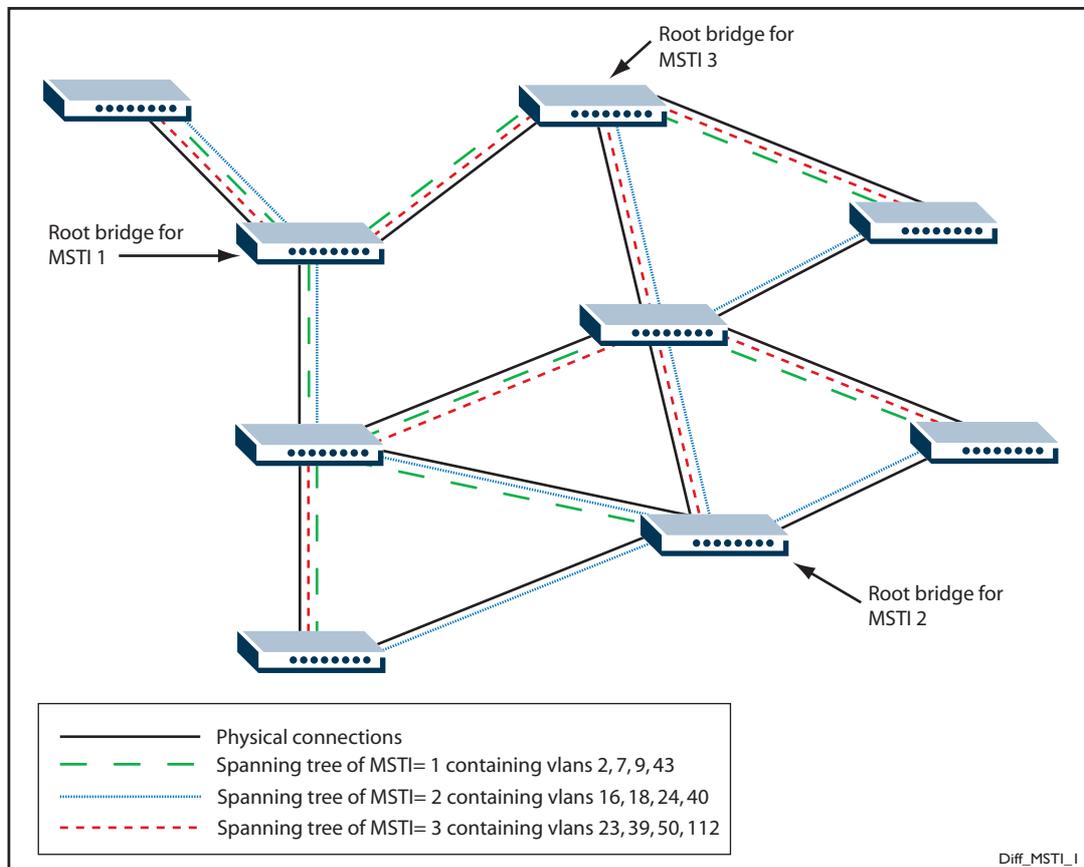
Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTI)

MSTP enables the grouping and mapping of VLANs to different spanning tree instances. So, an MST Instance (MSTI) is a particular set of VLANs that are all using the same spanning tree.

In a network where all VLANs span all links of the network, judicious choice of bridge priorities for different MSTIs can result in different switches becoming root bridges for different MSTIs. That will result in the different MSTIs choosing different active topologies on the network. An example of how different MSTIs can choose different active topologies on the same physical set of links is illustrated in **Figure 18-1**.

MSTP is compatible with RSTP and STP—see **“Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)” on page 18.15**.

Figure 18-1: Different spanning trees created by different MSTIs on the same physical layout



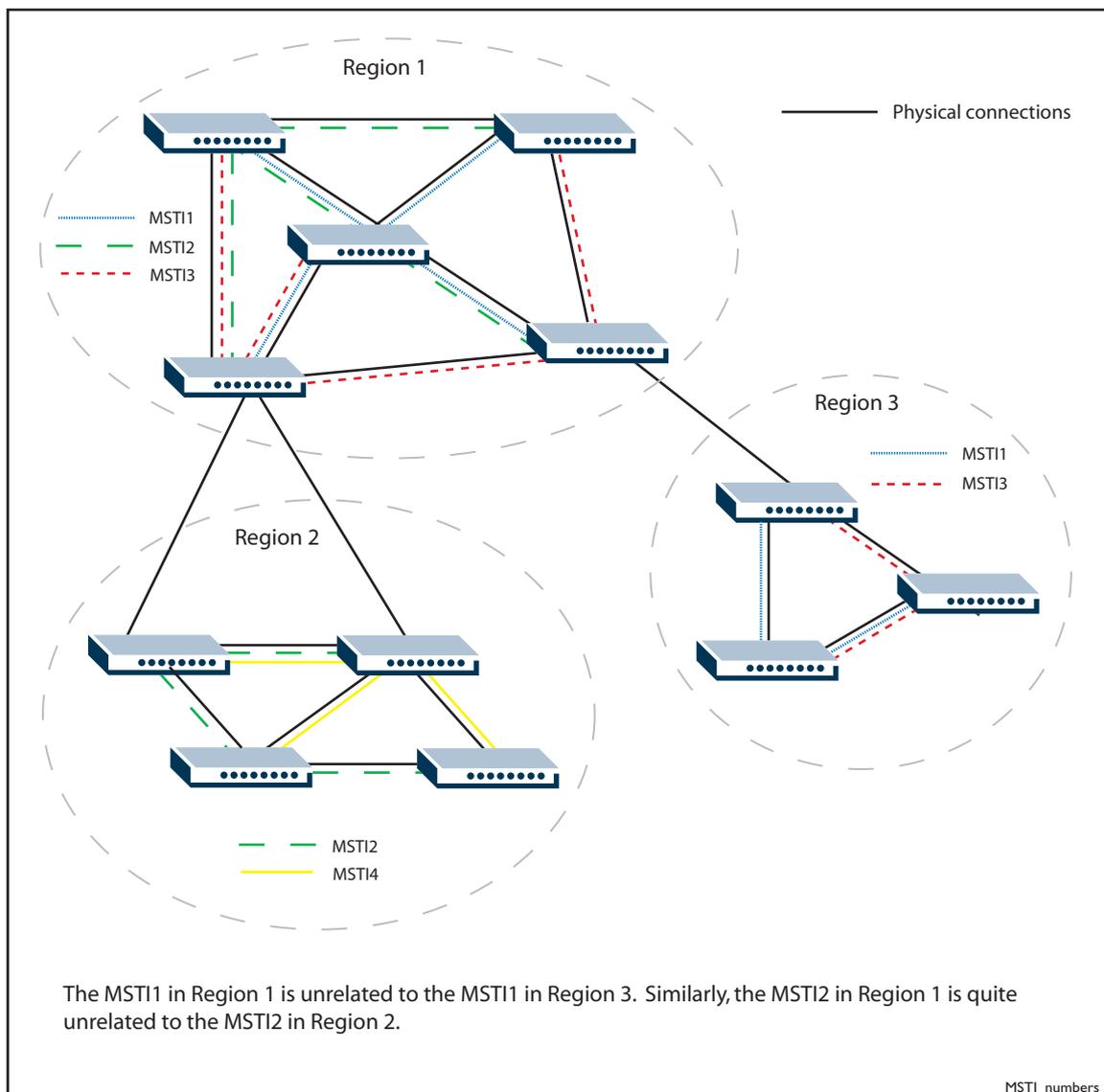
MSTP Regions

An MST region is a set of interconnected switches that all have the same values for the following MST configuration identification elements:

- MST configuration name - the name of the MST region
- Revision level - the revision number of configuration
- Configuration Digest - the mapping of which VLANs are mapped to which MST instances

Each of the MST instances created are identified by an MSTI number. This number is locally significant within the MST region. Therefore, an MSTI will not span across MST regions.

Figure 18-2: MSTIs in different regions



The task of assigning each bridge to a particular region is achieved by the member bridges each comparing their *MST Configuration Identifiers*. More information on configuration identifiers is provided in [Table 18-6](#), but for the moment an *MST Configuration Identifier* can simply be thought of as an identifier that represents the mapping of VLANs to MSTIs within each bridge. Therefore, bridges with identical *MST Configuration Identifiers*, must have identical MSTI mapping tables.

While each MSTI can have multiple VLANs, each VLAN can be associated with only one MSTI. Once these associations have been made, the bridges in each region can transmit their spanning tree BPDUs and advertise their MSTIs. This in turn establishes the active data paths between the bridges for each group of VLANs (that is, for each MSTI) and block any duplicate paths within each instance. A particular advantage of this enhancement applies where a large number of VLANs share a few internetwork paths. In this situation there need only be as many Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTIs) as there are source and destination bridge pairs, remembering that a pair of bridges probably has multiple paths between them.

In order to ensure that each bridge within a region maintains the same configuration information (particularly their VID to MSTI mappings) and to ensure each bridge's membership of a particular region, the bridges exchange configuration information in the form of *MST Configuration Identifiers*. **Table 18-6** provides a breakdown of an *MST Configuration Identifier*. A detailed explanation of bridge configuration identifiers can be found in Section 13.7 of the IEEE 802.1Q-2003 standard.

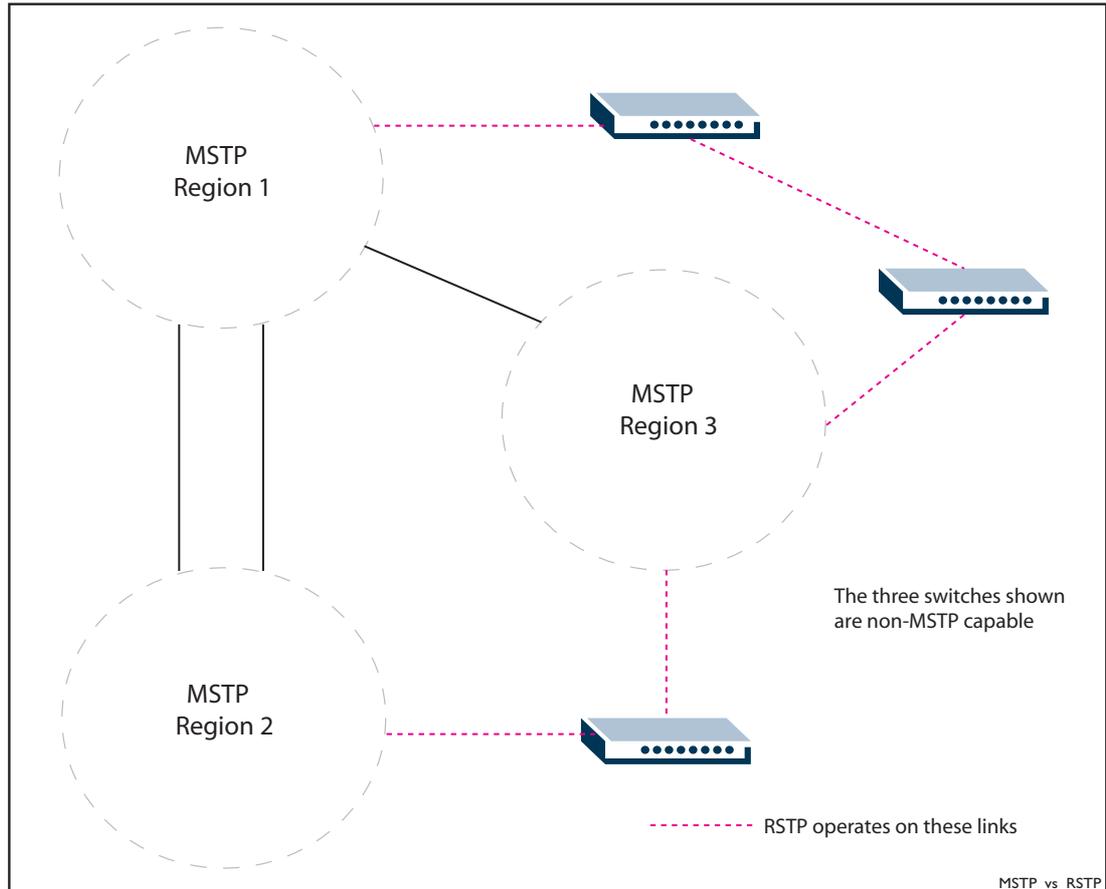
Table 18-6: MST Configuration Identifier

| Field Name | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Format Selector | A single octet field whose value of 0 indicates MSTP operation |
| Region Name | A name (up to 32 characters long) that identifies a particular MST region, defined using the region (MSTP) command on page 19.11 |
| Revision Level | A number representing the region's revision level, defined using the revision (MSTP) command on page 19.12. |
| Configuration Digest | A 16 octet (HMAC-MD5 based) signature created from the MST configuration table. |

Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

The CIST is the default spanning tree instance of MSTP, i.e. all VLANs that are not members of particular MSTIs are members of the CIST. Also, an individual MST region can be regarded as a single virtual bridge by other MST regions. The spanning tree that runs between regions is the CIST. The CIST is also the spanning tree that runs between MST regions and Single Spanning Tree (SST) entities. So, in **Figure 18-3**, the STP that is running between the regions, and to the SST bridges, is the CIST.

Figure 18-3: The CIST operates on links between regions and to SST devices



Compatibility with Previous Spanning Tree Protocols

MSTP provides for compatibility with older spanning tree protocols in several ways. In addition to the MST region described in the previous section, the protocol provides for single spanning tree systems by employing a Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST). The CIST applies a common and internal spanning tree protocol to the whole of the bridged network and is a direct equivalent to the internal spanning tree (IST) protocol of earlier versions.

In common with legacy spanning tree systems, the CIST protocol first determines its root bridge from all the bridges on the network. This is the bridge that contains the lowest bridge identifier. The protocol then selects a regional root bridge for each MSTR. This is the bridge that provides the best path to the CIST root. After the MSTR root bridges have been chosen, they then act on the region's behalf in such a way that the region appears to the Common Spanning Tree (CST) as a virtual bridge. So in addition to having multiple MSTIs, each region operates as a bridge in a CST.

CIST In addition to the individual MSTIs within each MSTP region, the MSTP region is a member of a network-wide spanning tree called the Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST). Conceptually, each region represents a virtual bridge. Internal and external bridge connectivity are two independent functions.

Frames with VIDs allocated to the CIST are subject to the rules and path costs of the complete bridged LAN as determined by the CIST's vectors. Frames other than these are subject to the CIST when traveling outside their region, and subject to its particular MSTI inside the region.

The following operational rules apply:

- Each bridge can be a member of only one region.
- A data frame is associated with a single VID.
- Data frames with a given VID are associated with either the CIST or their particular MSTI, but not both.

The role of the Common Spanning Tree (CST) in a network, and the Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) configured on each device, is to prevent loops within a wider network that may span more than one MSTP region and parts of the network running in legacy STP or RSTP mode.

CIST first allocates root and designated bridges by selecting the bridge with the lowest identifier as the root. MSTP then deals with any loops between the regions in the CST. It does this by considering the CIST "vectors" in the following order:

1. CIST External Root Path Cost
2. CIST Regional Root Identifier
3. CIST Internal Root Path Cost
4. CIST Designated Bridge Identifier
5. CIST Designated Port Identifier
6. CIST Receiving Port Identifier

MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)

The main function of bridge protocol data units is to enable MSTP to select its root bridges for the CIST (“**Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)**” on page 18.15) and each MSTI. MSTP is compatible with earlier spanning tree versions; its Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) formats build on earlier versions (“**Compatibility with Previous Spanning Tree Protocols**” on page 18.15).

Table 18-7 shows the standardized format for MSTP BPDU messages. The general format of the BPDUs comprise a common generic portion—octets 1 to 36—that are based on those defined in IEEE Standard 802.1D, 1998, followed by components that are specific to CIST—octets 37 to 102. Components specific to each MSTI are added to this BPDU data block.

Table 18-7: MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)

| Field Name | Octets | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------|--|
| Protocol Identifier | 1–2 | Protocol being used. The value 0000 0000 0000 0000 identifies the spanning tree algorithm and protocol. |
| Protocol Version Identifier | 3 | Identifies the protocol version used. |
| BPDU Type | 4 | Value 0000 0000 specifies a configuration BPDU. |
| CIST Flags | 5 | Bit 1 is the topology change flag. Bit 2 conveys the CIST proposal flag in RST and MST BPDUs - unused in STP. Bits 3 & 4 convey the CIST port role in RST, and MST BPDUs - unused in STP. Bit 5 conveys the CIST learning flag in RST and MST BPDUs - unused in STP. Bit 6 conveys the CIST forwarding flag in RST and MST BPDUs - unused in STP. Bit 7 conveys the CIST agreement flag in RST and MST BPDUs - unused in STP. Bit 8 conveys the topology change acknowledge flag in STP configuration BPDUs - unused in RSTP and MSTP BPDUs. |
| CIST Root Identifier | 6–13 | The Bridge identifier of the CIST Root |
| CIST External Path Cost | 14–17 | The path cost between MST regions from the transmitting bridge to the CIST root. |
| CIST Regional Root Identifier | 18–25 | ID of the current CIST regional root bridge. |
| CIST Port Identifier | 26–27 | CIST port identifier of the transmitting bridge port. |
| Message Age | 28–29 | Message age timer value. |
| Max Age | 30–31 | Timeout value to be used by all bridges in the bridged network. This value is set by the root. Some implementations of MSTP may choose not to use this value. |
| Hello Time | 32–33 | Time interval between the generation of configuration BPDUs by the root bridge. |
| Forward Delay | 34–35 | A timeout value used to ensure forward delay timer consistency when transferring a port to the forwarding state. It is also used for ageing filtering database dynamic entries following changes in the active topology. |

Table 18-7: MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) (cont.)

| Field Name | Octets | Description |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| Version 1 Length | 36 | Used to convey the Version 1 length. It is always transmitted as 0. |
| Version 3 Length | 37–38 | Used to convey the Version 3 length. It is the number of octets taken by the parameters that follow in the BPDU. |
| MST Configuration Identifier | 39–89 | An identifier comprising elements of the following: Format Selector Configuration Name Revision Level Configuration Digest. |
| CIST Internal Root Path Cost | 90–93 | Path cost to the CIST regional root. |
| CIST Bridge Identifier | 94–101 | CIST bridge identifier of the transmitting bridge. |
| CIST Remaining Hops | 102 | Remaining hops which limits the propagation and longevity of received spanning tree information for the CIST. |
| MSTI Configuration Messages (may be absent) | 103–39 plus Version 3 Length | See Table 18-8 . |

Table 18-8: MSTI configuration messages

| Field Name | Octets | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------|--|
| MSTI Flags | 1 | Bits 1 through 8, convey the topology change flag, proposal flag, port role (two bits), Learning flag, forwarding flag, agreement flag, and master flag for this MSTI. |
| MSTI Regional Root Identifier | 2–9 | This includes the value of the MSTID for this configuration message encoded in bits 4 through 1 of octet 1, and bits 8 through 1 of octet 2. |
| MSTI Internal Root Path Cost | 10-13 | Internal Root Path Cost. |
| MSTI Bridge Priority | 14 | Bits 5 through 8 convey the value of the bridge identifier priority for this MSTI. Bits 1 through 4 of Octet 14 are transmitted as 0, and ignored on receipt. |
| MSTI Port Priority | 15 | Bits 5 through 8 are used to convey the value of the port identifier priority for this MSTI. Bits 1 through 4 are transmitted as 0, and ignored on receipt. |
| MSTI Remaining Hops | 16 | Value of remaining hops for this MSTI. |

Configuring MSTP

By default, RSTP is enabled with default settings on all switch ports. To configure MSTP, see the configuration procedure in [Table 18-9](#).

To configure other modes, see [“Configuring RSTP” on page 18.9](#) or [“Configuring STP” on page 18.6](#).

For detailed configuration examples, see the How To Note *How To Configure Basic Switching Functionality*, available from website at www.alliedtelesis.com.

Configuration guidelines for MSTP

- Switches must have the same MST configuration identification elements (region name, revision level and VLAN to MSTI mapping) to be in the same MST region. When configuring multiple MST regions for MSTP, MSTIs are locally significant within an MST region. MSTIs will not span from one region to another region.
- Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) is the default spanning tree instance for MSTP. This means that all VLANs that are not explicitly configured into another MSTI are members of the CIST.
- The software supports a single instance of the MSTP Algorithm consisting of the CIST and up to 15 MSTIs.
- A VLAN can only be mapped to one MSTI or to the CIST. One VLAN mapped to multiple spanning trees is not allowed. All the VLANs are mapped to the CIST by default. Once a VLAN is mapped to a specified MSTI, it is removed from the CIST.
- An MSTI is locally significant within an MST region. An MSTI cannot span across multiple MST regions. The CIST is the spanning tree instance for connecting different MST regions and single spanning tree entities, such as RSTP and STP switches.
- MSTP is compatible with RSTP and STP. An MST region appears as a virtual bridge connecting to single spanning tree entities.
- To avoid unnecessary STP processing, a port that attaches to a LAN that is known to have no other bridges/switches attached can be configured as an edge port.

Before configuring MSTP Before configuring MSTP, configure VLANs and associate them with switch ports (**Chapter 16, VLANs Introduction** and **Chapter 17, VLAN Commands**), and determine for your network:

- which MSTP regions, revision level and instances are required
- which VLANs and switch ports will belong to which MSTIs,
- which devices you want to be root bridges for each MSTI

Table 18-9: Configuration procedure for MSTP

| Command | Description |
|--|--|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# spanning-tree mode mstp | By default, the device is in RSTP mode. Change to MSTP mode. |
| awplus(config)# spanning-tree enable | By default, spanning tree is enabled on all switch ports. If it has been disabled, enable it for MSTP. |

Step 1. Configure MSTP region, revision, and instances

All MSTP devices in this region of the network must have the same region name, revision number, and VLAN to MSTI mappings.

| | |
|---|---|
| awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration | Enter MST Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-mst)# region <region-name> | Specify the MSTP region. The region-name parameter is an arbitrary string that specifies the name you want to assign to the MST region for identification. |
| awplus(config-mst)# revision <revision-number> | The revision-number parameter specifies the revision of the current MST configuration. The revision is an arbitrary number that you assign to an MST region. It can be used to keep track of the number of times that MST configuration has been updated for the network. Specify the MST revision number in the range 0 to 255. |
| awplus(config-mst)# instance <msti-id> vlan {<vid> <vid-list>} | To allow MSTP to block traffic for different VLANs in different places in a loop, create multiple MSTP instances and associate VLANs with them. Each VLAN can only be in one instance. Specify the MST instance ID in the range 1 to 15. |

Table 18-9: Configuration procedure for MSTP (cont.)

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| Step 2. Advanced configuration The commands above are the minimum required to configure MSTP. The following commands allow more advanced configuration. | |
| Step 3. Assign root bridge priorities MSTP lets you distribute traffic more efficiently across a network by blocking different links for different VLANs. You do this by making different devices into the root bridge for each MSTP instance, and for the CIST, so that each instance blocks a different link. By default, all devices have the same root bridge priority, 32768 (8000 in hexadecimal), so the device with the lowest MAC address becomes the root bridge. If you want the device to be the root bridge for an instance or for the CIST, set the priority to a lower value (a higher priority) than other devices for this instance. (If you enter a number that is not a multiple of 4096, the device rounds the number down.) | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration</pre> | Enter MST Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-mst)# instance <msti-id> priority <priority></pre> | Set the priority for the device to become the root bridge for each instance. Specify the MST instance ID in the range 1 to 15. Specify the root bridge priority in the range 0 to 61440. If you enter a number that is not a multiple of 4096, the switch rounds the number down. |
| <pre>awplus(config-mst)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree priority <priority></pre> | Set the priority for the device to become the root bridge for the CIST. Specify the bridge priority in the range 0 to 61440. If you enter a number that is not a multiple of 4096, the switch rounds the number down. |
| Step 4. Configure edge ports If some switch ports are connected to devices that cannot generate BPDUs (such as workstations), you can set particular switch ports as edge ports, or set them to automatically detect whether they are edge ports. | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for these switch ports. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)</pre> | Set these ports to be edge ports, |
| or | or |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree autoedge (RSTP and MSTP)</pre> | set these ports to automatically detect whether they are edge ports. |

Table 18-9: Configuration procedure for MSTP (cont.)

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| Step 5. Configure Root Guard | |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root</pre> | The Root Guard feature makes sure that the port on which it is enabled is a designated port. If the Root Guard enabled port receives a superior BPDU, it goes to a Listening state (for STP) or discarding state (for RSTP and MSTP). Enable the Guard Root feature if required. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| Step 6. Configure BPDU Guard | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard</pre> | If required, enable the BPDU Guard feature. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable</pre> | Set a timeout for ports that are disabled due to the BPDU guard feature. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval <10-1000000></pre> | Specify the time interval after which a port is brought back up when it has been disabled by the BPDU guard feature. |
| Step 7. Check MSTP configuration | |
| <pre>awplus(config)# exit</pre> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| <pre>awplus# show spanning-tree mst config</pre> | Check that the digest is the same on this device as for all other devices in the same region. |
| <pre>awplus# show spanning-tree mst</pre> | Check the MST to VLAN and port mapping. |
| <pre>awplus# show spanning-tree mst instance <instance></pre> | Check the detailed information for a particular instance, and all switch ports associated with that instance. Specify the MST instance ID in the range 1 to 15. |
| <pre>awplus# show spanning-tree mst interface <port></pre> | Check general information about MSTP, and the CIST settings. |

Advanced configuration: For most networks, the default settings of the following will be suitable. However, you can also configure them.

- path costs for ports in an MSTI (**spanning-tree mst instance path-cost**) or for the CIST (**spanning-tree path-cost**)
- port priority for ports in an MSTI (**spanning-tree mst instance priority**) or for the CIST (**spanning-tree priority (port priority)**)

Chapter 19: Spanning Tree Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Command List | 19.3 |
| clear spanning-tree statistics | 19.3 |
| clear spanning-tree detected protocols (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.4 |
| debug mstp (RSTP and STP) | 19.5 |
| instance priority (MSTP) | 19.8 |
| instance vlan (MSTP) | 19.10 |
| region (MSTP) | 19.11 |
| revision (MSTP) | 19.12 |
| show debugging mstp | 19.13 |
| show spanning-tree | 19.14 |
| show spanning-tree brief | 19.17 |
| show spanning-tree mst | 19.18 |
| show spanning-tree mst config | 19.19 |
| show spanning-tree mst detail | 19.20 |
| show spanning-tree mst detail interface | 19.22 |
| show spanning-tree mst instance | 19.24 |
| show spanning-tree mst instance interface | 19.25 |
| show spanning-tree mst interface | 19.26 |
| show spanning-tree mst detail interface | 19.27 |
| show spanning-tree statistics | 19.29 |
| show spanning-tree statistics instance | 19.30 |
| show spanning-tree statistics instance interface | 19.31 |
| show spanning-tree statistics interface | 19.32 |
| show spanning-tree vlan range-index | 19.34 |
| spanning-tree autoedge (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.35 |
| spanning-tree bpdu | 19.36 |
| spanning-tree cisco-interoperability (MSTP) | 19.38 |
| spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.39 |
| spanning-tree enable | 19.40 |
| spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable | 19.42 |
| spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval | 19.43 |
| spanning-tree force-version | 19.44 |
| spanning-tree forward-time | 19.45 |
| spanning-tree guard root | 19.46 |
| spanning-tree hello-time | 19.47 |
| spanning-tree link-type | 19.48 |
| spanning-tree max-age | 19.49 |
| spanning-tree max-hops (MSTP) | 19.50 |
| spanning-tree mode | 19.51 |
| spanning-tree mst configuration | 19.52 |
| spanning-tree mst instance | 19.53 |
| spanning-tree mst instance path-cost | 19.54 |
| spanning-tree mst instance priority | 19.56 |
| spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role | 19.57 |
| spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn | 19.58 |
| spanning-tree path-cost | 19.59 |
| spanning-tree portfast (STP) | 19.60 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter | 19.62 |
| spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard..... | 19.64 |
| spanning-tree priority (bridge priority) | 19.66 |
| spanning-tree priority (port priority) | 19.67 |
| spanning-tree restricted-role..... | 19.68 |
| spanning-tree restricted-tcn..... | 19.68 |
| spanning-tree transmit-holdcount..... | 19.69 |
| undebg mstp | 19.69 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure RSTP, STP or MSTP. For information about spanning trees, including configuration procedures, see [Chapter 18, Spanning Tree Introduction: STP, RSTP, and MSTP](#)

clear spanning-tree statistics

Use this command to clear all the STP BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) statistics.

Syntax

```
clear spanning-tree statistics
clear spanning-tree statistics [instance <mstp-instance>]
clear spanning-tree statistics
    [interface <port> [instance <mstp-instance>]]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <port> | The port to clear STP BPDU statistics for. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |
| <mstp-instance> | The MSTP instance (MSTI - Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) to clear MSTP BPDU statistics. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Use this command with the **instance** parameter in MSTP mode. Specifying this command with the **interface** parameter only not the instance parameter will work in STP and RSTP mode.

Examples

```
awplus# clear spanning-tree statistics

awplus# clear spanning-tree statistics instance 1

awplus# clear spanning-tree statistics interface port1.0.2

awplus# clear spanning-tree statistics interface port1.0.2
instance 1
```

clear spanning-tree detected protocols (RSTP and MSTP)

Use this command to clear the detected protocols for a specific port, or all ports.

Use this command in RSTP or MSTP mode only.

Syntax `clear spanning-tree detected protocols [interface <port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <port> | The port to clear detected protocols for. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear spanning-tree detected protocols
```

debug mstp (RSTP and STP)

Use this command to enable debugging for the configured spanning tree mode, and echo data to the console, at various levels. Note that although this command uses the keyword **mstp** it displays debugging output for RSTP and STP protocols as well the MSTP protocol.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable spanning tree debugging.

Syntax

```
debug mstp {all|cli|protocol [detail]|timer [detail]}
debug mstp {packet {rx|tx} [decode] [interface <interface>]}
debug mstp {topology-change [interface <interface>]}
no debug mstp {all|cli|protocol [detail]|timer [detail]}
no debug mstp {packet {rx|tx} [decode] [interface <interface>]}
no debug mstp {topology-change [interface <interface>]}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| all | Echoes all spanning tree debugging levels to the console. |
| cli | Echoes spanning tree commands to the console. |
| packet | Echoes spanning tree packets to the console. |
| rx | Received packets. |
| tx | Transmitted packets. |
| protocol | Echoes protocol changes to the console. |
| timer | Echoes timer information to the console. |
| detail | Detailed output. |
| decode | Interprets packet contents |
| topology-change | Interprets topology change messages |
| interface | Keyword before <interface> placeholder to specify an interface to debug |
| <interface> | Placeholder used to specify the name of the interface to debug. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration mode

Usage 1 Use the **debug mstp topology-change interface** command to generate debugging messages when the switch receives an indication of a topology change in a BPDU from another device. The debugging can be activated on a per-port basis. Although this command uses the keyword **mstp**, it displays debugging output for RSTP and STP protocols as well as the MSTP protocol.

Due to the likely volume of output, these debug messages are best viewed using the **terminal monitor** command on page 8.57 before issuing the relevant **debug mstp** command. The default terminal monitor filter will select and display these messages. Alternatively, the messages can be directed to any of the other log outputs by adding a filter for the MSTP application using **log buffered (filter)** command on page 10.8:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# log buffered program mstp
```

Output 1

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#debug mstp topology-change interface port1.0.4
10:09:09 awplus MSTP[1409]: Topology change rcvd on port1.0.4 (internal)
10:09:09 awplus MSTP[1409]: Topology change rcvd on MSTI 1 port1.0.4
awplus#debug mstp topology-change interface port1.0.6
10:09:29 awplus MSTP[1409]: Topology change rcvd on port1.0.6 (external)
10:09:29 awplus MSTP[1409]: Topology change rcvd on MSTI 1 port1.0.6
```

Usage 2 Use the **debug mstp packet rx|tx decode interface** command to generate debugging messages containing the entire contents of a BPDU displayed in readable text for transmitted and received xSTP BPDUs. The debugging can be activated on a per-port basis and transmit and receive debugging is controlled independently. Although this command uses the keyword **mstp**, it displays debugging output for RSTP and STP protocols as well as the MSTP protocol.

Due to the likely volume of output, these debug messages are best viewed using the [terminal monitor command on page 8.57](#) before issuing the relevant **debug mstp** command. The default terminal monitor filter will select and display these messages. Alternatively, the messages can be directed to any of the other log outputs by adding a filter for the MSTP application using the [log buffered \(filter\) command on page 10.8](#):

```
awplus(config)# log buffered program mstp
```

Output 2 In MSTP mode - an MSTP BPDU with 1 MSTI:

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#debug mstp packet rx decode interface port1.0.4
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - start
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Protocol version: MSTP, BPDU type: RST
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST Flags: Agree Forward Learn role=Desig
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST root id : 0000:0000cd1000fe
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST ext pathcost : 0
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST reg root id : 0000:0000cd1000fe
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST port id : 8001 (128:1)
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: msg age: 0 max age: 20 hellotime: 2 fwd delay: 15
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Version 3 length : 80
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Format id : 0
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Config name : test
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Revision level : 0
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: Config digest : 3ab68794d602fdf43b21c0b37ac3bca8
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST int pathcost : 0
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST bridge id : 0000:0000cd1000fe
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST hops remaining : 20
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: MSTI flags : Agree Forward Learn role=Desig
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: MSTI reg root id : 8001:0000cd1000fe
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: MSTI pathcost : 0
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: MSTI bridge priority : 32768 port priority : 128
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: MSTI hops remaining : 20
17:23:42 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - finish
```

In STP mode transmitting a TCN BPDU:

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#debug mstp packet tx decode interface port1.0.4
17:28:09 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU tx - start
17:28:09 awplus MSTP[1417]: Protocol version: STP, BPDU type: TCN
17:28:09 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU tx - finish
```

In STP mode receiving an STP BPDU:

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#debug mstp packet rx decode interface port1.0.4
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - start
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Protocol version: STP, BPDU type: Config
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Flags: role=none
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Root id      : 8000:0000cd1000fe
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Root pathcost : 0
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Bridge id   : 8000:0000cd1000fe
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: Port id     : 8001 (128:1)
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: msg age: 0 max age: 20 hellotime: 2 fwd delay: 15
17:31:36 awplus MSTP[1417]: ort1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - finish
```

In RSTP mode receiving an RSTP BPDU:

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#debug mstp packet rx decode interface port1.0.4
awplus#17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - start
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: Protocol version: RSTP, BPDU type: RST
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST Flags: Forward Learn role=Desig
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST root id      : 8000:0000cd1000fe
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST ext pathcost : 0
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST reg root id  : 8000:0000cd1000fe
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: CIST port id     : 8001 (128:1)
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: msg age: 0 max age: 20 hellotime: 2 fwd delay: 15
17:30:17 awplus MSTP[1417]: port1.0.4 xSTP BPDU rx - finish
```

Examples

```
awplus# debug mstp all

awplus# debug mstp cli

awplus# debug mstp packet rx

awplus# debug mstp protocol detail

awplus# debug mstp timer

awplus# debug mstp packet rx decode interface port1.0.2

awplus# debug mstp packet tx decode interface port1.0.6
```

Related Commands [log buffered \(filter\)](#)
[show debugging mstp](#)
[terminal monitor](#)
[undebug mstp](#)

instance priority (MSTP)

Use this command to set the priority for this device to become the root bridge for the specified MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance).

Use this command for MSTP only.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the root bridge priority of the device for the instance to the default.

Syntax `instance <msti-id> priority <priority>`
`no instance <msti-id> priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><msti-id></code> | Specify the The MST instance ID in the range <1-15>. |
| <code><priority></code> | Specify the root bridge priority for the device for the MSTI in the range <0-61440>. Note that a lower priority number indicates a greater likelihood of the device becoming the root bridge. The priority values can be set only in increments of 4096. If you specify a number that is not a multiple of 4096, it will be rounded down. The default priority is 32768. |

Default The default priority value for all instances is 32768.

Mode MST Configuration

Usage MSTP lets you distribute traffic more efficiently across a network by blocking different links for different VLANs. You do this by making different devices into the root bridge for each MSTP instance, so that each instance blocks a different link. If all devices have the same root bridge priority for the instance, MSTP selects the device with the lowest MAC address to be the root bridge. Give the device a higher priority for becoming the root bridge for a particular instance by assigning it a lower priority number, or vice versa.

Examples To set the root bridge priority for MSTP instance 2 to be the highest (0), so that it will be the root bridge for this instance when available, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)# instance 2 priority 0
```

To reset the root bridge priority for instance 2 to the default (32768), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)# no instance 2 priority
```

Related Commands **region (MSTP)**
 revision (MSTP)
 show spanning-tree mst config
 spanning-tree mst instance
 spanning-tree mst instance priority

instance vlan (MSTP)

Use this command to create an MST Instance (MSTI), and associate the specified VLANs with it. An MSTI is a spanning tree instance that exists within an MST region (MSTR). An MSTR can contain up to 15 MSTIs.

When a VLAN is associated with an MSTI the member ports of the VLAN are automatically configured to send and receive spanning-tree information for the associated MSTI. You can disable this automatic configuration of member ports of the VLAN to the associated MSTI by using a **no spanning-tree mst instance** command to remove the member port from the MSTI.

Use the **instance vlan** command for MSTP only.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified VLANs from the MSTI.

Syntax `instance <msti-id> vlan {<vid>|<vid-list>}`
`no instance <msti-id> vlan {<vid>|<vid-list>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <msti-id> | Specify the MST instance ID <1-15>. |
| <vid> | Specify a VLAN identifier (VID) in the range <1-4094> to be associated with the MSTI specified. |
| <vid-list> | A hyphen-separated range or a comma-separated list of VLAN IDs |

Mode MST Configuration

Usage The VLANs must be created before being associated with an MST instance (MSTI). If the VLAN range is not specified, the MSTI will not be created.

This command removes the specified VLANs from the CIST and adds them to the specified MSTI. If you use the **no** variant of this command to remove the VLAN from the MSTI, it returns it to the CIST. To move a VLAN from one MSTI to another, you must first use the **no** variant of this command to return it to the CIST.

Ports in these VLANs will remain in the control of the CIST until you associate the ports with the MSTI using the **spanning-tree mst instance** command.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mode mstp
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)# instance 2 vlan 30
```

Related Commands [region \(MSTP\)](#)
[revision \(MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree mst config](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance](#)
[vlan](#)

region (MSTP)

Use this command to assign a name to the device's MST Region. MST Instances (MSTI) of a region form different spanning trees for different VLANs.

Use this command for MSTP only.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove this region name and reset it to the default.

Syntax `region <region-name>`
`no region`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><region-name></code> | Specify the name of the region, up to 32 characters. Valid characters are upper-case, lower-case, digits, underscore. |

Default By default, the region name is My Name.

Mode MST Configuration

Usage The region name, the revision number, and the digest of the VLAN to MSTI configuration table must be the same on all devices that are intended to be in the same MST region.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)# region ATL
```

Related Commands [revision \(MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree mst config](#)

revision (MSTP)

Use this command to specify the MST revision number to be used in the configuration identifier.

Use this command for MSTP only.

Syntax `revision <revision-number>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><revision-number></code> | <code><0-65535></code> Revision number. |

Default The default of revision number is 0.

Mode MST Configuration

Usage The region name, the revision number, and the digest of the VLAN to MSTI configuration table must be the same on all devices that are intended to be in the same MST region.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)# revision 25
```

Related Commands [region \(MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree mst config](#)
[instance vlan \(MSTP\)](#)

show debugging mstp

Use this command to show the MSTP debugging options set.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show debugging mstp

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec mode

Example To display the MSTP debugging options set, enter the command:

```
awplus# show debugging mstp
```

Output **Figure 19-1: Example output from the show debugging mstp command**

```
MSTP debugging status:
MSTP receiving packet debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug mstp \(RSTP and STP\)](#)

show spanning-tree

Use this command to display detailed spanning tree information on the specified port or on all ports. Use this command for RSTP, MSTP or STP.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | Display information about the following port only. |
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to display information about. A port-list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>) a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) ■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix switch ports, static channel groups, and dynamic (LACP) channel groups in the same list |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Note that any list of interfaces specified must not span any interfaces that are not installed.

A topology change counter has been included for RSTP and MSTP. You can see the topology change counter for RSTP by using the **show spanning-tree** command. You can see the topology change counter for MSTP by using the **show spanning-tree mst instance** command.

Example To display spanning tree information about `port1.0.3`, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree interface port1.0.3
```

Output Figure 19-2: Example output from the show spanning-tree command

```
% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: Root Path Cost 0 - Root Port 0 - Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20
% 1: Root Id 80000000cd20f093
% 1: Bridge Id 80000000cd20f093
% 1: last topology change Sun Nov 20 12:24:24 1977
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
% port1.0.3: Port 5023 - Id 839f - Role Designated - State Forwarding
% port1.0.3: Designated Path Cost 0
% port1.0.3: Configured Path Cost 200000 - Add type Explicit ref count 1
% port1.0.3: Designated Port Id 839f - Priority 128 -
% port1.0.3: Root 80000000cd20f093
% port1.0.3: Designated Bridge 80000000cd20f093
% port1.0.3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
% port1.0.3: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.3: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 1 - topo change
timer 0
% port1.0.3: forward-transitions 32
% port1.0.3: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send RSTP
% port1.0.3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
% port1.0.3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
% port1.0.3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
% port1.0.3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
% port1.0.3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current point-to-point
.
.
```

Figure 19-3: Example output from the show spanning-tree command in RSTP mode

```

awplus#show spanning-tree
% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: Root Path Cost 0 - Root Port 0 - Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20
% 1: Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: Bridge Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: last topology change Thu Jul 26 02:06:26 2007
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
% port1.0.1: Port 5001 - Id 8389 - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.1: Designated Path Cost 0
% port1.0.1: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 1
% port1.0.1: Designated Port Id 8389 - Priority 128 -
% port1.0.1: Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.1: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.1: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
% port1.0.1: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.1: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change
timer 0
% port1.0.1: forward-transitions 0
% port1.0.1: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
% port1.0.1: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
% port1.0.1: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
% port1.0.1: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
% port1.0.1: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
% port1.0.1: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared
%
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated Path Cost 0
% port1.0.2: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 1
% port1.0.2: Designated Port Id 838a - Priority 128 -
% port1.0.2: Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
% port1.0.2: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo change
timer 0
% port1.0.2: forward-transitions 0
% port1.0.2: Version Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
% port1.0.2: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
% port1.0.2: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
% port1.0.2: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared
%

```

show spanning-tree brief

Use this command to display a summary of spanning tree status information on all ports. Use this command for RSTP, MSTP or STP.

Syntax `show spanning-tree brief`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| brief | A brief summary of spanning tree information. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Note that any list of interfaces specified must not span any interfaces that are not installed.

A topology change counter has been included for RSTP and MSTP. You can see the topology change counter for RSTP by using the **show spanning-tree** command. You can see the topology change counter for MSTP by using the **show spanning-tree mst instance** command.

Example To display a summary of spanning tree status information, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree brief
```

Output **Figure 19-4: Example output from the show spanning-tree brief command**

```
Default: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
Default: Root Path Cost 40000 - Root Port 4501 - Bridge Priority 32768
Default: Root Id 8000:0000cd250001
Default: Bridge Id 8000:0000cd296eb1

Port          Designated Bridge   Port Id   Role          State
sa1           8000:001577c9744b  8195     Rootport     Forwarding
po1           8000:0000cd296eb1  81f9     Designated   Forwarding
port1.0.1    8000:0000cd296eb1  8389     Disabled     Discarding
port1.0.2    8000:0000cd296eb1  838a     Disabled     Discarding
port1.0.3    8000:0000cd296eb1  838b     Disabled     Discarding
port1.0.4    8000:0000cd296eb1  838c     Disabled     Discarding
port1.0.5    8000:0000cd296eb1  838d     Disabled     Discarding
port1.0.6    8000:0000cd296eb1  838e     Disabled     Discarding
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree](#)

show spanning-tree mst

This command displays bridge-level information about the CIST and VLAN to MSTI mappings.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show spanning-tree mst

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Example To display bridge-level information about the CIST and VLAN to MSTI mappings, enter the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst
```

Output **Figure 19-5: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst command**

```
% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: CIST Root Path Cost 0 - CIST Root Port 0 - CIST Bridge
Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20 - Max-hops 20
% 1: CIST Root Id 8000000475e93ffe
% 1: CIST Reg Root Id 8000000475e93ffe
% 1: CST Bridge Id 8000000475e93ffe
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
%
% Instance      VLAN
% 0:            1
% 2:            4
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree mst interface](#)

show spanning-tree mst config

Use this command to display MSTP configuration identifier for the device.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show spanning-tree mst config

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Usage The region name, the revision number, and the digest of the VLAN to MSTI configuration table must be the same on all devices that are intended to be in the same MST region.

Example To display MSTP configuration identifier information, enter the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst config
```

Output **Figure 19-6: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst config command**

```
awplus#show spanning-tree mst config
%
% MSTP Configuration Information:
%-----
% Format Id       : 0
% Name           : My Name
% Revision Level  : 0
% Digest         : 0x80DEE46DA92A98CF21C603291B22880A
%-----
%
```

Related Commands [instance vlan \(MSTP\)](#)
[region \(MSTP\)](#)
[revision \(MSTP\)](#)

show spanning-tree mst detail

This command displays detailed information about each instance, and all interfaces associated with that particular instance.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst detail`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Example To display detailed information about each instance, and all interfaces associated with them, enter the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst detail
```

Output Figure 19-7: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst detail command

```

% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: CIST Root Path Cost 0 - CIST Root Port 0 - CIST Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20 - Max-hops 20
% 1: CIST Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Reg Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Bridge Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
%   port1.0.1: Port 5001 - Id 8389 - Role Disabled - State Discarding
%   port1.0.1: Designated External Path Cost 0 -Internal Path Cost 0
%   port1.0.1: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 1
%   port1.0.1: Designated Port Id 8389 - CIST Priority 128 -
%   port1.0.1: CIST Root 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.1: Regional Root 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.1: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.1: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
%   port1.0.1: CIST Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
%   port1.0.1: CIST Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo
change timer 0
.
.
%   port1.0.2: forward-transitions 0
%   port1.0.2: Version Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
%   port1.0.2: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
%   port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
%   port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
%   port1.0.2: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
%   port1.0.2: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared
%
%   port1.0.3: Port 5003 - Id 838b - Role Disabled - State Discarding
%   port1.0.3: Designated External Path Cost 0 -Internal Path Cost 0
%   port1.0.3: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 1
%   port1.0.3: Designated Port Id 838b - CIST Priority 128 -
%   port1.0.3: CIST Root 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.3: Regional Root 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.3: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.3: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
%   port1.0.3: CIST Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
%   port1.0.3: CIST Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo
change timer 0
%   port1.0.3: forward-transitions 0
%   port1.0.3: Version Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
%   port1.0.3: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
%   port1.0.3: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
%   port1.0.3: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
%   port1.0.3: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
%   port1.0.3: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared

```

show spanning-tree mst detail interface

This command prints detailed information about the specified switch port, and the MST instances associated with it.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst detail interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Example To display detailed information about `port1.0.3` and the instances associated with it, enter the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst detail interface port1.0.3
```

Output Figure 19-8: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst detail interface command

```
% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: CIST Root Path Cost 0 - CIST Root Port 0 - CIST Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20 - Max-hops 20
% 1: CIST Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Reg Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Bridge Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated External Path Cost 0 -Internal Path Cost 0
% port1.0.2: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 2
% port1.0.2: Designated Port Id 838a - CIST Priority 128 -
% port1.0.2: CIST Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Regional Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
% port1.0.2: CIST Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: CIST Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo
change timer 0
% port1.0.2: forward-transitions 0
% port1.0.2: Version Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
% port1.0.2: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
% port1.0.2: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
% port1.0.2: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared
%
% Instance 2: Vlans: 2
% 1: MSTI Root Path Cost 0 -MSTI Root Port 0 - MSTI Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: MSTI Root Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% 1: MSTI Bridge Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated Internal Path Cost 0 - Designated Port Id 838a
% port1.0.2: Configured Internal Path Cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: Configured CST External Path cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: CST Priority 128 - MSTI Priority 128
% port1.0.2: Designated Root 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 0
% port1.0.2: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0
```

show spanning-tree mst instance

This command displays detailed information for the specified instance, and all switch ports associated with that instance.

A topology change counter has been included for RSTP and MSTP. You can see the topology change counter for RSTP by using the [show spanning-tree](#) command. You can see the topology change counter for MSTP by using the [show spanning-tree mst instance](#) command.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst instance <instance>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><instance></code> | Specify an MSTP instance in the range <1-15>. |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec, and Interface Configuration

Usage To display detailed information for **instance 2**, and all switch ports associated with that instance, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst instance 2
```

Output [Figure 19-9: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst instance command](#)

```
% 1: MSTI Root Path Cost 0 - MSTI Root Port 0 - MSTI Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: MSTI Root Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% 1: MSTI Bridge Id 80020000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
%   port1.0.2: Designated Internal Path Cost 0 - Designated Port Id 838a
%   port1.0.2: Configured Internal Path Cost 20000000
%   port1.0.2: Configured CST External Path cost 20000000
%   port1.0.2: CST Priority 128 - MSTI Priority 128
%   port1.0.2: Designated Root 80020000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80020000cd24ff2d
%   port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 0
%   port1.0.2: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
%   port1.0.2: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0
%
```

show spanning-tree mst instance interface

This command displays detailed information for the specified MST (Multiple Spanning Tree) instance, and the specified switch port associated with that MST instance.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst instance <instance> interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <instance> | Specify an MSTP instance in the range <1-15>. |
| <port> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa2), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2). |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec, and Interface Configuration

Example To display detailed information for instance 2, interface port1.0.2, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst instance 2 interface port1.0.2
```

Output **Figure 19-10: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst instance command**

```
% 1: MSTI Root Path Cost 0 - MSTI Root Port 0 - MSTI Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: MSTI Root Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% 1: MSTI Bridge Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated Internal Path Cost 0 - Designated Port Id 838a
% port1.0.2: Configured Internal Path Cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: Configured CST External Path cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: CST Priority 128 - MSTI Priority 128
% port1.0.2: Designated Root 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 0
% port1.0.2: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0
%
```

show spanning-tree mst interface

This command displays the number of instances created, and VLANs associated with it for the specified switch port.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec, and Interface Configuration

Example To display detailed information about each instance, and all interfaces associated with them, for `port1.0.4`, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst interface port1.0.4
```

Output **Figure 19-11: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst interface command**

```
% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: CIST Root Path Cost 0 - CIST Root Port 0 - CIST Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20 - Max-hops 20
% 1: CIST Root Id 80000008c73a2b22
% 1: CIST Reg Root Id 80000008c73a2b22
% 1: CST Bridge Id 80000008c73a2b22
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 1 sec
%
% Instance      VLAN
% 0:            1
% 1:            2-3
% 2:            4-5
```

show spanning-tree mst detail interface

This command displays detailed information about the specified switch port, and the MST instances associated with it.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree mst detail interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Interface Configuration

Example To display detailed information about `port1.0.3` and the instances associated with it, enter the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree mst detail interface port1.0.3
```

Output **Figure 19-12: Example output from the show spanning-tree mst detail interface command**

```

% 1: Bridge up - Spanning Tree Enabled
% 1: CIST Root Path Cost 0 - CIST Root Port 0 - CIST Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: Forward Delay 15 - Hello Time 2 - Max Age 20 - Max-hops 20
% 1: CIST Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Reg Root Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: CIST Bridge Id 80000000cd24ff2d
% 1: portfast bpdu-filter disabled
% 1: portfast bpdu-guard disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout disabled
% 1: portfast errdisable timeout interval 300 sec
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated External Path Cost 0 -Internal Path Cost 0
% port1.0.2: Configured Path Cost 20000000 - Add type Explicit ref count 2
% port1.0.2: Designated Port Id 838a - CIST Priority 128 -
% port1.0.2: CIST Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Regional Root 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80000000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 20
% port1.0.2: CIST Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: CIST Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0 - topo
change timer 0
% port1.0.2: forward-transitions 0
% port1.0.2: Version Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol - Received None - Send STP
% port1.0.2: No portfast configured - Current portfast off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-guard default - Current portfast bpdu-guard off
% port1.0.2: portfast bpdu-filter default - Current portfast bpdu-filter off
% port1.0.2: no root guard configured - Current root guard off
% port1.0.2: Configured Link Type point-to-point - Current shared
%
% Instance 2: Vlans: 2
% 1: MSTI Root Path Cost 0 -MSTI Root Port 0 - MSTI Bridge Priority 32768
% 1: MSTI Root Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% 1: MSTI Bridge Id 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Port 5002 - Id 838a - Role Disabled - State Discarding
% port1.0.2: Designated Internal Path Cost 0 - Designated Port Id 838a
% port1.0.2: Configured Internal Path Cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: Configured CST External Path cost 20000000
% port1.0.2: CST Priority 128 - MSTI Priority 128
% port1.0.2: Designated Root 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Designated Bridge 80020000cd24ff2d
% port1.0.2: Message Age 0 - Max Age 0
% port1.0.2: Hello Time 2 - Forward Delay 15
% port1.0.2: Forward Timer 0 - Msg Age Timer 0 - Hello Timer 0

```

show spanning-tree statistics

This command displays BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) statistics for all spanning-tree instances, and all switch ports associated with all spanning-tree instances. For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show spanning-tree statistics

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage To display BPDU statistics for all spanning-tree instances, and all switch ports associated with all spanning-tree instances, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree statistics
```

Output **Figure 19-13: Example output from the show spanning-tree statistics command**

```
Port number = 915 Interface = port1.0.6
=====
% BPDU Related Parameters
% -----
% Port Spanning Tree                : Disable
% Spanning Tree Type                : Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
% Current Port State                : Discarding
% Port ID                           : 8393
% Port Number                       : 393
% Path Cost                         : 20000000
% Message Age                       : 0
% Designated Root                   : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Designated Cost                   : 0
% Designated Bridge                 : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Designated Port Id               : 8393
% Top Change Ack                   : FALSE
% Config Pending                   : FALSE
% PORT Based Information & Statistics
% -----
% Config Bpdu's xmitted             : 0
% Config Bpdu's received           : 0
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted               : 0
% TCN Bpdu's received             : 0
% Forward Trans Count              : 0
% STATUS of Port Timers
% -----
% Hello Time Configured            : 2
% Hello timer                      : INACTIVE
% Hello Time Value                 : 0
% Forward Delay Timer              : INACTIVE
% Forward Delay Timer Value       : 0
% Message Age Timer                : INACTIVE
% Message Age Timer Value         : 0
% Topology Change Timer           : INACTIVE
% Topology Change Timer Value     : 0
% Hold Timer                      : INACTIVE
% Hold Timer Value                 : 0
% Other Port-Specific Info
% -----
% Max Age Transitions              : 1
% Msg Age Expiry                  : 0
% Similar BPDUS Rcvd              : 0
% Src Mac Count                   : 0
% Total Src Mac Rcvd              : 0
% Next State                      : Learning
% Topology Change Time            : 0
```

show spanning-tree statistics instance

This command displays BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) statistics for the specified MST (Multiple Spanning Tree) instance, and all switch ports associated with that MST instance. For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show spanning-tree statistics instance *<instance>*

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i><instance></i> | Specify an MSTP instance in the range <1-15>. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage To display BPDU statistics information for MST instance 2, and all switch ports associated with that MST instance, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree statistics instance 2
```

Output **Figure 19-14: Example output from the show spanning-tree statistics instance command:**

```
% % INST_PORT port1.0.3 Information & Statistics
%
% Config Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)      : (0/0)
% Config Bpdu's received (port/inst)    : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)        : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's received (port/inst)       : (0/0)
% Message Age(port/Inst)                 : (0/0)
% port1.0.3: Forward Transitions          : 0
% Next State                             : Learning
% Topology Change Time                   : 0
% INST_PORT port1.0.4 Information & Statistics
%
% Config Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)      : (0/0)
% Config Bpdu's received (port/inst)    : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)        : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's received (port/inst)       : (0/0)
% Message Age(port/Inst)                 : (0/0)
% port1.0.4: Forward Transitions          : 0
% Next State                             : Learning
% Topology Change Time                   : 0
% INST_PORT port1.0.5 Information & Statistics
%
% Config Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)      : (0/0)
% Config Bpdu's received (port/inst)    : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)        : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's received (port/inst)       : (0/0)
% Message Age(port/Inst)                 : (0/0)
% port1.0.5: Forward Transitions          : 0
% Next State                             : Learning
% Topology Change Time                   : 0%
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree statistics](#)

show spanning-tree statistics instance interface

This command displays BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) statistics for the specified MST (Multiple Spanning Tree) instance and the specified switch port associated with that MST instance.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show spanning-tree statistics instance *<instance>* interface *<port>*

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i><instance></i> | Specify an MSTP instance in the range <1-15>. |
| <i><port></i> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa2), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2). |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display BPDU statistics for MST instance 2, interface port1.0.2, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree statistics instance 2 interface
port1.0.2
```

Output **Figure 19-15: Example output from the show spanning-tree statistics instance interface command**

```
awplus#sh spanning-tree statistics interface port1.0.2 instance 1
Spanning Tree Enabled for Instance : 1
=====
% INST_PORT port1.0.2 Information & Statistics
% -----
% Config Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)      : (0/0)
% Config Bpdu's received (port/inst)     : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted (port/inst)        : (0/0)
% TCN Bpdu's received (port/inst)       : (0/0)
% Message Age(port/Inst)                 : (0/0)
% port1.0.2: Forward Transitions          : 0
% Next State                             : Learning
% Topology Change Time                   : 0

% Other Inst/Vlan Information & Statistics
% -----
% Bridge Priority                         : 0
% Bridge Mac Address                     : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Topology Change Initiator               : 5023
% Last Topology Change Occured            : Mon Aug 22 05:42:06 2011
% Topology Change                         : FALSE
% Topology Change Detected                : FALSE
% Topology Change Count                   : 1
% Topology Change Last Recvd from        : 00:00:00:00:00:00
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree statistics](#)

show spanning-tree statistics interface

This command displays BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) statistics for the specified switch port, and all MST instances associated with that switch port.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show spanning-tree statistics interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><port></code> | The port to display information about. The port may be a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.4</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>). |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display BPDU statistics about each MST instance for `port1.0.4`, use the command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree statistics interface port1.0.4
```

Output **Figure 19-16: Example output from the show spanning-tree statistics interface command**

```

awplus#show spanning-tree statistics interface port1.0.2

          Port number = 906 Interface = port1.0.2
          =====
% BPDU Related Parameters
% -----
% Port Spanning Tree           : Disable
% Spanning Tree Type          : Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
% Current Port State           : Discarding
% Port ID                      : 838a
% Port Number                  : 38a
% Path Cost                    : 20000000
% Message Age                  : 0
% Designated Root              : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Designated Cost              : 0
% Designated Bridge            : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Designated Port Id           : 838a
% Top Change Ack               : FALSE
% Config Pending               : FALSE

% PORT Based Information & Statistics
% -----
% Config Bpdu's xmitted        : 0
% Config Bpdu's received       : 0
% TCN Bpdu's xmitted           : 0
% TCN Bpdu's received          : 0
% Forward Trans Count          : 0

% STATUS of Port Timers
% -----
% Hello Time Configured        : 2
% Hello timer                   : INACTIVE
% Hello Time Value              : 0
% Forward Delay Timer           : INACTIVE
% Forward Delay Timer Value     : 0
% Message Age Timer             : INACTIVE
% Message Age Timer Value       : 0
% Topology Change Timer         : INACTIVE
% Topology Change Timer Value   : 0
% Hold Timer                    : INACTIVE
% Hold Timer Value              : 0

% Other Port-Specific Info
% -----
% Max Age Transitions           : 1
% Msg Age Expiry                : 0
% Similar BPDUS Rcvd           : 0
% Src Mac Count                 : 0
% Total Src Mac Rcvd            : 0
% Next State                     : Learning
% Topology Change Time          : 0

% Other Bridge information & Statistics
% -----
% STP Multicast Address         : 01:80:c2:00:00:00
% Bridge Priority                : 32768
% Bridge Mac Address            : ec:cd:6d:20:c0:ed
% Bridge Hello Time              : 2
% Bridge Forward Delay           : 15
% Topology Change Initiator      : 5023
% Last Topology Change Occured   : Mon Aug 22 05:41:20 2011
% Topology Change                : FALSE
% Topology Change Detected       : TRUE
% Topology Change Count          : 1
% Topology Change Last Recvd from : 00:00:00:00:00:00

```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree statistics](#)

show spanning-tree vlan range-index

Use this command to display information about MST (Multiple Spanning Tree) instances and the VLANs associated with them including the VLAN range-index value for the switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show spanning-tree vlan range-index`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display information about MST instances and the VLANs associated with them for the switch, including the VLAN range-index value, use the following command:

```
awplus# show spanning-tree vlan range-index
```

Output **Figure 19-17: Example output from the show spanning-tree vlan range-index command**

```
awplus#show spanning-tree vlan range-index
% MST Instance  VLAN      RangeIdx
%           1         1         1
%
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree statistics](#)

spanning-tree autoedge (RSTP and MSTP)

Use this command to enable the autoedge feature on the port.

The autoedge feature allows the port to automatically detect that it is an edge port. If it does not receive any BPDUs in the first three seconds after linkup, enabling, or entering RSTP or MSTP mode, it sets itself to be an edgeport and enters the forwarding state.

Use this command for RSTP or MSTP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this feature.

Syntax spanning-tree autoedge
no spanning-tree autoedge

Default Disabled

Mode Interface Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree autoedge
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree edgeport \(RSTP and MSTP\)](#)

spanning-tree bpdud

Use this command in Global Configuration mode to configure BPDUD (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) discarding or forwarding, with STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) disabled on the switch.

See the **Usage** note about disabling Spanning Tree before using this command, and using this command to forward unsupported BPDUs unchanged for unsupported STP Protocols.

There is not a **no** variant for this command. Instead, apply the `discard` parameter to reset it back to the default then re-enable STP with **spanning-tree enable** command.

Syntax `spanning-tree bpdud {discard|forward|forward-untagged-vlan|forward-vlan}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>bpdud</code> | A port that has BPDUD filtering enabled will not transmit any BPDUs and will ignore any BPDUs received. This port type has one of the following parameters (in Global Configuration mode): |
| <code>discard</code> | Discards all ingress STP BPDUD frames. |
| <code>forward</code> | Forwards any ingress STP BPDUD packets to all ports, regardless of any VLAN membership. |
| <code>forward-untagged-vlan</code> | Forwards any ingress STP BPDUD frames to all ports that are untagged members of the ingress port's native VLAN. |
| <code>forward-vlan</code> | Forwards any ingress STP BPDUD frames to all ports that are tagged members of the ingress port's native VLAN. |

Default The `discard` parameter is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You must first disable Spanning Tree with the **no spanning-tree {mstp|rstp|stp} enable** command before you can use this command to then configure BPDUD discarding or forwarding.

This command enables the switch to forward unsupported BPDUs with an unsupported Spanning Tree Protocol, such as proprietary STP protocols with unsupported BPDUs, by forwarding BPDUD (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) frames unchanged through the switch.

When you want to revert to default behavior on the switch, issue a **spanning-tree bpdud discard** command and re-enable Spanning Tree with a **spanning-tree enable** command.

Examples To enable STP BPDUD discard in Global Configuration mode with STP disabled, which discards all ingress STP BPDUD frames, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree stp enable
awplus(config)# spanning-tree bpdud discard
```

To enable STP BPDUD forward in Global Configuration mode with STP disabled, which

forwards any ingress STP BPDU frames to all ports regardless of any VLAN membership, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree stp enable
awplus(config)# spanning-tree bpdu forward
```

To enable STP BPDU forwarding for untagged frames in Global Configuration mode with STP disabled, which forwards any ingress STP BPDU frames to all ports that are untagged members of the ingress port's native VLAN, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree stp enable
awplus(config)# spanning-tree bpdu forward-untagged-vlan
```

To enable STP BPDU forwarding for tagged frames in Global Configuration mode with STP disabled, which forwards any ingress STP BPDU frames to all ports that are tagged members of the ingress port's native VLAN, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree stp enable
awplus(config)# spanning-tree bpdu forward-vlan
```

To reset STP BPDU back to the default `discard` parameter and re-enable STP on the switch, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree bpdu discard
awplus(config)# spanning-tree stp enable
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree enable](#)

spanning-tree cisco-interoperability (MSTP)

Use this command to enable/disable Cisco-interoperability for MSTP.

Use this command for MSTP only.

Syntax `spanning-tree cisco-interoperability {enable|disable}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| enable | Enable Cisco interoperability for MSTP. |
| disable | Disable Cisco interoperability for MSTP. |

Default If this command is not used, Cisco interoperability is disabled.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage For compatibility with certain Cisco devices, all devices in the switched LAN running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System must have Cisco-interoperability enabled. When the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System is interoperating with Cisco, the only criteria used to classify a region are the region name and revision level. VLAN to instance mapping is not used to classify regions when interoperating with Cisco.

Examples To enable Cisco interoperability on a Layer 2 switch:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree cisco-interoperability enable
```

To disable Cisco interoperability on a Layer 2 switch:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree cisco-interoperability disable
```

spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)

Use this command to set a port as an edge-port.

Use this command for RSTP or MSTP.

This command has the same effect as the **spanning-tree portfast (STP)** command, but the configuration displays differently in the output of some show commands.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set a port to its default state (not an edge-port).

Syntax spanning-tree edgeport
no spanning-tree edgeport

Default Not an edge port.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Use this command on a switch port connected to a LAN that has no other bridges attached. If a BPDU is received on the port that indicates that another bridge is connected to the LAN, then the port is no longer treated as an edge port.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree edgeport
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree autoedge \(RSTP and MSTP\)](#)

spanning-tree enable

Use this command in Global Configuration mode to enable the specified spanning tree protocol for all switch ports. Note that this must be the spanning tree protocol that is configured on the switch by the [spanning-tree mode](#) command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the configured spanning tree protocol. This places all switch ports in the forwarding state.

Syntax `spanning-tree {mstp|rstp|stp} enable`
`no spanning-tree {mstp|rstp|stp} enable`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| mstp | Enables or disables MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol). |
| rstp | Enables or disables RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol). |
| stp | Enables or disables STP (Spanning Tree Protocol). |

Default RSTP is enabled by default for all switch ports.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage With no configuration, spanning tree is enabled, and the spanning tree mode is set to RSTP. To change the mode, see [spanning-tree mode](#) command on page 19.51.

Examples To enable STP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree stp enable
```

To disable STP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree stp enable
```

To enable MSTP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mstp enable
```

To disable MSTP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree mstp enable
```

To enable RSTP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree rstp enable
```

To disable RSTP in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
```

```
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree rstp enable
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree bpdu](#)
 [spanning-tree mode](#)

spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable

Use this command to enable the errdisable-timeout facility, which sets a timeout for ports that are disabled due to the BPDU guard feature.

Use this command for RSTP or MSTP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the errdisable-timeout facility.

Syntax spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable
no spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable

Default By default, the errdisable-timeout is disabled.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The BPDU guard feature shuts down the port on receiving a BPDU on a BPDU-guard enabled port. This command associates a timer with the feature such that the port is re-enabled without manual intervention after a set interval. This interval can be configured by the user using the **spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval** command.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable
```

Related Commands **show spanning-tree**
spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval
spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard

spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval

Use this command to specify the time interval after which a port is brought back up when it has been disabled by the BPDU guard feature.

Use this command for RSTP or MSTP.

Syntax `spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval <10-1000000>`
`no spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><10-1000000></code> | Specify the errdisable-timeout interval in seconds. |

Default By default, the port is re-enabled after 300 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval 34
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable](#)
[spanning-tree portfast bpduguard](#)

spanning-tree force-version

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to force the protocol version for the switch port. Use this command for RSTP or MSTP only.

Syntax `spanning-tree force-version <version>`
`no spanning-tree force-version`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><version></code> | <code><0-3></code> Version identifier. |
| | 0 Forces the port to operate in STP mode. |
| | 1 Not supported. |
| | 2 Forces the port to operate in RSTP mode. If it receives STP BPDUs, it can automatically revert to STP mode. |
| | 3 Forces the port to operate in MSTP mode (this option is only available if MSTP mode is configured). If it receives RSTP or STP BPDUs, it can automatically revert to RSTP or STP mode. |

Default By default, no version is forced for the port. The port is in the spanning tree mode configured for the device, or a lower version if it automatically detects one.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Examples Set the value to enforce the spanning tree protocol (STP):

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree force-version 0
```

Set the default protocol version:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree force-version
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree](#)

spanning-tree forward-time

Use this command to set the forward delay value. Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the forward delay value to the default setting of 15 seconds.

The **forward delay** sets the time (in seconds) to control how fast a port changes its spanning tree state when moving towards the forwarding state. If the mode is set to STP, the value determines how long the port stays in each of the listening and learning states which precede the forwarding state. If the mode is set to RSTP or MSTP, this value determines the maximum time taken to transition from discarding to learning and from learning to forwarding.

This value is used only when the switch is acting as the root bridge. Switches not acting as the Root Bridge use a dynamic value for the **forward delay** set by the root bridge. The **forward delay**, **max-age**, and **hello time** parameters are interrelated.

Syntax `spanning-tree forward-time <forward-delay>`
`no spanning-tree forward-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><forward-delay></code> | <code><4-30></code> The forwarding time delay in seconds. |

Default The default is 15 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The allowable range for forward-time is 4-30 seconds.

The **forward delay**, **max-age**, and **hello time** parameters should be set according to the following formula, as specified in IEEE Standard 802.1d:

$$2 \times (\text{forward delay} - 1.0 \text{ seconds}) \geq \text{max-age}$$

$$\text{max-age} \geq 2 \times (\text{hello time} + 1.0 \text{ seconds})$$

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree forward-time 6
```

Related Commands `show spanning-tree`
`spanning-tree forward-time <forward-delay>`
`spanning-tree hello-time <hello-time>`
`spanning-tree mode`

spanning-tree guard root

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port only to enable the Root Guard feature for the switch port. The root guard feature disables reception of superior BPDUs. You can use this command for RSTP, STP or MSTP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the root guard feature for the port.

Syntax `spanning-tree guard root`
`no spanning-tree guard root`

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage The Root Guard feature makes sure that the port on which it is enabled is a designated port. If the Root Guard enabled port receives a superior BPDU, it goes to a Listening state (for STP) or discarding state (for RSTP and MSTP).

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root
```

spanning-tree hello-time

Use this command to set the hello-time. This sets the time in seconds between the transmission of switch spanning tree configuration information when the switch is the Root Bridge of the spanning tree or is trying to become the Root Bridge.

Use this command for RSTP, STP or MSTP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default of the hello time.

Syntax `spanning-tree hello-time <hello-time>`
`no spanning-tree hello-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><hello-time></code> | <code><1-10></code> The hello BPDU interval in seconds. |

Default Default is 2 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration for switch ports.

Usage The allowable range of values is 1-10 seconds.

The **forward delay**, **max-age**, and **hello time** parameters should be set according to the following formula, as specified in IEEE Standard 802.1d:

$2 \times (\text{forward delay} - 1.0 \text{ seconds}) \geq \text{max-age}$

$\text{max-age} \geq 2 \times (\text{hello time} + 1.0 \text{ seconds})$

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree hello-time 3
```

Related Commands `spanning-tree forward-time <forward-delay>`
`spanning-tree max-age <max-age>`
`show spanning-tree`

spanning-tree link-type

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to enable or disable point-to-point or shared link types on the switch port.

Use this command for RSTP or MSTP only.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return the port to the default link type.

Syntax `spanning-tree link-type {point-to-point|shared}`
`no spanning-tree link-type`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>shared</code> | Disable rapid transition. |
| <code>point-to-point</code> | Enable rapid transition. |

Default The default link type is point-to-point.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage You may want to set link type to shared if the port is connected to a hub with multiple switches connected to it.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree link-type point-to-point
```

spanning-tree max-age

Use this command to set the max-age. This sets the maximum age, in seconds, that dynamic spanning tree configuration information is stored in the switch before it is discarded.

Use this command for RSTP, STP or MSTP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default of max-age.

Syntax `spanning-tree max-age <max-age>`
`no spanning-tree max-age`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><max-age></code> | <code><6-40></code> The maximum time, in seconds. |

Default The default of spanning-tree max-age is 20 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Max-age is the maximum time in seconds for which a message is considered valid.

Configure this value sufficiently high, so that a frame generated by the root bridge can be propagated to the leaf nodes without exceeding the max-age.

The **forward delay**, **max-age**, and **hello time** parameters should be set according to the following formula, as specified in IEEE Standard 802.1d:

$2 \times (\text{forward delay} - 1.0 \text{ seconds}) \geq \text{max-age}$

$\text{max-age} \geq 2 \times (\text{hello time} + 1.0 \text{ seconds})$

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree max-age 12
```

Related Commands [show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree forward-time <forward-delay>](#)
[spanning-tree hello-time <hello-time>](#)

spanning-tree max-hops (MSTP)

Use this command to specify the maximum allowed hops for a BPDU in an MST region. This parameter is used by all the instances of the MST region.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default.

Use this command for MSTP only.

Syntax `spanning-tree max-hops <hop-count>`
`no spanning-tree max-hops <hop-count>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><hop-count></code> | Specify the maximum hops the BPDU will be valid for in the range <1-40>. |

Default The default max-hops in a MST region is 20.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Specifying the max hops for a BPDU prevents the messages from looping indefinitely in the network. The hop count is decremented by each receiving port. When a switch receives an MST BPDU that has a hop count of zero, it discards the BPDU.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree max-hops 25

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no spanning-tree max-hops
```

spanning-tree mode

Use this command to change the spanning tree protocol mode on the switch. The spanning tree protocol mode on the switch can be configured to either STP, RSTP or MSTP.

Syntax `spanning-tree mode {stp|rstp|mstp}`

Default The default spanning tree protocol mode on the switch is RSTP.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage With no configuration, the switch will have spanning tree enabled, and the spanning tree mode will be set to RSTP. Use this command to change the spanning tree protocol mode on the device. MSTP is VLAN aware, but RSTP and STP are not VLAN aware. To enable or disable spanning tree operation, see the [spanning-tree enable command on page 19.40](#).

Examples To change the spanning tree mode from the default of RSTP to MSTP, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mode mstp
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree enable](#)

spanning-tree mst configuration

Use this command to enter the MST Configuration mode to configure the Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol.

Syntax spanning-tree mst configuration

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following example uses this command to enter MST Configuration mode. Note the change in the command prompt.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
awplus(config-mst)#
```

spanning-tree mst instance

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode to assign a Multiple Spanning Tree instance (MSTI) to a switch port or channel group.

Note that ports are automatically configured to send and receive spanning-tree information for the associated MSTI when VLANs are assigned to MSTIs using the **instance vlan (MSTP)** command.

Use the **no** variant of this command in Interface Configuration mode to remove the MSTI from the specified switch port or channel group.

Syntax `spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id>`
`no spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><instance-id></code> | <1-15> Specify the MST instance ID. The MST instance must have already been created using the instance vlan (MSTP) command. |

Default A port automatically becomes a member of an MSTI when it is assigned to a VLAN.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port or channel group.

Usage You can disable automatic configuration of member ports of a VLAN to an associated MSTI by using a **no spanning-tree mst instance** command to remove the member port from the MSTI. Use the **spanning-tree mst instance** command to add a VLAN member port back to the MSTI.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 3

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst instance 3
```

Related Commands **instance vlan (MSTP)**
spanning-tree mst instance path-cost
spanning-tree mst instance priority
spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role
spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn

spanning-tree mst instance path-cost

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set the cost of a path associated with a switch port, for the specified MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) identifier.

This specifies the switch port's contribution to the cost of a path to the MSTI regional root via that port. This applies when the port is the root port for the MSTI.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default cost value of the path.

Syntax `spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> path-cost <path-cost>`
`no spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> path-cost`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><instance-id></code> | Specify the MSTI identifier in the range <1-15>. |
| <code><path-cost></code> | Specify the cost of path in the range of <1-200000000>, where a lower path-cost indicates a greater likelihood of the specific interface becoming a root. |

Default The default path cost values and the range of recommended path cost values depend on the port speed, as shown in the following table from the IEEE 802.1q-2003 standard.

| Port speed | Default path cost | Recommended path cost range |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Less than 100 Kb/s | 200,000,000 | 20,000,000-200,000,000 |
| 1Mbps | 20,000,000 | 2,000,000-20,000,000 |
| 10Mbps | 2,000,000 | 200,000-2,000,000 |
| 100 Mbps | 200,000 | 20,000-200,000 |
| 1 Gbps | 20,000 | 2,000-20,000 |
| 10 Gbps | 2,000 | 200-2,000 |
| 100 Gbps | 200 | 20-200 |
| 1Tbps | 20 | 2-200 |
| 10 Tbps | 2 | 2-20 |

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage Before you can use this command to set a path-cost in a VLAN configuration, you must explicitly add an MST instance to a port using the `spanning-tree instance` command.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 3 path-cost 1000
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst instance 3 path-cost
```

Related Commands

- instance vlan (MSTP)**
- spanning-tree mst instance**
- spanning-tree mst instance priority**
- spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role**
- spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn**

spanning-tree mst instance priority

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set the port priority for an MST instance (MSTI).

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default priority value (128).

Syntax `spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> priority <priority>`
`no spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> [priority]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><instance-id></code> | Specify the MSTI identifier in the range <1-15>. |
| <code><priority></code> | This must be a multiple of 16 and within the range <0-240>. A lower priority indicates greater likelihood of the port becoming the root port. |

Default The default is 128.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface.

Usage This command sets the value of the priority field contained in the port identifier. The MST algorithm uses the port priority when determining the root port for the switch in the MSTI. The port with the lowest value is considered to have the highest priority and will be chosen as root port over a port - equivalent in all other aspects - but with a higher priority value.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 3 priority 112

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst instance 3 priority
```

Related Commands [instance vlan \(MSTP\)](#)
[spanning-tree priority \(port priority\)](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance path-cost](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn](#)

spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to enable the restricted role for an MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) on a switch port. Configuring the restricted role for an MSTI on a switch port prevents the switch port from becoming the root port in a spanning tree topology.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the restricted role for an MSTI on a switch port. Removing the restricted role for an MSTI on a switch port allows the switch port to become the root port in a spanning tree topology.

Syntax `spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> restricted-role`
`no spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> restricted-role`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><instance-id></code> | <1-15> Specify the MST instance ID. The MST instance must have already been created using the instance vlan (MSTP) command. |

Default The restricted role for an MSTI instance on a switch port is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage The root port is the port providing the best path from the bridge to the root bridge. Use this command to disable a port from becoming a root port. Use the **no** variant of this command to enable a port to become a root port. See **Spanning Tree Operation** for root port information.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 3
                    restricted-role

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst instance 3
                    restricted-role
```

Related Commands **instance vlan (MSTP)**
spanning-tree priority (port priority)
spanning-tree mst instance
spanning-tree mst instance path-cost
spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn

spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set the restricted TCN (Topology Change Notification) value to TRUE for the specified MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance).

Use the **no** variant of this command in Interface Configuration mode to reset the restricted TCN for the specified MSTI to the default value of FALSE.

Syntax `spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> restricted-tcn`
`no spanning-tree mst instance <instance-id> restricted-tcn`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><instance-id></code> | <1-15> Specify the MST instance ID. The MST instance must have already been created using the instance vlan (MSTP) command. |

Default The default value for restricted TCNs is FALSE, as reset with the **no** variant of this command.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage A Topology Change Notification (TCN) is a simple Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) that a bridge sends out to its root port to signal a topology change. You can configure restricted TCN between TRUE and FALSE values with this command and the **no** variant of this command.

If you configure restricted TCN to TRUE with this command then this stops the switch port from propagating received topology change notifications and topology changes to other switch ports.

If you configure restricted TCN to FALSE with the **no** variant of this command then this enables the switch port to propagate received topology change notifications and topology changes to other switch ports.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 3 restricted-tcn

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst instance 3
restricted-tcn
```

Related Commands [instance vlan \(MSTP\)](#)
[spanning-tree priority \(port priority\)](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance path-cost](#)
[spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role](#)

spanning-tree path-cost

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set the cost of a path for the specified port. This value then combines with others along the path to the root bridge in order to determine the total cost path value from the particular port, to the root bridge. The lower the numeric value, the higher the priority of the path. This applies when the port is the root port.

Use this command for RSTP, STP or MSTP. When MSTP mode is configured, this will apply to the port's path cost for the CIST.

Syntax `spanning-tree path-cost <pathcost>`
`no spanning-tree path-cost`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><pathcost></code> | <code><1-200000000></code> The cost to be assigned to the port. |

Default The default path cost values and the range of recommended path cost values depend on the port speed, as shown in the following table from the IEEE 802.1q-2003 and IEEE 802.1d-2004 standards.

| Port speed | Default path cost | Recommended path cost range |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Less than 100 Kb/s | 200,000,000 | 20,000,000-200,000,000 |
| 1Mbps | 20,000,000 | 2,000,000-20,000,000 |
| 10Mbps | 2,000,000 | 200,000-2,000,000 |
| 100 Mbps | 200,000 | 20,000-200,000 |
| 1 Gbps | 20,000 | 2,000-20,000 |
| 10 Gbps | 2,000 | 200-2,000 |
| 100 Gbps | 200 | 20-200 |
| 1Tbps | 20 | 2-200 |
| 10 Tbps | 2 | 2-20 |

Mode Interface Configuration mode for switch port interface only.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree path-cost 123
```

spanning-tree portfast (STP)

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set a port as an edge-port. The portfast feature enables a port to rapidly move to the forwarding state, without having first to pass through the intermediate spanning tree states. This command has the same effect as the **spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)** command, but the configuration displays differently in the output of some show commands.

 **Note** You can run either of two additional parameters with this command. To simplify the syntax these are documented as separate commands. See the following additional portfast commands:

- **spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter** command on page 19.62
- **spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard** command on page 19.64.

You can obtain the same effect by running the **spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)** command. However, the configuration output may display differently in some show commands.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set a port to its default state (not an edge-port).

Syntax `spanning-tree portfast`
`no spanning-tree portfast`

Default Not an edge port.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage Portfast makes a port move from a blocking state to a forwarding state, bypassing both listening and learning states. The portfast feature is meant to be used for ports connected to end-user devices not switches. Enabling portfast on ports that are connected to a workstation or server allows devices to connect to the network without waiting for spanning-tree to converge.

For example, you may need hosts to receive a DHCP address quickly and waiting for STP to converge would cause the DHCP request to time out. Ensure you do not use portfast on any ports connected to another switch to avoid creating a spanning-tree loop on the network.

Use this command on a switch port that connects to a LAN with no other bridges attached. An edge port should never receive BPDUs. Therefore if an edge port receives a BPDU, the portfast feature takes one of three actions.

- Cease to act as an edge port and pass BPDUs as a member of a spanning tree network (**spanning-tree portfast (STP)** command disabled).
- Filter out the BPDUs and pass only the data and continue to act as an edge port (**spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter** command enabled).
- Block the port to all BPDUs and data (**spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard** command enabled).

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree edgeport \(RSTP and MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter](#)
[spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard](#)

spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter

This command sets the bpdu-filter feature and applies a filter to any BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) received. Enabling this feature ensures that configured ports will not transmit any BPDUs and will ignore (filter out) any BPDUs received. BPDU Filter is not enabled on a port by default.

Using the **no** variant of this command to turn off the bpdu-filter, but retain the port's status as an enabled port. If the port then receives a BPDU it will change its role from an **edge-port** to a **non edge-port**.

Syntax (Global Configuration)

```
spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter
no spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter
```

Syntax (Interface Configuration)

```
spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter {default|disable|enable}
no spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| bpdu-filter | A port that has bpdu-filter enabled will not transmit any BPDUs and will ignore any BPDUs received. This port type has one of the following parameters (in Interface Configuration mode): |
| default | Takes the setting that has been configured for the whole switch, i.e. the setting made from the Global configuration mode. |
| disable | Turns off BPDU filter. |
| enable | Turns on BPDU filter. |

Default BPDU Filter is not enabled on any ports by default.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration

Usage This command filters the BPDUs and passes only data to continue to act as an edge port. Using this command in Global Configuration mode applies the portfast bpdu-filter feature to all ports on the switch. Using it in Interface mode applies the feature to a specific port, or range of ports. The command will operate in both RSTP and MSTP networks.

Use the **show spanning-tree** command to display status of the bpdu-filter parameter for the switch ports.

Example To enable STP BPDU filtering in Global Configuration mode, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter
```

To enable STP BPDU filtering in Interface Configuration mode, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter enable
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree edgeport \(RSTP and MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree portfast \(STP\)](#)
[spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard](#)

spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard

This command applies a BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Unit) guard to the port. A port with the bpdu-guard feature enabled will block all traffic (BPDUs and user data), if it starts receiving BPDUs.

Use this command in Global Configuration mode to apply BPDU guard to all ports on the switch. Use this command in Interface mode for an individual interface or a range of interfaces specified. BPDU Guard is not enabled on a port by default.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the BPDU Guard feature on a switch in Global Configuration mode or to disable the BPDU Guard feature on a port in Interface mode.

Syntax (Global Configuration)

```
spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard
no spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard
```

Syntax (Interface Configuration)

```
spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard {default|disable|enable}
no spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| bpdu-guard | A port that has bpdu-guard turned on will enter the STP blocking state if it receives a BPDU. This port type has one of the following parameters (in Interface Configuration mode): |
| default | Takes the setting that has been configured for the whole switch, i.e. the setting made from the Global configuration mode. |
| disable | Turns off BPDU guard. |
| enable | Turns on BPDU guard and will also set the port as an edge port. |

Default BPDU Guard is not enabled on any ports by default.

Mode Global Configuration or Interface Configuration

Usage This command blocks the port(s) to all BPDUs and data when enabled. BPDU Guard is a port-security feature that changes how a portfast-enabled port behaves if it receives a BPDU. When **bpdu-guard** is set, then the port shuts down if it receives a BPDU. It does not process the BPDU as it is considered suspicious. When **bpdu-guard** is not set, then the port will negotiate spanning-tree with the device sending the BPDUs. By default, bpdu-guard is not enabled on a port.

You can configure a port disabled by the bpdu-guard to re-enable itself after a specific time interval. This interval is set with the [spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval command on page 19.43](#). If you do not use the **errdisable-timeout** feature, then you will need to manually re-enable the port by using the **no shutdown** command.

Use the [show spanning-tree command on page 19.14](#) to display the switch and port configurations for the BPDU Guard feature. It shows both the administratively configured and currently running values of bpdu-guard.

Example To enable STP BPDU guard in Global Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard
```

To enable STP BPDU guard in Interface Configuration mode, enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard enable
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree edgeport \(RSTP and MSTP\)](#)
[show spanning-tree](#)
[spanning-tree portfast \(STP\)](#)
[spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter](#)

spanning-tree priority (bridge priority)

Use this command to set the bridge priority for the switch. A lower priority value indicates a greater likelihood of the switch becoming the root bridge.

Use this command for RSTP, STP or MSTP. When MSTP mode is configured, this will apply to the CIST.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset it to the default.

Syntax `spanning-tree priority <priority>`
`no spanning-tree priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><priority></code> | <code><0-61440></code> The bridge priority, which will be rounded to a multiple of 4096. |

Default The default priority is 32678.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage To force a particular switch to become the root bridge use a lower value than other switches in the spanning tree.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree priority 4096
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree mst instance priority](#)
[show spanning-tree](#)

spanning-tree priority (port priority)

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to set the port priority for port. A lower priority value indicates a greater likelihood of the port becoming part of the active topology.

Use this command for RSTP, STP, or MSTP. When the device is in MSTP mode, this will apply to the CIST.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset it to the default.

Syntax `spanning-tree priority <priority>`
`no spanning-tree priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><priority></code> | <code><0-240></code> , in increments of 16. The port priority, which will be rounded down to a multiple of 16. |

Default The default priority is 128.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Usage To force a port to be part of the active topology (for instance, become the root port or a designated port) use a lower value than other ports on the device. (This behavior is subject to network topology, and more significant factors, such as bridge ID.)

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree priority 16
```

Related Commands [spanning-tree mst instance priority](#)
[spanning-tree priority \(bridge priority\)](#)
[show spanning-tree](#)

spanning-tree restricted-role

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to restrict the port from becoming a root port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the restricted role functionality.

Syntax spanning-tree restricted-role
no spanning-tree restricted-role

Default The restricted role is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree restricted-role
```

spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only to prevent TCN (Topology Change Notification) BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) from being sent on a port. If this command is enabled, after a topology change a bridge is prevented from sending a TCN to its designated bridge.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the restricted TCN functionality.

Syntax spanning-tree restricted-tcn
no spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Default The restricted TCN is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration mode for a switch port interface only.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree restricted-tcn
```

spanning-tree transmit-holdcount

Use this command to set the maximum number of BPDU transmissions that are held back.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default transmit hold-count value.

Syntax spanning-tree transmit-holdcount
no spanning-tree transmit-holdcount

Default Transmit hold-count default is 3.

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# spanning-tree transmit-holdcount
```

undebug mstp

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug mstp (RSTP and STP)** command.

Chapter 20: Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction and Overview | 20.2 |
| Static and Dynamic (LACP) Link Aggregation | 20.3 |
| Static Channel Groups..... | 20.3 |
| Dynamic (LACP) Channel Groups..... | 20.3 |
| Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)..... | 20.3 |
| Configuring an LACP Channel Group | 20.5 |
| Minimal LACP Group Configuration | 20.8 |
| Configuring a Static Channel Group | 20.9 |

Introduction and Overview

This chapter contains two sample Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), or dynamic channel group, configurations and a sample static channel group configuration.

Link aggregation is the process where two or more ports in an Ethernet switch are combined together to operate as a single virtual port.

Link aggregation is a key component in resilient network design, since it increases the available bandwidth between network devices and it provides continuity of connectivity if one link is broken between network devices.

By aggregating two or more links together, you can increase the bandwidth between neighboring devices since this is effectively additive, where two links give up to twice the bandwidth of one link. Having more than one link to a neighboring device provides connectivity if one of the links break, where a feature of this resiliency is the speed at which link aggregation reacts to the change of link status in a matter of millisecond.

A link aggregation can only exist between a pair of neighboring switches, where the switch ports that are aggregated on one switch cannot be connected to switch ports that are not aggregated on the other switch. A switch can have multiple link aggregations to different neighbors, even to the same neighbor if the network is loop protected.

To see details about the commands used to configure dynamic (LACP) and static Link aggregation, see [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

For a brief overview of static and dynamic link aggregation (LACP), see [Static and Dynamic \(LACP\) Link Aggregation](#).

Static and Dynamic (LACP) Link Aggregation

Channels, either static or dynamic LACP, increase reliability by distributing the data path over more than one physical link. Channels must be configured on both ends of a link or network loops may result. Ports in a channel group need not be contiguous. A mirror port cannot be a member of either a static or a dynamic channel group.

Aggregation criteria

For individual links to be aggregated into a channel group they must:

- originate on the same device
- terminate on the same device
- be members of the same VLANs ([vlan command on page 17.33](#))
- have the same data rate ([speed command on page 15.47](#))
- share the same admin port key (assigned by using the [channel-group command on page 21.4](#) command)
- be operating in full duplex mode ([duplex command on page 15.10](#))

The hardware must also be capable and have the capacity to handle the number of links to be aggregated.

Static Channel Groups

A static channel group, also known as a static aggregator, enables a number of ports to be manually configured to form a single logical connection of higher bandwidth. By using static channel groups you increase channel reliability by distributing the data path over more than one physical link. Static channel groups are best used in simpler environments, usually where neighbor switches are close together, situated within the same rack, so that you can easily ensure that the correct statically aggregated ports are connected together.

For a static channel group configuration example see the [Configuring a Static Channel Group](#) section in this chapter. For details of static channel group commands, such as the [static-channel-group](#) command, see [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

Dynamic (LACP) Channel Groups

A LACP channel group, also known as an etherchannel, a LACP aggregator, or a dynamic channel group, enables a number of ports to be dynamically combined to form a single higher bandwidth logical connection. LACP channel groups are best used for complex environments, typically long-distance links, to detect failure between neighbor switches.

For LACP configuration examples see [Configuring an LACP Channel Group](#) and [Minimal LACP Group Configuration](#) sections in this chapter. For details of LACP channel group commands, such as the [channel-group](#) command, see [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)

LACP is based on the IEEE Standard 802.3ad. It allows bundling of several physical ports to form a single logical channel providing enhanced performance and resiliency. The aggregated channel is viewed as a single link by each switch. Spanning tree also views the channel as one interface and not as multiple interfaces. When there is a failure in one physical port, the other ports stay up and there is no disruption.

Note  AlliedWare Plus™ supports IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation and uses the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). LACP does not interoperate with devices that use Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP).

Note  Link aggregation does not necessarily achieve exact load balancing across the links. The load sharing algorithm is designed to ensure that any given data flow always goes down the same link. It also aims to spread data flows across the links as evenly as possible.

Link aggregation hashes one or more of the source and destination MAC address, IP address and UDP/TCP ports to select a link on which to send a packet. So packet flow between a pair of hosts always takes the same link inside the Link Aggregation Group (LAG). The net effect is that the bandwidth for a given packet stream is restricted to the speed of one link in the LAG.

For example, for a 2 Gbps LAG that is a combination of two 1 Gbps ports, any one flow of traffic can only ever reach a maximum throughput of 1 Gbps. However, the hashing algorithm should spread the flows across the links so that when many flows are operating, the full 2 Gbps can be utilized.

For information about load balancing see the [platform load-balancing](#) command.

LACP operates where systems are connected over multiple communications links. Once LACP has been initially configured and enabled, it automatically aggregates the ports that have been assigned to a channel group, if possible. LACP continues to monitor these groups and dynamically adds or removes links to them as network changes occur.

LACP achieves this by determining:

- which ports are under LACP control ([channel-group](#) command on page 21.4)
- whether each port is in LACP active or LACP passive mode ([channel-group](#) command on page 21.4)
- which system has the highest LACP priority ([lACP system-priority](#) command on page 21.8)
- the LACP priority of ports ([lACP port-priority](#) command on page 21.7)
- whether the LACP timeout is short or long ([lACP timeout](#) command on page 21.9)

Channel group identification

In order to identify particular channel groups, each group is assigned a link aggregation identifier called a **lag ID**. The lag ID comprises the following components for both the local system (called the Actor) followed by their equivalent components for the remote system (called the Partner):

- system identifier - the MAC address of the system
- port key - An identifier - created by the LACP software
- port priority - set by the [lACP port-priority](#) command on page 21.7
- port number - determined by the device connection

The lag ID can be displayed for each aggregated link by entering the [show etherchannel](#) command on page 21.13.

Configuring an LACP Channel Group

The following example shows how to configure three links between two Allied Telesis managed Layer 3 Switches. The three links are assigned the same administrative key (1), so that they aggregate to form a single channel (1). They are viewed by the STP as one interface.

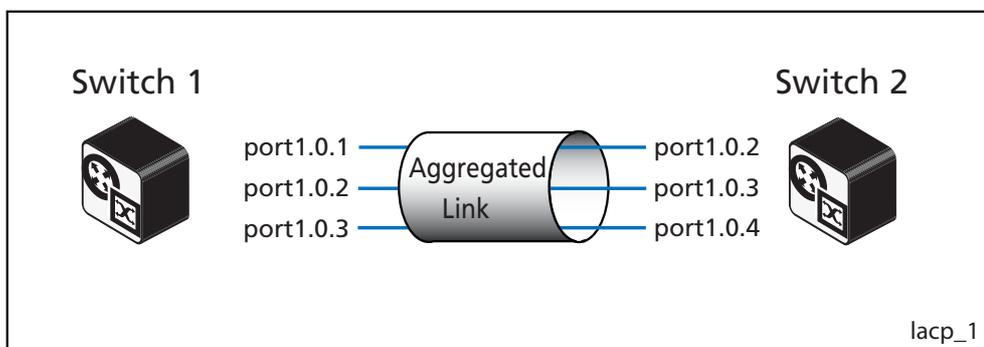


Table 20-1: Switch 1 configuration

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>lACP system-priority 20000</code> | Set the system priority of this switch. This priority is used to determine which switch in the system is responsible for resolving conflicts in the choice of aggregation groups. A lower numerical value has a higher priority. Switch 1 has a higher priority than Switch 2 in this configuration. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.1</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1 . 0 . 1. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>channel-group 1 mode active</code> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and return to the Global Configure mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.2</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1 . 0 . 2. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>channel-group 1 mode active</code> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |

Table 20-1: Switch 1 configuration (cont.)

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>exit</code> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and return to the Global Configure mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> <code>interface port1.0.3</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1.0.3. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>channel-group 1 mode active</code> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>interface po1</code> | Select the dynamic aggregator logical interface created for channel-group 1 named po1. |

Table 20-2: Switch 2 configuration

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus#</code> <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> <code>lacp system-priority 3000</code> | Set the system priority of this switch. This priority is used to determine which switch in the system is responsible for resolving conflicts in the choice of aggregation groups. A lower numerical value has a higher priority. Switch 2 has a lower priority than Switch 1 in this configuration. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> <code>interface port1.0.2</code> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1.0.2. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>channel-group 1 mode active</code> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>exit</code> | Exit the Interface mode and return to the Configure mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> <code>interface port1.0.3</code> | Enter the Interface mode to configure port 1.0.3. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> <code>channel-group 1 mode active</code> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |

Table 20-2: Switch 2 configuration

| | |
|---|---|
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and return to the Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4</pre> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1.0.4. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active</pre> | Add this interface to a channel group 1 and enable link aggregation so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# interface po1</pre> | Select the dynamic aggregator logical interface created for channel-group 1 named po1. |

Commands used

lACP system-priority
channel-group

Validation commands

show lACP sys-id
show port etherchannel
show etherchannel
show etherchannel detail

Minimal LACP Group Configuration

For details of LACP channel group commands, see [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

The following minimal LACP group configuration example creates LACP channel group 2 and enables link aggregation on switch ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.2 within this channel group. Note that all aggregated ports must belong to the same VLAN.

| | |
|---|--|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.2 | Enter the Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports to aggregate into the channel group. |
| awplus(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active | Assign the switch ports to channel group 2 in active mode. This creates the channel group. |
| awplus(config-if)# interface po2 | Select the dynamic aggregator logical interface created for channel-group 2 named po2. |

Commands used

channel-group

Validation commands

show static-channel-group

Configuring a Static Channel Group

For details of LACP channel group commands, see [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

The following example creates a static channel group and adds switch ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.2.

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1</pre> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1.0.1. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2</pre> | Add port 1.0.1 to static-channel-group 2. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and return to the Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2</pre> | Enter the Interface Configuration mode to configure port 1.0.2. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2</pre> | Add port 1.0.2 to static-channel-group 2. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# interface sa2</pre> | Select the static aggregator logical interface created for static-channel-group 2 named sa2. |

Commands used

static-channel-group

Validation commands

show static-channel-group

Chapter 21: Link Aggregation Commands



| | |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| Introduction | 21.2 |
| Command List | 21.3 |
| clear lacp counters..... | 21.3 |
| channel-group..... | 21.4 |
| debug lacp..... | 21.6 |
| lacp port-priority | 21.7 |
| lacp system-priority..... | 21.8 |
| lacp timeout..... | 21.9 |
| show debugging lacp..... | 21.11 |
| show diagnostic channel-group..... | 21.12 |
| show etherchannel..... | 21.13 |
| show etherchannel detail | 21.14 |
| show etherchannel summary | 21.15 |
| show lacp-counter | 21.16 |
| show lacp sys-id..... | 21.17 |
| show port etherchannel | 21.18 |
| show static-channel-group | 21.19 |
| static-channel-group | 21.20 |
| undebg lacp | 21.22 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure a static channel group (static aggregator) and dynamic channel group (LACP channel group, etherchannel or LACP aggregator). Link aggregation is also sometimes referred to as channeling.

 **Note** AlliedWare Plus™ supports IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation and uses the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). LACP does not interoperate with devices that use Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP).

 **Note** Link aggregation does not necessarily achieve exact load balancing across the links. The load sharing algorithm is designed to ensure that any given data flow always goes down the same link. It also aims to spread data flows across the links as evenly as possible.

Link aggregation hashes one or more of the source and destination MAC address, IP address and UDP/TCP ports to select a link on which to send a packet. So packet flow between a pair of hosts always takes the same link inside the Link Aggregation Group (LAG). The net effect is that the bandwidth for a given packet stream is restricted to the speed of one link in the LAG.

For example, for a 2 Gbps LAG that is a combination of two 1 Gbps ports, any one flow of traffic can only ever reach a maximum throughput of 1 Gbps. However, the hashing algorithm should spread the flows across the links so that when many flows are operating, the full 2 Gbps can be utilized.

For information about load balancing see the [platform load-balancing](#) command.

For a description of static and dynamic link aggregation (LACP), see [“Configuring an LACP Channel Group” on page 20.5](#). For an LACP configuration example, see [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#).

Command List

clear lacp counters

Use this command to clear all counters of all present LACP aggregators (channel groups) or a given LACP aggregator.

Syntax `clear lacp [<1-4>] counters`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| <1-4> | Channel-group number. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear lacp 2 counters
```

channel-group

Use this command to add the switch port to a dynamic channel group specified by the dynamic channel group number, and set its mode. This command enables LACP link aggregation on the switch port, so that it may be selected for aggregation by the local system. Dynamic channel groups are also known as LACP channel groups, LACP aggregators or etherchannels.

You can create up to 32 dynamic (LACP) channel groups (and up to 96 static channel groups).

Use the **no** variant of this command to turn off link aggregation on the switch port. You will be returned to Global Configuration mode from Interface Configuration mode.

Syntax `channel-group <dynamic-channel-group-number> mode {active|passive}`
`no channel-group`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <code><dynamic-channel-group-number></code> | <1-32> Specify a dynamic channel group number for an LACP link. You can create up to 32 dynamic (LACP) channel groups (as well as up to 96 static channel groups). |
| <code>active</code> | Enables initiation of LACP negotiation on a port. The port will transmit LACP dialogue messages whether or not it receives them from the partner system. |
| <code>passive</code> | Disables initiation of LACP negotiation on a port. The port will only transmit LACP dialogue messages if the partner systems is transmitting them, i.e., the partner is in the active mode. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage All the switch ports in a channel-group must belong to the same VLANs, have the same tagging status, and can only be operated on as a group. All switch ports within a channel group must have the same port speed and be in full duplex mode.

Once the LACP channel group has been created, it is treated as a switch port, and can be referred to in most other commands that apply to switch ports.

To refer to an LACP channel group in other LACP commands, use the channel group number. To specify an LACP channel group (LACP aggregator) in other commands, prefix the channel group number with **po**. For example, 'po2' refers to the LACP channel group with channel group number 2.

For more on LACP, see [“Dynamic \(LACP\) Channel Groups” on page 20.3](#) and [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#).

Examples To add switch port 1.0.6 to a newly created LACP channel group 2 use the commands below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
```

To remove switch port1.0.6 from any created LACP channel groups use the command below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no channel-group
awplus(config)#
```

To reference the pre-defined LACP channel group 2 as an interface, apply commands as below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface port.1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface po2
awplus(config-if)#
```

Related Commands

- [show etherchannel](#)
- [show etherchannel detail](#)
- [show etherchannel summary](#)
- [show port etherchannel](#)

debug lacp

Use this command to enable all LACP troubleshooting functions.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this function.

Syntax `debug lacp {all|cli|event|ha|packet|sync|timer[detail]}`
`no debug lacp {all|cli|event|ha|packet|sync|timer[detail]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| all | Turn on all debugging for LACP. |
| cli | Specifies debugging for CLI messages. Echoes commands to the console. |
| event | Specifies debugging for LACP events. Echoes events to the console. |
| ha | Specifies debugging for HA (High Availability) events. Echoes High Availability events to the console. |
| packet | Specifies debugging for LACP packets. Echoes packet contents to the console. |
| sync | Specified debugging for LACP synchronization. Echoes synchronization to the console. |
| timer | Specifies debugging for LACP timer. Echoes timer expiry to the console. |
| detail | Optional parameter for LACP timer-detail. Echoes timer start/stop details to the console. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# debug lacp timer detail
awplus# debug lacp all
```

Related Commands [show debugging lacp](#)
[undebug lacp](#)

lacp port-priority

Use this command to set the priority of a switch port. Ports are selected for aggregation based on their priority, with the higher priority (numerically lower) ports selected first.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the priority of port to the default.

Syntax lacp port-priority <1-65535>
no lacp port-priority

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| <1-65535> | Specify the LACP port priority. |

Default The default is 32768.

Mode Interface Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5
awplus(config-if)# lacp port-priority 34
```

lACP system-priority

Use this command to set the system priority of a local system. This is used in determining the system responsible for resolving conflicts in the choice of aggregation groups.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the system priority of the local system to the default.

Syntax `lACP system-priority <1-65535>`
`no lACP system-priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><1-65535></code> | LACP system priority. Lower numerical values have higher priorities. |

Default The default is 32768.

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lACP system-priority 6700
```

lacp timeout

Use this command to set the short or long timeout on a port. Ports will time out of the aggregation if three consecutive updates are lost.

Syntax lacp timeout {short|long}

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| timeout | Number of seconds before invalidating a received LACP data unit (DU). |
| short | LACP short timeout. The short timeout value is 1 second. |
| long | LACP long timeout. The long timeout value is 30 seconds. |

Default The default is **long** timeout (30 seconds).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage This command enables the switch to indicate the rate at which it expects to receive LACPDU's from its neighbor.

If the timeout is set to **long**, then the switch expects to receive an update every **30** seconds, and this will time a port out of the aggregation if no updates are seen for 90 seconds (i.e. 3 consecutive updates are lost).

If the timeout is set to **short**, then the switch expects to receive an update every second, and this will time a port a port out of the aggregation if no updates are seen for 3 seconds (i.e. 3 consecutive updates are lost).

The switch indicates its preference by means of the 'Timeout' field in the 'Actor' section of its LACPDUs. If the 'Timeout' field is set to 1, then the switch has set the **short** timeout. If the 'Timeout' field is set to 0, then the switch has set the **long** timeout.

Setting the **short** timeout enables the switch to be more responsive to communication failure on a link, and does not add too much processing overhead to the switch (1 packet per second).

Note  It is not possible to configure the rate that the switch sends LACPDUs; the switch must send at the rate which the neighbor indicates it expects to receive LACPDUs.

Examples The following commands set the LACP long timeout period for 30 seconds on port1.0.2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# lacp timeout long
```

The following commands set the LACP short timeout for 1 second on port1.0.2.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# lacp timeout short
```

show debugging lacp

Use this command to display the LACP debugging option set.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show debugging lacp

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show debugging lacp
```

Output **Figure 21-1: Example output from the show debugging lacp command**

```
LACP debugging status:  
LACP timer debugging is on  
LACP timer-detail debugging is on  
LACP cli debugging is on  
LACP packet debugging is on  
LACP event debugging is on  
LACP sync debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug lacp](#)

show diagnostic channel-group

This command displays dynamic and static channel group interface status information. The output of this command is useful for Allied Telesis authorized service personnel for diagnostic purposes.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show diagnostic channel-group

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show diagnostic channel-group
```

Output **Figure 21-2: Example output from the show diagnostic channel-group command**

```
awplus#show diagnostic channel-group

Channel Group Info based on NSM:
Note: Pos - position in hardware table
-----
Dev  Interface  IfIndex  Member port  IfIndex  Active  Pos
-----
    sa3        4503    port1.0.15  5015        No
    sa3        4503    port1.0.18  5018        No
    po1        4601    port1.0.7   5007        No
    po1        4601    port1.0.8   5008        No
    po1        4601    port1.0.9   5009        No

Channel Group Info based on HSL:
Note: Pos - position in hardware table
-----
Dev  Interface  IfIndex  Member port  IfIndex  Active  Pos
-----
    sa3        4503                                N/a
    po1        4601                                N/a

Channel Group Info based on IPIFWD:
Note: Pos - position in hardware table
-----
Dev  Interface  IfIndex  Member port  IfIndex  Active  Pos
-----
    sa3        4503                                N/a
    po1        4601                                N/a

Channel Group Info based on HW:
Note: Pos - position in hardware table
      Only entries from first device are displayed.
-----
Dev  Interface  IfIndex  Member port  IfIndex  Active  Pos
-----
    sa3        4503                                N/a
    po1        4601                                N/a

No error found
```

Related Commands [show tech-support](#)

show etherchannel

Use this command to display information about a LACP channel specified by the channel group number.

The command output also shows the thrash limiting status. If thrash limiting is detected and the **thrash limiting** parameter of the **thrash-limiting** command on page 15.50 is set to **vlan disable**, the output will also show the VLANs on which thrashing is detected.

For information on output options, see **“Controlling “show” Command Output”** on page 1.34.

Syntax show etherchannel [<1-32>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| <1-32> | Channel-group number. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show etherchannel 2
```

Output **Figure 21-3: Example output from the show etherchannel command**

Figure 21-4: Example output from the show etherchannel command for a particular channel

```
% LACP Aggregator: po1
Thrash-limiting
Status Vlan Thrashing Detected, Action vlan-disable 60(s)
Thrashing Vlans 1 2 3 4 5
% Member:
port1.0.4
port1.0.6
```

show etherchannel detail

Use this command to display detailed information about all LACP channels.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show etherchannel detail

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show etherchannel detail
```

Output **Figure 21-5: Example output from the show etherchannel detail command**

```
% Aggregator po1 (4501)
% Mac address: 00:00:cd:24:fd:29
% Admin Key: 0001 - Oper Key 0001
% Receive link count: 1 - Transmit link count: 0
% Individual: 0 - Ready: 1
% Partner LAG: 0x8000,00-00-cd-24-da-a7
% Link: port1.0.1 (5001) disabled
% Link: port1.0.2 (5002) sync: 1
% Aggregator po2 (4502)
% Mac address: 00:00:cd:24:fd:29
% Admin Key: 0002 - Oper Key 0002
% Receive link count: 1 - Transmit link count: 0
% Individual: 0 - Ready: 1
% Partner LAG: 0x8000,00-00-cd-24-da-a7
% Link: port1.0.6 (5007) disabled
```

show etherchannel summary

Use this command to display a summary of all LACP channels.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show etherchannel summary

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show etherchannel summary
```

Output **Figure 21-6: Example output from the show etherchannel summary command**

```
% Aggregator po1
% Admin Key: 0001 - Oper Key 0001
% Link: port1.0.1 (5001) disabled
% Link: port1.0.2 (5002) sync: 1
% Aggregator po2
% Admin Key: 0002 - Oper Key 0002
% Link: port1.0.6 (5007) disabled
```

show lacp-counter

Use this command to display the packet traffic on all ports of all present LACP aggregators, or a given LACP aggregator.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show lacp-counter [<1-32>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| <1-32> | Channel-group number. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show lacp-counter 2
```

Output **Figure 21-7: Example output from the show lacp-counter command**

```

% Traffic statistics
Port          LACPDUs          Marker          Pckt err
              Sent    Recv    Sent    Recv    Sent    Recv
% Aggregator po2 (4604)
port1.0.2    0      0      0      0      0      0

```

show lacp sys-id

Use this command to display the LACP system ID and priority.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show lacp sys-id

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show lacp sys-id
```

Output **Figure 21-8: Example output from the show lacp sys-id command**

```
% System Priority: 0x8000 (32768)
% MAC Address: 00-00-cd-24-fd-29
```

show port etherchannel

Use this command to show LACP details of the switch port specified.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show port etherchannel <port>

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <port> | Name of the switch port to display LACP information about. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show port etherchannel port1.0.1
```

Output **Figure 21-9: Example output from the show port etherchannel command**

```
% Link: port1.0.1 (5001)
% Aggregator: po1 (4501)
% Receive machine state: Current
% Periodic Transmission machine state: Fast periodic
% Mux machine state: Collecting/Distributing
% Actor Information:
%   Selected ..... Selected
%   Physical Admin Key ..... 1
%   Port Key ..... 5
%   Port Priority ..... 32768
%   Port Number ..... 5001
%   Mode ..... Active
%   Timeout ..... Long
%   Individual ..... Yes
%   Synchronised ..... Yes
%   Collecting ..... Yes
%   Distributing ..... Yes
%   Defaulted ..... Yes
%   Expired ..... No
% Partner Information:
%   Partner Sys Priority ..... 0
%   Partner System .. 00-00-00-00-00-00
%   Port Key ..... 0
%   Port Priority ..... 0
%   Port Number ..... 0
%   Mode ..... Passive
%   Timeout ..... Short
%   Individual ..... Yes
%   Synchronised ..... Yes
%   Collecting ..... Yes
%   Distributing ..... Yes
%   Defaulted ..... Yes
%   Expired ..... No
```

show static-channel-group

Use this command to display all configured static channel groups and their corresponding member ports. Note that a static channel group is the same as a static aggregator.

The command output also shows the thrash limiting status. If thrash limiting is detected and the **thrash limiting** parameter of the [thrash-limiting command](#) on page 15.50 is set to **vlan disable**, the output will also show the VLANs on which thrashing is detected.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output”](#) on page 1.34.

Syntax `show static-channel-group`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show static-channel-group
```

Output **Figure 21-10: Example output from the show static-channel-group command**

```
% LAG Maximum      : 128
% LAG Static Maximum: 96
% LAG Dynamic Maximum: 32
% LAG Static Count  : 2
% LAG Dynamic Count : 2
% LAG Total Count   : 4
% Static Aggregator: sa2
% Member:
  port1.0.1
% Static Aggregator: sa3
% Member:
  port1.0.2
```

Related Commands [static-channel-group](#)

static-channel-group

Use this command to create a static channel group, also known as a static aggregator, or add a member port to an existing static channel group.

You can create up to 96 static channel groups (and up to 32 dynamic channel groups).

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the switch port from the static channel group.

Syntax `static-channel-group <static-channel-group-number>`
`no static-channel-group`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><static-channel-group-number></code> | <code><1-96></code> Static channel group number. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage This command adds the switch port to the static channel group with the specified channel group number. If the channel group does not exist, it is created, and the port is added to it. The **no** prefix detaches the port from the static channel group. If the port is the last member to be removed, the static channel group is deleted.

All the ports in a channel group must have the same VLAN configuration: they must belong to the same VLANs and have the same tagging status, and can only be operated on as a group.

Once the static channel group has been created, it is treated as a switch port, and can be referred to in other commands that apply to switch ports.

To refer to a static channel group in other static channel group commands, use the channel group number. To specify a static channel group in other commands, prefix the channel group number with **sa**. For example, `'sa2'` refers to the static channel group with channel group number 2.

For more on static channel groups, see [“Static Channel Groups” on page 20.3](#) and [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#).

Examples To define a static channel group on a switch port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
```

To reference the pre-defined static channel group 2 as an interface apply the example commands as below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface port.1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface sa2
awplus(config-if)#
```

Related Commands [show static-channel-group](#)

undebug lacp

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug lacp** command on page 21.6.

Chapter 22: Power over Ethernet Introduction



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 22.2 |
| PoE Standards | 22.2 |
| PoE (all standards) | 22.3 |
| PoE (IEEE 802.3af) | 22.3 |
| PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at) | 22.3 |
| Differences Between PoE and PoE+ | 22.4 |
| LLDP-MED (TIA-1057) with PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at) | 22.4 |
| PoE and PoE+ Applications | 22.4 |
| Power Device (PD) Discovery | 22.4 |
| Power Classes | 22.5 |
| Power through the Cable | 22.6 |
| Power Threshold | 22.7 |
| Negotiating Power Requirements | 22.7 |
| PoE Port Management | 22.7 |
| Powered Device (PD) Detection | 22.8 |
| Port Prioritization | 22.8 |
| Software Monitoring | 22.10 |
| PoE and PoE+ Configuration | 22.11 |
| Add a Description for a PoE or PoE+ Port | 22.11 |
| Configuring Capacity and Priority on a PoE or PoE+ Port | 22.12 |
| Remotely Monitoring Power for all Connected PDs | 22.13 |

Introduction

For information about the PoE commands available on the switch, see [Chapter 23, Power over Ethernet Commands](#) for descriptions, examples, and output.

PoE is a method of supplying power to network devices by utilizing the same cabling used to carry network traffic. PoE is appropriate for devices that have a low power consumption (termed Powered Devices) such as IP phones and security cameras etc. A number of standards have been created to define PoE connectivity. Two PoE standards are presently defined by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), these are: IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at.

In addition to the formal PoE methods defined by the IEEE, there are also legacy industry methods for supplying power over Ethernet cabling. For details of legacy support see the command, [power-inline allow-legacy](#) command on [page 23.5](#).

PoE Standards

PoE is formally defined by the following standards: **formal** (defined by the IEEE), and **de-facto** (industry developed):

- IEEE 802.3af Power Ethernet standard
 - « Approved 2003.
 - « Supplies 15.94 W of power of which 12.95 W is available to each powered device.
 - « Superseded by IEEE IEEE802.3at.

For more information on this standard, refer to [“PoE \(IEEE 802.3af\)” on page 22.3](#).

- Enhanced PoE
 - « Industry standard introduced after the IEEE 802.af. It provides more power (20 W) than defined by IEEE 802.3.af but less than the power (30 W) defined by IEEE 802.3.at.
 - « For more information on this standard, refer to [“Differences Between PoE and PoE+” on page 22.4](#).
- IEEE 802.3at Power Ethernet standard (commonly known as PoE+)
 - « Approved 2009.
 - « Supplies 30 W of power of which 25.5 W is available to each powered device.
 - « For more information on this method, refer to [“PoE+ \(IEEE 802.3at\)” on page 22.3](#).

PoE (all standards)

The general objective that is common to all PoE methods described in this document is to distribute both data and cable over the same cabling that is used for transmitting Ethernet based data. This eliminates the need for having one set of cables and outlets for data, and another set for power. Also, because the voltage and power requirements are much lower than for mains powered devices, the cabling and installation costs are significantly reduced.

Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) such as an Ethernet LAN switch or router, supplies power to the cable together with the data. **Powered Devices (PDs)** such as Wireless Access Points or an IP Phones, receive power and data over this same cabling. The PSE employs various methods of power classification (depending on the standard) for detecting compatible PDs from non-compatible devices and will only provide the maximum power limit to compatible PDs, based on their PoE device class. The PSE continuously monitors the PDs and stops providing power when it is no longer requested or it detects an overload or short circuit condition on a port.

PoE (IEEE 802.3af)

The IEEE 802.3at-2003 standard specifies how power is distributed along with data on twisted pair Ethernet LAN cables. The standard specifies that the PSE is able to supply up to 15.4 watts (W) of power, with the full 100 m cable length, is then able to utilize 12.95 W. The difference between these power levels (15.4 - 12.98) allows for power loss within the cabling. This figure is approximate and will vary with the cable length and quality. The IEEE 802.3af physical layer classification is a static power allocation based on power bands for power management.

PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at)

The IEEE 802.3at-2009 standard specifies how power is distributed together with data on twisted pair Ethernet LAN cables. PoE+ supplies the higher power required by a new generation of network attached devices. These devices, such as, multiple radio IEEE 802.11n wireless access points, powered pan tilt and zoom IP security cameras, thin clients, door locks, touch screen displays, and video phones frequently require more than the 12.9 W (at a nominal 54 VDC) available under the IEEE 802.3af standard. The IEEE 802.3at specification provides for up to 30 W of power at the PSE, of which 25.5 W is available to the PD.

The standard also requires that PDs support a flexible Layer 2 power classification method using Link Layer Discovery Protocol Media Endpoint Devices (LLDP-MED). The use of LLDP-MED for power classification provides PoE power allocation in steps of 1 watt, along with an ability to reallocate power, for improved power allocation and management between the PSE and PD. For more information see **“LLDP-MED (TIA-1057) with PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at)” on page 22.4**. The IEEE 802.3at specification is backwards compatible with the IEEE 802.3af specification. Devices that support the IEEE 802.3at specification are optimized to operate with IEEE 802.3at PSEs to support dynamic power management. PSEs that support the IEEE 802.3af specification can still interoperate with IEEE 802.3at compliant PDs, providing that the PD can operate using 12.95 W of power. However, these PDs will operate without the dynamic power allocation and management feature.

Differences Between PoE and PoE+

The major differences between the IEEE 802.3af (PoE) and the IEEE 802.3at (PoE+) standards relate to the power that the PDs are allowed to consume, and the ability to dynamically manage the power supplied to each PD. The following table summarizes the major differences in terms of their applied voltages and power ratings.

| Standard | Voltage dc at PSE | Cabling | Power Supplied by PSE | Power Available to PD | Nominal Current |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| IEEE 802.3af | 44 V | 2 pairs (CAT 3 or better) | 15.4 W | 12.95 W | 350 mA |
| IEEE 802.3at | (44 to 57) V | 2 pairs (CAT 5 or better) | 30 W | 25.5 W | 600 mA |

LLDP-MED (TIA-1057) with PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at)

The IEEE 802.1AB standard, Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) was designed to provide a multi-vendor solution for the discovery of network devices and accurate physical topology of how these devices are connected to one another. LLDP allows network devices to advertise their basic configuration and device capabilities to other network devices on the same LAN.

The IEEE 802.1AB standard was extended by the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) to fill the need for multi-vendor VoIP deployments. The TIA created the TIA-1057 standard, Link Layer Discovery Protocol Media Endpoint Devices (LLDP-MED), which allows for Media Endpoint Devices, such as VoIP phones, to exchange configuration information, including Power over Ethernet management. The TIA-1057 standard and the IEEE 802.3at standard provide for the following advanced PoE management capabilities:

- Fine grain PoE power allocation (1 watt granularity instead of wider power class bands)
- Power priority of the PD being supplied power
- Backup power conservation to extend UPS battery life

The IEEE 802.3at standard provides a capability for power re-negotiation with LLDP-MED.

PoE and PoE+ Applications

Products designed to the IEEE 802.3af (PoE) standard and IEEE 802.3at (PoE+) standard provide the benefits of lower installation costs, installation flexibility, and remote power monitoring and device management. Products supporting IEEE 802.3at can use higher power levels, along with dynamic power management when using LLDP-MED to exchange configuration data.

Power Device (PD) Discovery

The first step for PSE equipment is to determine whether a device plugged into a port is a valid Powered Device (PD). If it is, it will require power as well as network communication through the attached LAN cable.

The IEEE 802.3af-2003 and IEEE 802.3at-2009 standards for device detection involves applying a DC voltage between the transmit and receive wire pairs, and measuring the received current.

A PSE will expect to see approximately 25K Ohm resistance and 150nF capacitance between the transmit and receive wire pairs for the device to be considered a valid PD. A range around these values is specified in the IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at Power Ethernet standards.

The PSE will check for the presence of PDs on connected ports at regular intervals, so that power can be removed when a PD is no longer connected. Legacy (pre-IEEE 802.3af Power Ethernet standard) PDs are also detected by the PSE by default. See [“power-inline allow-legacy” on page 23.5](#).

Power Classes

Once a PD is discovered, PSE initiates a PD classification test by applying a DC voltage to the port. If the PD supports optional power classification it will apply a load to the line to indicate to the PSE the classification the device requires.

Since PDs may require differing power ranges, the IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at Power Ethernet standards classifies PDs according to their power consumption. By providing the PSE with its power range, the PD allows the PSE to supply power with greater efficiency. The power classes as outlined by IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at are as follows showing the different PD classes and the PSE power output for each corresponding PD power range:

| PD Class | Power Available at PD | Power Supplied from PSE |
|----------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 | 0.44 W to 12.95 W | 15.4 W |
| 1 | 0.44 W to 3.84 W | 4.0 W |
| 2 | 3.84 W to 6.49 W | 7.0 W |
| 3 | 6.49 W to 12.95 W | 15.4 W |
| 4 | 12.95 W to 25.5 W | 30 W |

Once the PSE has detected the PDs IEEE 802.3af or IEEE 802.3at power class, it can manage the power allocation by subtracting the PDs class maximum value from the overall power budget. This allows for control and management of power allocation when there is not enough power available from the PSE to supply maximum power to all ports. Any unclassified PD is considered to be a class 0 device.

To view the PD class that has been configured for each PoE port, apply the following command:

```
awplus# show power-inline
```

Typical Values for PD Power Consumption

The IEEE 802.3af standard specifies the delivery of up to 15.4 watts (W) per port to PoE devices. This enables a variety of possible devices to make use of the available power. The maximum power consumed by a PD, as specified by the IEEE 802.3af standard, is 12.95 W. The system provides the 'extra' power (up to 15.4 W) to compensate for losses in the cable. Some common PoE device power requirements are:

| PoE Device | PoE Power Requirement |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| IP phone | 3 W-6 W |
| Wireless access point | 4 W-11 W |
| IP security camera | 5 W-12 W |

The IEEE 802.3at standard supports delivery of up to 30 W per port that may be used to deliver power to PoE+ devices. This allows a variety of possible devices to make use of the available power. The maximum power consumed by a PD, as specified by the IEEE 802.3at standard, is 25.5 W. The system provides the 'extra' power (up to 30 W) to compensate for line loss. Some common PoE+ device power requirements are:

| PoE+ Device | PoE+ Power Requirement |
|--|------------------------|
| Wireless Access Point (with LLDP-MED support) | 12 W-24 W |
| Pan Tilt and Zoom powered IP security camera | 12 W-24 W |

Refer to the LLDP chapters [Chapter 69, LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration](#) and [Chapter 70, LLDP Commands](#) for information about power monitoring at the PD.

Power through the Cable

10/100BASE-TX Endpoint Mode

The IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at standards describe two methods for applying PoE over twisted pair cabling are termed "alternatives A and B". Alternative A applies power to the data carrying cable pairs (using pins 1-2 and 3-6). Alternative B applies the power to the spare cable pairs (using pins 4-5 and 7-8).

The switch uses "alternative A" to apply power to its PDs. An IEEE compliant PD should be able to receive PoE using either of the two wiring methods.

**100BASE-T
Endpoint Mode**

An amendment to the IEEE 802.3at (2008) standard defines PoE cable connections for data transmission at 1 GHz. Although data is carried over all four cable pairs, the same cable pinning is used for PoE. i.e. alternative A applies power to the cable using pins 1-2 and 3-6, and alternative B applies the power to the cable using pins 4-5 and 7-8.

Power Threshold

The switch can be configured to send a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) trap to your management workstation and records an entry in the event log whenever the total power requirements of the powered devices exceed the specified percentage of the total maximum power available on the switch. With the default setting of 80% applied, the switch sends an SNMP trap when the PoE devices require more than 80% of the maximum available power on the switch.

To adjust the threshold, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# power-inline usage-threshold <1-99>
```

For your management workstation to receive traps from your switches, you must configure SNMP on the switch by specifying the IP address of the workstation. The management workstation will also record an entry in the event log whenever power consumption of the switch has returned to a value that is less than the power limit threshold.

To set the SNMP traps (notifications) for PoE, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap power-inline
```

See [Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction](#) for information about configuring SNMP traps for PoE. See [Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#) for command examples to configure SNMP traps for PoE.

Negotiating Power Requirements

When configuring PoE on your switch, you can either allow each port to auto-negotiate its power requirement, based on the power class of its connected PD, or you can statically configure each port to have a fixed power allocation.

Where dynamic PoE power assignment is used, the total power assigned from your switch's power supply will be the total of the individual power requirements assigned to each port.

To enable your PoE ports to dynamically allocate their power, set the **"power-inline max"** [on page 23.8](#) to its default by entering, no power-inline max.

PoE Port Management

PoE is enabled by default on all non-SFP (or SFP+) RJ-45 ports. You can connect either a powered or non-powered device to a PoE-enabled port without having to re-configure the port. This is because PD detection is carried out before any power is supplied to the connected device.

PoE can be administratively enabled or disabled on each port using the **power-inline enable** command in Interface Configuration mode. To disable PoE on a selected port, use the command:

Powered Device (PD) Detection

Your switch applies two methods to detect the connection of a PD. The first method applies the resistance and capacitance methods defined in the IEEE standards, see [“Power Device \(PD\) Discovery” on page 22.4](#). The second method is applied to detect the connection of legacy PDs. This method involves measuring for a large capacitance value. The IEEE method is tried first, and if this fails to detect a PD, the second method is applied.

By default, legacy PD detection is enabled on all ports. To disable legacy PD detection, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no power-inline allow-legacy
```

The switch applies its PD detection process in real time to all PoE enabled ports. It will not supply power to any PoE enabled port unless it detects the connection of a valid PD.

Port Prioritization

Port prioritization enables you to assign ports to be one of the following three priority levels:

- Critical
- High
- Low

Where the power required collectively by the Powered Devices (PDs) is greater than the PSUs are able to supply, these priority levels will be used to sequentially remove power from the PDs in an order of their importance.

Critical The highest priority level. Ports set to this level are guaranteed power before any ports assigned to the other two priority levels. Ports assigned to the other priority levels receive power only if all the Critical ports are receiving power. Your most critical powered devices should be assigned to this level. If there is not enough power to support all the ports set to the Critical priority level, power is provided to the ports based on port number, in ascending order.

High The second highest level. Ports set to this level receive power only if all the ports set to the Critical level are already receiving power. If there is not enough power to support all of the ports set to the High priority level, power is provided to the ports based on port number, in ascending order.

Low The lowest priority level. This is the default setting. Ports set to this level only receive power if all the ports assigned to the other two levels are already receiving power. As with the other levels, if there is not enough power to support all of the ports set to the Low priority level, power is provided to the ports based on port number, in ascending order

If power needs to be removed from some of the PoE ports, where for example, one of the power supplies is disconnected; power will be removed from these ports in the order Low, High, and Critical. In addition, within each of these priority categories, lower numbered ports will be given higher priority than higher numbered ports; i.e. the lower the port number, the higher its PoE priority (within its particular category).

You can set the port priority by using the command:

```
awplus# power-inline priority
```

For more details on using this command see **“power-inline priority” on page 23.10.**

Note  Power allocation is dynamic. Ports supplying power may stop powering a PD if the switch's power capacity has reached maximum usage and new PD's are connected to ports with a higher priority, which become active.

To ensure continued operation of a PD if the power resources of the switch are exceeded you should install a PD to a lower numbered PoE port with the Critical priority level configured.

Software Monitoring

There are four PoE **show** commands available that return information about the PoE settings on your switch.

The **show power-inline** command displays the power threshold set, a power usage percentage, and power consumed by each switch port.

```
awplus# show power-inline
```

The **show power-inline counters** command displays PoE event counters from the PoE MIB (RFC 3621).

```
awplus# show power-inline counters
```

The **show power-inline interface** command displays a summary of all PoE information, including power limit, power consumed, and power class.

```
awplus# show power-inline interface
```

The **show power-inline interface detail** command displays all PoE information, including power limit, power consumed, and power class.

```
awplus# show power-inline interface detail
```

You can also specify an individual PoE port, a range of PoE ports, or a selection of PoE ports with the **show power-inline interface detail** command when using the `<port-list>` option, as shown below for a PoE port, a selection of PoE ports, and a range of PoE ports:

```
awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.2 detail
```

```
awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.2,port1.0.4  
detail
```

```
awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.2-port1.0.4  
detail
```

PoE and PoE+ Configuration

This section is based around PoE configuration tasks for the Allied Telesis x230 switches running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System.

Add a Description for a PoE or PoE+ Port

You can add a description (typically the device type) for a PoE port, which the switch will display in certain Show commands. Knowing the type of PD is useful when inspecting PD Class power usage. The description entered will appear in the following commands under Device, or Powered Device Type, for each PoE or PoE+ port:

[show power-inline interface](#) command on page 23.20 and,

[show power-inline interface detail](#) command on page 23.22.

In the following example a description is added for the PoE port listed as **port1.0.2** to display the words “**Desk Phone**” in the show output of the commands mentioned above.

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# configure interface port1.0.2 | Specify the PoE or PoE+ port to be configured and enter Interface mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# power-inline description Wireless Access Point # 1 | The description “Desk Phone” will be displayed in all PoE show command output for port1.0.2. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# exit | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.2 | Display the PoE status for port1.0.2 to confirm that your PoE configuration on the PSE has been successful. If a PD is connected to the configured PoE port then power consumption as well as power allocation values will display. |
| awplus# copy running-config startup-config | Save your running-config to the startup-config to keep your PoE configuration after a switch restart or reboot. |

Configuring Capacity and Priority on a PoE or PoE+ Port

The following commands set a higher priority and a lower maximum power for a PoE or PoE+ port. This prevents high powered PDs from being connected to a PoE or PoE+ port reserved for low powered PDs. Follow the configuration table below to configure **port1.0.2**.

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# configure interface port1.0.2 | Specify the PoE or PoE+ port to be configured and enter Interface mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# power-inline priority high | Specify a higher priority for the PoE or PoE+ port than the default low setting. |
| awplus(config-if)# power-inline max 4000 | Specify the lowest available power that the PSE can supply to the PD: 4000 mW. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# exit | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| awplus# copy running-config startup-config | Save your running-config to the startup-config to keep your PoE configuration after a switch restart or reboot. |

Remotely Monitoring Power for all Connected PDs

By using the **power-inline usage-threshold** command and the **snmp-server enable trap** commands together you can remotely monitor PD power requests on the PSE.

Note that you will need to configure SNMP first for this. For more information on configuring SNMP, see the following chapters in your switch's software reference:

- **Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction**
- **Chapter 67, SNMP Commands**
- **Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs**

For example, if the PD is a Class 0 (default class) or a Class 3 (15400 mW) PD then the PSE budgets 15400 mW for the PD regardless of the actual amount of power needed by the PD.

The following procedure allows you to remotely monitor power usage for all connected PDs. Follow the configuration table to configure the PSE.

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# service power-inline | Enable PoE globally for the PSE. This will also enable PoE globally for all PoE ports on all connected stacked switches. |
| awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap power-inline | Configure SNMP notification so an SNMP trap is sent when the power usage threshold is exceeded to trigger an alarm. |
| awplus(config)# power-inline usage-threshold 75 | Specify SNMP notifications are generated when the power supplied exceeds 75% of the nominal PSE power available. |
| awplus(config)# exit | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| awplus# show power-inline | Display the PoE status for all PoE ports on the PSE. The PD Class, power consumption, and power allocated per PoE port displays for all PoE ports on the PSE. |
| awplus# copy running-config startup-config | Save your running-config to the startup-config to keep your PoE configuration after a switch restart or reboot. |

Chapter 23: Power over Ethernet Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 23.2 |
| Command List | 23.2 |
| clear power-inline counters interface..... | 23.3 |
| debug power-inline..... | 23.4 |
| power-inline allow-legacy | 23.5 |
| power-inline description | 23.6 |
| power-inline enable | 23.7 |
| power-inline max | 23.8 |
| power-inline priority | 23.10 |
| power-inline usage-threshold | 23.12 |
| service power-inline | 23.13 |
| show debugging power-inline..... | 23.14 |
| show power-inline | 23.15 |
| show power-inline counters | 23.18 |
| show power-inline interface | 23.20 |
| show power-inline interface detail..... | 23.22 |

Introduction

Power over Ethernet (PoE) is a technology allowing devices such as IP phones to receive power over existing LAN cabling.

PoE is configured using the commands in this chapter. Note the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) referred to throughout this chapter is an Allied Telesis PoE switch running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System, supporting the IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at Power Ethernet standards. The Powered Device (PD) referred to throughout this chapter is a PoE or PoE+ powered device, such as an IP phone or a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Command List

This chapter contains an alphabetical list of commands used to configure Power over Ethernet (PoE). Each command contains a functional description and shows examples of configuration and output screens for show commands. These commands are only supported on PoE capable ports. An error message will display on the console if you enter a PoE command on a port that does not support PoE. The following chapters offer further information for configuring PoE on Allied Telesis switches.

- **Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction** for introductory information about PoE and how to configure PoE on Allied Telesis switches.
- **Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs** for information about which PoE MIB objects are supported.
- **Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction** for information about SNMP traps.
- **Chapter 67, SNMP Commands** for SNMP command descriptions used when configuring SNMP traps for PoE.

clear power-inline counters interface

This command will clear the counters from a specified port, a range of ports, or all ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE). If no ports are entered then PoE counters for all ports are cleared. It will also clear all Power over Ethernet (PoE) counters supported by the Power Ethernet MIB (RFC 3621).

Syntax `clear power-inline counters interface [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | Selects the port or ports whose counters are to be cleared. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The PoE counters are displayed with the **show power-inline counters** command.

Examples To clear the PoE counters for all ports, use the following command:

```
awplus# clear power-inline counters interface
```

Validation Commands **show power-inline counters**

debug power-inline

This command enables debugging display for messages that are specific to Power over Ethernet (PoE).

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the specified PoE debugging messages.

Syntax `debug power-inline [all|event|info|power]`
`no debug power-inline [all|event|info|power]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | Displays all (event, info, nsm, power) debug messages. |
| event | Displays event debug information, showing any error conditions that may occur during PoE operation. |
| info | Displays informational level debug information, showing high-level essential debugging, such as information about message types. |
| power | Displays power management debug information. |

Default No debug messages are enabled by default.

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Use the **terminal monitor** command to display PoE debug messages on the console.
 Use the **show debugging power-inline** command to show the PoE debug configuration.

Examples To enable PoE debugging and start the display of PoE `event` and `info` debug messages on the console, use the following commands:

```
awplus# terminal monitor
awplus# debug power-inline event info
```

To enable PoE debugging and start the display of all PoE debugging messages on the console, use the following commands:

```
awplus# terminal monitor
awplus# debug power-inline all
```

To disable PoE debugging and stop the display of PoE `event` and `info` debug messages on the console, use the following command:

```
awplus# no debug power-inline event info
```

To disable all PoE debugging and stop the display of any PoE debugging messages on the console, use the following command:

```
awplus# no debug power-inline all
```

Validation Commands [show debugging power-inline](#)

Related Commands [terminal monitor](#)

power-inline allow-legacy

This command enables detection of pre-IEEE 802.3af Power Ethernet standard legacy Powered Devices (PDs).

The no variant of this command disables detection of pre-IEEE 802.3af Power Ethernet standard legacy Powered Devices (PDs).

Syntax `power-inline allow-legacy`
`no power-inline allow-legacy`

Default Detection of legacy PDs is enabled on all ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To disable detection of legacy PDs, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no power-inline allow-legacy
```

To enable detection of legacy PDs, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# power-inline allow-legacy
```

Validation Commands [show power-inline](#)
[show running-config power-inline](#)

power-inline description

This command adds a description for a Powered Device (PD) connected to a PoE port.

The **no** variant of this command clears a previously entered description for a connected PD, resetting the PD description to the default (null).

Syntax `power-inline description <pd-description>`
`no power-inline description`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><pd-description></code> | Description of the PD connected to the PoE capable port (with a maximum 256 character string limit per PD description). |

Default No description for a connected PD is set by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Select a PoE port, a list of PoE ports, or a range of PoE ports with the preceding **interface (to configure)** command. If you specify a range or list of ports they must all be PoE capable ports.

Examples To add the description Desk Phone for a connected PD on port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# power-inline description Desk Phone
```

To clear the description as added above for the connected PD on port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no power-inline description
```

Validation Commands `show power-inline interface`
`show running-config power-inline`

power-inline enable

This command enables Power over Ethernet (PoE) to detect a connected Powered Device (PD) and supply power from the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

The **no** variant of this command disables PoE functionality on the selected PoE port(s). No power is supplied to a connected PD after PoE is disabled on the selected PoE port(s).

Syntax `power-inline enable`
`no power-inline enable`

Default PoE is enabled by default on all ports on the PSE.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Select a PoE port, a list of PoE ports, or a range of PoE ports from the preceding **interface (to configure)** command. If you specify a range or list of ports they must all be PoE capable ports.

No PoE log messages are generated for specified PoE port(s) after PoE is disabled. The disabled PoE port(s) still provide Ethernet connectivity after PoE is disabled.

Examples To disable PoE on ports `port1.0.1` to `port1.0.4`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# no power-inline enable
```

To enable PoE on ports `port1.0.1` to `port1.0.4`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# power-inline enable
```

Validation Commands `show power-inline`
`show power-inline interface`
`show power-inline interface detail`
`show running-config power-inline`

power-inline max

The **no** variant of this command sets the maximum power supplied to a PoE port to the default, which is set to the maximum power limit for the class of the connected Powered Device (PD).

Syntax `power-inline max <4000-30000>`
`no power-inline max`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><4000-30000></code> | The maximum power to a PoE port in milliwatts (mW). |

Default The Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) supplies the maximum power limit for the class of the PD connected to the port by default.

Note  Power limits for all classes of PDs are listed in **“Power Classes” on page 22.5**. See **Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction** for further PoE information.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Select a PoE port, a list of PoE ports, or a range of PoE ports with the preceding **interface (to configure)** command. If you specify a range or list of ports they must all be PoE capable ports.

If you select a range of PoE ports in Interface Configuration mode before issuing this command, then each port in the range selected will have the same maximum power value configured. If the PoE port attempts to draw more than the maximum power, this is logged and all power is removed. Note that the value entered is rounded up to the next value supported by the hardware.

See the actual value used, as shown after command entry, in the sample console output below:

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config-if)#power-line max 5300
% The maximum power has been rounded to 5450mW in hardware.
```

Refer to **Chapter 69, LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration** and **Chapter 70, LLDP Commands** for information about power monitoring at the PD.

Note the difference in power supplied from the PSE to the power available at the PD due to line loss.

The **“Power Classes” on page 22.5** shows the difference between the power supplied from the PSE and the power available at the PD.

Examples To set the maximum power supplied to ports in the range 1.0.2 to 1.0.4 to 6450mW per port, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# power-inline max 6450
```

To set the maximum power supplied to port1.0.2, to 6450 mW, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# power-inline max 6450
```

To clear the user-configured maximum power supplied to port1.0.2, and revert to using the default maximum power of 30000 mW, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no power-inline max
```

Validation Commands **show power-inline interface**
show running-config power-inline

power-inline priority

This command sets the Power over Ethernet (PoE) priority level of a PoE port to one of three available priority levels:

- low
- high
- critical

The **no** variant of this command restores the PoE port priority to the default (low).

Syntax `power-inline priority {low|high|critical}`

`no power-inline priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| low | The lowest priority for a PoE enabled port (default). PoE ports set to <code>low</code> only receive power if all the PoE ports assigned to the other two levels are already receiving power. |
| high | The second highest priority for a PoE enabled port. PoE ports set to <code>high</code> receive power only if all the ports set to <code>critical</code> are already receiving power. |
| critical | The highest priority for a PoE enabled port. PoE ports set to <code>critical</code> are guaranteed power before any ports assigned to the other two priority levels. Ports assigned to the other priority levels receive power only if all Critical ports are receiving power. |

Default The default priority is `low` for all PoE ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Select a PoE port, a list of PoE ports, or a range of PoE ports with the preceding **interface (to configure)** command. If you specify a range or list of ports they must all be PoE capable ports.

PoE ports with higher priorities are given power before PoE ports with lower priorities. If the priorities for two PoE ports are the same then the lower numbered PoE port is given power before the higher numbered PoE port.

See **“Port Prioritization” on page 22.8** for further information about PoE priority.

Examples To set the priority level to high for port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# power-inline priority high
```

To reset the priority level to the default for port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no power-inline priority
```

Validation Commands **show power-inline**
show power-inline interface
show running-config power-inline

Related Commands **power-inline usage-threshold**

power-inline usage-threshold

This command sets the level at which the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) will issue a message that the power supplied to all Powered Devices (PDs) has reached a critical level of the nominal power rating for the PSE. The level is set as a percentage of total available power.

The **no** variant of this command resets the notification usage-threshold to the default (80% of the nominal power rating of the PSE).

Syntax `power-inline usage-threshold <1-99>`

`no power-inline usage-threshold`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><1-99></code> | The usage-threshold percentage configured with this command. |

Default The default power usage threshold is 80% of the nominal power rating of the PSE.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use the [snmp-server enable trap command on page 67.18](#) to configure SNMP notification. An SNMP notification is sent when the usage-threshold, as configured in the example, is exceeded.

Examples To generate SNMP notifications when power supplied exceeds 70% of the nominal PSE power, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap power-inline
awplus(config)# power-inline usage-threshold 70
```

To reset the notification threshold to the default (80% of the nominal PSE power rating), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no power-inline usage-threshold
```

Validation Commands [show power-inline interface](#)
[show running-config power-inline](#)

Related Commands [snmp-server enable trap](#)

service power-inline

This command enables Power over Ethernet (PoE) globally on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) for all PoE ports.

Syntax `service power-inline`
`no service power-inline`

Default PoE functionality is enabled by default on the PSE.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To disable PoE on the PSE, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service power-inline
```

To re-enable PoE on the PSE, if PoE has been disabled, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service power-inline
```

Validation `show power-inline`
Commands `show running-config power-inline`

show debugging power-inline

This command displays Power over Ethernet (PoE) debug settings.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show debugging power-inline

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display PoE debug settings, use the following command:

```
awplus# show debugging power-inline
```

Output **Figure 23-1: Example output from the show debugging power-inline command**

```
awplus#show debugging power-inline
PoE Debugging status:
PoE Informational debugging is disabled
PoE Event debugging is disabled
PoE Power Management debugging is disabled
PoE NSM debugging is enabled
```

Related Commands [debug power-inline](#)
[terminal monitor](#)

show power-inline

This command displays the Power over Ethernet (PoE) status for all ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show power-inline

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the PoE status for all ports on the PSE, use the following command:

```
awplus# show power-inline
```

Table 23-1: Parameters in the show power-inline command output

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Nominal Power | The nominal power available on the switch in watts (W). |
| Power Allocated | The current power allocated in watts (W) that is available to be drawn by any connected Powered Devices (PDs). This is updated every 5 seconds. |
| Actual Power Consumption | The current power consumption in watts (W) drawn by all connected Powered Devices (PDs). This is updated every 5 seconds. |
| Operational Status | The operational status of the PSU hardware on the PSE when this command was issued: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ On if the PSU as installed inside the PSE is switched on. ■ Off when the PSU in the PSE is switched off (an RPS may be connected to the PSE to power PoE instead of the PSU). ■ Fault when there is an issue with the PSE PSU hardware. |
| Power Usage Threshold (%) | The configured SNMP trap / log threshold for the PSE, as configured from a power-inline usage-threshold command. |
| Interface | The PoE port(s) in the format <code>portx.y.z</code> , where <code>x</code> is the device number, <code>y</code> is the module number within the device, and <code>z</code> is the PoE port number within the module. |
| Admin | The administrative state of PoE on a PoE port, either Enabled or Disabled . |
| Pri | The current PoE priorities for PoE ports on the PSE, as configured from a power-inline priority command: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Low displays when the <code>low</code> parameter is issued. The lowest priority for a PoE enabled port (default). ■ High displays when the <code>high</code> parameter is issued. The second highest priority for a PoE enabled port. ■ Crit displays when the <code>critical</code> parameter is issued. The highest priority for a PoE enabled port. |
| Oper | The current PSE PoE port state when this command was issued: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Powered displays when there is a PD connected and power is being supplied from the PSE. ■ Disabled displays when supplying power would make the PSE go over the power budget. ■ Off displays when PoE has been disabled for the PoE port. Fault displays when a PSE goes over its power allocation. |
| Power | The power consumption in milliwatts (mW) for the PoE port when this command was entered. |
| Device | The description of the connected PD device if a description has been added with the power-inline description command. No description is shown for PDs not configured with the power-inline description command. |

Table 23-1: Parameters in the show power-inline command output (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Class | The class of the connected PD, if power is being supplied to the PD from the PSE. See the Power over Ethernet Introduction chapter for further information about PD classes and the power levels assigned per class. |
| Max (mW) | The power in milliwatts (mW) allocated for the PoE port. Additionally, note the following as displayed per PoE port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ [U] if the power limit for a port was user configured (with the power-inline max command). ■ [L] if the power limit for a port was supplied by LLDP. ■ [C] if the power limit for a port was supplied by the PD class. |

Related Commands [show power-inline counters](#)
 [show power-inline interface](#)

show power-inline counters

This command displays Power over Ethernet (PoE) event counters for ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE). The PoE event counters displayed can also be accessed by objects in the PoE MIB (RFC 3621). See [Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#) for information about which PoE MIB objects are supported.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show power-inline counters [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | Enter the PoE port(s) to display all PoE event counters for them. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage To display all PoE event counters for all PoE ports on the PSE, do not enter the optional interface parameter.

Examples To display all PoE event counters for all PoE ports on the PSE, use the command:

```
awplus# show power-inline counters
```

To display the PoE event counters for the port range 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, use the command:

```
awplus# show power-inline counters interface port1.0.1-1.0.3
```

Output **Figure 23-2: Example output from the show power-inline counters command**

```
awplus#show power-inline counters interface port1.0.1-port1.0.3
PoE Counters:
Interface    MPSAbsent  Overload  Short  Invalid  Denied
port1.0.1   0          0         0     0        0
port1.0.2   0          0         0     0        0
port1.0.3   0          0         0     0        0
```

Table 23-2: Parameters in the show power-inline counters command output

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Interface | The PoE port(s) in the format <code>portx.y.z</code> , where <code>x</code> is the device number, <code>y</code> is the module number within the device, and <code>z</code> is the PoE port number within the module. |
| MPSAbsent | The number of instances when the PoE MPS (Maintain Power Signature) signal has been lost. The PoE MPS signal is lost when a PD is disconnected from the PSE. Also increments <code>pethPsePortMPSAbsentCounter</code> in the PoE MIB. |
| Overload | The number of instances when a PD exceeds its configured power limit (as configured by the power-inline max command). Also increments <code>pethPsePortOverLoadCounter</code> in the PoE MIB. |
| Short | The number of short circuits that have happened with a PD. Also increments <code>pethPsePortShortCounter</code> in the PoE MIB. |
| Invalid | The number of times a PD with an Invalid Signature (where the PD has an open or short circuit, or is a legacy PD) is detected. Also increments <code>pethPseInvalidSignatureCounter</code> in the PoE MIB. |
| Denied | The number of times a PD has been refused power due to power budget limitations for the PSE. Also increments <code>pethPsePortPowerDeniedCounter</code> in the PoE MIB. |

Related Commands

- [clear power-inline counters interface](#)
- [show power-inline](#)
- [show power-inline interface](#)

show power-inline interface

This command displays a summary of Power over Ethernet (PoE) information for specified ports. If no ports are specified then PoE information is displayed for all ports on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show power-inline interface [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | Enter the PoE port(s) to display PoE specific information in the show output. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage To display PoE information for all PoE ports on the PSE, do not specify any ports.

Example To display the PoE port specific information for all PoE ports on the switch, use the following command:

```
awplus# show power-inline interface
```

To display the PoE port specific information for the port range 1.0.1 to 1.0.4, use the following command:

```
awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
```

Output **Figure 23-3: Example output from the show power-inline interface command**

```
awplus#show power-inline interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
Interface Admin Pri Oper Power Device Class Max(mW)
port1.0.1 Disabled Low Disabled 0 n/a n/a n/a
port1.0.2 Enabled High Powered 3840 Desk Phone 1 5000 [U]
port1.0.3 Enabled Crit Powered 6720 AccessPoint 2 7000 [C]
port1.0.4 Disabled Low Disabled 0 n/a n/a n/a
```

Table 23-3: Parameters in the show power-inline interface command output

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Interface | The PoE port(s) in the format <code>portx.y.z</code> , where <code>x</code> is the device number, <code>y</code> is the module number within the device, and <code>z</code> is the PoE port number within the module. |
| Admin | The administrative state of PoE on a PoE port, either Enabled or Disabled . |
| Pri | The current PoE priorities for PoE ports on the PSE, as configured from a power-inline priority command: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Low displays when the <code>low</code> parameter is issued. The lowest priority for a PoE enabled port (default). ■ High displays when the <code>high</code> parameter is issued. The second highest priority for a PoE enabled port. ■ Crit displays when the <code>critical</code> parameter is issued. The highest priority for a PoE enabled port. |
| Oper | The current PSE PoE port state when this command was issued: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Powered displays when there is a PD connected and power is being supplied from the PSE. ■ Denied displays when supplying power would make the PSE go over the power budget. ■ Disabled displays when the PoE port is administratively disabled. ■ Off displays when PoE has been disabled for the port. ■ Fault displays when a PSE goes over its power allocation. |
| Power | The power consumption in milliwatts (mW) for the PoE port when this command was entered. |
| Device | The description of the connected PD device if a description has been added with the power-inline description command. No description is shown for PDs not configured with the power-inline description command. |
| Class | The class of the connected PD, if power is being supplied to the PD from the PSE. See “Power Classes” on page 22.5 in Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction for further information about PD classes and the power assigned per class. |
| Max (mW) | The power in milliwatts (mW) allocated for the PoE port. Additionally, note the following as displayed per PoE port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ [U] if the power limit for a port was user configured (with the power-inline max command). ■ [L] if the power limit for a port was supplied by LLDP. ■ [C] if the power limit for a port was supplied by the PD class. |

Related Commands [show power-inline](#)
 [show power-inline interface detail](#)

show power-inline interface detail

This command displays detailed information for specified Power over Ethernet (PoE) port(s) on the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE).

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show power-inline interface [*<port-list>*] detail

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i><port-list></i> | Enter the PoE port(s) to display the PoE port specific information. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage To show detailed PoE information for all ports on the PSE, do not specify any ports.

The power allocated to each port is listed in the `Power allocated` row, and is limited by the maximum power per Powered Device (PD) class, or a user configured power limit.

Example To display detailed PoE port specific information for the port range 1.0.1 to 1.0.2, use the following command:

```
awplus# show power-inline interface port1.0.1-port1.0.2
detail
```

Output **Figure 23-4: Example output from the show power-inline interface detail command**

```
awplus#show power-inline interface port1.0.1-1.0.2 detail
Interface port1.0.1
  Powered device type: Desk Phone #1
  PoE admin enabled
  Priority Low
  Detection status: Powered
  Current power consumption: 4800 mW
  Powered device class: 1
  Power allocated: 5000 mW (from configuration)
  Detection of legacy devices is disabled
  Powered pairs: Data
Interface port1.0.2
  Powered device type: Access Point #3
  PoE admin enabled
  Priority High
  Detection status: Powered
  Current power consumption: 6720 mW
  Powered device class: 2
  Power allocated: 7000 mW (from powered device class)
  Detection of legacy devices is enabled
  Powered pairs: Data
```

Table 23-4: Parameters in show power-inline interface detail command output

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Interface | The PoE port(s) in the format <code>portx.y.z</code> , where <code>x</code> is the device number, <code>y</code> is the module number within the device, and <code>z</code> is the PoE port number within the module. |
| Powered device type: | The name of the PD, if connected and if power is being supplied to the PD from the PSE, configured with the power-inline description command. <code>n/a</code> displays if a description has not been configured for the PD. |
| PoE admin | The administrative state of PoE on a PoE capable port, either Enabled or Disabled as configured from the power-inline enable command or the no power-inline enable command respectively. |
| Priority | The PoE priority of a port, which is either Low , or High , or Critical , as configured by the power-inline priority command. |
| Detection status: | The current PSE PoE port state when this command was issued: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Powered displays when there is a PD connected and power is being supplied from the PSE. ■ Denied displays when supplying power would make the PSE go over the power budget. ■ Disabled displays when the PoE port is administratively disabled. ■ Off displays when PoE has been disabled for the port. ■ Fault displays when a PSE goes over its power allocation. |
| Current power consumption: | The power consumption for the PoE port when this command was entered. Note that the power consumption may have changed since the command was entered and the power is displayed. |
| Powered device class: | The class of the connected PD if connected, and if power is being supplied to the PD from the PSE. See Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction chapter for further information about PD classes and the power assigned per class. |
| Power allocated: | The power in milliwatts (mW) allocated for the PoE port. Additionally, note the following as displayed per PoE port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ [U] if the power limit for a port was user configured (with the power-inline max command). ■ [L] if the power limit for a port was supplied by LLDP. ■ [C] if the power limit for a port was supplied by the PD class. |
| Detection of legacy devices is | [Enabled Disabled] The status of legacy PoE detection on the PoE port, as configured for the PoE port with the power-inline allow-legacy command. |
| Powered pairs: | [Data Spare] The IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at standards allow for either data or spare twisted pairs to be used to transfer power to a PD. The powered pairs status for each port. AlliedWare Plus™ PoE switches implement IEEE 802.3af and IEEE 802.3at Endpoint PSE Alternative A (Data). |

Related Commands **show power-inline**
 show power-inline interface

Part 3: Layer Three, Switching and Routing



- **Chapter 24 Internet Protocol (IP) Addressing and Protocols**
- **Chapter 25 IP Addressing and Protocol Commands**
- **Chapter 26 IPv6 Introduction**
- **Chapter 27 IPv6 Commands**
- **Chapter 28 Static Routing Commands for Management Purposes**

Chapter 24: Internet Protocol (IP) Addressing and Protocols



| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction | 24.2 |
| Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) | 24.3 |
| Static ARP Entries | 24.3 |
| Timing Out ARP Entries..... | 24.3 |
| Deleting ARP Entries..... | 24.4 |
| ARP Logging | 24.5 |
| Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) | 24.6 |
| Checking IP Connections | 24.7 |
| Ping | 24.7 |
| Traceroute | 24.7 |

Introduction

This chapter describes how to configure IPv4 addressing and the protocols used to help IP function on your network.

As well as the familiar Internet (with uppercase “I”), the term internet (with lowercase “i”) can refer to any network (usually a wide area network) that uses the Internet Protocol. This chapter concentrates on this definition—a generalized network that uses IP as its network protocol.

Assigning an IP Address

To configure your device to perform IP routing (for example, to access the Internet) you need to configure IP. You also need to configure IP if you want to manage your device from any IP-based management process (such as SSH, Telnet, or SNMP).

Add an IP address to each of the interfaces that you want to process IP traffic.

You can configure an interface on your device with a static IP address, or with a dynamic IP address assigned using your device’s DHCP client.

Static IP addresses

To add a static IP address to an interface, enter interface mode for the interface that you want to configure, then use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address <ip-addr/prefix-length>
                        [secondary [label <label>]]
```

where <ip-address/m> the IP address followed by a slash then the prefix length. Note that you cannot specify the mask in dotted decimal notation in this command.

For example, to give the interface vlan1 an address of 192.168.10.10, with a class C subnet mask, use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address 192.168.10.10/24
```

The **secondary** parameter allows you to add multiple IP addresses to an interface using this command. Each interface must have a primary IP address before you can add a secondary address. Your device treats secondary addresses the same as primary addresses in most instances, such as responding for ARP requests for the IP address. However, the only packets generated that have a secondary address as source address are routing updates. You can define up to 32 secondary addresses on a single interface.

DHCP dynamic addresses

When you use the DHCP client, it obtains the IP address and subnet mask for the interface, and other IP configuration parameters, from a DHCP server. To configure an interface to gain its IP configuration using the DHCP client, use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address dhcp [client-id <interface>]
                        [hostname <hostname>]
```

If an IP interface is configured to get its IP address and subnet mask from DHCP, the interface does not take part in IP routing until the IP address and subnet mask have been set by DHCP.

If you need to make a static entry in your DHCP server for the device, you need your device's MAC address, which you can display by using the command:

```
awplus# show interface
```

See [Chapter 62, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol \(DHCP\) Introduction](#) for more information about DHCP.

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is used by your device to dynamically learn the Layer 2 address of devices in its networks. Most hosts also have a MAC physical address in addition to the assigned IP address. For Ethernet, this is a 6-byte, globally unique number. ARP enables your device to learn the physical address of the host that has a given IP address.

When your device needs to forward packets to a destination that it does not know the Layer 2 address of, it broadcasts an ARP request to determine where to send the packet. The ARP request is a broadcast packet and includes the target IP address. All stations on the LAN receive this broadcast but only one host recognizes its own IP address. It replies, thereby giving your device its physical address.

Your device creates a dynamic ARP entry in its ARP cache, to record the IP address to physical address mapping (also called a binding). It uses that ARP entry to forward further packets to that address.

The ARP protocol is described in RFC 826, **An Ethernet Address Resolution Protocol— or—Converting Network Protocol Addresses to 48 bit Ethernet Address for Transmission on Ethernet Hardware**.

Static ARP Entries

If your LAN includes hosts that do not support ARP, you can add a static ARP entry to the cache. However, it is rarely necessary to add an ARP entry this way. To add a static ARP entry, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# arp <ip-addr> <mac-address> [<port-number>]  
[alias]
```

Timing Out ARP Entries

Your device times out dynamic ARP entries to ensure that the cache does not fill with entries for hosts that are no longer active. If your device stops receiving traffic for a device specified in a dynamic ARP entry, it deletes the ARP entry after a configurable timeout period. Static ARP entries are not aged or automatically deleted.

Increasing the ARP timeout reduces the amount of network traffic. Decreasing the timeout makes your device more responsive to changes in network topology.

To set a timeout period, enter the interface mode, then use the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# arp-aging-timeout <0-432000>
```

Deleting ARP Entries

To remove a static ARP entry, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no arp <ip-addr>
```

To clear the ARP cache of dynamic entries, use the command:

```
awplus# clear arp-cache
```

This removes the dynamic ARP entries for all interfaces.

To display the entries in the ARP cache, use the command:

```
awplus)# show arp
```

The ARP cache will be repopulated by the normal ARP learning mechanism. As long as the entries are relearned quickly enough, deleting dynamic ARP entries does not affect:

- routes
- the TCP/UDP connection status

ARP Logging

You can enable your device to log static and dynamic ARP entries, and you can select either default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH) or standard IEEE format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) for the MAC addresses displayed in the ARP log output.

If this feature is enabled, ARP log messages are stored on the device in RAM. If the device is rebooted the ARP log messages are lost. ARP logging is disabled by default.

To enable ARP logging, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# arp log [mac-address-format ieee]
```

You can specify whether the MAC address is displayed in the default hexadecimal notation HHHH.HHHH.HHHH or in the standard IEEE format HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH.

To disable ARP logging, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no arp log [mac-address-format ieee]
```

To display the ARP log messages, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# show log | include ARP_LOG
```

See the sample ARP log output and descriptions of the fields displayed in the sample ARP log output in the [arp log command on page 25.6](#).

Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)

The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) allows networking devices to send information and control messages to other devices or hosts. Your device implements all non-obsolete ICMP functions.

The following table lists the ICMP messages implemented by your device.

| ICMP Message Type | Device Response |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Echo reply (0) | This is used to implement the ping command. Your device sends out an echo reply in response to an echo request. |
| Destination unreachable (3) | This message is sent when your device drops a packet because it did not have a route to the destination. |
| Redirect (5) | <p>Your device issues this message to inform a local host that its target is located on the same LAN (no routing is required) or when it detects a host using a non-optimal route (usually because a link has failed or changed its status).</p> <p>For example, if your device receives a packet destined to its own MAC address, but with a destination IP address of another host in the local subnet, it returns an ICMP redirect to the originating host.</p> <p>ICMP redirects are disabled on interfaces on which local proxy ARP is enabled.</p> |
| Echo request (8) | This is related to echo replies. If your device receives an echo request, it sends an echo reply. If you enter the ping command, your device generates echo requests. |
| Router Advertisements (10) | These are Router Discovery Protocol messages. If Router Discovery is enabled, your device sends these to announce the IP addresses of the sending interface. |
| Time to Live Exceeded (11) | If the TTL field in a packet falls to zero, your device sends this message. This occurs when there are too many hops in the path that a packet is traversing. |

ICMP messages are enabled on all interfaces by default. You can control the flow of ICMP messages across different interfaces using the `access-list` commands. See [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) and [Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#).

Checking IP Connections

To verify connections between networks and network devices, use the ping (Packet Internet Groper) and trace route functions on your device.

Ping

Ping tests the connectivity between two network devices to determine whether each network device can “see” the other device. Echo request packets are sent to the destination addresses and responses are displayed on the console.

If you can ping the end destination, then the physical, Layer 2 and Layer 3 links are functioning, and any difficulties are in the network or higher layers.

If pinging the end destination fails, use traceroute to discover the point of failure in the route to the destination.

To ping a device, use the command:

```
awplus# ping {<hostname>|<ipaddr>}
```

Traceroute

You can use traceroute to discover the route that packets pass between two systems running the IP protocol. Traceroute sends an initial UDP packets with the Time To Live (TTL) field in the IP header set starting at 1. The TTL field is increased by one for every subsequent packet sent until the destination is reached. Each hop along the path between two systems responds with a TTL exceeded packet (ICMP type 11) and from this the path is determined.

To use traceroute, use the command:

```
awplus# traceroute {<ip-addr>|<hostname>}
```

Enter either the hostname or the IP address of the device you are trying to reach.

Chapter 25: IP Addressing and Protocol Commands

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Introduction | 25.2 |
| Command List | 25.3 |
| arp-mac-disparity | 25.3 |
| arp-aging-timeout | 25.4 |
| arp (IP address MAC) | 25.5 |
| arp log | 25.6 |
| arp opportunistic-nd | 25.9 |
| clear arp-cache | 25.10 |
| debug ip packet interface | 25.11 |
| ip address | 25.13 |
| ip gratuitous-arp-link | 25.15 |
| ip name-server | 25.16 |
| ping | 25.17 |
| show arp | 25.18 |
| show debugging ip packet | 25.19 |
| show ip interface | 25.20 |
| show ip sockets | 25.21 |
| show ip traffic | 25.23 |
| tcpdump | 25.29 |
| traceroute | 25.30 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure the following protocols:

- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
- Domain Name Service (DNS)

For more information see [Chapter 24, Internet Protocol \(IP\) Addressing and Protocols](#).

Command List

arp-mac-disparity

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode for a VLAN interface to enable the reception of ARP packets that contain a multicast MAC address in the sender field.

By default, ARP packets that contain a multicast MAC address in the sender field are dropped. The **no** variant of this command reverts to the default behavior.

Syntax `arp-mac-disparity`

`no arp-mac-disparity`

Default ARP disparity is disabled. ARP packets with a multicast MAC address in the sender field are dropped.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage Normally, it is invalid for an ARP request to resolve a multicast MAC address. By default, ARP replies with a multicast MAC addresses are not learned. This command allows control over the learning of dynamic ARPs that resolve to a multicast MAC address.

ARP-MAC disparity may need to be enabled to support multicast network load balancing. The **arp-mac-disparity** command allows ARP replies quoting multicast MAC addresses to be accepted and learned. No **no arp-mac-disparity** command reverts to default behavior.

If the ARP-MAC disparity feature is enabled, then the switch sends traffic to a single port as specified by the ARP entry.

Examples To enable ARP MAC disparity on interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# arp-mac-disparity
```

To disable ARP MAC disparity on interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no arp-mac-disparity
```

Related Commands [clear arp-cache](#)
[show arp](#)

arp-aging-timeout

This command sets a timeout period on dynamic ARP entries associated with a specific interface. If your device stops receiving traffic for the host specified in a dynamic ARP entry, it deletes the ARP entry from the ARP cache after this timeout is reached.

Your device times out dynamic ARP entries to ensure that the cache does not fill with entries for hosts that are no longer active. Static ARP entries are not aged or automatically deleted.

By default the time limit for dynamic ARP entries is 300 seconds on all interfaces.

The **no** variant of this command sets the time limit to the default of 300 seconds.

Syntax `arp-aging-timeout <0-432000>`

`no arp-aging timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code><0-432000></code> | The timeout period in seconds. |

Default 300 seconds (5 minutes)

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Example To set the ARP entries on interface `vlan30` to time out after two minutes, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# interface vlan30
awplus(config-if)# arp-aging-timeout 120
```

Related Commands [clear arp-cache](#)
[show arp](#)

arp (IP address MAC)

This command adds a static ARP entry to the ARP cache. This is typically used to add entries for hosts that do not support ARP or to speed up the address resolution function for a host. The ARP entry must not already exist. Use the **alias** parameter to allow your device to respond to ARP requests for this IP address.

The **no** variant of this command removes the static ARP entry. Use the [clear arp-cache command on page 25.10](#) to remove the dynamic ARP entries in the ARP cache.

Syntax `arp <ip-addr> <mac-address> [<port-number>] [alias]`
`no arp <ip-addr>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><ip-addr></code> | IPv4 address of the device you are adding as a static ARP entry. |
| <code><mac-address></code> | MAC address of the device you are adding as a static ARP entry, in hexadecimal notation with the format HHHH.HHHH.HHHH. |
| <code><port-number></code> | The port number associated with the IP address. Specify this when the IP address is part of a VLAN. |
| <code>alias</code> | Allows your device to respond to ARP requests for the IP address. Proxy ARP must be enabled on the interface before using this parameter. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To add the IP address 10.10.10.9 with the MAC address 0010.2533.4655 into the ARP cache, and have your device respond to ARP requests for this address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# arp 10.10.10.9 0010.2355.4566 alias
```

Related Commands [clear arp-cache](#)
[show arp](#)

arp log

This command enables the logging of dynamic and static ARP entries in the ARP cache. The ARP cache contains mappings of switch ports, VLAN IDs, and IP addresses to physical MAC addresses for hosts.

This command can display the MAC addresses in the ARP log either using the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH), or using the IEEE standard hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH).

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the logging of dynamic and static ARP entries in the ARP cache.

Syntax `arp log [mac-address-format ieee]`
`no arp log [mac-address-format ieee]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>mac-address-format ieee</code> | Display the MAC address in hexadecimal notation with the standard IEEE format (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH), instead of displaying the MAC address with the default hexadecimal format (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH). |

Default The ARP logging feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You have the option to change how the MAC address is displayed in the ARP log message, to use the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH), or the IEEE format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) when you apply the **mac-address-format ieee** parameter.

Enter the **arp log** command without the optional **mac-address-format ieee** parameter specified for MAC addresses in the ARP log output to use the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH).

Enter the **arp log mac-address-format ieee** command for MAC addresses in the ARP log output to use the IEEE standard format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH).

Use the **no** variant of this command (**no arp log**) without the optional **mac-address-format ieee** parameter specified to disable ARP logging on the switch

Use the **no** variant of this command with the optional **mac-address-format ieee** parameter specified (**no arp log mac-address-format ieee**) to disable IEEE standard format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) and revert to the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH) for MAC addresses in the ARP log output.

To display ARP log messages use the **show log | include ARP_LOG** command.

Examples To enable ARP logging and use the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# arp log
```

To disable ARP logging on the switch of MAC addresses displayed using the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no arp log
```

To enable ARP logging and to specify that the MAC address in the log message is displayed in the standard IEEE format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# arp log mac-address-format ieee
```

To disable ARP logging on the switch of MAC addresses displayed using the standard IEEE format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH), and revert to the use of the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH) instead, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no arp log mac-address-format ieee
```

To display ARP log messages, use following command:

```
awplus# show log | include ARP_LOG
```

Output Below is example output from the **show log | include ARP_LOG** command after enabling ARP logging displaying default hexadecimal notation MAC addresses (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH) using the **arp log** command.

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#arp log
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show log | include ARP_LOG
2010 Apr 6 06:21:01 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 add
0013.4078.3b98 (192.168.2.4)
2010 Apr 6 06:22:30 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 del
0013.4078.3b98 (192.168.2.4)
2010 Apr 6 06:23:26 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 add
0030.940e.136b (192.168.2.20)
2010 Apr 6 06:23:30 user.notice awplus IMISH[1830]: show log | include ARP_LOG
```

Below is example output from the **show log | include ARP_LOG** command after enabling ARP logging displaying IEEE standard format hexadecimal notation MAC addresses (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) using the **arp log mac-address format ieee** command.

Figure 25-1: Example output from the show log | include ARP_LOG command

```
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#arp log mac-address-format ieee
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show log | include ARP_LOG
2010 Apr  6 06:25:28 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 add 00-
17-9a-b6-03-69 (192.168.2.12)
2010 Apr  6 06:25:30 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 add 00-
03-37-6b-a6-a5 (192.168.2.10)
2010 Apr  6 06:26:53 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 del 00-
30-94-0e-13-6b (192.168.2.20)
2010 Apr  6 06:27:31 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 del 00-
17-9a-b6-03-69 (192.168.2.12)
2010 Apr  6 06:28:09 user.notice awplus HSL[1007]: ARP_LOG port1.0.6 vlan1 del 00-
03-37-6b-a6-a5 (192.168.2.10)
2010 Apr  6 06:28:14 user.notice awplus IMISH[1830]: show log | include ARP_LOG
```

Below are the parameters in output of the **show log | include ARP_LOG** command with an ARP log message format of **<ARP_LOG> <port number> <VLAN ID> <Operation> <MAC> <IP>** after **<date> <time> <severity> <hostname> <program name>** information.

Table 25-1: Parameters in output of the show log | include ARP_LOG command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <ARP_LOG> | Indicates ARP log entry information follows <date> <time> <severity> <hostname> <program name> log information. |
| <port number> | Indicates switch port number for the ARP log entry. |
| <VLAN ID> | Indicates the VLAN ID for the ARP log entry. |
| <Operation> | Indicates 'add' if the ARP log entry displays an ARP addition. Indicates 'del' if the ARP log entry displays an ARP deletion. |
| <MAC> | Indicates the MAC address for the ARP log entry, either in the default hexadecimal notation (HHHH.HHHH.HHHH) or in the IEEE standard format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) as specified with the arp log or the arp log mac-address-format ieee command. |
| <IP> | Indicates the IP address for the ARP log entry. |

Validation Commands **show running-config**

Related Commands **show log**

arp opportunistic-nd

This command changes the behavior for unsolicited ARP packet forwarding on the switch.

Use this command to enable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global ARP cache.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global ARP cache.

Syntax `arp opportunistic-nd`
`no arp opportunistic-nd`

Default Opportunistic neighbor discovery is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When opportunistic neighbor discovery is enabled, the switch will reply to any received unsolicited ARP packets (but not gratuitous ARP packets). The source MAC address for the unsolicited ARP packet is added to the ARP cache, so the switch forwards the ARP packet. When opportunistic neighbor discovery is disabled, the source MAC address for the ARP packet is not added to the ARP cache, so the ARP packet is not forwarded by the switch.

Examples To enable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global ARP cache, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# arp opportunistic-nd
```

To disable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global ARP cache, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no arp opportunistic-nd
```

Related Commands [ipv6 opportunistic-nd](#)
[show arp](#)

Validation Commands [show running-config interface](#)

clear arp-cache

This command deletes dynamic ARP entries from the ARP cache. You can optionally specify the IPv4 address of an ARP entry to be cleared from the ARP cache.

Syntax `clear arp-cache [<ip-address>]`

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage To display the entries in the ARP cache, use the **show arp** command. To remove static ARP entries, use the no variant of the **arp (IP address MAC)** command on page 25.5.

Example To clear all dynamic ARP entries, use the command:

```
awplus# clear arp-cache
```

To clear all dynamic ARP entries associated with the IPv4 address 192.168.1.1, use the command:

```
awplus# clear arp-cache 192.168.1.1
```

Related Commands **arp-mac-disparity**
arp (IP address MAC)
show arp

debug ip packet interface

The **debug ip packet interface** command enables IP packet debug and is controlled by the **terminal monitor** command.

If the optional **icmp** keyword is specified then ICMP packets are shown in the output.

The **no** variant of this command disables the **debug ip interface** command.

Syntax

```
debug ip packet interface {<interface-name>|all}
    [address <ip-address>|verbose|hex|arp|udp|tcp|icmp]
no debug ip packet interface [<interface-name>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <interface> | Specify a single Layer 3 interface name (not a range of interfaces) This keyword can be specified as either all or as a single Layer 3 interface to show debugging for either all interfaces or a single interface. |
| all | Specify all Layer 3 interfaces on the switch. |
| <ip-address> | Specify an IPv4 address. If this keyword is specified, then only packets with the specified IP address as specified in the ip-address placeholder are shown in the output. |
| verbose | Specify verbose to output more of the IP packet. If this keyword is specified then more of the packet is shown in the output. |
| hex | Specify hex to output the IP packet in hexadecimal. If this keyword is specified, then the output for the packet is shown in hex. |
| arp | Specify arp to output ARP protocol packets. If this keyword is specified, then ARP packets are shown in the output. |
| udp | Specify udp to output UDP protocol packets. If this keyword is specified then UDP packets are shown in the output. |
| tcp | Specify tcp to output TCP protocol packets. If this keyword is specified, then TCP packets are shown in the output. |
| icmp | Specify icmp to output ICMP protocol packets. If this keyword is specified, then ICMP packets are shown in the output. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To turn on ARP packet debugging on `vlan1`, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ip packet interface vlan1 arp
```

To turn on all packet debugging on all interfaces on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ip packet interface all
```

To turn on TCP packet debugging on `vlan1` and IP address `192.168.2.4`, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ip packet interface vlan1 address 192.168.2.4  
tcp
```

To turn off IP packet interface debugging on all interfaces, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ip packet interface
```

To turn off IP packet interface debugging on interface `vlan2`, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ip packet interface vlan2
```

Related Commands [no debug all](#)
[tcpdump](#)
[terminal monitor](#)

ip address

This command sets a static IP address on an interface. To set the primary IP address on the interface, specify only **ip address <ip-address/m>**. This overwrites any configured primary IP address. To add additional IP addresses on this interface, use the **secondary** parameter. You must configure a primary address on the interface before configuring a secondary address.

 **Note** Use **show running-config** interface not **show ip interface brief** when you need to view a secondary address configured on an interface. **show ip interface brief** will only show the primary address not a secondary address for an interface.

The **no** variant of this command removes the IP address from the interface. You cannot remove the primary address when a secondary address is present.

Syntax

```
ip address <ip-addr/prefix-length> [secondary [label <label>]]
no ip address <ip-addr/prefix-length> [secondary]
no ip address
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <ip-addr/prefix-length> | The IPv4 address and prefix length you are assigning to the interface. |
| label | Adds a user-defined description of the secondary IP address. |
| <label> | A user-defined description of the secondary IP address. Valid characters are any printable character and spaces. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface or a local loopback interface.

Examples To add the primary IP address 10.10.10.50/24 to the interface `vlan3`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan3
awplus(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.50/24
```

To add the secondary IP address 10.10.11.50/24 to the same interface, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan3
awplus(config-if)# ip address 10.10.11.50/24 secondary
```

To add the IP address 10.10.11.50/24 to the local loopback interface lo, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface lo
awplus(config-if)# ip address 10.10.11.50/24
```

Related Commands **interface (to configure)**
 show ip interface
 show running-config interface

ip gratuitous-arp-link

This command sets the Gratuitous ARP time limit for all switchports. The time limit restricts the sending of Gratuitous ARP packets to one Gratuitous ARP packet within the time in seconds.

Note  This command specifies time between sequences of Gratuitous ARP packets, and time between individual Gratuitous ARP packets occurring in a sequence, to allow legacy support for older devices and interoperation between other devices that are not ready to receive and forward data until several seconds after linkup. Additionally, jitter has been applied to the delay following linkup, so Gratuitous ARP packets applicable to a given port are spread over a period of 1 second so are not all sent at once. Remaining Gratuitous ARP packets in the sequence occur after a fixed delay from the first one.

Syntax `ip gratuitous-arp-link <0-300>`
`no ip gratuitous-arp-link`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code><0-300></code> | Specify the minimum time between sequences of Gratuitous ARPs and the fixed time between Gratuitous ARPs occurring in a sequence, in seconds. 0 disables the sending of Gratuitous ARP packets. The default is 8 seconds. |

Default The default Gratuitous ARP time limit for all switchports is 8 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Every switchport will send a sequence of 3 Gratuitous ARP packets to each VLAN that the switchport is a member of, whenever the switchport moves to the forwarding state. The first Gratuitous ARP packet is sent 1 second after the switchport becomes a forwarding switchport. The second and third Gratuitous ARP packets are each sent after the time period specified by the Gratuitous ARP time limit.

Additionally, the Gratuitous ARP time limit specifies the minimum time between the end of one Gratuitous ARP sequence and the start of another Gratuitous ARP sequence. When a link is flapping, the switchport's state is set to forwarding several times. The Gratuitous ARP time limit is imposed to prevent Gratuitous ARP packets from being sent undesirably often.

Examples To disable the sending of Gratuitous ARP packets, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip gratuitous-arp-link 0
```

To restrict the sending of Gratuitous ARP packets to one every 20 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip gratuitous-arp-link 20
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

ip name-server

This command adds IPv4 or IPv6 DNS server addresses. The DNS client on your device sends DNS queries to IP addresses in this list when trying to resolve a host name. Host names cannot be resolved until you have added at least one server to this list. A maximum of three name servers can be added to this list.

The **no** variant of this command removes the specified DNS name-server address.

Syntax `ip name-server <ip-addr>`
`no ip name-server <ip-addr>`

ping

This command sends a query to another IPv4 host (send Echo Request messages).

Syntax ping [ip] <host> [broadcast] [df-bit {yes|no}] [interval <0-128>] [pattern <hex-data-pattern>] [repeat {<1-2147483647>|continuous}] [size <36-18024>] [source <ip-addr>] [timeout <1-65535>] [tos <0-255>]

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <host> | The destination IP address or hostname. |
| broadcast | Allow pinging of a broadcast address. |
| df-bit | Enable or disable the do-not-fragment bit in the IP header. |
| interval <0-128> | Specify the time interval in seconds between sending ping packets. The default is 1. |
| pattern <hex-data-pattern> | Specify the hex data pattern. |
| repeat | Specify the number of ping packets to send. |
| <1-2147483647> | Specify repeat count. The default is 5. |
| continuous | Continuous ping |
| size <36-18024> | The number of data bytes to send, excluding the 8 byte ICMP header. The default is 56 (64 ICMP data bytes). |
| source <ip-addr> | The IP address of a configured IP interface to use as the source in the IP header of the ping packet. |
| timeout <1-65535> | The time in seconds to wait for echo replies if the ARP entry is present, before reporting that no reply was received. If no ARP entry is present, it does not wait. |
| tos <0-255> | The value of the type of service in the IP header. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To ping the IP address 10.10.0.5 use the following command:

```
awplus# ping 10.10.0.5
```

show arp

Use this command to display entries in the ARP routing and forwarding table—the ARP cache contains mappings of IP addresses to physical addresses for hosts. To have a dynamic entry in the ARP cache, a host must have used the ARP protocol to access another host.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show arp [security [interface [<interface-list>]]`
`show arp [statistics [detail]][interface [<interface-list>]]`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Running this command with no additional parameters will display all entries in the ARP routing and forwarding table.

Example To display all ARP entries in the ARP cache, use the following command:

```
awplus# show arp
```

Output **Figure 25-2: Example output from the show arp command**

```
awplus#show arp
```

| IP Address | MAC Address | Interface | Port | Type |
|---------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| 192.168.10.2 | 0015.77ad.fad8 | vlan1 | port1.0.1 | dynamic |
| 192.168.20.2 | 0015.77ad.fa48 | vlan2 | port1.0.2 | dynamic |
| 192.168.1.100 | 00d0.6b04.2a42 | vlan2 | port1.0.6 | static |

Table 25-2: Parameters in the output of the show arp command

| Parameter | Meaning |
|-------------|---|
| IP Address | IP address of the network device this entry maps to. |
| MAC Address | Hardware address of the network device. |
| Interface | Interface over which the network device is accessed. |
| Port | Physical port that the network device is attached to. |
| Type | Whether the entry is a static or dynamic entry. Static entries are added using the arp (IP address MAC) command. Dynamic entries are learned from ARP request/reply message exchanges. |

Related Commands **arp (IP address MAC)**
clear arp-cache

show debugging ip packet

Use this command to show the IP interface debugging status. IP interface debugging is set using the **debug ip packet interface** command.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show debugging ip packet

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the IP interface debugging status when the terminal monitor off, use the command:

```
awplus# terminal no monitor
awplus# show debug ip packet
```

Output **Figure 25-3: Example output from the show debugging ip packet command with terminal monitor off**

```
awplus#terminal no monitor
awplus#show debug ip packet
IP debugging status:
interface all tcp (stopped)
interface vlan1 arp verbose (stopped)
```

Example To display the IP interface debugging status when the terminal monitor is on, use the command:

```
awplus# terminal monitor
awplus# show debug ip packet
```

Output **Figure 25-4: Example output from the show debugging ip packet command with terminal monitor on**

```
awplus#terminal monitor
awplus#show debug ip packet
IP debugging status:
interface all tcp (running)
interface vlan1 arp verbose (running)
```

Related Commands **debug ip packet interface**
terminal monitor

show ip interface

Use this command to display information about interfaces and the IP addresses assigned to them. To display information about a specific interface, specify the interface name with the command.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ip interface [<interface-list>] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces to display information about. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface, e.g. <code>vlan2</code> ■ a continuous range of interfaces separated by a hyphen, e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code> or <code>vlan2-vlan5</code> ■ a comma-separated list of interfaces or interface ranges, e.g. <code>vlan2, vlan5, vlan8-10</code> <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To show brief information for the assigned IP address for interface `port1.0.2` use the command:

```
awplus# show ip interface port1.0.2 brief
```

To show the IP addresses assigned to `vlan2` and `vlan3`, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip interface vlan2-3 brief
```

Output **Figure 25-5: Example output from the show ip interface brief command**

| Interface | IP-Address | Status | Protocol |
|-----------|-------------|----------|----------|
| port1.0.2 | unassigned | admin up | down |
| vlan1 | 192.168.1.1 | admin up | running |
| vlan2 | 192.168.2.1 | admin up | running |
| vlan3 | 192.168.3.1 | admin up | running |
| vlan8 | unassigned | admin up | down |

show ip sockets

Use this command to display information about the IP or TCP sockets that are present on the switch. It includes TCP, UDP listen sockets, displaying associated IP address and port.

The information displayed for established TCP sessions includes the remote IP address, port, and session state. Raw IP protocol listen socket information is also displayed for protocols such as ICMP6, which are configured to receive IP packets with the associated protocol number.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show ip sockets

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Use this command to verify that the socket being used is opening correctly. If there is a local and remote endpoint, a connection is established with the ports indicated.

Note that this command does not display sockets that are used internally for exchanging data between the various processes that exist on the device and are involved in its operation and management. It only displays sockets that are present for the purposes of communicating with other external devices.

Example To display ip sockets currently present on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip sockets
```

Output **Figure 25-6: Example output from the show ip sockets command**

```
Socket information
Not showing 40 local connections
Not showing 7 local listening ports

Typ Local Address          Remote Address           State
tcp 0.0.0.0:111             0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp 0.0.0.0:80               0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp 0.0.0.0:23               0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp 0.0.0.0:443             0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp 0.0.0.0:4743            0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp 0.0.0.0:873             0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp :::23                   :::*                     LISTEN
udp 0.0.0.0:111             0.0.0.0:*
udp 226.94.1.1:5405        0.0.0.0:*
udp 0.0.0.0:161            0.0.0.0:*
udp :::161                 :::*
raw 0.0.0.0:112             0.0.0.0:*               112
raw :::58                   :::*                     58
raw :::112                  :::*                     112
```

Table 25-3: Parameters in the output of the show ip sockets command

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| Not showing <number> local connections | This field refers to established sessions between processes internal to the device, that are used in its operation and management. These sessions are not displayed as they are not useful to the user. <number> is some positive integer. |
| Not showing <number> local listening ports | This field refers to listening sockets belonging to processes internal to the device, that are used in its operation and management. They are not available to receive data from other devices. These sessions are not displayed as they are not useful to the user. <number> is some positive integer. |
| Type | This column displays the type of the socket. Possible values for this column are: tcp : IP Protocol 6 udp : IP Protocol 17 raw : Indicates that socket is for a non port-orientated protocol (i.e. a protocol other than TCP or UDP) where all packets of a specified IP protocol type are accepted. For raw socket entries the protocol type is indicated in subsequent columns. |
| Local Address | For TCP and UDP listening sockets this shows the destination IP address and destination TCP or UDP port number for which the socket will receive packets. The address and port are separated by ':'. If the socket will accept packets addressed to any of the switch's IP addresses, the IP address will be 0.0.0.0 for IPv4 or :: for IPv6. For active TCP sessions the IP address will display which of the switches addresses the session was established with. For raw sockets this displays the IP address and IP protocol for which the socket will accept IP packets. The address and protocol are separated by ':'. If the socket will accept packets addressed to any of the switch's IP addresses, the IP address will be 0.0.0.0 for IPv4 and ::. IP Protocol assignments are described at: www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers |
| Remote Address | For TCP and UDP listening sockets this shows the source IP address (either IPv4 or IPv6) and source TCP or UDP port number for which the socket will accept packets. The address and port are separated by ':'. If the socket will accept packets addressed from any IP address, the IP address will be 0.0.0.0 for IPv4. This is the usual case for a listening socket. Normally for a listen socket any source port will be accepted. This is indicated by ". For active TCP sessions the IP address will display the remote address and port the session was established with. For raw sockets the entry in this column will be 0.0.0.0: for IPv4. |
| State | This column shows the state of the socket. For TCP sockets this shows the state of the TCP state machine. For UDP sockets this column is blank. For raw sockets it contains the IP protocol number. The possible TCP states are: LISTEN SYN-SENT SYN-RECEIVED ESTABLISHED FIN-WAIT-1 FIN-WAIT-2 CLOSE-WAIT CLOSING LAST-ACK TIME-WAIT CLOSED RFC793 contains the TCP state machine diagram with Section 3.2 describing each of the states. |

show ip traffic

Use this command to display statistics regarding IP traffic sent and received by all interfaces on the switch, showing totals for IP and IPv6 and then broken down into sub-categories such as TCP, UDP, ICMP and their IPv6 equivalents when appropriate.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show ip traffic

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display IP traffic statistics, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip traffic
```

Output **Figure 25-7: Example output from the show ip traffic command**

```
IP:
  261998 packets received
  261998 delivered
  261998 sent
  69721 multicast packets received
  69721 multicast packets sent
  23202841 bytes received
  23202841 bytes sent
  7669296 multicast bytes received
  7669296 multicast bytes sent
IPv6:
  28 packets discarded on transmit due to no route
ICMP6:
UDP6:
UDPLite6:
TCP:
  0 remote connections established
  40 local connections established
  7 remote listening ports
  7 local listening ports
  261 active connection openings
  247 passive connection openings
  14 connection attempts failed
  122535 segments received
  122535 segments transmitted
  14 resets transmitted
  227 TCP sockets finished time wait in fast timer
  155 delayed acks sent
  21187 headers predicted
  736 pure ACKs
  80497 pure ACKs predicted
UDP:
  139468 datagrams received
  139468 datagrams sent
UDPLite:
```

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------|
| IPv4 | IPv4 counters |
| IPv6 | IPv6 counters |

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| received packets with no route | Received packets with no route |
| truncated packets received | Truncated packets received |
| multicast packets received | Multicast packets received |
| multicast packets sent | Multicast packets sent |
| broadcast packets received | Broadcast packets received |
| broadcast packets sent | Broadcast packets sent |
| bytes received | Bytes received |
| bytes sent | Bytes sent |
| multicast bytes received | Multicast bytes received |
| multicast bytes sent | Multicast bytes sent |
| broadcast bytes received | Broadcast bytes received |
| broadcast bytes sent | Broadcast bytes sent |
| packets received | Packets received |
| packets received with invalid headers | Packets received with invalid headers |
| oversize packets received | Oversize packets received |
| packets received with no route | Packets received with no route |
| packets received with invalid address | Packets received with invalid address |
| packets received with unknown protocol | Packets received with unknown protocol |
| truncated packets received | Truncated packets received |
| received packets discarded | Received packets discarded |
| received packets delivered | Received packets delivered |
| forwarded packets transmitted | Forwarded packets transmitted |
| packets transmitted | Packets transmitted |
| packets discarded on transmit | Packets discarded on transmit |
| packets discarded on transmit due to no route | Packets discarded on transmit due to no route |
| fragment reassembly timeouts | Fragment reassembly timeouts |
| fragment reassembly required | Fragment reassembly required |
| fragment reassembly OK | Fragment reassembly OK |
| fragment reassembly failures | Fragment reassembly failures |
| fragmentations succeeded | Fragmentations succeeded |

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| fragmentations failed | Fragmentations failed |
| fragments created | Fragments created |
| ICMP6 | ICMPv6 counters |
| messages received | Messages received |
| errors received | Errors received |
| messages sent | Messages sent |
| TCP | TCP counters |
| remote connections established | Remote connections established |
| local connections established | Local connections established |
| remote listening ports | Remote listening ports |
| local listening ports | Local listening ports |
| active connection openings | Active connection openings |
| passive connection openings | Passive connection openings |
| connection attempts failed | Connection attempts failed |
| connection resets received | Connection resets received |
| segments received | Segments received |
| segments transmitted | Segments transmitted |
| retransmits | Retransmits |
| bad segments received | Bad segments received |
| resets transmitted | Resets transmitted |
| datagrams received | Datagrams received |
| received for unknown port | Received for unknown port |
| datagrams sent | Datagrams sent |
| syncookies sent | Syncookies sent |
| syncookies received | Syncookies received |
| syncookies failed | Syncookies failed |
| embryonic resets | Embryonic resets |
| sockets pruned | Sockets pruned |
| ICMPs out of window | ICMPs out of window |
| ICMPs dropped due to lock | ICMPs dropped due to lock |
| ARPs filtered | ARPs filtered |

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| TCP sockets finished time wait in fast timer | TCP sockets finished time wait in fast timer |
| time wait sockets recycled by time stamp | Time wait sockets recycled by time stamp |
| time wait sockets killed | Time wait sockets killed |
| delayed acks sent | Delayed acks sent delayed acks further delayed because of locked socket |
| delayed acks lost | Delayed acks lost |
| listening socket overflows | Listening socket overflows |
| listening socket drops | Listening socket drops |
| headers predicted | Headers predicted |
| pure ACKs | Pure ACKs |
| pure ACKs predicted | Pure ACKs predicted |
| losses recovered by TCP Reno | Losses recovered by TCP Reno |
| losses recovered by SACK | Losses recovered by SACK |
| SACKs renegged | SACKs renegged |
| detected reordering by FACK | Detected reordering by FACK |
| detected reordering by SACK | Detected reordering by SACK |
| detected reordering by TCP Reno | Detected reordering by TCP Reno |
| detected reordering by sequence | Detected reordering by sequence |
| full undos | Full undos |
| partial undos | Partial undos |
| SACK undos | SACK undos |
| loss undos | Loss undos |
| segments lost | Segments lost |
| lost retransmits | Lost retransmits |
| TCP Reno failures | TCP Reno failures |
| SACK failures | SACK failures |
| loss failures | Loss failures |
| fast retransmits | Fast retransmits |
| forward retransmits | Forward retransmits |
| retransmits in slow start | Retransmits in slow start |

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| timeouts | Timeouts |
| TCP Reno recovery failures | TCP Reno recovery failures |
| SACK recovery failures | SACK recovery failures |
| collapsed segments received | Collapsed segments received |
| DSACKs sent for old packets | DSACKs sent for old packets |
| DSACKs sent for out of order segments | DSACKs sent for out of order segments |
| DSACKs received | DSACKs received |
| DSACKs received for out of order segments | DSACKs received for out of order segments |
| connections reset due to unexpected SYN | Connections reset due to unexpected SYN |
| connections reset due to unexpected data | Connections reset due to unexpected data |
| connections reset due to early user close | Connections reset due to early user close |
| connections aborted due to lack of memory | Connections aborted due to lack of memory |
| connections aborted due to timeout | Connections aborted due to timeout |
| connections aborted due to lingering | Connections aborted due to lingering |
| connection aborts due to connection failure | Connection aborts due to connection failure |
| TCP memory pressure events | TCP memory pressure events |
| SACKs discarded | SACKs discarded |
| Old DSACKs ignored | Old DSACKs ignored |
| DSACKs ignored without undo | DSACKs ignored without undo |
| Spurious RTOs | Spurious RTOs |
| TCP MD5 Not Found | TCP MD5 Not Found |
| TCP MD5 Unexpected | TCP MD5 Unexpected |
| TCP SACKs shifted | TCP SACKs shifted |
| TCP SACKs merged | TCP SACKs merged |
| TCP SACK shift fallback | TCP SACK shift fallback |
| UDP | UDP Counters |
| UDPLite | UDPLite Counters |

Table 25-4: Parameters in the output of the show ip traffic command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| UDP6 | UDPv6 Counters |
| UDPLite6 | UDPLitev6 Counters |
| datagrams received | Datagrams received |
| datagrams received for unknown port | Datagrams received for unknown port |
| datagram receive errors | Datagram receive errors |
| datagrams transmitted | Datagrams transmitted |
| datagrams received | Datagrams received |
| datagrams received for unknown port | Datagrams received for unknown port |
| datagram receive errors | Datagram receive errors |
| datagrams transmitted | Datagrams transmitted |

tcpdump

Use this command to start a tcpdump, which gives the same output as the Unix-like **tcpdump** command to display TCP/IP traffic. Press `<ctrl> + c` to stop a running tcpdump.

Syntax `tcpdump <line>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><line></code> | Specify the dump options. For more information on the options for this placeholder see URL www.tcpdump.org/tcpdump_man.html |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To start a tcpdump running to capture IP packets, enter the command:

```
awplus# tcpdump ip
```

Output **Figure 25-8: Example output from the tcpdump command**

```
03:40:33.221337 IP 192.168.1.1 > 224.0.0.13: PIMv2, Hello,
length: 34
1 packets captured
2 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

Related Commands [debug ip packet interface](#)

traceroute

Use this command to trace the route to the specified IPv4 host.

Syntax `traceroute {<ip-addr>|<hostname>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><ip-addr></code> | The destination IPv4 address. The IPv4 address uses the format A.B.C.D. |
| <code><hostname></code> | The destination hostname. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# traceroute 10.10.0.5
```

This command applies the functionality of the [no debug ip packet interface](#) command on page 25.11.

Chapter 26: IPv6 Introduction



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 26.2 |
| Overview | 26.2 |
| IPv6 Addresses and Prefixes | 26.3 |
| Address Types | 26.3 |
| IPv6 Headers | 26.4 |
| The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) | 26.7 |
| IPv6 Routing | 26.10 |
| Integration of IPv4 and IPv6 | 26.10 |
| IPv6 on your Switch | 26.11 |
| Enabling IPv6 | 26.11 |
| IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) | 26.11 |
| IPv6 EUI-64 Addressing | 26.11 |
| IPv6 Link-local Addresses | 26.12 |
| IPv6 RA Guard | 26.13 |
| RA Guard Introduction | 26.13 |
| Enabling IPv6 RA Guard | 26.13 |

Introduction

This chapter describes the main features of IPv6, the switch's implementation of IPv6 and how to configure and operate IPv6 on the switch.

This chapter describes the following IPv6 features:

- linking together networks that run IPv6.
- allowing address autoconfiguration of hosts connected to the switch.

Overview

IPv6 is the next generation of the Internet Protocol (IP). It has primarily been developed to solve the problem of the eventual exhaustion of the IPv4 address space, but also offers other enhancements. IPv6 addresses are 16 bytes long, in contrast to IPv4's 4 byte addresses. Other features of IPv6 include:

- Address structure improvements:
 - « globally unique addresses with more levels of addressing hierarchy to reduce the size of routing tables
 - « autoconfiguration of addresses by hosts
 - « improved scalability of multicast routing by adding a "scope" field to multicast addresses
 - « a new type of address, the "anycast address", which sends packets to any one of a group of devices
- Removes the need for packet fragmentation en-route, by dynamic determination of the largest packet size that is supported by every link in the path. A link's MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) must be at least 1280 bytes, compared with 576 bytes for IPv4.
- Includes a Traffic Class that allow packets to be labeled with an appropriate priority. If the network becomes congested, the lowest priority packets are dropped.
- Includes Flow labels that indicate to intermediate switches and routers that packets are part of a flow, and that a particular flow requires a particular type of service. This feature enables, for example, real-time processing of data streams. It also increases routing speed because the forwarding router or switch needs only to check the flow label, not the rest of the header. The handling indicated by the flow label can be done by the IPv6 Hop-by-Hop header, or by a separate protocol such as RSVP.
- Mandatory authentication and data integrity protocols through IPsec. IPsec is optional in IPv4.

IPv6 Addresses and Prefixes

IPv6 addresses are hexadecimal, and are made up of eight pairs of octets separated by colons. An example of a valid address is **2001:0db8:0000:0000:0260:0000:97ff:64aa**. In the interests of brevity, addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros can be omitted, so this address can be written as **2001:db8:0:0:260:0:97ff:64aa**.
- Consecutive zeros can be replaced with a double colon, so this address can be written as **2001:db8::260:0:97ff:64a**. Note that a double colon can replace any number of consecutive zeros, but an address can contain only one double colon.

Like IPv4 addresses, a proportion of the leftmost bits of the IPv6 address can be used to indicate the subnet, rather than a single node. This part of the address is called the *prefix*. Prefixes provide the equivalent functionality to a subnet mask in IPv4, allowing a subnet to be addressed, rather than a single node. If a prefix is specified, the IPv6 address is followed by a slash and the number of bits that represent the prefix. For example, **2001::/16** indicates that the first 16 bits (**2001**) of the address **2001:0:0:0:0:0:0:0** represent the prefix.

Like IPv4 addresses, IPv6 addresses are attached to interfaces.

Address Types

IPv6 supports the following address types:

- Unicast
- Multicast
- Anycast

Unicast addresses

A unicast address is attached to a single interface and delivers packets only to that interface. The following special addresses have been defined:

- IPv4-compatible and IPv4-mapped addresses. IPv4-compatible addresses are used to tunnel IPv6 packets across an IPv4 network. IPv4-mapped addresses are used by an IPv6 host to communicate with an IPv4 host. The IPv6 host addresses the packet to the mapped address.
- Link-local addresses can be used on the local network on which the interface is attached. The link-local prefix is **fe80::/10**. Different interfaces on a device may have the same link-local address. The switch will automatically generate a link-local address for all interfaces that are using IPv6. Commands entered to configure link-local addresses that match any automatically generated link-local addresses by the switch will not be executed.

Enter the **show ipv6 interface** command to display automatically generated link-local addresses not shown in the **running-config**. Automatically generated link-local addresses contain the last six hexadecimal numbers of the MAC address for a given interface.
- The Loopback address, consisting of **::1**, which is the equivalent of the IPv4 loopback address and allows a host to send packets to itself.
- The Unspecified address, consisting of **::**, which is the equivalent of the IPv4 unspecified address and is used as a source address by hosts during the autoconfiguration process.

Anycast addresses

An *anycast* address is a unicast address that is attached to more than one interface. If a packet is sent to an anycast address it is delivered to the nearest interface with that address, with the definition of “nearest” depending on the protocol used for routing. Anycast addresses can be assigned to routers only, and packets cannot originate from an anycast address. A router must be configured to know that it is using an anycast address because the address format cannot be distinguished from that of a unicast address.

Only one anycast address has been predefined: the subnet-router address. The subnet-router address sends messages to the nearest router on a subnet and consists of the subnet’s prefix followed by zeros.

IPv6 Headers

The basic unit of data sent through an internet is called a *packet* in IPv6. A packet consists of a *header* followed by the *data*. The following figure shows the IPv6 packet.

Figure 26-1: IPv6 packet

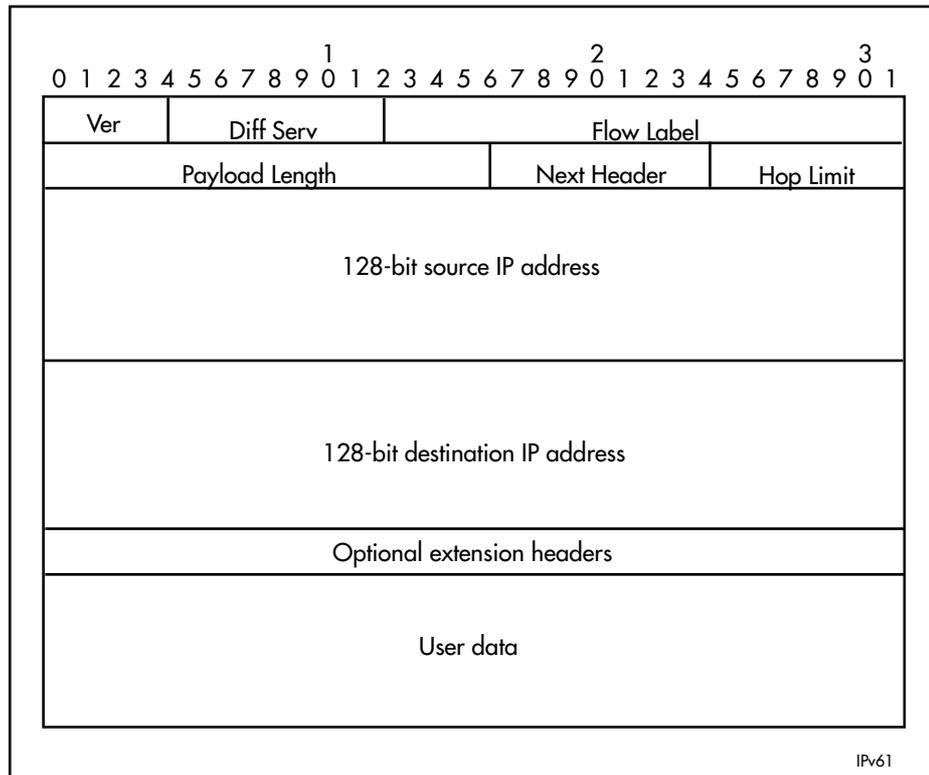


Table 26-1: IPv6 packet - Field Description

| Field | Function |
|----------------------------|--|
| Ver | Version of the IP protocol that created the packet. For IPv6, this field has a value of 6. |
| Differentiated Services | 8-bit value that contains the 6-bit DSCP and is used to prioritize traffic as part of a Quality of Service system. For more information, see “Differentiated Services Architecture” on page 36.4 . Additional information can be found in RFC 2474, <i>Definition of the Differentiated Services Field (DS Field) in the IPv4 and IPv6 Headers</i> . |
| Flow Label | 20-bit value that indicates the data flow to which this packet belongs. This flow may be handled in a particular way. |
| Payload Length | Length of the user data portion of the packet. If the data payload is larger than 64 kB, the length is given in the optional “Jumbo Payload” header and the Payload Length header is given a value of zero. |
| Next Header | Number that indicates the type of header that immediately follows the basic IP header. This header type may be an optional IPv6 extension header, a relevant IPv4 option header, or another protocol, such as TCP or ICMPv6. The IPv6 extension header values are: 0 (Hop-by-Hop Options Header) 43 (IPv6 Routing Header) 44 (IPv6 Fragment Header) 50 (Encapsulating Security Payload) 51 (IPv6 Authentication Header) 59 (No Next Header) 60 (Destination Options Header) |
| Hop Limit | Field that is the equivalent of the IPv4 Time To Live field, measured in hops. |
| Source IP address | 128-bit IPv6 address of the sender. |
| Destination IP address | 128-bit IPv6 address of the recipient. |
| Optional extension headers | Headers for less-frequently used information. |
| User data | Payload. |

Basic IPv6 header structure

The headers contain information necessary to move the packet across the Internet. They must be able to cope with missing and duplicated packets as well as possible fragmentation (and reassembly) of the original packet.

IPv6 headers are twice as long as IPv4 headers (40 bytes instead of 20 bytes) and contain four times the address space size (128 bits instead of 32 bits).

They no longer contain the header length, identification, flags, fragment offset, and header checksum fields. Some of these options are placed in extension headers. The Time To Live field is replaced with a hop limit, and the IPv4 Type of Service field is replaced with a Differentiated Services field. The Differentiated Services field contains the DSCP bits, used in a Quality of Service (QoS) regime. The following table explains IPv4 header fields that changed in IPv6.

| Changed Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Type of Service | The type of service that a connection should receive is indicated in IPv6 by the Flow Label field in the IPv6 header. |
| Fragmentation information (the Identification field, the Flags field and the Fragment Offset field) | In most cases fragmentation does not occur in IPv6. If it does, packets are fragmented at their source and not en route. Therefore, the fragmentation information is contained in an extension header to reduce the size of the basic IPv6 header. |
| Header Checksum | This option has not been provided in IPv6. This is because transport protocols implement checksums and because of the availability of the IPsec authentication header (AH) in IPv6. |
| Options | Extension headers handle all the optional values associated with IPv6 packets. The biggest advantage of this scheme is that the size of the basic IP header is a constant. |

Extension headers

IPv6 implements many of the less commonly used fields in the IPv4 header (or their equivalents) as extension headers, which are placed after the basic IPv6 header. The length of each header must be a multiple of 8 bytes.

The first extension header is identified by the Next Header field in the basic IPv6 header. Any subsequent extension headers are identified by an 8-bit "Next Header" value at the beginning of the preceding extension header.

IPv6 nodes that originate packets are required to place extension headers in a specific order:

1. The basic IPv6 header. This must come immediately before the extension headers.
2. The Hop-by-Hop header. This specifies options that must be examined by every node in the routing path.
3. A Destination Options header. This is used to specify options to be processed by the first destination or final destination. The destination options header is the only extension header that may be present more than once in the IPv6 packet.
4. The Routing header. This enables a static path to be specified for the packet, if the dynamically-determined path is undesirable.
5. The Fragment header. This indicates that the source node has fragmented the packet, and contains information about the fragmentation.

6. The Authentication header (AH). This verifies the integrity of the packet and its headers.
7. The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) header. This encrypts a packet and verifies the integrity of its contents.
8. The Upper Layer Protocol header. This indicates which protocol a higher layer (such as the transport layer) is to process the packet with (for example, TCP).

The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6)

The Internet Control Message Protocol, ICMPv6, provides a mechanism for error reporting and route discovery and diagnostics. It also conveys information about multicast group membership, a function that is carried out by the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) in IPv4, and performs address resolution, which the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) performs in IPv4.

Significant aspects of ICMPv6 include neighbor discovery, which enables one device in a network to find out about other nearby devices; and stateless address autoconfiguration, which allows a device to dynamically determine its own IPv6 address.

ICMPv6 is also used to support the Ping v6 (*Packet Internet Groper*) and Trace route v6 functions that are used to verify the connections between networks and network devices. Ping is used to test the connectivity between two network devices to determine whether each network device can “see” the other device. Trace route is used to discover the route used to pass packets between two systems running the IP protocol.

Both of these functions operate almost identically in IPv4 and IPv6. For more information, see [“Ping” on page 24.7](#).

Neighbor discovery

Neighbor discovery is an ICMPv6 function that enables a router or a host to identify other devices on its links. This information is then used in address autoconfiguration, to redirect a node to use a more appropriate router if necessary, and to maintain reachability information with its neighbors.

The IPv6 Neighbor Discovery protocol is similar to a combination of the IPv4 protocols ARP, ICMP Router Discovery and ICMP Redirect.

The following table describes packet types involved with neighbor discovery.

| Packet Type | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| router solicitation | Packet in which a host sends out a request for routers to generate advertisements. |
| router advertisement | Allows routers to advertise their presence and other network parameters. A router sends an advertisement packet in response to a solicitation packet from a host. |
| neighbor solicitation | Packet in which a node sends a packet to determine the link layer address of a neighbor or to verify that a neighbor is still active. |
| neighbor advertisement | A response to a neighbor solicitation packet. These packets are also used to notify neighbors of link layer address changes. |
| redirect | Informs hosts of a better first hop. |

To comply with Section 6.2.1 of RFC 2461, *IPv6 Neighbor Discovery*, the router does not generate router advertisements by default.

The following table explains packet types and services.

| Packet Type | Description |
|---|---|
| address resolution | A method for carrying out address autoconfiguration, and is achieved using the Neighbor Solicitation Message and the Neighbor Advertisement Message. |
| router and prefix discovery | On connection to a link, a node needs to know the address of a router that the node can use to reach the rest of the world. The node also needs to know the prefix (or prefixes) that define the range of IP addresses on its link that it can reach without going through a router. Routers use ICMP to convey this information to hosts, by means of router advertisements. The message may have an option attached (the <i>source link address</i> option), which enables the receiving node to respond directly to the router, without performing a neighbor solicitation. |
| immediate information | The configuration of a router includes a defined frequency at which unsolicited advertisements are sent. If a node wants to obtain information about the nearest router immediately, rather than waiting for the next unsolicited advertisement, the node can send a router solicitation message. Each router that receives the solicitation message sends a router advertisement specifically to the node that sent the solicitation. |
| redirection | If a node is aware of more than one router that it can use to connect to wider networks, the router to which it sends packets by default does not always represent the most desirable route. ICMPv6 uses the redirect packet to communicate a more effective path to the node. |
| Neighbor Unreachability Detection (NUD) | A node may issue solicitation requests to determine whether a path is still viable, or may listen in on acknowledgement packets of higher layer protocols, such as TCP. If the node determines that a path is no longer viable, it attempts to establish a new link to the neighbor, or to re-establish the previous link. NUD can be used between any two devices in the network, independent of whether the devices are acting as hosts or routers. |

Stateless address autoconfiguration

Stateless address autoconfiguration allows an IPv6-aware device to be plugged into a network without manual configuration with an IP address. This plug and play functionality results in networks that are easier to set up and modify, and simplifies the process of shifting to use a new Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Stateless address autoconfiguration is achieved in a series of steps. Routers and hosts perform the first three steps, which autoconfigure a link-local address. A global address is autoconfigured in the last three steps, which only hosts perform.

On the router or host

1. During system start-up, the node begins autoconfiguration by generating a link-local address for the interface. A link-local address is formed by adding the interface ID to the link-local prefix **fe80::/10** (reference RFC 3513).



Note Different interfaces on a device may have the same link-local address. The switch will automatically generate a link-local address for all interfaces that are using IPv6. Commands entered to configure link-local addresses that match any automatically generated link-local addresses by the switch will not be executed. Enter the `show ipv6 interface` command to display automatically generated link-local addresses not shown in the running-config. Automatically generated link-local addresses contain the last six hexadecimal numbers of the MAC address for a given interface.

2. The node then transmits a neighbor solicitation message to this address. If the address is already in use, the node that the address belongs to replies with a neighbor advertisement message. The autoconfiguration process stops and manual configuration of the node is then required.
3. If no neighbor advertisement is received, the node concludes that the address is available and assigns it to the chosen interface.

On the host

1. The node then sends one or more router solicitations to detect if any routers are present. Any routers present responds with a router advertisement.

If no router advertisement is received, the node tries to use DHCP to obtain an address and other configuration information. If no DHCP server responds, the node continues using the link-level address

If a router advertisement is received, this message informs the node how to proceed with the auto configuration process. The prefix from the router advertisement, if received, is added to the link-level address to form the global unicast IP address.

2. This address is then assigned to the network interface.

If routers are present, the node continues to receive router advertisements. The node updates its configuration when there are changes in the router advertisements.

IPv6 Routing

Routing in IPv6 is almost identical to IPv4 routing under CIDR, except that the addresses are 128-bit IPv6 addresses instead of 32-bit IPv4 addresses.

Integration of IPv4 and IPv6

IPv6 has been designed in such a way that a smooth transition from IPv4 is possible. The most effective way to ensure this is to use a *dual IP stack*. A node configured as a dual stack system has both a 128-bit IPv6 address and a 32-bit IPv4 address, and so can communicate with nodes running IPv4 and those running IPv6.

Another aspect of the transition is to *tunnel* IPv6 packets through an IPv4 network. IPv6 packets are tunneled simply by encapsulating the IPv6 packet within an IPv4 datagram, and identifying that this datagram is an encapsulated IPv6 packet by giving the datagram a protocol value of 41.

IPv6 on your Switch

This section describes the switch's support for IPv6, and how to configure IPv6 on the switch.

Enabling IPv6

The switch's implementation of IPv6 is disabled by default. To enable IPv6 forwarding, use the **ipv6 forwarding** command on page 27.8.

To display information about IPv6 settings, use the **show ipv6 interface brief** command on page 27.19.

Because the switch implements IPv6 as a dual stack, implementing IPv6 does not affect IPv4 functionality.

IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC)

The switch's implementation of IPv6 supports SLAAC on an interface. To enable IPv6 SLAAC on an interface, use the **ipv6 address autoconfig** command on page 27.5. SLAAC automatically applies the MAC address of the interface to an IPv6 address for the interface specified.

ipv6 address autoconfig enables automatic configuration of IPv6 addresses on an interface using stateless autoconfiguration, and enables IPv6 processing on an interface.

IPv6 EUI-64 Addressing

The switch's implementation of IPv6 supports EUI-64 addressing. EUI-64 applies an IPv6 address that is based on the MAC address of the interface. The EUI-64 identifiers from the MAC address are used as the least significant 64 bits of a unicast address.

To enable IPv6 EUI-64, use the **ipv6 address** command on page 27.3 specifying the optional **eui64** parameter for an interface.

When configuring SLAAC you must ensure that you set the prefix length to 64 bits on the switch that is advertising the RAs used for address configuration via SLAAC.

Prefix information received in an RA (Router Advertisement) will not be applied to form an IPv6 address via SLAAC unless the prefix length is 64. Since the EUI is 64 bits long, the IPv6 prefix of the advertising device must also be 64 bits. This prefix length setting and behavior is in accordance with RFC 4864, section 5.5.3.

IPv6 Link-local Addresses

The switch's implementation of IPv6 supports IPv6 link-local addresses without global addresses for communications within the local subnetwork. Switches do not forward packets to link-local addresses. To enable IPv6 link-local addresses, use the **ipv6 enable** command on page 27.7. **ipv6 enable** automatically configures an IPv6 link-local address on the interface and enables IPv6 processing on the interface.

Note that link-local addresses are retained in the system until they are negated by using the no variant of the command that established them. See the **Link-local addresses** glossary entry, and the **ipv6 enable** command for more information. Also note that the link-local address is retained in the system if the global address is removed using another command, which was not used to establish the link-local address. For example, if a link local address is established with the **ipv6 enable** command then it will not be removed using a **no ipv6 address** command.

IPv6 RA Guard

This section describes the switch's support for IPv6 RA Guard, and how to configure IPv6 RA Guard on the switch.

RA Guard Introduction

Router Advertisements (RAs) and Router Redirects are used to manage IPv6 networks. RA messages advertise a router's presence and specify network parameters that are used by hosts as part of address auto-configuration and setting next-hop routes for particular destinations.

RAs are periodically transmitted by switches allowing networks to be reconfigured by changes to the routers only. Switches can also send redirects to hosts suggesting that they use a different next-hop route for a particular traffic stream. But because the entire network configuration can be modified by what is contained in RAs and redirects, the network is vulnerable to rogue messages that are generated either through misconfiguration or due to a malicious attack.

RA Guard on the switch simply considers each of its ports as either trusted or untrusted. Any host connected to a port is considered trusted or untrusted depending on the port status. A trusted port will accept RAs and redirects and will forward RAs and redirects on trusted ports. An untrusted port will block and discard all RAs and redirects received from the untrusted host.

Enabling IPv6 RA Guard

The switch's implementation of IPv6 RA Guard is disabled by default. To enable IPv6 RA Guard on a port to block RAs from an untrusted host, use the **ipv6 nd rguard** command on page 27.11. Disable IPv6 RA Guard to allow RAs on a port using the **no ipv6 nd rguard** command.

Chapter 27: IPv6 Commands



| | |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 27.2 |
| clear ipv6 neighbors..... | 27.2 |
| ipv6 address | 27.3 |
| ipv6 address autoconfig | 27.5 |
| ipv6 enable | 27.7 |
| ipv6 forwarding | 27.8 |
| ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval..... | 27.9 |
| ipv6 nd ra-interval..... | 27.10 |
| ipv6 nd raguard | 27.11 |
| ipv6 nd suppress-ra | 27.13 |
| ipv6 neighbor | 27.14 |
| ipv6 opportunistic-nd..... | 27.15 |
| ipv6 route | 27.16 |
| ping ipv6 | 27.17 |
| show ipv6 forwarding..... | 27.18 |
| show ipv6 interface brief..... | 27.19 |
| show ipv6 neighbors | 27.20 |
| show ipv6 route | 27.21 |
| show ipv6 route summary | 27.23 |
| traceroute ipv6..... | 27.24 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure IPv6. For more information, see [Chapter 26, IPv6 Introduction](#).

clear ipv6 neighbors

Use this command to clear all dynamic IPv6 neighbor entries.

Syntax `clear ipv6 neighbors`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear ipv6 neighbors
```

ipv6 address

Use this command to set the IPv6 address of a VLAN interface and enable IPv6.

Use the optional `eui64` parameter to derive the interface identifier of the IPv6 address from the MAC address of the interface. Note that the MAC address of the default VLAN is applied if the interface does not have a MAC address of its own when specifying the `eui64` parameter.

Use the `no` variant of this command to remove the IPv6 address assigned and disable IPv6. Note that if no global addresses are left after removing the IPv6 address then IPv6 is disabled.

Syntax `ipv6 address <ipv6-addr/prefix-length> [eui64]`
`no ipv6 address <ipv6-addr/prefix-length> [eui64]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><ipv6-addr/prefix-length></code> | Specifies the IPv6 address to be set. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X/Prefix-Length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |
| <code>[eui64]</code> | A method of automatically deriving the lower 64 bits of an IPv6 address, based on the switch's MAC address. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage If the `eui64` parameter is specified then the lower 64 bits of the IPv6 address are appended with the same address that would be acquired through stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) if the device received an RA (Router Advertisement) specifying this prefix. See [ipv6 address autoconfig](#) for a detailed command description and examples to enable and disable SLAAC. See also the [IPv6 EUI-64 Addressing](#) section in [Chapter 26, IPv6 Introduction](#) for further EUI-64 implementation information.

Note that link-local addresses are retained in the system until they are negated by using the `no` variant of the command that established them. See the [Link-local addresses](#) glossary entry, and the [ipv6 enable](#) command for more information.

Also note that the link-local address is retained in the system if the global address is removed using another command, which was not used to establish the link-local address. For example, if a link local address is established with the **ipv6 enable** command then it will not be removed using a **no ipv6 address** command.

Examples To assign the IPv6 address `2001:0db8::a2/64` to the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:0db8::a2/64
```

To remove the IPv6 address `2001:0db8::a2/64` from the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 address 2001:0db8::a2/64
```

To assign the **eui64** derived address in the prefix `2001:db8::/48` to VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-fr-subif)# ipv6 address 2001:0db8::/48 eui64
```

To remove the **eui64** derived address in the prefix `2001:db8::/48` from VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-fr-subif)# no ipv6 address 2001:0db8::/48 eui64
```

Validation Commands **show running-config**
show ipv6 interface brief
show ipv6 route

Related Commands **ipv6 address autoconfig**

ipv6 address autoconfig

Use this command to enable IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) for an interface. This configures an IPv6 address on an interface derived from the MAC address on the interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable IPv6 SLAAC on an interface. Note that if no global addresses are left after removing all IPv6 autoconfigured addresses then IPv6 is disabled.

Syntax `ipv6 address autoconfig`
`no ipv6 address autoconfig`

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage The **ipv6 address autoconfig** command enables automatic configuration of IPv6 addresses using stateless autoconfiguration on an interface and enables IPv6, but does not enable IPv6 forwarding. See **ipv6 forwarding command on page 27.8** for further description and examples.

IPv6 hosts can configure themselves when connected to an IPv6 network using ICMPv6 (Internet Control Message Protocol version 6) router discovery messages. Configured routers respond with a Router Advertisement (RA) containing configuration parameters for IPv6 hosts.

The SLAAC process derives the interface identifier of the IPv6 address from the MAC address of the interface. When applying SLAAC to an interface, note that the MAC address of the default VLAN is applied to the interface if the interface does not have its own MAC address.

Note that link-local addresses are retained in the system until they are negated by using the **no** variant of the command that established them. See the **Link-local addresses** glossary entry, and the **ipv6 enable** command for more information.

Also note that the link-local address is retained in the system if the global address is removed using another command, which was not used to establish the link-local address. For example, if a link local address is established with the **ipv6 enable** command then it will not be removed using a **no ipv6 address** command.

Examples To enable SLAAC on the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 address autoconfig
```

To disable SLAAC on the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 address autoconfig
```

**Validation
Commands** `show running-config`
`show ipv6 interface brief`
`show ipv6 route`

Related Commands `ipv6 address`
`ipv6 enable`

ipv6 enable

Use this command to enable IPv6 on an interface without an IPv6 global address for the interface. This enables IPv6 with a IPv6 link-local address, not an IPv6 global address.

Use the no variant of this command to disable IPv6 on an interface without a global address. Note the no variant of this command does not operate on an interface with an IPv6 global address or an interface configured for IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC),

Syntax `ipv6 enable`
`no ipv6 enable`

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage The `ipv6 enable` command automatically configures an IPv6 link-local address on the interface and enables the interface for IPv6 processing. Note that link-local addresses are retained in the system until they are negated by using the no variant of the command that established them. See the [Link-local addresses](#) glossary entry for more information.

Also note that the link-local address is retained in the system if the global address is removed using another command, which was not used to establish the link-local address. For example, if a link local address is established with the `ipv6 enable` command then it will not be removed using a `no ipv6 address` command.

Examples To enable IPv6 with only a link-local IPv6 address on the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 enable
```

To disable IPv6 with only a link-local IPv6 address on the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 enable
```

**Validation
Commands** `show running-config`
`show ipv6 interface brief`
`show ipv6 route`

Related Commands `ipv6 address`
`ipv6 address autoconfig`

ipv6 forwarding

Use this command to turn on IPv6 unicast routing for IPv6 packet forwarding. Execute this command globally on your switch prior to issuing **ipv6 enable** on individual interfaces.

Use this **no** variant of this command to turn off IPv6 unicast routing for IPv6 packet forwarding. Note IPv6 unicast routing for IPv6 packet forwarding is disabled by default.

Syntax `ipv6 forwarding`
`no ipv6 forwarding`

Mode Global Configuration

Default IPv6 unicast forwarding is disabled by default.

Usage Enable IPv6 unicast forwarding globally for all interface on your switch with this command. Use the **no** variant of this command to disable IPv6 unicast forwarding globally for all interfaces on your switch.

IPv6 unicast forwarding allows switches to communicate with devices that are more than one hop away, providing that there is a route to the destination address. If IPv6 forwarding is not enabled then pings to addresses on devices that are more than one hop away will fail, even if there is a route to the destination address.

Examples To enable IPv6 unicast routing, use this command as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
```

To disable IPv6 unicast routing, use the **no** variant of this command as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ipv6 forwarding
```

Related Commands [ipv6 enable](#)

ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode to set a minimum Router Advertisement (RA) interval for a VLAN interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command in Interface Configuration mode to remove the minimum RA interval for a VLAN interface.

Syntax `ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval <seconds>`
`no ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval [<seconds>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><seconds></code> | Specifies the number of seconds between IPv6 Router Advertisements (RAs). Valid values are from 3 to 1350 seconds. |

Default The RA interval for a VLAN interface is unset by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Examples To set the minimum RA interval for the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval 60
```

To remove the minimum RA interval for the VLAN interface `vlan2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval 60
```

Related Commands [ipv6 nd ra-interval](#)
[ipv6 nd suppress-ra](#)

ipv6 nd ra-interval

Use this command to specify the interval between IPv6 Router Advertisements (RA) transmissions.

Use **no** parameter with this command to reset the value to the default value (600 seconds).

Syntax `ipv6 nd ra-interval <seconds>`
`no ipv6 nd ra-interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><seconds></code> | Specifies the number of seconds between IPv6 Router Advertisements (RAs). Valid values are from 4 to 1800 seconds. |

Default 600 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage Advertisement flags will not be transmitted unless you have applied the **no ipv6 nd suppress-ra** command on page 27.13 as shown in the example below.

Example To set the advertisements interval on the VLAN interface `vlan4` to be 60 seconds, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra-interval 60
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

Related Commands [ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval](#)
[ipv6 nd suppress-ra](#)

ipv6 nd rguard

Use this command to apply the Router Advertisements (RA) Guard feature from the Interface Configuration mode for a switch port. This blocks all RA messages received on a switch port. For introductory information about RA Guard see [“RA Guard Introduction” on page 26.13](#).

Use the **no** parameter with this command to disable RA Guard for a specified switch port.

Syntax `ipv6 nd rguard`
`no ipv6 nd rguard`

Default RA Guard is not enabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a switch port interface.

Usage Router Advertisements (RAs) are used by Routers to announce themselves on the link. Applying RA Guard to a switch port disallows Router Advertisements and redirect messages. RA Guard blocks RAs from untrusted hosts. Blocking RAs stops untrusted hosts from flooding malicious RAs and stops any misconfigured hosts from disrupting traffic on the local network.

Enabling RA Guard on a port blocks RAs from a connected host and indicates the port and host are untrusted. Disabling RA Guard on a port allows RAs from a connected host and indicates the port and host are trusted. Ports and hosts are trusted by default to allow RAs.

Example To enable RA Guard on switch ports `port1.0.2-1.0.12`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-1.0.12
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 nd rguard
```

To verify RA Guard is enabled on switch port interface `port1.0.2`, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config interface port1.0.2
```

To disable RA Guard on switch ports `port1.0.2-1.0.12`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-port1.0.12
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 nd raguard
```

When RA Guard is disabled on a switch port it is not displayed in **show running-config** output.

Output Example output from a **show running-config interface port1.0.2** to verify RA Guard:

```
!
interface port1.0.2
  switchport mode access
  ipv6 nd raguard
!
```

Related Commands [show running-config interface](#)

ipv6 nd suppress-ra

Use this command to inhibit IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) transmission for the current interface. Router advertisements are used when applying IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.

Use **no** parameter with this command to enable Router Advertisement transmission.

Syntax `ipv6 nd suppress-ra`
`no ipv6 nd suppress-ra`

Default Router Advertisement (RA) transmission is suppressed by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Example To enable the transmission of router advertisements from the VLAN interface `vlan4` on the switch, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan4
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

Related Commands [ipv6 nd ra-interval](#)

ipv6 neighbor

Use this command to add a static IPv6 neighbor entry.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a specific IPv6 neighbor entry.

Syntax `ipv6 neighbor <ipv6-address> <vlan-name> <mac-address> <port-list>`
`no ipv6 neighbor <ipv6-address> <vlan-name> <port-list>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><ipv6-address></code> | Specify the neighbor's IPv6 address in format X:X::X:X. |
| <code><vlan-name></code> | Specify the neighbor's VLAN name. |
| <code><mac-address></code> | Specify the MAC hardware address in hexadecimal notation with the format HHHH.HHHH.HHHH. |
| <code><port-list></code> | Specify the port number, or port range. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to clear a specific IPv6 neighbor entry. To clear all dynamic address entries, use the **clear ipv6 neighbors** command.

Example To create a static neighbor entry for IPv6 address 2001:0db8::a2, on vlan 4, MAC address 0000.cd28.0880, on port1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 neighbor 2001:0db8::a2 vlan4
0000.cd28.0880 port1.0.6
```

Related Commands [clear ipv6 neighbors](#)

ipv6 opportunistic-nd

Use this command to enable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global IPv6 ND cache. Opportunistic neighbor discovery changes the behavior for unsolicited ICMPv6 ND packet forwarding on the switch.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the global IPv6 ND cache.

Syntax `ipv6 opportunistic-nd`
`no ipv6 opportunistic-nd`

Default Opportunistic neighbor discovery is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When opportunistic neighbor discovery is enabled, the switch will reply to any received unsolicited ICMPv6 ND packets. The source MAC address for the unsolicited ICMPv6 ND packet is added to the IPv6 ND cache, so the switch forwards the ICMPv6 ND packet. When opportunistic neighbor discovery is disabled, the source MAC address for the ICMPv6 ND packet is not added to the IPv6 ND cache, so the ICMPv6 ND packet is not forwarded by the switch.

Examples To enable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the IPv6 ND cache, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 opportunistic-nd
```

To disable opportunistic neighbor discovery for the IPv6 ND cache, enter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ipv6 opportunistic-nd
```

Related Commands [arp opportunistic-nd](#)
[show ipv6 neighbors](#)

Validation Commands [show running-config interface](#)

ipv6 route

Use this command to establish the distance for static routes of a network prefix.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the distance for static routes of the network prefix.

Syntax `ipv6 route <dest-prefix> <dest-prefix/length> {<gateway-ip> | <gateway-name>} [<distvalue>]`

`no ipv6 route <dest-prefix> <dest-prefix/length> {<gateway-ip> | <gateway-name>} [<distvalue>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <code><dest-prefix/length></code> | Specifies the IP destination prefix. The IPv6 address prefix uses the format X:X::/prefix-length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |
| <code><gateway-ip></code> | Specifies the IP gateway (or next hop) address. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:Prefix-Length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |
| <code><distvalue></code> | Specifies the administrative distance for the route. Valid values are from 1 to 255. |
| <code><gateway-name></code> | Specifies the name of the gateway (or next hop) interface. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 route 2001:0db8::1/128 myintname 32
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`
`show ipv6 route`

ping ipv6

This command sends a query to another IPv6 host (send Echo Request messages).

Note  Use of the `interface` parameter keyword, plus an interface or an interface range, with this command is only valid when pinging an IPv6 link local address.

Syntax `ping ipv6 {<host>|<ipv6-address>} [repeat {<1-2147483647>|continuous}] [size <10-1452>] [interface <interface-list>] [timeout <1-65535>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| <code><ipv6-addr></code> | The destination IPv6 address. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |
| <code><hostname></code> | The destination hostname. |
| <code>repeat</code> | Specify the number of ping packets to send. |
| <code><1-2147483647></code> | Specify repeat count. The default is 5. |
| <code>size <10-1452></code> | The number of data bytes to send, excluding the 8 byte ICMP header. The default is 56 (64 ICMP data bytes). |
| <code>interface <interface-list></code> | The interface or range of configured IP interfaces to use as the source in the IP header of the ping packet. |
| <code>timeout <1-65535></code> | The time in seconds to wait for echo replies if the ARP entry is present, before reporting that no reply was received. If no ARP entry is present, it does not wait. |
| <code>repeat</code> | Specify the number of ping packets to send. |
| <code><1-2147483647></code> | Specify repeat count. The default is 5. |
| <code>continuous</code> | Continuous ping. |
| <code>size <10-1452></code> | The number of data bytes to send, excluding the 8 byte ICMP header. The default is 56 (64 ICMP data bytes). |
| <code>timeout <1-65535></code> | The time in seconds to wait for echo replies if the ARP entry is present, before reporting that no reply was received. If no ARP entry is present, it does not wait. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# ping ipv6 2001:0db8::a2
```

Related Commands [traceroute ipv6](#)

show ipv6 forwarding

Use this command to display IPv6 forwarding status.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show ipv6 forwarding`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show ipv6 forwarding
```

Output **Figure 27-1: Example output from the show ipv6 forwarding command**

```
ipv6 forwarding is on
```

show ipv6 interface brief

Use this command to display brief information about interfaces and the IPv6 address assigned to them.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 interface [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| brief | Specify this optional parameter to display brief IPv6 interface information. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples

```
awplus# show ipv6 interface brief
```

Output **Figure 27-2: Example output from the show ipv6 interface brief command**

```
awplus#show ipv6 interface brief
Interface      IPv6-Address      Status      Protocol
lo             unassigned        admin up    running
vlan1          2001:db8::1/48    admin up    down
                fe80::215:77ff:fee9:5c50/64
```

Related Commands [show interface brief](#)

show ipv6 neighbors

Use this command to display all IPv6 neighbors.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show ipv6 neighbors`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

show ipv6 route

Use this command to display the IPv6 routing table for a protocol or from a particular table.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 route [connected|database|static|summary|<ipv6-address>|<ipv6-addr/prefix-length>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>connected</code> | Displays only the routes learned from connected interfaces. |
| <code>database</code> | Displays only the IPv6 routing information extracted from the database. |
| <code>static</code> | Displays only the IPv6 static routes you have configured. |
| <code>summary</code> | Displays summary information from the IPv6 routing table. |
| <code><ipv6-address></code> | Displays the routes for the specified address in the IP routing table. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X/Prefix-Length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |
| <code><ipv6-prefix/length></code> | Displays only the routes for the specified IP prefix. The IPv6 address prefix uses the format X:X::/prefix-length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example 1 To display an IP route with all parameters turned on, use the following command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 route
```

Output Figure 27-3: Example output of the show ipv6 route command

```
IPv6 Routing Table
Codes: C - connected, S - static
S   ::/0 [1/0] via 2001::a:0:0:c0a8:a6, vlan10
C   2001:db8::a:0:0:0:0/64 via ::, vlan10
C   2001:db8::14:0:0:0:0/64 via ::, vlan20
C   2001:db8::0:0:0:0:0/64 via ::, vlan30
C   2001:db8::28:0:0:0:0/64 via ::, vlan40
C   2001:db8::fa:0:0:0:0/64 via ::, vlan250
C   2001:db8::/64 via ::, vlan250
C   2001:db8::/64 via ::, vlan40
C   2001:db8::/64 via ::, vlan20
C   2001:db8::/64 via ::, vlan10
```

Example 2 To display all database entries for an IP route, use the following command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 route database
```

Output Figure 27-4: Example output of the show ipv6 route database command

```
IPv6 Routing Table
Codes: C - connected, S - static
      > - selected route, * - FIB route, p - stale info
Timers: Uptime
S   ::/0 [1/0] via 2001::a:0:0:c0a8:a01 inactive, 6d22h12m
      [1/0] via 2001::fa:0:0:c0a8:fa01 inactive, 6d22h12m
```

show ipv6 route summary

Use this command to display the summary of the current NSM RIB entries.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show ipv6 route summary`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display IP route summary, use the following command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 route summary
```

Output **Figure 27-5: Example output from the show ipv6 route summary command**

```
IPv6 routing table name is Default-IPv6-Routing-Table(0)
IPv6 routing table maximum-paths is 4
RouteSource      Networks
connected        4
FIB              5
```

Related Commands [show ip route](#)
[show ip route database](#)

traceroute ipv6

Use this command to trace the route to the specified IPv6 host.

Syntax `traceroute ipv6 {<ipv6-addr>|<hostname>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><ipv6-addr></code> | The destination IPv6 address. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |
| <code><hostname></code> | The destination hostname. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To run a traceroute for the IPv6 address 2001:0db8::a2, use the following command:

```
awplus# traceroute ipv6 2001:0db8::a2
```

Related Commands [ping ipv6](#)

Chapter 28: Static Routing Commands for Management Purposes



| | |
|------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 28.2 |
| Command List | 28.3 |
| ip route..... | 28.3 |
| show ip route..... | 28.4 |
| show ip route database | 28.6 |
| show ip route summary..... | 28.7 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of static routing commands that are used to direct management packets to appropriate VLANs.

Command List

ip route

This command lets you create a static route, in order to send management packets to the appropriate VLAN.

Your switch does not use static routes to route traffic from one VLAN to another VLAN, even if the VLANs have IP addresses. You cannot create static routes to route data, only management packets.

The **no** variant of this command removes the static route.

Syntax `ip route <subnet&mask> {<gateway-ip>|<interface>} [<distance>]`
`no ip route <subnet&mask> {<gateway-ip>|<interface>} [<distance>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><subnet&mask></code> | <p>The IPv4 address of the destination subnet defined using either a prefix length or a separate mask specified in one of the following formats:</p> <p>The IPv4 subnet address in dotted decimal notation followed by the subnet mask, also in dotted decimal notation.</p> <p>The IPv4 subnet address in dotted decimal notation, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length.</p> |
| <code><gateway-ip></code> | The IPv4 address of the gateway device. |
| <code><interface></code> | <p>The VLAN interface that the target packets should be sent to. Enter the name of the VLAN or its VID.</p> <p>The gateway IP address or the interface is required.</p> |
| <code><distance></code> | The administrative distance for the static route in the range <1-255>. Static routes by default have an administrative distance of 1. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default The default administrative distance for a static route is 1.

Example To send management traffic on the 10.0.0.0 network to vlan10 and other management traffic to vlan5, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip route 10.0.0.0/8 vlan10
awplus(config)# ip route 0.0.0.0/0 vlan5
```

Related Commands [show ip route](#)
[show ip route database](#)

show ip route

Use this command to display routing entries in the FIB (Forwarding Information Base). The FIB contains the best routes to a destination, and your device uses these routes when forwarding traffic. You can display a subset of the entries in the FIB based on protocol.

To modify the lines displayed, use the | (output modifier token); to save the output to a file, use the > output redirection token.

Syntax `show ip route [connected|static|<ip-addr>|<ip-addr/prefix-length>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>connected</code> | Displays only the routes learned from connected interfaces. |
| <code>static</code> | Displays only the static routes you have configured. |
| <code><ip-addr></code> | Displays the routes for the specified address. Enter an IPv4 address. |
| <code><ip-addr/prefix-length></code> | Displays the routes for the specified network. Enter an IPv4 address and prefix length. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the static routes in the FIB, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip route static
```

Output Each entry in the output from this command has a code preceding it, indicating the source of the routing entry. The first few lines of the output list the possible codes that may be seen with the route entries.

Typically, route entries are composed of the following elements:

- code
- a second label indicating the sub-type of the route
- network or host ip address
- administrative distance and metric
- nexthop ip address
- outgoing interface name
- time since route entry was added

Figure 28-1: Example output from the show ip route command

```
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       * - candidate default

C      3.3.3.0/24 is directly connected, vlan1
C      10.10.31.0/24 is directly connected, vlan2
C      10.70.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan4
C      33.33.33.33/32 is directly connected, lo
```

The Connected route entry consists of:

```
C      10.10.31.0/24 is directly connected, vlan2
```

This route entry denotes:

- Route entries for network 10.10.31.0/24 are derived from the IP address of local interface `vlan2`.
- These routes are marked as Connected routes (C) and always preferred over routes for the same network learned from other routing protocols.

Related Commands [show ip route database](#)

show ip route database

This command displays the routing entries in the RIB (Routing Information Base).

When multiple entries are available for the same prefix, RIB uses the routes' administrative distances to choose the best route. All best routes are entered into the FIB (Forwarding Information Base). To view the routes in the FIB, use the **show ip route** command.

To modify the lines displayed, use the | (output modifier token); to save the output to a file, use the > output redirection token.

Syntax `show ip route database [connected|static]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| connected | Displays only the routes learned from connected interfaces. |
| static | Displays only the static routes you have configured. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the static routes in the RIB, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip route database static
```

Output **Figure 28-2: Example output from the show ip route database command**

```
awplus#show ip route database
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, D - DHCP, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       > - selected route, * - FIB route, p - stale info

S    *> 0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 10.34.1.1, vlan1
C    *> 10.34.0.0/16 is directly connected, vlan1
S    192.168.2.0/24 [1/0] is directly connected, vlan2 inactive

Gateway of last resort is not set
```

The routes added to the FIB are marked with a *. When multiple routes are available for the same prefix, the best route is indicated with the > symbol. All unselected routes have neither the * nor the > symbol.

Related Commands [show ip route](#)

show ip route summary

This command displays a summary of the current RIB (Routing Information Base) entries.

To modify the lines displayed, use the | (output modifier token); to save the output to a file, use the > output redirection token.

Syntax show ip route summary

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display a summary of the current RIB entries, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip route summary
```

Output **Figure 28-3: Example output from the show ip route summary command**

```
IP routing table name is Default-IP-Routing-Table(0)
IP routing table maximum-paths is 4
Route Source      Networks
connected         5
Total             8
```

Related Commands [show ip route](#)
[show ip route database](#)

Part 4: Multicast Applications



- **Chapter 29 IGMP Snooping Introduction**
- **Chapter 30 IGMP Snooping Commands**
- **Chapter 31 MLD Snooping Introduction and Commands**

Chapter 29: IGMP Snooping Introduction



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 29.2 |
| IGMP | 29.3 |
| Joining a Multicast Group (Membership Report) | 29.4 |
| Staying in the Multicast Group (Query Message) | 29.4 |
| Leaving the Multicast Group (Leave Message) | 29.4 |
| IGMP Snooping | 29.5 |
| How IGMP Snooping Operates | 29.5 |
| IGMP Snooping Configuration Example | 29.6 |
| Query Solicitation | 29.8 |
| How Query Solicitation Works | 29.8 |
| Query Solicitation Operation | 29.8 |
| Speeding up IGMP Convergence in a Non-Looped Topology | 29.11 |
| Enabling Query Solicitation on Multiple Switches in a Looped Topology | 29.11 |

Introduction

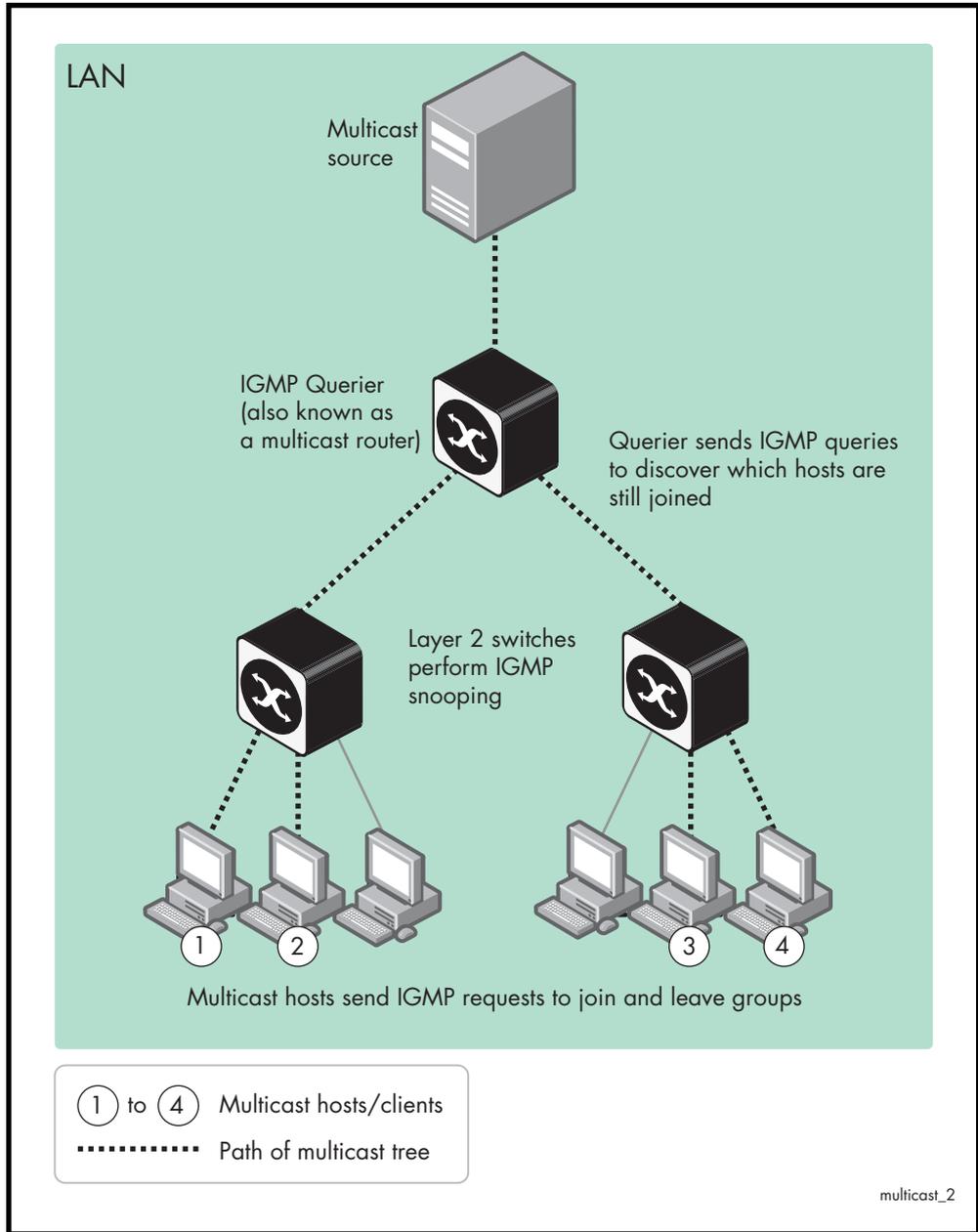
This chapter provides information about Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), IGMP Snooping, and an introduction to the Query Solicitation feature when used with IGMP Snooping. To see details on the commands used in this example, or to see the outputs of the validation commands, refer to [Chapter 30, IGMP Snooping Commands](#).

Your switch does not support IGMP but does support IGMP Snooping.

IGMP

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is the protocol that hosts use to indicate that they are interested in receiving a particular multicast stream. An example of a multicast system within a single Layer 2 LAN is shown in **Figure 29-1**.

Figure 29-1: Multicast system within a single LAN



Joining a Multicast Group (Membership Report)

When a host wants to receive a stream, referred to as “joining a group”, it sends out an IGMP packet containing the address of the group it wants to join. This packet is called an IGMP Membership report, often referred to as a “join packet”. This packet is forwarded through the LAN to the local IGMP querier, which is typically a router. Once the querier has received an IGMP join message, it knows to forward the multicast stream to the host. If it is not already receiving the stream, it must tell the devices between itself and the multicast source, which may be some hops away from the querier, that it wishes to receive the stream. This might involve a process of using Layer 3 multicast protocols to signal across a WAN, or it might be as simple as receiving a stream from a locally connected multicast server.

Your switch does not support IGMP but does support IGMP Snooping.

Staying in the Multicast Group (Query Message)

The Query message is used by a querier to determine whether hosts are still interested in an IGMP group. At certain time intervals (the default is 125 seconds), the querier sends an IGMP query message onto the local LAN. The destination address of the query message is a special “all multicast groups” address. The purpose of this query is to ask “Are there any hosts on the LAN that wish to remain members of multicast groups?” After receiving an IGMP query, any host that wants to remain in a multicast group must send a new join packet for that group. If a host is a member of more than one group, then it sends a join message for each group it wants to remain a member of. The querier looks at the responses it receives to its query, and compares these to the list of multicast streams that it is currently registered to forward. If there are any items in that list for which it has not received query responses, it will stop forwarding those streams. Additionally, if it is receiving those streams through a Layer 3 network, it will send a Layer 3 routing protocol message upstream, asking to no longer receive that stream.

Leaving the Multicast Group (Leave Message)

How a host leaves a group depends on the IGMP version that it is using. Under IGMP version 1, when a host has finished with a data stream, the local querier continues to send the stream to the host until it sends out the next query message and receives no reply back from the host. IGMP version 2 introduced the Leave message. This allows a host to explicitly inform its querier that it wants to leave a particular multicast group. When the querier receives the Leave message, it sends out a group specific query asking whether any hosts still want to remain members of that specific group. If no hosts respond with join messages for that group, then the querier knows that there are no hosts on its LAN that are still members of that group. This means that for that specific group, it can ask to be pruned from the multicast tree. IGMP version 3 removed the Leave message. Instead a host leaves a group by sending a join message with no source specified.

IGMP Snooping

IGMP Snooping is a way for Layer 2 switches to reduce the amount of multicast traffic on a LAN. The AlliedWare Plus implementation of IGMP Snooping is compatible with networks running all IGMP versions.

Without IGMP Snooping, Layer 2 switches handle IP multicast traffic in the same manner as broadcast traffic and forward multicast frames received on one port to all other ports in the same VLAN. IGMP Snooping allows switches to monitor network traffic, and determine hosts to receive multicast traffic, by looking into IGMP packets to learn which attached hosts need to receive which multicast groups. This allows the switch to forward multicast traffic only out the appropriate ports. If it sees multiple reports sent for one group, it will forward only one of them.

How IGMP Snooping Operates

IGMP Snooping operates similarly to the multicast protocols. When a switch hears an IGMP report from a host for a given multicast group, the switch adds the host's port number to the list of ports that are listening to the multicast group. When the switch hears an IGMP leave, it removes the host's port from the list, after the completion of the leave process as described in [“Leaving the Multicast Group \(Leave Message\)” on page 29.4](#). When there are no hosts listening to a group, the switch informs the local querier to stop sending that group's multicast stream.

IGMP Snooping allows query messages to be forwarded to all ports. The hosts that still require the stream respond to the queries by sending reports. The switch intercepts these. Depending on configuration settings, the switch may just forward the reports directly on to the querier, or it may proxy report on behalf of the group, only forwarding on one consolidated report for each group.

By default, IGMP Snooping is enabled both globally and on all VLANs.



Note IGMP Snooping cannot be disabled on an interface if IGMP Snooping has already been disabled globally. IGMP Snooping can be disabled on both an interface and globally if disabled on the interface first and then disabled globally.

| To disable IGMP Snooping either | | |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| 1. | <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. | <code>awplus(config)# no ip igmp snooping</code> | Disable IGMP Snooping globally. |
| or | | |
| 1. | <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. | <code>awplus(config)# interface <vlan-name></code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for a specific VLAN. |
| 3. | <code>awplus(config-if)# no ip igmp snooping</code> | Disable IGMP Snooping for a specific VLAN. |

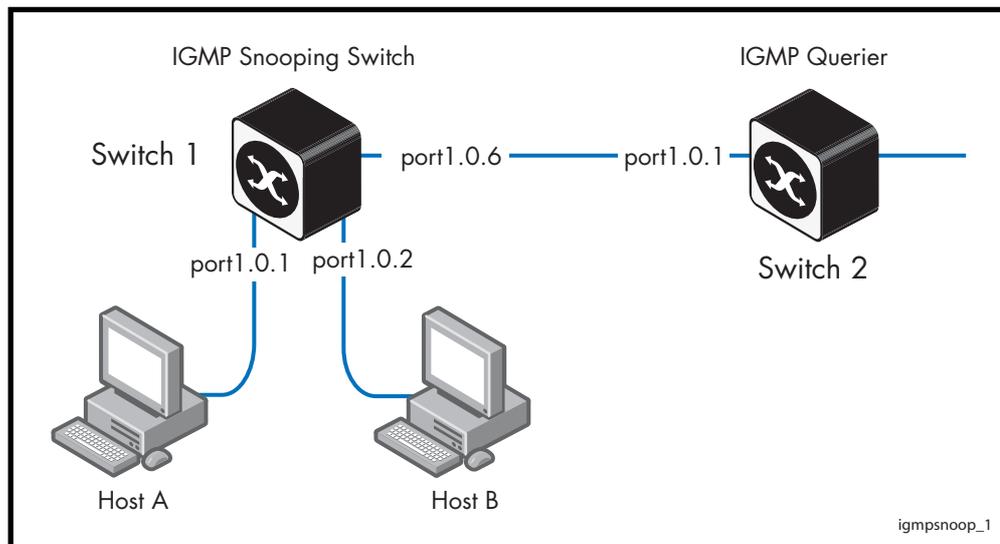
IGMP Snooping Configuration Example

This example describes the configuration of IGMP Snooping on an Allied Telesis managed x230 Layer 2 switch (Switch 1) and the configuration of IGMP Querier (Switch 2). The interface port1.0.6 is configured as a multicast router port. Host A and Host B are both members of the same multicast group.

To enable IGMP Snooping on an interface:

- Enable IGMP Snooping globally, if necessary. IGMP Snooping is enabled by default.
- Enable IGMP Snooping on the desired interfaces, if necessary. IGMP Snooping is enabled on all interfaces by default.

Figure 29-2: IGMP Snooping configuration example



As a result of this configuration:

- Membership reports are generated by hosts. The IGMP Snooping switch will forward the membership reports to its router port. Queries received by the IGMP Snooping switch from the IGMP Querier on port1.0.6 are forwarded by the IGMP Snooping switch.
- Because Host A and Host B are members of the same multicast group, the switch does not notify the IP IGMP routing device (IGMP Querier) when Host A leaves the group, because the group still has another member Host B remaining. When Host B also leaves the group, the switch forwards the leave message to the IP IGMP Querier.
- In this example, it is not necessary to explicitly configure the switch to work with IGMPv2 or IGMPv3. When the IGMP version is not configured then the switch will work with both versions of IGMP.

Table 29-1: Configuring IGMP Snooping on Switch 1

| Step 1. Configure IGMP Snooping (Switch 1) | |
|--|--|
| 1. | <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. | <pre>awplus(config)# ip igmp snooping</pre> Enable IGMP Snooping globally. Snooping is enabled by default. Use this command only if you have previously disabled it. |

Table 29-1: Configuring IGMP Snooping on Switch 1

| Step 2. Validate the configuration | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3. | <pre>awplus# exit</pre> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| 4. | <pre>awplus# show ip igmp interface vlan1</pre> | Display the state of IGMP Snooping for VLAN 1. |
| 5. | <pre>awplus# show ip igmp groups</pre> | Display the multicast groups with receivers directly connected to the router. |

Query Solicitation

Query Solicitation minimizes the loss of multicast data after a topology change on networks that use EPSR or spanning tree (STP, RSTP, or MSTP) for loop protection. Without Query Solicitation, when the underlying link layer topology changes, multicast data flow can stop for up to several minutes, depending on which port goes down and how much of the IGMP query interval remained at the time of the topology change. Query Solicitation greatly reduces this disruption.

Query Solicitation operates without configuration in AlliedWare Plus™ switches running STP, RSTP, MSTP or EPSR. However, you may find it useful to manually enable Query Solicitation in loop-free networks running IGMP (see [Speeding up IGMP Convergence in a Non-Looped Topology](#)) and networks where not all switches support Query Solicitation (see [Enabling Query Solicitation on Multiple Switches in a Looped Topology](#)).

How Query Solicitation Works

Query Solicitation monitors STP, RSTP, MSTP and EPSR messages for topology changes. When it detects a change, it generates a special IGMP Leave message called a Query Solicit. The switch floods the Query Solicit message to all ports in every VLAN that Query Solicitation is enabled on. When the Querier receives the Query Solicit message, it sends out a General Query and waits for clients to respond with Membership Reports. These Reports update the snooping information throughout the network.

Query Solicit messages have a group address of 0.0.0.0.

Query Solicitation works by default (without you enabling it) on all VLANs on the root bridge in an STP instance and on all data VLANs on the master node in an EPSR instance. By default, the root bridge or master node always sends a Query Solicit message when any of the following events occur:

- an STP BPDU packet with the Topology Change (TC) flag arrives at the root bridge
- an STP port on a switch goes from a Discarding to Forwarding state
- the FDB gets flushed by EPSR

Query Solicitation Operation

When IGMP Snooping is enabled and EPSR or Spanning Tree changes the underlying link layer topology, this can interrupt multicast data flow for a significant length of time. This is because there is no way for switches in a network with interested clients to know where the traffic is available, due to the change in network topology. This change in network topology may take up to two IGMP Query intervals from the IGMP Querier, until the switches will know where to forward membership reports received by client hosts. During this time, those hosts will not receive multicast traffic.

Query solicitation prevents this by monitoring for any topology changes. When it detects a change, it generates a special IGMP Leave message known as a Query Solicit, and floods the Query Solicit message to all ports in every VLAN that query solicitation is enabled on. When the IGMP Querier receives the message, it responds by sending a General Query, which all IGMP listeners respond to. This refreshes snooped group membership information in the network.

Query solicitation reduces downtime to a negligible amount by triggering on topology changes. The generation of query solicitation messages in the network causes the IGMP Querier to send an IGMP Query immediately following a topology change. This enables the switches to know where to look for the traffic and thus to send reports to the correct switch upstream. This allows the multicast data traffic to be recovered instantly.

Query solicitation functions by default (without you enabling it) on all VLANs on the root bridge in an STP instance and on all data VLANs on the master node in an EPSR instance. By default, the root bridge or master node always sends a Query Solicit message when the topology changes.

If you have multiple STP or EPSR instances, query solicitation only sends Query Solicit messages on VLANs in the instance that experienced a topology change.

In switches other than the STP root bridge or EPSR master node, query solicitation is disabled by default, but you can enable it by using the **ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit** command.

If you enable query solicitation on a switch other than the STP root bridge or EPSR master node, both that switch and the root or master send a Query Solicit message.

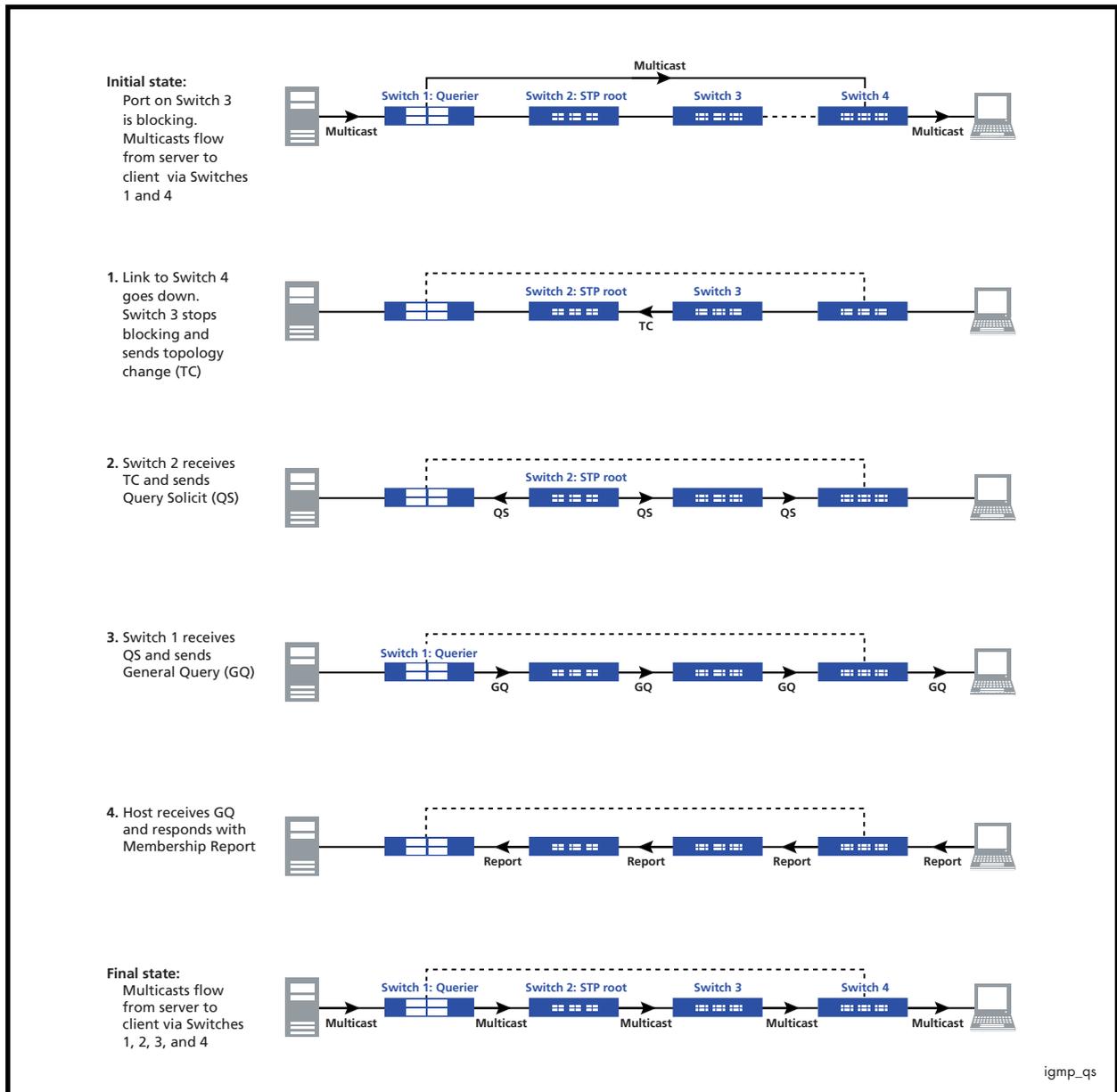
Once the Querier receives the Query Solicit message, it sends out a General Query and waits for responses, which update the snooping information throughout the network.

On switches other than the STP root bridge or the EPSR master node, you can disable query solicitation by using the no variant of the **ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit** command. In addition, on all switches, you can disable query solicitation on a per-vlan basis using the no variant of the **ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit** command in Interface Configuration mode, after specifying a VLAN first in Interface Configuration mode.

To see whether query solicitation is on or off, check the Query Solicitation field in output of the **show ip igmp interface** command. You can view running and startup configurations with **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands to see if Query Solicitation is enabled.

The following figure shows how Query Solicitation works when a port goes down.

Figure 29-3: Query Solicitation when a port goes down



Speeding up IGMP Convergence in a Non-Looped Topology

For loop-free networks running IGMP, where it may take up to two minutes for multicasting to recover in a non-looped topology after a port comes back up, you can speed up convergence by enabling RSTP using the **spanning-tree mode** and **spanning-tree enable** commands.

RSTP enables the network to use Query Solicitation by default, and means that multicasting should resume within seconds, not minutes, of the link coming up.

Enabling Query Solicitation on Multiple Switches in a Looped Topology

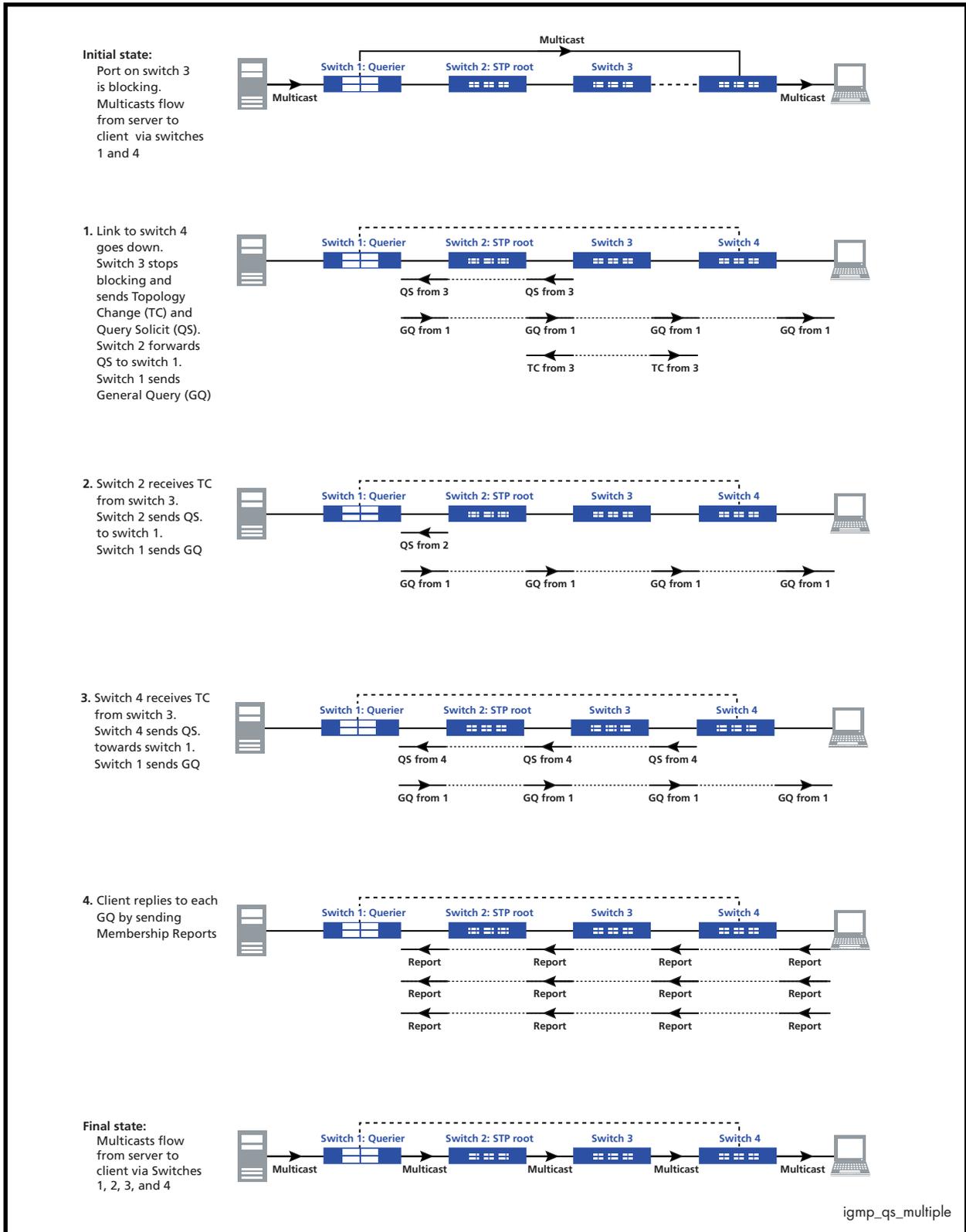
On networks that use spanning tree or EPSR, Query Solicitation is not normally required on switches other than the STP root bridge or EPSR master node. Therefore, it is only enabled by default on the root bridge and the master node.

However, in some networks you may need to turn on Query Solicitation on all switches - for example, if the network includes other switches that do not support Query Solicitation and therefore the STP root bridge may be a switch that does not send Query Solicit messages. To enable Query Solicitation, use the **ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit** command.

Every switch that has Query Solicitation enabled sends a Query Solicit message when it detects a topology change. Enabling it on multiple switches means you get multiple messages, but has no other disadvantage.

The following figure shows the packet flow for a four-switch network with Query Solicitation enabled on all the switches.

Figure 29-4: Packet flow for a four switch network with Query Solicitation enabled



Chapter 30: IGMP Snooping Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 30.2 |
| Command List | 30.2 |
| clear ip igmp | 30.2 |
| clear ip igmp group | 30.3 |
| clear ip igmp interface..... | 30.4 |
| debug igmp..... | 30.5 |
| ip igmp snooping..... | 30.6 |
| ip igmp snooping fast-leave | 30.7 |
| ip igmp snooping querier | 30.8 |
| ip igmp snooping report-suppression | 30.9 |
| ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit..... | 30.10 |
| ip igmp static-group | 30.12 |
| ip igmp version | 30.13 |
| show debugging igmp..... | 30.14 |
| show ip igmp groups..... | 30.15 |
| show ip igmp interface | 30.16 |
| show ip igmp snooping statistics..... | 30.19 |
| undebug igmp | 30.19 |

Introduction

The Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) module includes IGMP Snooping functionality. Some of the following commands may have commonalities and restrictions. These are described under the Usage section for each command.

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of configure, clear, and show commands related to IGMP Snooping.

clear ip igmp

Use this command to clear all IGMP group membership records on all VLAN interfaces.

Syntax `clear ip igmp`

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command applies to VLAN interfaces configured for IGMP Snooping.

Example

```
awplus# clear ip igmp
```

**Validation
Commands** `show ip igmp interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `clear ip igmp group`
`clear ip igmp interface`

clear ip igmp group

Use this command to clear IGMP group membership records for a specific group on either all VLAN interfaces, a single VLAN interface, or for a range of VLAN interfaces.

Syntax `clear ip igmp group *`
`clear ip igmp group <ip-address> <interface>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| * | Clears all groups on all VLAN interfaces. This is an alias to the clear ip igmp command. |
| <ip-address> | Specifies the group whose membership records will be cleared from all VLAN interfaces, entered in the form A.B.C.D. |
| <interface> | Specifies the name of the VLAN interface; all groups learned on this VLAN interface are deleted. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command applies to groups learned by IGMP Snooping.

In addition to the group a VLAN interface can be specified. Specifying this will mean that only entries with the group learned on the interface will be deleted.

Examples

```
awplus# clear ip igmp group *
awplus# clear ip igmp group 224.1.1.1 vlan1
```

Validation Commands `show ip igmp interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `clear ip igmp`
`clear ip igmp interface`

clear ip igmp interface

Use this command to clear IGMP group membership records on a particular VLAN interface.

Syntax `clear ip igmp interface <interface>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface></code> | Specifies the name of the VLAN interface. All groups learned on this VLAN interface are deleted. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command applies to interfaces configured for IGMP Snooping.

Example

```
awplus# clear ip igmp interface vlan1
```

**Validation
Commands** `show ip igmp interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `clear ip igmp`
`clear ip igmp group`

debug igmp

Use this command to enable debugging of either all IGMP or a specific component of IGMP.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable all IGMP debugging, or debugging of a specific component of IGMP.

Syntax `debug igmp {all|decode|encode|events|fsm|tib}`
`no debug igmp {all|decode|encode|events|fsm|tib}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| all | Enable or disable all debug options for IGMP |
| decode | Debug of IGMP packets that have been received |
| encode | Debug of IGMP packets that have been sent |
| events | Debug IGMP events |
| fsm | Debug IGMP Finite State Machine (FSM) |
| tib | Debug IGMP Tree Information Base (TIB) |

Modes Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Usage This command applies to interfaces configured for IGMP Snooping.

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug igmp all
```

Related Commands [show debugging igmp](#)
[undebug igmp](#)

ip igmp snooping

Use this command to enable IGMP Snooping. When this command is used in the Global Configuration mode, IGMP Snooping is enabled at the switch level. When this command is used in Interface Configuration mode, IGMP Snooping is enabled for the specified VLANs.

Use the **no** variant of this command to either globally disable IGMP Snooping, or disable IGMP Snooping on a specified interface.

 **Note** IGMP snooping cannot be disabled on an interface if IGMP snooping has already been disabled globally. IGMP snooping can be disabled on both an interface and globally if disabled on the interface first and then disabled globally.

Syntax ip igmp snooping
no ip igmp snooping

Default By default, IGMP Snooping is enabled both globally and on all VLANs.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage For IGMP snooping to operate on particular VLAN interfaces, it must be enabled both globally by using this command in Global Configuration mode, and on individual VLAN interfaces by using this command in Interface Configuration mode (both are enabled by default.)

Both IGMP snooping and MLD snooping must be enabled globally on the switch for IGMP snooping to operate. MLD snooping is also enabled by default. To enable it if it has been disabled, use the **ipv6 mld snooping** command on page 31.12 in Global Configuration mode.

Ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip igmp snooping

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp snooping
```

Related Commands [ipv6 mld snooping](#)
[show ip igmp interface](#)
[show running-config](#)

ip igmp snooping fast-leave

Use this command to enable IGMP Snooping fast-leave processing. Fast-leave processing is analogous to immediate-leave processing. The IGMP group-membership entry is removed as soon as an IGMP leave group message is received, without sending out a group-specific query.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable fast-leave processing.

Syntax `ip igmp snooping fast-leave`
`no ip igmp snooping fast-leave`

Default IGMP Snooping fast-leave processing is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage This IGMP Snooping command can only be configured on VLAN interfaces. Ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Example This example shows how to enable fast-leave processing on the VLAN interface vlan2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp snooping fast-leave
```

Validation `show ip igmp interface`
Commands `show running-config`

ip igmp snooping querier

Use this command to enable IGMP querier operation when no multicast routing protocol is configured. When enabled, the IGMP Snooping querier sends out periodic IGMP queries for all interfaces. This command applies to interfaces configured for IGMP Snooping.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable IGMP querier configuration.

Syntax `ip igmp snooping querier`
`no ip igmp snooping querier`

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage The IGMP Snooping querier uses the 0.0.0.0 Source IP address because it only masquerades as a proxy IGMP querier for faster network convergence.

It does not start, or automatically cease, the IGMP Querier operation if it detects query message(s) from a multicast router.

If an IP address is assigned to a VLAN, which has IGMP querier enabled on it, then the IGMP Snooping querier uses the VLAN's IP address as the Source IP Address in IGMP queries.

The IGMP Snooping Querier will not stop sending IGMP Queries if there is another IGMP Snooping Querier in the network with a lower Source IP Address.

Ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Note  Do not enable the IGMP Snooping Querier feature on a Layer 2 switch when there is an operational IGMP Querier in the network.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp snooping querier
```

Validation Commands `show ip igmp interface`
`show running-config`

ip igmp snooping report-suppression

Use this command to enable report suppression for IGMP versions 1 and 2. This command applies to interfaces configured for IGMP Snooping.

Report suppression stops reports being sent to an upstream multicast router port when there are already downstream ports for this group on this interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable report suppression.

Syntax ip igmp snooping report-suppression
no ip igmp snooping report-suppression

Default Report suppression does not apply to IGMPv3, and is turned on by default for IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 reports.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage Ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Example This example shows how to enable report suppression for IGMPv2 reports for the VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp version 2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp snooping report-suppression
```

Validation Commands [show ip igmp interface](#)
[show running-config](#)

ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit

Use this command to enable IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) Snooping TCN (Topology Change Notification) Query Solicitation feature. When this command is used in the Global Configuration mode, Query Solicitation is enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation. When the no variant of this command is used in Interface Configuration mode, this overrides the Global Configuration mode setting and Query Solicitation is disabled.

Syntax `ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit`
`no ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit`

Default IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation is disabled by default on the switch, unless the switch is the Master Node in an EPSR ring, or is the Root Bridge in a Spanning Tree.

When the switch is the Master Node in an EPSR ring, or the switch is the Root Bridge in a Spanning Tree, then IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation is enabled by default and cannot be disabled using the Global Configuration mode command. However, Query Solicitation can be disabled for specified VLANs using this command from the Interface Configuration mode. Select the VLAN you want to disable in Interface Configuration mode then issue the no variant of this command to disable the specified VLAN without disabling this feature for other VLANs.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage Once enabled, if the switch is not an IGMP Querier, on detecting a topology change, the switch generates IGMP Query Solicit messages that are sent to all the ports of the vlan configured for IGMP Snooping on the switch.

On a switch that is not the Master Node in an EPSR ring or the Root Bridge in a Spanning Tree, Query Solicitation can be disabled using the **no** variant of this command after being enabled.

If the switch that detects a topology change is an IGMP Querier then the switch will generate an IGMP Query message.

Note that the **no** variant of this command when issued in Global Configuration mode has no effect on a switch that is the Master Node in an EPSR ring or on a switch that is a Root Bridge in a Spanning Tree. Query Solicitation is not disabled for the switch these instances. However, Query Solicitation can be disabled on a per-vlan basis from the Interface Configuration mode.

See the below state table that shows when Query Solicit messages are sent in these instances:

| Command issued from Global Configuration | Switch is STP Root Bridge or the EPSR Master Node | Command issued from Interface Configuration | IGMP Query Solicit message sent on VLAN |
|--|---|---|---|
| No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Yes | Yes | No | No |
| Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |

See **“Query Solicitation” on page 29.8** for introductory information about the Query Solicitation feature.

To ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Examples This example shows how to enable IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation on a switch:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit
```

This example shows how to disable IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation on a switch:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit
```

This example shows how to enable IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation for the VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit
```

This example shows how to disable IGMP Snooping TCN Query Solicitation for the VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit
```

Validation [show ip igmp interface](#)
Commands [show running-config](#)

ip igmp static-group

Use this command to statically configure multicast group membership entries on a VLAN interface, or to statically forward a multicast channel out a particular port or port range.

To statically add only a group membership, do not specify any parameters.

To statically add a (*,g) entry to forward a channel out of a port, specify only the multicast group address and the switch port range.

To statically add an (s,g) entry to forward a channel out of a port, specify the multicast group address, the source IP address, and the switch port range.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete static group membership entries.

Syntax

```
ip igmp static-group <ip-address> [source {<ip-source-addr>}]
    [interface <port>]

no ip igmp static-group <ip-address> [source {<ip-source-addr>}]
    [interface <port>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <ip-address> | Standard IP Multicast group address, entered in the form A.B.C.D, to be configured as a static group member. |
| source | Optional. |
| <ip-source-addr> | Standard IP source address, entered in the form A.B.C.D, to be configured as a static source from where multicast packets originate. |
| interface | Use this parameter to specify a specific switch port or switch port range to statically forward the multicast group out of. If not used, static configuration is applied on all ports in the VLAN. |
| <port> | The port or port range to statically forward the group out of. The port may be a switch port (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa2), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2). |

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage This command applies to IGMP Snooping on a VLAN interface, to statically add group and/or source records.

To ensure your VLAN is configured first, see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Example The following example show how to statically add group and source records for IGMP on the VLAN interface `vlan3`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan3
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp static-group 226.1.2.4 source
10.2.3.4
```

ip igmp version

Use this command to set the current IGMP version (IGMP version 1, 2 or 3) on an interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return to the default version.

Syntax `ip igmp version <1-3>`

`no ip igmp version`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| <1-3> | IGMP protocol version number |

Default The default IGMP protocol version number is 3.

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage This command applies to VLAN interfaces configured for IGMP.

Ensure your VLAN is configured first: see [Chapter 16, Configuring VLANs](#).

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan5
awplus(config-if)# ip igmp version 2
```

Validation Commands `show ip igmp interface`

show debugging igmp

Use this command to display the IGMP debugging options set.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show debugging igmp

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the IGMP debugging options set, enter the command:

```
awplus# show debugging igmp
```

Output **Figure 30-1: Example output from the show debugging igmp command**

```
IGMP Debugging status:
  IGMP Decoder debugging is on
  IGMP Encoder debugging is on
  IGMP Events debugging is on
  IGMP FSM debugging is on
  IGMP Tree-Info-Base (TIB) debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug igmp](#)

show ip igmp groups

Use this command to display the multicast groups with receivers directly connected to the router, and learned through IGMP.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ip igmp groups [<ip-address>|<interface> detail]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-address></code> | Address of the multicast group, entered in the form A.B.C.D. |
| <code><interface></code> | Interface name for which to display local information. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays local-membership information for all ports in all interfaces:

```
awplus# show ip igmp groups
```

Output **Figure 30-2: Example output from the show ip igmp groups command**

| IGMP Connected Group Address | Reporter | Group Membership Interface | Uptime | Expires | Last |
|------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|----------|----------|-------------|
| 224.0.1.1 | | port1.0.1 | 00:00:09 | 00:04:17 | 10.10.0.82 |
| 224.0.1.24 | | port1.0.2 | 00:00:06 | 00:04:14 | 10.10.0.84 |
| 224.0.1.40 | | port1.0.3 | 00:00:09 | 00:04:15 | 10.10.0.91 |
| 224.0.1.60 | | port1.0.3 | 00:00:05 | 00:04:15 | 10.10.0.7 |
| 224.100.100.100 | | port1.0.1 | 00:00:11 | 00:04:13 | 10.10.0.91 |
| 228.5.16.8 | | port1.0.3 | 00:00:11 | 00:04:16 | 10.10.0.91 |
| 228.81.16.8 | | port1.0.7 | 00:00:05 | 00:04:15 | 10.10.0.91 |
| 228.249.13.8 | | port1.0.3 | 00:00:08 | 00:04:17 | 10.10.0.91 |
| 235.80.68.83 | | port1.0.11 | 00:00:12 | 00:04:15 | 10.10.0.40 |
| 239.255.255.250 | | port1.0.3 | 00:00:12 | 00:04:15 | 10.10.0.228 |
| 239.255.255.254 | | port1.0.12 | 00:00:08 | 00:04:13 | 10.10.0.84 |

Table 30-1: Parameters in the output of the show ip igmp groups command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Group Address | Address of the multicast group. |
| Interface | Port through which the group is reachable. |
| Uptime | The time in weeks, days, hours, minutes, and seconds that this multicast group has been known to the device. |
| Expires | Time (in hours, minutes, and seconds) until the entry expires. |
| Last Reporter | Last host to report being a member of the multicast group. |

show ip igmp interface

Use this command to display the state of IGMP Snooping for a specified VLAN, or all VLANs. IGMP is shown as Active or Disabled in the show output.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show ip igmp interface [<interface>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| <interface> | The name of the VLAN interface. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples The following output shows IGMP interface status for **vlan2** (with IGMP Snooping enabled):

```
awplus#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
awplus(config)#interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)#ip igmp snooping
awplus(config-if)#exit
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show ip igmp interface vlan2
Interface vlan2 (Index 202)
  IGMP Disabled, Inactive, Version 3 (default)
  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states
  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves
  IGMP robustness variable is 2
  IGMP last member query count is 2
  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds
  IGMP query holdtime is 500 milliseconds
  IGMP querier timeout is 255 seconds
  IGMP max query response time is 10 seconds
  Last member query response interval is 1000 milliseconds
  Group Membership interval is 260 seconds
  Strict IGMPv3 ToS checking is disabled on this interface
  Source Address checking is enabled
IGMP Snooping is globally enabled
  IGMP Snooping query solicitation is globally disabled
  Num. query-solicit packets: 57 sent, 0 recvd
IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface
  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled
awplus#
```

The following output shows IGMP interface status for **vlan2** (with IGMP Snooping disabled):

```
awplus#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
awplus(config)#interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)#no ip igmp snooping
awplus(config-if)#exit
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show ip igmp interface vlan2
Interface vlan2 (Index 202)
  IGMP Disabled, Inactive, Version 3 (default)
  IGMP interface has 0 group-record states
  IGMP activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves
  IGMP robustness variable is 2
  IGMP last member query count is 2
  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds
  IGMP query holdtime is 500 milliseconds
  IGMP querier timeout is 255 seconds
  IGMP max query response time is 10 seconds
  Last member query response interval is 1000 milliseconds
  Group Membership interval is 260 seconds
  Strict IGMPv3 ToS checking is disabled on this interface
  Source Address checking is enabled
  IGMP Snooping is globally enabled
IGMP Snooping query solicitation is globally disabled
  Num. query-solicit packets: 57 sent, 0 recvd
IGMP Snooping is not enabled on this interface
  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled
awplus#
```

The following command displays the IGMP interface status and Query Solicitation for **vlan3**:

```
awplus#show ip igmp interface vlan3
Interface vlan3 (Index 203)
  IGMP Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 3 (default)
  Internet address is 192.168.9.1
  IGMP interface has 256 group-record states
  IGMP activity: 51840 joins, 0 leaves
  IGMP robustness variable is 2
  IGMP last member query count is 2
  IGMP query interval is 125 seconds
  IGMP query holdtime is 500 milliseconds
  IGMP querier timeout is 250 seconds
  IGMP max query response time is 1 seconds
  Last member query response interval is 1000 milliseconds
  Group Membership interval is 251 seconds
  Strict IGMPv3 ToS checking is disabled on this interface
  IGMP Snooping is globally enabled
IGMP Snooping query solicitation is globally enabled
  Num. query-solicit packets: 1 sent, 10 recvd
IGMP Snooping is enabled on this interface
  IGMP Snooping fast-leave is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping querier is not enabled
  IGMP Snooping report suppression is enabled
awplus#
```

Note Query Solicitation status information is highlighted in **bold** in the above output.



Use the **show ip igmp interface** command to validate that Query Solicitation is enabled and to show the number of query-solicit message packets sent and received on a VLAN.

Related Commands

- clear ip igmp**
- clear ip igmp group**
- clear ip igmp interface**
- ip igmp snooping**
- ip igmp snooping fast-leave**
- ip igmp snooping querier**
- ip igmp snooping report-suppression**
- ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit**
- ip igmp version**

show ip igmp snooping statistics

Use this command to display IGMP Snooping statistics data.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show ip igmp snooping statistics interface *<interface-range>*
[group [*<ip-address>*]]

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i><ip-address></i> | Optionally specify the address of the multicast group, entered in the form A.B.C.D. |
| <i><interface></i> | Specify the name of the VLAN interface or interface range. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display IGMP statistical information for **vlan1** and **vlan2**, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip igmp snooping statistics interface
vlan1-vlan2
```

Output **Figure 30-3: Example output from the show ip igmp snooping statistics command**

```
IGMP Snooping statistics for vlan1
Interface:    port1.0.3
Group:       224.1.1.1
Uptime:      00:00:09
Group mode:  Exclude (Expires: 00:04:10)
Last reporter: 10.4.4.5
Source list is empty
IGMP Snooping statistics for vlan2
Interface:    port1.0.4
Group:       224.1.1.2
Uptime:      00:00:19
Group mode:  Exclude (Expires: 00:05:10)
Last reporter: 10.4.4.6
Source list is empty
```

undebg igmp

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug igmp** command on page 30.5.

Chapter 31: MLD Snooping Introduction and Commands

| | |
|---|-------|
| MLD Introduction..... | 31.2 |
| MLD Snooping..... | 31.2 |
| MLD Snooping Configuration Examples..... | 31.3 |
| Command List..... | 31.6 |
| clear ipv6 mld..... | 31.6 |
| clear ipv6 mld group..... | 31.7 |
| clear ipv6 mld interface..... | 31.7 |
| debug mld..... | 31.8 |
| ipv6 mld access-group..... | 31.9 |
| ipv6 mld limit..... | 31.10 |
| ipv6 mld snooping..... | 31.12 |
| ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave..... | 31.14 |
| ipv6 mld snooping mrouter..... | 31.15 |
| ipv6 mld snooping querier..... | 31.17 |
| ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression..... | 31.18 |
| ipv6 mld static-group..... | 31.20 |
| show debugging mld..... | 31.23 |
| show ipv6 mld groups..... | 31.24 |
| show ipv6 mld interface..... | 31.25 |
| show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter..... | 31.26 |
| show ipv6 mld snooping statistics..... | 31.27 |

MLD Introduction

Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) is used to exchange membership status information between IPv6 routers that support multicasting and members of multicast groups on a network segment. Host membership in a multicast group is reported by individual member hosts, and membership status is periodically polled by multicast routers.

MLD is defined in RFC 2710, "Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) for IPv6".

MLD Snooping

MLD Snooping is a feature whereby a Layer 2 switch listens to or "snoops" the MLD messages passing through the switch or from member hosts and multicast routers. The purpose of MLD Snooping is to provide efficient Layer 2 multicast forwarding, by sending only to hosts that have expressed an interest in receiving the multicast data.

Hosts express an interest in receiving multicast data for a given multicast group by sending an MLD join message. Without MLD Snooping, if one host expresses an interest in getting multicast data for a given group, by sending an MLD join for the multicast group, then all hosts connected to the same VLAN will also receive the multicast data. This wastes bandwidth on the switch ports connected to the host that are not interested in receiving the multicast data. Snooping takes note of exactly which ports have received joins for a given group, and send that group only to those ports.

MLD Snooping is enabled by default globally for the switch. It can be enabled and disabled on a per-VLAN basis.

For MLD Snooping to operate, both IGMP Snooping and MLD Snooping must be enabled globally on the switch. By default, IGMP Snooping is enabled globally. To enable IGMP Snooping if it has been disabled, use the [ip igmp snooping command on page 30.6](#) in Global Configuration mode.

MLD Snooping makes a distinction between Member ports, which are ports connected to members hosts, and Router ports, which are ports connected to, or directed towards, a Layer 3 router or a Layer 3 switch.

Figure 31-1: Sample running-config showing an MLD Snooping Querier set on vlan2

```
!
ipv6 mld snooping
!
interface vlan2
    ipv6 mld snooping querier
!
```

MLD Snooping Configuration Examples

For detailed information about the commands used to configure MLD Snooping, see [Chapter 31, MLD Snooping Introduction and Commands](#).

The following examples configure MLD Snooping:

- [Enabling the MLD Snooping Querier on an interface](#)
- [Enabling MLD Snooping globally and on an interface](#)
- [Configuring a Multicast Router statically on an interface](#)
- [Enabling MLD Snooping Fast-Leave Processing on an interface](#)
- [Configuring MLD Snooping Report Suppression on an interface](#)

Enabling the MLD Snooping Querier on an interface

Use the MLD Snooping Querier to support MLD Snooping in a VLAN where PIM-SMv6 and MLD are not configured and whenever you do not need to route IPv6 multicast traffic.

You can configure the switch to generate MLD queries on a VLAN interface if multicast routing is not enabled. For each VLAN that is connected to switches that use MLD Snooping to report multicast traffic, configure one switch as the MLD Snooping Querier.

To enable and show MLD Snooping Querier on VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping querier
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Note that the MLD Snooping Querier is configured in Interface Configuration mode only. You cannot configure MLD Snooping Querier globally for all VLAN interfaces on a switch.

Enabling MLD Snooping globally and on an interface

To globally enable and show MLD Snooping on the switch, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 mld snooping
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface
```

Note that entering `show ipv6 mld interface` without an optional interface parameter displays MLD information for all configured interfaces globally on the switch.

To enable and show MLD Snooping on VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Note that entering `show ipv6 mld interface vlan2` with the optional interface parameter displays MLD information for that specified configured interface on the switch.

Configuring a Multicast Router statically on an interface

To configure and show a static connection to a Multicast Router for VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface
                    port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Note the VLAN interface to the Multicast Router must be administratively up and the line protocol must be up to configure a static connection to a Multicast Router on the VLAN.

Enabling MLD Snooping Fast-Leave Processing on an interface

To enable and show MLD Snooping Fast-Leave Processing on VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Configuring MLD Snooping Report Suppression on an interface

To enable and show MLD Snooping Report Suppression on VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of configuration, clear, and show commands related to MLD Snooping.

clear ipv6 mld

Use this command to clear all MLD local memberships on all interfaces.

Syntax `clear ipv6 mld`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear ipv6 mld
```

Related Commands [clear ipv6 mld group](#)
[clear ipv6 mld interface](#)

clear ipv6 mld group

Use this command to clear MLD specific local-membership(s) on all interfaces, for a particular group.

Syntax `clear ipv6 mld group {*|<ipv6-address>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| * | Clears all groups on all interfaces. This is an alias to the clear ipv6 mld command. |
| <ipv6-address> | Specify the group address for which MLD local-memberships are to be cleared from all interfaces. Specify the IPv6 multicast group address in the format in the format X:X::X:X. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear ipv6 mld group *
```

Related Commands [clear ipv6 mld](#)
[clear ipv6 mld interface](#)

clear ipv6 mld interface

Use this command to clear MLD interface entries.

Syntax `clear ipv6 mld interface <interface>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <interface> | Specifies name of the interface; all groups learned from this interface are deleted. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# clear ipv6 mld interface vlan2
```

Related Commands [clear ipv6 mld](#)
[clear ipv6 mld group](#)

debug mld

Use this command to enable all MLD debugging modes, or a specific MLD debugging mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable all MLD debugging modes, or a specific MLD debugging mode.

Syntax `debug mld {all|decode|encode|events|fsm|tib}`
`no debug mld {all|decode|encode|events|fsm|tib}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | Debug all MLD. |
| decode | Debug MLD decoding. |
| encode | Debug MLD encoding. |
| events | Debug MLD events. |
| fsm | Debug MLD Finite State Machine (FSM). |
| tib | Debug MLD Tree Information Base (TIB). |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug mld all
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug mld decode
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug mld encode
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# debug mld events
```

Related Commands [show debugging mld](#)

ipv6 mld access-group

Use this command to control the multicast local-membership groups learned on an interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this access control.

Syntax `ipv6 mld access-group <IPv6-access-list-name>`
`no ipv6 mld access-group`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><IPv6-access-list-name></code> | Specify a Standard or an Extended software IPv6 access-list name. See Chapter 35, IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands for supported IPv6 ACLs. |

Default No access list is configured by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Examples In the following example, the VLAN interface `vlan2` will only accept MLD joins for groups in the range `ff1e:0db8:0001::/64`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
awplus(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard group1 permit
ff1e:0db8:0001::/64
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 enable
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld access-group group1
```

In the following example, the VLAN interfaces `vlan2-vlan4` will only accept MLD joins for groups in the range `ff1e:0db8:0001::/64`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
awplus(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard group1 permit
ff1e:0db8:0001::/64
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 enable
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld access-group group1
```

ipv6 mld limit

Use this command to configure a limit on the maximum number of group memberships that may be learned. The limit may be set for the switch as a whole, or for a specific interface.

Once the specified group membership limit is reached, all further local-memberships will be ignored.

Optionally, an exception access-list can be configured to specify the group-address(es) that are exempted from being subject to the limit.

Use the **no** variant of this command to unset the limit and any specified exception access-list.

Syntax `ipv6 mld limit <limitvalue> [except <IPv6-access-list-name>]`
`no ipv6 mld limit`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><limitvalue></code> | <code><2-512></code> Maximum number of group membership states. |
| <code><IPv6-access-list-name></code> | Specify a Standard or an Extended software IPv6 access-list name that defines multicast groups, which are exempted from being subject to the configured limit. See Chapter 35, IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands for supported IPv6 ACLs. |

Default The default limit, which is reset by the **no** variant of this command, is the same as maximum number of group membership entries that can be learned with the **ipv6 mld limit** command.

The default limit of group membership entries that can be learned is 512 entries.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Examples The following example configures an MLD limit of 100 group-memberships across all VLAN interfaces on which MLD is enabled, and excludes groups in the range `ff1e:0db8:0001::/64` from this limitation:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
awplus(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard v6grp permit
ff1e:0db8:0001::/64
awplus(config)# ipv6 mld limit 100 except v6grp
```

The following example configures an MLD limit of 100 group-membership states on the VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
awplus(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 enable
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld limit 100
```

The following example configures an MLD limit of 100 group-membership states on the VLAN interfaces `vlan2-vlan4`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 forwarding
awplus(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 enable
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld limit 100
```

Related Commands [show ipv6 mld groups](#)

ipv6 mld snooping

Use this command to enable MLD Snooping. When this command is issued in the Global Configuration mode, MLD Snooping is enabled globally for the switch. When this command is issued in Interface mode for a VLAN then MLD Snooping is enabled for the specified VLAN. Note that MLD Snooping is enabled on the VLAN only if it is enabled globally and on the VLAN.

Use the **no** variant of this command to globally disable MLD Snooping in Global Configuration mode, or for the specified VLAN interface in Interface mode.

Syntax `ipv6 mld snooping`
`no ipv6 mld snooping`

Default By default, MLD Snooping is enabled both globally and on all VLANs.

Mode Global Configuration and Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Usage For MLD Snooping to operate on particular VLAN interfaces, it must be enabled both globally by using this command in Global Configuration mode, and on individual VLAN interfaces by using this command in Interface Configuration mode (both are enabled by default).

MLD requires memory for storing data structures, as well as the hardware tables to implement hardware routing. As the number of ports, VLANs, static and dynamic groups increases then more memory is consumed. You can track the memory used for MLD with the command:

```
awplus# show memory pools nsm | grep MLD
```

Static and dynamic groups (LACP), ports and VLANs are not limited for MLD. For VLANs, this allows you to configure MLD across more VLANs with fewer ports per VLAN, or fewer VLANs with more ports per VLAN. For LACPs, you can configure MLD across more LACP groups with fewer ports per LACP, or fewer LACP groups with more ports per LACP.

Examples To configure MLD Snooping on the VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping
```

To configure MLD Snooping on the VLAN interfaces `vlan2-vlan4`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping
```

To disable MLD Snooping for the VLAN interface `vlan2`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config)# no ipv6 mld snooping
```

To disable MLD Snooping for the VLAN interfaces `vlan2-vlan4`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config)# no ipv6 mld snooping
```

To configure MLD Snooping globally for the switch, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 mld snooping
```

To disable MLD Snooping globally for the switch, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ipv6 mld snooping
```

ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave

Use this command to enable MLD Snooping fast-leave processing. Fast-leave processing is analogous to immediate-leave processing; the MLD group-membership is removed as soon as an MLD leave group message is received, without sending out a group-specific query.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable fast-leave processing.

Syntax `ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave`
`no ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave`

Default MLD Snooping fast-leave processing is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Usage This MLD Snooping command can only be configured on VLAN interfaces.

Examples This example shows how to enable fast-leave processing on the VLAN interface `vlan2`.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave
```

This example shows how to enable fast-leave processing on the VLAN interface `vlan2-vlan4`.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave
```

ipv6 mld snooping mrouter

Use this command to statically configure the specified port as a Multicast Router interface for MLD Snooping within the specified VLAN.

See detailed usage notes below to configure static multicast router ports when using static IPv6 multicast routes with EPSR, and the destination VLAN is an EPSR data VLAN.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the static configuration of the interface as a Multicast Router interface.

Syntax `ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface <port>`
`no ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface <port>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| <port> | Specify the name of the port. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Usage This MLD Snooping command statically configures a switch port as a Multicast Router interface.

Note that if static IPv6 multicast routing is being used with EPSR and the destination VLAN is an EPSR data VLAN, then multicast router (mrouter) ports must be statically configured. This minimizes disruption for multicast traffic in the event of ring failure or restoration.

When configuring the EPSR data VLAN, statically configure mrouter ports so that the multicast router can be reached in either direction around the EPSR ring.

For example, if `port1.0.1` and `port1.0.6` are ports on an EPSR data VLAN `vlan101`, which is the destination for a static IPv6 multicast route, then configure both ports as multicast router (mrouter) ports as shown in the example commands listed below:

Output **Figure 31-2: Example ipv6 mld snooping mrouter commands when static IPv6 multicast routing is being used and the destination VLAN is an EPSR data VLAN:**

```
awplus>enable
awplus#configure terminal
awplus(config)#interface vlan101
awplus(config-if)#ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)#ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface port1.0.6
```

Examples This example shows how to specify the next-hop interface to the multicast router for VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface
port1.0.5
```

This example shows how to specify the next-hop interface to the multicast router for VLAN interfaces `vlan2-vlan4`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping mrouter interface
port1.0.5
```

ipv6 mld snooping querier

Use this command to enable MLD querier operation on a subnet (VLAN) when no multicast routing protocol is configured in the subnet (VLAN). When enabled, the MLD Snooping querier sends out periodic MLD queries for all interfaces on that VLAN.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable MLD querier configuration.

Syntax `ipv6 mld snooping querier`
`no ipv6 mld snooping querier`

Mode Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface.

Usage This command can only be configured on a single VLAN interface - not on multiple VLANs.

The MLD Snooping querier uses the 0.0.0.0 Source IP address because it only masquerades as an MLD querier for faster network convergence.

The MLD Snooping querier does not start, or automatically cease, the MLD Querier operation if it detects query message(s) from a multicast router. It restarts as an MLD Snooping querier if no queries are seen within the other querier interval.

Example

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping querier
```

ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression

Use this command to enable report suppression from hosts for Multicast Listener Discovery version 1 (MLDv1) on a VLAN in Interface Configuration mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable report suppression on a VLAN in Interface Configuration mode.

Syntax `ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression`
`no ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression`

Default Report suppression does not apply to MLDv2, and is turned on by default for MLDv1 reports.

Mode Interface Configuration for a specified VLAN interface or a range of VLAN interfaces.

Usage This MLD Snooping command can only be configured on VLAN interfaces.

MLDv1 Snooping maybe configured to suppress reports from hosts. When a querier sends a query, only the first report for particular set of group(s) from a host will be forwarded to the querier by the MLD Snooping switch. Similar reports (to the same set of groups) from other hosts, which would not change group memberships in the querier, will be suppressed by the MLD Snooping switch to prevent 'flooding' of query responses.

Examples This example shows how to enable report suppression for MLD reports on VLAN interface vlan2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression
```

This example shows how to disable report suppression for MLD reports on VLAN interface vlan2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression
```

This example shows how to enable report suppression for MLD reports on VLAN interfaces vlan2-vlan4:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression
```

This example shows how to disable report suppression for MLD reports on VLAN interfaces vlan2-vlan4:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression
```

ipv6 mld static-group

Use this command to statically configure IPv6 group membership entries on an interface. To statically add only a group membership, do not specify any parameters.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete static group membership entries.

Syntax

```

ipv6 mld static-group <ipv6-group-address>
    [source <ipv6-source-address>|ssm-map] [interface <port>]

no ipv6 mld static-group <ipv6-group-address>
    [source <ipv6-source-address>|ssm-map] [interface <port>]

```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <ipv6-group-address> | Specify a standard IPv6 Multicast group address to be configured as a static group member. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |
| <ipv6-source-address> | Optional. Specify a standard IPv6 source address to be configured as a static source from where multicast packets originate. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |
| ssm-map | Mode of defining SSM mapping. SSM mapping statically assigns sources to MLDv1 groups to translate these (*,G) groups' memberships to (S,G) memberships for use with PIM-SSM. |
| <port> | Optional. Physical interface. This parameter specifies a physical port. If this parameter is used, the static configuration is applied to just to that physical interface. If this parameter is not used, the static configuration is applied on all ports in the VLAN. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface.

Usage This command applies to MLD Snooping on a VLAN interface to statically add groups and/or source records.

Examples The following examples show how to statically add group and/or source records for MLD:

```

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10

```

```

awplus # configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
fe80::2fd:6cff:fe1c:b

```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
                    ssm-map
```

The following examples show how to statically add group and/or source records for MLD Snooping on VLAN interface `vlan2`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
                    fe80::2fd:6cff:fe1c:b
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
                    ssm-map
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 interface
                    port1.0.4
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
                    fe80::2fd:6cff:fe1c:b interface port1.0.4
```

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 mld static-group ff1e::10 source
                    ssm-map interface port1.0.4
```

show debugging mld

Use this command to display the MLD debugging modes enabled with the **debug mld** command.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show debugging mld

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show debugging mld
```

Output

```
show debugging mld
MLD Debugging status:
  MLD Decoder debugging is on
  MLD Encoder debugging is on
  MLD Events debugging is on
  MLD FSM debugging is on
  MLD Tree-Info-Base (TIB) debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug mld](#)

show ipv6 mld groups

Use this command to display the multicast groups with receivers directly connected to the router, and learned through MLD.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 mld groups [<ipv6-address> |<interface>] [detail]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <ipv6-address> | Optional. Specify Address of the multicast group in format X:X::X:X. |
| <interface> | Optional. Specify the Interface name for which to display local information. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples The following command displays local-membership information for all interfaces:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld groups
```

Output

```
MLD Connected Group Membership
Group Address Interface Uptime Expires Last Reporter
ff08::1 port1.0.1 00:00:24 stopped fe80::eecd:6dff:fe6b:4783
```

The following command displays local-membership information for all interfaces:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld groups detail
```

Output

```
MLD Connected Group Membership Details for port1.0.1
Interface: port1.0.1
Group: ff08::1
Uptime: 00:00:13
Group mode: Include ()
Last reporter: fe80::eecd:6dff:fe6b:4783
Group source list: (R - Remote, M - SSM Mapping, S - Static )
Source Address Uptime v2 Exp Fwd Flags
2001:db8::1 00:00:13 00:04:07 Yes R
2002:db8::3 00:00:13 00:04:07 Yes R
```

show ipv6 mld interface

Use this command to display the state of MLD and MLD Snooping for a specified interface, or all interfaces.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 mld interface [<interface>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|-----------------|
| <interface> | Interface name. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays MLD interface status on all interfaces enabled for MLD:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld interface
```

Output

```
awplus#show ipv6 mld interface
Interface vlan1 (Index 301)
  MLD Enabled, Active, Querier, Version 2 (default)
  Internet address is fe80::215:77ff:fec9:7468
  MLD interface has 0 group-record states
  MLD activity: 0 joins, 0 leaves
  MLD robustness variable is 2
  MLD last member query count is 2
  MLD query interval is 125 seconds
  MLD querier timeout is 255 seconds
  MLD max query response time is 10 seconds
  Last member query response interval is 1000 milliseconds
  Group Membership interval is 260 seconds
  MLD Snooping is globally enabled
  MLD Snooping is enabled on this interface
  MLD Snooping fast-leave is not enabled
  MLD Snooping querier is enabled
  MLD Snooping report suppression is enabled
```

show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter

Use this command to display the multicast router interfaces, both configured and learned, in a VLAN. If you do not specify a VLAN interface then all the VLAN interfaces are displayed.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter [<interface>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <interface> | Optional. Specify the name of the VLAN interface. Note: If you do not specify a single VLAN interface, then all VLAN interfaces are shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples The following command displays the multicast router interfaces in `vlan2`:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter vlan2
```

Output

```
awplus#show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter vlan2
VLAN      Interface      Static/Dynamic
2         port1.0.2     Dynamically Learned
2         port1.0.3     Dynamically Learned
```

The following command displays the multicast router interfaces for all VLAN interfaces:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter
```

Output

```
awplus#show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter
VLAN      Interface      Static/Dynamic
2         port1.0.2     Dynamically Learned
2         port1.0.3     Dynamically Learned
3         port1.0.4     Statically Assigned
3         port1.0.5     Statically Assigned
```

show ipv6 mld snooping statistics

Use this command to display MLD Snooping statistics data.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 mld snooping statistics interface <interface>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| <interface> | The name of the VLAN interface. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays MLDv2 statistical information for vlan1:

```
awplus# show ipv6 mld snooping statistics interface vlan1
```

Output

```
awplus#show ipv6 mld snooping statistics interface vlan1
MLD Snooping statistics for vlan1
Interface:      port1.0.1
Group:         ff08::1
Uptime:        00:02:18
Group mode:    Include ()
Last reporter: fe80::eecd:6dff:fe6b:4783
Group source list: (R - Remote, M - SSM Mapping, S - Static )
  Source Address      Uptime    v2 Exp   Fwd  Flags
  2001:db8::1         00:02:18  00:02:02 Yes  R
  2001:db8::3         00:02:18  00:02:02 Yes  R
```


Part 5: Access and Security



- **Chapter 32 Access Control Lists Introduction**
- **Chapter 33 IPv4 Hardware Access Control List (ACL) Commands**
- **Chapter 34 IPv4 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands**
- **Chapter 35 IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands**
- **Chapter 36 Quality of Service (QoS) Introduction**
- **Chapter 37 QoS Commands**
- **Chapter 38 802.1X Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 39 802.1X Commands**
- **Chapter 40 Authentication Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 41 Authentication Commands**
- **Chapter 42 AAA Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 43 AAA Commands**
- **Chapter 44 RADIUS Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 45 RADIUS Commands**
- **Chapter 46 TACACS+ Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 47 TACACS+ Commands**
- **Chapter 48 Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 49 Local RADIUS Server Commands**

- **Chapter 50 Secure Shell (SSH) Introduction**
- **Chapter 51 Secure Shell (SSH) Configuration**
- **Chapter 52 Secure Shell (SSH) Commands**
- **Chapter 53 DHCP Snooping Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 54 DHCP Snooping Commands**

Chapter 32: Access Control Lists Introduction



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 32.2 |
| Overview | 32.2 |
| ACL Rules | 32.3 |
| ACL Source and Destination Addresses..... | 32.3 |
| ACL Reverse Masking..... | 32.3 |
| Hardware and Software ACL Types | 32.4 |
| Defining Hardware MAC ACLs..... | 32.5 |
| Defining Hardware IP ACLs | 32.6 |
| Actions for Hardware ACLs..... | 32.7 |
| Attaching Hardware ACLs to Interfaces..... | 32.7 |
| Hardware ACLs and QoS Classifications | 32.8 |
| Classifying Your Traffic..... | 32.8 |
| Security ACLs | 32.8 |
| QoS ACLs..... | 32.8 |
| Attaching Hardware ACLs Using QoS..... | 32.9 |
| Filtering Hardware ACLs with QoS | 32.11 |
| Using QoS Match Commands with TCP Flags | 32.11 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Numbers..... | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior..... | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Applicability | 32.14 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Number Types..... | 32.15 |
| ACL Filter Sequence Configuration | 32.17 |
| Creating ACLs in Global Configuration Mode | 32.19 |
| Display the ACL configuration details | 32.20 |

Introduction

This chapter describes Access Control Lists (ACLs), and general ACL configuration information.

See [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) for detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 hardware ACLs that are applied directly to interfaces.

See [Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) and [Chapter 35, IPv6 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) for detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 and IPv6 software ACLs as applied to Routing and Multicasting.

See all relevant Routing commands and configurations in [“Layer Three, Switching and Routing”](#) and all relevant Multicast commands and configurations in [“Multicast Applications”](#).

Overview

An Access Control List (ACL) is one filter, or a sequence of filters, that are applied to an interface to either block or pass (or when using QoS, apply priority to) packets that match the filter definitions. ACLs are used to restrict network access by hosts and devices and to limit network traffic.

An ACL contains an ordered list of filters. Each filter specifies either permit or deny and a set of conditions the packet must satisfy in order to match the filter. The meaning of permit or deny entries depends on the context in which the ACL is used - either on an inbound or an outbound interface.

When a packet is received on an interface, the switch compares fields in the packet against filters in the ACL to check whether the packet has permission to be forwarded, based on the filter properties. The first match determines whether the switch accepts or rejects the packets. If no entries match, the switch rejects the packets. If there are no restrictions, the switch forwards the packets.

Because filters in an ACL are applied sequentially and their action stops at the first match, it is very important that you apply the filters in the correct order. For example you might want to pass all traffic from VLAN 4 except for that arriving from two selected addresses A and B. Setting up a filter that first passes all traffic from VLAN 4 then denies traffic from addresses A and B will not filter out traffic from A and B if they are members VLAN 4. To ensure that the traffic from A and B is always blocked you should first apply the filter to block traffic from A and B, then apply the filter to allow all traffic from VLAN 4.

You can assign sequence numbers to filters. See [“ACL Filter Sequence Numbers” on page 32.14](#) for more information.

ACL Rules

- The source or destination address or the protocol of each packet being filtered are tested against the filters in the ACL, one condition at a time (for a permit or a deny filter).
- If a packet does not match a filter then the packet is checked against the next filter in the ACL.
- If a packet and a filter match, the subsequent filters in the ACL are not checked and the packet is permitted or denied as specified in the matched filter.
- The first filter that the packet matches determines whether the packet is permitted or denied. After the first match, no subsequent filters are considered.
- If the ACL denies the address or protocol then the software discards the packet.
- For software ACLs, if no filters match then the packet is dropped.
- For hardware ACLs, if no filters match then the packet is forwarded.
- Checking stops after the first match, so the order of the filters in the ACL is critical. The same permit or deny filter specified in a different order could result in a packet being passed in one situation and denied in another situation.
- One ACL per interface, per protocol, per direction is allowed. However, each ACL assigned per interface, per protocol, per direction may also have multiple filters.
- For inbound ACLs, a permit filter continues to process the packet after receiving it on an inbound interface, and a deny filter discards the packet.

ACL Source and Destination Addresses

Configure source addresses in ACL filters to filter packets coming **from** specified networking devices or hosts. Configure destination addresses in ACL filters to filter packets going **to** specified networking devices or hosts.

ACL Reverse Masking

ACLs use reverse masking, also referred to as wildcard masking, to indicate to the switch whether to check or ignore corresponding IP address bits when comparing the address bits in an ACL filter to a packet being submitted to the ACL.

Reverse masking for IP address bits specifies how the switch treats the corresponding IP address bits. A reverse mask is also called an inverted mask because a 1 and 0 mean the opposite of what they mean in a subnet or a network mask.

- A reverse mask bit 0 means check the corresponding bit value.
- A reverse mask bit 1 means ignore the corresponding bit value.

Hardware and Software ACL Types

Access Control Lists (ACLs) used in AlliedWare Plus™ are separated into two different types, **software ACLs** and **hardware ACLs**. You can define both types as either named or numbered.

Note  The filtering principles applied to software ACLs (those in the range 1 to 2699) are different to those applied to hardware ACLs (those in the range 3000 to 4699).
Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action. Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.

Numbered ACLs (for hardware and software ACLs)

Numbered ACLs are assigned an ACL number within the range 1 to 4699. ACL numbers are grouped into ranges, where each range denotes a specific functionality. The following table shows the number ranges and functionality that your switch supports.

Table 32-1: ACL numeric ranges and functionality

| ACL Number Range | Function |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 to 99 | IP standard ACL ¹ |
| 1300 to 1999 | IP standard expanded ACL ¹ |
| 3000 to 3699 | Hardware IP ACL |
| 4000 to 4699 | Hardware MAC ACL |

1. **Software ACLs that use either the ranges 1-99, 100-199, 1300-1999, 2000-2699, or are named ACLs (that use the standard keyword followed by a text string), are used in features such as SNMP.**

Hardware ACLs

These ACL types are applied directly to an interface, or are used for QoS classifications. They use the following ranges:

- 3000-3699 for Hardware IP ACLs
- 4000-4699 for Hardware MAC ACLs
- named hardware IPv4 ACLs

See [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) for detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 hardware ACLs that are applied directly to interfaces.

Software ACLs

These ACLs types can be either named ACLs, using the standard keyword followed by a text string, or they can use the following ranges:

- 1-99 (IP standard ACL range)
- 1300-1999 (IP standard expanded ACL range)
- named standard IPv4 ACLs
- named standard IPv6 ACLs

Software ACLs are used in features such as SNMP.

See [Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) and [Chapter 35, IPv6 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) for detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 and IPv6 software ACLs as applied to routing and multicasting. See all relevant Routing commands and configurations in [“Layer Three, Switching and Routing”](#) and all relevant multicast commands and configurations in [“Multicast Applications”](#).

Defining Hardware MAC ACLs

These are used to filter traffic based on specific source or destination MAC addresses contained within the data frames. They can be applied to ports in the form of access groups.

A MAC access list requires the following components:

- an ACL number in the range 4000-4699
- an action, permit, or deny. See [“Actions for Hardware ACLs” on page 32.7](#)
- a source MAC address. You can use the format, HHHH.HHHH.HHHH to filter on a specific MAC address (where H is a hexadecimal number), or you can filter on any source MAC address by entering the word “any”.
- a source MAC mask. This mask determines which portion of the source MAC address header will be compared with that found in the incoming packets. The mask is configured in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each H is a hexadecimal number. In practice each hex number will normally be either 0 (to represent a match) or F (to represent a don't care condition). A mask is not required if the source address is specified as “any”.
- a destination MAC address. You can use the format, HHHH.HHHH.HHHH to filter on a specific MAC address (where H is a hexadecimal number), or you can filter on any destination MAC address by entering the word “any”.
- a destination MAC mask. This mask determines which portion of the destination MAC address header will be compared with that found in the incoming packets. The mask is configured in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each H is a hexadecimal number. In practice each hex number will normally be either 0 (to represent a match) or F (to represent a don't care condition). A mask is not required if the source address is specified as “any”.

Example To permit packets coming from a specific MAC address of 0030.841A.1234 and with any destination address:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4000 permit 0030.841A.1234
0000.0000.0000 any
```

Defining Hardware IP ACLs

Hardware IP ACLs are used to filter traffic based on specific source or destination IP addresses contained within the data frames. They can be applied to ports in the form of access groups.

An IP access list requires the following components:

- an ACL number in the range 3000-3699
- an action, see [“Actions for Hardware ACLs” on page 32.7](#)
- a packet type:
 - « IP: This matches any type of IP packet. A source and destination address must be specified, although they can be “any”.
 - « ICMP: This matches ICMP packets. A source and destination address must be specified, although they can be “any”. An ICMP type can optionally be specified after the destination address.
 - « TCP: This matches TCP packets. A source and destination address must be specified, although they can be “any”. After the source address, a source port can optionally be specified and after the destination address a destination port can optionally be specified. The port matching can be done using **eq** (equal to), **gt** (greater than), **lt** (less than), **ne** (not equal to), or **range** (for a range of ports, which requires a start port and an end port).
 - « UDP: This matches UDP packets and has the same options as TCP.
 - « proto: This allows any IP protocol type to be specified. A source and destination address must be also specified, although they can be “any”.

For example, to match (and permit) any type of IP packet containing a destination address of 192.168.1.1

```
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit ip any 192.168.1.1/32
```

To match (and permit) an ICMP packet with a source address of 192.168.x.x and an ICMP code of 4

```
awplus(config)# access-list 3001 permit icmp 192.168.0.0/16
any icmp-type 4
```

To match a UDP packet with a source address of 192.168.x.x, a destination address of 192.168.1.x, and a destination port greater than 80:

```
awplus(config)# access-list 3003 permit udp 192.168.0.0/16
192.168.1.0/24 gt 80
```

Note that an IP address mask can be specified using either of the following notations:

- “A.B.C.D/M”: This is the most common; e.g. 192.168.1.0/24
- “A.B.C.D A.B.C.D”: 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.0 is the same as 192.168.1.1/32 and 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.255 is the same as “any”
- “host A.B.C.D”: This is the same as A.B.C.D/32

Actions for Hardware ACLs

The following actions are available for Hardware ACLs:

| Parameter | Action |
|----------------|--|
| deny | Discard the packet |
| permit | Allow the packet |
| copy-to-cpu | Send a copy of the packet to the CPU and forward it as well. This is the same as copy, forward in AW hardware filters. |
| copy-to-mirror | Send a copy of the packet to the mirror port and forward it as well. |

Attaching Hardware ACLs to Interfaces

A hardware ACL is attached directly to a switchport using the **access-group** command. For example, to permit traffic from 192.168.1.x, but discard from 192.168.x.x:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit ip 192.168.1.0/24
any
awplus(config)# access-list 3001 deny ip 192.168.0.0/24 any
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# access-group 3000
awplus(config-if)# access-group 3001
```

Hardware ACLs and QoS Classifications

Interface ACLs and QoS policies can both be attached to the same port. Where this is done, packets received on the port will be matched against the ACLs first.

The interface ACLs and QoS classifications are implemented by taking the first matching filter and applying the action defined for that filter. All subsequent matches in the table are then ignored. Thus, because ACLs are also matched first, if the matching ACL has a permit action, the packet is forwarded due to that rule's action and any subsequent QoS rules are bypassed.

You can also apply permit rules using QoS.

For example, you might want to permit a source IP address of 192.168.1.x, but block everything else on 192.168.x.x.

In this case you could create both the permit and deny rules using QoS.

Classifying Your Traffic

Classification is the process of **filtering** and **marking**. Filtering involves sorting your data into appropriate traffic types. Marking involves tagging the data so that downstream ports and routers can apply appropriate service policy rules.

There are two reasons to classify data:

1. To provide network security (Security ACLs)
2. To apply service quality criteria QoS.

Security ACLs

The main application of security ACLs is to block undesired traffic. Other applications include:

- copy-to-cpu
- copy-to-mirror
- send-to-cpu

For more information on these applications see [“Actions for Hardware ACLs” on page 32.7](#)

QoS ACLs

When using ACLs though QoS, the same classification and action abilities are available, but QoS has some additional fields that it can match on (see Match Commands) and also provides the ability to perform metering, marking and remarking on packets that match the filter definitions.

The action used by a QoS class-map is determined by the ACL that is attached to it. If no ACL is attached, it uses the permit action. If an ACL is not required by the class-map (for example, only matching on the VLAN) and a deny action is required, a MAC ACL should be added with `any` for source address and `any` for destination address.

The following example creates a class-map with will deny all traffic on vlan 2:

```
awplus(config)# access-list 4000 deny any any
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 4000
awplus(config-cmap)# match vlan 2
```

The default class-map matches to all traffic and so cannot have any match or ACL commands applied to it. The action for this class-map is set via the default-action command and is `permit` by default. It can be changed to `deny` by using the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# default-action deny
```

For more information on applying QoS filtering, see [“Classifying Your Data” on page 36.8](#).

Attaching Hardware ACLs Using QoS

The same functionality can be achieved using QoS, by attaching the ACL to a class-map, attaching the class-map to a policy-map and attaching the policy-map to a port:

Step 1: Enable QoS on the switch

```
awplus(config)# mls qos enable
```

Step 2: Create access lists

Create ACL 3000 to permit all packets from the 192.168.1 subnet:

```
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit ip 192.168.1.0/24 any
```

Create ACL 3001 to deny all packets from the 192.168.0 subnet:

```
awplus(config)# access-list 3001 deny ip 192.168.0.0/24 any
```

Step 3: Attach access-groups to class-maps

Attach ACL 3000 to the class-map `cmap1`:

```
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 3000
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Attach ACL 3001 to the same class-map (`cmap2`):

```
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 3001
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Step 4: Attach class-maps to policy-maps

Attach the class-map `cmap1` to policy-map `pmap1`:

```
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
```

Add the class-map `cmap2` to the policy-map `pmap1`:

```
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
```

Return to Global Configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-pmap)# exit
```

Step 5: Add policy-maps to ports

Note that multiple interface ACLs can be attached to the same port, or either type and can be interleaved. The order of matching is based on the order in which the ACLs were attached to the port. Only one ACL can be attached to a class-map, but multiple class-maps can be attached to a policy-map. Interface ACLs can be attached to the same port as a QoS policy, with the interface ACLs being matched first as described at the beginning of the Classification section.

Filtering Hardware ACLs with QoS

Another reason for using QoS rather than interface ACLs is that QoS provides a lot more fields on which to match. These are accessed through the match commands in config-cmap mode.

Config-cmap mode describes the fields that can be matched on. Only one of each type can be matched, with the exception of tcp-flags (see below for classification). If multiple matches are specified, they are ANDed together.

The following example shows how you can match a packet on vlan 2, that has a source IP address of 192.168.x.x and a DSCP of 12:

Create ACL 3000 to permit all packets from the 192.168 subnet.:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit ip 192.168.0.0/16 any
```

Apply ACL 3000 to the class-map cmap1 and add the matching criteria of vlan 2 and DSCP 12:

```
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 3000
awplus(config-cmap)# match vlan 2
awplus(config-cmap)# match dscp 12
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Using QoS Match Commands with TCP Flags

Usually, if multiple matches of the same type are specified, the matching process will apply to the last match that you specified. For TCP flags however, the arguments are ANDed together. For example, the following series of commands will match on a packet that has ack, syn and fin set:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags ack
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags syn
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags fin
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

The following commands will achieve the same result:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags ack syn fin
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Note that the matching is looking to see whether “any” of the specified flags are set. There is no checking for whether any of these flags are unset. Therefore the following commands will match on a packet in any of the following combinations of syn and ack status flags as shown in the following table:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags syn
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

| Syn | Ack | Match on Packet |
|-------|-------|-----------------|
| Set | Set | Yes |
| Set | Unset | Yes |
| Unset | Set | No |
| Unset | Unset | No |

If you want to drop packets with syn only, but not with ack and syn, the following two class-maps can be used (note that ACL 4000 is used to apply a drop action as described in [“Actions for Hardware ACLs” on page 32.7](#)):

Step 1: Create access lists

Create ACL 4000 to deny all packets with any source or destination address:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4000 deny any any
```

Step 2: Create class-maps

Create the class-map cmap1 and configure it to match on the TCP flags, ack and syn:

```
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags ack syn
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Create the class-map cmap2 and configure it to match on the TCP flag, syn:

```
awplus(config)# class-map cmap2
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags syn
```

Step 3: Apply access-groups to class-maps

Apply ACL 4000 to this class-map (i.e. to cmap2):

```
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 4000
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
```

Step 4: Create policy-maps

Create the policy-map pmap1 and associate it with cmap1:

```
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
```

Step 5: Associate class-maps with policy-maps

Associate cmap2 with this policy-map (pmap1):

```
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
```

ACL Filter Sequence Numbers

To help you manage ACLs you can apply sequence numbers to filters. This allows you to remove filters from named and numbered ACLs without having to reconfigure an ACL.

The ability to add sequence numbers to filters simplifies updates through the ability to position a filter within an ACL. When you add a new filter, you can specify a sequence number to position the filter in the ACL and you can also remove a current filter in an ACL by specifying a sequence number.

ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior

- If filters with no sequence numbers are applied then the first filter is assigned a sequence number of 10, and successive filters are incremented by 10. Sequence numbers are generated automatically if they are not specified at entry.
- The maximum filter sequence number is 65535. If the sequence number exceeds this maximum, the command will not be recognized and will show the error message:
`% Unrecognized command`
- If you enter a filter without a sequence number it is assigned a sequence number that is 10 greater than the last sequence number and is placed at the end of the ACL.
- If you enter a filter that matches an already existing filter then the first filter is overwritten with the subsequent filter.
- ACL sequence numbers determine the order of execution of filters in an ACL. Filters in a ACL with a lower value sequence number are executed before filters with a higher value.
- Output from **show running-config** displays ACL entries without filter sequence numbers. Output from relevant **show** commands displays ACL entries with their sequence numbers.
- ACL sequence numbers are re-numbered upon switch restart following a **reload** command, or after powering off and powering on the switch. ACL sequence numbers are renumbered starting from 10 and increment by 10 for each filter. See the sample output in the configuration section that follows for an illustration of this behavior. No ACL sequence number re-number command is available to perform this action.
- The ACL sequence number feature works with numbered and named standard IPv4 and IPv6 access lists, plus named hardware IPv4 and IPv6 access lists
- The name of an access list can be designated as a number. Number in named ACLs must not exist within the range of designated numbered ACLs. (where <1-99> and <1300-1999> are standard numbered ACLs, <3000-3699> and <4000-4699> are hardware numbered ACLs).

ACL Filter Sequence Number Applicability

The ACL sequence number support feature is available with numbered and named standard IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs, and the named hardware IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs.

Numbered standard ACLs are available in the range <1-99> and <1300-1999>, which permit or deny source addresses to control packets coming from network devices or hosts, in software.

Named hardware IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs are available which permit or deny IP and MAC source and destination addresses plus VLAN IDs to control packets coming from and going to network device and hosts. Named hardware IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs use the ACL sequence number support feature for ACL revision.

The ACL sequence number support feature is available for use with named hardware IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs, but this feature is not available for use with the numbered hardware IPv4 ACLs.

Numbered hardware ACLs are available in the range <3000–3699>, which permit or deny IP source addresses, IP destination addresses, and VLAN IDs to control packets coming from and going to network devices and hosts, in hardware.

Numbered hardware ACLs are available in the range <4000–4699>, which permit or deny MAC source addresses, MAC destination addresses, and VLAN IDs to control packets coming from and going to network devices and hosts, in hardware.

ACL Filter Sequence Number Types

There are ACL filter sequence numbers available for the following types of ACLs:

| ACL Type | ACL Command Syntax |
|-----------------------------|---|
| IPv4 Standard Numbered ACLs | access-list <1-99> access-list <1300-1999> |
| IPv4 Standard Named ACLs | access-list standard <name> |
| IPv4 Hardware Named ACLs | access-list hardware <name> |
| IPv6 Standard Named ACLs | ipv6 access-list standard <name> |

Note that ACL sequence number support for these ACL commands is optional not required. An ACL sequence number will be added automatically, starting at 10 and incrementing by 10.

ACL commands without ACL filter sequence numbers

ACL filter sequence numbers are not available for numbered hardware ACL commands:

access-list <3000-3699>

access-list <4000-4699>

ACL filter sequence number entry examples

See the below CLI entry examples for prompt sub-modes for ACL filters after ACL commands:

- To create an IPv4 Standard ACL and then define ACL filters at the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode prompt **awplus(config-ip-std-acl)#**, enter the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# access-list 1
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# permit 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
```

```
awplus(config)# access-list standard std_name
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# permit 192.168.1.0/24
```

- To create an IPv4 Hardware ACL and then define ACL filters at the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode prompt **awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)#**, enter the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# access-list hardware hw_name
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit ip 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
```

- To create an IPv6 Standard ACL and then define ACL filters at the IPv6 Standard ACL Configuration mode prompt **awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)#**, enter the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard ipv6_std_name
awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)# permit 2001:db8::/64
```

ACL Filter Sequence Configuration

First create a named or numbered ACL to enter ACL filters in the ACL sub-modes available:

Step 1: Create a new ACL and add a new filter

Create ACL 10 and then add a new filter to the access-list to permit all packets from the 192.168.1 subnet:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# permit 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 10 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Step 2: Add another filter to the ACL

Append to, or add at the end of, ACL 10 a new filter to deny all packets from the 192.168.2 subnet:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# deny 192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 10 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 20 deny 192.168.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Note that if you add a filter to an ACL without specifying a sequence number the new filter is automatically assigned a sequence number. Sequence numbers are assigned in multiples of ten from the sequence number of the last filter.

Step 3: Insert a filter into the ACL

Insert a new filter with the sequence number 15 into ACL 10 to permit packets from the 192.168.3 subnet:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 15 permit 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 10 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 15 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 20 deny 192.168.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

The new filter has precedence over the filter with the sequence number 20.

Step 4: Remove a filter from the ACL by specifying a filter pattern

Remove the filter with the IP address 192.168.2 from ACL 10:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# no deny 192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 10 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 15 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Step 5: Remove a filter from the ACL by specifying a sequence number

Remove the filter with the sequence number 10 from ACL 10:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# no 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 15 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Creating ACLs in Global Configuration Mode

You can add new filters in **Global Configuration** mode with the **access-list (standard numbered) command** on page 34.29. In this mode the filters are assigned a sequence number corresponding to the order in which they are entered, i.e. the first filter entered has higher precedence in the ACL.

Step 1: Add filters with the access-list command

Add filters to ACL 10 using the **access-list** command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10 permit 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config)# access-list 10 deny 192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 15 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 20 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 30 deny 192.168.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

You can then enter the **IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration** mode and use the **(access-list standard numbered filter) command** on page 34.33 to specify sequence numbers to reorder the filters.

Step 2: Reorder the filters

Reorder the filters in ACL 10 by specifying a sequence number for each filter. The specified sequence number will overwrite the previous sequence number assigned to the filter:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 10
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 1021 permit 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 3333 permit 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 2772 deny 192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# end
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
1021 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
2772 deny 192.168.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
3333 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Step 3: Copy the running-config file into the startup-config file

Copy the running-config into the file set as the current startup-config file and then reload the device. Before the reload occurs, you will receive a confirmation request saying: "reboot system? (y/n):".

When the device has reboot you can then enter **Global Configuration** mode and use the **show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs)** command to display ACL 10:

```
awplus(config)# exit
awplus# copy running-config startup-config
awplus# reload
awplus# show access-list 10
```

```
Standard IP access list 10
 10 permit 192.168.1.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 20 deny 192.168.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
 30 permit 192.168.3.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

After the device has reboot the sequence numbers of the filters in the ACL have been reassigned incrementing from 10.

Display the ACL configuration details

Display the running system status and configuration details for ACLs:

```
awplus# show running-config access-list
```

```
!
access-list 1 deny 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 1 permit any
access-list 2
access-list 5
access-list 10 permit 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 10 deny 192.168.2.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 10 permit 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 20
access-list 25 permit 10.1.2.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 25 deny 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 50
access-list 95 permit any
access-list 1300
access-list standard name3
ipv6 access-list standard ipv6_acl2
access-list hw_acl
access-list icmp
access-list my-hw-list
access-list name2
access-list name4
!
```

For more information see [show running-config access-list](#) command on page 7.39.

Chapter 33: IPv4 Hardware Access Control List (ACL) Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 33.2 |
| IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts..... | 33.3 |
| Command List | 33.4 |
| access-group..... | 33.4 |
| access-list (hardware IP numbered) | 33.6 |
| access-list (hardware MAC numbered) | 33.15 |
| access-list hardware (named) | 33.18 |
| (access-list hardware ICMP filter)..... | 33.20 |
| (access-list hardware IP protocol filter) | 33.23 |
| (access-list hardware MAC filter) | 33.29 |
| (access-list hardware TCP UDP filter) | 33.31 |
| commit (IPv4)..... | 33.34 |
| show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs) | 33.35 |
| show interface access-group | 33.37 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for the IPv4 Hardware Access Control List (ACL) commands, and contains detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 hardware ACLs, which are applied directly to interfaces using the **access-group** command.

-
-  **Note** See [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) for descriptions of ACLs, and for further information about rules when applying ACLs see the [ACL Rules](#) section.
- See [ACL Filter Sequence Numbers](#) and [ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior](#) sections in [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) about ACL Filters.
-

To apply ACLs to an LACP channel group, apply it to all the individual switch ports in the channel group. To apply ACLs to a static channel group, apply it to the static channel group itself. For more information on link aggregation see [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#), and [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

-
-  **Note** Text in parenthesis in command names indicates usage not keyword entry. For example, **access-list hardware (named)** indicates named IPv4 hardware ACLs entered as `access-list hardware <name>` where `<name>` is a placeholder not a keyword.
-

-
-  **Note** Parenthesis surrounding ACL filters indicates the type of ACL filter not the keyword entry in the CLI, such as **(access-list standard numbered filter)** represents command entry in the format shown in the syntax [`<sequence-number>`] {deny|permit} {<source>|host <host-address>|any}.
-

-
-  **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.
-

IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts

Many of the ACL commands operate from sub-modes that are specific to particular ACL types. The table “**IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts**” shows the CLI prompts at which ACL commands are entered.

Table 33-1: IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts

| Command Name | Command Mode | Prompt |
|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| show interface access-group | Privileged Exec | awplus# |
| show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs) | Privileged Exec | awplus# |
| show interface access-group | Privileged Exec | awplus# |
| access-group | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-list (hardware IP numbered) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-list (hardware MAC numbered) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-list hardware (named) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-group | Interface Configuration | awplus(config-if)# |
| (access-list hardware ICMP filter) | IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# |
| (access-list hardware IP protocol filter) | IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# |
| (access-list hardware MAC filter) | IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# |
| (access-list hardware TCP UDP filter) | IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# |
| commit (IPv4) | IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# |

Command List

access-group

This command adds or removes a hardware-based access-list to or from a switch port interface. The number of hardware numbered and named access-lists that can be added to a switch port interface is determined by the available memory in hardware-based packet classification tables.

This command works in Interface Configuration mode to apply hardware access-lists to selected switch port interfaces.

The **no** variant of this command removes the selected access-list from an interface.

Syntax `access-group [<3000-3699> | <4000-4699> | <hardware-access-list-name>]`
`no access-group [<3000-3699> | 4000-4699 | <hardware-access-list-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <code><3000-3699></code> | Hardware IP access-list. |
| <code><4000-4699></code> | Hardware MAC access-list. |
| <code><hardware-access-list-name></code> | The hardware access-list name. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a switch port interface

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage First create an IP access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements with the [access-list \(hardware IP numbered\) command on page 33.6](#), the [access-list \(hardware MAC numbered\) command on page 33.15](#) or the [access-list hardware \(named\) command on page 33.18](#). Then use this command to apply this hardware access-list to a specific port or port range. Note that this command will apply the access-list only to incoming data packets.

To apply ACLs to an LACP aggregated link, apply it to all the individual switch ports in the aggregated group. To apply ACLs to a static channel group, apply it to the static channel group itself. An ACL can even be applied to a static aggregated link that spans more than one switch instance ([Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#)).

Note that you cannot apply software standard numbered ACLs to switch port interfaces with the access-group command. This command will only apply hardware ACLs.

Note Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.



Examples To add the numbered hardware access-list 3005 to switch port interface `port1.0.1`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# access-group 3005
```

To add the named hardware access-list `hw-acl` to switch port interface `port1.0.2`, enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# access-group hw-acl
```

To apply an ACL to static channel group 2 containing switch `port1.0.5` and `port1.0.6`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5-1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
awplus(config)# interface sa2
awplus(config-if)# access-group 3000
```

Related Commands [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)
[access-list \(hardware IP numbered\)](#)
[access-list \(hardware MAC numbered\)](#)
[show interface access-group](#)

access-list (hardware IP numbered)

This command creates an access-list for use with hardware classification, such as QoS. The access-list will match on either TCP or UDP type packets that have the specified source and destination IP addresses and Layer 4 port values or ranges. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter and the port values are optional.

The **no** variant of this command removes the previously specified IP hardware access-list.

Syntax [ip] `access-list <3000-3699> {deny|permit|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|send-to-cpu} ip <source> <destination>`

Syntax [icmp] `access-list <3000-3699> {deny|permit|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|send-to-cpu} icmp <source> <destination> [icmp-type <type-number>]`

`no access-list <3000-3699>`

Table 33-2: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - ip|icmp

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|-----|--------------------------------|----------------|---|--------------------|---|-------------------------|--|
| <3000-3699> | Hardware IP access-list number. | | | | | | | | |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. | | | | | | | | |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. | | | | | | | | |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. | | | | | | | | |
| icmp | ICMP packet. | | | | | | | | |
| ip | IP packet. | | | | | | | | |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>host <ip-addr></td> <td>Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr>/<prefix></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr><reverse-mask></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | any | Matches any source IP address. | host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. | | | | | | | | |

Table 33-2: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - ip|icmp

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|--|---|
| <i><destination></i> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| any | Matches any destination IP address. |
| host <i><ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| icmp-type | Matches only a specified type of ICMP messages. This is valid only when the filtering is set to match ICMP packets. |
| <i><type-number></i> | The ICMP type, as defined in RFC792 and RFC950. Specify one of the following integers to create a filter for the ICMP message type: |
| 0 | Echo replies. |
| 3 | Destination unreachable messages. |
| 4 | Source quench messages. |
| 5 | Redirect (change route) messages. |
| 8 | Echo requests. |
| 11 | Time exceeded messages. |
| 12 | Parameter problem messages. |
| 13 | Timestamp requests. |
| 14 | Timestamp replies. |
| 15 | Information requests. |
| 16 | Information replies. |
| 17 | Address mask requests. |
| 18 | Address mask replies. |

Syntax [tcp|udp] `access-list <3000-3699> {copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|deny|permit|
send-to-cpu} {tcp|udp} <source> {eq <sourceport>|lt <sourceport>|
gt <sourceport>|ne <sourceport>} [range <start-range> <end-range>]
<destination> [eq <destport>|lt <destport>|gt <destport>|
ne <destport>] [range <start-range> <end-range>]`

`no access-list <3000-3699>`

Table 33-3: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - tcp|udp

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <3000-3699> | Hardware IP access-list. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| deny | The access-list rejects packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| permit | The access-list permits packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| tcp | The access-list matches only TCP packets. |
| udp | The access-list matches only UDP packets. |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| any | Matches any source IP address. |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <ip-addr> <reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |

Table 33-3: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - tcp|udp

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---|---|
| <i><destination></i> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| any | Matches any destination IP address. |
| host <i><ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <i><ip-addr></i> <i><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| <i><sourceport></i> | The source (TCP or UDP) port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. |
| range | Range of port numbers. |
| <i><start-range></i> | Port number at start of range <i><0-65535></i> . |
| <i><end-range></i> | Port number at end of range <i><0-65535></i> . |
| <i><destport></i> | The destination (TCP or UDP) port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. |
| eq | Matches port numbers that are equal to the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| lt | Matches port numbers that are less than the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| gt | Matches port numbers that are greater than the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| ne | Matches port numbers that are not equal to the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |

Syntax [proto] `access-list <3000-3699> {copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|deny|permit|send-to-cpu} proto <ip-protocol> <source> <destination>`
`no access-list <3000-3699>`

Table 33-4: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - proto

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <3000-3699> | Hardware IP access-list. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| any | Matches any source IP address. |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |

Table 33-4: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - proto

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|----|---------------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--|----|---|
| <code><destination></code> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>proto</code> | Matches only a specified type of IP Protocol <code><1-255></code> . | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-protocol></code> | The IP protocol number, as defined by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Protocol Number</th> <th>Protocol Description [RFC Reference]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Internet Control Message [RFC792]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Internet Group Management [RFC1112]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>IP in IP [RFC2003]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>Network Voice Protocol [RFC741]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>17</td> <td>UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>20</td> <td>Host monitoring [RFC869]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>27</td> <td>RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>28</td> <td>IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>29</td> <td>ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] |
| Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 33-4: Parameters in the access-list (hardware IP numbered) command - proto

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-protocol></code> | 30 Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] |
| (cont.) | 33 DCCP (Datagram Congestion Control Protocol) [RFC4340] |
| | 48 DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728] |
| | 50 ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406] |
| | 51 AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402] |
| | 54 NARP (NBMA Address Resolution Protocol) [RFC1735] |
| | 88 EIGRP (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol) |
| | 89 OSPFIGP [RFC1583] |
| | 97 Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation / RFC3378 |
| | 98 Encapsulation Header / RFC1241 |
| | 108 IP Payload Compression Protocol / RFC2393 |
| | 112 Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol / RFC3768 |
| | 134 RSVP-E2E-IGNORE / RFC3175 |
| | 135 Mobility Header / RFC3775 |
| | 136 UDPLite / RFC3828 |
| | 137 MPLS-in-IP / RFC4023 |
| | 138 MANET Protocols / RFC-ietf-manet-iana-07.txt |
| | 139-252 Unassigned / IANA |
| | 253 Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 254 Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 255 Reserved / IANA |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage This command creates an access-list for use with hardware classification, such as when applying QoS. This command can be used to match ICMP packets, IP protocols, or TCP/UDP packets.

For ICMP packets, the <3000-3699> range IP hardware access-list will match any ICMP packet that has the specified source and destination IP addresses and ICMP type.

You may apply the **any** parameter if the source or destination IP address is not important. The ICMP type is an optional parameter.

Note Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.



Examples Follow the below example commands to configure access-lists for ICMP, IP protocol and TCP.

ICMP Example To create an access-list that will permit ICMP packets with a source address of 192.168.1.0/24 with any destination address and an ICMP type of 5 enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit icmp 192.168.1.0/24
any icmp-type 5
```

To destroy the access-list with an access-list identity of 3000 enter the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no access-list 3000
```

IP Example To create an access-list that will permit any type of IP packet with a source address of 192.168.1.1 and any destination address, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit ip 192.168.1.1/32 any
```

To create an access-list that will deny all IGMP packets (IP protocol 2) from the 192.168.0.0 network, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 deny proto 2 192.168.0.0/16
any
```

TCP Example To create an access-list that will permit TCP packets with a destination address of 192.168.1.1, a destination port of 80 and any source address and source port, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 permit tcp any 192.168.1.1/32
eq 80
```

copy-to-mirror Example To create an access-list that will copy-to-mirror TCP packets with a destination address of 192.168.1.1, a destination port of 80 and any source address and source port for use with the **mirror interface** command, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3000 copy-to-mirror tcp any
192.168.1.1/32 eq 80
```

Related Commands **access-group**
mirror interface
show running-config
show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs)

access-list (hardware MAC numbered)

This command creates an access-list for use with hardware classification, such as QOS. The access-list will match on packets that have the specified source and destination MAC addresses. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter.

The **no** variant of this command removes the specified MAC hardware filter access-list.

Syntax

```
access-list <4000-4699> {copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|deny|permit|
  send-to-cpu} {<source-mac-address> <source-mac-mask>|
  any}{<destination-mac-address> <destination-mac-mask>|any}
no access-list <4000-4699>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <4000-4699> | Hardware MAC access-list. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering. |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| <source-mac-address> | The source MAC address of the packets. Enter this in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each <i>H</i> is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. |
| <source-mac-mask> | The mask that will be applied to the source MAC addresses. Enter this in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each <i>H</i> is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. For a mask, each value will be either 0 or F. Where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |
| any | Any source MAC address. |
| <destination-mac-address> | The destination MAC address of the packets. Enter this in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each <i>H</i> is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. |
| <destination-mac-mask> | The mask that will be applied to the destination MAC addresses. Enter this in the format <HHHH.HHHH.HHHH> where each <i>H</i> is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. For a mask, each value will be either 0 or F. Where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |
| any | Any destination MAC address. |
| vlan | Specifies that the ACL will match on the ID in the packet's VLAN tag. |
| <1-4094> | The VLAN VID. |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|-------------------|---|
| inner-vlan | This parameter is used within double-tagged VLANs. It is the inner VLAN tag (VID); sometimes referred to as the C-TAG (Customer VLAN TAG), where the vlan VID tag is referred to as the S-TAG (Service VLAN TAG). |
| <1-4094> | The inner VLAN VID. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage This command creates an access-list for use with hardware classification, such as when applying QoS. The <4000-4699> range MAC hardware access-list will match on packets that have the specified source and destination MAC addresses. You may apply the **any** parameter if the source or destination MAC host address is not important.

Note Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.



Examples To create an access-list that will permit packets with a MAC address of 0000.00ab.1234 and any destination address enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4000 permit 0000.00ab.1234
0000.0000.0000 any
```

To create an access-list that will permit packets with an initial MAC address component of 0000.00ab and any destination address, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4001 permit 0000.00ab.1234
0000.0000.FFFF any
```

To create an access-list that will copy-to-mirror packets with an initial MAC address component of 0000.00ab and any destination address for use with the **mirror interface** command, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4001 copy-to-mirror 0000.00ab.1234
0000.0000.FFFF any
```

To destroy the access-list with an access-list identity of 4000 enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no access-list 4000
```

Related Commands **access-group**
 mirror interface
 show running-config
 show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs)

access-list hardware (named)

This command creates a named hardware access-list that can be applied to a switch port interface. ACL filters for a named hardware ACL are created in the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode.

The **no** variant of this command removes the specified named hardware ACL.

Syntax `access-list hardware <hardware-access-list-name>`
`no access-list hardware <hardware-access-list-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><hardware-access-list-name></code> | Specify the hardware ACL name to then define ACL filters for in the subsequent IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage Use this command to name a hardware ACL and enter the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode. If the named hardware ACL doesn't exist, it will be created after entry. If the named hardware ACL does exist, then you can enter IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode for that existing ACL.

Entering this command with the hardware ACL name moves you to the `(config-ip-hw-acl)` prompt for the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode so you can enter ACL filters with sequence numbers. From this prompt, configure the filters for the ACL. See [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) for complete examples of configured sequenced numbered ACLs.

See also the table “[IPv4 Hardware Access List Commands and Prompts](#)” in this chapter. This table shows the relevant prompts at which ACL commands and ACL filters are entered for sequenced ACLs.

Note Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.



Examples To create the hardware access-list named `ACL-1` and enter the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode to specify the ACL filter entry, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware ACL-1
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)#
```

To remove the hardware access-list named `ACL-1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no access-list hardware ACL-1
```

Related Commands **access-group**
 (access-list hardware ICMP filter)
 (access-list hardware IP protocol filter)
 (access-list hardware TCP UDP filter)
 (access-list standard named filter)
 show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs)

(access-list hardware ICMP filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a new ICMP filter entry to the current hardware access-list. The filter will match on any ICMP packet that has the specified source and destination IP addresses and ICMP type. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter and the ICMP type is an optional parameter. If a sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes an ICMP filter entry from the current hardware access-list. You can specify the ICMP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its ICMP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the command, the [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\) command on page 33.35](#).

Syntax [icmp] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} icmp *<source>* *<destination>* [icmp *<icmp-value>*]

no {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} icmp *<source>* *<destination>* [icmp *<icmp-value>*]

no *<sequence-number>*

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i><sequence-number></i> | <1-65535> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| icmp | ICMP packet type. |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---|---|
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. |
| <code><destination></code> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. |
| <code>icmp-type</code> | The ICMP type. |
| <code><icmp-value></code> | The value of the ICMP type. |

Mode IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage First create a named hardware access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements. Then use the **access-group** command on page 33.4 to apply this access-list to a specific port or range. Note that this command will apply the access-list only to **incoming** data packets.

An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  You must reach the prompt `awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)#` by running the **access-list hardware (named)** command on page 33.18, and entering an appropriate access-list name.

Note  Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.

Examples To add an access-list filter entry with a sequence number of 100 to the access-list named `my-list` that will permit ICMP packets with a source address of `192.168.1.0/24`, any destination address and an icmp type of 5, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# 100 permit icmp 192.168.1.0/24 any
icmp-type 5
```

To remove an access-list filter entry with a sequence number of 100 in the access-list named `my-list`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# no 100
```

Related Commands **access-list hardware (named)**
show running-config
show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs)

(access-list hardware IP protocol filter)

Use this ACL filter to add an IP protocol type filter entry to the current hardware access-list. The filter will match on any IP packet that has the specified source and destination IP addresses and IP protocol type, or has the optionally specified source and destination MAC addresses. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter. If a sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes an IP protocol type filter entry from the current hardware access-list. You can specify the IP protocol type filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its IP protocol type filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\) command on page 33.35](#).

Syntax [any|ip|proto]

```
[<sequence-number>] {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} {any|ip|proto <ip-protocol>} {<source>|dhcpsnooping|any} {<destination>|any} [mac {<mac-source-address> <mac-source-mask>|any} {<mac-destination-address> <mac-destination-mask>|any}]
```

```
no {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} {any|ip|proto <ip-protocol>} {<source>|dhcpsnooping} {<destination>|any} [mac {<mac-source-address> <mac-source-mask>|any} {<mac-destination-address> <mac-destination-mask>|any}]
```

```
no <sequence-number>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><sequence-number></code> | <code><1-65535></code> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. |
| <code>deny</code> | Access-list rejects packets of the type specified. |
| <code>permit</code> | Access-list allows packets of the type specified |
| <code>send to cpu</code> | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| <code>copy to cpu</code> | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| <code>copy to mirror</code> | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| <code>ip</code> | IP packets. |
| <code>any</code> | Any packet. |
| <code>proto <ip-protocol></code> | The IP Protocol type specified by its protocol number <code><1-255></code> . |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|----|---------------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--|----|---|----|--------------------------------------|----|---|----|---|----|--|----|--------------------------------------|
| <code><ip-protocol></code> | The IP protocol number, as defined by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Protocol Number</th> <th>Protocol Description [RFC Reference]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Internet Control Message [RFC792]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Internet Group Management [RFC1112]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>IP in IP [RFC2003]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>Network Voice Protocol [RFC741]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>17</td> <td>UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>20</td> <td>Host monitoring [RFC869]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>27</td> <td>RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>28</td> <td>IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>29</td> <td>ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>30</td> <td>Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>33</td> <td>DCCP (Datagram Congestion Control Protocol) [RFC4340]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>48</td> <td>DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>50</td> <td>ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>51</td> <td>AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] | 30 | Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] | 33 | DCCP (Datagram Congestion Control Protocol) [RFC4340] | 48 | DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728] | 50 | ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406] | 51 | AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402] |
| Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30 | Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 33 | DCCP (Datagram Congestion Control Protocol) [RFC4340] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 48 | DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 50 | ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 51 | AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | |
|---|---|--|
| <code><ip-protocol></code> (cont.) | 54 | NARP (NBMA Address Resolution Protocol) [RFC1735] |
| | 58 | ICMP for IPv6 [RFC1883] |
| | 59 | No Next Header for IPv6 [RFC1883] |
| | 60 | Destination Options for IPv6 [RFC1883] |
| | 88 | EIGRP (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol) |
| | 89 | OSPFv2 [RFC1583] |
| | 97 | Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation / RFC3378 |
| | 98 | Encapsulation Header / RFC1241 |
| | 108 | IP Payload Compression Protocol / RFC2393 |
| | 112 | Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol / RFC3768 |
| | 134 | RSVP-E2E-IGNORE / RFC3175 |
| | 135 | Mobility Header / RFC3775 |
| | 136 | UDPLite / RFC3828 |
| | 137 | MPLS-in-IP / RFC4023 |
| | 138 | MANET Protocols / RFC-ietf-manet-iana-07.txt |
| | 139-252 | Unassigned / IANA |
| | 253 | Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| 254 | Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 | |
| 255 | Reserved / IANA | |
| <code>dhcpsnooping</code> | The source address learned from the DHCP Snooping binding database. | |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---|--|
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . |
| <code><destination></code> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . |
| <code>mac</code> | Signifies a MAC and based hardware access-list. |
| <code><mac-source-address></code> | The source host's MAC address, entered in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. |
| <code><mac-source-mask></code> | The source host's MAC wildcard mask entered in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---------------------------|--|
| any | Matches any source MAC address. |
| <mac-destination-address> | The destination host's MAC address, entered in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. |
| <mac-destination-mask> | The destination host's wildcard mask entered in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |
| any | Matches any destination MAC address. |

Mode IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage First create a named hardware access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements. Then use the [access-group command on page 33.4](#) to apply this access-list to a specific port or range. Note that this command will apply the access-list only to **incoming** data packets.

An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the [access-list hardware \(named\) command on page 33.18](#), with the required access control list number, or name, but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.

Examples To add an access-list filter entry to the access-list named `my-list` that will permit any type of IP packet with a source address of `192.168.1.1` and any destination address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit ip 192.168.1.1/32 any
```

To add an access-list filter entry to the access-list named `my-list` that will permit any type of IP packet with a source address of `192.168.1.1` and a MAC source address of `ffee.ddcc.bbaa` with any IP and MAC destination address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit ip 192.168.1.1/32 any mac
ffee.ddcc.bbaa any
```

To add an access-list filter entry to the access-list named `my-list` a filter that will deny all IGMP packets (protocol 2) from the `192.168.0.0` network with sequence number 50 in access-list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# 50 deny proto 2 192.168.0.0/16 any
```

Related Commands

- [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)
- [show running-config](#)
- [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\)](#)

(access-list hardware MAC filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a MAC filter entry to the current hardware access-list. The filter will match on any IP packet that has the specified source and destination MAC addresses. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter. If a sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a MAC filter entry from the current hardware access-list. You can specify the MAC filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its MAC filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\) command on page 33.35](#).

```
Syntax [mac] [<sequence-number>] {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|
copy-to-mirror} mac {<source-mac-address> <source-mac-mask>|any}
{<destination-mac-address> <destination-mac-mask>|any}

no {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror}
mac {<source-mac-address> <source-mac-mask>|any}
{<destination-mac-address> <destination-mac-mask>|any}

no <sequence-number>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><sequence-number></code> | <code><1-65535></code> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. |
| <code>deny</code> | Specify packets to reject. |
| <code>permit</code> | Specify packets to accept. |
| <code>send-to-cpu</code> | |
| <code>copy-to-cpu</code> | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| <code>copy-to-mirror</code> | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| <code>mac</code> | MAC address. |
| <code><source-mac-address></code> | The source MAC address of the packets. Enter this in the format <code><HHHH.HHHH.HHHH></code> where each H is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. |
| <code><source-mac-mask></code> | The mask that will be applied to the source MAC addresses. Enter this in the format <code><HHHH.HHHH.HHHH></code> where each H is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. For a mask, each value will be either 0 or F. Where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |
| <code>any</code> | Any source MAC host. |
| <code><destination-mac-address></code> | The destination MAC address of the packets. Enter this in the format <code><HHHH.HHHH.HHHH></code> where each H is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|---|---|
| <code><destination-mac-mask></code> | The mask that will be applied to the destination MAC addresses. Enter this in the format <code><HHHH.HHHH.HHHH></code> where each H is a hexadecimal number that represents a 4 bit binary number. For a mask, each value will be either 0 or F. Where Hex FF = Ignore, and Hex 00 = Match. |
| any | Any destination MAC host. |

Mode IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage First create a named hardware access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements. Then use the [access-group command on page 33.4](#) to apply this access-list to a specific port or range. Note that this command will apply the access-list only to **incoming** data packets.

An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the [access-list hardware \(named\) command on page 33.18](#), with the required access control list number, or name, but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.

Examples To add an access-list filter entry to the access-list named `my-list` that will permit packets with a source MAC address of `0000.00ab.1234` and any destination MAC address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit mac 0000.00ab.1234
0000.0000.0000 any
```

To remove an access-list filter entry that permit packets with a source MAC address of `0000.00ab.1234` and any destination MAC address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# no permit mac 0000.00ab.1234
0000.0000.0000 any
```

Related Commands [access-group](#)
[access-list hardware \(named\)](#)
[show running-config](#)

(access-list hardware TCP UDP filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a TCP or UDP filter entry to the current hardware access-list. The filter will match on any TCP or UDP type packet that has the specified source and destination IP addresses. The parameter **any** may be specified if an address does not matter. If a sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a TCP or UDP filter entry from the current hardware access-list. You can specify the TCP or UDP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its TCP or UDP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\) command on page 33.35](#).

Syntax [tcp|udp] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} {tcp|udp} [*<source>*|eq *<sourceport>*|gt *<sourceport>*|lt *<sourceport>*|ne *<sourceport>*|range *<start-range>* *<end-range>*] [*<destination>*|eq *<destport>*|gt *<destport>*|lt *<destport>*|ne *<destport>*|range *<start-range>* *<end-range>*]

no {deny|permit|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror} {tcp|udp} [*<source>*|eq *<sourceport>*|gt *<sourceport>*|lt *<sourceport>*|ne *<sourceport>*|range *<start-range>* *<end-range>*] [*<destination>*|eq *<destport>*|gt *<destport>*|lt *<destport>*|ne *<destport>*|range *<start-range>* *<end-range>*]

no *<sequence-number>*

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i><sequence-number></i> | <1-65535> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| tcp | TCP packets. |
| udp | UDP packets. |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| <i><source></i> | <p>The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><i>any</i></td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>host <ip-addr></i></td> <td>Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i>.</td> </tr> </table> | <i>any</i> | Matches any source IP address. | <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i> . |
| <i>any</i> | Matches any source IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i> . | | | | | | | | |
| <i><sourceport></i> | The source TCP or UDP port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. | | | | | | | | |
| <i><destination></i> | <p>The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><i>any</i></td> <td>Matches any destination IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>host <ip-addr></i></td> <td>Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i>.</td> </tr> </table> | <i>any</i> | Matches any destination IP address. | <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | <i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i> . |
| <i>any</i> | Matches any destination IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-addr>/<prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-addr><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <i>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</i> is the same as entering <i>192.168.1.1/24</i> . | | | | | | | | |
| <i>eq</i> | Equal to. | | | | | | | | |
| <i>lt</i> | Less than. | | | | | | | | |
| <i>gt</i> | Greater than. | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|------------------|---|
| ne | Not equal to. |
| <destport> | The source TCP or UDP port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. |
| range | Specify the range of port numbers between 0 and 65535. |
| <start-range> | The source or destination port number at the start of the range <0-65535>. |
| <end-range> | The source or destination port number at the end of the range <0-65535>. |

Mode IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic on an interface controlled by a hardware ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is permitted.

Usage First create a named hardware access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements. Then use the [access-group command on page 33.4](#) to apply this access-list to a specific port or range. Note that this command will apply the access-list only to **incoming** data packets.

An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the [access-list hardware \(named\) command on page 33.18](#), with the required access control list number, or name, but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Hardware ACLs will **permit** access unless **explicitly denied** by an ACL action.

Example To add an access-list filter entry to access-list named `my-hw-list` that will permit TCP packets with a destination address of `192.168.1.1`, a destination port of `80`, and any source address, and source port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-hw-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit tcp any 192.168.1.1/32 eq 80
```

Related Commands [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)
[show running-config](#)
[show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\)](#)

commit (IPv4)

Use this command to commit the IPv4 ACL filter configuration entered at the console to the hardware immediately without exiting the IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode.

This command forces the associated hardware and software IPv4 ACLs to synchronize.

Syntax `commit`

Mode IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration

Usage Normally, when an IPv4 hardware ACL is edited, the new configuration state of the IPv4 ACL is not written to hardware until you exit IPv4 Hardware ACL Configuration mode. By entering this command you can ensure that the current state of a hardware access-list that is being edited is written to hardware immediately.

Scripts typically do not include the **exit** command to exit configuration modes, potentially leading to IPv4 ACL filters in hardware not being correctly updated. Using this **commit** command in a configuration script after specifying an IPv4 hardware ACL filter ensures that it is updated in the hardware immediately.

Example To update the hardware with the IPv4 ACL filter configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware my-hw-list
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# commit
```

Related Commands [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)

show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs)

Use this command to display the specified access-list, or all access-lists if none have been specified. Note that only defined access-lists are displayed. An error message is displayed for an undefined access-list.

Syntax `show access-list [<1-99>|<100-199>|<1300-1999>|<2000-2699>|<3000-3699>|<4000-4499>|<access-list-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <1-99> | IP standard access-list. |
| <1300-1999> | IP standard access-list (standard - expanded range). |
| <3000-3699> | Hardware IP access-list. |
| <4000-4499> | Hardware MAC access-list. |
| <access-list-name> | IP named access-list. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To show all access-lists configured on the switch:

```
awplus# show access-list
```

```
Standard IP access list 1
  deny 172.16.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
Standard IP access list 20
  deny 192.168.10.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
  deny 192.168.12.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
Hardware IP access list 3001
  permit ip 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0 any
Hardware IP access list 3020
  permit tcp any 192.0.2.0/24
awplus#show access-list 20
```

To show the access-list with an ID of 20:

```
awplus# show access-list 20
```

```
Standard IP access-list 20
  deny 192.168.10.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
  deny 192.168.12.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Note the below error message if you attempt to show an undefined access-list:

```
awplus# show access-list 2
```

```
% Can't find access-list 2
```

Related Commands

- [access-list extended \(named\)](#)
- [access-list \(hardware MAC numbered\)](#)
- [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)

show interface access-group

Use this command to display the access groups attached to a port. If an access group is specified, then the output only includes the ports that the specified access group is attached to. If no access group is specified then this command displays all access groups that are attached to the ports that are specified with *<port-list>*.

Note that **access group** is the term given for an access-list when it is applied to an interface.

Syntax `show interface <port-list> access-group [<3000-3699>|<4000-4699>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i><port-list></i> | Specify the ports to display information. A port-list can be either: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ a switch port (e.g. port1.0.6) a static channel group (e.g. sa2) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2)■ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-1.0.6 or port1.0.1-port1.0.6 or po1-po2■ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.1,port1.0.3-1.0.6. Do not mix switch ports, static channel groups, and LACP channel groups in the same list. |
| <code>access group</code> | Select the access group whose details you want to show. |
| <i><3000-3699></i> | Specifies the Hardware IP access-list. |
| <i><4000-4699></i> | Specifies the Hardware MAC access-list. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show all access-lists attached to `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# show interface port1.0.1 access-group
```

Output **Figure 33-1: Example output from the show interface access-group command**

```
Interface port1.0.1
  access-group 3000
  access-group 3002
  access-group 3001
```

Related Commands [access-group](#)

Chapter 34: IPv4 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 34.2 |
| IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts | 34.3 |
| Command List | 34.4 |
| access-list extended (named) | 34.4 |
| access-list (extended numbered) | 34.13 |
| (access-list extended ICMP filter) | 34.16 |
| (access-list extended IP filter) | 34.18 |
| (access-list extended IP protocol filter) | 34.21 |
| (access-list extended TCP UDP filter) | 34.25 |
| access-list standard (named) | 34.27 |
| access-list (standard numbered) | 34.29 |
| (access-list standard named filter) | 34.31 |
| (access-list standard numbered filter) | 34.33 |
| dos | 34.35 |
| maximum-access-list | 34.39 |
| show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs) | 34.40 |
| show dos interface | 34.42 |
| show ip access-list | 34.44 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for the IPv4 Software Access Control List (ACL) commands, and contains detailed command information and command examples about IPv4 software ACLs as applied to Routing and Multicasting, which are not applied to interfaces.

-
-  **Note** See [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) for descriptions of ACLs, and for further information about rules when applying ACLs see the [ACL Rules](#) section.
- See [ACL Filter Sequence Numbers](#) and [ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior](#) sections in [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) about ACL Filters.
-

See all relevant Routing commands and configurations in “[IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#)” and all relevant Multicast commands and configurations in “[Multicast Applications](#)”.

To apply ACLs to an LACP channel group, apply it to all the individual switch ports in the channel group. To apply ACLs to a static channel group, apply it to the static channel group itself. For more information on link aggregation see [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#), and [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

-
-  **Note** Text in parenthesis in command names indicates usage not keyword entry. For example, **access-list hardware (named)** indicates named IPv4 hardware ACLs entered as `access-list hardware <name>` where `<name>` is a placeholder not a keyword.
-

-
-  **Note** Parenthesis surrounding ACL filters indicates the type of ACL filter not the keyword entry in the CLI, such as **(access-list standard numbered filter)** represents command entry in the format shown in the syntax `[<sequence-number>] {deny|permit} {<source>|host <host-address>|any}`.
-

-
-  **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.
-

IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts

Many of the ACL commands operate from sub-modes that are specific to particular ACL types. The table “IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts” shows the CLI prompts at which ACL commands are entered.

Table 34-1: IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts

| Command Name | Command Mode | Prompt |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| show ip access-list | Privileged Exec | awplus# |
| access-group | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-list standard (named) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| access-list (standard numbered) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| maximum-access-list | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| (access-list standard named filter) | IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# |
| (access-list standard numbered filter) | IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# |

Command List

access-list extended (named)

This command configures an extended named access-list that permits or denies packets from specific source and destination IP addresses. You can either create an extended named ACL together with an ACL filter entry in the Global Configuration mode, or you can use the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode for sequenced ACL filter entry after entering a list name.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified extended named access-list.

Syntax [list-name] `access-list extended <list-name>`
`no access-list extended <list-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><list-name></code> | A user-defined name for the access-list |

Syntax [icmp] `access-list extended <list-name>{deny|permit}`
`icmp <source> <destination> [icmp-type <type-number>] [log]`
`no access-list extended <list-name>{deny|permit}`
`icmp <source> <destination> [icmp-type <type-number>] [log]`

Table 34-2: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - icmp

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><list-name></code> | A user-defined name for the access-list. |
| <code>deny</code> | The access-list rejects packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| <code>permit</code> | The access-list permits packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| <code>icmp</code> | The access-list matches only ICMP packets. |
| <code>icmp-type</code> | Matches only a specified type of ICMP messages. This is valid only when the filtering is set to match ICMP packets. |

Table 34-2: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - icmp (cont.)

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|---|---|
| <i><source></i> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| <i>any</i> | Matches any source IP address. |
| <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <i><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| <i><destination></i> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| <i>any</i> | Matches any destination IP address. |
| <i>host <ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <i><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |

Table 34-2: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - icmp (cont.)

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|----------------------------|---|
| <i><type-number></i> | The ICMP type, as defined in RFC792 and RFC950. Specify one of the following integers to create a filter for the ICMP message type: |
| 0 | Echo replies. |
| 3 | Destination unreachable messages. |
| 4 | Source quench messages. |
| 5 | Redirect (change route) messages. |
| 8 | Echo requests. |
| 11 | Time exceeded messages. |
| 12 | Parameter problem messages. |
| 13 | Timestamp requests. |
| 14 | Timestamp replies. |
| 15 | Information requests. |
| 16 | Information replies. |
| 17 | Address mask requests. |
| 18 | Address mask replies. |
| log | Logs the results. |

Syntax [tcp|udp] `access-list extended <list-name> {deny|permit} {tcp|udp} <source> [eq <sourceport>|lt <sourceport>|gt <sourceport>|ne <sourceport>] <destination> [eq <destport>|lt <destport>|gt <destport>|ne <destport>] [log]`

`no access-list extended <list-name> {deny|permit} {tcp|udp} <source> [eq <sourceport>|lt <sourceport>|gt <sourceport>|ne <sourceport>] <destination> [eq <destport> |lt <destport>|gt <destport>|ne <destport>] [log]`

Table 34-3: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - tcp|udp

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|---|---|--|---|
| <code><list-name></code> | A user-defined name for the access-list. | | | | | | | | |
| <code>deny</code> | The access-list rejects packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| <code>permit</code> | The access-list permits packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| <code>tcp</code> | The access-list matches only TCP packets. | | | | | | | | |
| <code>udp</code> | The access-list matches only UDP packets. | | | | | | | | |
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><code>any</code></td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>host <ip-addr></code></td> <td>Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr><reverse-mask></code></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code>.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. | <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. | <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <code><ip-addr><reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr><reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . | | | | | | | | |

Table 34-3: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - tcp|udp

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|---|---|
| <i><destination></i> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| any | Matches any destination IP address. |
| host <i><ip-addr></i> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <i><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| <i><sourceport></i> | The source port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. |
| <i><destport></i> | The destination port number, specified as an integer between 0 and 65535. |
| eq | Matches port numbers equal to the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| lt | Matches port numbers less than the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| gt | Matches port numbers greater than the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| ne | Matches port numbers not equal to the port number specified immediately after this parameter. |
| log | Log the results. |

```

Syntax [proto|any|ip] access-list extended <list-name> {deny|permit} {proto <ip-protocol>|
any|ip} {<source>} {<destination>} [log]

no access-list extended <list-name>{deny|permit}
{proto <ip-protocol>|any|ip}{<source>}{<destination>} [log]
  
```

Table 34-4: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - proto|ip|any

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|-----|-------------------------------------|----------------|--|--------------------|--|-------------------------|---|
| <list-name> | A user-defined name for the access-list. | | | | | | | | |
| deny | The access-list rejects packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| permit | The access-list permits packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | |
| proto | Matches only a specified type of IP Protocol. | | | | | | | | |
| any | The access-list matches any type of IP packet. | | | | | | | | |
| ip | The access-list matches only IP packets. | | | | | | | | |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>host <ip-addr></td> <td>Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr>/<prefix></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr><reverse-mask></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | any | Matches any source IP address. | host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. | | | | | | | | |
| <destination> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any destination IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>host <ip-addr></td> <td>Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr>/<prefix></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><ip-addr><reverse-mask></td> <td>Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | any | Matches any destination IP address. | host <ip-addr> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| any | Matches any destination IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr>/<prefix> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | | | | | |
| <ip-addr><reverse-mask> | Alternatively, you can enter a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. | | | | | | | | |

Table 34-4: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - proto|ip|any

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|----|---------------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--|----|---|----|--------------------------------------|
| log | Logs the results. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-protocol></i> | The IP protocol number, as defined by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Protocol Number</th> <th>Protocol Description [RFC Reference]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Internet Control Message [RFC792]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Internet Group Management [RFC1112]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>IP in IP [RFC2003]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>Network Voice Protocol [RFC741]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>17</td> <td>UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>20</td> <td>Host monitoring [RFC869]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>27</td> <td>RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>28</td> <td>IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>29</td> <td>ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>30</td> <td>Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] | 30 | Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] |
| Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Host monitoring [RFC869] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 | RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 28 | IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 29 | ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30 | Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 34-4: Parameters in the access-list extended (named) command - proto[ip]any

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | |
|---|------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-protocol></code> (cont.) | Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] |
| | 33 | Datagram Congestion Control Protocol [RFC4340] |
| | 48 | DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728] |
| | 50 | ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406] |
| | 51 | AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402] |
| | 54 | NARP (NBMA Address Resolution Protocol) [RFC1735] |
| | 88 | EIGRP (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol) |
| | 89 | OSPF/IGP [RFC1583] |
| | 97 | Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation / RFC3378 |
| | 98 | Encapsulation Header / RFC1241 |
| | 108 | IP Payload Compression Protocol / RFC2393 |
| | 112 | Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol / RFC3768 |
| | 134 | RSVP-E2E-IGNORE / RFC3175 |
| | 135 | Mobility Header / RFC3775 |
| | 136 | UDPLite / RFC3828 |
| | 137 | MPLS-in-IP / RFC4023 |
| | 138 | MANET Protocols / RFC-ietf-manet-iana-07.txt |
| | 139–252 | Unassigned / IANA |
| | 253 | Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 254 | Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 255 | Reserved / IANA |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage Use this command when configuring access-list for filtering IP software packets. To enable backwards compatibility you can either create access-lists from within this command, or you can enter **access-list** followed by only the number. This latter method moves you to the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode for the selected access-list number, and from here you can configure your access-lists by using the commands (**access-list extended ICMP filter**), (**access-list extended IP filter**), and (**access-list extended IP protocol filter**).

The table “**IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts**” on page 34.3 shows the prompts at which ACL commands are entered. See the relevant links shown for the **Related Commands**.

Note that packets must match both the source and the destination details.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Examples You can enter the extended named ACL in the Global Configuration mode together with the ACL filter entry on the same line, as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended TK deny tcp 2.2.2.3/24 eq
14 3.3.3.4/24 eq 12 log
```

Alternatively, you can enter the extended named ACL in Global Configuration mode before specifying the ACL filter entry in the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode, as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended TK
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny tcp 2.2.2.3/24 eq 14 3.3.3.4/24
eq 12 log
```

Related Commands (**access-list extended ICMP filter**)
 (**access-list extended IP filter**)
 (**access-list extended TCP UDP filter**)
show running-config
show ip access-list

access-list (extended numbered)

This command configures an extended numbered access-list that permits or denies packets from specific source and destination IP addresses. You can either create an extended numbered ACL together with an ACL filter entry in the Global Configuration mode, or you can use the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode for sequenced ACL filter entry after entering a list number.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified extended named access-list.

Syntax [list-number] `access-list {<100-199>|<2000-2699>}`

`no access-list {<100-199>|<2000-2699>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <100-199> | IP extended access-list. |
| <2000-2699> | IP extended access-list (expanded range). |

Syntax [deny|permit] `access-list {<100-199>|<2000-2699>} {deny|permit} ip <source> <destination>`

`no access-list {<100-199>|<2000-2699>} {deny|permit} ip <source> <destination>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <100-199> | IP extended access-list. |
| <2000-2699> | IP extended access-list (expanded range). |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| any | Matches any source IP address. |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <ip-addr> <reverse-mask> | An IPv4 address, followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. |
| <destination> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|-----------------------------|---|
| any | Matches any destination IP address. |
| host <ip-addr> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <ip-addr> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <ip-addr> <reverse-mask> | An IPv4 address, followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.10.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage Use this command when configuring access-list for filtering IP software packets. To enable backwards compatibility you can either create access-lists from within this command, or you can enter **access-list** followed by only the number. This latter method moves you to the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode for the selected access-list number, and from here you can configure your access-lists by using the commands (**access-list extended ICMP filter**), (**access-list extended IP filter**), and (**access-list extended IP protocol filter**).

The table “**IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts**” on page 34.3 shows the prompts at which ACL commands are entered. See the relevant links shown for the **Related Commands**.

Note that packets must match both the source and the destination details.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Examples You can enter the extended named ACL in the Global Configuration mode together with the ACL filter entry on the same line, as in previous software releases as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 101 deny ip 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.255
any
```

Alternatively, you can enter the extended named ACL in Global Configuration mode before specifying the ACL filter entry in the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode, as shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 101
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny ip 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.255 any
```

Related Commands **(access-list extended ICMP filter)**
 (access-list extended IP filter)
 (access-list extended TCP UDP filter)
 show running-config
 show ip access-list

(access-list extended ICMP filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a new ICMP filter entry to the current extended access-list. If the sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes an ICMP filter entry from the current extended access-list. You can specify the ICMP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its ICMP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Software ACLs\)](#) command.

Syntax [icmp] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit} icmp *<source>* *<destination>*
 [icmp-type *<icmp-value>*] [log]

no {deny|permit} icmp *<source>* *<destination>*[icmp-type *<icmp-value>*]
 [log]

no *<sequence-number>*

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|-----|-------------------------------------|
| <i><sequence-number></i> | <i><1-65535></i> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. | | | | |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | |
| icmp | ICMP packet type. | | | | |
| <i><source></i> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | any | Matches any source IP address. |
| <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | |
| <i><destination></i> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any destination IP address.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | any | Matches any destination IP address. |
| <i><ip-addr>/ <prefix></i> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | |
| any | Matches any destination IP address. | | | | |
| icmp-type | The ICMP type. | | | | |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code><icmp-value></code> | The value of the ICMP type. |
| <code>log</code> | Log the results. |

Mode IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

 **Note** The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list (extended numbered)** command or the **access-list extended (named)** command, with the required access control list number, or name - but with no further parameters selected.

 **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Examples To add a new entry in access-list called `my-list` that will reject ICMP packets from 10.0.0.1 to 192.168.1.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny icmp 10.0.0.1/32 192.168.1.1/32
```

Use the following commands to add a new filter at sequence number 5 position of the access-list called `my-list`. The filter will accept the ICMP type 8 packets from 10.1.1.0/24 network, to 192.168.1.0 network:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# 5 permit icmp 10.1.1.0/24
192.168.1.0/24 icmp-type 8
```

Related Commands **access-group**
show running-config
show ip access-list

(access-list extended IP filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a new IP filter entry to the current extended access-list. If the sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes an IP filter entry from the current extended access-list. You can specify the IP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its IP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Software ACLs\)](#) command.

Syntax [ip] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit} ip *<source>* *<destination>*
 no {deny|permit} ip *<source>* *<destination>*
 no *<sequence-number>*

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | |
|---|--|-----|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|---|---|
| <i><sequence-number></i> | <i><1-65535></i> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. | | | | | | |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | |
| permit | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | |
| <i><source></i> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>host <i><ip-addr></i></td> <td>Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><i><ip-addr></i> <i><reverse-mask></i></td> <td>Alternatively, enter an IPv4 address followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, enter 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | any | Matches any source IP address. | host <i><ip-addr></i> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | <i><ip-addr></i> <i><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, enter an IPv4 address followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, enter 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255. |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | | | |
| host <i><ip-addr></i> | Matches a single source host with the IP address given by <i><ip-addr></i> in dotted decimal notation. | | | | | | |
| <i><ip-addr></i> <i><reverse-mask></i> | Alternatively, enter an IPv4 address followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, enter 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255. | | | | | | |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|---|---|
| <code><destination></code> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. |
| <code>host <ip-addr></code> | Matches a single destination host with the IP address given by <code><ip-addr></code> in dotted decimal notation. |
| <code><ip-addr> <reverse-mask></code> | Alternatively, enter an IPv4 address followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, enter <code>192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255</code> . |

Mode Extended ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

 **Note** The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list (extended numbered)** command or the **access-list extended (named)** command, with the required access control list number, or name - but with no further parameters selected.

 **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Example 1 First use the following commands to enter the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode and define a numbered extended access-list 101:

[list-number]

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 101
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)#
```

Then use the following commands to add a new entry to the numbered extended access-list 101 that will reject packets from 10.0.0.1 to 192.168.1.1:

```
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny ip host 10.0.0.1 host
192.168.1.1
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# 20 permit ip any any
```

Example 2 First use the following commands to enter the IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration mode and define a named access-list called my-acl:

[list-name]

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-acl
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)#
```

Then use the following commands to add a new entry to the named access-list my-acl that will reject packets from 10.0.0.1 to 192.168.1.1:

```
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny ip host 10.0.0.1 host
192.168.1.1
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# 20 permit ip any any
```

Example 3 Use the following commands to remove the access-list filter entry with sequence number 20 from extended numbered access-list 101.

[list-number]

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 101
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# no 20
```

Example 4 Use the following commands to remove the access-list filter entry with sequence number 20 from extended named access-list my-acl:

[list-name]

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-acl
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# no 20
```

Related Commands [access-list extended \(named\)](#)
[access-list \(extended numbered\)](#)
[show running-config](#)
[show ip access-list](#)

(access-list extended IP protocol filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a new IP protocol type filter entry to the current extended access-list. If the sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes an IP protocol filter entry from the current extended access-list. You can specify the IP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its IP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the **show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs)** command.

Syntax [proto] `[<sequence-number>] {deny|permit} proto <ip-protocol> <source> <destination> [log]`
`no {deny|permit} proto <ip-protocol> <source> <destination> [log]`
`no <sequence-number>`

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|----------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|----|---------------------------------|
| <code><sequence-number></code> | <1-65535> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>deny</code> | Access-list rejects packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>permit</code> | Access-list permits packets that match the source and destination filtering specified with this command. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code>proto <ip-protocol></code> | The IP Protocol type specified by its protocol number <1-255>. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <code><ip-protocol></code> | The IP protocol number, as defined by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Protocol Number</th> <th>Protocol Description [RFC Reference]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Internet Control Message [RFC792]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Internet Group Management [RFC1112]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>IP in IP [RFC2003]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>Network Voice Protocol [RFC741]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] |
| Protocol Number | Protocol Description [RFC Reference] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Internet Control Message [RFC792] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Internet Group Management [RFC1112] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | IP in IP [RFC2003] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Stream [RFC1190] [RFC1819] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) [RFC793] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | EGP (Exterior Gateway Protocol) [RFC888] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | IGP (Interior Gateway Protocol) [IANA] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Network Voice Protocol [RFC741] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><ip-protocol></code> | 17 UDP (User Datagram Protocol) [RFC768] |
| (cont.) | 20 Host monitoring [RFC869] |
| | 27 RDP (Reliable Data Protocol) [RFC908] |
| | 28 IRTP (Internet Reliable Transaction Protocol) [RFC938] |
| | 29 ISO-TP4 (ISO Transport Protocol Class 4) [RFC905] |
| | 30 Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969] |
| | 33 DCCP (Datagram Congestion Control Protocol) [RFC4340] |
| | 48 DSR (Dynamic Source Routing Protocol) [RFC4728] |
| | 50 ESP (Encap Security Payload) [RFC2406] |
| | 51 AH (Authentication Header) [RFC2402] |
| | 54 NARP (NBMA Address Resolution Protocol) [RFC1735] |
| | 88 EIGRP (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol) |
| | 89 OSPFIGP [RFC1583] |
| | 97 Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation / RFC3378 |
| | 98 Encapsulation Header / RFC1241 |
| | 108 IP Payload Compression Protocol / RFC2393 |
| | 112 Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol / RFC3768 |
| | 134 RSVP-E2E-IGNORE / RFC3175 |
| | 135 Mobility Header / RFC3775 |
| | 136 UDPLite / RFC3828 |
| | 137 MPLS-in-IP / RFC4023 |
| | 138 MANET Protocols / RFC-ietf-manet-iana-07.txt |
| | 139-252 Unassigned / IANA |
| | 253 Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 254 Use for experimentation and testing / RFC3692 |
| | 255 Reserved / IANA |

| Parameter (cont.) | Description (cont.) | | | | |
|-------------------|---|--|--|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: | | | | |
| | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;"><code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>any</code></td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> </table> | <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. |
| | <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. | | | | |
| <destination> | The destination address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all destinations. The following are the valid formats for specifying the destination: | | | | |
| log | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;"><code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>any</code></td> <td>Matches any destination IP address.</td> </tr> </table> | <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. |
| | <code><ip-addr>/ <prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | |
| | <code>any</code> | Matches any destination IP address. | | | |
| Log the results. | | | | | |

Mode IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

 **Note** The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list (extended numbered)** command or the **access-list extended (named)** command, with the required access control list number, or name - but with no further parameters selected.

 **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Example 1 [creating a list] Use the following commands to add a new access-list filter entry to the access-list named `my-list` that will reject IP packets from source address `10.10.1.1/32` to destination address `192.68.1.1/32`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny ip 10.10.1.1/32 192.168.1.1/32
```

Example 2 Use the following commands to add a new access-list filter entry at sequence position 5 in the access-list named `my-list` that will accept packets from source address `10.10.1.1/24` to destination address `192.68.1.1/24`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# 5 permit ip 10.10.1.1/24 192.168.1.1/24
```

Related Commands

- [access-list extended \(named\)](#)
- [access-list \(extended numbered\)](#)
- [show running-config](#)
- [show ip access-list](#)

(access-list extended TCP UDP filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a new TCP or UDP filter entry to the current extended access-list. If the sequence number is specified, the new filter is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a TCP or UDP filter entry from the current extended access-list. You can specify the TCP or UDP filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its TCP or UDP filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the **show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs)** command.

Syntax [tcp|udp] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit} {tcp|udp} <source> {eq <sourceport> |lt <sourceport>|gt <sourceport>|ne <sourceport>} <destination> [eq <destport>|lt <destport>|gt <destport>|ne <destport>] [log]

no [*<sequence-number>*]{deny|permit} {tcp|udp} <source> {eq <sourceport> |lt <sourceport>|gt <sourceport>|ne <sourceport>}<destination> [eq <destport>|lt <destport>|gt <destport>|ne <destport>] [log]

no <sequence-number>

Mode IPv4 Extended ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list (extended numbered)** command or the **access-list extended (named)** command, with the required access control list number, or name - but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Example 1 [creating a list] To add a new entry to the access-list named `my-list` that will reject TCP packets from 10.0.0.1 on TCP port 10 to 192.168.1.1 on TCP port 20, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# deny tcp 10.0.0.1/32 eq 10
                               192.168.1.1/32 eq 20
```

Example 2 To insert a new entry with sequence number 5 of the access-list named `my-list` that will accept UDP packets from `10.1.1.0/24` network to `192.168.1.0/24` network on UDP port 80, use the commands:

[adding to a list]

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list extended my-list
awplus(config-ip-ext-acl)# 5 permit udp 10.1.1.0/24
                             192.168.1.0/24 eq 80
```

Related Commands

- [access-list extended \(named\)](#)
- [access-list \(extended numbered\)](#)
- [show running-config](#)
- [show ip access-list](#)

access-list standard (named)

This command configures a standard named access-list that permits or denies packets from a specific source IP address. You can either create a standard named ACL together with an ACL filter entry in the Global Configuration mode, or you can use the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode for sequenced ACL filter entry after first entering an access-list name.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified standard named access-list.

Syntax [list-name] `access-list standard <standard-access-list-name>`

`no access-list standard <standard-access-list-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><standard-access-list-name></code> | Specify a name for the standard access-list. |

Syntax [deny|permit] `access-list standard <standard-access-list-name> {deny|permit} <source>`

`no access-list standard <standard-access-list-name> {deny|permit} <source>`

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|--|--|---|---|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code><standard-access-list-name></code> | Specify a name for the standard access-list. | | | | |
| <code>deny</code> | The access-list rejects packets that match the source filtering specified with this command. | | | | |
| <code>permit</code> | The access-list permits packets that match the source filtering specified with this command. | | | | |
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>any</code></td> <td>Matches any source IP address.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. |
| <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any source IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IP address. | | | | |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage Use this command when configuring a standard named access-list for filtering IP software packets. For backwards compatibility you can either create the access-list from within this command, or you can enter this command followed by only the standard access-list name then enter. This latter method moves you to the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode for the selected standard named access-list, and from here you can configure the deny or permit filters for this selected standard named access-list.

See the table **“IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts”** in this chapter which shows the prompts at which ACL commands are entered. See the relevant links shown for the **Related Commands**.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Examples To define a standard access-list named `my-list` and deny any packets from any source, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list standard my-list deny any
```

Alternatively, to define a standard access-list named `my-list` and enter the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode to deny any packets from any source, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 5 deny any
```

Related Commands [\(access-list standard named filter\)](#)
[show running-config](#)
[show ip access-list](#)

access-list (standard numbered)

This command configures a standard numbered access-list that permits or denies packets from a specific source IP address. You can either create a standard numbered ACL together with an ACL filter entry in the Global Configuration mode, or you can use the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode for sequenced ACL filter entry after first entering an access-list number.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified standard numbered access-list.

Syntax [list-number] `access-list {<1-99>|<1300-1999>}`

`no access-list {<1-99>|<1300-1999>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <1-99> | IP standard access-list. |
| <1300-1999> | IP standard access-list (expanded range). |

Syntax [deny|permit]

`access-list {<1-99>|<1300-1999>} {deny|permit} <source>`

`no access-list {<1-99>|<1300-1999>} {deny|permit} <source>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <1-99> | IP standard access-list. |
| <1300-1999> | IP standard access-list (expanded range). |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets from the specified source. |
| permit | Access-list accepts packets from the specified source. |
| <source> | The source address of the packets. You can specify a single host, a subnet, or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: |
| <ip-addr> <reverse-mask> | Enter an IPv4 address followed by a reverse mask in dotted decimal format. For example, entering 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 is the same as entering 192.168.1.1/24. |
| any | Matches any source IP address. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage Use this command when configuring a standard numbered access-list for filtering IP software packets. For backwards compatibility you can either create the access-list from within this command, or you can enter this command followed by only the standard access-list name. This moves you to the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode for the selected standard numbered access-list, and from here you can configure the deny or permit filters for this selected standard numbered access-list.

See the table **“IPv4 Software Access List Commands and Prompts”** in this chapter which shows the prompts at which ACL commands are entered. See the relevant links shown for the **Related Commands**.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Examples To create ACL number 67 that will deny packets from subnet 172.16.10, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 67 deny 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.255
```

Alternatively, to enter the IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration mode to create the ACL filter and deny packets from subnet 172.16.10.0 for the standard numbered access-list 67, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 67
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# deny 172.16.10.0 0.0.0.255
```

Related Commands **(access-list standard named filter)**
show running-config
show ip access-list

(access-list standard named filter)

This ACL filter adds a source IP address filter entry to a current named standard access-list. If the sequence number is specified, the new filter entry is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new entry is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a source IP address filter entry from the current named standard access-list. You can specify the source IP address filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its source IP address filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Software ACLs\)](#) command.

Syntax [`<sequence-number>`] {deny|permit} {<source> [exact-match] |any}
 no {deny|permit} {<source> [exact-match] |any}
 no <sequence-number>

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code><sequence-number></code> | <code><1-65535></code> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. | | | | |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets of the source filtering specified. | | | | |
| permit | Access-list allows packets of the source filtering specified | | | | |
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify either a subnet or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | <code><ip-addr></code> | An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format. |
| <code><ip-addr>/<prefix></code> | An IPv4 address, followed by a forward slash, then the prefix length. This matches any destination IP address within the specified subnet. | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr></code> | An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format. | | | | |
| exact-match | Specify an exact IP prefix to match on. | | | | |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | |

Mode IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list standard (named)** command with the required access control list number, or name, but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Examples Use the following commands to add a new filter entry to access-list `my-list` that will reject IP address `10.1.1.1`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# deny 10.1.1.1/32
```

Use the following commands to insert a new filter entry into access-list `my-list` at sequence position number 15 that will accept IP network `10.1.2.0`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 15 permit 10.1.2.0/24
```

Related Commands **access-list standard (named)**
show running-config
show ip access-list

(access-list standard numbered filter)

This ACL filter adds a source IP address filter entry to a current standard numbered access-list. If a sequence number is specified, the new filter entry is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new filter entry is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a source IP address filter entry from the current standard numbered access-list. You can specify the source IP address filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number (e.g. `no 10`), or by entering its source IP address filter profile without specifying its sequence number.

Note that the sequence number can be found by running the [show access-list \(IPv4 Software ACLs\)](#) command.

Syntax [`<sequence-number>`] {deny|permit} {<source>|host <host-address>|any}
 no {deny|permit} {<source>|host <host-address>|any}
 no <sequence-number>

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code><sequence-number></code> | <code><1-65535></code> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. | | | | |
| deny | Access-list rejects packets of the type specified. | | | | |
| permit | Access-list allows packets of the type specified | | | | |
| <code><source></code> | The source address of the packets. You can specify either a subnet or all sources. The following are the valid formats for specifying the source: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr></code> <code><reverse-mask></code></td> <td>Enter a reverse mask for the source address in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code><ip-addr></code></td> <td>An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <code><ip-addr></code> <code><reverse-mask></code> | Enter a reverse mask for the source address in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . | <code><ip-addr></code> | An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format. |
| <code><ip-addr></code> <code><reverse-mask></code> | Enter a reverse mask for the source address in dotted decimal format. For example, entering <code>192.168.1.10.0.0.255</code> is the same as entering <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> . | | | | |
| <code><ip-addr></code> | An IPv4 address in a.b.c.d format. | | | | |
| host | A single source host. | | | | |
| <code><host-address></code> | Single source host address. | | | | |
| any | Matches any source IP address. | | | | |

Mode IPv4 Standard ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage An ACL can be configured with multiple ACL filters using sequence numbers. If the sequence number is omitted, the next available multiple of 10 will be used as the sequence number for the new filter. A new ACL filter can be inserted into the middle of an existing list by specifying the appropriate sequence number.

Note  The access control list being configured is selected by running the **access-list standard (named)** command with the required access control list number, or name, but with no further parameters selected.

Note  Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

Example To add a new entry accepting the IP network 10.1.1.0/24 at the sequence number 15 position, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 99
awplus(config-ip-std-acl)# 15 permit 10.1.2.0 0.0.0.255
```

Related Commands **access-list (standard numbered)**
show running-config
show ip access-list

dos

Use this command to configure Denial-of-Service (DoS) features for a port. Six different DoS attacks can be detected: IP Options, Land, Ping-of-Death, Smurf, Synflood and Teardrop.

When the attack is detected, three different actions are available:

1. Shutdown the port for one minute
2. Cause an SNMP trap.
3. Send traffic to the mirror port

Syntax `dos {ipoptions|land|ping-of-death|smurf broadcast <ip-address>|synflood|teardrop} action {shutdown|trap|mirror}`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| dos | Denial-Of-Service. |
| ipoptions | IP Options attack. |
| land | Land attack. |
| ping-of-death | Large ping attack. |
| smurf | Ping to broadcast address. |
| broadcast | Broadcast. |
| <ip-address> | Local IP Broadcast Address. |
| synflood | SYN flood attack. |
| teardrop | IP fragmentation attack. |
| action | Action. |
| shutdown | Shutdown port. |
| trap | Trap to SNMP. |
| mirror | Send packets to mirror port. |

Mode Interface Configuration for a switch port interface.

Default DoS attack detection is not configured by default on any switch port interface.

Usage See the below table for more information about the DoS attacks recognized by this command:

| Type of DoS attack | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>ipoptions</code> | <p>This type of attack occurs when an attacker sends packets containing bad IP options to a victim node. There are many different types of IP options attacks and this software does not try to distinguish between them. Rather, if this defense is activated, the number of ingress IP packets containing IP options is counted. If the number exceeds 20 packets per second, the switch considers this a possible IP options attack. This defense does not require the CPU to monitor packets, so does not put extra load on the switch's CPU.</p> |
| <code>land</code> | <p>This type of attack occurs when the Source IP and Destination IP address are the same. This can cause a target host to be confused. Since packets with the same source and destination addresses should never occur, these packets are dropped when this attack is enabled.</p> <p>This defense does not require the CPU to monitor packets, so does not put extra load on the switch's CPU.</p> |
| <code>ping-of-death</code> | <p>This type of attack results from a fragmented packet which, when reassembled, would exceed the maximum size of a valid IP datagram. To detect this attack, the final fragment of ICMP packets has to be sent to the CPU for inspection. This defense can therefore load the CPU.</p> <p>Note that the extra CPU load will not affect normal traffic switching between ports, but other protocols such as IGMP and STP may be affected. This defense is not recommended where a large number of fragmented packets are expected.</p> |
| <code>smurf</code> | <p>This type of attack is an ICMP ping packet to a broadcast address. Although routers should not forward packets to local broadcast addresses anymore (see RFC2644), the Smurf attack can still be explicitly discarded with this command. In order for the Smurf attack to work, the broadcast IP address is required. Any ICMP Ping packet with this destination address is considered an attack.</p> <p>This defense does not require the CPU to monitor packets, so does not put extra load on the switch's CPU.</p> |

| Type of DoS attack | Description (cont.) |
|--------------------|---|
| synflood | <p>In this type of attack, an attacker, seeking to overwhelm a victim with TCP connection requests, sends a large number of TCP SYN packets with bogus source addresses to the victim. The victim responds with SYN ACK packets, but since the original source addresses are bogus, the victim node does not receive any replies. If the attacker sends enough requests in a short enough period, the victim may freeze operations once the requests exceed the capacity of its connections queue.</p> <p>To defend against this form of attack, a switch port monitors the number of ingress TCP-SYN packets it receives. An attack is recorded if a port receives more 60 TCP-SYN packets per second.</p> |
| teardrop | <p>In this DoS attack, an attacker sends a packet in several fragments with a bogus offset value, used to reconstruct the packet, in one of the fragments to a victim. This results in the victim being unable to reassemble the packet, possibly causing it to freeze operations.</p> |

Examples To configure **smurf** DoS detection on port1.0.1, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos smurf broadcast 192.168.1.0 action
shutdown
```

To configure **land** DoS detection on port1.0.1, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos land action shutdown
```

To configure **ipoptions** DoS detection on port1.0.1, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos ipoptions action shutdown
```

To configure **ping-of-death** DoS detection on port1.0.1, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos ping-of-death action shutdown
```

To configure **synflood** DoS detection on `port1.0.1`, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos synflood action shutdown
```

To configure **teardrop** DoS detection on `port1.0.1`, and shutdown the interface if an attack is detected, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# dos teardrop action shutdown
```

Related Commands [show dos interface](#)

maximum-access-list

Sets the maximum number of filters that can be added to any access-list. These are access-lists within the ranges <1-199>, <1300-1999> and <2000-2699> and named standard and extended access-lists.

The **no** variant of this command removes the limit on the number of filters that can be added to a software access-list

Syntax `maximum-access-list <1-4294967294>`
`no maximum-access-list`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---------------|
| <1-4294967294> | Filter range. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the maximum number of software filters to 200:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# maximum-access-list 200
```

show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs)

Use this command to display the specified access-list, or all access-lists if none have been specified. Note that only defined access-lists are displayed. An error message is displayed for an undefined access-list

Syntax `show access-list [<1-99>|<100-199>|<1300-1999>|<2000-2699>|<3000-3699>|<4000-4499>|<access-list-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <1-99> | IP standard access-list. |
| <100-199> | IP extended access-list. |
| <1300-1999> | IP standard access-list (standard - expanded range). |
| <2000-2699> | IP extended access-list (extended - expanded range). |
| <3000-3699> | Hardware IP access-list. |
| <4000-4499> | Hardware MAC access-list. |
| <access-list-name> | IP named access-list. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To show all access-lists configured on the switch:

```
awplus# show access-list
```

```
Standard IP access list 1
  deny 172.16.2.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
Standard IP access list 20
  deny 192.168.10.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
  deny 192.168.12.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
Hardware IP access list 3001
  permit ip 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0 any
Hardware IP access list 3020
  permit tcp any 192.0.2.0/24
awplus#show access-list 20
```

To show the access-list with an ID of 20:

```
awplus# show access-list 20
```

```
Standard IP access-list 20
  deny 192.168.10.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
  deny 192.168.12.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Note the below error message if you attempt to show an undefined access-list:

```
awplus# show access-list 2
```

```
% Can't find access-list 2
```

Related Commands [access-list standard \(named\)](#)
 [access-list \(standard numbered\)](#)

show dos interface

Use this command to display the Denial-of-Service (DoS) features configured on a switch port interface from the **dos** command. See the **dos** command for descriptions of DoS attack types.

Syntax `show dos interface {<port-list>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | Specify the switch port or port list to display DoS configuration options set with the dos command. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 34-1: Example output from the show dos interface command prior to a DoS attack**

```
awplus#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CTNTRL/Z.
awplus(config)#interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)#dos synflood action shutdown
awplus(config-if)#exit
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show dos interface port1.0.1

DoS settings for interface port1.0.1
-----
Port status           : Enabled
ipoptions             : Disabled
land                  : Disabled
ping-of-death         : Disabled
smurf                 : Disabled
synflood              : Enabled
  Action              : Shutdown port
  Attacks detected    : 0
teardrop              : Disabled
awplus#
```

Figure 34-2: Example output from the show dos interface command after a synflood DoS attack

```
awplus#show dos interface port1.0.1

DoS settings for interface port1.0.1
-----
Port status           : Enabled
ipoptions             : Disabled
land                  : Disabled
ping-of-death         : Disabled
smurf                 : Disabled
synflood              : Enabled
  Action              : Shutdown port
  Attacks detected    : 1
teardrop              : Disabled
awplus#
```

Table 34-5: Parameters in the show dos interface command output:

| Type of DoS attack | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Port status | <p>Displays Enabled when the port is configured as being administratively up after issuing the no shutdown command.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the port is configured as being administratively down with the shutdown command.</p> |
| ipoptions | <p>Displays Enabled when the ipoptions parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any ipoptions DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the ipoptions parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |
| land | <p>Displays Enabled when the land parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any land DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the land parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |
| ping-of-death | <p>Displays Enabled when the ping-of-death parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any ping-of-death DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the ping-of-death parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |
| smurf | <p>Displays Enabled when the smurf parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any smurf DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the smurf parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |
| synflood | <p>Displays Enabled when the synflood parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any synflood DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the synflood parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |
| teardrop | <p>Displays Enabled when the teardrop parameter is configured with the dos command, plus the action (Shutdown port, Mirror port, or Trap port) and the number of instances of any teardrop DoS attacks that have occurred on the interface.</p> <p>Displays Disabled when the teardrop parameter is not configured with the dos command.</p> |

Related Commands dos

show ip access-list

Use this command to display IP access-lists.

Syntax `show ip access-list [<1-99>|<100-199>|<1300-1999>|<2000-2699>|
<access-list-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <1-99> | IP standard access-list. |
| <100-199> | IP extended access-list. |
| <1300-1999> | IP standard access-list (expanded range). |
| <2000-2699> | IP extended access-list (expanded range). |
| <access-list-name> | IP named access-list. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show ip access-list
```

Output **Figure 34-3: Example output from the show ip access-list command**

```
Standard IP access-list 1
  permit 172.168.6.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
  permit 192.168.6.0, wildcard bits 0.0.0.255
```

Chapter 35: IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands



| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction | 35.2 |
| IPv6 Software Access List Commands and Prompts | 35.3 |
| Command List | 35.4 |
| ipv6 access-list standard (named)..... | 35.4 |
| (ipv6 access-list standard filter)..... | 35.6 |
| show ipv6 access-list (IPv6 Software ACLs)..... | 35.8 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for the IPv6 Software Access Control List (ACL) commands, and contains detailed command information and command examples about IPv6 software ACLs as applied to Routing and Multicasting, which are not applied to interfaces.

 **Note** See [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) for descriptions of ACLs, and for further information about rules when applying ACLs see the [ACL Rules](#) section.

See [ACL Filter Sequence Numbers](#) and [ACL Filter Sequence Number Behavior](#) sections in [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#) about ACL Filters.

See all relevant Routing commands and configurations in [“Layer Three, Switching and Routing”](#) and all relevant Multicast commands and configurations in [“Multicast Applications”](#).

To apply ACLs to an LACP channel group, apply it to all the individual switch ports in the channel group. To apply ACLs to a static channel group, apply it to the static channel group itself. For more information on link aggregation see [Chapter 20, Link Aggregation Introduction and Configuration](#), and [Chapter 21, Link Aggregation Commands](#).

Note that text in parenthesis in command names indicates usage not keyword entry. For example, **ipv6-access-list (named)** indicates named IPv6 ACLs entered as `ipv6-access-list <name>` where `<name>` is a placeholder not a keyword.

Note also that parenthesis surrounding ACL filters indicates the type of ACL filter not the keyword entry in the CLI. For example, **(ipv6 access-list standard IPv6 filter)** represents command entry in the format:

```
[<sequence-number>] {deny|permit} {<IPv6-source-address/
prefix-length>|any}.
```

 **Note** Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.

IPv6 Software Access List Commands and Prompts

Many of the ACL commands operate from sub-modes that are specific to particular ACL types. The table “**IPv6 Software Access List Commands and Prompts**” shows the CLI prompts at which ACL commands are entered.

Table 35-1: IPv6 Software Access List Commands and Prompts

| Command Name | Command Mode | Prompt |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| show ipv6 access-list (IPv6 Software ACLs) | Privileged Exec | awplus# |
| ipv6 access-list standard (named) | Global Configuration | awplus(config)# |
| (ipv6 access-list standard filter) | IPv6 Standard ACL Configuration | awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)# |

Command List

ipv6 access-list standard (named)

This command configures an IPv6 standard access-list for filtering frames that permit or deny IPv6 packets from a specific source IPv6 address.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified IPv6 standard access-list.

Syntax [list-name] `ipv6 access-list standard <ipv6-acl-list-name>`

`no ipv6 access-list standard <ipv6-acl-list-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <code><ipv6-acl-list-name></code> | A user-defined name for the IPv6 software standard access-list. |

Syntax [deny|permit] `ipv6 access-list standard <ipv6-acl-list-name> [{deny|permit} {<ipv6-source-address/prefix-length>|any} [exact-match]]`

`no ipv6 access-list standard <ipv6-acl-list-name> [{deny|permit} {<ipv6-source-address/prefix-length>|any} [exact-match]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><ipv6-acl-list-name></code> | A user-defined name for the IPv6 software standard access-list. |
| <code>deny</code> | The IPv6 software standard access-list rejects packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| <code>permit</code> | The IPv6 software standard access-list permits packets that match the type, source, and destination filtering specified with this command. |
| <code><ipv6-source-address/prefix-length></code> | Specifies a source address and prefix length. The IPv6 address prefix uses the format X:X::/prefix-length. The prefix-length is usually set between 0 and 64. |
| <code>any</code> | Matches any source IPv6 address. |
| <code>exact-match</code> | Exact match of the prefixes. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage Use IPv6 standard access-lists to control the transmission of IPv6 packets on an interface, and restrict the content of routing updates. The switch stops checking the IPv6 standard access-list when a match is encountered.

For backwards compatibility you can either create IPv6 standard access-lists from within this command, or you can enter `ipv6 access-list standard` followed by only the IPv6 standard access-list name. This latter (and preferred) method moves you to the `(config-ipv6-std-acl)` prompt for the selected IPv6 standard access-list, and from here you can configure the filters for this selected IPv6 standard access-list.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Example To enter the IPv6 Standard ACL Configuration mode for the access-list named `my-list`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)#
```

Related Commands [\(ipv6 access-list standard filter\)](#)
[show ipv6 access-list \(IPv6 Software ACLs\)](#)
[show running-config](#)

(ipv6 access-list standard filter)

Use this ACL filter to add a filter entry for an IPv6 source address and prefix length to the current standard IPv6 access-list. If a sequence number is specified, the new entry is inserted at the specified location. Otherwise, the new entry is added at the end of the access-list.

The **no** variant of this command removes a filter entry for an IPv6 source address and prefix from the current standard IPv6 access-list. You can specify the filter entry for removal by entering either its sequence number, or its filter entry profile.

Syntax [icmp] [*<sequence-number>*] {deny|permit} {*<ipv6-source-address/prefix-length>* | any}

no {deny|permit} {*<ipv6-source-address/prefix-length>* | any}

no *<sequence-number>*

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i><sequence-number></i> | <1-65535> The sequence number for the filter entry of the selected access control list. |
| deny | Specifies the packets to reject. |
| permit | Specifies the packets to accept. |
| <i><ipv6-source-address/prefix-length></i> | IPv6 source address and prefix-length in the form X:X::X:X/P. |
| any | Any IPv6 source host address. |

Mode IPv6 Standard ACL Configuration

Default Any traffic controlled by a software ACL that does not explicitly match a filter is denied.

Usage The filter entry will match on any IPv6 packet that has the specified IPv6 source address and prefix length. The parameter *any* may be specified if an address does not matter.

Note Software ACLs will **deny** access unless **explicitly permitted** by an ACL action.



Examples To add an ACL filter entry with sequence number 5 that will deny any IPv6 packets to the standard IPv6 access-list named *my-list*, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)# 5 deny any
```

To remove the ACL filter entry that will deny any IPv6 packets from the standard IPv6 access-list named `my-list`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)# no deny any
```

Alternately, to remove the ACL filter entry with sequence number 5 to the standard IPv6 access-list named `my-list`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ipv6 access-list standard my-list
awplus(config-ipv6-std-acl)# no 5
```

Related Commands [ipv6 access-list standard \(named\)](#)
[show ipv6 access-list \(IPv6 Software ACLs\)](#)
[show running-config](#)

show ipv6 access-list (IPv6 Software ACLs)

Use the **show ipv6 access-list standard** command to display a specified standard named IPv6 access-list that has been defined using the **ipv6 access-list standard (named)** command.

Syntax `show ipv6 access-list standard <access-list-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| standard | Named standard access-list. |
| <access-list-name> | Specify an IPv6 access-list name. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the ipv6 access-list specified with the name `acl_name` use the following command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 access-list standard acl_name
```

Output **Figure 35-1: Example output from the show ipv6 access-list command**

```
Named Standard IPv6 access-list name
deny any
```

Related Commands **ipv6 access-list standard (named)**
(ipv6 access-list standard filter)

Chapter 36: Quality of Service (QoS)

Introduction



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 36.2 |
| QoS Operations | 36.2 |
| QoS Packet Information | 36.3 |
| Link Layer QoS..... | 36.3 |
| Differentiated Services Architecture | 36.4 |
| The Differential Services Field | 36.5 |
| Processing Pre-Marked Packets | 36.6 |
| Applying QoS on Your Switch | 36.7 |
| Classifying Your Data | 36.8 |
| Class Maps | 36.8 |
| Policy Maps | 36.10 |
| Premarking and Remarking Your Traffic..... | 36.12 |
| CoS to Egress Queue Premarking | 36.12 |
| DSCP to Egress Queue Premarking | 36.13 |
| Rate Limiting Traffic | 36.15 |
| Policing (Metering) Your Data | 36.16 |
| Single-Rate Three-Color Policing | 36.16 |
| Two-Rate Three-Color Policing | 36.17 |
| Configuring and Applying a Policer | 36.18 |
| Remarking Your Data..... | 36.19 |
| Configuring the Egress Queues | 36.20 |
| Egress Queues and QoS markers..... | 36.20 |
| Egress Queue Commands Hierarchy | 36.20 |
| Egress Queue Shaping | 36.22 |
| Scheduling..... | 36.22 |
| Drop Mode | 36.23 |
| Storm Protection | 36.24 |

Introduction

This chapter introduces the concept of Quality of Service (QoS) with particular reference to Allied Telesis switches running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System.

The concept of QoS is a departure from the original networking concept of treating all network traffic in the same way. Without QoS, all traffic types are equally likely to be dropped when a link becomes oversubscribed. With QoS, certain traffic types can be given preferential treatment. QoS is therefore a very useful tool both to control congestion and to meter or cap data in order to apply pre-agreed service levels.

Operationally, QoS is applied within the link and network layers. Functionally it provides the capability to intelligently transport your network traffic in order to provide stable and predictable end-to-end network performance.

Business benefits Quality of Service mechanisms enable:

- network service providers to sell different levels of service to customers, based on what their customers require, and be confident in their ability to guarantee the reliable delivery of these services
- enterprise and educational organizations to actively manage and provide many services across one network, for example live video streaming and standard data services, with preferential treatment being given to mission-critical traffic
- network administrators to manage network congestion as network traffic levels increase and time-critical applications, such as streaming media, become more widely in demand by customers and organizations

QoS Operations

Quality of Service is typically based on how the switch performs the following functions:

- assigns priority to incoming frames (that do not already carry priority information)
- correlates prioritized frames with traffic classes, or maps frames to traffic classes based on other criteria
- correlates traffic classes with egress queues, or maps prioritized frames to egress queues
- provides minimum and maximum bandwidths for traffic classes, egress queues, and/or ports
- schedules frames in egress queues for transmission (for example, empty queues in strict priority or sample each queue)
- re-labels the priority of outgoing frames
- determines which frames to drop or re-queue if the network becomes congested
- reserves memory for switching/routing or QoS operation (for example, reserving buffers for egress queues or buffers to store packets with particular characteristics)

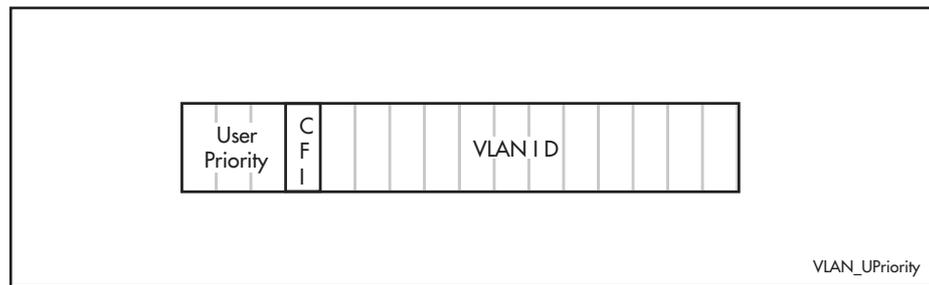
QoS Packet Information

Provision for QoS information to be embedded within the data fields exists within both the data link and network layer protocols. This information can then be used to assess the priority of the data and the resource preferences that need to be applied. The process of applying these service quality tags to your data is known as marking.

Link Layer QoS

Link layer frames entering a port may either be tagged or untagged. VLAN tagged frames contain the additional 802.1Q tag fields shown in **Figure 36-1** below. Located within the TCI is a three bit User Priority field. This field is specifically provided to attach QoS based priority information, often referred to as the Class of Service (CoS) field.

Figure 36-1: IEEE 802.1Q tagging



Appendix G of the IEEE Standard 802.1D provides some useful guidelines on applying priorities to 7 traffic types. These are summarized in the **Table 36-1** below.

Table 36-1: CoS traffic mapping guidelines

| User Priority | Traffic Types |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Background |
| 2 | Spare |
| 0 | Best Effort |
| 3 | Excellent Effort |
| 4 | Controlled Load |
| 5 | Video <100 ms latency and jitter |
| 6 | Voice <10 ms latency and jitter |
| 7 | Network Control |

On the switch you can use the **match cos** command to select frames that match a particular User Priority value and assign them to a particular class-map. You can then map these incoming frames to an egress queue. This facility enables you to accept frames that are already carrying meaningful priority information and automatically assign them to an appropriate egress queue. For example, you could decide to send frames with a User Priority value of 2 to queue 0. The process of assigning queues based on CoS tags is commonly known as "PreMarking".

Note You configure the pre-marking steps on an ingress port. This process marks the data packets so that when they reach the egress port the decisions made during pre-marking can be applied in accordance with the configuration of the egress port.



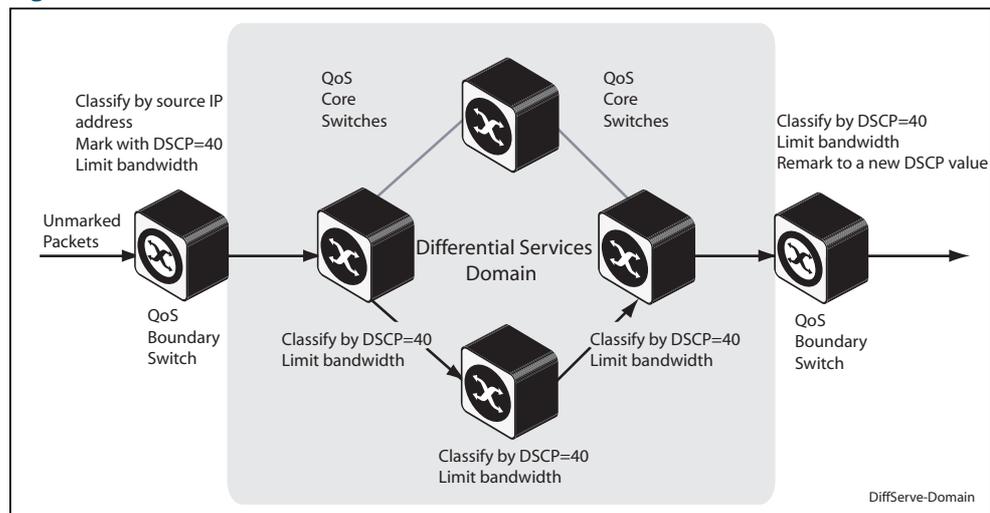
Differentiated Services Architecture

Whilst a full description of the differential services model is outside the scope of this software reference, a brief introduction is provided. For further information, RFC 2475 provides an in depth definition of the architecture.

The basic differential services model envisages a multi router network within which common service qualities are applied. At the network boundary, *QoS Edge Routers* inspect the traffic and classify it into common service quality groups called Per Hop Behaviors (PHBs). A specific marker value called a Differential Services Code Point (DSCP) is added to the IP header of each packet, which allocates it to a PHB. *QoS Core Routers* within the network can then use the DSCP to decide on an appropriate service quality level to apply. When a network contains a consistently applied differential services code points DSCP it is referred as a Differential Services Domain (often shortened to DiffServe Domain).

Figure 36-2 shows a simple Differential Services Domain.

Figure 36-2: Differentiated services domain

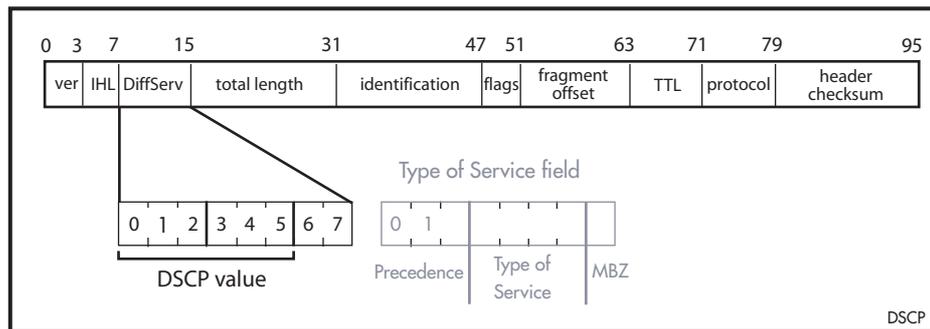


The Differential Services Field

Figure 36-3 shows an IP header containing a Differentiated Services field. The format of this redefined field is explained in RFC 2474; the main difference being that the old ToS field has been replaced by a 6 byte Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) field, which now provides for up to 64 defined values.

By applying this model only the QoS edge routers need to fully interrogate the incoming data packets; the QoS core routers are then relieved of this processing task and need only to inspect the DCSP before applying its appropriate forwarding, queuing, and shaping rules.

Figure 36-3: The DSCP bits of the DS field in the IPv4 header



Because the model offers considerable flexibility, and the mapping of traffic types to DCSPs is individual for each network, this locally applied definition is known as a *Differential Services Domain*. The previous section introduced the concept of a Per Hop (service quality) Behaviors or PHBs. RFC 2597 defines a specific PHB group called Assured Forwarding (AF). The AF PHB group provides delivery of IP packets in four independently forwarded AF classes. Within each AF class, an IP packet can be assigned one of three different levels of drop precedence. **Table 36-2** shows a list of recommended AF code points.

Table 36-2: Recommended DSCP code points

| | (Lowest Priority) Class 1 (001xxxx) | Class 2 (010xxxx) | Class 3 (011xxxx) | (Highest Priority) Class 4 (100xxxx) |
|------------------------|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Low Drop Precedence | 001010 AF11 Decimal 10 | 010010 AF21 Decimal 18 | 011010 AF31 Decimal 26 | 100010 AF41 Decimal 34 |
| Medium Drop Precedence | 001100 AF12 Decimal 12 | 010100 AF22 Decimal 20 | 011100 AF32 Decimal 28 | 100100 AF42 Decimal 36 |
| High Drop Precedence | 001110 AF13 Decimal 14 | 010110 AF23 Decimal 22 | 011110 AF33 Decimal 30 | 100110 AF43 Decimal 38 |

Processing Pre-Marked Packets

A logical question to ask at this point is: how does the QoS switch deal with data that arrives with a pre-existing service level tag such as a DSCP? As previously touched on, the differentiated services model envisages a network that comprises QoS boundary routers at its edge and QoS core routers in its core network.

At the network edge the QoS boundary routers filter the incoming data based on specific packet components. Based on this filtering each packet is assigned a DSCP value. This value will determine the service level (priority and queuing, for example) that will be applied.

Within the network core, the packet filtering required is reduced to simply reading the DSCP within each incoming packet, and applying the appropriate set of service levels. This relieves the core routers of the processing overhead of applying complex filtering to its high speed data streams.

Applying QoS on Your Switch

This section steps you through the various stages of QoS set-up and introduces the QoS commands and how to apply them.

Before you configure any QoS functions on your switch, first enable QoS by using the **mls qos enable** command.

Classifying Your Data

One of the early steps in setting up QoS on a network is planning and applying your classification rules. Classification is the process of **Filtering** and **Marking**. Filtering involves sorting your data into appropriate traffic types. Marking involves tagging the data so that downstream ports and routers can apply appropriate service policy rules. illustrates the classifying process, and will be referred to in the examples that follow.

At the premarking stage you can assign your data a particular priority level by giving it a link level user priority, see [“Link Layer QoS” on page 36.3](#), or a network level DSCP [“Differentiated Services Architecture” on page 36.4](#). You can also assign the data to a particular output (or egress) queue.

Class Maps

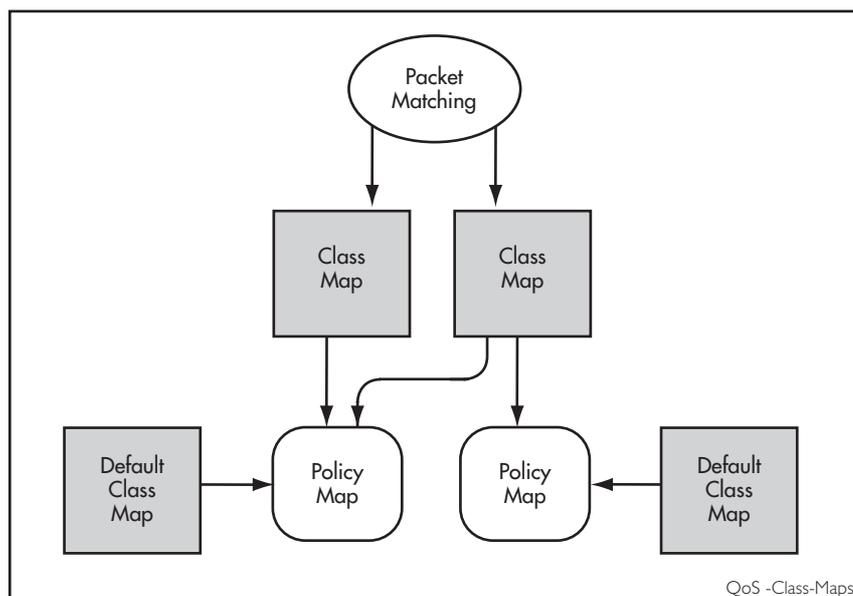
Class Maps are among the pivotal QoS components. They provide the means that associate the classified traffic with its appropriate QoS actions. They are the linking elements for the following functions:

- classification
- policy-mapping
- pre-marking

Figure 36-4 shows the relationship between a class-map and its associated functions. Note that the relationship between a class-map and a policy-map can be one-to-one or many-to-one. For information on policy-maps see the section, [“Policy Maps” on page 36.10](#).

Note  If a conflict occurs between the settings in two class-maps, priority will be applied to the class-map that was created first. An example of such a conflict is the arrival of a packet that meets the classification requirements of two class-maps each configured to the same policy-map and set to apply different priority settings to the packet.

Figure 36-4: Relationship between a class-map and its associated functions



Creating a class-map

To create a class-map, use the [class-map command on page 37.3](#).

This example creates a class-map called **video-traffic** and another called **data-traffic**:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map video-traffic
awplus(config-cmap)# exit
awplus(config)# class-map data-traffic
awplus(config-cmap)#
```

Creating and configuring default class-maps

These (automatically created) default class-maps serve as the means to specify the action that will apply to all unclassified data, i.e. all data within a policy-map that is not captured by any of the applied match commands that are applied to the policy-map by its class-maps.

Each time a new policy-map is created a new class-map called "default" is also automatically created and assigned to the new policy-map. You can configure any of the default class-maps by using the [default-action command on page 37.5](#)

To set the default class-map for the policy-map **p-map1** to have the action of **deny**:

```
awplus# config
awplus(config)# policy-map p-map1
awplus(config-pmap)# default-action deny
```

Applying a match command to a class-map

To apply a matching filter to a class-map use one of the match commands.

This example creates a filter to select VLAN 5 traffic and applies this filter to the class-map named **video-traffic**.

```
awplus# config terminal
awplus(config)# class-map video-traffic
awplus(config-cmap)# match vlan 5
```

Associating a class-map with a policy-map

To associate a class-map with a policy-map, use the [class command on page 37.2](#).

Note A maximum of 128 class-maps may be attached to each policy-map.



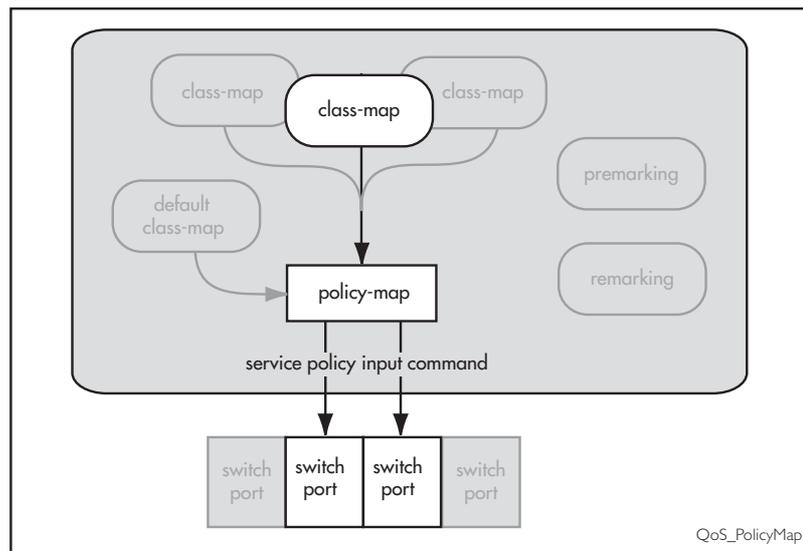
The following example creates a policy-map called **policy-one**, and associates it with the class-maps named **video-traffic**, and **database-traffic**:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map policy-one
awplus(config-pmap)# class video-traffic
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
awplus(config-pmap)# class database-traffic
awplus(config-pmap-c)#
```

Policy Maps

Policy maps are the means by which you apply your class-map properties to physical switch ports. **Figure 36-5 on page 36.10** illustrates this concept. Note that a policy-map can be assigned to several ports, but a port cannot have more than one policy-map assigned to it.

Figure 36-5: Policy maps and related entities



To create and name a new policy-map you use the **policy-map** command on page 37.28.

To create a policy-map called `pmap1` use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
```

Having created the policy-map `pmap1` we can use the **class** command on page 37.2 to assign it to one or more class-maps. Since we created the class-maps `video-traffic` and `office-traffic` earlier in this chapter, we can now attach the policy-map `pmap1` to both class-maps.

Use the **class** command to assign the policy-map `pmap1` to the class-maps `video-traffic` and `office-traffic`:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class video-traffic
awplus(config-pmap-c)# exit
awplus(config-pmap)# class office-traffic
awplus(config-pmap-c)#
```

Premarking and Remarking Your Traffic

Premarking relates to adding QoS markers to your incoming data traffic before it is metered (policed). Remarking is the same process when applied after metering. Network switches will often be configured with two different premarking profiles, one for the QoS edge switches and another for the QoS core switches. This situation would apply if you are operating DSCP domains.

QoS markers can be applied at both the link layer (within the CoS field), and at the network layer (within the DSCP field). For more information on this topic see [“QoS Packet Information” on page 36.3.](#)

For boundary QoS switches

Traffic entering QoS boundary switches is unlikely to contain pre-existing QoS tagging. In this case, you can apply one or more of the following QoS mapping options.

- Assign a CoS tag to data associated with a particular class-map.
- Use the **trust dscp** command to enable the mls qos map premark DSCP map. This map enables you to change the DSCP tag and also map the tag to an egress port queue, a CoS value, or both. At the premarking stage you can set this mapping using the command **mls qos map premark-dscp to**. After policing, you can then use the **remark-map** command to change the DSCP based on the packet’s bandwidth class, or remap the existing bandwidth class, to a new value.

For an untagged packet, if no other mapping is applied and the packet is untagged, (i.e. in the absence of any other queue selection) traffic will be sent to queue 0.

For core QoS switches

Traffic entering ports within the QoS core network will almost certainly contain some pre-existing QoS tagging. Where this is the case, you can apply one of the following QoS mapping options.

- Map the CoS tag to an egress queue. You can do this either for the whole switch or for specific ports via their assigned policy-maps. See [“CoS to Egress Queue Premarking” on page 36.12.](#)
- Map the DSCP tag to an output queue. You can do this either for the whole switch or for specific ports via their assigned policy-maps.
- Remap incoming data DSCP or CoS tags to values that are more appropriate for a particular switch or network.
- Assign bandwidth classes for your packets, based on the incoming DSCP. See [“DSCP to egress queue premarking commands” on page 36.13.](#)

CoS to Egress Queue Premarking

If you are using CoS tagging for your QoS functions, your traffic is likely to be either entering the switch with a pre-existing CoS tag, or will have appropriate tags attached via your class-maps and policy-maps. You can now mark the data for a particular egress queue, which will take effect when the data reaches its output port. There are two fundamental methods of applying CoS tagged packets to egress queues:

1. Apply a global mapping of CoS tags to egress queues for all ports.
2. Apply a CoS to egress queue mapping for the class-map / policy-map. This mapping - which forms part of the policy-map - is applied at an input port, but will take effect at the packet’s destination output port. Note that this procedure takes priority over that described in method (1) above.

These methods and their related commands will be now be described in greater detail.

CoS tagging commands

Table 36-3 shows the commands you can use to change the CoS field within incoming packets.

Table 36-3: CoS mapping commands in hierarchical order

| Command | Function |
|------------------------------------|--|
| mls qos map premark-dscp to | Where a packet contains CoS tag and a DSCP tag. The table set by this command contains a configurable DSCP to CoS tag mapping. |
| remark-map | Configures the remark map. This command is applied when a policer is configured with the action parameter of the command police twin-rate action set to remark-transmit . |

Note  Where a packet contains both a CoS and a DSCP field, and each field maps to a different class-map; the switch will apply a priority that is based on the date that the class-map was added to the policy-map; the earlier the date, the higher the priority.

Mapping CoS tags to traffic types

The command **mls qos map cos-queue to** enables you to create a switch-wide mapping of CoS values to egress queues. The default mappings for this command are:

```

COS :           0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
-----
QUEUE:         2 0 1 3 4 5 6 7
    
```

DSCP to Egress Queue Premarking

If you are using DSCP tagging for your QoS functions, your traffic is likely to be entering the switch either with a pre-existing DSCP tag, or will have appropriate DSCP tags attached via your class-maps and policy-maps. You can now mark the data for a particular egress queue, which will take effect when the data reaches its output port.

If your switch forms part of a DSCP domain, you can adapt the steps in this section to apply the mappings and settings to match the standards you have selected for the domain. This mapping - which forms part of the policy-map - is applied at an input port, but will take effect at the packet's destination output port.

DSCP to egress queue premarking commands

A number of commands can be used for mapping DSCP tags. Where these conflict, the switch applies a pre-defined set of priorities. **Table 36-4** lists these priorities in order (lowest priority first).

Where a packet that contains both CoS and a DSCP fields and each field maps to a different class-map / policy-map, the switch will apply a priority based on the creation date of class-maps - the earlier the creation date, the higher the priority.

Table 36-4: DSCP mapping commands in hierarchical order

| Command | Function |
|------------------------------------|--|
| trust dscp | Setting the trust dscp enables the mls qos map premark-dscp to command to apply. See “Setting the Trust DSCP map” on page 36.14. |
| mls qos map premark-dscp to | With the trust dscp set, this command applies a remapping table whose values include the dscp and egress queues. |

Setting the Trust DSCP map

The Trust DSCP mapping table assigns a new set of QoS values for a DSCP value supplied as table input. To configure this table you use the **mls qos map premark-dscp to** command.

Table 36-5: Drop probability table

| Table Input | ----- Table Output ----- | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| Existing DSCP | New DSCP Value | New CoS Value | New Queue No | New BW Class |
| | | | | green |
| | | | | yellow |
| | | | | red |

The Trust DSCP map provides the highest priority of all the pre-marking controls. To apply this table you must first apply the trust setting by using the **trust dscp** command.

Rate Limiting Traffic

You can specify a rate limit for each port, and drop packets that exceed that rate. To do this, use the QoS policer function.

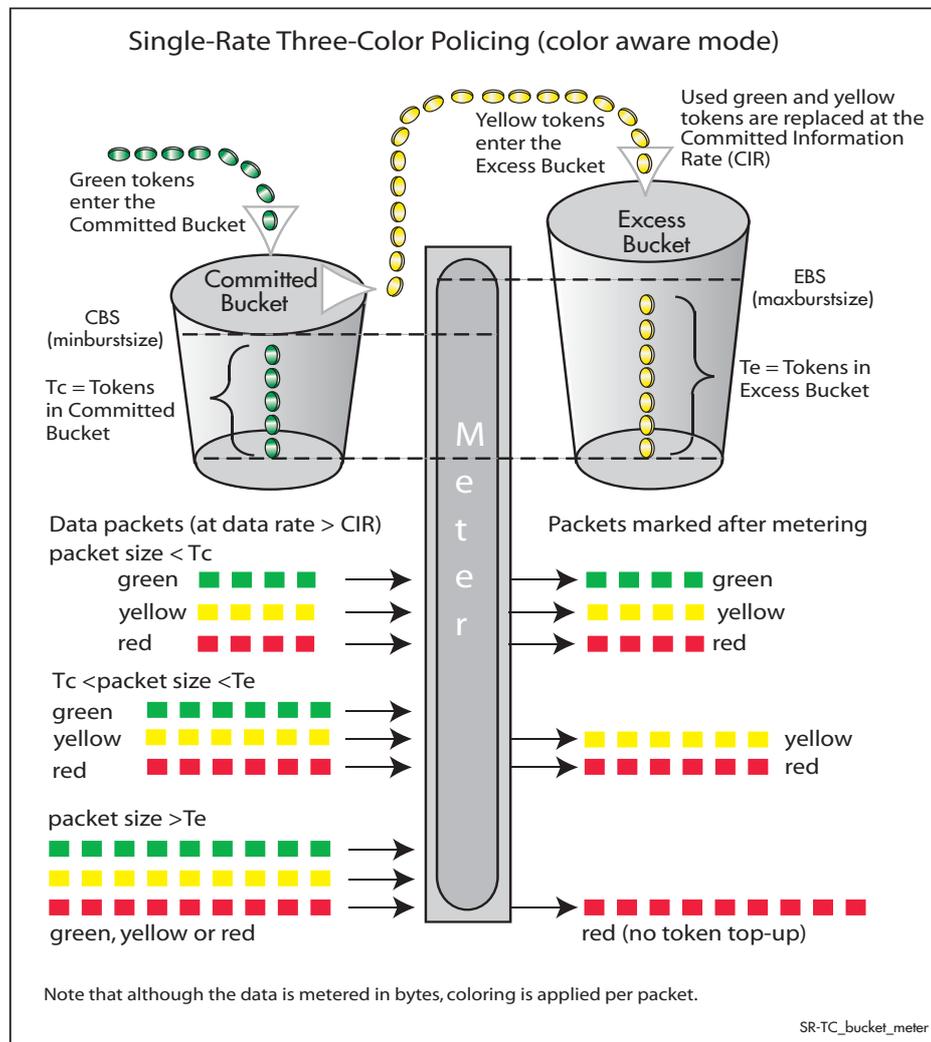
Policing (Metering) Your Data

Once you have set-up your classification and created your class-maps, you can start conditioning your traffic flows. One tool used for traffic conditioning is the policer (or meter). The principle of policing is to measure the data flow that matches the definitions for a particular class-map; then, by selecting appropriate data rates, allocate the flows into one of three categories: Red, Yellow, or Green. You then decide what action to apply to the colored data.

Single-Rate Three-Color Policing

This policing method is based on that defined in RFC 2697. The principle of single-rate three-color policing is shown in **Figure 36-6**. For a given class-map, a meter monitors both the token count in the buckets, and the input data flow.

Figure 36-6: Single-rate three-color policing



Each byte entering the meter is paired with a token in one of the buckets, and a token is removed as each byte is accepted. If the input data rate is the same as the CIR then the data passes through the port at the same rate as its bucket fills. Hence the bucket level remains constant. In this model, the data buffer is represented by two data buckets. You can specify the CIR using the **police single-rate action** command.

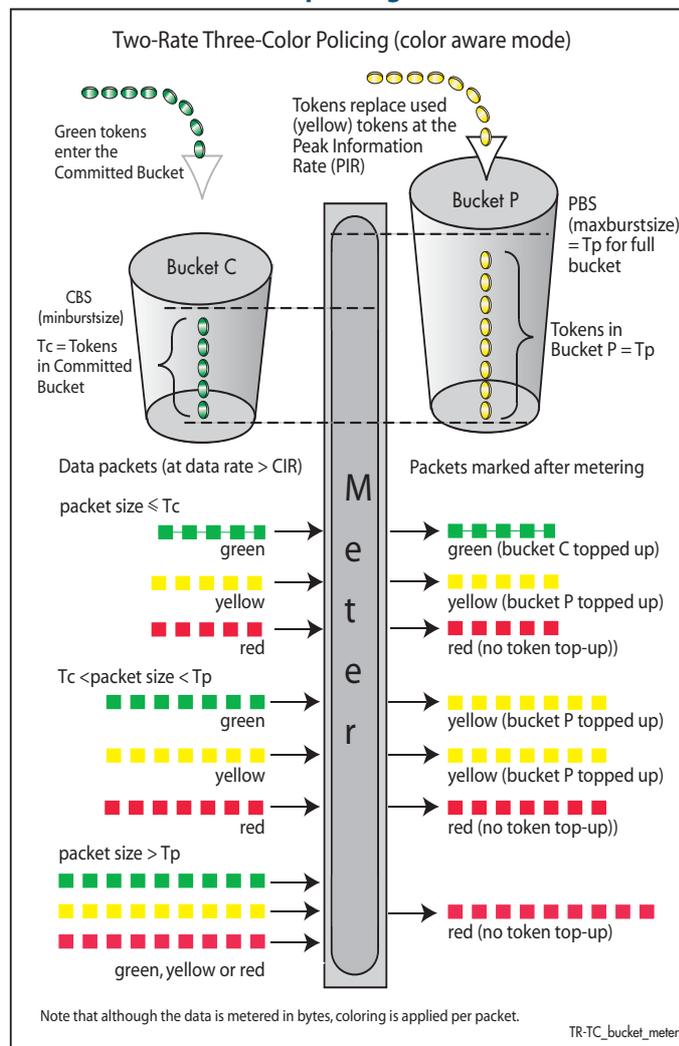
Initially both buckets have their full token count. A surge of data exceeding the CIR will begin to empty the bucket. As the data and tokens are paired, data bytes that match tokens below the CBS level are marked green, those that are between CBS and EBS will be marked yellow, and those that are above EBS are marked red.

Note that although the data is metered per byte, the color marking process is applied per packet. This means that if there were only sufficient tokens available to match part of a packet, then the whole packet would be marked red. Then, depending on the **action** parameter of the **police single-rate action** command, the whole packet will be either dropped or forwarded. In either situation, the red-marked packet will leave the bucket counts unchanged.

Two-Rate Three-Color Policing

This policing method is based on that defined in RFC 2698. The principle of two-rate three-color policing is shown in **Figure 36-7**.

Figure 36-7: Two-rate three-color policing



For a given class-map, the meter monitors the token count in both buckets, and the input data flow. Initially tokens enter both buckets until full. As the data enters a port, the meter pairs each byte to a token in one of the buckets, then removes a token from the appropriate bucket. Bucket C is topped up with tokens at the Committed Information Rate (CIR), and bucket P is topped up at the Peak Information Rate (PIR).

When data enters the port at the CIR, the bucket fills at the same rate as the incoming data, thus the token count in bucket C remains constant. Similarly, if data enters the port at the PIR, then the token count in bucket P remains constant. You can specify the CIR and the PIR by using the **police twin-rate action** command. The function of this command is explained in the section **“Configuring and Applying a Policer” on page 36.18**.

A surge of data exceeding the CIR will begin to empty bucket C. If bucket C empties to a point where it has insufficient tokens to match to an incoming data packet, then the data packet will be marked *yellow*. The data will now be measured against the level in bucket P and tokens will be removed from this bucket to match the incoming data. If the incoming data rate drops to less than the CIR then the data will continue to be marked *yellow* until the level in bucket C has had a chance to fill, whereupon it will be marked *green*.

If the incoming data is greater than the PIR, then bucket P begins to empty. If bucket P empties to a point where it has insufficient tokens to match to an incoming data packet, then the data packet will be marked *red*. In this situation no tokens are removed from either bucket.

Note that although the data is metered per byte, the color marking process is applied per packet. This means that if there were only sufficient tokens available to match part of a packet, then the whole packet would be marked *red*. Then, depending on the **action** parameter of the **police twin-rate action** command, the whole packet will be either dropped, or marked and forwarded. In either situation, the red marked packet will leave the bucket counts unchanged.

Configuring and Applying a Policer

The previous section showed how the policer works and how to select either the single rate or twin rate action. To apply a policy to class-maps:

- Select your policy-map and class-map from the command prompt, then enter either the **police single-rate action** command or the **police twin-rate action** command whilst selecting the appropriate command parameters.

This will apply the command to the selected class-map. By running this command several times, each for a different class-map, you can apply separate meter settings to each class-map.

Remarking Your Data

The remarking process enables you to change the QoS tagging and queue assignments from data that has already been marked by the policer. To do this you fill entries in the remarking table by using the **remark-map** command on page 37.30. In order to remark your data ensure that the **action** parameter of either the **police single-rate action** or the **police twin-rate action** is set to **remark-transmit**.

The following table shows the remarking options

Table 36-6: Remarking table

| BANDWIDTH CLASS | | |
|-----------------|----------|---|
| Green | New DSCP | New bandwidth class (Red, Yellow, or Green) |
| Yellow | New DSCP | New bandwidth class (Red, Yellow, or Green) |
| Red | New DSCP | New bandwidth class (Red, Yellow, or Green) |

Example Traffic presently marked either Yellow or Red is to be remarked green and assigned a new DSCP value of 25:

Table 36-7: Remarking table example

| BANDWIDTH CLASS | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Yellow | New DSCP = 25 | New bandwidth class =Green |

To configure this setting, you would enter the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# remark-map bandwidth-class green to
new-dscp 25 new-bandwidth-class yellow
```

Further remarking can be achieved by using the **remark new-cos** command on page 37.32. This command enables you to configure and remark either or both the CoS flag in the data packet, and the input into the CoS to queue map thus changing the destination egress queue.

Configuring the Egress Queues

Previous sections have explained the ingress functions. These include how the incoming data can be classified and marked according to its priority and allocated to an egress queue, then finally how metering and remarking is applied. At this point the data then flows across the switch to its destination egress port where its transit to the egress queues is controlled.

The means by which data is applied to the egress queues is dependent on three functions:

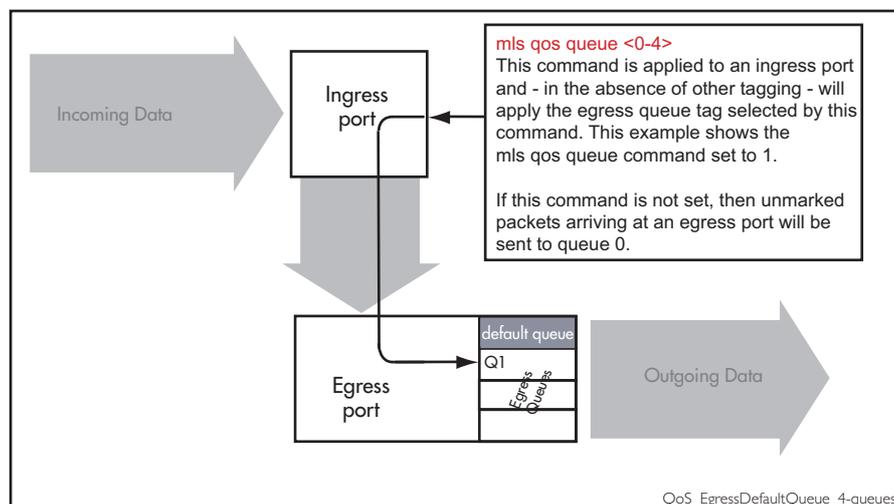
- Egress queue and QoS markers that are set within each data packet
- Egress controls that are applied to the whole switch
- Egress controls that are applied to each individual switch port

Egress Queues and QoS markers

Once the data packets have been appropriately filtered, classified, policed, and remarked, they travel across the switch's internal paths carrying their assigned QoS tag markers such as their priority, class and destination queues. For more details on ingress data marking, refer to the earlier sections of this chapter. At the egress port these markers are read and used to determine which queues each data packet will be forwarded to, and the priorities that will be applied.

There are four egress queues allocated to each egress port. The egress queue that a particular packet passes through is determined by either the configuration of the switch, or by the markers contained within the packet.

Figure 36-8: Default egress queue



Egress Queue Commands Hierarchy

The destination queue that any one packet will take depends on the markers within the packet, and the way the queuing commands have been set. Also, some queuing commands will override others. Here is how the switch prioritizes its queuing commands.

Imagine a packet entering an ingress port then traveling through the switch fabric to reach its appropriate egress port. In this situation the following hierarchy will apply:

1. If the packet enters an egress port carrying no QoS markers and no QoS queuing commands have been set on the switch, then the packet will exit the port via queue number 0.
2. If the packet contains a CoS value and arrives at an egress port with no other configuration applying, then its queue mapping will be subject to the setting of the **mls qos map cos-queue to** command.
3. Situations (1) and (2) can be overridden by the **remark new-cos** command. This command sets a default queue for each switch port.

Egress Queue Shaping

Scheduling

The scheduler determines how packets in the egress port queues are serviced. Two servicing methods can be applied:

- strict priority
- weighted round robin (WRR)

Strict priority servicing

By default, all queues on all ports are serviced in a strict priority order. This means that the highest numbered priority queue (queue 3) is emptied first; then when it is completely empty, the next highest priority queue is processed, and so on. Thus, for a strict priority queue to be processed, all higher priority queues must be empty.

Strict priority servicing is the default setting; however if your system is configured for weighted round robin (WRR), you can return it to priority queuing by using the commands shown in the following example.

To return queue 2 of `port1.0.1` from WRR servicing to strict priority queuing, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# priority-queue 2
```

Weighted round robin servicing

The following examples show how to configure round robin servicing.

Example To configure a `wrr-queue` by applying a weighting value of 6 to queues 0 and 1:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue weight 6 queues 0 1
```

Example In this example port 1.0.1 has queues configured as follows:

- queues 6 and 7 are configured strict priority
- queues 3 and 4 are configured as WRR with weighting values of 6
- queue 5 is configured as WRR with weighting values of 12
- queues 0, 1 and 2 are configured as WRR with weighting values of 4

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# priority-queue 6 7
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue weight 6 queues 3 4
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue weight 12 queues 5
```

In this example, the queues are processed as follows:

1. Queue 7 is processed first.
2. If queue 7 is empty, Queue 6 is processed next.
3. If queues 6 and 7 are empty, queue 5 is processed next.
4. If queue 5 is empty, queues 3 and 4 are processed with equal weighting.

Drop Mode

The drop mode sets the limits for packets in the egress queues and determines how packets will be dropped if the queues become congested. The switch supports the tail drop mode and is pre-configured with the following settings:

Data packets will be dropped per color at the following buffer usage:

Red at 60%, Yellow at 80%, and Green at 100%.

These settings cannot be reconfigured.

Tail drop

In this drop mode each egress queue is configured with a maximum threshold value. This value represents the point where the egress buffer queues are full and the egress port must start dropping data. The port does this by dropping data packets destined for the full queue on a "last in first dropped" basis. This enables the port to clear its data already queued for egress.

If a reliable transport protocol, such as TCP is used, this data should be retransmitted, but at a slower rate due to lack of returning "acknowledgments".

Storm Protection

Storm protection uses QoS mechanisms to classify on traffic likely to cause a packet storm (broadcast and multicast). Unless you are running an enhanced storm protection feature such as Loop Protection, the per-port storm protection mechanism simply discards any traffic over the configured limit. However, with QoS storm protection, several actions are possible when a storm is detected:

- You can disable the port physically.
- You can disable the port logically.
- You can disable the port for a particular VLAN.

To enable the policy-based storm protection, use the **storm-protection** command on [page 37.45](#).

Storm protection is activated as soon as a port is enabled, before the port forwards frames.

When a storm is detected on a port, a message is automatically recorded in the log, and you can configure an SNMP trap to signal that a port has been disabled. When a storm is detected on a trunk or port group, the entire trunk or port group is disabled.

The following table explains the basic concepts involved with storm protection.

| Concept | Description |
|---------|---|
| Window | The frequency at which traffic is measured to determine whether storm protection should be activated. |
| Rate | The amount of traffic per second that must be exceeded before the switch takes the configured action. |
| Action | What the switch does when it detects a storm on a port. |
| Timeout | The length of time the port remains disabled after a port has been disabled due to a packet storm. |

To set the action to take when triggered by QoS Storm Protection (QSP), use the **storm-action** command on [page 37.43](#).

To set the time to re-enable the port once disabled by QSP, use the **storm-downtime** command on [page 37.44](#).

Chapter 37: QoS Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Command List | 37.2 |
| class | 37.2 |
| class-map | 37.3 |
| clear mls qos interface policer-counters..... | 37.4 |
| default-action | 37.5 |
| description (QoS policy-map)..... | 37.6 |
| egress-rate-limit..... | 37.7 |
| match access-group..... | 37.8 |
| match cos..... | 37.9 |
| match dscp..... | 37.10 |
| match eth-format protocol..... | 37.11 |
| match ip-precedence..... | 37.14 |
| match mac-type..... | 37.15 |
| match tcp-flags..... | 37.16 |
| match vlan | 37.17 |
| mls qos cos | 37.18 |
| mls qos enable | 37.19 |
| mls qos map cos-queue to..... | 37.20 |
| mls qos map premark-dscp to..... | 37.21 |
| no police..... | 37.23 |
| police single-rate action | 37.24 |
| police twin-rate action | 37.26 |
| policy-map..... | 37.28 |
| priority-queue | 37.29 |
| remark-map..... | 37.30 |
| remark new-cos | 37.32 |
| service-policy input | 37.34 |
| show class-map..... | 37.35 |
| show mls qos interface | 37.36 |
| show mls qos interface policer-counters | 37.37 |
| show mls qos interface queue-counters | 37.38 |
| show mls qos interface storm-status | 37.39 |
| show mls qos maps cos-queue | 37.40 |
| show mls qos maps premark-dscp | 37.41 |
| show policy-map..... | 37.42 |
| storm-action..... | 37.43 |
| storm-downtime | 37.44 |
| storm-protection | 37.45 |
| storm-rate | 37.46 |
| storm-window | 37.47 |
| trust dscp..... | 37.48 |
| wrr-queue disable queues | 37.49 |
| wrr-queue egress-rate-limit queues..... | 37.50 |
| wrr-queue weight queues | 37.51 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for Quality of Service commands. For more information, see [Chapter 36, Quality of Service \(QoS\) Introduction](#) and [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#).

class

Use this command to associate an existing class-map to a policy or policy-map (traffic classification), and to enter Policy Map Class Configuration mode to configure the class-map.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete an existing class-map.

For more information on class-maps and policy-maps, see the following sections: [“Class Maps” on page 36.8](#) and [“Policy Maps” on page 36.10](#).

Note that if your class-map does not exist, you can create it by using the [class-map](#) command.

Syntax `class {<name>|default}`
`no class <name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <name> | Name of the (already existing) class-map. |
| default | Specify the default class-map. |

Mode Policy Map Configuration

Example The following example creates the policy-map `pmap1` (using the `policy-map` command), then associates this to an already existing class-map named `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)#
```

Related Commands [class-map](#)
[policy-map](#)

class-map

Use this command to create a class-map.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the named class-map.

Syntax `class-map <name>`
`no class-map <name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code><name></code> | Name of the class-map to be created. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example This example creates a class-map called `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)#
```

clear mls qos interface policer-counters

Resets an interface's policer counters to zero. This can either be for a specific class-map or for all class-maps.

Syntax `clear mls qos interface <port> policer-counters
[class-map <class-map>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port> | The port may be a switch port (e.g. port1.0.4), a static channel group (e.g. sa3), or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po4). |
| class-map | Select a class-map. |
| <class-map> | Class-map name. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To reset the policy counters to zero for all class-maps for port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# clear mls qos interface port1.0.1 policer-counters
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface policer-counters](#)

default-action

Sets the action for the default class-map belonging to a particular policy-map. The action for a non-default class-map depends on the action of any ACL that is applied to the policy-map.

The default action can therefore be thought of as specifying the action that will be applied to any data that does not meet the criteria specified by the applied matching commands.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset to the default action of 'permit'.

Syntax `default-action [permit|deny|send-to-cpu|copy-to-cpu|copy-to-mirror|send-to-mirror]`

`no default-action`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| permit | Packets to permit. |
| deny | Packets to deny. |
| send-to-cpu | Specify packets to send to the CPU. |
| copy-to-cpu | Specify packets to copy to the CPU. |
| copy-to-mirror | Specify packets to copy to the mirror port. |
| send-to-mirror | Specify packets to send to the mirror port. |

Default The default is 'permit'.

Mode Policy Map Configuration

Examples To set the action for the default class-map to `deny`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-pmap)# default-action deny
```

To set the action for the default class-map to `copy-to-mirror` for use with the **mirror interface** command, use the command:

```
awplus(config-pmap)# default-action copy-to-mirror
```

Related Commands [mirror interface](#)

description (QoS policy-map)

Adds a textual description of the policy-map. This can be up to 80 characters long.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the current description from the policy-map.

Syntax `description <line>`
`no description`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><line></code> | Up to 80 character long line description. |

Mode Policy Map Configuration

Example To add the description, VOIP traffic, use the commands:

```
awplus(config-pmap)# description VOIP traffic
```

egress-rate-limit

Sets a limit on the amount of traffic that can be transmitted per second from this port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the limiting of traffic egressing on the interface.

Syntax `egress-rate-limit <bandwidth>`
`no egress-rate-limit`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><bandwidth></code> | Bandwidth <1-10000000 units per second> (usable units: k, m, g). The egress rate limit can be configured in multiples of 64kbps. If you configure a value that is not an exact multiple of 64kbps, then the value will be rounded up to the nearest higher exact multiple of 64kbps. The minimum is 64 Kb. The default unit is Kb (k), but Mb (m) or Gb (g) can also be specified. The command syntax is not case sensitive, so a value such as 20m or 20M will be taken to mean 20 megabits. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To enable egress rate limiting on a port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# egress-rate-limit 64k
% Egress rate limit has been set to 64 Kb
```

To disable egress rate limiting on a port, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# no egress-rate-limit
```

match access-group

Use this command to define match criterion for a class-map.

Syntax `match access-group {<hw-IP-ACL>|<hw-MAC-ACL>|<hw-named-ACL>}`
`no match access-group {<hw-IP-ACL>|<hw-MAC-ACL>|<hw-named-ACL>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <hw-IP-ACL> | Specify a hardware IP ACL number in the range <3000-3699>. |
| <hw-MAC-ACL> | Specify a hardware MAC ACL number in the range <4000-4699>. |
| <hw-named-ACL> | Specify the hardware named ACL. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Usage First create an access-list that applies the appropriate permit/deny requirements. Then use the **match access-group** command to apply this access-list for matching to a class-map. Note that this command will apply the access-list matching only to *incoming* data packets.

Examples To configure a class-map named `cmap1` with one match criterion: `access-list 3001`, which allows IP traffic from any source to any destination, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 3001 permit ip any any
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 3001
```

To configure a class-map named `cmap2` with one match criterion: `access-list 3001`, which allows MAC traffic from any source to any destination, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list 4001 permit any any
awplus(config)# class-map cmap2
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group 4001
```

To configure a class-map named `cmap3` with one match criterion: `access-list hw_acl`, which allows IP traffic from any source to any destination, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# access-list hardware hw_acl
awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# permit ip any any
awplus(config)# class-map cmap3
awplus(config-cmap)# match access-group hw_acl
```

Related Commands [class-map](#)

match cos

Sets the CoS for a class-map to match on.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove CoS.

Syntax `match cos <0-7>`

`no match cos`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------|
| <0-7> | Specify the CoS value. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Examples To set the class-map's CoS to 4, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match cos 4
```

To remove CoS from a class-map, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# no match cos
```

match dscp

Use this command to define the DSCP to match against incoming packets.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a previously defined DSCP.

Syntax `match dscp <0-63>`

`no match dscp`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <0-63> | Specify DSCP value (only one value can be selected). |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Usage Use the **match dscp** command to define the match criterion after creating a class-map.

Examples To configure a class-map named `cmap1` with criterion that matches IP DSCP 56, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match dscp 56
```

To remove a previously defined DSCP from a class-map named `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# no match dscp
```

Related Commands [class-map](#)

match eth-format protocol

This command sets the Ethernet format and the protocol for a class-map to match on.

Select one Layer 2 format and one Layer 3 protocol when you issue this command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configured Ethernet format and protocol from a class-map.

Syntax `match eth-format <layer-two-format> protocol <layer-three-protocol>`
`no match eth-format protocol`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i><layer-two-formats></i> | |
| 802dot2-tagged | 802.2 Tagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| 802dot2-untagged | 802.2 Untagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| ethii-tagged | EthII Tagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| ethii-untagged | EthII Untagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| netwareraw-tagged | Netware Raw Tagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| netwareraw-untagged | Netware Raw Untagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| snap-tagged | SNAP Tagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| snap-untagged | SNAP Untagged Packets (enter the parameter name). |
| <i><layer-three-protocols></i> | |
| <word> | A Valid Protocol Number in hexadecimal. |
| any | Note that the parameter "any" is only valid when used with the netwarerawtagged and netwarerawuntagged protocol options. |
| sna-path-control | Protocol Number 04 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| proway-lan | Protocol Number 0E (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| eia-rs Protocol | Number 4E (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| proway Protocol | Number 8E (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ipx-802dot2 | Protocol Number E0 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| netbeui | Protocol Number F0 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| iso-clns-is | Protocol Number FE (enter the parameter name or its number). |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|-------------------|--|
| xdot75-internet | Protocol Number 0801 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| nbs-internet | Protocol Number 0802 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ecma-internet | Protocol Number 0803 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| chaosnet | Protocol Number 0804 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| xdot25-level-3 | Protocol Number 0805 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| arp Protocol | Number 0806 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| xns-compat | Protocol Number 0807 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| banyan-systems | Protocol Number 0BAD (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| bbn-simnet | Protocol Number 5208 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-mop-dump-ld | Protocol Number 6001 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-mop-rem-cdons | Protocol Number 6002 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-decnet | Protocol Number 6003 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-lat | Protocol Number 6004 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-diagnostic | Protocol Number 6005 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-customer | Protocol Number 6006 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-lavc | Protocol Number 6007 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| rarp | Protocol Number 8035 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-lanbridge | Protocol Number 8038 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| dec-encryption | Protocol Number 803D (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| appletalk | Protocol Number 809B (enter the parameter name or its number). |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|------------------|--|
| ibm-sna | Protocol Number 80D5 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| appletalk-aarp | Protocol Number 80F3 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| snmp | Protocol Number 814Cv. |
| ethertalk-2 | Protocol Number 809B (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ethertalk-2-aarp | Protocol Number 80F3 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ipx-snap | Protocol Number 8137 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ipx-802dot3 | Protocol Number FFFF (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ip | Protocol Number 0800 (enter the parameter name or its number). |
| ipx | Protocol Number 8137 (enter the parameter name or its number). |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Examples To remove the eth-format and the protocol from the class-map `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# no match eth-format protocol
```

To set the eth-format to `ethii-tagged` and the protocol to 0800 (IP) for class-map `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match eth-format ethii-tagged protocol
0800
or
awplus(config-cmap)# match eth-format ethii-tagged protocol ip
```

match ip-precedence

Use this command to identify IP precedence values as match criteria.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove IP precedence values from a class-map.

Syntax `match ip-precedence <0-7>`
`no match ip-precedence`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| <0-7> | The precedence value to be matched. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Example To configure a class-map named `cmap1` to evaluate all IPv4 packets for a precedence value of 5, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match ip-precedence 5
```

match mac-type

Use this command to set the MAC type for a class-map to match on.

Use **no** variant of this command to remove the MAC type match entry.

Syntax `match mac-type {l2bcast|l2mcast|l2ucast}`
`no match mac-type`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| l2bcast | Layer 2 Broadcast traffic. |
| l2mcast | Layer 2 Multicast traffic. |
| l2ucast | Layer 2 Unicast traffic. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Examples To set the class-map's MAC type to Layer 2 multicast, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match mac-type l2mcast
```

To remove the class-map's MAC type entry, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# no match mac-type
```

match tcp-flags

Sets one or more TCP flags (control bits) for a class-map to match on.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove one or more TCP flags for a class-map to match on.

Syntax `match tcp-flags {[ack][fin][rst][syn][urg]}`
`no match tcp-flags {[ack][fin][rst][syn][urg]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------|
| ack | Acknowledge. |
| fin | Finish. |
| rst | Reset. |
| syn | Synchronize. |
| urg | Urgent. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Examples To set the class-map's TCP flags to `ack` and `syn`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map
awplus(config-cmap)# match tcp-flags ack syn
```

To remove the TCP flags `ack` and `rst`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map
awplus(config-cmap)# no match tcp-flags ack rst
```

match vlan

Use this command to define the VLAN ID used as match criteria to classify a traffic class.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the VLAN ID used as match criteria.

Syntax `match vlan <1-4094>`

`no match vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| <code><1-4094></code> | The VLAN number. |

Mode Class Map Configuration

Examples To configure a class-map named `cmap1` to include traffic from VLAN 3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# match vlan 3
```

To disable the configured VLAN ID as a match criteria for the class-map named `cmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# class-map cmap1
awplus(config-cmap)# no match vlan
```

mls qos cos

This command assigns a CoS (Class of Service) user-priority value to untagged frames entering a specified interface. By default, all untagged frames are assigned a CoS value of 0.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return the interface to the default CoS setting for untagged frames entering the interface.

Syntax `mls qos cos <0-7>`

`no mls qos cos`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code><0-7></code> | The Class of Service, user-priority value. |

Default By default, all untagged frames are assigned a CoS value of 0. Note that for tagged frames, the default behavior is not to alter the CoS value.

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To assign a CoS user priority value of 2 to all untagged packets entering ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# mls qos cos 2
```

mls qos enable

Use this command to globally enable QoS on the switch.

Use the **no** variant of this command to globally disable QoS and remove all QoS configuration. The **no** variant of this command removes all class-maps, policy-maps, policers, and queue-sets that have been created. Running the **no mls qos** command will therefore remove all pre-existing QoS configurations on the switch.

Mode Global Configuration

Syntax mls qos enable

no mls qos

Example To enable QoS on the switch, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mls qos enable
```

mls qos map cos-queue to

Used to set the default CoS to queue mapping. This is the default queue mapping for packets that do not get assigned a queue via any other QoS functionality.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the cos-queue map back to its default setting. The default mappings for this command are:

```

CoS Priority :      0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
-----
CoS QUEUE:        2 0 1 3 4 5 6 7
  
```

For more information see [“Mapping CoS tags to traffic types” on page 36.13](#).

Syntax `mls qos map cos-queue <cos-priority> to <queue-number>`
`no mls qos map cos-queue`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><cos-priority></code> | CoS priority value. Can take a value 0 to 7. |
| <code><queue-number></code> | Queue number. Can take a value 0 to 7. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the cos-queue map back to its defaults, use the command:

```

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no mls qos map cos-queue
  
```

To map CoS 2 to queue 0, use the command:

```

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mls qos map cos-queue 2 to 0
  
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface](#)

mls qos map premark-dscp to

This command configures the premark-dscp map. It is used when traffic is classified by a class-map that has **trust dscp** configured. Based on a lookup DSCP, the map determines a new DSCP, CoS, queue and band width class for the traffic.

The **no** variant of this command resets the premark-dscp map to its defaults. If no DSCP is specified then all DSCP entries will be reset to their defaults.

Syntax

```
mls qos map premark-dscp <0-63> to {[new-dscp <0-63>][new-cos <0-7>]
[new-bandwidth-class {green|yellow|red}]}
```

```
no mls qos map premark-dscp [<0-63>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| premark-dscp <0-63> | The DSCP value on ingress. |
| new-dscp <0-63> | The DSCP value that the packet will have on egress. If unspecified, this value will remain the DSCP ingress value. |
| new-cos <0-7> | The CoS value that the packet will have on egress. If unspecified, this value will retain its value on ingress. |
| new-bandwidth-class | Modify Egress Bandwidth-class. If unspecified, this value will be set to green. |
| green | Egress Bandwidth-class green (marked down Bandwidth-class). |
| yellow | Egress Bandwidth-class yellow (marked down Bandwidth-class). |
| red | Egress Bandwidth-class red (marked down Bandwidth-class). |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage With the **trust dscp** command set, this command (**mls qos map premark-dscp**) enables you to make the following changes:

1. remap the DSCP (leaving the other settings unchanged)
2. remap any or all of CoS, output queue, or bandwidth class values (leaving the DSCP unchanged)

Note  If you attempt to remap both the DSCP and another setting, only the DSCP remap will take effect.

Example To set the entry for DSCP 1 to use a new DSCP of 2, a new CoS of 3, a new queue of 4 and a new bandwidth class of yellow, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mls qos map premark-dscp 1 to new-dscp 2
awplus(config)# mls qos map premark-dscp 2 to new-cos 3
awplus(config)# mls qos map premark-dscp 2 to new-queue 4
awplus(config)# mls qos map premark-dscp 2 to new-bandwidth-
class yellow
```

Example To set the entry for DSCP 1 to use a new DSCP of 2, a new CoS of 3, and a new bandwidth class of yellow, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# mls qos map premark-dscp 1 to new-dscp 2
new-cos 3 new-bandwidth-class yellow
```

Example To reset the entry for DSCP 1 use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no mls qos map premark-dscp 1
```

Related Commands [show mls qos maps premark-dscp](#)
[trust dscp](#)

no police

Disables any policer previously configured on the class-map.

Syntax no police

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage This command disables any policer previously configured on the class-map.

Example To disable policing on a class-map use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map name
awplus(config-pmap)# class classname
awplus(config-pmap-c)# no police
```

Related Commands [police single-rate action](#)
[police twin-rate action](#)

police single-rate action

Configures a single-rate policer for a class-map.

Syntax `police single-rate <cir> <pbs> <ebs> action {drop-red|remark-transmit}`

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------|-----------------------|-----------------|---|
| <cir> | Specify the Committed Information Rate (CIR) (1-16000000 kbps). | | | | |
| <pbs> | Specify the Committed Burst Size (CBS) (0-16777216 bytes). | | | | |
| <ebs> | Specify a Excess Burst Size (EBS) (0-16777216 bytes). | | | | |
| action | Specify the action if the rate is exceeded. | | | | |
| | <table border="0"> <tr> <td>drop-red</td> <td>Drop the red packets.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>remark-transmit</td> <td>Modify the packets using the <i>remark map</i>, then transmit. You can configure the remark map using the remark-map command on page 37.30.</td> </tr> </table> | drop-red | Drop the red packets. | remark-transmit | Modify the packets using the <i>remark map</i> , then transmit. You can configure the remark map using the remark-map command on page 37.30 . |
| drop-red | Drop the red packets. | | | | |
| remark-transmit | Modify the packets using the <i>remark map</i> , then transmit. You can configure the remark map using the remark-map command on page 37.30 . | | | | |

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage You can use a policer to meter the traffic classified by the class-map and assign it to one of three bandwidth classes.

The bandwidth classes are green (conforming), yellow (partially-conforming), and red (non-conforming). A single-rate policer is based on three values. These are the average rate, minimum burst and maximum burst.

| Color | Definition |
|--------|--|
| green | The traffic rate is less than the average rate and minimum burst. |
| yellow | The traffic rate is between the minimum burst and the maximum burst. |
| red | The traffic rate exceeds the average rate and the maximum burst. |

Using an action of drop-red means that any packets classed as red are discarded.



Note This command will not take effect when applied to a class-map that attaches to a channel group whose ports span processor instances.

Example To configure a single rate meter measuring traffic of 10 Mbps that drops a sustained burst of traffic over this rate, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map name
awplus(config-pmap)# class classname
awplus(config-pmap-c)# police single-rate 10000 1875000 1875000
                        action drop-red
```

Related Commands [no police](#)
[police twin-rate action](#)
[remark-map](#)

police twin-rate action

Configures a twin-rate policer for a class-map.

Syntax `police twin-rate <cir> <pir> <pbs> <pbs> action {drop-red|remark-transmit}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <cir> | Specify the Committed Information Rate (CIR) (1-16000000 kbps). |
| <pir> | Specify the Peak Information Rate (PIR) (kbps). |
| <pbs> | Specify the Peak Burst Size (PBS) (0-16777216 bytes). |
| action | Specify the action if rate is exceeded. |
| drop-red | Drop the red packets. |
| remark-transmit | Modify the packets using the <i>remark map</i> , then transmit. You can configure the remark map using the remark-map command on page 37.30 . |

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage A policer can be used to meter the traffic classified by the class-map and as a result will be given one of three bandwidth classes. These are green (conforming), yellow (partially-conforming), and red (non-conforming).

A twin-rate policer is based on four values. These are the minimum rate, minimum burst size, maximum rate, and maximum burst size.

| Bandwidth Class | Definition |
|-----------------|--|
| green | The sum of the number of existing (buffered) bytes plus those arriving at the port per unit time results in a value that is less than that set for the CBS. |
| yellow | The sum of the number of existing (buffered) bytes plus those arriving at the port per unit time results in a value that is between those set for the CBS and the PBS. |
| red | The sum of the number of existing (buffered) bytes plus those arriving at the port per unit time, result in a value that exceeds that set for the PBS. |

Using an action of drop-red means that any packets classed as red will be discarded.

When using an action of remark-transmit the packet will be remarked with the values configured in the policed-dscp map. The index into this map is determined by the DSCP in the packet.

Example To configure a twin rate meter measuring a minimum rate of 10 Mbps and a maximum rate of 20 Mbps that uses the premark map to remark any non-conforming traffic, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map name
awplus(config-pmap)# class classname
awplus(config-pmap-c)# police twin-rate 10000 20000 1875000
3750000 action remark-transmit
```

Related Commands [no police](#)
[police twin-rate action](#)

policy-map

Use this command to create a policy-map and to enter Policy Map Configuration mode to configure the specified policy-map.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete an existing policy-map.

Syntax `policy-map <name>`
`no policy-map <name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code><name></code> | Name of the policy-map. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To create a policy-map called `pmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)#
```

Related Commands [class-map](#)

priority-queue

Configures strict priority based scheduling on the specified egress queues. You must specify at least one queue.

Syntax `priority-queue [0] [1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| [0] [1] . . . [7] | Specify the queues that will use strict priority scheduling. With strict priority scheduling, the switch will completely empty the highest numbered queue first, then start processing the next lowest numbered queue. |

Mode Interface Configuration.

Usage By default, the queues on all ports are set for priority queuing. You can change the queue emptying sequence to weighted round robin, by using the [wrr-queue weight queues command on page 37.51](#). You can then use the **priority-queue** command to reset the selected queues to priority queuing.

Note that the emptying sequence for priority queuing is always highest queue number to lowest queue number.

Example To apply priority based scheduling to egress queues 1 and 2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# priority-queue 1 2
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface](#)
[show mls qos interface queue-counters](#)
[wrr-queue weight queues](#)

remark-map

Configures the remark map. This command is applied when a policer is configured with the **action** parameter of the command **police single-rate action** set to **remark-transmit**.

The **no** variant of this command resets the remark map to its defaults. Specifying the bandwidth class is optional. If no bandwidth class is specified, then all bandwidth classes are reset to their defaults.

Syntax

```
remark-map [bandwidth-class {green|yellow|red}] to {[new-dscp <0-63>]
[new-bandwidth-class {green|yellow|red}]}
```

```
no remark-map [bandwidth-class {green|yellow|red}] to {[new-dscp
<0-63>] [new-bandwidth-class {green|yellow|red}]}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| bandwidth-class | Specify the bandwidth class of packets to remark. |
| green | Remark green packets. |
| yellow | Remark yellow packets. |
| red | Remark red packets. |
| new-dscp | Specify the new DSCP value. |
| <0-63> | The DSCP value. |
| new-bandwidth-class | Specify the new bandwidth class. |
| green | Remark the packet green. |
| yellow | Remark the packet yellow. |
| red | Remark the packet red. |

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Examples To remark the policed green traffic to a new DSCP of 2 and a new bandwidth class of yellow, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# remark-map bandwidth-class green to
new-dscp 2 new-bandwidth-class yellow
```

To remark the policed green traffic to a new DSCP of 2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# remark-map bandwidth-class green to
new-dscp 2
```

To reset the DSCP for all bandwidth classes, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# no remark-map to new dscp
```

Related Commands [police single-rate action](#)
[police twin-rate action](#)

remark new-cos

Enables you to configure and remark either or both the CoS flag in the data packet, and the input into the CoS to queue map thus changing the destination egress queue.

Syntax `remark new-cos <0-7> [internal|external|both]`
`no remark new-cos [internal|external|both]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <0-7> | The new value for either the CoS flag or the input into the CoS to queue map. |
| external | Remarks the CoS flag in the packet. |
| internal | Remarks the new-CoS input into the CoS to queue map. |
| both | Remarks (with the same value) both the CoS flag in the packet and the input to the CoS to queue map. |

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage The default CoS to Queue mappings are shown in the following table:

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| CoS Value | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| Egress Queue No | 2 | 0 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

The relationship between this command and the CoS to queue map is shown in [Figure 37-1](#).

Figure 37-1: Remarking and the CoS to Q map

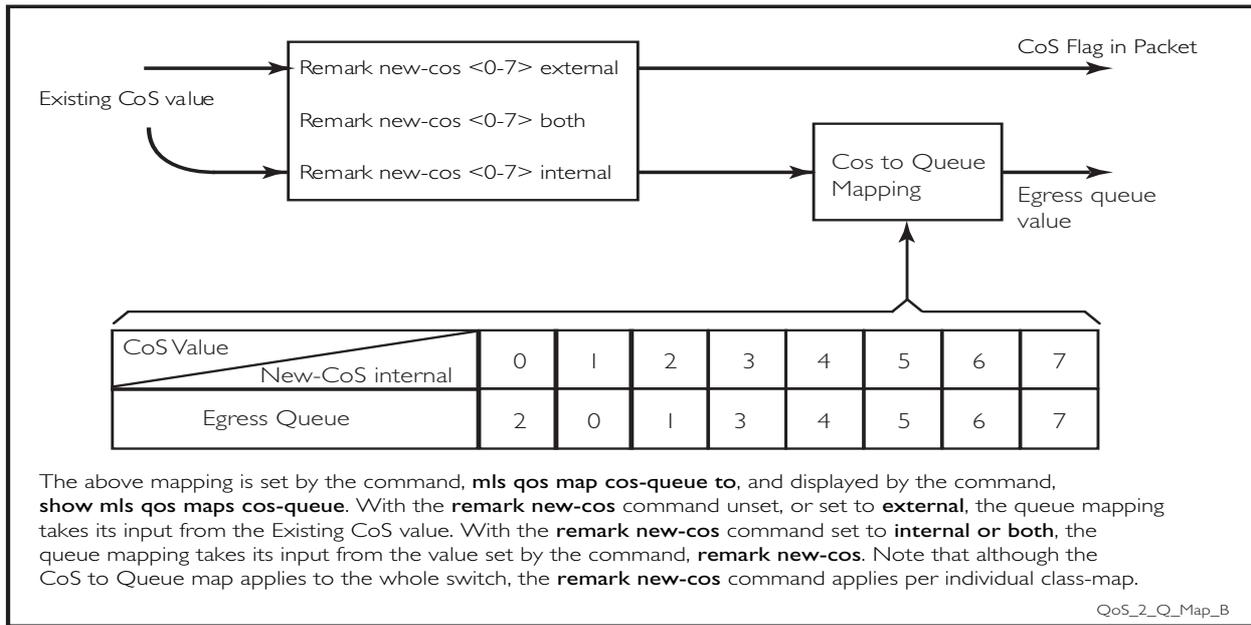


Table 37-1: CoS to egress queue remarking function

| Input | Command | Output |
|---------------|---------------------------------|--|
| CoS field = 1 | Remark new-cos (not configured) | CoS value = 1 Packet sent to egress queue 0 |
| CoS field = 1 | Remark new-cos 2 external | CoS value = 2 Packet sent to egress queue 0 |
| CoS set to 1 | Remark new-cos 2 internal | CoS value = 1 Packet sent to egress queue 1 |
| CoS set to 1 | Remark new-cos 2 both | CoS value = 2 Packet sent to egress queue 1 |

Note: This table assumes that the CoS to Queue map is set to its default values.

Example For policy-map `pmap3` and class-map `cmap1`, set the CoS value to 2 and also set the input to the CoS to queue map so that the traffic is assigned to egress queue 1:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap3
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# remark new-cos 2 both
```

Related Commands `mls qos map cos-queue to`
`show mls qos maps cos-queue`

service-policy input

Use this command to apply a policy-map to the input of an interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a policy-map and interface association.

Syntax `service-policy input <policy-map>`
`no service-policy input <policy-map>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><policy-map></code> | Policy map name that the input will applied to. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage This command can be applied to switch ports or static channel groups, but not to dynamic (LACP) channel groups.

Example To apply a policy-map named `pmap1` to interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# service-policy input pmap1
```

show class-map

Use this command to display the QoS class-maps to define the match criteria to classify traffic.

Syntax `show class-map <class-map name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <code><class-map name></code> | Name of the class-map. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the QoS class-maps to define the match criteria to classify traffic, use the command:

```
awplus# show class-map cmap1
```

Output **Figure 37-2: Example output from the show class-map command**

```
CLASS-MAP-NAME: cmap1
  Set IP DSCP: 56
  Match IP DSCP: 7
```

Related Commands [class-map](#)

show mls qos interface

Displays the current settings for the interface. This includes its default CoS and queue, scheduling used for each queue, and any policies/maps that are attached.

Syntax `show mls qos interface [<port>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------|
| <port> | Switch port. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display current CoS and queue settings for interface `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# show mls qos interface port1.0.1
```

show mls qos interface policer-counters

This command displays an interface's policer counters. This can either be for a specific class-map or for all class-maps attached to the interface. If no class-map is specified then all class-map policer counters attached to the interface are displayed.

Note that these counters are based on metering performed on the specified class-map. Therefore, the 'Dropped Bytes' counter is the number of bytes dropped due to metering. This is different from packets dropped via a 'deny' action in the ACL. If a policer is configured to perform re-marking, bytes can be marked Red but are not dropped, and is shown with a value of 0 for the Dropped field and a non-0 value for the 'Red Bytes' field.

Syntax `show mls qos interface <port> policer-counters
[class-map <class-map>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <port> | Switch port. |
| class-map | Select a class-map. |
| <class-map> | Class-map name. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Note that the hardware does not record distinct counters for the number of Green or Yellow bytes, so the field marked Green/Yellow is the summation of bytes that have been marked Green or Yellow by the meter.

Example To show the counters for all class-maps attached to port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# show mls qos interface port1.0.1 policer-counters
```

Output **Figure 37-3: Example output from show mls qos interface policer-counters**

```
awplus#show mls qos int port1.0.1 policer-counters
Interface:                port1.0.1
  Class-map:                default
    Green/Yellow Bytes:    0
    Red Bytes:              0
    Dropped Bytes:        0
    Non-dropped Bytes:    0
  Class-map:                cmap1
    Green/Yellow Bytes:    1629056
    Red Bytes:              7003200
    Dropped Bytes:        0
    Non-dropped Bytes:    8632256
```

This output shows a policer configured with remarking through 'action remark-transmit', so although bytes are marked as Red, none are dropped. Therefore, the 'Non-dropped Bytes' field shows a summation of Green/Yellow and Red bytes.

show mls qos interface queue-counters

This command displays an interface's egress queue counters. This can either be for a specific queue or for all queues on the interface. If no queue is specified all queue counters on the interface will be displayed.

The counters show the number of frames currently in the queue and the maximum number of frames allowed in the queue, for individual egress queues and the port's queue (which will be a sum of all egress queues).

Syntax `show mls qos interface <port> queue-counters [queue <0-7>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------|
| <port> | Switch port. |
| <0-7> | Queue. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the counters for all queues on port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# show mls qos interface port1.0.1 queue-counters
```

Output **Figure 37-4: Example output from the show mls qos interface queue-counters command**

```

Interface port1.0.4 Queue Counters:
  Port queue length      1169
  Egress Queue length:
    Queue 0              0
    Queue 1              0
    Queue 2              1169
    Queue 3              0
    Queue 4              0
    Queue 5              0
    Queue 6              0
    Queue 7              0

```

Table 37-2: Parameters in the output of the show mls qos interface queue-counters command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Interface | Port we are showing the counters for. |
| Port queue length | Number of frames in the port's queue. This will be the sum of all egress queues on the port. |
| Egress Queue length | Number of frames in a specific egress queue. |

show mls qos interface storm-status

Show the current configuration and status of the QoS Storm Protection (QSP) on the given port.

Syntax `show mls qos interface <port> storm-status`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------|
| <port> | Switch port. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To see the QSP status on port1.0.1, use command:

```
awplus# show mls qos interface port1.0.1 storm-status
```

Output **Figure 37-5: Example output from the show mls qos interface storm-status command**

```
Interface:          port1.0.1
Storm-Protection:   Enabled
Port-status:       Enabled
Storm Action:       vlandisable
Storm Window:       5000 ms
Storm Downtime:     0 s
Timeout Remaining: 0 s
Last read data-rate: 0 kbps
Storm Rate:         1000 kbps
```

Related Commands

- [storm-action](#)
- [storm-downtime](#)
- [storm-protection](#)
- [storm-rate](#)
- [storm-window](#)

show mls qos maps cos-queue

Show the current configuration of the cos-queue map.

Syntax `show mls qos maps cos-queue`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current configuration of the cos-queue map, use the command:

```
awplus# show mls qos maps cos-queue
```

Output **Figure 37-6: Example output from the show mls qos maps cos-queue command**

```
COS-TO-QUEUE-MAP:
COS :           0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
-----
QUEUE:         0 7 1 3 4 5 6 7
```

Related Commands [mls qos map cos-queue to](#)

show mls qos maps premark-dscp

This command displays the premark-dscp map. This map is used when the **trust dscp** command has been specified for a policy-map's class-map to replace the DSCP, CoS, queue, and bandwidth class of a packet matching the class-map based on a lookup DSCP value.

Syntax `show mls qos maps premark-dscp [<0-63>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|
| <0-63> | DSCP table entry. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the premark-dscp map for DSCP 1, use the command:

```
awplus# show mls qos maps premark-dscp 1
```

Output **Figure 37-7: Example output from the show mls qos maps premark-dscp command**

```
PREMARK-DSCP-MAP:
  DSCP 1
  Bandwidth Class      Green   Yellow  Red
  -----
  New DSCP              1      -       -
  New CoS               0      -       -
  New Queue             0      -       -
  New Bandwidth Class  green  -       -
```

Related Commands [mls qos map premark-dscp to trust dscp](#)

show policy-map

Displays the policy-maps configured on the switch. The output also shows whether or not they are connected to a port (attached / detached) and shows their associated class-maps.

Syntax `show policy-map [<name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| <name> | The name of a specific policy-map. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display a listing of the policy-maps configured on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show policy-map
```

Output **Figure 37-8: Example output from the show policy-map command**

```
POLICY-MAP-NAME: general-traffic
State: attached
  Default class-map action: permit
CLASS-MAP-NAME: default
CLASS-MAP-NAME: database-traffic
```

Related Commands [service-policy input](#)

storm-action

Sets the action to take when triggered by QoS Storm Protection (QSP). There are three available options:

- **portdisable** will disable the port in software.
- **vlandisable** will disable the port from the VLAN matched by the class-map in class-map.
- **linkdown** will physically bring the port down. The **vlandisable** requires the match vlan class-map to be present in the class-map.

The **no** variant of this command will negate the action set by the **storm-action** command.

Syntax `storm-action {portdisable|vlandisable|linkdown}`
`no storm-action`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| portdisable | Disable the port in software. |
| vlandisable | Disable the VLAN. |
| linkdown | Shutdown the port physically. |

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Examples To apply the storm protection of **vlandisable** to the policy-map named `pmap2`, and the class-map named `cmap1`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c# storm-action vlandisable
```

To negate the storm protection set on the policy-map named `pmap2`, and the class-map named `cmap1`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c# no storm-action
```

Related Commands [storm-downtime](#)
[storm-protection](#)
[storm-rate](#)
[storm-window](#)

storm-downtime

Sets the time to re-enable the port once disabled by QoS Storm Protection (QSP). The time is given in seconds, from a minimum of one second to maximum of 86400 seconds (i.e. one day).

The **no** variant of this command resets the time to the default value of 10 seconds.

Syntax `storm-downtime <1-86400>`
`no storm-downtime`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| <code><1-86400></code> | Seconds. |

Default 10 seconds

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Examples To re-enable the port in 1 minute, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-downtime 60
```

To re-set the port to the default (10 seconds), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap1
awplus(config-pmap-c)# no storm-downtime
```

Related Commands [storm-action](#)
[storm-protection](#)
[storm-rate](#)
[storm-window](#)

storm-protection

Use this command to enable the Policy Based Storm Protection (such as QSP - QoS Storm Protection). Storm protection is activated as soon as a port is enabled.

The **no** variant of this command disables Policy Based Storm Protection.

Syntax storm-protection
no storm-protection

Default By default, storm protection is disabled.

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Examples To enable QSP on cmap2 in pmap2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-protection
```

To disable QSP on cmap2 in pmap2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# no storm-protection
```

Related Commands [storm-action](#)
[storm-downtime](#)
[storm-rate](#)
[storm-window](#)

storm-rate

Sets the data rate that triggers the storm-action. The rate is in kbps and the range is from 1kbps to 10Gbps.

Note that this setting is made in conjunction with the **storm window** command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to negate the **storm-rate** command.

Syntax `storm-rate <1-10000000>`
`no storm-rate`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code><1-10000000></code> | The range of the storm-rate. |

Default No default

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage This setting is made in conjunction with the **storm-window** command on page 37.47.

Examples To the limit to 1Mbps, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-rate 1000
```

To negate the limit set previously, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-rate 1000
```

Related Commands [storm-action](#)
[storm-downtime](#)
[storm-protection](#)
[storm-window](#)

storm-window

Sets the window size of QoS Storm Protection (QSP). This sets the time to poll the data-rate every given milliseconds. Minimum window size of 100 ms and the maximum is 60 sec.

Use the **no** variant of this command to negate the **storm-window** command.

Syntax `storm-window <100-60000>`
`no storm-window`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><100-60000></code> | The window size, measured in milliseconds. |

Default No default

Mode Policy Map Class Configuration

Usage This command should be set in conjunction with the **storm-rate** command on page 37.46.

Examples To set the QSP window size to 5000 ms, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-window 5000
```

To negate the QSP window size set previously, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap2
awplus(config-pmap)# class cmap2
awplus(config-pmap-c)# storm-window 5000
```

Related Commands [storm-action](#)
[storm-downtime](#)
[storm-protection](#)
[storm-rate](#)

trust dscp

This command enables the premark-dscp map to replace the bandwidth-class, CoS, DSCP, and queue of classified traffic based on a lookup DSCP value.

With the no variant of this command, no premark-dscp mapping function will be applied for the selected class-map. QoS components of the packet existing either at ingress, or applied by the class-map, will pass unchanged.

Syntax `trust dscp`
`no trust`

Mode Policy-Map Configuration. Because policy-maps are applied to ports, you can think of **trust dscp** as a per-port setting.

Examples To enable the premark-dscp map lookup for policy-map `pmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# trust dscp
```

To disable the premark-dscp map lookup for policy-map `pmap1`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# policy-map pmap1
awplus(config-pmap)# no trust
```

Related Commands [mls qos map premark-dscp to](#)

wrr-queue disable queues

Use this command to disable an egress queue from transmitting traffic.

The **no** variant of this command enables an egress queue to transmit traffic.

Syntax `wrr-queue disable queues [0] [1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7]`
`no wrr-queue disable queues [0] [1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| [0] [2] . . . [7] | Selects one or more queues numbered 0 to 7. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To enable queue 1 to transmit traffic, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# no wrr-queue disable queues 1
```

To disable queue 1 from transmitting traffic, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue disable queues 1
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface](#)

wrr-queue egress-rate-limit queues

Sets a limit on the amount of traffic that can be transmitted per second from these queues. The default unit is in Kb, but Mb or Gb can also be specified. The minimum is 651Kb.

Syntax `wrr-queue egress-rate-limit <bandwidth> queues {0}[1][2][3][5][6][7]`
`no wrr-queue egress-rate-limit <bandwidth> queues`
`{0}[1][2][3][5][6][7]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><bandwidth></code> | Bandwidth <1-10000000 kbits> (usable units: k, m, g). |
| <code>{0}[1]...[7]</code> | Selects one or more queues to apply the bandwidth limit to as specified in the preceding <code><bandwidth></code> parameter. |

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To limit the egress rate of queues 0, 1 and 2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue egress-rate-limit 500M
                    queues 0 1 2
```

Related Commands [show mls qos interface](#)

wrr-queue weight queues

This command configures weighted round-robin based scheduling on the specified egress queues on switch port interfaces only. The weights are specified as ratios relative to each other. It does not matter which numbers you use, only their ratio.

Syntax `wrr-queue weight <1-15> queues [0] [1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <1-15> | Weight (the higher the number the greater will be the queue servicing). |
| [0] [1] . . . [7] | Enter egress queue numbers 0-7, to assign the specified queues the specified weight. |

Mode Interface Configuration for switch port interfaces only (not for static aggregated interfaces).

Usage Only apply weighted round-robin based scheduling to switch port interfaces (for example, `awplus(config)#interface port1.0.2`).

You cannot apply weighted round-robin based scheduling to static aggregated interfaces (for example, `awplus(config)#interface sa2`). Attempting to apply weighted round-robin based scheduling on aggregated interfaces will display the console error shown below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface sa2
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue weight
% Invalid input detected at ^ marker
```

Example To apply a WRR weight of 6 to queues 0 and 1 on port1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# wrr-queue weight 6 queues 0 1
```

Related Commands [priority-queue](#)
[show mls qos interface](#)

Chapter 38: 802.1X Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 38.2 |
| 802.1X System Components..... | 38.2 |
| The 802.1X Implementation..... | 38.6 |
| Configuring 802.1X..... | 38.7 |

Introduction

802.1X is an IEEE standard providing a mechanism for authenticating devices attached to a LAN port or wireless device. Devices wishing to access services behind a port must authenticate themselves before any Ethernet packets are allowed to pass through. The protocol is referred to as 802.1X because it was initially defined in the IEEE standard 802.1X, published in 2001 and revised in 2004 and again as the current 802.1X 2010 standard.

Networks have two important requirements:

- Security: Authentication and Authorization
- Flexibility: The ability for users to roam

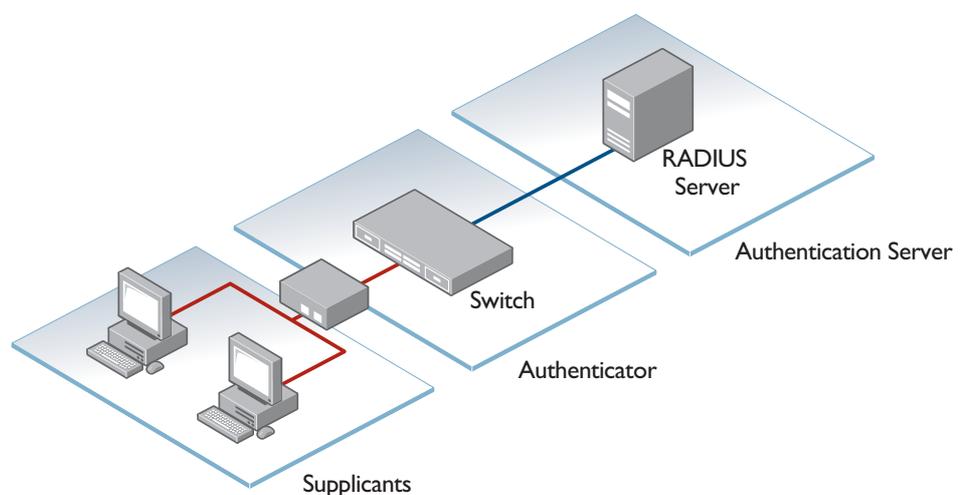
Networks need a device authentication method that is highly secure, but not tied to a port's physical location. Network resources presented to a given user need to be determined from their authentication credentials.

802.1X user authentication satisfies these requirements. It is relatively uncomplicated and has little impact on network performance. It is a protocol that is medium-independent — being equally as effective on wireless connections (802.11i) and wired connections. 802.1X user authentication is rapidly becoming an expected component on networks.

802.1X System Components

There are three main components to a system using 802.1X port authentication control:

- Authenticator: The device that wishes to enforce authentication before allowing access to services that are accessible behind it. An example of this is a switch that has 802.1X port authentication control enabled.
- Supplicant: The client that wishes to access services offered by the authenticator's system. An example of this is a Windows XP Professional PC with an 802.1X client.
- Authentication server: The device that uses the authentication credentials supplied by the supplicant, to determine if the authenticator should grant access to its services. The AlliedWare Plus implementation of 802.1X supports the use of a RADIUS authentication server using Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) in conjunction with RADIUS.

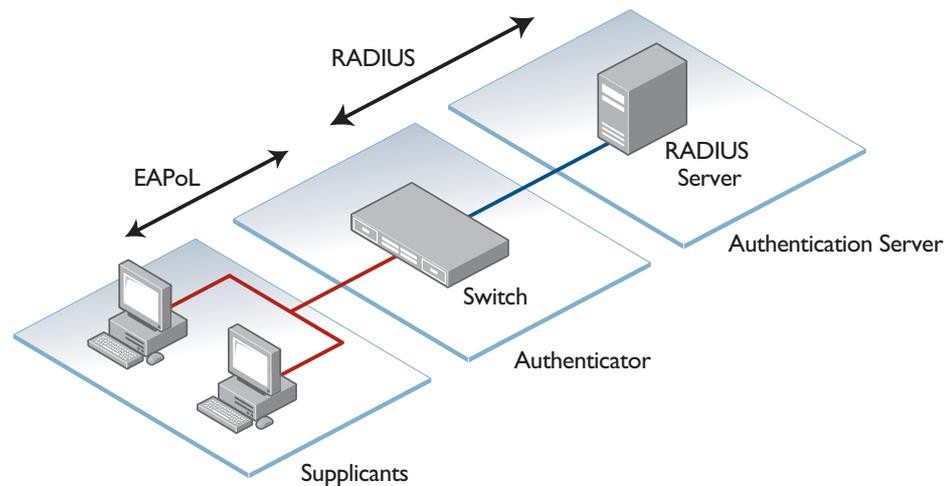


802.1X component protocols

There are two protocols involved in the authentication conversation:

- EAPoL exchanged between the supplicant and authenticator.
 - « EAPoL—Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN—is the protocol defined in IEEE802.1X.
- RADIUS exchanged between the authenticator and authentication server.
 - « RADIUS has received specific extensions to interoperate with EAPoL.

The diagram below illustrates where EAPoL and RADIUS protocols are used in the authentication conversation:



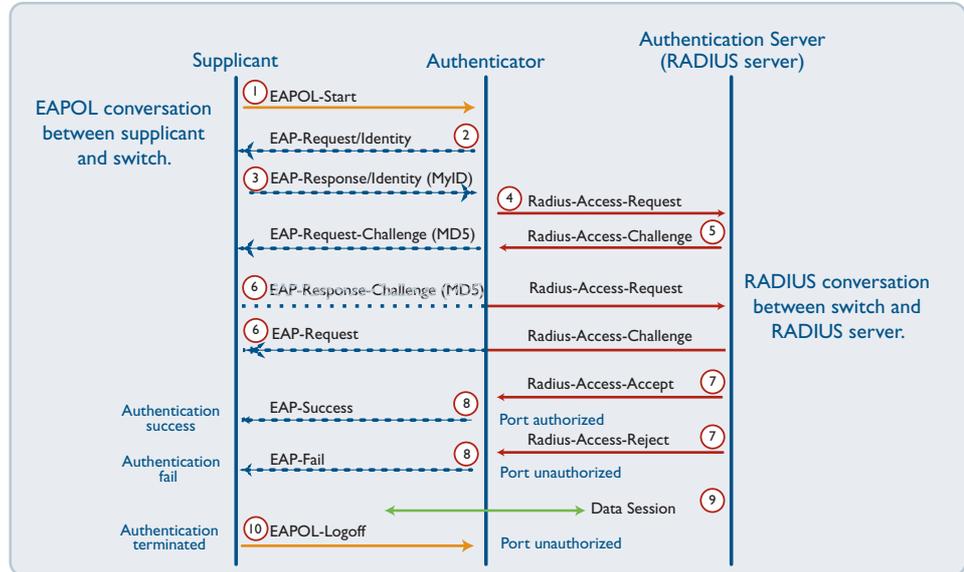
Basic steps in an 802.1X conversation

| Step | Action |
|------|--|
| 1 | The supplicant informs the authenticator that it wants to initiate the conversation. |
| 2 | The authenticator requests the supplicant's credentials. |
| 3 | The supplicant sends username/password or X.509 certificate. |
| 4 | The authenticator wraps the supplicant's reply into a RADIUS packet and sends it to the RADIUS server. |
| 5 | The RADIUS server chooses an authentication method, and sends an appropriate request to the supplicant as a 'challenge'. |
| 6 | The RADIUS server and supplicant exchange some messages, ferried by the authenticator. |
| 7 | The RADIUS server eventually decides if the supplicant is allowed access and the RADIUS server sends an Access-Accept or Access-Reject message to the Authenticator. |
| 8 | The authenticator sends an EAPoL-Success or EAPoL-Fail to the supplicant. |
| 9 | The supplicant has a session using the network (if accepted). |
| 10 | When the session is over, the supplicant sends a log-off message. |

Example message sequence

The diagram below illustrates an exchange using the EAP-MD5 authentication method, which is the simplest authentication method supported by 802.1X.

The EAPoL logoff message, of course, is not sent immediately after the other messages in the diagram, but is sent later on, at the end of the supplicant's data session, when it wishes to disconnect from the network. The EAPoL logoff message, of course, is not sent immediately after the other messages in the diagram, but is sent later on, at the end of the supplicant's data session, when it wishes to disconnect from the network.



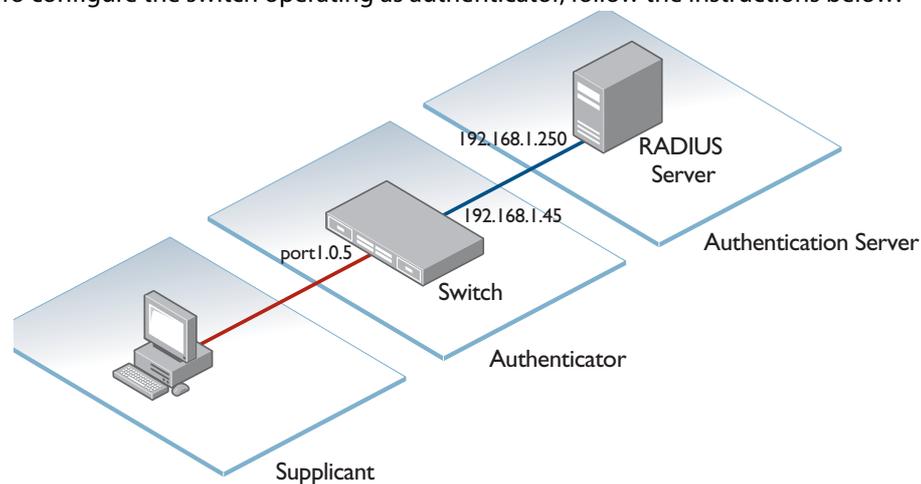
The 802.1X Implementation

802.1X port access control is achieved by making devices attached to a controlled port authenticate themselves via communication with an authentication server before these devices are allowed to access the network behind the controlled port.

Authentication is required on a per-port basis. The main components of an 802.1X implementation are:

- the authenticator - the port on this device that wishes to enforce authentication before allowing access to services that are accessible behind it.
- the supplicant - the port that wishes to access services offered by the authenticator's system. The supplicant may be a port on a PC or other device connected to this device.
- the authentication server - a device that uses the authentication credentials supplied by the supplicant, via the authenticator, to determine if the authenticator should grant access to its services.

To configure the switch operating as authenticator, follow the instructions below:



1. Configure a RADIUS server for the switch to send requests to

```
awplus(config)# radius-server host 192.168.1.250 key
<secret-key>
```

2. Instruct 802.1X to use the configured RADIUS server

```
awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

3. Configure port1.0.5 for 802.1X authentication

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.5
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast
```

Configuring 802.1X

The following example explains how to configure 802.1X. In this example, the RADIUS Server keeps the Client information, validating the identity of the Client and updating the switch about the authentication status of the client. The switch is the physical access between the two clients and the server. It requests information from the client, relays information to the server and then back to the client.

To configure 802.1X authentication, first enable authentication on port1.0.1 and port1.0.2 and then specify the RADIUS Server IP address and port.

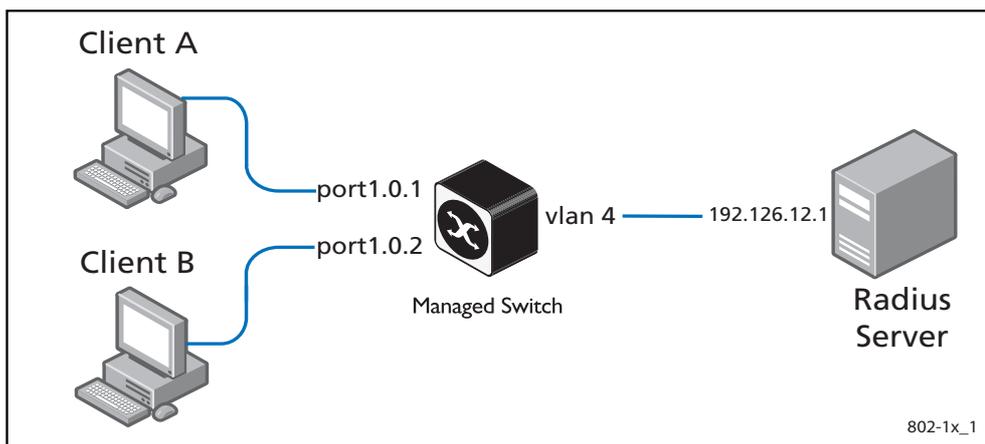


Table 38-1: 802.1X configuration on the switch

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>aaa authentication dot1x default group radius</code> | Enable authentication globally. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.1</code> | Specify the interface (port1.0.1) to be configured and enter the Interface mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>dot1x port-control auto</code> | Enable authentication (via RADIUS) on port1.0.1. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>dot1x control-direction both</code> | Block traffic in both directions, other than authentication packets, until authentication is complete. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.2</code> | Specify the interface (port1.0.2) you are configuring and enter the Interface mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>dot1x port-control auto</code> | Enable authentication (via RADIUS) on port1.0.2. |

Table 38-1: 802.1X configuration on the switch (cont.)

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>radius-server host 192.126.12.1</code> <code>auth-port 1812</code> | Specify the RADIUS Server address (192.126.12.1) and authentication port. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>radius-server key secret</code> | Specify the shared key <code>secret</code> between the RADIUS server and the client. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface vlan4</code> | Specify the vlan (<code>vlan4</code>) to be configured and enter the Interface mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>ip address 192.126.12.2/24</code> | Set the IP address on <code>vlan4</code> . |

Names of commands used

dot1x port-control
radius-server host
radius-server key

Validation commands

show dot1x
show dot1x interface

Chapter 39: 802.1X Commands



| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 39.2 |
| debug dot1x | 39.2 |
| dot1x control-direction | 39.3 |
| dot1x eap | 39.4 |
| dot1x eapol-version | 39.5 |
| dot1x initialize interface | 39.6 |
| dot1x initialize supplicant | 39.7 |
| dot1x keytransmit | 39.8 |
| dot1x max-auth-fail | 39.9 |
| dot1x max-reauth-req | 39.11 |
| dot1x port-control | 39.12 |
| dot1x timeout tx-period | 39.14 |
| show debugging dot1x | 39.15 |
| show dot1x | 39.16 |
| show dot1x diagnostics | 39.18 |
| show dot1x interface | 39.19 |
| show dot1x sessionstatistics | 39.24 |
| show dot1x statistics interface | 39.25 |
| show dot1x supplicant | 39.26 |
| show dot1x supplicant interface | 39.28 |
| undebug dot1x | 39.30 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference of commands used to configure 802.1X port access control.

debug dot1x

Use this command to enable 802.1X IEEE Port-Based Network Access Control troubleshooting functions.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable this function.

Syntax `debug dot1x [all|auth-web|event|nsm|packet|timer]`
`no debug all dot1x`
`no debug dot1x [all|auth-web|event|nsm|packet|timer]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | Used with the no variant of this command exclusively; turns off all debugging for 802.1X. |
| auth-web | Specifies debugging for 802.1X auth-web information. |
| events | Specifies debugging for 802.1X events. |
| nsm | Specifies debugging for NSM messages. |
| packet | Specifies debugging for 802.1X packets. |
| timer | Specifies debugging for 802.1X timers. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Usage This command without any parameters turns on normal 802.1X debug information.

```
awplus# debug dot1x

awplus# show debugging dot1x
```

```
802.1X debugging status:
 802.1X events debugging is
 802.1X timer debugging is on
 802.1X packets debugging is on
 802.1X NSM debugging is on
```

Examples

```
awplus# debug dot1x

awplus# debug dot1x all
```

Related Commands [show debugging dot1x](#)
[undebug dot1x](#)

dot1x control-direction

This command sets the direction of the filter for the unauthorized interface.

If the optional **in** parameter is specified with this command then packets entering the specified port are discarded. The **in** parameter discards the ingress packets received from the supplicant.

If the optional **both** parameter is specified with this command then packets entering (ingress) and leaving (egress) the specified port are discarded. The **both** parameter discards the packets received from the supplicant and sent to the supplicant.

The **no** variant of this command sets the direction of the filter to **both**. The port will then discard both ingress and egress traffic.

Syntax dot1x control-direction {in|both}
no dot1x control-direction

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| in | Discard received packets from the supplicant (ingress packets). |
| both | Discard received packets from the supplicant (ingress packets) and transmitted packets to the supplicant (egress packets). |

Default The authentication port direction is set to **both** by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Example s To set the port direction to the default (**both**) for port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x control-direction
```

To set the port direction to **in** for port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x control-direction in
```

Validation Commands **show dot1x**
show dot1x interface
show auth-mac interface
show auth-web interface

dot1x eap

This command selects the transmit mode for the EAP packet. If the authentication feature is not enabled then EAP transmit mode is not enabled. The default setting discards EAP packets.

Syntax `dot1x eap {discard|forward|forward-untagged-vlan|forward-vlan}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| discard | Discard. |
| forward | Forward to all ports on the switch. |
| forward-untagged-vlan | Forward to ports with the same untagged VLAN. |
| forward-vlan | Forward to ports with the same VLAN. |

Default The transmit mode is set to `discard` EAP packets by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the transmit mode of EAP packet to `forward` to forward EAP packets to all ports on the switch, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# dot1x eap forward
```

To set the transmit mode of EAP packet to `discard` to discard EAP packets, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# dot1x eap discard
```

To set the transmit mode of EAP packet to `forward-untagged-vlan` to forward EAP packets to ports with the same untagged vlan, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# dot1x eap forward-untagged-vlan
```

To set the transmit mode of EAP packet to `forward-vlan` to forward EAP packets to ports with the same vlan, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# dot1x eap forward-vlan
```

dot1x eapol-version

This command sets the EAPOL protocol version for EAP packets when 802.1X port authentication is applied.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the EAPOL protocol version to 1.

The default EAPOL protocol version is version 1.

Syntax dot1x eapol-version {1|2}
no dot1x eapol-version

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1 | EAPOL version. |
| 2 | EAPOL version. |

Default The EAP version for 802.1X authentication is set to 1 by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the EAPOL protocol version to 2 for port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x eapol-version 2
```

To set the EAPOL protocol version to the default version (1) for interface port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x eapol-version
```

Validation Commands show dot1x
show dot1x interface

dot1x initialize interface

This command removes authorization for a connected **interface** with the specified *<interface-list>*. The connection will attempt to re-authorize when the specified **port** attempts to make use of the network connection.



Note Reauthentication could be a long time after the use of this command because the reauthorization attempt is not triggered by this command. The attempt is triggered by the first packet from the interface trying to access the network resources.

Syntax `dot1x initialize interface <interface-list>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i><interface-list></i> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.6</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.2-1.0.4</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To initialize 802.1X port authentication on the interface `port1.0.2`, use the command:

```
awplus# dot1x initialize interface port1.0.2
```

To unauthorize switch `port1.0.1` and attempt reauthentication on switch `port1.0.1`, use the command:

```
awplus# dot1x initialize interface port1.0.1
```

To unauthorize all switch ports for a 24-port device and attempt reauthentication, use the command:

```
awplus# dot1x initialize interface port1.0.1-port1.0.24
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`

Related Commands `dot1x initialize supplicant`

dot1x initialize supplicant

This command removes authorization for a connected *supplicant* with the specified **MAC address** or **username**. The connection will attempt to re-authorize when the specified supplicant attempts to make use of the network connection.

 **Note** Reauthentication could be a long time after the use of this command because the reauthorization attempt is not triggered by this command. The attempt is triggered by the first packet from the supplicant trying to access the network resources.

Syntax `dot1x initialize supplicant {<macadd>|username}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>dot1x</code> | IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Access Control. |
| <code>initialize</code> | Initialize the port to attempt reauthentication. |
| <code>supplicant</code> | Specify the supplicant to initialize. |
| <code><macadd></code> | MAC (hardware address of the supplicant). |
| <code>username</code> | The name of the supplicant entry. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To initialize the supplicant authentication, use the commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# dot1x initialize supplicant
                0090.99ab.a020
awplus(config)# dot1x initialize supplicant guest
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x supplicant`

Related Commands `dot1x initialize interface`

dot1x keytransmit

This command enables key transmission on the interface specified previously in Interface mode.

The **no** variant of this command disables key transmission on the interface specified.

Syntax dot1x keytransmit
no dot1x keytransmit

Default Key transmission for port authentication is enabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Use this command to enable key transmission over an Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) packet between the authenticator and supplicant. Use the **no** variant of this command to disable key transmission.

Examples To enable the key transmit feature on interface `port1.0.2`, after it has been disabled by negation, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x keytransmit
```

To disable the key transmit feature from the default startup configuration on interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x keytransmit
```

Validation **show dot1x**
Commands **show dot1x interface**

dot1x max-auth-fail

Use this command to configure the maximum number of login attempts for a supplicant (client device) using the **auth-fail vlan** feature, when using 802.1X port authentication on an interface.

The **no** variant of this command resets the maximum login attempts for a supplicant (client device) using the **auth-fail vlan** feature, to the default configuration of 3 login attempts.

Syntax `dot1x max-auth-fail <0-10>`

`no dot1x max-auth-fail`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><0-10></code> | Specify the maximum number of login attempts for supplicants on an interface using 802.1X port authentication. |

Default The default maximum number of login attempts for a supplicant on an interface using 802.1X port authentication is three (3) login attempts.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage This command sets the maximum number of login attempts for supplicants on an interface. The supplicant is moved to the **auth-fail VLAN** from the **Guest VLAN** after the number of failed login attempts using 802.1X authentication is equal to the number set with this command.

See the related [auth auth-fail vlan command on page 41.3](#). See also the section [“Failed Authentication VLAN” on page 40.26](#) for information about the **auth-fail VLAN** feature.

See the section [“Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations” on page 40.26](#) for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Examples To configure the maximum number of login attempts for a supplicant on interface `port1.0.2` to a single (1) login attempt, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x max-auth-fail 1
```

To configure the maximum number of login attempts for a supplicant on interface `port1.0.2` to the default number of three (3) login attempts, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x max-auth-fail
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands **auth auth-fail vlan**
 dot1x max-reauth-req
 show dot1x interface

dot1x max-reauth-req

This command sets the number of reauthentication attempts before an interface is unauthorized.

The **no** variant of this command resets the reauthentication delay to the default.

Syntax `dot1x max-reauth-req <1-10>`

`no dot1x max-reauth-req`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-10> | Specify the maximum number of reauthentication attempts for supplicants on an interface using 802.1X port authentication. |

Default The default maximum reauthentication attempts for interfaces using 802.1X port authentication is two (2) reauthentication attempts, before an interface is unauthorized.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Use this command to set the maximum reauthentication attempts after failure.

Examples To configure the maximum number of reauthentication attempts for interface `port1.0.2` to a single (1) reauthentication request, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x max-reauth-req 1
```

To configure the maximum number of reauthentication attempts for interface `port1.0.2` to the default maximum number of two (2) reauthentication attempts, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x max-reauth-req
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `dot1x max-auth-fail`
`show dot1x interface`

dot1x port-control

This command enables 802.1X port authentication on the interface specified, and sets the control of the authentication port. When **port-control** is set to **auto**, the 802.1X authentication feature is executed on the interface, but only if the **aaa authentication dot1x** command has been issued.

The **no** variant of this command disables the port authentication on the interface specified.

Syntax `dot1x port-control {force-unauthorized|force-authorized|auto}`
`no dot1x port-control`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code>force-unauthorized</code> | Force port state to unauthorized. Specify to force a port to always be in an unauthorized state. |
| <code>force-authorized</code> | Force port state to authorized. Specify to force a port to always be in an authorized state. |
| <code>auto</code> | Allow port client to negotiate authentication. Specify to enable authentication on port. |

Default 802.1X port control is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Use this command to force a port state. Note that all **dot1x** commands can only be applied to switch ports. They cannot be applied to dynamic (LACP) or static channel groups.

Examples To enable port authentication on the interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
```

To enable port authentication force authorized on the interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control force-authorized
```

To disable port authentication on the interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x port-control
```

**Validation
Commands** **show dot1x interface**

Related Commands **aaa authentication dot1x**

dot1x timeout tx-period

This command sets the transmit timeout for the authentication request on the specified interface.

The **no** variant of this command resets the transmit timeout period to the default (30 seconds).

Syntax `dot1x timeout tx-period <1-65535>`
`no dot1x timeout tx-period`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The default transmit period for port authentication is 30 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Use this command to set the interval between successive attempts to request an ID.

Examples To set the transmit timeout period to 5 seconds on interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x timeout tx-period 5
```

To reset transmit timeout period to the default (30 seconds) on interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no dot1x timeout tx-period
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`

show debugging dot1x

Use this command to display the 802.1X debugging option set.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show debugging dot1x

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage This is a sample output from the show debugging dot1x command.

```
awplus# debug dot1x
```

```
awplus# show debugging dot1x
```

```
802.1X debugging status:
 802.1X events debugging is on
 802.1X timer debugging is on
 802.1X packets debugging is on
 802.1X NSM debugging is on
```

Example

```
awplus# show debugging dot1x
```

Related Commands [debug dot1x](#)

show dot1x

This command shows authentication information for dot1x (802.1X) port authentication.

If you specify the optional **all** parameter then this command also displays all authentication information for each port available on the switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show dot1x [all]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | Displays all authentication information for each port available on the switch. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example

```
awplus# show dot1x all
```

Figure 39-1: Example output from the show dot1x command

```
awplus# show dot1x all
802.1X Port-Based Authentication Enabled
RADIUS server address: 150.87.18.89:1812
Next radius message id: 5
RADIUS client address: not configured
Authentication info for interface port1.0.6
portEnabled: true - portControl: Auto
portStatus: Authorized
reAuthenticate: disabled
reAuthPeriod: 3600
PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
PAE: connectTimeout: 30
BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
CD: adminControlledDirections: in
KT: keyTxEnabled: false
critical: disabled
guestVlan: disabled
dynamicVlanCreation: single-dynamic-vlan
assignFailActionRule: deny
hostMode: multi-supPLICANT
maxSupPLICANT: 1024
dot1x: enabled
protocolVersion: 1
authMac: enabled
method: PAP
reauthRelearning: disabled
authWeb: enabled
method: PAP
lockCount: 3
packetForwarding: disabled
twoStepAuthentication:
  configured: enabled
  actual: enabled
SupPLICANTMac: none
```

Figure 39-1: Example output from the show dot1x command (cont.)

```
supplicantMac: none
Supplicant name: manager
Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authenticationMethod: 802.1X Authentication
  portStatus: Authorized - currentId: 1
  abort:F fail:F start:F timeout:F success:T
  PAE: state: Authenticated - portMode: Auto
  PAE: reAuthCount: 0 - rxRespId: 0
  PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
  BE: state: Idle - reqCount: 0 - idFromServer: 0
  CD: adminControlledDirections: in - operControlledDirections: in
  CD: bridgeDetected: false
  KR: rxKey: false
  KT: keyAvailable: false - keyTxEnabled: false
  criticalState: off
  dynamicVlanId: 2
802.1X statistics for interface port1.0.6
  EAPOL Frames Rx: 5 - EAPOL Frames Tx: 16
  EAPOL Start Frames Rx: 0 - EAPOL Logoff Frames Rx: 0
  EAP Rsp/Id Frames Rx: 3 - EAP Response Frames Rx: 2
  EAP Req/Id Frames Tx: 8 - EAP Request Frames Tx: 2
  Invalid EAPOL Frames Rx: 0 - EAP Length Error Frames Rx: 0
  EAPOL Last Frame Version Rx: 1 - EAPOL Last Frame Src: 00d0.59ab.7037
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
  session user name: manager
  session authentication method: Remote server
  session time: 19440 secs
  session terminate cause: Not terminated yet
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.6
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authEnterConnecting: 2
  authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
  authEnterAuthenticating: 2
  authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
  BackendResponses: 2
  BackendAccessChallenges: 1
  BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
  BackendAuthSuccess: 1
  BackendAuthFails: 0
```

show dot1x diagnostics

This command shows 802.1X authentication diagnostics for the specified interface (optional), which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

If no interface is specified then authentication diagnostics are shown for all interfaces.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x diagnostics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify a port to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) ■ a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.2-1.0.4</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example See the sample output below showing 802.1X authentication diagnostics for `port1.0.5`:

```
awplus# show dot1x diagnostics interface port1.0.5
```

Output **Figure 39-2: Example output from the show dot1x diagnostics command**

```
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.5
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authEnterConnecting: 2
  authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
  authEnterAuthenticating: 2
  authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
  BackendResponses: 2
  BackendAccessChallenges: 1
  BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
  BackendAuthSuccess: 1
```

show dot1x interface

This command shows the status of 802.1X port-based authentication on the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Use the optional **diagnostics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interfaces. Use the optional **sessionstatistics** parameter to show authentication session statistics for the specified interfaces. Use the optional **statistics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interfaces. Use the optional **supplicant** parameter to show the supplicant state for the specified interfaces.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x interface <interface-list> [diagnostics|sessionstatistics|statistics|supplicant [brief]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.3-1.0.5</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>diagnostics</code> | Diagnostics. |
| <code>sessionstatistics</code> | Session Statistics. |
| <code>statistics</code> | Statistics. |
| <code>supplicant</code> | Supplicant. |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples See the sample output below showing 802.1X authentication status for `port1.0.6`:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface port1.0.6
```

Figure 39-3: Example output from the show dot1x interface command for a port

```
awplus#show dot1x interface port1.0.6
Authentication info for interface port1.0.6
  portEnabled: true - portControl: Auto
  portStatus: Authorized
  reAuthenticate: disabled
  reAuthPeriod: 3600
  PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
  PAE: connectTimeout: 30
  BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
  CD: adminControlledDirections: in
  KT: keyTxEnabled: false
  critical: disabled
  guestVlan: disabled
  dynamicVlanCreation: single-dynamic-vlan
    assignFailActionRule: deny
  hostMode: multi-supPLICANT
    maxSupPLICANT: 1024
  dot1x: enabled
    protocolVersion: 1
  authMac: enabled
    method: PAP
    reauthRelearning: disabled
  authWeb: enabled
    method: PAP
    lockCount: 3
    packetForwarding: disabled
  twoStepAuthentication:
    configured: enabled
    actual: enabled
  supplicantMac: none
```

See the sample output below showing 802.1X authentication session statistics for port1.0.6:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface port1.0.6 sessionstatistics
```

```
awplus#show dot1x interface port1.0.6 sessionstatistics
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
  session user name: manager
  session authentication method: Remote server
  session time: 19440 secs
  session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

See sample output below showing 802.1X authentication diagnostics for port1.0.6:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface port1.0.6 diagnostics
```

```
awplus#show dot1x interface port1.0.6 diagnostics
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.6
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
    authEnterConnecting: 2
    authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
    authEnterAuthenticating: 2
    authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
  BackendResponses: 2
  BackendAccessChallenges: 1
  BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
  BackendAuthSuccess: 1
```

See sample output below showing the supplicant on the interface port1.0.6:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface port1.0.6 supplicant
```

```
awplus#show dot1x interface port1.0.6 supplicant
authenticationMethod: dot1x
  totalSupplicantNum: 1
  authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
    macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
    dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
    webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
  Supplicant name: manager
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authenticationMethod: dot1x
  portStatus: Authorized - currentId: 4
  abort:F fail:F start:F timeout:F success:T
  PAE: state: Authenticated - portMode: Auto
  PAE: reAuthCount: 0 - rxRespId: 0
  PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
  BE: state: Idle - reqCount: 0 - idFromServer: 3
  BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
  CD: adminControlledDirections: in - operControlledDirections:
in
  CD: bridgeDetected: false
  KR: rxKey: false
  KT: keyAvailable: false - keyTxEnabled: false
```

See sample output below showing 802.1X (dot1x) authentication statistics for port1.0.6:

```
awplus# show dot1x statistics interface port1.0.6
```

```
awplus#show dot1x statistics interface port1.0.6
802.1X statistics for interface port1.0.6
EAPOL Frames Rx: 5 - EAPOL Frames Tx: 16
EAPOL Start Frames Rx: 0 - EAPOL Logoff Frames Rx: 0
EAP Rsp/Id Frames Rx: 3 - EAP Response Frames Rx: 2
EAP Req/Id Frames Tx: 8 - EAP Request Frames Tx: 2
Invalid EAPOL Frames Rx: 0 - EAP Length Error Frames Rx: 0
EAPOL Last Frame Version Rx: 1 - EAPOL Last Frame
Src:00d0.59ab.7037
```

Table 39-1: Parameters in the output of the show dot1x interface command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| portEnabled | Interface operational status (Up=true/down=false). |
| portControl | Current control status of the port for 802.1X control. |
| portStatus | 802.1X status of the port (authorized/unauthorized). |
| reAuthenticate | Reauthentication enabled/disabled status on port. |
| reAuthPeriod | Value holds meaning only if reauthentication is enabled. |
| abort | Indicates that authentication should be aborted when set to true. |
| fail | Indicates failed authentication attempt when set to false. |
| start | Indicates authentication should be started when set to true. |
| timeout | Indicates authentication attempt timed out when set to true. |
| success | Indicates authentication successful when set to true. |
| state | Current 802.1X operational state of interface. |
| mode | Configured 802.1X mode. |
| reAuthCount | Reauthentication count. |
| quietperiod | Time between reauthentication attempts. |
| reAuthMax | Maximum reauthentication attempts. |
| BE | Backend authentication state machine variables and constants. |
| state | State of the state machine. |
| reqCount | Count of requests sent to server. |
| suppTimeout | Supplicant timeout. |
| serverTimeout | Server timeout. |
| maxReq | Maximum requests to be sent. |
| CD | Controlled Directions State machine. |

Table 39-1: Parameters in the output of the show dot1x interface command (cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| adminControlledDirections | Administrative value (Both/In). |
| operControlledDirections | Operational Value (Both/In). |
| KR | Key receive state machine. |
| rxKey | True when EAPOL-Key message is received by supplicant or authenticator. false when key is transmitted. |
| KT | Ket Transmit State machine. |
| keyAvailable | False when key has been transmitted by authenticator, true when new key is available for key exchange. |
| keyTxEnabled | Key transmission enabled/disabled status. |

Related Commands

- [show auth-web diagnostics](#)
- [show dot1x sessionstatistics](#)
- [show dot1x statistics interface](#)
- [show dot1x supplicant interface](#)

show dot1x sessionstatistics

This command shows authentication session statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x sessionstatistics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| interface | Specify a port to show. |
| <interface-list> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface (e.g. vlan2), a switch port (e.g. port1.0.6), a static channel group (e.g. sa2) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2) ■ a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. vlan2-8, or port1.0.1-1.0.4, or sa1-2, or po1-2 ■ a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example See sample output below showing 802.1X (dot1x) authentication session statistics for port1.0.6:

```
awplus# show dot1x sessionstatistics interface port1.0.6
```

```
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
session user name: manager
session authentication method: Remote server
session time: 19440 secs
session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

show dot1x statistics interface

This command shows the authentication statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x statistics interface <interface-list>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example See sample output below showing 802.1X authentication statistics for `port1.0.6`:

```
awplus# show dot1x statistics interface port1.0.6
```

```
802.1X statistics for interface
EAPOL Frames Rx: 5 - EAPOL Frames Tx: 16
EAPOL Start Frames Rx: 0 - EAPOL Logoff Frames Rx: 0
EAP Rsp/Id Frames Rx: 3 - EAP Response Frames Rx: 2
EAP Req/Id Frames Tx: 8 - EAP Request Frames Tx: 2
Invalid EAPOL Frames Rx: 0 - EAP Length Error Frames Rx: 0
EAPOL Last Frame Version Rx: 1 - EAPOL Last Frame
Src:00d0.59ab.7037
```

show dot1x supplicant

This command shows the supplicant state of the authentication mode set for the switch.

This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x supplicant [<macadd>] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <macadd> | MAC (hardware) address of the Supplicant. |
| brief | Brief summary of the Supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example See sample output below showing the 802.1X authenticated supplicant on the switch:

```
awplus# show dot1x supplicant
```

```
authenticationMethod: dot1x
totalSupplicantNum: 1
authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
Supplicant name: manager
Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authenticationMethod: dot1x
    Two-Step Authentication:
      firstAuthentication: Pass - Method: mac
      secondAuthentication: Pass - Method: dot1x
portStatus: Authorized - currentId: 4
abort:F fail:F start:F timeout:F success:T
PAE: state: Authenticated - portMode: Auto
PAE: reAuthCount: 0 - rxRespId: 0
PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
BE: state: Idle - reqCount: 0 - idFromServer: 3
BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
CD: adminControlledDirections: in - operControlledDirections: in
CD: bridgeDetected: false
KR: rxKey: false
KT: keyAvailable: false - keyTxEnabled: false
```

See sample output below showing the supplicant on the switch using the `brief` parameter:

```
awplus# show dot1x supplicant 00d0.59ab.7037 brief
```

```
Interface port1.0.6
 authenticationMethod: dot1x
 totalSupplicantNum: 1
 authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
   macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
   dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
   webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
Interface   VID Mode MAC Address      Status           IP Address      Username
=====   ==  ==  =====           =====           =====           =====
port1.0.6   2  D    00d0.59ab.7037   Authenticated   192.168.2.201   manager
```

See sample output below showing the supplicant on the switch using the `brief` parameter:

```
awplus# show dot1x supplicant brief
```

For example, if two-step authentication is configured with 802.1X authentication as the first method and web authentication as the second method then the output is as follows:

```
Interface port1.0.6
 authenticationMethod: dot1x/web
 Two-Step Authentication
   firstMethod: dot1x
   secondMethod: web
 totalSupplicantNum: 1
 authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
   macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
   dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
   webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
   otherAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0

Interface   VID Mode MAC Address      Status           IP Address      Username
=====   ==  ==  =====           =====           =====           =====
port1.0.6   5  W    0008.0d5e.c216   Authenticated   192.168.1.200   web
```

Related Commands [show dot1x supplicant interface](#)

show dot1x supplicant interface

This command shows the supplicant state of the authentication mode set for the interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show dot1x supplicant interface <interface-list> [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) ■ a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of the Supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples See sample output below showing the supplicant on the interface `port1.0.6`:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface port1.0.6
```

```

Interface port1.0.6
 authenticationMethod: dot1x
  totalSupplicantNum: 1
  authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
    macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
    dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
    webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
    otherAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0

Supplicant name: VCSPCVLAN10
Supplicant address: 0000.cd07.7b60
 authenticationMethod: 802.1X
Two-Step Authentication:
 firstAuthentication: Pass - Method: mac
 secondAuthentication: Pass - Method: dot1x
 portStatus: Authorized - currentId: 3
 abort:F fail:F start:F timeout:F success:T
 PAE: state: Authenticated - portMode: Auto
 PAE: reAuthCount: 0 - rxRespId: 0
 PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2
 BE: state: Idle - reqCount: 0 - idFromServer: 2
 CD: adminControlledDirections:in -
 operControlledDirections:in
   CD: bridgeDetected: false
   KR: rxKey: false
   KT: keyAvailable: false - keyTxEnabled: false
    
```

See sample output below showing the supplicant on the switch using the `brief` parameter:

```
awplus# show dot1x supplicant interface brief
```

```

Interface port1.0.6
 authenticationMethod: dot1x
Two-Step Authentication:
 firstMethod: mac
 secondMethod: dot1x
 totalSupplicantNum: 1
 authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
 macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
 dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
 webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0

Interface   VID   Mode  MAC Address      Status           IP Address      Username
=====   ===   ====  =====
port1.0.6   2     D     00d0.59ab.7037  Authenticated   192.168.2.201  manager
    
```

See the sample output below for static channel group (static aggregator) interface sa1:

```
awplus# show dot1x interface sa1 supplicant brief
```

```
awplus#show dot1x interface sa1 supplicant brief
Interface sa1
  authenticationMethod: dot1x
Two-Step Authentication:
  firstMethod: mac
  secondMethod: dot1x
  totalSupplicantNum: 1
  authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
    macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
    dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
    webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
    otherAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
```

| Interface | VID | Mode | MAC Address | Status | IP Address | Username |
|-----------|-----|------|----------------|---------------|------------|----------|
| sa1 | 1 | D | 00d0.59ab.7037 | Authenticated | -- | test1 |

Related Commands [show dot1x supplicant](#)

undebg dot1x

This command applies the functionality of the [no debug dot1x](#) command on page 39.2.

Chapter 40: Authentication Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| Authentication Introduction | 40.2 |
| Configuring a Guest VLAN | 40.2 |
| 802.1X-Authentication | 40.3 |
| Web-Authentication | 40.4 |
| What is Web-Authentication? | 40.4 |
| Web-Authentication Basics | 40.4 |
| Configuring Web-Authentication | 40.6 |
| Starting a Web-Authentication Session | 40.8 |
| Support for Protocols Underlying Web-Authentication | 40.10 |
| Web-Authentication Timeout Connect | 40.14 |
| Web Authorization Proxy | 40.14 |
| MAC-Authentication | 40.15 |
| Why is MAC-Authentication Required? | 40.15 |
| How Does MAC-Authentication Work? | 40.15 |
| Configuring MAC-Authentication | 40.16 |
| Tri-Authentication | 40.17 |
| Tri-Authentication Configuration | 40.18 |
| Two-Step Authentication | 40.19 |
| Ensuring Authentication Methods Require Different Usernames and Passwords | 40.20 |
| Roaming Authentication | 40.21 |
| Roaming Authentication Overview | 40.22 |
| Roaming Authentication Feature Interactions | 40.22 |
| Unauthenticated Supplicant Traffic | 40.23 |
| Deciding When a Supplicant Fails Authentication | 40.25 |
| Failed Authentication VLAN | 40.26 |
| Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations | 40.26 |

Authentication Introduction

Authentication commands enable you to specify three different types of device authentication: 802.1X-Authentication, Web-Authentication, and MAC-Authentication.

802.1X is an IEEE standard providing a mechanism for authenticating devices attached to a LAN port or wireless device. Web-Authentication is applicable to devices that have a human user who opens the web browser and types in a user name and password when requested. MAC-Authentication is used to authenticate devices that have neither a human user nor implement 802.1X supplicant when making a network connection request.

Configuring a Guest VLAN

In a secure network, the default behavior is to deny any access to supplicants that cannot be authenticated. However, it is often convenient to allow unauthenticated users to have limited access. A popular solution is to define a limited-access VLAN, called the Guest VLAN, and assign unauthenticated users into that VLAN. Unauthenticated supplicants are either supplicants who have attempted and failed authentication or haven't performed any authentication.

See the [auth guest-vlan command on page 41.8](#) for command information about Guest VLAN.

By default, traffic from unauthenticated supplicants in the Guest VLAN will only be L2 switched within the Guest VLAN. But, if the **routing** parameter for the **auth guest vlan** command is configured, then the switch will route unauthenticated supplicants' traffic to other VLANs if required, and will relay their DHCP requests to servers in other VLANs if required.

You can configure 802.1X to accept a Dynamic VLAN assignment, or fall back to a Guest VLAN upon failure.

To configure a switch to perform 802.1X-Authentication, and assign VLAN IDs to ports where devices authentication successfully, and put non-authenticated users into a Guest VLAN, proceed as follows:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host <ip-address> key
                    <key-string>
awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group
                    radius
awplus(config)# interface <interface-range>
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
awplus(config-if)# auth guest-vlan 100
```

802.1X-Authentication

802.1X is an IEEE standard providing a mechanism for authenticating devices attached to a LAN port or wireless device. Devices wishing to access services behind a port must authenticate themselves before any Ethernet packets are allowed to pass through. The protocol is referred to as 802.1X because it was initially defined in the IEEE standard 802.1X, published in 2001 and revised in 2004 and again as the current 802.1X 2010 standard.

For more information about 802.1X, see [Chapter 38, 802.1X Introduction and Configuration](#).

Web-Authentication

What is Web-Authentication?

Web-Authentication is a convenient alternative to 802.1X-Authentication. It's commonly used to authenticate users in educational institutions, where regular users' workstations are not managed by the network administrator. Web-Authentication enables the switch to detect an unauthenticated workstation web browsing into the network, then redirect the user's web browser to its own authentication web page.

Web-Authentication works like this:

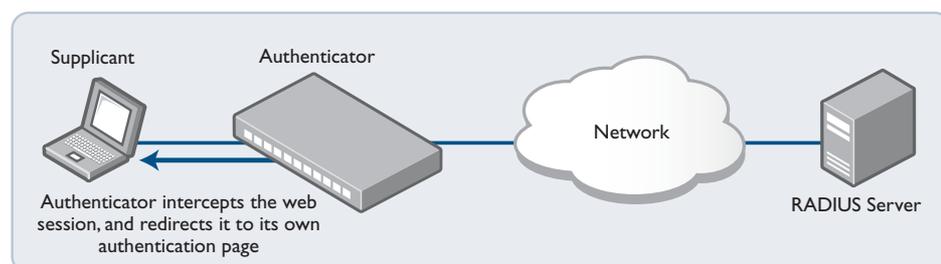
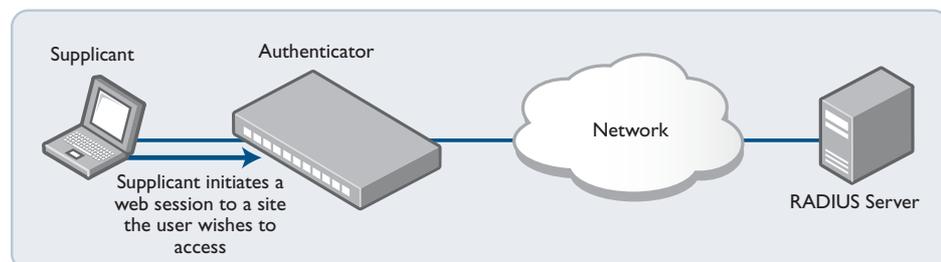
- The user enters their username and password into the web page, which the switch then sends to a RADIUS server for checking.
- If the RADIUS server accepts the user's credentials, the switch then allows their traffic into the network.

The Web-authenticating switch interacts with a RADIUS server in the same way as an 802.1X authenticator. The two methods can be used together in the same network, using the same RADIUS server.

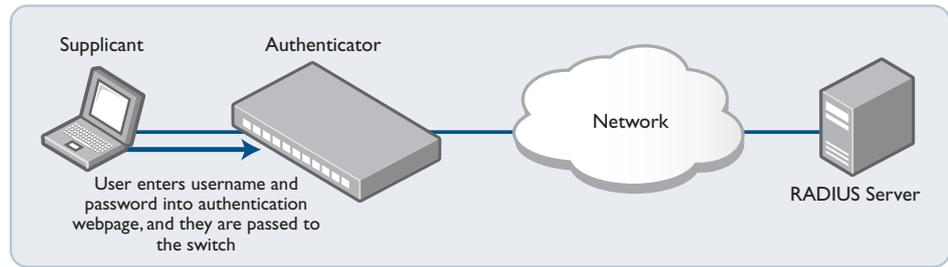
Web-Authentication Basics

The operation of Web-Authentication is explained as below:

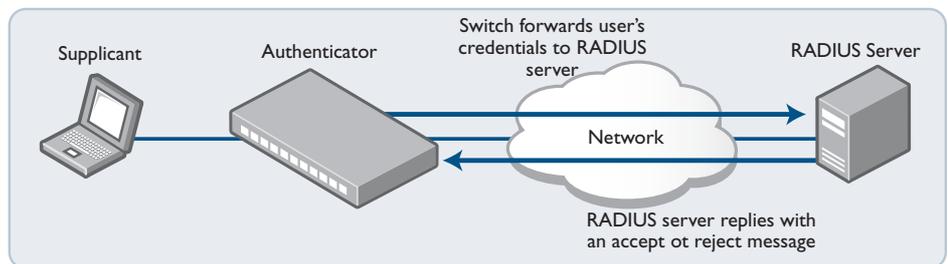
1. The authenticating switch receives HTTP or HTTPS traffic from an unauthenticated supplicant. It intercepts the supplicant's web session and redirects it to its own internal web server.



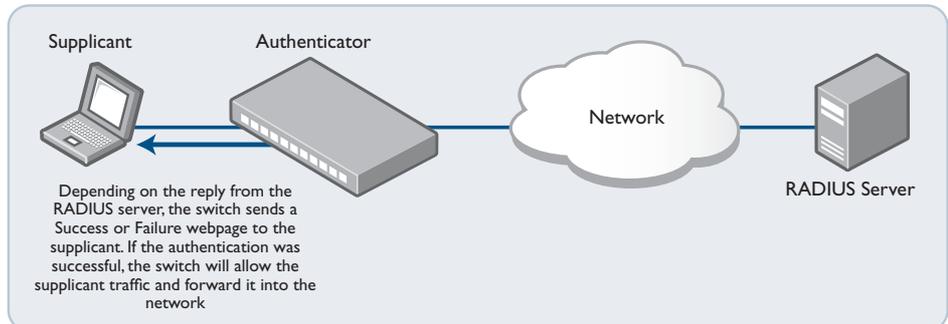
- The web server serves up an authentication page on which the user enters their username and password.



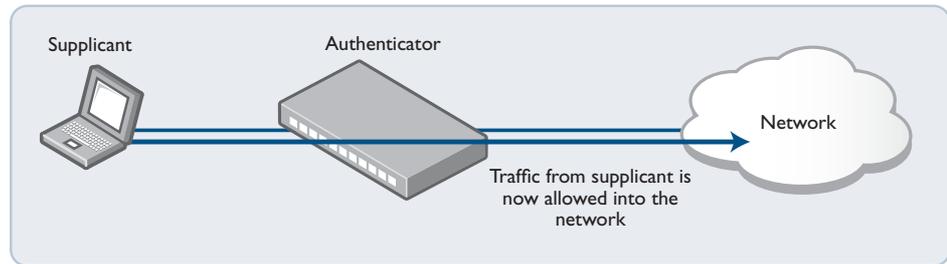
- The username and password are sent to a RADIUS server, which informs the authenticating switch whether or not the supplicant is authenticated.



- The user is then informed of the RADIUS server's verdict.



5. If the supplicant has been successfully authenticated, the authenticating switch will give the supplicant workstation access to the network.



Configuring Web-Authentication

Web-Authentication can be configured on a switch in the following steps:

1. Configure a RADIUS server.

```
awplus(config)# radius-server host <server-ip-address> key
<shared-secret>
```

2. Instruct Web-Authentication to use the configured RADIUS server.

```
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-web default group
radius
```

3. Define the IP address through which the Web-Authentication service will be accessed.

```
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ipaddress <ip-address>
```

4. Configure ports for Web-Authentication.

```
awplus# interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
awplus(config)# auth-web enable
```

Choosing the Web-Authentication server address

When you come to configure Web-Authentication, you need to answer some questions:

Questions What IP address should I specify as the Web-Authentication server address? Is it okay to use just any IP address that is configured on one of the switch's VLANs, or is the choice more constrained than that?

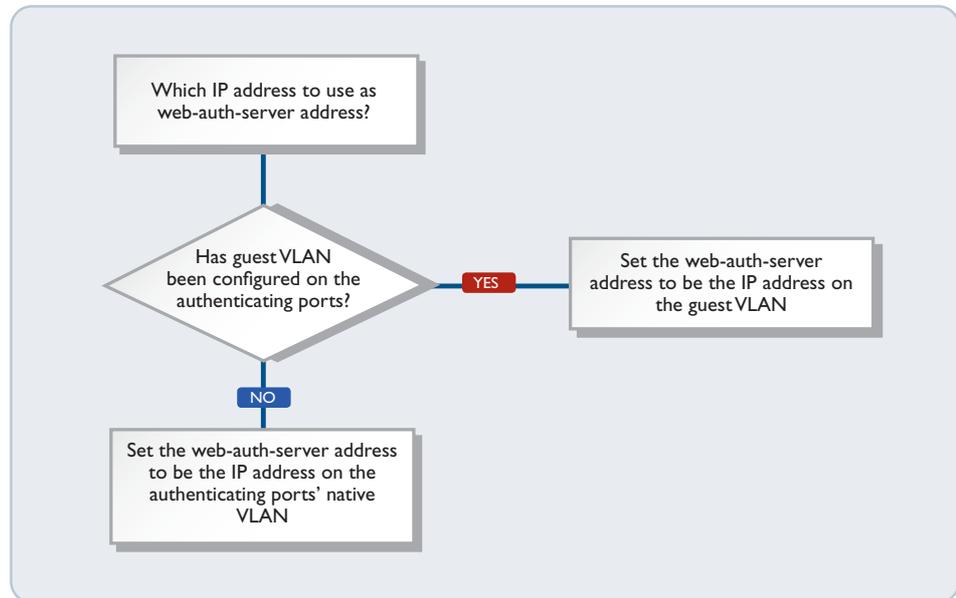
Answer You must use the IP address that is configured on the VLAN that the supplicant's packets will arrive on.

The logic that the switch uses in deciding which VLAN to associate non-authenticated supplicants' packets with is:

- If guest VLAN has been configured on the port where the packet arrives, then associate the packet with the guest VLAN.
- Otherwise associate the packet with the port's native VLAN.

If you configure the supplicant-connected ports with guest VLAN, then use the IP address on the guest VLAN as the IP address of the Web-Authentication server. Otherwise use the IP address on the supplicant-connected ports' native VLAN.

The diagram below illustrates how to decide which IP address to use as the Web-auth-server address:



Configuration Example 1: Using a guest VLAN

```

VLAN database
VLAN 20 name guest
VLAN 10 name edge
VLAN 30 name core

radius-server host 192.168.30.129 key verysecret
aaa authentication auth-Web default group RADIUS
auth-Web-server ipaddress 192.168.20.1

int vlan10
 ip address 192.168.10.1/24
int vlan20
 ip address 192.168.20.1/24
int vlan30
 ip address 192.168.30.1/24

int port1.0.1-1.0.3
 switchport access vlan 10
 auth-Web enable
 auth guest-vlan 20

int port1.0.4-1.0.6
 switchport access vlan 30
    
```

Configuration Example 2: Not using a guest VLAN

```
VLAN database
  VLAN 10 name edge
  VLAN 30 name core

radius-server host 192.168.30.129 key verysecret
aaa authentication auth-web default group radius
auth-web-server ipaddress 192.168.10.1

int vlan10
  ip address 192.168.10.1/24
int vlan30
  ip address 192.168.30.1/24

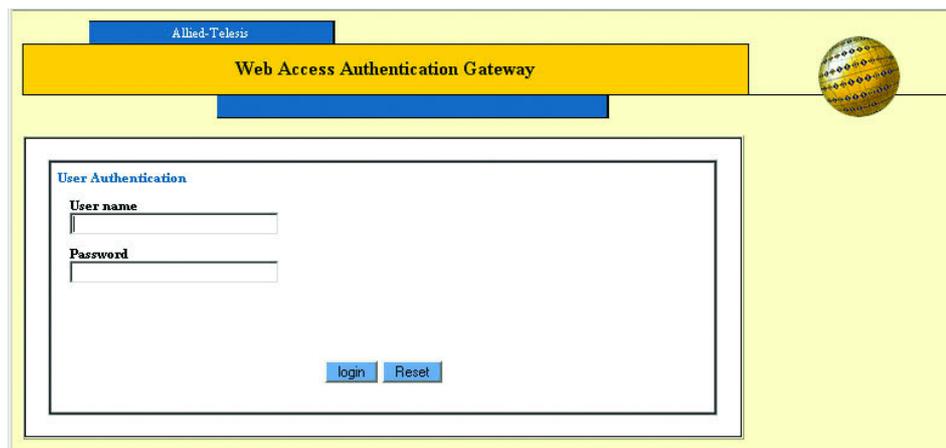
int port1.0.1-1.0.3
  switchport access vlan 10
  auth-Web enable

int port1.0.4-1.0.6
  switchport access vlan 30
```

Starting a Web-Authentication Session

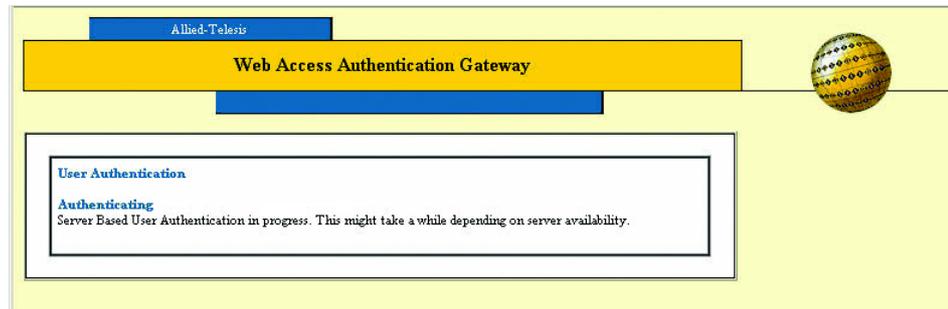
This section explains what the user actually sees in a Web-Authentication session:

1. The user starts their Web browser, and browses to a page they wish to view. Shortly thereafter, the address in the browser's address bar automatically changes to the address of the authenticating switch's authentication page.
2. In the switch's authentication page, the user enters their user name and password, and clicks **login**. The maximum length of the user name and password is 64 characters. The local RADIUS server has a password length limit of 31 characters.

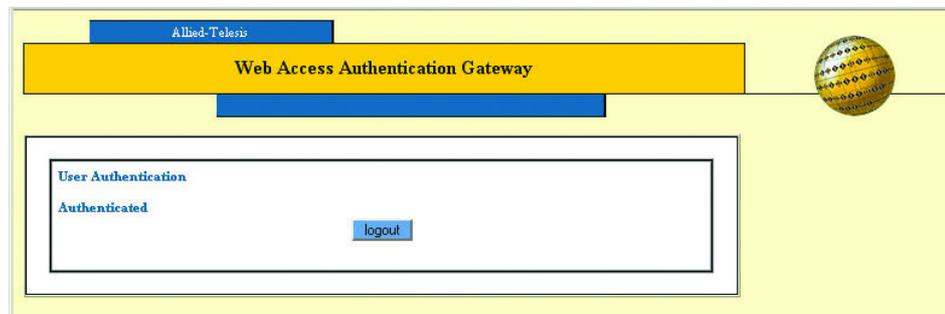


The screenshot shows a web browser window displaying the 'Web Access Authentication Gateway' page. The page has a yellow background and a blue header with the Allied Telesis logo. The main content area is titled 'Web Access Authentication Gateway' and contains a 'User Authentication' form. The form has two input fields: 'User name' and 'Password'. Below the fields are two buttons: 'login' and 'Reset'.

3. The switch displays a page that informs them that authentication is in progress.

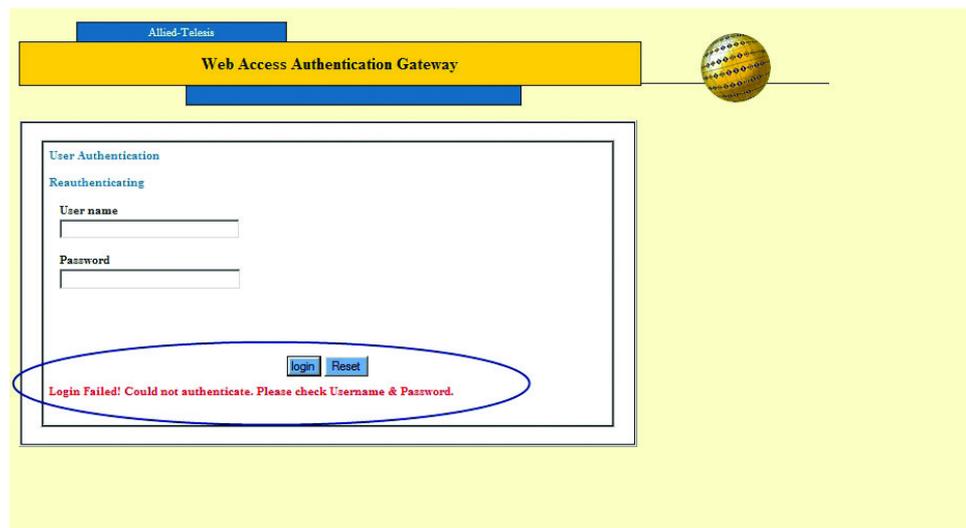


4. Once authentication is complete, the authentication result is displayed.



If the user enters a username/password combination that is not accepted by the RADIUS server, the switch presents an invitation to check the username and password.

If the user enters incorrect usernames/passwords several times, the authentication fails. The number of times a user can try to login is configurable but it is set to 3 by default.



Support for Protocols Underlying Web-Authentication

Web-Authentication does not use a dedicated protocol like 802.1X, with a standards-defined set of messages for authentication conversation. Instead, the switch overlays the Web-Authentication process on top of the web browser communication process. The browser communication process was not designed for authentication and is itself reliant on IP addressing, ARP, and DNS.

The authentication needs to occur in a seamless manner for all users, irrespective of their IP and DNS setting, and before they have full access to the network.

To make this possible, the switch needs to provide facilities that enable the user's PC to access the authentication web page.

Following features of Web-Authentication work together to achieve this.

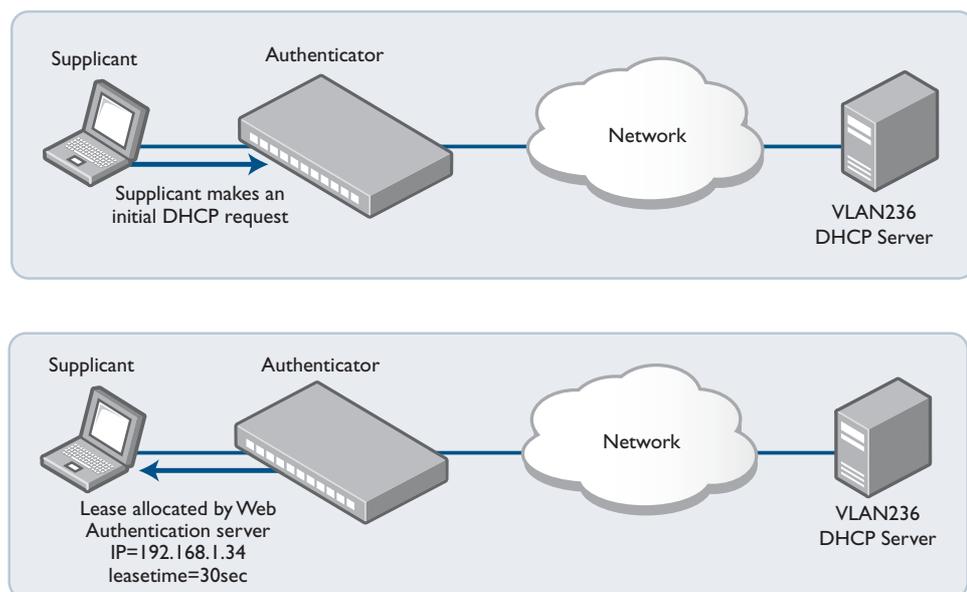
- DHCP server for Web-Authentication
- Interception of clients' ARPs
- Proxy DNS response

DHCP server for Web-Authentication

To initiate a web browsing session, the supplicant needs an IP address. If the supplicant has been configured to obtain its IP address by DHCP, then the authenticating switch needs to ensure that the supplicant will be served an IP address.

The simplest way to achieve this, is to have the Web-Authentication process itself act as a DHCP server. This avoids forwarding the supplicant's DHCP request to any other DHCP server. Therefore, there is a DHCP server built in to Web-Authentication.

This DHCP server is dedicated to serving IP addresses to be used by Web-Authentication clients.



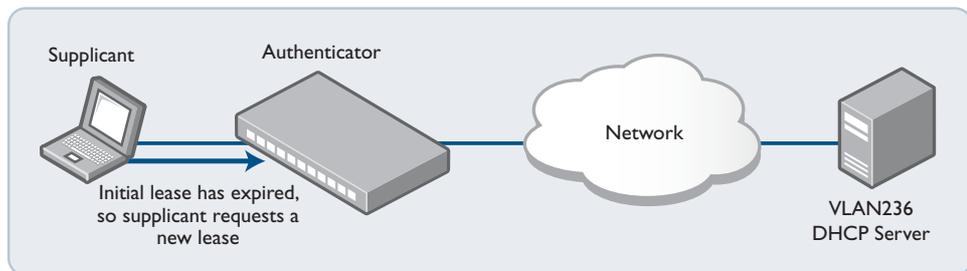
This DHCP service is configured by the command:

```
awplus(config)# auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress <ip-address/
prefix-length>
```

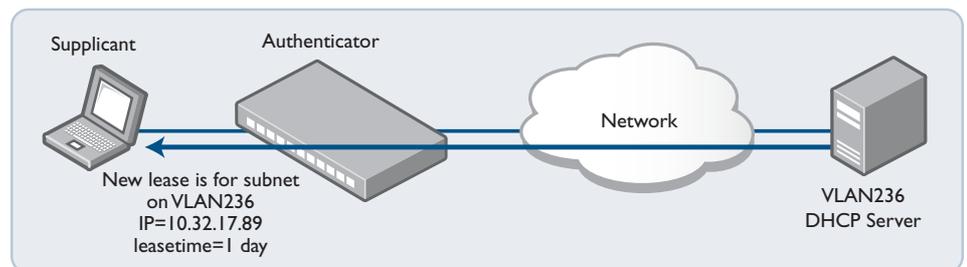
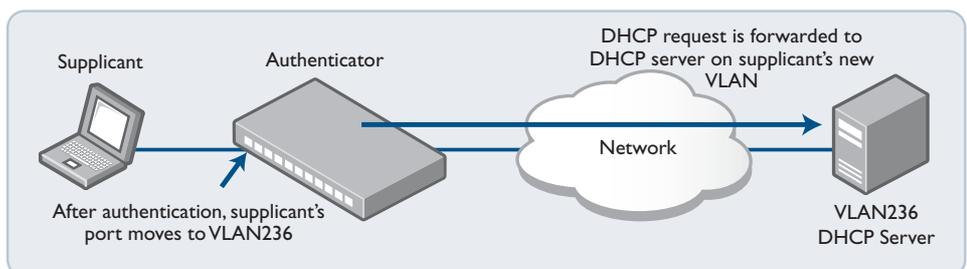
See the [auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress](#) command on page 41.38 and the [auth-web-server dhcp lease](#) command on page 41.39 for details about configuring the Web-Authentication DHCP Server.

How can we force the supplicant to request a new DHCP lease after the completion of the authentication process? There is no mechanism by which the supplicant's web browser signals down to the DHCP client process to say "I've just completed an authentication session, so you need to request a new DHCP lease".

The solution is to ensure that the lease allocated by the dedicated Web-Authentication DHCP service is of a very short duration. This way the lease will expire within a short time from the completion of the authentication process, resulting in the supplicant requesting a new lease.



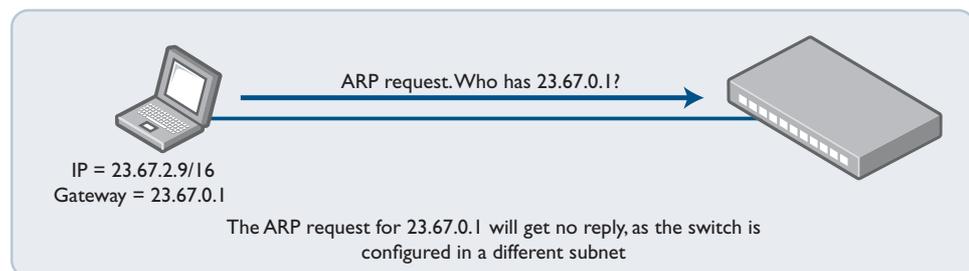
This new request will now be serviced by the DHCP server on the supplicant's new VLAN.



Interception of clients' ARPs

If the supplicant has been configured with a static IP address, then it is more than likely that the supplicant's IP configuration bears no relation to the Web-Authentication server address. A computer's IP communications will always be preceded by sending out ARP requests for host addresses in its local subnet, or for its gateway address.

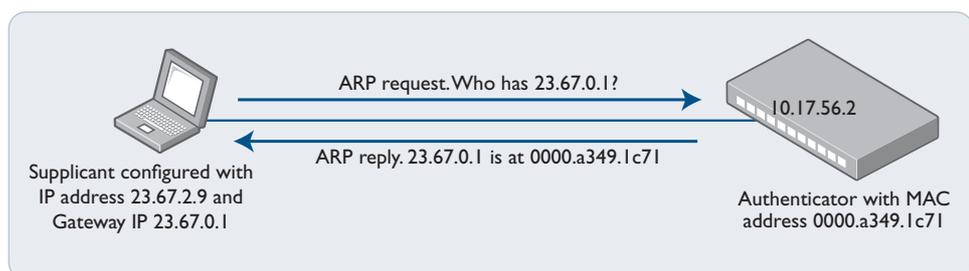
If the IP address and gateway address have been statically configured on the computer, and the subnet used in this static configuration is different to that on the authenticating switch, then the ARP requests will receive no reply, and the PC will not begin IP communication.



To deal with any arbitrary IP configuration on the supplicants, Web-Authentication needs a method for replying to arbitrary ARP requests. This is the ARP interception feature.

ARP interception can operate in three modes.

1. **Intercept** – will respond to ARP requests for any IP address that is in the same subnet as the switch's own IP address. Will provide its own MAC address in the ARP reply, irrespective of what IP address (within its own subnet) was being requested.
2. **None** – will only respond to ARP requests for its own IP address.
3. **Promiscuous** – will respond to **any** ARP request. Will provide its own MAC address in the ARP reply, irrespective of what IP address was being requested. When this mode is configured, the Web-Authentication server can interoperate with **any** static IP configuration on a supplicant.



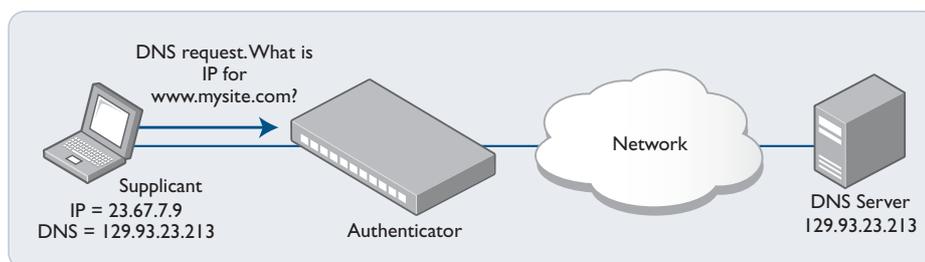
In promiscuous mode, the switch will send its own MAC address in response to an ARP request for ANY address, no matter whether the requested address bears any relation to the switch's own IP address on the interface where the ARP is received.

See the [auth-web-server mode](#) command on page 41.45 for command information about setting the Web-Authentication mode.

Proxy DNS response

Typically, an HTTP session from a web browser is preceded by a DNS request for the IP address of the web site the user wishes to browse to. If the DNS request receives no reply, the web browser will never progress on to connecting an HTTP session.

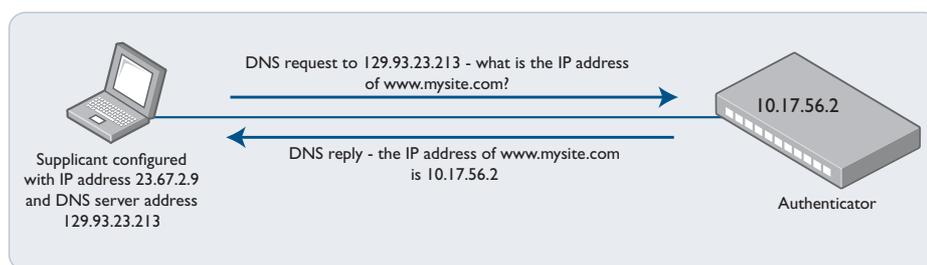
The Web-Authentication server needs a mechanism to reply to DNS requests, so that the Web-Authentication session can begin.



A web browser must request a DNS Server for the IP address corresponding to a URL. But the switch will not forward the request if the supplicant is not yet authenticated

The three modes listed also control the operation of the proxy DNS replies.

1. **Intercept** – responds to DNS requests whose source IP address is within the same subnet as the IP address on the switch. The IP address provided as the resolution of the DNS lookup is the switch’s own IP address, so that the subsequent HTTP traffic will be directed to the switch.
2. **None** – the default. Does not respond to DNS requests.
3. **Promiscuous** – responds to DNS requests from any source IP address. The IP address provided as the resolution of the DNS lookup is the switch’s own IP address, so that the subsequent HTTP traffic will be directed to the switch.



In promiscuous mode, the switch will reply to ANY DNS request from an authenticated supplicant, regardless of whether the destination IP address of the DNS server bears any relation to the switch’s own IP address. The DNS reply from the switch will always specify its own IP address as the URL that was being requested.

See the [auth-web-server mode](#) command on page 41.45 for command information about setting the Web-Authentication mode.

You can use the parameter `<ip-address>` of the [auth-web forward](#) command to specify a server for the switch to send packets from the supplicant to, for example DNS packets. For more information and an example, see the “Forwarding DNS packets using Auth-web forward command” section in the [AlliedWare Plus Technical Tips and Tricks](#).

Web-Authentication Timeout Connect

The command **auth timeout connect-timeout** allows you to increase the connection period for a supplicant's interface port.

The default timeout period is 30 seconds, but this command allows the timeout period to be set from 1 second to 65535 seconds. When **auth-web-server session-keep** or **auth two-step enable** is enabled, it is recommended to configure a longer connect-timeout period.

Web Authorization Proxy

Without this feature, AlliedWare Plus Web-Authentication intercepts a supplicant's initial TCP port 80 connection to a web page and sends it to the Web-Authentication Login page. However, if the supplicant is configured to use a web proxy, then it will usually be using TCP port 8080 (or another user configured port number). In this case Web-Authentication cannot intercept the connection.

To overcome this limitation, use the command **auth-web-server intercept-port**.

When a supplicant is configured to use WPAD (Web Proxy Auto-Discovery) the supplicant's web browser will use TCP port 80 as usual, and so it can be intercepted by Web-Authentication as normal, and the Web-Authentication Login page is sent. However, after authentication, it does not know where to get the WPAD file (usually named proxy.pac) that tells it what its web proxy is and so cannot access external web pages.

You can use the **auth-web-server dhcp-wpad-option** command to tell the supplicant where to find the proxy.pac file. This proxy.pac file contains the URL and/or IP address of the web proxy server that it should use.

For more information and examples, see the "Web Auth Proxy" section in the **Alliedware Plus Technical Tips and Tricks**.

MAC-Authentication

Why is MAC-Authentication Required?

The authentication mechanisms provided by 802.1X and Web-Authentication are powerful and effective. But, they are not universally applicable. Web-Authentication is only applicable to devices that have a human user who opens the web browser and types in a username and password when requested. 802.1X-Authentication is only possible from devices whose software implements an 802.1X supplicant.

There are plenty of network-connected devices, like printers, scanners, fire-alarm monitors and so on, that have neither a human user nor implement an 802.1X supplicant. In a network that ensures all access is authenticated, there needs to be a mechanism for authenticating these devices.

Fortunately, all Ethernet transceivers have a unique identifier—their MAC address. Hence, even without user input of a username and password, any Ethernet device will automatically identify itself simply by virtue of the source MAC address in the packets it sends. The method that has been developed for authenticating these devices uses the MAC address as the identifier, and so is called MAC-based authentication.

How Does MAC-Authentication Work?

In essence, MAC-authentication works little differently from 802.1X or Web-based authentication.

Here are the main steps:

1. The supplicant is connected to the switch.
2. The switch (acting as the authenticator) receives an ID from the supplicant.
3. The switch passes the supplicant's ID to a RADIUS server in an Access-Request packet
4. The RADIUS server returns an Access-Accept or an Access-Deny. The Access-Accept can be accompanied with other attributes, for dynamic VLAN assignment.

The unique aspects of MAC-Authentication are in steps 2 and 3.

MAC-Authentication does not involve a process whereby the switch sends an ID request to the supplicant. The switch receives the ID from the supplicant by simply looking at the source MAC in the packets being sent from the supplicant.

The MAC address of the supplicant is a single identifier. But a RADIUS access-request requires both a username and a password. The workaround employed by MAC-Authentication is simply to use the MAC address as both username and password.

The switch extracts the source MAC address from the supplicant's packets and puts it into a string of the form xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx, using lower-case letters for any hex digits in the range a-f. This string is then used as both the username and the password in the RADIUS access-request packet. The supplicant MAC address is also sent in the attribute 31 "calling-station-id" as usual.

Configuring MAC-Authentication

Under AlliedWare Plus, there are two steps to setting up MAC-Authentication.

1. Define the authentication method list that is used for MAC-Authentication.

There is only one method list that can be created for MAC-Authentication—the default method list. Moreover, the only authentication server type that can be used is RADIUS.

The command for defining the method list is:

```
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-mac default group
radius
```

2. Enable MAC-Authentication on the ports that are to perform this authentication:

```
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config)# auth-mac enable
awplus(config)# spanning-tree edgeport
```

On the RADIUS server, it is necessary to create user entries where both the username and password are the MAC address of the supplicant, in the form xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx.

For example, on the AlliedWare Plus local RADIUS server, the configuration is:

```
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
password xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx
```

The supplicant requires no configuration, as the whole purpose of MAC-Authentication is to authenticate devices that cannot be configured for authentication.

It is also possible to configure the authentication protocol that the switch uses in its interaction with the RADIUS server. There are two choices of protocol: EAP-MD5 and PAP. The default method is PAP, and can be changed by using the command:

```
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac method [eap-md5|pap]
```

Tri-Authentication

The switch supports three types of authentication for devices that connect to switch ports.

- 802.1X-Authentication of devices connecting to switch ports
- MAC-Authentication of devices connecting to switch ports
- Web-Authentication of devices connecting to switch ports

All three types can be configured to run simultaneously on a switch port. The simultaneous configuration and authentication of all three types on a port is called tri-authentication.

Tri-Authentication Configuration

Follow the below three steps to configure tri-authentication across a range of switch ports:

Step 1: Define the RADIUS Server:

Define the RADIUS Server where the switch will send authentication requests by using the below commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host <ip-address> key
                    <key-string>
```

These commands add the RADIUS Server address and set parameters to the RADIUS server. The key parameter specifies the secret key for the server.

 **Note** The RADIUS Server, where the switch sends authentication requests, can be the switch's own Local RADIUS Server. For information on how to configure Local RADIUS Server see [Chapter 48, Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration](#).

Step 2: Define the default authentication server lists:

Define the default authentication server lists for 802.1X-Authentication, Web-Authentication, and MAC-Authentication:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-web default group
                    radius
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-mac default group
                    radius
```

Step 3: Enable 802.1X-Authentication, Web-Authentication, and MAC-Authentication:

Follow the instructions below to enable 802.1X-Authentication, Web-Authentication, and MAC-Authentication on switch ports to attach supplicant devices. This authenticates the supplicant if any of the three methods that the supplicant tries work, depending on the auth-fail VLAN settings. After enabling the authentication, refer to earlier chapters to configure VLAN, IP address and other authentication configurations for the authentication type you want.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface <interface-range>
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# switchport access vlan 1
awplus(config-if)# auth-web enable
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac enable
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
```

Two-Step Authentication

The single step authentication methods (either user or device authentication) have a potential security risk:

- an unauthorized user can access the network with an authorized device
- an authorized user can access the network with an unauthorized device

Two-step authentication solves this problem by authenticating both the user and the device. The supplicant will only become authenticated if both these steps are successful. If the first authentication step fails, then the second step is not started.

The following authentication sequences are supported for two-step authentication:

MAC-Authentication followed by 802.1X-Authentication

MAC-Authentication followed by Web-Authentication

802.1X-Authentication followed by Web-Authentication.

To configure two-step authentication:

1. Configure the first authentication method.
2. Configure the second authentication method.
3. Specify the command **auth two-step enable**.
4. Make sure that both authentication steps require different authentication credentials. See **“Ensuring Authentication Methods Require Different Usernames and Passwords” on page 40.20**.

For more information and examples, see the “Two-step authentication” section in the **AlliedWare Plus Technical Tips and Tricks**.

Ensuring Authentication Methods Require Different Usernames and Passwords

If you configure a user or device to use multiple authentication methods, you need to set up your system to avoid a potential vulnerability.

The vulnerability occurs because there is no way for a RADIUS server to determine what authentication method you are using. Authentication simply queries a RADIUS server to see whether a username/password pair is valid.

This means that if you use the same RADIUS server for multiple authentication methods, a user can enter the *same* username/password pair for each of these authentication methods. If that username/password pair is valid for one of the methods, it will work for all of them.

This vulnerability is particularly significant for MAC-Authentication, because the default username and password is the MAC address of the supplicant device, which is easy to discover.

For example, if you set up two-step authentication of MAC-Authentication and 802.1X-Authentication, and both use the same RADIUS server, then an attacker does not need to know the 801.1x username and password. Instead, they can pass the 802.1X-Authentication step by entering the device's MAC address into the 802.1X username and password fields.

To avoid this vulnerability:

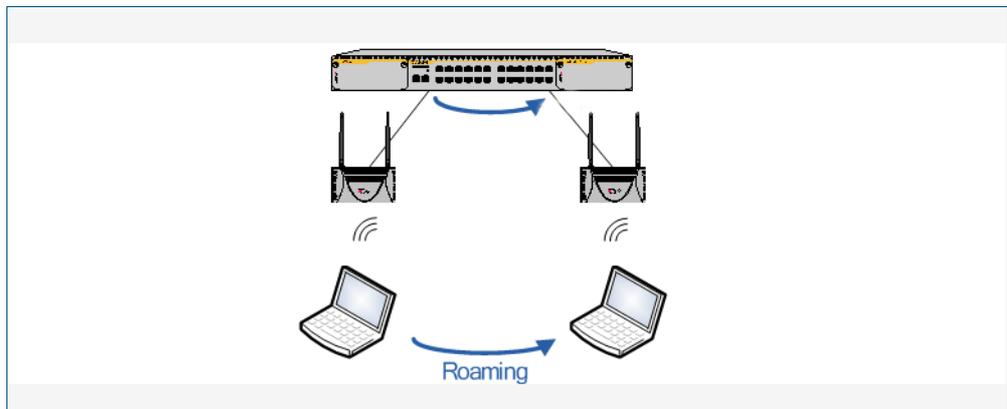
- Use different RADIUS servers for each authentication method, and/or
- Change the default password for MAC-Authentication, by using the **auth-mac password** command on page 41.30.

Roaming Authentication

When network security is required, the usability of network security must be considered. The Roaming Authentication feature improves the usability of network security by enabling users to move within the network without requiring them to re-authenticate each time they move.

If a supplicant (client device) moves from one wireless access point to another wireless access point, and the wireless access points are connected to different ports, then the switch (authenticator) recognizes that the supplicant has been authenticated and accepts the supplicant without requiring re-authentication.

Figure 40-1: Diagram showing Roaming Authentication running on a standalone switch



Web-Authentication and MAC-Authentication are the authentication methods in a Wireless LAN environment, and 802.1X is the authentication method used for supplicants attached to edge switches.

Roaming Authentication is normally enabled using the **auth roaming enable** command on page 41.17 command. However, Roaming Authentication has been extended (with the **auth roaming disconnected** command on page 41.15) to work where an interface is link down. This allows you to enable supplicants to move from authenticated interfaces that are link down, without requiring re-authentication.

Roaming Authentication Overview

If the Roaming Authentication feature is **disabled** and a supplicant moves from one switchport to another, the supplicant's authenticated status, authentication, and assigned VLAN are deleted. The supplicant is re-authenticated at the new switchport so that the network can be accessed. While the supplicant is being re-authenticated, all traffic from the supplicant is dropped.

When the Roaming Authentication feature is **enabled**, a new switch port inherits the status of a supplicant from the switch port that the supplicant moved from. If the Roaming Authentication feature is enabled on a switch, then once a supplicant (client device) is authenticated on the switch it does not have to be re-authenticated if it moves between the ports of that switch. Supplicant traffic is not dropped because there is no delay for re-authentication, during which the supplicant would be unable to access the network.

For example, when the Roaming Authentication feature is used in a wireless LAN environment with wireless access points, the wireless clients can roam between wireless access points connected to different switch ports without re-authentication.

See the [auth roaming disconnected command on page 41.15](#) and the [auth roaming enable command on page 41.17](#) for further information about configuring Roaming Authentication.

Roaming Authentication Feature Interactions

When the Roaming Authentication feature is disabled, a supplicant must be re-authenticated on the destination interface when it roams. When the Roaming Authentication is enabled, the following supplicant authentication status and information is inherited from the source interface:

- Authentication status
- Authentication method
- Supplicant MAC address
- Supplicant IP address
(if an authenticated interface is configured for Web-Authentication)
- Supplicant name
- Authorized dynamic VLAN ID
- Authorized RADIUS server
- Reauthentication timer
(if configured using the [auth timeout reauth-period command on page 41.23](#))

Roaming Authentication is only supported between interfaces with the same authentication configuration. If source and destination interfaces have different authentication configuration then the supplicant will be re-authenticated at the destination interface.

When the host mode is set with the **auth host-mode** command on page 41.10, a supplicant is not authenticated on a destination interface, and the authentication status is deleted on the source interface.

When a supplicant moves from an interface with authentication configured to an interface without authentication configured, the supplicant's authentication status is deleted.

A supplicant is re-authenticated when it moves to a destination interface that is configured on a different VLAN than the VLAN that is configured for the source interface.

See the following Roaming Authentication feature interactions:

- Multiple Dynamic VLANs are supported when configured with the **auth dynamic-vlan-creation** command on page 41.6 using the **multi** parameter. Multiple Dynamic VLANs are disabled by default.
- Supplicants are re-authenticated on the destination interface if the VLAN ID changes when Single Dynamic VLANs are configured with the **auth dynamic-vlan-creation** command on page 41.6 the using the **single** parameter. Single Dynamic VLANs are disabled by default.
- The Roaming Authentication feature is supported on Guest VLANs configured by the **auth guest-vlan** command on page 41.8.

Unauthenticated Supplicant Traffic

When any authentication is configured on a switch port, the question arises as to what the switch does with packets that arrive into the switch port from unauthenticated supplicants.

Unauthenticated supplicants fall into three categories listed below:

- Newly attached supplicants, which are still in the process of their first authentication attempt
- Supplicants that have made an authentication attempt, but have failed authentication
- Supplicants that have been attached, but have not made an authentication attempt. For example, on a port that has only 802.1X-Authentication enabled, any supplicant that has no 802.1X client software will not be able to attempt 802.1X-Authentication.

In switches that are running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System, packets from all these three categories of unauthenticated supplicants are treated equally; no distinction is made between these three categories. The treatment of the traffic from unauthenticated supplicants does, however, depend on two factors:

- Whether a Guest VLAN has been configured on the switch port to which the supplicant is attached
- Whether Web-Authentication has been configured on the switch port to which the supplicant is attached

The rules governing the treatment of packets from unauthenticated supplicants are laid out in the table below:

Table 40-1: Treatment of packets from unauthenticated supplicants

| Switch port configuration | No Guest VLAN configured | No Guest VLAN configured, auth-fail VLAN configured | Guest VLAN configured |
|---|--|---|---|
| Web-Authentication configured | <p>Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are associated with the Native VLAN of the port. Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are processed according to these rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Packets destined to the WebAuth server IP address/TCP port are forwarded to the server (which may well be the switch itself). ■ DHCP packets are sent to the CPU, to be processed by a local DHCP server, or relayed to another DHCP server, depending on the configuration of the switch. ■ DNS packets are forwarded to the CPU, and then sent on to a DNS server, if the switch is configured with a DNS server address. ■ ARP packets are forwarded to the CPU, and an ARP entry for the supplicant is learned. ■ If web-auth forwarding is enabled for particular types of packets, then those packets will be forwarded within the Native VLAN ■ All other packets are dropped. | <p>Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are associated with the Native VLAN of the port. If newly connected supplicants attempt 802.1X port authentication or Web-Authentication and fail, then they are moved to the auth-fail VLAN.</p> | <p>Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are associated with the Guest VLAN of the port. Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are processed according to these rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Packets destined to the WebAuth server IP address/TCP port are forwarded to the server (which may well be the switch itself). ■ DHCP packets are sent to the CPU, to be processed by a local DHCP server, or relayed to another DHCP server, depending on the configuration of the switch. ■ DNS packets are forwarded to the CPU, and then sent on to a DNS server, if the switch is configured with a DNS server address. ■ ARP packets are forwarded to the CPU, and an ARP entry for the supplicant is learned. ■ Drop all other packets destined to the IP address of the Guest VLAN. ■ Layer 2 forward packets destined to other addresses within the Guest VLAN. ■ All other packets are dropped. |
| No Web-Authentication configured | <p>All non-eap packets from unauthenticated supplicants are dropped.</p> | <p>All non-eap packets from unauthenticated supplicants are dropped.</p> | <p>Packets from unauthenticated supplicants are associated with the Guest VLAN of the port. The packets are processed according to these rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Drop packets destined to the IP address of the Guest VLAN. ■ Layer 2 forward packets destined to other addresses within the Guest VLAN. ■ Drop all other packets. |

Deciding When a Supplicant Fails Authentication

Although the treatment of packets from unauthenticated supplicants does not differentiate between the three categories of supplicant, it is still useful to know for sure when the switch decides that a supplicant has failed authentication.

The rules for deciding that a supplicant has failed authentication are listed below for each type of authentication available:

Deciding when a supplicant fails 802.1X-Authentication

If the supplicant responds to EAP authentication requests, and the supplicant's authentication information is sent to the RADIUS server, and the RADIUS server replies with an Authentication-Reject, then the supplicant is immediately deemed to have failed authentication.

If the supplicant does not respond to EAP authentication requests, then the switch will resend the authentication requests up to a maximum number of attempts set by the command `dot1x max-reauth-req` (the default is 2). The interval between the attempts is set by the command `dot1x timeout tx-period` (the default is 30 seconds). If the supplicant still has not responded after this, it is deemed to have not attempted authentication.

See [Chapter 39, 802.1X Commands](#) for 802.1X-Authentication command information.

Deciding when a supplicant fails Web-Authentication

As soon as the supplicant attempts any web-browsing, the switch will intercept the web session, and present the supplicant with an authentication request page. If the user enters a username and password, and clicks the login button, then the switch will send the username and password to the RADIUS server. If the RADIUS server replies with an Authentication-Reject, then the supplicant is immediately deemed to have failed authentication.

Until the supplicant has attempted any web-browsing, or has received the authentication request page, but not yet clicked the login button, the supplicant is deemed to be not yet authenticated (as against not able to authenticate).

See [Chapter 41, Authentication Commands](#) for Web-Authentication command information.

Deciding when a supplicant fails MAC-Authentication

As soon as the supplicant sends any packet, the source MAC address from the packet will be sent to the RADIUS server for authentication. If the RADIUS server replies with an Authentication-Reject, then the supplicant is immediately deemed to have failed authentication.

With MAC-Authentication there really is no concept of not-yet-attempted authentication, because authentication is attempted as soon as a supplicant sends a packet.

See [Chapter 41, Authentication Commands](#) for MAC-Authentication command information.

Failed Authentication VLAN

The auth-fail VLAN feature allows the network administrator to separate the supplicants who attempted authentication, but failed, from the supplicants who did not attempt authentication.

This feature enables the network administrator to enact a security policy in which the supplicants who fail authentication are given extremely limited access, or are given access to remedial applications.

If the Guest VLAN and auth-fail VLAN are both configured on a switch, then a newly connected supplicant initially belongs to the Guest VLAN. If newly connected supplicants attempt 802.1X port authentication or Web-Authentication and fail, then they are moved from the Guest VLAN to the auth-fail VLAN.

The criteria for how many failed authentication attempts are allowed before the supplicant is moved to the auth-fail VLAN differs, depending on the authentication method used.

If Web-Authentication is used, then the supplicant is moved to the auth-fail VLAN after the first failed attempt. If 802.1X port authentication is used, then the supplicant is moved to the auth-fail VLAN after the number of failed attempts is equal to the value configured by the dot1x max-auth-fail command (by default, three failed 802.1X-Authentication attempts are allowed).

The MAC-Authentication feature does not support the max-auth-fail option. If auth-fail VLAN feature is used in conjunction with MAC-Authentication only one attempt is allowed for a MAC-Authentication supplicant. If the attempt fails, then the supplicant will be treated as "Authenticated" and the interface will be added to the configured auth-fail VLAN.

Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations

Note that the Web-Authentication feature cannot be used with the Guest VLAN or auth-fail VLAN features. For further limitation information see the below tables:

Table 40-2: Interoperation of authentication types with guest VLAN and auth-fail VLAN

| Authentication Type | Guest VLAN (without routing mode) | Guest VLAN (with routing mode) | Failed Authentication VLAN |
|--|--|---|---|
| 802.1X-Authentication | Layer 2 forward packets destined to other addresses within the Guest VLAN. | Unauthorized supplicant can access Guest VLAN. Use ACL for security on the interface. | Failed authentication supplicant can access auth-fail VLAN. See limitations table below for ACL usage limitation. |
| MAC-Authentication | Layer 2 forward packets destined to other addresses within the Guest VLAN. | Unauthorized supplicant can access Guest VLAN. Use ACL for security on the interface. | Failed authentication supplicant can access auth-fail VLAN. See limitations table below for ACL usage limitation. |
| Web-Authentication (without intercept mode) | Layer 2 forward packets destined to other addresses within the Guest VLAN. | Unauthorized supplicant can access Guest VLAN. Use ACL for security on the interface. | Failed authentication supplicant can access auth-fail VLAN. See limitations table below for ACL usage limitation. |
| Web-Authentication (with intercept mode) | (Not Available) | (Not Available) | (Not Available) |

Table 40-3: Interactions between guest VLAN and auth-fail VLAN

| Authentication Feature | Guest VLAN (without routing mode) | Guest VLAN (with routing mode) | Failed Authentication VLAN |
|--|--|---|--|
| Guest VLAN (without routing mode) | (Not Available) | (Not Available) | Cannot configure ACLs on the Guest VLAN when it is not in routing mode. The Guest VLAN without routing mode has reserved ACLs already attached to it. |
| Guest VLAN (with routing mode) | (Not Available) | (Not Available) | Configuration of ACLs for additional interface security is recommended. |
| Failed Authentication VLAN | Cannot configure ACLs on the Guest VLAN when it is not in routing mode. The Guest VLAN without routing mode has reserved ACLs already attached to it. | Configuration of ACLs for additional interface security is recommended. | Failed authentication supplicant can access auth-fail VLAN. See limitations table below for ACL usage limitation. |

Chapter 41: Authentication Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Command List | 41.3 |
| auth auth-fail vlan | 41.3 |
| auth critical | 41.5 |
| auth dynamic-vlan-creation | 41.6 |
| auth guest-vlan | 41.8 |
| auth host-mode | 41.10 |
| auth log | 41.11 |
| auth max-supplicant | 41.13 |
| auth reauthentication | 41.14 |
| auth roaming disconnected | 41.15 |
| auth roaming enable | 41.17 |
| auth supplicant-mac | 41.19 |
| auth timeout connect-timeout | 41.21 |
| auth timeout quiet-period | 41.22 |
| auth timeout reauth-period | 41.23 |
| auth timeout server-timeout | 41.24 |
| auth timeout supp-timeout | 41.25 |
| auth two-step enable | 41.26 |
| auth-mac enable | 41.28 |
| auth-mac method | 41.29 |
| auth-mac password | 41.30 |
| auth-mac reauth-relearning | 41.31 |
| auth-web enable | 41.32 |
| auth-web forward | 41.33 |
| auth-web max-auth-fail | 41.35 |
| auth-web method | 41.36 |
| auth-web-server blocking-mode | 41.37 |
| auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress | 41.38 |
| auth-web-server dhcp lease | 41.39 |
| auth-web-server dhcp-wpad-option | 41.40 |
| auth-web-server gateway | 41.41 |
| auth-web-server http-redirect | 41.42 |
| auth-web-server intercept-port | 41.43 |
| auth-web-server ipaddress | 41.44 |
| auth-web-server mode | 41.45 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll enable | 41.47 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll failcount | 41.48 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll interval | 41.49 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh | 41.50 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll timeout | 41.51 |
| auth-web-server port | 41.52 |
| auth-web-server redirect-delay-time | 41.53 |
| auth-web-server redirect-url | 41.54 |
| auth-web-server session-keep | 41.55 |
| auth-web-server ssl | 41.56 |
| auth-web-server sslport | 41.57 |
| copy proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.58 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| copy web-auth-https-file | 41.58 |
| erase proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.59 |
| erase web-auth-https-file..... | 41.59 |
| show auth two-step supplicant brief..... | 41.60 |
| show auth-mac | 41.61 |
| show auth-mac diagnostics | 41.62 |
| show auth-mac interface | 41.63 |
| show auth-mac sessionstatistics | 41.65 |
| show auth-mac statistics interface | 41.66 |
| show auth-mac supplicant | 41.67 |
| show auth-mac supplicant interface | 41.68 |
| show auth-web | 41.69 |
| show auth-web diagnostics | 41.71 |
| show auth-web interface | 41.72 |
| show auth-web sessionstatistics | 41.75 |
| show auth-web statistics interface | 41.76 |
| show auth-web supplicant | 41.77 |
| show auth-web supplicant interface | 41.78 |
| show auth-web-server | 41.79 |
| show proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.80 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for authentication commands.

auth auth-fail vlan

Use this command to enable the **auth-fail vlan** feature on the specified vlan interface. This feature assigns supplicants (client devices), which have failed port authentication, to the specified VLAN interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the **auth-fail vlan** feature for a specified VLAN interface.

Syntax `auth auth-fail vlan <1-4094>`

`no auth auth-fail vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code><1-4094></code> | Assigns the VLAN ID to any supplicants that have failed port authentication. |

Default The **auth-fail vlan** feature is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Use the **auth-fail vlan** feature when using Web-Authentication instead of the Guest VLAN feature, when you need to separate networks where one supplicant (client device) requires authentication and another supplicant does not require authentication from the same interface.

This is because the DHCP lease time using the Web-Authentication feature is shorter, and the **auth fail vlan** feature enables assignment to a different VLAN if a supplicant fails authentication.

When using 802.1X port authentication, use a **dot1x max-auth-fail** command to set the maximum number of login attempts. Three login attempts are allowed by default for 802.1X port authentication before supplicants trying to authenticate are moved from the Guest VLAN to the auth-fail VLAN. See the **“dot1x max-auth-fail” on page 39.9** for command information.

See the section **“Failed Authentication VLAN” on page 40.26** in **Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration** for further overview information about the auth-fail VLAN feature, which allows the Network Administrator to separate the supplicants who attempted authentication, but failed, from the supplicants who did not attempt authentication.

See the section “[Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations](#)” on page 40.26 for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Use appropriate ACLs (Access Control Lists) on interfaces for extra security if a supplicant allocated to the designated auth-fail vlan can access the same network as a supplicant on the Guest VLAN. For more information about ACL concepts, and configuring ACLs see [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#). For more information about ACL commands see:

- [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#)
- [Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#)
- [Chapter 35, IPv6 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#)

Examples To enable **auth-fail vlan** for `port1.0.2` and assign VLAN 100, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth auth-fail vlan 100
```

To disable the **auth-fail vlan** feature for `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth auth-fail vlan
```

Validation Commands [show running-config](#)

Related Commands [dot1x max-auth-fail](#)
[show dot1x](#)
[show dot1x interface](#)

auth critical

This command enables the critical port feature on the interface. When the critical port feature is enabled on an interface, and all the RADIUS servers are unavailable, then the interface becomes authorized.

The **no** variant of this command disables critical port feature on the interface.

Syntax `auth critical`
`no auth critical`

Default The critical port of port authentication is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To enable the critical port feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth critical
```

To disable the critical port feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth critical
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web-server`
`show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth dynamic-vlan-creation

This command enables and disables the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature.

The Dynamic VLAN assignment feature allows a supplicant (client device) to be placed into a specific VLAN based on information returned from the RADIUS server during authentication, on a given interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature.

Syntax `auth dynamic-vlan-creation [rule {deny|permit}] [type {multi|single}]`
`no auth dynamic-vlan-creation`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| rule | VLAN assignment rule. |
| deny | Deny a differently assigned VLAN ID. This is the default rule. |
| permit | Permit a differently assigned VLAN ID. |
| type | Specifies whether multiple different VLANs can be assigned to supplicants (client devices) attached to the port, or whether only a single VLAN can be assigned to supplicants on the port. |
| multi | Multiple Dynamic VLAN. |
| single | Single Dynamic VLAN. |

Default By default, the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature is disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

If the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature is enabled (disabled by default), VLAN assignment is dynamic. If the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature is disabled then RADIUS attributes are ignored and configured VLANs are assigned to ports. Dynamic VLANs may be associated with authenticated MAC addresses if the **type** parameter is applied with the **rule** parameter.

The **rule** parameter deals with the case where there are multiple supplicants attached to a port, and the type parameter has been set to **single-vlan**. The parameter specifies how the switch should act if different VLAN IDs end up being assigned to different supplicants. The keyword value **deny** means that once a given VID has been assigned to the first supplicant, then if any subsequent supplicant is assigned a different VID, that supplicant is rejected. The keyword value **permit** means that once a given VID has been assigned to the first supplicant, then if any subsequent supplicant is assigned a different VID, that supplicant is accepted, but it is actually assigned the same VID as the first supplicant.

If you issue an **auth dynamic-vlan-creation** command without an optional **rule** parameter and a required **deny** or **permit** keyword value then a second supplicant with a different VLAN ID is rejected. It is not assigned to the first supplicant's VLAN. Issuing an **auth dynamic-vlan-creation** command without an optional **rule** parameter has the same effect as issuing an **auth dynamic-vlan-creation rule deny** command rejecting supplicants with differing VIDs.

The **type** parameter specifies whether multiple different VLANs can be assigned to supplicants attached to the port, or whether only a single VLAN can be assigned to

supplicants on the port. The **type** parameter can select the port base VLAN or the MAC base VLAN from the RADIUS VLAN ID. This can be used when the host-mode is set to multi-supplicant. For **single**-host ports, the VLAN ID will be assigned to the port. It is not supported with the Guest VLAN feature. Display the ID assigned using a **show vlan** command. For **multi**-host ports, the VLAN ID will be assigned to the MAC address of the authenticated supplicant. The VLAN ID assigned for the MAC Base VLAN is displayed using the **show platform table vlan** command.

Examples To enable the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
```

To disable the Dynamic VLAN assignment feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth dynamic-vlan-creation
```

Validation Commands **show dot1x**
show dot1x interface
show running-config

Related Commands **auth host-mode**

auth guest-vlan

This command enables and configures the Guest VLAN feature on the interface specified by associating a Guest VLAN with an interface. This command does not start authentication. The supplicant's (client device's) traffic is associated with the native VLAN of the interface if its not already associated with another VLAN. The **routing** option enables routing from the Guest VLAN to another VLAN, so the switch can lease DHCP addresses and accept access to a limited network.

The **no** variant of this command disables the guest vlan feature on the interface specified.

Syntax `auth guest-vlan <1-4094> [routing]`
`no auth guest-vlan [routing]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-4094> | VLAN ID (VID). |
| routing | Enables routing from the Guest VLAN to other VLANs. |

Default The Guest VLAN authentication feature is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage The Guest VLAN feature may be used by supplicants (client devices) that have not attempted authentication, or have failed the authentication process. Note that if a port is in multi-supplicant mode with per-port dynamic VLAN configuration, after the first successful authentication, subsequent hosts cannot use the guest VLAN due to the change in VLAN ID. This may be avoided by using per-user dynamic VLAN assignment.

When using the Guest VLAN feature with the multi-host mode, a number of supplicants can communicate via a guest VLAN before authentication. A supplicant's traffic is associated with the native VLAN of the specified switch port. The supplicant must belong to a VLAN before traffic from the supplicant can be associated.

Note that you must first define the VLAN with the **vlan** command that you will assign as a guest VLAN using this command. Also note that 802.1X must first be enabled on the port.

Guest VLAN authentication cannot be enabled if DHCP snooping is enabled ([service dhcp-snooping command on page 54.19](#)), and vice versa.

The Guest VLAN feature in previous releases had some limitations that have been removed. Until this release the Guest VLAN feature could not lease the IP address to the supplicant using DHCP Server or DHCP Relay features unless Web-Authentication was also applied. When using NAP authentication, the supplicant should have been able to log on to a domain controller to gain certification, but the Guest VLAN would not accept access to another VLAN.

The Guest VLAN routing mode in this release overcomes these issues. With the Guest VLAN routing mode, the switch can lease DHCP addresses and accept access to a limited network.

Note that Guest VLAN can use only untagged ports and tagged ports cannot be used for Guest VLAN.

See the section [“Configuring a Guest VLAN” on page 40.2](#) for information about the Guest VLAN feature.

See the section **“Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations”** on page 40.26 for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Examples To define `vlan100` and assign the guest VLAN feature to `vlan100` on interface `port1.0.2`, and enable routing from the guest vlan to other VLANs, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# vlan database
awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 100
awplus(config-vlan)# exit
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth guest-vlan 100 routing
```

To disable the guest vlan feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth guest-vlan
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `dot1x port-control`
`vlan`

auth host-mode

This command selects host mode on the interface. Multi-host is an extension to IEEE802.1X.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set host mode to the default setting (single host).

Syntax `auth host-mode {single-host|multi-host|multi-supPLICANT}`
`no auth host-mode`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| single-host | Single host mode. |
| multi-host | Multi host mode. |
| multi-supPLICANT | Multi supplicant (client device) mode. |

Default The default host mode for port authentication is for a single host.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the host mode to multi-supPLICANT on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth host-mode multi-supPLICANT
```

To set the host mode to default (single host) on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth host-mode
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth log

Use this command to configure the types of authentication feature log messages that are output to the log file.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove either specified types or all types of authentication feature log messages that are output to the log file.

Syntax `auth log {dot1x|auth-mac|auth-web} {success|failure|logoff|all}`
`no auth log {dot1x|auth-mac|auth-web} {success|failure|logoff|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>dot1x</code> | Specify only 802.1X-Authentication log messages are output to the log file. |
| <code>auth-mac</code> | Specify only MAC-Authentication log messages are output to the log file. |
| <code>auth-web</code> | Specify only Web-Authentication log messages are output to the log file. |
| <code>success</code> | Specify only successful authentication log messages are output to the log file. |
| <code>failure</code> | Specify only authentication failure log messages are output to the log file. |
| <code>logoff</code> | Specify only authentication logoff messages are output to the log file. Note that link down, age out and expired ping polling messages will be included. |
| <code>all</code> | Specify all types of authentication log messages are output to the log file. Note that this is the default behavior for the authentication logging feature. |

Default All types of authentication log messages are output to the log file by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To configure the logging of MAC-Authentication failures to the log file for supplicants (client devices) connected to interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth log auth-mac failure
```

To configure the logging of all types of authentication log messages to the log file for supplicants (client devices) connected to interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth log all
```

Validation **show running-config**
Commands

auth max-supPLICANT

This command sets the maximum number of supplicants (client devices) on the interface that can be authenticated. After this value is exceeded supplicants are not authenticated.

The **no** variant of this command resets the maximum supplicant number to the default (1024).

Syntax `auth max-supPLICANT <2-1024>`
`no auth max-supPLICANT`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| <code><2-1024></code> | Limit number. |

Default The max supplicant of port authentication is 1024.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the maximum number of supplicants to 10 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth max-supPLICANT 10
```

To reset the maximum number of supplicant to default on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth max-supPLICANT
```

**Validation
Commands** `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth reauthentication

This command enables re-authentication on the interface specified in the Interface mode, which may be a static channel group (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disables reauthentication on the interface.

Syntax `auth reauthentication`
`no auth reauthentication`

Default Reauthentication of port authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To enable reauthentication on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth reauthentication
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth roaming disconnected

This command enables the Roaming Authentication feature on an authenticated interface that is link down. A supplicant (a client device) is not reauthenticated when moved between authenticated interfaces, providing both interfaces have the Roaming Authentication feature enabled before the supplicant is moved.

Use the **auth roaming enable** command before using this command. The **auth roaming disconnected** command on its own will have no effect on the operation of the switch. This command will only come into effect once the base Roaming Authentication feature is enabled, using the **auth roaming enable** command.

The **no** variant of this command disables the Roaming Authentication feature on an interface, and forces a supplicant to be reauthenticated when moving between interfaces.

See **“Web-Authentication” on page 40.4** for further information about this feature.

Syntax `auth roaming disconnected`
`no auth roaming disconnected`

Default The Roaming Authentication `disconnected` feature is disabled by default on an interface. Authentication status for a roaming supplicant is deleted by default when an interface goes down.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage This command allows a supplicant to move to another authenticating interface without reauthentication, if the link is down for the interface that the supplicant is moved from.

Note that 802.1X port authentication, or MAC-Authentication, or Web-Authentication must first be enabled on an interface to use this feature. The port that the supplicant is moving to must have the same authentication configuration as the port the supplicant is moving from.

Configure **auth roaming enable** on an interface before configuring **auth roaming disconnected** if you require **auth roaming disconnected** configured on an interface for a roaming supplicant.

Roaming Authentication cannot be enabled if DHCP snooping is enabled (**service dhcp-snooping** command on page 54.19), and vice versa.

Examples To enable Roaming Authentication `disconnected` feature for `port1.0.2`, after enabling 802.1X-Authentication and enabling Roaming Authentication `enable`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth roaming enable
awplus(config-if)# auth roaming disconnected
```

To disable Roaming Authentication disconnected feature for port1.0.2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth roaming disconnected
```

**Validation
Commands** **show running-config**

Related Commands **auth-mac enable**
auth roaming enable
auth-web enable
dot1x port-control
show auth-mac interface
show auth-web interface
show dot1x interface

auth roaming enable

This command enables the Roaming Authentication feature on an authenticated interface that is link up. A supplicant (a client device) is not reauthenticated when moved between authenticated interfaces, providing both interfaces have the Roaming Authentication feature enabled before the supplicant is moved.

Use the **auth roaming enable** command before using **auth roaming disconnected** command. The **auth roaming disconnected** command on its own will have no effect on the operation of the switch. This command will only come into effect once the base Roaming Authentication feature is enabled, using the **auth roaming enable** command.

The **no** variant of this command disables the Roaming Authentication feature on an interface, and forces a supplicant to be reauthenticated when moving between interfaces.

See **“Web-Authentication” on page 40.4** for further information about this feature.

Syntax `auth roaming enable`
`no auth roaming enable`

Default The Roaming Authentication enable feature is disabled by default on an interface. Authentication status for a roaming supplicant is deleted by default when an interface goes down.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage This command allows a supplicant to move to another authenticating interface without reauthentication, providing the link is up for the interface that the supplicant is moved from.

Note that 802.1X port authentication, or MAC-Authentication, or Web-Authentication must first be enabled on an interface to use this feature. The port that the supplicant is moving to must have the same authentication configuration as the port the supplicant is moving from.

Configure **auth roaming enable** on an interface before configuring **auth roaming disconnected** if you require **auth roaming disconnected** configured on an interface for a roaming supplicant.

Roaming Authentication cannot be enabled if DHCP snooping is enabled (**service dhcp-snooping** command on page 54.19), and vice versa.

Examples To enable the Roaming Authentication enable feature for interface `port1.0.4`, after enabling 802.1X-Authentication, since an authentication method is required, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth roaming enable
```

To disable Roaming Authentication enable for port1.0.4, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# no auth roaming enable
```

**Validation
Commands** **show running-config**

Related Commands **auth-mac enable**
auth roaming disconnected
auth-web enable
dot1x port-control
show auth-mac interface
show auth-web interface
show dot1x interface

auth supplicant-mac

This command adds a supplicant (client device) MAC address on a given interface with the parameters as specified in the table below.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the supplicant MAC address added by the **auth supplicant-mac** command, and resets to the default for the supplicant parameter.

Syntax

```

auth supplicant <mac-addr> [max-reauth-req <1-10>] [port-control
    {auto | force-authorized | force-unauthorized | skip-second-auth}]
    [quiet-period <1-65535>] [reauth-period <1-4294967295>]
    [supp-timeout <1-65535>]
    [server-timeout <1-65535>][reauthentication]

no auth supplicant-mac <macadd> [reauthentication]
    
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <mac-addr> | MAC (hardware) address of the Supplicant entry in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH MAC address hexadecimal format. |
| port-control | Port control commands. |
| auto | Allow port client to negotiate authentication. |
| force-authorized | Force port state to authorized. |
| force-unauthorized | Force port state to unauthorized. |
| skip-second-auth | Skip the second authentication. |
| quiet-period | Quiet period in the HELD state (default 60 seconds). |
| <1-65535> | Seconds for quiet period. |
| reauth-period | Seconds between reauthorization attempts (default 3600 seconds). |
| <1-4294967295> | Seconds for reauthorization attempts (reauth-period). |
| supp-timeout | Supplicant response timeout (default 30 seconds). |
| <1-65535> | Seconds for supplicant response timeout. |
| server-timeout | Authentication server response timeout (default 30 seconds). |
| <1-65535> | Seconds for authentication server response timeout. |
| reauthentication | Enable reauthentication on a port. |
| max-reauth-req | No of reauthentication attempts before becoming unauthorized (default 2). |
| <1-10> | Count of reauthentication attempts. |

Default No supplicant MAC address for port authentication exists by default until first created with the **auth supplicant-mac** command. The defaults for parameters applied are as shown in the table.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To add the supplicant MAC address 0009.41A4.5943 to force authorized port control for interface port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth supplicant-mac 0009.41A4.5943 port-
control force-authorized
```

To delete the supplicant MAC address 0009.41A4.5943 for interface port1.0.2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth supplicant-mac 0009.41A4.5943
```

To reset reauthentication to disable for the supplicant MAC address 0009.41A4.5943, for interface port1.0.2 use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth supplicant-mac 0009.41A4.5943
reauthentication
```

Validation **show dot1x**
Commands **show dot1x interface**
show running-config

auth timeout connect-timeout

This command sets the connect-timeout period for the interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the connect-timeout period to the default (30 seconds).

Syntax `auth timeout connect-timeout <1-65535>`

`no auth timeout connect-timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The connect-timeout default is 30 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage This command is used for MAC- and Web-Authentication. If the connect-timeout has lapsed and the supplicant has the state **connecting**, then the supplicant is deleted. When **auth-web-server session-keep** or **auth two-step enable** is enabled it is recommended to configure a longer connect-timeout period.

Examples To set the connect-timeout period to 3600 for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth timeout connect-timeout 3600
```

To reset the connect-timeout period to the default (30 seconds) for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth timeout connect-timeout
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`

auth timeout quiet-period

This command sets the time period for which the authentication request is not accepted on a given interface, after the authentication request has failed an authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset quiet period to the default (60 seconds).

Syntax `auth timeout quiet-period <1-65535>`
`no auth timeout quiet-period`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The quiet period of port authentication is 60 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the quiet period to 10 for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth timeout quiet-period 10
```

To reset the quiet period to the default (60 seconds) for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth timeout quiet-period
```

auth timeout reauth-period

This command sets the timer for reauthentication on a given interface. The re-authentication for the supplicant (client device) is executed at this timeout. The timeout is only applied if the **auth reauthentication** command is applied.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the **reauth-period** parameter to the default (3600 seconds).

Syntax `auth timeout reauth-period <1-4294967295>`

`no auth timeout reauth-period`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-------------|
| <1-4294967295> | Seconds. |

Default The default reauthentication period for port authentication is 3600 seconds, when reauthentication is enabled on the port.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the reauthentication period to 1 day for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth timeout reauth-period 86400
```

To reset the reauthentication period to the default (3600 seconds) for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth timeout reauth-period
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `auth reauthentication`

auth timeout server-timeout

This command sets the timeout for the waiting response from the RADIUS server on a given interface.

The **no** variant of this command resets the server-timeout to the default (30 seconds).

Syntax `auth timeout server-timeout <1-65535>`
`no auth timeout server-timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The server timeout for port authentication is 30 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the server timeout to 120 seconds for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth timeout server-timeout 120
```

To set the server timeout to the default (30 seconds) for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth timeout server-timeout
```

Validation Commands `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth timeout supp-timeout

This command sets the timeout of the waiting response from the supplicant (client device) on a given interface.

The **no** variant of this command resets the supplicant timeout to the default (30 seconds).

Syntax `auth timeout supp-timeout <1-65535>`

`no auth timeout supp-timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The supplicant timeout of port authentication is 30 seconds.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the server timeout to 2 seconds for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth timeout supp-timeout 2
```

To reset the server timeout to the default (30 seconds) for interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth timeout supp-timeout
```

**Validation
Commands** `show dot1x`
`show dot1x interface`
`show running-config`

auth two-step enable

This command enables a two-step authentication feature on an interface. When this feature is enabled, the supplicant is authorized in a two-step process. If authentication succeeds, the supplicant becomes authenticated. This command will apply the two-step authentication method based on 802.1X-, MAC- or Web-Authentication.

The **no** variant of this command disables the two-step authentication feature.

Syntax `auth two-step enable`
`no auth two-step enable`

Default Default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a port.

Usage The single step authentication methods (either user or device authentication) have a potential security risk:

- an unauthorized user can access the network with an authorized device, or
- an authorized user can access the network with an unauthorized device.

Two-step authentication solves this problem by authenticating both the user and the device. The supplicant will only become authenticated if both these steps are successful. If the first authentication step fails, then the second step is not started.

Examples To enable the two step authentication feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth two-step enable
```

To disable the two step authentication feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth two-step enable
```

To enable MAC-Authentication followed by 802.1X-Authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac enable
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
awplus(config-if)# auth two-step enable
```

To enable MAC-Authentication followed by Web-Authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac enable
awplus(config-if)# auth-web enable
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
awplus(config-if)# auth two-step enable
```

To enable 802.1X-Authentication followed by Web-Authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# auth-web enable
awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
awplus(config-if)# auth two-step enable
```

**Validation
Commands** **show startup-config**
 show auth-mac supplicant
 show dot1x supplicant

Related Commands **show auth two-step supplicant brief**
 show auth-mac
 show auth-mac interface
 show auth-mac supplicant
 show auth-web
 show auth-web interface
 show auth-web supplicant
 show dot1x
 show dot1x interface
 show dot1x supplicant

auth-mac enable

This command enables MAC-based authentication on the interface specified in the Interface command mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable MAC-based authentication on an interface.

Syntax `auth-mac enable`
`no auth-mac enable`

Default MAC-Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage Enabling **spanning-tree edgeport** on ports after enabling MAC-based authentication avoids unnecessary re-authentication when the port state changes, which does not happen when spanning tree edgeport is enabled. Note that re-authentication is correct behavior without **spanning-tree edgeport** enabled.

Applying **switchport mode access** on ports is also good practice to set the ports to access mode with ingress filtering turned on, whenever ports for MAC-Authentication are in a VLAN.

Examples To enable MAC-Authentication on interface `port1.0.2` and enable spanning tree edgeport to avoid unnecessary re-authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac enable
awplus(config-if)# spanning-tree edgeport
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
```

To disable MAC-Authentication on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-mac enable
```

Validation Commands **show auth-mac**
show auth-mac interface
show running-config

Related Commands **aaa accounting auth-mac default**
aaa authentication auth-mac
spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP)
switchport mode access

auth-mac method

This command sets the type of authentication method for MAC-Authentication that is used with RADIUS on the interface specified in the Interface command mode.

The **no** variant of this command resets the authentication method used to the default method (PAP) as the RADIUS authentication method used by the MAC-Authentication.

Syntax `auth-mac method [eap-md5|pap]`
`no auth-mac method`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>eap-md5</code> | Enable EAP-MD5 of authentication method. |
| <code>pap</code> | Enable PAP of authentication method. |

Default The MAC-Authentication method is PAP.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the MAC-Authentication method to `pap` on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac method pap
```

To set the MAC-Authentication method to the default on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-mac method
```

Validation Commands `show auth-mac`
`show auth-mac interface`
`show running-config`

auth-mac password

This command changes the password for MAC-based authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return the password to its default.

Syntax `auth-mac [encrypted] password <password>`
`no auth-mac password`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>auth-mac</code> | MAC-based authentication |
| <code>encrypted</code> | Specify an encrypted password |
| <code>password</code> | Configure the password |
| <code><password></code> | The new password. Passwords can be up to 64 characters in length and can contain any printable characters except <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ? ■ " (double quotes) ■ space |

Default By default, the password is the MAC address of the supplicant

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Changing the password increases the security of MAC-based authentication, because the default password is easy for an attacker to discover. This is particularly important if:

- some MAC-based supplicants on the network are intelligent devices, such as computers, and/or
- you are using two-step authentication (see [“Ensuring Authentication Methods Require Different Usernames and Passwords” on page 40.20](#))

Examples To change the password to `verySecurePassword`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-mac password verySecurePassword
```

Validation Command `show running-config`

Related Commands `auth two-step enable`
`show auth-mac`

auth-mac reauth-relearning

This command sets the MAC address learning of the supplicant (client device) to re-learning for re-authentication on the interface specified in the Interface command mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the auth-mac re-learning option.

Syntax `auth-mac reauth-relearning`
`no auth-mac reauth-relearning`

Default Re-learning for port authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To enable the re-authentication re-learning feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-mac reauth-relearning
```

To disable the re-authentication re-learning feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-mac reauth-relearning
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-mac`
`show auth-mac interface`
`show running-config`

auth-web enable

This command enables Web-based authentication in Interface mode on the interface specified.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable Web-based authentication on an interface.

Syntax auth-web enable
no auth-web enable

Default Web-Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel or a switch port.

Usage Web-based authentication cannot be enabled if DHCP snooping is enabled ([service dhcp-snooping command on page 54.19](#)), and vice versa.

Examples To enable Web-Authentication on static-channel-group 2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface sa2
awplus(config-if)# auth-web enable
```

To disable Web-Authentication on static-channel-group 2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# static-channel-group 2
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# interface sa2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-web enable
```

Validation Commands show auth-web
show auth-web interface
show running-config

Related Commands aaa accounting auth-web default
aaa authentication auth-web

auth-web forward

This command enables the Web-Authentication packet forwarding feature on the interface specified. This command also enables ARP forwarding, and adds forwarded packets to the **tcp** or **udp** port number specified.

The **no** variant of this command disables or deletes the packet forwarding feature on the interface.

Syntax `auth-web forward [<ip-address>] {arp|dhcp|dns|tcp <1-65535>|udp <1-65535>}`
`no auth-web forward [<ip-address>] {arp|dhcp|dns|tcp <1-65535>|udp <1-65535>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <ip-address> | Enable forwarding to the destination IPv4 address. |
| arp | Enable forwarding of ARP. |
| dhcp | Enable forwarding of DHCP (67/udp). |
| dns | Enable forwarding of DNS (53/udp). |
| tcp | Enable forwarding of TCP specified port number. |
| <1-65535> | TCP Port number. |
| udp | Enable forwarding of UDP specified port number. |
| <1-65535> | UDP Port number. |

Default Packet forwarding for port authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Usage For more information about the <ip-address> parameter, and an example, see the “auth-web forward” section in the [AlliedWare Plus Technical Tips and Tricks](#).

Examples To enable the ARP forwarding feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-web forward arp
```

To add the TCP forwarding port 137 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-web forward tcp 137
```

To add the DNS Server IP address 192.168.1.10 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# switchport mode access
awplus(config-if)# auth-web enable
awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation
awplus(config-if)# auth-web forward 192.168.1.10 dns
```

To disable the ARP forwarding feature on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-web forward arp
```

To delete the TCP forwarding port 137 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-web forward tcp 137
```

To delete the all of TCP forwarding on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-web forward tcp
```

**Validation
Commands** **show auth-web**
 show auth-web interface
 show running-config

auth-web max-auth-fail

This command sets the number of authentication failures allowed before rejecting further authentication requests. When the supplicant (client device) fails more than has been set to the maximum number of authentication failures then login requests are refused during the quiet period.

The **no** variant of this command resets the maximum number of authentication failures to the default (three authentication failures).

Syntax `auth-web max-auth-fail <0-10>`

`no auth-web max-auth-fail`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code><0-10></code> | Lock count specified. |

Default The **max-auth-fail** lock counter is set to three authentication failures by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Examples To set the lock count to 5 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-web max-auth-fail 5
```

To set the lock count to the default on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no auth-web max-auth-fail
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web interface`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `auth timeout quiet-period`

auth-web method

This command sets the authentication method of Web-Authentication that is used with RADIUS on the interface specified.

The **no** variant of this command sets the authentication method to PAP for the interface specified when Web-Authentication is also used with the RADIUS authentication method.

Syntax `auth-web method {eap-md5|pap}`
`no auth-web method`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>eap-md5</code> | Enable EAP-MD5 as the authentication method. |
| <code>pap</code> | Enable PAP as the authentication method. |

Default The Web-Authentication method is set to PAP by default.

Mode Interface Configuration for a static channel, a dynamic (LACP) channel group, or a switch port.

Example To set the Web-Authentication method to eap-md5 on interface `port1.0.2`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# auth-web method eap-md5
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web interface`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server blocking-mode

Use this command to enable blocking mode for the Web-Authentication server. The blocking mode displays an authentication success or failure screen immediately from the response result from a RADIUS server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable blocking mode for the Web-Authentication server.

Syntax `auth-web-server blocking-mode`
`no auth-web-server blocking-mode`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>blocking-mode</code> | Use blocking authentication server process. |
| <code>no</code> | Disable blocking mode. |

Default By default, blocking mode is disabled for the Web-Authentication server.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To enable blocking mode for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server blocking-mode
```

To disable blocking mode for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server blocking-mode
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `show auth-web-server`
`auth-web-server mode`
`auth-web-server redirect-delay-time`

auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress

Use this command to assign an IP address and enable the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server for supplicants (client devices).

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove an IP address and disable the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server for supplicants.

Syntax `auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress <ip-address/prefix-length>`
`no auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><ip-addr/prefix-length></code> | The IPv4 address and prefix length assigned for the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server for supplicants. |

Default No IP address for the Web-Authentication server is set by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage See the section **“DHCP server for Web-Authentication” on page 40.10** in **Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration** for further overview information about the Web-Authentication enhancements, allowing Web-Authentication to work as seamlessly as 802.1X-Authentication.

See the section **“Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations” on page 40.26** for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Examples To assign the IP address 10.0.0.1 to the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress 10.0.0.1/8
```

To remove an IP address on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `show auth-web-server`
`auth-web-server dhcp lease`

auth-web-server dhcp lease

Use this command to set the DHCP lease time for supplicants (client devices) using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset to the default DHCP lease time for supplicants using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server.

Syntax `auth-web-server dhcp lease <20-60>`
`no auth-web-server dhcp lease`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <20-60> | DHCP lease time for supplicants using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server in seconds. |

Default The default DHCP lease time for supplicants using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server is set to 30 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage See the section **“DHCP server for Web-Authentication” on page 40.10** in **Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration** for further overview information about the Web-Authentication enhancements, allowing Web-Authentication to work as seamlessly as 802.1X-Authentication.

See the section **“Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations” on page 40.26** for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Examples To set the DHCP lease time to 1 minute for supplicants using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server dhcp lease 60
```

To reset the DHCP lease time to the default setting (30 seconds) for supplicants using the DHCP service on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server dhcp lease
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `show auth-web-server`
`auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress`

auth-web-server dhcp-wpad-option

This command sets the DHCP WPAD (Web Proxy Auto-Discovery) option for the Web-Authentication temporary DHCP service.

For more information and examples, see the “Web Auth Proxy” section in the [Alliedware Plus Technical Tips and Tricks](#).

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the DHCP WPAD function.

Syntax

```
auth-web-server dhcp wpad-option <url>
no auth-web-server dhcp wpad-option
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <url> | URL to the server which gets a .pac file. |

Default The Web-Authentication server DHCP WPAD option is not set.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage If the supplicant is configured to use WPAD, the supplicant’s web browser will use TCP port 80 as usual. Therefore, the packet can be intercepted by Web-Authentication as normal, and the Web-Authentication Login page can be sent. However, after authentication, the browser does not know where to get the WPAD file and so cannot access external web pages. The WPAD file is usually named proxy.pac file and tells the browser what web proxy to use.

Use this command to tell the supplicant where it can get this file from. The switch itself can be specified as the source for this file, and it can deliver it to the supplicant on request.

Example To specify that the proxy.pac file is found on the server at 192.168.1.100, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server dhcp wpad-option
http://192.168.1.100/proxy/
proxy.pac
```

Related Commands [show auth-web-server](#)

auth-web-server gateway

Use this command to register the gateway information when the supplicant is authorized. This ensures the supplicant's gateway information is correct and allows the supplicant to access external subnets when an external DHCP server is used.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove gateway IP address from the Web-Authentication server and disable the registration of gateway entry.

Syntax `auth-web-server gateway <ip-address> vlan <1-4094>`

`no auth-web-server gateway <ip-address>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| gateway | Configure the default gateway information. |
| <ip-address> | Web-Authentication server dotted decimal IP address in A.B.C.D format. |
| vlan | Set the VLAN ID. |
| <1-4094> | VLAN ID. |
| no | Remove gateway IP address. |

Default There is no default gateway entry.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command registers the gateway IP address that supplicants should use after Web-Authentication has succeeded. The switch finds the MAC address for this gateway device. Then, after a supplicant has authenticated, the switch sends out a gratuitous ARP advertising the gateway IP address with the MAC address that the switch has discovered belongs to that gateway device. This ensures the supplicant's gateway information is correct, and erases the fact that the switch had previously fooled the supplicant into thinking that the switch's MAC address was the MAC address of the gateway. By providing the supplicant with the correct MAC address for the gateway, the switch enables the supplicant to access external subnets.

Example To add the gateway IP address 192.168.1.1 and VLAN ID 10, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server gateway 192.168.1.1 vlan 10
```

To remove the gateway IP address 192.168.1.1, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server gateway 192.168.1.1
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

Related Commands `show auth-web-server`
`auth-web enable`
`auth-web-server mode`

auth-web-server http-redirect

This command enables the HTTP redirect feature on every interface on which web-based port authentication is enabled. When the HTTP redirect feature is enabled, any HTTP request received on an unauthorized interface is redirected to the Web-Authentication server automatically.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the HTTP redirect feature.

Syntax `auth-web-server http-redirect`
`no auth-web-server http-redirect`

Default The HTTP redirect feature is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To disable the HTTP redirect feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server http-redirect
```

To re-enable the HTTP redirect feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server http-redirect
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server intercept-port

This command specifies any additional TCP port numbers that the Web-Authentication server is to intercept.

Use the **no** variant of this command to stop intercepting the TCP port numbers.

Syntax `auth-web-server intercept-port <1-65535>`
`no auth-web-server intercept-port <1-65535>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------|
| <1-65535> | TCP port number. |

Default No additional TCP port numbers are intercepted by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage If this command is not specified, AlliedWare Plus Web-Authentication intercepts the supplicant's initial TCP port 80 connection to a web page and sends it the Web-Authentication Login page. However, if the supplicant is configured to use a web proxy, then it will usually be using TCP port 8080 (or another user configured port number). In this case Web-Authentication cannot intercept the connection.

To overcome this limitation you can now use this command to tell the switch which additional port it should intercept, and then send the Web-Authentication Login page to the supplicant.

When you use this command in conjunction with a proxy server configured in the web browser, you must add the proxy server's network as a 'No Proxy' network. You can specify 'No Proxy' networks in the proxy settings in your web browser. For more information, see the "Web Auth Proxy" section in the [Alliedware Plus Technical Tips and Tricks](#).

Example To additionally intercept port number 3128, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server intercept-port 3128
```

Related Commands [show auth-web-server](#)

auth-web-server ipaddress

This command sets the IP address for the Web-Authentication server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the IP address for the Web-Authentication server.

Syntax `auth-web-server ipaddress <ip-address>`
`no auth-web-server ipaddress`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-address></code> | Web-Authentication server dotted decimal IP address in A.B.C.D format. |

Default The Web-Authentication server address on the system is not set by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the IP address 10.0.0.1 to the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ipaddress 10.0.0.1
```

To delete the IP address from the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ipaddress
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server mode

Use this command with required keyword to configure an intercept mode (from the intercept, none, or promiscuous modes available) on the Web-Authentication server for supplicants (client devices). The intercept modes available affect the interception of clients' ARPs and the proxy DNS response when using Web-Authentication. These enhancements ensure that Web-Authentication will proceed smoothly irrespective of the IP configuration on the client PC.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the intercept mode (either the intercept, none, or promiscuous intercept modes) configured on the Web-Authentication server for supplicants.

Syntax `auth-web-server mode {intercept|none|promiscuous}`
`no auth-web-server mode {intercept|promiscuous}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>intercept</code> | Selecting this parameter results in Web-Authentication server on the switch intercepting and replying to ARP and DNS messages from the same interface and IP address. |
| <code>none</code> | Selecting this parameter disables the intercept mode on the Web-Authentication server. No ARP and DNS messages are intercepted and replied to from the switch from any interfaces or from any IP addresses. |
| <code>promiscuous</code> | Selecting this parameter results in the Web-Authentication server on the switch intercepting and replying to any ARP or DNS messages from any IP address. |

Default Intercept mode on the Web-Authentication server is set to **none** by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage See [Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration](#) for overview information about Web-Authentication, allowing Web-Authentication to work as seamlessly as 802.1X-Authentication.

See the sub-sections [“Interception of clients’ ARPs” on page 40.12](#) and [“Proxy DNS response” on page 40.13](#) for an details of the associated usage of the available intercept modes.

See the section [“Limitations on Allowed Feature Combinations” on page 40.26](#) for information about restrictions regarding combinations of authentication enhancements working together.

Examples To enable the intercept mode on the Web-Authentication server, resulting in the switch intercepting and replying to ARP and DNS messages from the same interface and IP address, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server mode intercept
```

To disable the intercept mode on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server mode intercept
```

To reset the intercept mode to the default setting of none on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server mode none
```

To enable the promiscuous mode on the Web-Authentication server, resulting in the switch intercepting and replying to any ARP or DNS messages from any IP address, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server mode promiscuous
```

To disable the promiscuous mode on the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server mode promiscuous
```

**Validation
Commands** **show running-config**

Related Commands **show auth-web-server**

auth-web-server ping-poll enable

This command enables the ping polling to the supplicant (client device) that is authenticated by Web-Authentication.

The **no** variant of this command disables the ping polling to the supplicant that is authenticated by Web-Authentication.

Syntax `auth-web-server ping-poll enable`
`no auth-web-server ping-poll enable`

Default The ping polling feature for Web-Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable the ping polling feature for Web-Authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ping-poll enable
```

To disable the ping polling feature for Web-Authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ping-poll enable
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server ping-poll failcount

This command sets a fail count for the ping polling feature when used with Web-Authentication. The **failcount** parameter specifies the number of unanswered pings. A supplicant (client device) is logged off when the number of unanswered pings are greater than the failcount set with this command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to resets the fail count for the ping polling feature to the default (5 pings).

Syntax `auth-web-server ping-poll failcount <1-100>`
`no auth-web-server ping-poll failcount`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| <code><1-100></code> | Count. |

Default The default failcount for ping polling is 5 pings.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the failcount of ping polling to 10 pings, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ping-poll failcount 10
```

To set the failcount of ping polling to default, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ping-poll failcount
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server ping-poll interval

This command is used to change the ping poll interval. The interval specifies the time period between pings when the supplicant (client device) is reachable.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset to the default period for ping polling (30 seconds).

Syntax `auth-web-server ping-poll interval <1-65535>`
`no auth-web-server ping-poll interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-65535> | Seconds. |

Default The interval for ping polling is 30 seconds by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the interval of ping polling to 60 seconds, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ping-poll interval 60
```

To set the interval of ping polling to the default (30 seconds), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ping-poll interval
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh

This command modifies the **reauth-timer-refresh** parameter for the Web-Authentication feature. The **reauth-timer-refresh** parameter specifies whether a re-authentication timer is reset and when the response from a supplicant (a client device) is received.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the **reauth-timer-refresh** parameter to the default setting (disabled).

Syntax `auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh`
`no auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh`

Default The `reauth-timer-refresh` parameter is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable the `reauth-timer-refresh` timer, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh
```

To disable the `reauth-timer-refresh` timer, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-
refresh
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server ping-poll timeout

This command modifies the ping poll **timeout** parameter for the Web-Authentication feature. The **timeout** parameter specifies the time in seconds to wait for a response to a ping packet.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the timeout of ping polling to the default (1 second).

Syntax `auth-web-server ping-poll timeout <1-30>`

`no auth-web-server ping-poll timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <1-30> | Seconds. |

Default The default timeout for ping polling is 1 second.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the timeout of ping polling to 2 seconds, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ping-poll timeout 2
```

To set the timeout of ping polling to the default (1 second), use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ping-poll timeout
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server port

This command sets the HTTP port number for the Web-Authentication server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the HTTP port number to the default (80).

Syntax `auth-web-server port <port-number>`

`no auth-web-server port`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-number></code> | Set the local Web-Authentication server port within the TCP port number range 1 to 65535. |

Default The Web-Authentication server HTTP port number is set to 80 by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the HTTP port number 8080 for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server port 8080
```

To reset to the default HTTP port number 80 for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server port
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server redirect-delay-time

Use this command to set the delay time in seconds before redirecting the supplicant to a specified URL when the supplicant is authorized.

Use the variant **no** to reset the delay time set previously.

Syntax `auth-web-server redirect-delay-time <5-60>`

`no auth-web-server redirect-delay-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>redirect-delay-time</code> | Set the delay time before jumping to a specified URL after the supplicant is authorized. |
| <code><5-60></code> | The time in seconds. |

Default The default redirect delay time is 5 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the delay time to 60 seconds for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server redirect-delay-time 60
```

To reset the delay time, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server redirect-delay-time
```

Validation Command `show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `auth-web-server redirect-url`
`show auth-web-server`
`auth-web-server blocking-mode`

auth-web-server redirect-url

This command sets a URL for supplicant (client device) authentication. When a supplicant is authorized it will be automatically redirected to the specified URL. Note that if the http redirect feature is used then this command is ignored.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the URL string set previously.

Syntax `auth-web-server redirect-url <url>`
`no auth-web-server redirect-url`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code><url></code> | URL (hostname or dotted IP notation). |

Default The redirect URL for the Web-Authentication server feature is not set by default (null).

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable and set redirect a URL string `www.alliedtelesis.com` for the Web-Authentication server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server redirect-url
http://www.alliedtelesis.com
```

To delete a redirect URL string, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server redirect-url
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

Related Commands `auth-web-server http-redirect`
`auth-web-server redirect-delay-time`

auth-web-server session-keep

This command enables the session-keep feature to jump to the original URL after being authorized by Web-Authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the session keep feature.

Syntax `auth-web-server session-keep`
`no auth-web-server session-keep`

Default The session-keep feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable the session-keep feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server session-keep
```

To disable the session-keep feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server session-keep
```

**Validation
Commands** `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server ssl

This command enables HTTPS functionality for the Web-Authentication server feature.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable HTTPS functionality for the Web-Authentication server.

Syntax `auth-web-server ssl`
`no auth-web-server ssl`

Default HTTPS functionality for the Web-Authentication server feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable HTTPS functionality for the Web-Authentication server feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server ssl
```

To disable HTTPS functionality for the Web-Authentication server feature, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server ssl
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

auth-web-server sslport

This command sets the HTTPS port number for the Web-Authentication server feature.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the HTTPS port number to the default port number (443) for the Web-Authentication server feature.

Syntax `auth-web-server sslport <1-65535>`

`no auth-web-server sslport`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-65535> | Set the local Web-Authentication server port within the TCP port number range 1 to 65535. |

Default The HTTPS port number for the Web-Authentication server feature is set to 443 by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the HTTPS port number to 4433 for the Web-Authentication server, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# auth-web-server sslport 4433
```

To reset the HTTPS port number for the Web-Authentication server to the default (443), use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no auth-web-server sslport
```

Validation Commands `show auth-web`
`show auth-web-server`
`show running-config`

copy proxy-autoconfig-file

Use this command to download the proxy auto configuration (PAC) file to your switch. The Web-Authentication supplicant can get the downloaded file from the system web server.

Syntax `copy <filename> proxy-autoconfig-file`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code><filename></code> | The URL of the PAC file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To download the PAC file to this device, use the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp://server/proxy.pac proxy-autoconfig-file
```

Related Commands [show proxy-autoconfig-file](#)
[erase proxy-autoconfig-file](#)

copy web-auth-https-file

Use this command to download the SSL server certificate for web-based authentication. The file must be in PEM (Privacy Enhanced Mail) format, and contain the private key and the server certificate.

Syntax `copy <filename> web-auth-https-file`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><filename></code> | The URL of the server certificate file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To download the server certificate file `verisign_cert.pem` from the TFTP server directory `server`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp://server/verisign_cert.pem web-auth-https-
file
```

Related Commands [auth-web-server ssl](#)
[erase web-auth-https-file](#)
[show auth-web-server](#)

erase proxy-autoconfig-file

Use this command to remove the proxy auto configuration file.

Syntax `erase proxy-autoconfig-file`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To remove the proxy auto configuration file, use the command:

```
awplus# erase proxy-autoconfig-file
```

Related Commands [show proxy-autoconfig-file](#)
[copy proxy-autoconfig-file](#)

erase web-auth-https-file

Use this command to remove the SSL server certificate for web-based authentication.

Syntax `erase web-auth-https-file`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To remove the SSL server certificate file for web-based authentication use the command:

```
awplus# erase web-auth-https-file
```

Related Commands [auth-web-server ssl](#)
[copy web-auth-https-file](#)
[show auth-web-server](#)

show auth two-step supplicant brief

This command displays the supplicant state of the two-step authentication feature on the interface.

Syntax `show auth two-step supplicant [interface <ifrange>] brief`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| interface | The interface selected for display. |
| <ifrange> | The interface which can be specified as <ifrange> - Switch port (e.g. port1.0.12) - Static channel group (e.g. sa3) - Dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po4) |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Do not mix interface types in a list. The specified interfaces must exist.

Example To display the supplicant state of the two-step authentication feature, enter the command:

```
awplus# show two-step supplicant interface
port1.0.12 brief
```

Output **Figure 41-1: Example output from the show auth two-step supplicant brief command**

```
interface port1.0.12
 authenticationMethod: dot1x/mac
 Two-Step Authentication:
   firstMethod:mac
   secondMethod:dot1x
 totalSupplicantNum: 1
 authorizedSupplicantNum: 1
 macBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
 dot1xAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 1
 webBasedAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
 otherAuthenticationSupplicantNum: 0
```

| Interface | VID | Mode | MAC Address | Status | FirstStep | SecondStep |
|------------|-----|------|-----------------|---------------|-----------|------------|
| ===== | === | ==== | ===== | ===== | ===== | ===== |
| port1.0.12 | 1 | D | 000b..db67.00f7 | Authenticated | Pass | Pass |

Related Commands [auth two-step enable](#)

show auth-mac

This command shows authentication information for MAC-based authentication.

Syntax `show auth-mac [all]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | Display all authentication information for each interface available on the switch. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display all MAC-based authentication information, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac all
```

Output **Figure 41-2: Example output from the show auth-mac command**

```
802.1X Port-Based Authentication Disabled
MAC-based Port Authentication Enabled
WEB-based Port Authentication Disabled
```

Related Commands [show dot1x](#)
[show auth-web](#)

show auth-mac diagnostics

This command shows MAC-Authentication diagnostics, optionally for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

If no interface is specified then authentication diagnostics are shown for all interfaces.

Syntax `show auth-mac diagnostics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| interface | Specify an interface to show |
| <interface-list> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface (e.g. vlan2), a switch port (e.g. port1.0.6), a static channel group (e.g. sa2) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. po2) ■ a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. vlan2-8, or port1.0.1-1.0.4, or sa1-2, or po1-2 ■ a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display authentication diagnostics for port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac diagnostics interface port1.0.6
```

Output **Figure 41-3: Example output from the show auth-mac diagnostics command**

```
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.6
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
    authEnterConnecting: 2
    authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
    authEnterAuthenticating: 2
    authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
    BackendResponses: 2
    BackendAccessChallenges: 1
    BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
    BackendAuthSuccess: 1
```

show auth-mac interface

This command shows the status for MAC-based authentication on the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Use the optional **diagnostics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interface. Use the optional **sessionstatistics** parameter to show authentication session statistics for the specified interface. Use the optional **statistics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interface. Use the optional **supplicant** (client device) parameter to show the supplicant state for the specified interface.

Syntax `show auth-mac interface <interface-list> [diagnostics|sessionstatistics|statistics|supplicant [brief]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>diagnostics</code> | Diagnostics. |
| <code>sessionstatistics</code> | Session statistics. |
| <code>statistics</code> | Statistics. |
| <code>supplicant</code> | Supplicant (client device). |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display MAC-based authentication status for `port1.0.2`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac interface port1.0.2
```

```
% Port-Control not configured on port1.0.2
```

To display MAC-Authentication diagnostics for port1.0.2, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac interface port1.0.2 diagnostics
```

```
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.2
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
    authEnterConnecting: 2
    authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
    authEnterAuthenticating: 2
    authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
  BackendResponses: 2
  BackendAccessChallenges: 1
  BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
  BackendAuthSuccess: 1
```

To display authentication session statistics for port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac interface port1.0.6 sessionstatistics
```

```
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
  session user name: manager
  session authentication method: Remote server
  session time: 19440 secs
  session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

To display MAC-Authentication statistics for port1.0.6 enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac interface port1.0.6 statistics
```

To display the MAC authenticated supplicant on interface port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac interface port1.0.6 supplicant
```

Related Commands

- [show auth-web diagnostics](#)
- [show dot1x sessionstatistics](#)
- [show dot1x statistics interface](#)
- [show dot1x supplicant interface](#)

show auth-mac sessionstatistics

This command shows authentication session statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Syntax `show auth-mac sessionstatistics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify an interface to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display output displaying MAC-Authentication session statistics for `port1.0.2`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac sessionstatistics interface port1.0.2
```

Output **Figure 41-4: Example output from the show auth-mac sessionstatistics command**

```
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.2
  session user name: manager
    session authentication method: Remote server
    session time: 19440 secs
    session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

show auth-mac statistics interface

This command shows the authentication statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Syntax `show auth-mac statistics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify ports to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display MAC-Authentication statistics for `port1.0.2`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac statistics interface port1.0.2
```

Related Commands [show dot1x interface](#)

show auth-mac supplicant

This command shows the supplicant (client device) state when MAC-Authentication is configured for the switch. This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

Syntax `show auth-mac supplicant [<macadd>] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <macadd> | Mac (hardware) address of the Supplicant. Entry format is HHHH.HHHH.HHHH (hexadecimal). |
| brief | Brief summary of the Supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the MAC authenticated supplicant for MAC address 00d0.59ab.7037, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac supplicant 00d0.59ab.7037
```

```
Web authentication server
Server status: enabled
Server address: -
HTTP Port No: 80
Security: enabled
Certification: default
SSL Port No: 443
Redirect URL:
Redirect Delay Time: 30
HTTP Redirect: disabled
Session keep: disabled
PingPolling: disable
PingInterval: 30
Timeout: 1
FailCount: 5
ReauthFresh: disabled
```

show auth-mac supplicant interface

This command shows the supplicant (client device) state for the MAC authenticated interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port. This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

Syntax `show auth-mac supplicant [interface <interface-list>] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify ports to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of the supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display the MAC authenticated supplicant on the interface `port1.0.2`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-mac supplicant interface port1.0.2
```

show auth-web

This command shows authentication information for Web-based authentication.

Syntax `show auth-web [all]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| all | Display all authentication information for each authenticated interface. This can be a static channel (or static aggregator), or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group, or a switch port. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display all Web-Authentication information, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web all
```

Output Figure 41-5: Example output from the show auth-web command

```
awplus# show auth-web all
802.1X Port-Based Authentication Enabled
MAC-based Port Authentication Disabled
WEB-based Port Authentication Enabled
RADIUS server address (auth): 150.87.17.192:1812
  Last radius message id: 4
Authentication Info for interface port1.0.1
portEnabled: true - portControl: Auto
portStatus: Authorized
reAuthenticate: disabled
reAuthPeriod: 3600
PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
CD: adminControlledDirections: in
KT: keyTxEnabled: false
critical: disabled
guestVlan: disabled
authFailVlan: disabled
dynamicVlanCreation: disabled
hostMode: single-host
dot1x: enabled
  protocolVersion: 1
authMac: disabled
authWeb: enabled
  method: PAP
  maxAuthFail: 3
  packetForwarding:
    10.0.0.1 80/tcp
    dns
    dhcp
twoStepAuthentication:
  configured: enabled
  actual: enabled
supplicantMac: none
Supplicant name: oha
Supplicant address: 000d.6013.5398
  authenticationMethod: WEB-based Authentication
  Two-Step Authentication:
    firstAuthentication: Pass - Method: dot1x
    secondAuthentication: Pass - Method: web
portStatus: Authorized - currentId: 3
abort:F fail:F start:F timeout:F success:T
PAE: state: Authenticated - portMode: Auto
PAE: reAuthCount: 0 - rxRespId: 0
PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2
BE: state: Idle - reqCount: 0 - idFromServer: 2
CD: adminControlledDirections: in - operControlledDirections: in
CD: bridgeDetected: false
KR: rxKey: false
KT: keyAvailable: false - keyTxEnabled: false
```

Related Commands [show dot1x](#)
[show auth-mac](#)

show auth-web diagnostics

This command shows Web-Authentication diagnostics, optionally for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

If no interface is specified then authentication diagnostics are shown for all interfaces.

Syntax `show auth-web diagnostics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify ports to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display authentication diagnostics for `port1.0.6`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web diagnostics interface port1.0.6
```

Output **Figure 41-6: Example output from the show auth-web diagnostics command**

```
Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.6
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
    authEnterConnecting: 2
    authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
    authEnterAuthenticating: 2
    authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
    authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
    authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
    authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
    BackendResponses: 2
    BackendAccessChallenges: 1
    BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
    BackendAuthSuccess: 1
```

Related Commands [show dot1x interface](#)

show auth-web interface

This command shows the status for Web based authentication on the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Use the optional **diagnostics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interface. Use the optional **sessionstatistics** parameter to show authentication session statistics for the specified interface. Use the optional **statistics** parameter to show authentication diagnostics for the specified interface. Use the optional **supplicant** (client device) parameter to show the supplicant state for the specified interface.

Syntax `show auth-web interface <interface-list> [diagnostics|sessionstatistics|statistics|supplicant [brief]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>diagnostics</code> | Diagnostics. |
| <code>sessionstatistics</code> | Session statistics. |
| <code>statistics</code> | Statistics. |
| <code>supplicant</code> | Supplicant (client device). |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the Web based authentication status for `port1.0.6`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.6
```

If web-based authentication is not configured, the output will be

```
% Port-Control not configured on port1.0.6
```

To display the Web based authentication status for `port1.0.1`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.1
```

```

awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.1
Authentication Info for interface port1.0.1
  portEnabled: true - portControl: Auto
  portStatus: Authorized
  reAuthenticate: disabled
  reAuthPeriod: 3600
  PAE: quietPeriod: 60 - maxReauthReq: 2 - txPeriod: 30
  BE: suppTimeout: 30 - serverTimeout: 30
  CD: adminControlledDirections: in
  KT: keyTxEnabled: false
  critical: disabled
  guestVlan: disabled
  authFailVlan: disabled
  dynamicVlanCreation: disabled
  hostMode: single-host
  dot1x: enabled
    protocolVersion: 1
  authMac: disabled
  authWeb: enabled
    method: PAP
    maxAuthFail: 3
    packetForwarding:
      10.0.0.1 80/tcp
      dns
      dhcp
  twoStepAuthentication:
    configured: enabled
    actual: enabled
  supplicantMac: none
    
```

To display Web-Authentication diagnostics for port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.6 diagnostics
```

```

Authentication Diagnostics for interface port1.0.6
  Supplicant address: 00d0.59ab.7037
  authEnterConnecting: 2
  authEaplogoffWhileConnecting: 1
  authEnterAuthenticating: 2
  authSuccessWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authTimeoutWhileAuthenticating: 1
  authFailWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authEaplogoggWhileAuthenticating: 0
  authReauthsWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEapstartWhileAuthenticated: 0
  authEaplogoffWhileAuthenticated: 0
  BackendResponses: 2
  BackendAccessChallenges: 1
  BackendOtherrequestToSupplicant: 3
  BackendAuthSuccess: 1
    
```

To display Web-Authentication session statistics for port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.6 sessionstatistics
```

```
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
  session user name: manager
    session authentication method: Remote server
    session time: 19440 secs
    session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

To display Web-Authentication statistics for port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web statistics interface port1.0.6
```

To display the Web-Authenticated supplicant on interface port1.0.6, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web interface port1.0.6 supplicant
```

Related Commands

- [show auth-web diagnostics](#)
- [show dot1x sessionstatistics](#)
- [show dot1x statistics interface](#)
- [show dot1x supplicant interface](#)

show auth-web sessionstatistics

This command shows authentication session statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Syntax `show auth-web sessionstatistics [interface <interface-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>interface</code> | Specify ports to show. |
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) ■ a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> ■ a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display authentication statistics for `port1.0.6`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web sessionstatistics interface port1.0.6
```

Output **Figure 41-7: Example output from the show auth-web sessionstatistics command**

```
Authentication session statistics for interface port1.0.6
  session user name: manager
    session authentication method: Remote server
    session time: 19440 secs
    session terminat cause: Not terminated yet
```

show auth-web statistics interface

This command shows the authentication statistics for the specified interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port.

Syntax `show auth-web statistics interface <interface-list>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1, port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display Web-Authentication statistics for `port1.0.4`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show dot1x statistics interface port1.0.4
```

Related Commands [show dot1x interface](#)

show auth-web supplicant

This command shows the supplicant (client device) state when Web-Authentication is configured for the switch. This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

Syntax `show auth-web supplicant [<macadd>] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <macadd> | Mac (hardware) address of the supplicant. Entry format is HHHH.HHHH.HHHH (hexadecimal). |
| brief | Brief summary of the supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display Web authenticated supplicant information on the switch, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web supplicant
```

show auth-web supplicant interface

This command shows the supplicant (client device) state for the Web authenticated interface, which may be a static channel (or static aggregator) or a dynamic (or LACP) channel group or a switch port. This command shows a summary when the optional **brief** parameter is used.

Syntax `show auth-web supplicant interface <interface-list> [brief]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface-list></code> | <p>The interfaces or ports to configure. An interface-list can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interface (e.g. <code>vlan2</code>), a switch port (e.g. <code>port1.0.6</code>), a static channel group (e.g. <code>sa2</code>) or a dynamic (LACP) channel group (e.g. <code>po2</code>) a continuous range of interfaces, ports, static channel groups or dynamic (LACP) channel groups separated by a hyphen; e.g. <code>vlan2-8</code>, or <code>port1.0.1-1.0.4</code>, or <code>sa1-2</code>, or <code>po1-2</code> a comma-separated list of the above; e.g. <code>port1.0.1,port1.0.4-1.0.6</code>. Do not mix interface types in a list <p>The specified interfaces must exist.</p> |
| <code>brief</code> | Brief summary of the supplicant state. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To display the Web authenticated supplicant on the interface `port1.0.3`, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web supplicant interface port1.0.3
```

To display brief summary output for the Web authenticated supplicant, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web supplicant brief
```

show auth-web-server

This command shows the Web-Authentication server configuration and status on the switch.

Syntax show auth-web-server

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display Web-Authentication server configuration and status, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth-web-server
```

Output **Figure 41-8: Example output from the show auth-web-server command**

```
Web authentication server
Server status: enabled
Server mode: none
Server address: 192.168.1.1/24
  DHCP server enabled
  DHCP lease time: 20
  DHCP WPAD Option URL: http://192.168.1.1/proxy.pac
HTTP Port No: 80
Security: disabled
Certification: default
SSL Port No: 443
Redirect URL: --
Redirect Delay Time: 5
HTTP Redirect: enabled
Session keep: disabled
PingPolling: disabled
PingInterval: 30
Timeout: 1
FailCount: 5
ReauthTimerReFresh: disabled
```

Related Commands

- [auth-web-server gateway](#)
- [auth-web-server http-redirect](#)
- [auth-web-server ipaddress](#)
- [auth-web-server port](#)
- [auth-web-server redirect-delay-time](#)
- [auth-web-server redirect-url](#)
- [auth-web-server session-keep](#)
- [auth-web-server ssl](#)
- [auth-web-server sslport](#)

show proxy-autoconfig-file

This command displays the contents of the proxy auto configuration (PAC) file.

Syntax show proxy-autoconfig-file

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the contents of the proxy auto configuration (PAC) file, enter the command:

```
awplus# show auth proxy-autoconfig-file
```

Output **Figure 41-9: Example output from the show proxy-autoconfig-file**

```
function FindProxyForURL(url,host)
{
  if (isPlainHostName(host) ||
      isInNet(host, "192.168.1.0", "255.255.255.0")) {
    return "DIRECT";
  }
  else {
    return "PROXY 192.168.110.1:8080";
  }
}
```

Related Commands [copy proxy-autoconfig-file](#)
[erase proxy-autoconfig-file](#)

Chapter 42: AAA Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| AAA Introduction | 42.2 |
| Available Functions and Server Types..... | 42.2 |
| Server Groups and Method Lists | 42.3 |
| Configuring AAA Login Authentication..... | 42.5 |
| AAA Configuration Tasks | 42.5 |
| Sample Authentication Configurations | 42.7 |
| Sample 802.1X-Authentication Configuration..... | 42.7 |
| Sample MAC-Authentication Configuration..... | 42.8 |
| Sample Web-Authentication Configuration | 42.9 |
| Sample Tri-Authentication Configuration | 42.10 |

AAA Introduction

AAA is the collective title for the three related functions of Authentication, Authorization and Accounting. These function can be applied in a variety of methods with a variety of servers. The purpose of the AAA commands is to map instances of the AAA functions to sets of servers.

The Authentication function can be performed in multiple contexts, such as authentication of users logging in at a console, or 802.1X-Authentication of devices connecting to Ethernet ports.

For each of these contexts, you may want to use different sets of servers for examining the proffered authentication credentials and deciding if they are valid. AAA Authentication commands enable you to specify which servers will be used for different types of authentication.

Available Functions and Server Types

Authentication, Authorization and Accounting functions are available.

Authentication is performed in the following contexts:

- Login authentication of user shell sessions on the console port, and via telnet/SSH
- Enable password authentication for user shell sessions on the console port, and via telnet/SSH (TACACS+ only)
- 802.1X-Authentication of devices connecting to switch ports
- MAC-Authentication of devices connecting to switch ports
- Web-based authentication of devices connecting to switch ports

Authorization is performed in the following context:

- TACACS+ login authentication. Note that with the AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation:
 - « authorization cannot be performed independently of the login authentication process
 - « authorization will not be attempted if enable password authentication is configured
 - « there are no authorization commands available

Accounting is performed in the following contexts:

- Accounting of console, telnet, and SSH login sessions
- Accounting of commands executed within user shell sessions (TACACS+ only)
- Accounting of 802.1X-Authenticated connections
- Accounting of MAC-Authenticated connections
- Accounting of Web-Authenticated connections

The three types of servers that can be used are:

- Local user database
- RADIUS servers
- TACACS+ servers

Server Groups and Method Lists

There are two constructs that underlie the structure of the AAA commands:

- Server groups are lists of RADIUS servers
- Method Lists are lists of server types

Server groups

A server group is defined by the command **aaa group server**. This command puts you into Server Group configuration mode. Once in that mode you can add servers to the group by using the command **Chapter 45, server (Server Group)**.

Any number of servers can be added to a group. Typically, you will add servers which have already been configured by the command **radius-server host**. If you add a server that has not yet been configured by the command **radius-server host**, you will receive a warning that the server has not yet been configured, but the command will be accepted.

There is one server group that is always present on the switch by default that cannot be removed. It is the group simply named **radius** that comprises all servers that have been configured using the command **radius-server host**. As soon as a server is configured by the command **radius-server host**, it is automatically a member of the server group **radius** and cannot be removed from it.

Method lists

A method list defines the set of server types that you want to be used for authenticating a user/device, and the order in which you want the server types to be used.

- You may want the usernames proffered for logging in at the console to be checked for in the local user database. You can create a server list that specifies **local**.
- You may want to check the TACACS+ servers first, and resort to the local user database if none of the TACACS+ servers respond. You can create a server list that specifies **group tacacs+** first, followed by **local**.
- You may want to check the RADIUS servers first, and resort to the local user database if none of the RADIUS servers respond. You can create a server list that specifies **group radius** first, followed by **local**.

A method list defines the servers where authentication requests are sent. The first server listed is used to authenticate users; if that server fails then the next authentication server type in the method list is selected. This process continues until there is a successful authentication or until all server types fail.

When a user attempts to log in, the switch sends an authentication request to the first authentication server in the method list. If the first server in the list is reachable and it contains a username and password matching the authentication request, the user is authenticated and the login succeeds. If the authentication server denies the authentication request because of an incorrect username or password, the user login fails. If the first server in the method list is unreachable, the switch sends the request to the next server in the list, and so on.

For example, if the method list specifies `group tacacs+ local`, and a user attempts to log in with a password that does not match a user entry in the first TACACS+ server, if this TACACS+ server denies the authentication request, then the switch does not try any other TACACS+ servers not the local user database; the user login fails.

Default method lists

For every authentication or accounting type, it is always possible to define a method list called **default**. For most of the authentication and accounting types, the only method list that can be defined is default.

As soon as the default method list is defined for a given authentication or accounting type, it is automatically applied as the method list to be used for any instance of that type of authentication or accounting, except for instances to which another named method list has been specifically applied.

Configuring AAA Login Authentication

To configure AAA authentication, create default or a named method list for different authentication types. In the case of login authentication, the named method lists are then applied to consoles or VTY lines.

AAA Configuration Tasks

To define how a given accounting or authentication type will be applied to a given port or line:

- either create a server group using the **aaa group server** command (RADIUS only),
- or create a method list for the authentication or accounting type as required,
- then apply that method list to the port or line as required.

Step 1: Define a group of RADIUS servers

Create a server group using the **aaa group server** command.

To create a RADIUS server group named `GROUP1` with hosts `192.168.1.1`, `192.168.2.1` and `192.168.3.1`, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius GROUP1
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.1.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.2.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.3.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
```

Step 2: Specify the login authentication or accounting method list

Create a method list for the authentication (**aaa authentication login**) or accounting (**aaa accounting login**) type as required.

To configure a user login authentication method list called `USERS` to use first all available RADIUS servers for user login authentication and then the local user database, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
local
```

To configure RADIUS accounting for login shell sessions, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting login default start-stop group
radius
```

To configure a user login authentication method list called `USERS` to use first the TACACS+ servers for user login authentication and then the local user database, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication login USERS group tacacs+
local
```

Step 3: Apply method list to interface port or line

Apply that method list to the port or line as required.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# login authentication USERS
```

For most Authentication and Accounting types, the only possible server list is **default**, and the only server that can be put into it is **radius**. You will typically use all RADIUS servers, so **group radius** can be used, rather than having to create a specific user group. Often the configuration of a given Authentication or Accounting type will consist of a single command, the command that defines the default server list, which contains just one server.

AAA 802.1X-Authentication configuration

AAA 802.1X-Authentication will typically be configured with the following commands.

To enable 802.1X-Authentication globally for all RADIUS servers, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

Sample Authentication Configurations

Sample 802.1X-Authentication Configuration

See the below sample configuration script for a sample 802.1X-Authentication configuration. Copy and paste then edit the sample 802.1X-Authentication configuration in your config file. See the [edit](#) command in the [Chapter 7, File Management Commands](#) for further information.

Output

Figure 42-1: Sample 802.1X-Authentication configuration

```
!  
radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server  
!  
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius  
!  
radius-server local  
server enable  
nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server  
user guest password guest!  
!  
no spanning-tree rstp enable  
!  
interface port1.0.1  
switchport  
switchport mode access  
dot1x port-control auto  
!  
interface vlan1  
ip address 192.168.1.120/24  
!
```

The 802.1X-Authentication feature needs the [aaa authentication dot1x](#) command and the [dot1x port-control](#) command configured on an interface. See [Chapter 43, AAA Commands](#) and [Chapter 39, 802.1X Commands](#) for command information to edit this configuration.

The local RADIUS Server has been configured to use 802.1X-Authentication in this sample configuration. See the [radius-server local](#) and [server enable](#) commands in [Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands](#) for command information to edit this sample configuration.

This sample configuration enables 802.1X-Authentication on interface `vlan1` with IP address `192.168.1.120`. Change the VLAN ID and IP address as required for your configuration.

Sample MAC-Authentication Configuration

See the below sample configuration script for a sample MAC-Authentication configuration. Copy, paste, and edit the sample MAC-Authentication configuration in the config file.

See the **edit** command in the **Chapter 7, File Management Commands** for further information.

Output

Figure 42-2: Sample MAC-Authentication configuration

```
!
radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server
!
aaa authentication auth-mac default group radius
!
radius-server local
server enable
nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server
user 00-d0-59-ab-70-37 password 00-d0-59-ab-70-37
!
no spanning-tree rstp enable
!
interface port1.0.1
switchport
switchport mode access
auth-mac enable
!
interface vlan1
ip address 192.168.1.120/24
!
```

The MAC-Authentication feature needs the **aaa authentication auth-mac** and the **auth-mac enable** commands configured on an interface. See **Chapter 43, AAA Commands** and **Chapter 41, Authentication Commands** for command information to edit this configuration.

The local RADIUS Server has been configured to use MAC-Authentication in this sample configuration. See the **radius-server local** and **server enable** commands in **Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands** for command information to edit this sample configuration.

See the **user (RADIUS server)** command in **Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands** for command information to edit the MAC address of the supplicant for use with local RADIUS server as the RADIUS user name and the user password, as shown in the above configuration.

This configuration enables MAC-Authentication on `vlan1` with IP address `192.168.1.120`. Change the interface VLAN ID, MAC, and IP addresses as needed in your configuration.

Sample Web-Authentication Configuration

See the below sample configuration script for a sample Web-Authentication configuration. Copy, paste, and edit the sample Web-Authentication configuration for your config file.

See the **edit** command in the **Chapter 7, File Management Commands** for further information.

Output

Figure 42-3: Sample Web-Authentication configuration

```
!  
radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server  
!  
aaa authentication auth-web default group radius  
!  
radius-server local  
server enable  
nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server  
user guest encrypted password  
l+lWcLjLm29bCAXwWRPHXK0PF1sA7gNpR+P7wO4kwQQ=  
!  
no spanning-tree rstp enable  
!  
interface port1.0.1  
switchport  
switchport mode access  
auth-web enable  
!  
interface vlan1  
ip address 192.168.1.120/24  
!
```

The Web-Authentication feature needs the **aaa authentication auth-web** and the **auth-web enable** commands configured on an interface. See **Chapter 43, AAA Commands** and **Chapter 41, Authentication Commands** for command information to edit this configuration.

The local RADIUS Server has been configured to use Web-Authentication in this sample configuration. See the **radius-server local** and **server enable** commands in **Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands** for command information to edit this sample configuration.

The above sample Web-Authentication configuration requires the user name 'guest' with password 'guest!' on IP address 192.168.1.120 from interface port1.0.1.

Sample Tri-Authentication Configuration

See the below sample configuration script for a sample tri-authentication configuration that configures 802.1X-Authentication, MAC-Authentication, and Web-Authentication on the same interface. Copy, paste, and edit the sample tri-authentication configuration for your config file. See the **edit** command in the **Chapter 7, File Management Commands** for further information.

Output

Figure 42-4: Sample tri-authentication configuration

```

!
 radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server
!
 aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
 aaa authentication auth-mac default group radius
 aaa authentication auth-web default group radius
!
 radius-server local
  server enable
  nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server
  user guest password guest!
  user 00-d0-59-ab-70-37 password 00-d0-59-ab-70-37
!
 no spanning-tree rstp enable
!
 interface port1.0.1
  switchport
  switchport mode access
  dot1x port-control auto
  auth-mac enable
  auth-web enable
!
 interface vlan1
  ip address 192.168.1.120/24
!

```

The 802.1X-Authentication feature needs the **aaa authentication dot1x** command and the **dot1x port-control** command configured on an interface. See **Chapter 43, AAA Commands** and **Chapter 39, 802.1X Commands** for command information to edit this configuration.

The MAC-Authentication feature needs the **aaa authentication auth-mac** and the **auth-mac enable** commands configured on an interface. See **Chapter 43, AAA Commands** and **Chapter 41, Authentication Commands** for command information to edit this configuration.

The Web-Authentication feature needs the **aaa authentication auth-web** and the **auth-web enable** commands configured on an interface. See **Chapter 43, AAA Commands** and **Chapter 41, Authentication Commands** for command information to edit this configuration.

The local RADIUS Server has been configured to use tri-authentication in this sample configuration. See the **radius-server local** and **server enable** commands in **Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands** for command information to edit this sample configuration.

This sample tri-authentication configuration requires a user name 'guest' with password 'guest!' on IP address 192.168.1.120 from port1.0.1. Note this sample also configures 802.1X- and MAC-Authentication on vlan1 with IP address 192.168.1.120. Change the interface VLAN ID, MAC and IP address as needed for your configuration.

Note that when tri-authentication is applied to the same interface then the order of execution is MAC-Authentication first, then 802.1X- or Web-Authentication, if MAC-Authentication fails.

Chapter 43: AAA Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Command List | 43.2 |
| aaa accounting auth-mac default | 43.2 |
| aaa accounting auth-web default | 43.4 |
| aaa accounting commands | 43.6 |
| aaa accounting dot1x | 43.8 |
| aaa accounting login | 43.10 |
| aaa accounting update | 43.12 |
| aaa authentication auth-mac | 43.13 |
| aaa authentication auth-web | 43.14 |
| aaa authentication dot1x | 43.15 |
| aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ | 43.16 |
| aaa authentication enable default local | 43.18 |
| aaa authentication login | 43.19 |
| aaa group server | 43.21 |
| aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time | 43.22 |
| aaa local authentication attempts max-fail | 43.23 |
| accounting login | 43.24 |
| clear aaa local user lockout | 43.25 |
| debug aaa | 43.26 |
| login authentication | 43.27 |
| show debugging aaa | 43.28 |
| undebug aaa | 43.28 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for AAA commands for Authentication, Authorization and Accounting. For more information, see [Chapter 42, AAA Introduction and Configuration](#).

aaa accounting auth-mac default

This command configures a default accounting method list for MAC-based Authentication. The default accounting method list specifies what type of accounting messages are sent and specifies which RADIUS Servers the accounting messages are sent to. The default accounting method list is automatically applied to interfaces with MAC-based Authentication enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable AAA accounting for MAC-based Authentication globally.

Syntax

```
aaa accounting auth-mac default {start-stop|stop-only|none}
    group {<group-name>|radius}

no aaa accounting auth-mac default
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| start-stop | Start and stop records to be sent. |
| stop-only | Stop records to be sent. |
| none | No accounting record to be sent. |
| <group-name> | Server group name. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers |

Default RADIUS accounting for MAC-based Authentication is disabled by default

Mode Global Configuration

Usage There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by [radius-server host](#) command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the [aaa group server](#) command

The accounting event to send to the RADIUS server is configured with the following options:

- **start-stop** : sends a **start** accounting message at the beginning of a session and a **stop** accounting message at the end of the session.
- **stop-only** : sends a **stop** accounting message at the end of a session.
- **none** : disables accounting.

Examples To enable RADIUS accounting for MAC-based Authentication, and use all available RADIUS Servers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting auth-mac default start-stop
group radius
```

To disable RADIUS accounting for MAC-based Authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting auth-mac default
```

Related Commands [aaa authentication auth-mac](#)

aaa accounting auth-web default

This command configures a default accounting method list for Web-based Port Authentication. The default accounting method list specifies what type of accounting messages are sent and specifies which RADIUS Servers the accounting messages are sent to. The default accounting method list is automatically applied to interfaces with Web-based Authentication enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable AAA accounting for Web-based Port Authentication globally.

Syntax `aaa accounting auth-web default {start-stop|stop-only|none}
group {<group-name>|radius}`

`no aaa accounting auth-web default`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| start-stop | Start and stop records to be sent. |
| stop-only | Stop records to be sent. |
| none | No accounting record to be sent. |
| <group-name> | Server group name. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers. |

Default RADIUS accounting for Web-based Port Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by **radius-server host** command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the **aaa group server** command

Configure the accounting event to be sent to the RADIUS server with the following options:

- **start-stop** : sends a **start** accounting message at the beginning of a session and a **stop** accounting message at the end of the session.
- **stop-only** : sends a **stop** accounting message at the end of a session.
- **none** : disables accounting.

Examples To enable RADIUS accounting for Web-based Authentication, and use all available RADIUS Servers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting auth-web default start-stop
group radius
```

To disable RADIUS accounting for Web-based Authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting auth-web default
```

Related Commands [aaa authentication auth-web](#)

aaa accounting commands

Use this command to configure and enable TACACS+ command accounting. When command accounting is enabled, information about a command entered at a specified privilege level on a device is sent to a TACACS+ server. To account for all commands entered on a device you need to configure command accounting for each discrete privilege level. A command accounting record includes the command as entered for the specified privilege level, the date and time each command execution finished, and the username of the user who executed the command.

This command creates a default method list that is applied to every console and vty line. The **stop-only** parameter indicates that an accounting message is sent to the TACACS+ server when a command has stopped executing.

Note that up to four TACACS+ servers can be configured for accounting. The servers are checked for reachability in the order they are configured and only the first reachable server is used. If no server is found the accounting message is dropped.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable command accounting.

Syntax `aaa accounting commands <1-15> default stop-only group tacacs+`
`no aaa accounting commands <1-15> default`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-15> | The privilege level, in the range 1 to 15. |

Default TACACS+ command accounting is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When command accounting is enabled, the command as entered is included in the accounting packets sent to the TACACS+ accounting server.

You cannot enable command accounting if a trigger is configured. An error message is displayed if you attempt to enable command accounting and a trigger is configured.

The **show tech-support** command runs a number of commands and each command is accounted separately.

When the **copy <filename> running-config** command is executed all the commands of a configuration file copied into the running-config are accounted separately.

Examples To configure command accounting for privilege level 15 commands, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting commands 15 default stop-only
group tacacs+
```

To disable command accounting for privilege level 15 commands, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting commands 15 default
```

Related Commands **aaa authentication login**
 aaa accounting login
 accounting login
 tacacs-server host

aaa accounting dot1x

This command configures the default accounting method list for IEEE 802.1X-based Authentication. The default accounting method list specifies what type of accounting messages are sent and specifies which RADIUS Servers the accounting messages are sent to. The default accounting method list is automatically applied to interfaces with IEEE 802.1X-based Authentication enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable AAA accounting for 802.1X-based Port Authentication globally.

Syntax

```
aaa accounting dot1x default {start-stop|stop-only|none}
    group {<group-name>|radius}

no aaa accounting dot1x default
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| start-stop | Start and stop records to be sent. |
| stop-only | Stop records to be sent. |
| none | No accounting record to be sent. |
| <group-name> | Server group name. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers. |

Default RADIUS accounting for 802.1X-based Port Authentication is disabled by default (there is no default server set by default).

Mode Global Configuration

Usage There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages will be sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by **radius-server host** command.
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the **aaa group server** command.

The accounting event to send to the RADIUS server is configured by the following options:

- **start-stop** : sends a **start** accounting message at the beginning of a session and a **stop** accounting message at the end of the session.
- **stop-only** : sends a **stop** accounting message at the end of a session.
- **none** : disables accounting.

Examples To enable RADIUS accounting for 802.1X-based Authentication, and use all available RADIUS Servers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group
radius
```

To disable RADIUS accounting for 802.1X-based Authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting dot1x default
```

Related Commands

- [aaa accounting update](#)
- [aaa authentication dot1x](#)
- [aaa group server](#)
- [dot1x port-control](#)
- [radius-server host](#)

aaa accounting login

This command configures RADIUS and TACACS+ accounting for login shell sessions. The specified method list name can be used by the **accounting login** command in the Line Configuration mode. If the **default** parameter is specified, then this creates a default method list that is applied to every console and vty line, unless another accounting method list is applied on that line.

Note that unlimited RADIUS servers and up to four TACACS+ servers can be configured and consulted for accounting. The first server configured is regarded as the primary server and if the primary server fails then the backup servers are consulted in turn. A backup server is consulted if the primary server fails, i.e. is unreachable.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove an accounting method list for login shell sessions configured by an **aaa accounting login** command. If the method list being deleted is already applied to a console or vty line, accounting on that line will be disabled. If the default method list name is removed by this command, it will disable accounting on every line that has the default accounting configuration.

Syntax

```
aaa accounting login {default|<list-name>} {start-stop|stop-only|none}
    {group {radius|tacacs+|<group-name>}}
```

```
no aaa accounting login {default|<list-name>}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| default | Default accounting method list. |
| <list-name> | Named accounting method list. |
| start-stop | Start and stop records to be sent. |
| stop-only | Stop records to be sent. |
| none | No accounting record to be sent. |
| group | Specify the servers or server group where accounting packets are sent. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers configured by the radius-server host command on page 45.6. |
| tacacs+ | Use all TACACS+ servers configured by the tacacs-server host command. |
| <group-name> | Use the specified RADIUS server group, as configured by the aaa group server command. |

Default Accounting for login shell sessions is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command enables you to define a named accounting method list. The items that you define in the accounting options are:

- the types of accounting packets that will be sent
- the set of servers to which the accounting packets will be sent

You can define a default method list with the name `default` and any number of other named method lists. The `<list-name>` for any method list that you define can then be used as the `<list-name>` parameter in the **accounting login** command available from Line Configuration mode.

If the method list name already exists, the command will replace the existing configuration with the new one.

There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by **radius-server host** command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the **aaa group server** command

There is one way to define servers where TACACS+ accounting messages are sent:

- **group tacacs+** : use all TACACS+ servers configured by **tacacs-server host** command

The accounting event to send to the RADIUS or TACACS+ server is configured with the following options:

- **start-stop** : sends a **start** accounting message at the beginning of a session and a **stop** accounting message at the end of the session.
- **stop-only** : sends a **stop** accounting message at the end of a session.
- **none** : disables accounting.

Examples To configure RADIUS accounting for login shell sessions, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting login default start-stop group
radius
```

To configure TACACS+ accounting for login shell sessions, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting login default start-stop group
tacacs+
```

To reset the configuration of the default accounting list, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting login default
```

Related Commands

- aaa accounting commands**
- aaa authentication login**
- aaa accounting login**
- aaa accounting update**
- accounting login**
- radius-server host**
- tacacs-server host**

aaa accounting update

This command enables periodic accounting reporting to either the RADIUS or TACACS+ accounting server(s) wherever login accounting has been configured.

Note that unlimited RADIUS servers and up to four TACACS+ servers can be configured and consulted for accounting. The first server configured is regarded as the primary server and if the primary server fails then the backup servers are consulted in turn. A backup server is consulted if the primary server fails, i.e. is unreachable.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable periodic accounting reporting to the accounting server(s).

Syntax `aaa accounting update [periodic <1-65535>]`
`no aaa accounting update`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>periodic</code> | Send accounting records periodically. |
| <code><1-65535></code> | The interval to send accounting updates (in minutes). The default is 30 minutes. |

Default Periodic accounting update is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to enable the device to send periodic AAA login accounting reports to the accounting server. When periodic accounting report is enabled, interim accounting records are sent according to the interval specified by the **periodic** parameter. The accounting updates are start messages.

If the **no** variant of this command is used to disable periodic accounting reporting, any interval specified by the **periodic** parameter is reset to the default of 30 minutes when accounting reporting is reenabled, unless this interval is specified.

Examples To configure the switch to send period accounting updates every 30 minutes, the default period, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting update
```

To configure the switch to send period accounting updates every 10 minutes, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa accounting update periodic 10
```

To disable periodic accounting update wherever accounting has been configured, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa accounting update
```

Related Commands [aaa accounting auth-mac default](#)
[aaa accounting auth-web default](#)
[aaa accounting dot1x](#)
[aaa accounting login](#)

aaa authentication auth-mac

This command enables MAC-based Port Authentication globally and allows you to specify an authentication method list. It is automatically applied to every interface running MAC-based Port Authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to globally disable MAC-based Port Authentication.

Syntax `aaa authentication auth-mac default group {<group-name>|radius}`
`no aaa authentication auth-mac default`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| <group-name> | Server group name. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers. |

Default MAC-based Port Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by [radius-server host](#) command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the [aaa group server](#) command

All configured RADIUS Servers are automatically members of the server group **radius**. If a server is added to a named group <group-name>, it also remains a member of the group **radius**.

Examples To enable MAC-based Port Authentication globally for all RADIUS servers, and use all available RADIUS servers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-mac default group
radius
```

To disable MAC-based Port Authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication auth-mac default
```

Related Commands [aaa accounting auth-mac default](#)
[auth-mac enable](#)

aaa authentication auth-web

This command enables Web-based Port Authentication globally and allows you to enable an authentication method list (in this case, a list of RADIUS Servers). It is automatically applied to every interface running Web-based Port Authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to globally disable Web-based Port Authentication.

Syntax `aaa authentication auth-web default group {<group-name>|radius}`
`no aaa authentication auth-web default`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code><group-name></code> | Server group name. |
| <code>radius</code> | Use all RADIUS servers. |

Default Web-based Port Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by **radius-server host** command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the **aaa group server** command

Examples To enable Web-based Port Authentication globally for all RADIUS servers, and use all available RADIUS servers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication auth-web default group
radius
```

To disable Web-based Port Authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication auth-web default
```

Related Commands **aaa accounting auth-web default**
auth-mac enable

aaa authentication dot1x

This command enables 802.1X-based Port Authentication globally and allows you to enable an authentication method list. It is automatically applied to every interface running 802.1X-based Port Authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to globally disable 802.1X-based Port Authentication.

Syntax `aaa authentication dot1x default group {<group-name>|radius}`
`no aaa authentication dot1x default`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>radius</code> | Use all RADIUS servers. |
| <code><group-name></code> | Server group name. |

Default 802.1X-based Port Authentication is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to specify the default method list to use for authentication on all switch ports with 802.1X enabled. Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the authentication method list for 802.1X to its default (i.e. to use the group **radius**, containing all RADIUS servers configured by the **radius-server host** command).

There are two ways to define servers where RADIUS accounting messages are sent:

- **group radius** : use all RADIUS servers configured by **radius-server host** command
- **group <group-name>** : use the specified RADIUS server group configured with the **aaa group server** command

Examples To enable 802.1X-based Port Authentication globally with all RADIUS servers, and use all available RADIUS servers, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

To disable 802.1X-based Port Authentication, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication dot1x default
```

Related Commands [aaa accounting dot1x](#)
[aaa group server](#)
[dot1x port-control](#)
[radius-server host](#)

aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+

This command enables AAA authentication to determine the privilege level a user can access for passwords authenticated against the TACACS+ server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable privilege level authentication.

Syntax `aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ [local] [none]`
`no aaa authentication enable default`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| local | Use the locally configured enable password (enable password command) for authentication. |
| none | No authentication. |

Default Local privilege level authentication is enabled by default (**aaa authentication enable default local** command).

Mode Global Configuration

Usage A user is configured on a TACACS+ server with a maximum privilege level. When they enter the **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command they are prompted for an enable password which is authenticated against the TACACS+ server. If the password is correct and the specified privilege level is equal to or less than the users maximum privilege level, then they are granted access to that level. If the user attempts to access a privilege level that is higher than their maximum configured privilege level, then the authentication session will fail and they will remain at their current privilege level.

Note If both **local** and **none** are specified, you must always specify **local** first.



If the TACACS+ server goes offline, or is not reachable during enable password authentication, and command level authentication is configured as:

- **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+**
then the user is never granted access to Privileged Exec mode.
- **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ local**
then the user is authenticated using the locally configured enable password, which if entered correctly grants the user access to Privileged Exec mode. If no enable password is locally configured (**enable password** command), then the enable authentication will fail until the TACACS+ server becomes available again.
- **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ none**
then the user is granted access to Privileged Exec mode with no authentication. This is true even if a locally configured enable password is configured.
- **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ local none**
then the user is authenticated using the locally configured enable password. If no enable password is locally configured, then the enable authentication will grant access to Privileged Exec mode with no authentication.

If the password for the user is not successfully authenticated by the server, then the user is again prompted for an enable password when they enter **enable** via the CLI.

Examples To enable a privilege level authentication method that will not allow the user to access Privileged Exec mode if the TACACS+ server goes offline, or is not reachable during enable password authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+
```

To enable a privilege level authentication method that will allow the user to access Privileged Exec mode if the TACACS+ server goes offline, or is not reachable during enable password authentication, and a locally configured enable password is configured, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+
local
```

To disable privilege level authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication enable default
```

Related Commands

- aaa authentication login**
- aaa authentication enable default local**
- enable (Privileged Exec mode)**
- enable password**
- enable secret**
- tacacs-server host**

aaa authentication enable default local

This command enables AAA authentication to determine the privilege level a user can access for passwords authenticated locally.

Syntax `aaa authentication enable default local`

Default Local privilege level authentication is enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The privilege level configured for a particular user in the local user database is the privilege threshold above which the user is prompted for an **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command.

Examples To enable local privilege level authentication command, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication enable default local
```

To disable privilege level authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication enable default
```

Related Commands [aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+](#)
[aaa authentication login enable \(Privileged Exec mode\)](#)
[enable password](#)
[enable secret](#)
[tacacs-server host](#)

aaa authentication login

Use this command to create an ordered list of methods to use to authenticate user login, or to replace an existing method list with the same name. Specify one or more of the options **local** or **group**, in the order you want them to be applied. If the **default** method list name is specified, it is applied to every console and VTY line immediately unless another method list is applied to that line by the **login authentication** command. To apply a non-default method list, you must also use the **login authentication** command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove an authentication method list for user login. The specified method list name is deleted from the configuration. If the method list name has been applied to any console or VTY line, user login authentication on that line will fail.

Note that the **no aaa authentication login default** command does not remove the default method list. This will return the default method list to its default state (**local** is the default).

Syntax

```
aaa authentication login {default|<list-name>}
    {[local] [group {radius|tacacs+|<group-name>}]}

no aaa authentication login {default|<list-name>}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| default | Set the default authentication server for user login. |
| <list-name> | Name of authentication server. |
| local | Use the local username database. |
| group | Use server group. |
| radius | Use all RADIUS servers configured by the radius-server host command on page 45.6. |
| tacacs+ | Use all TACACS+ servers configured by the tacacs-server host command. |
| <group-name> | Use the specified RADIUS server group, as configured by the aaa group server command. |

Default If the default server is not configured using this command, user login authentication uses the local user database only.

If the **default** method list name is specified, it is applied to every console and VTY line immediately unless a named method list server is applied to that line by the **login authentication** command.

local is the default state for the default method list unless a named method list is applied to that line by the **login authentication** command. Reset to the default method list using the **no aaa authentication login default** command.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When a user attempts to log in, the switch sends an authentication request to the first authentication server in the method list. If the first server in the list is reachable and it contains a username and password matching the authentication request, the user is authenticated and the login succeeds. If the authentication server denies the authentication request because of an incorrect username or password, the user login fails. If the first server in the method list is unreachable, the switch sends the request to the next server in the list, and so on.

For example, if the method list specifies group tacacs+ local, and a user attempts to log in with a password that does not match a user entry in the first TACACS+ server, if this TACACS+ server denies the authentication request, then the switch does not try any other TACACS+ servers not the local user database; the user login fails.

Examples To configure the default authentication method list for user login to use first all available RADIUS servers for user login authentication and then the local user database, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius
local
```

To configure a user login authentication method list called USERS to use first the RADIUS server group RAD_GROUP1 for user login authentication and then the local user database, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication login USERS group
RAD_GROUP1 local
```

To configure a user login authentication method list called USERS to use first the TACACS+ servers for user login authentication and then the local user database, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa authentication login USERS group tacacs+
local
```

To return to the default method list (**local** is the default server), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication login default
```

To delete an existing authentication method list USERS created for user login authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa authentication login USERS
```

Related Commands [aaa accounting commands](#)
[aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ login authentication](#)

aaa group server

This command configures a RADIUS server group. A server group can be used to specify a subset of RADIUS servers in **aaa** commands. The group name **radius** is predefined, which includes all RADIUS servers configured by the **radius-server host** command.

RADIUS servers are added to a server group using the **server** command. Each RADIUS server should be configured using the **radius-server host** command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove an existing RADIUS server group.

Syntax `aaa group server radius <group-name>`

`no aaa group server radius <group-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| <code><group-name></code> | Server group name. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to create an AAA group of RADIUS servers, and to enter Server Group Configuration mode, in which you can add servers to the group. Use a server group to specify a subset of RADIUS servers in AAA commands. Each RADIUS server must be configured by the **radius-server host** command. To add RADIUS servers to a server group, use the **server** command.

Examples To create a RADIUS server group named GROUP1 with hosts 192.168.1.1, 192.168.2.1 and 192.168.3.1, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius GROUP1
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.1.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.2.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.3.1 auth-port 1812 acct-
port 1813
```

To remove a RADIUS server group named GROUP1 from the configuration, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no aaa group server radius GROUP1
```

Related Commands

- [aaa accounting auth-mac default](#)
- [aaa accounting auth-web default](#)
- [aaa accounting dot1x](#)
- [aaa accounting login](#)
- [aaa authentication auth-mac](#)
- [aaa authentication auth-web](#)
- [aaa authentication dot1x](#)
- [aaa authentication login](#)
- [radius-server host](#)
- [server \(Server Group\)](#)

aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time

This command configures the duration of the user lockout period.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the duration of the user lockout period to its default of 300 seconds (5 minutes).

Syntax `aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time <lockout-time>`
`no aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <code><lockout-time></code> | <code><0-10000></code> . Time in seconds to lockout the user. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default The default for the lockout-time is 300 seconds (5 minutes).

Usage While locked out all attempts to login with the locked account will fail. The lockout can be manually cleared by another privileged account using the **clear aaa local user lockout** command.

Examples To configure the lockout period to 10 minutes (600 seconds), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time
600
```

To restore the default lockout period of 5 minutes (300 seconds), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa local authentication attempts
lockout-time
```

Related Commands [aaa local authentication attempts max-fail](#)

aaa local authentication attempts max-fail

This command configures the maximum number of failed login attempts before a user account is locked out. Every time a login attempt fails the failed login counter is incremented.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the maximum number of failed login attempts to the default setting (five failed login attempts).

Syntax `aaa local authentication attempts max-fail <failed-logins>`
`no aaa local authentication attempts max-fail`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><failed-logins></code> | <code><1-32></code> . Number of login failures allowed before locking out a user. |

Mode Global Configuration

Default The default for the maximum number of failed login attempts is five failed login attempts.

Usage When the failed login counter reaches the limit configured by this command that user account is locked out for a specified duration configured by the **aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time** command.

When a successful login occurs the failed login counter is reset to 0. When a user account is locked out all attempts to login using that user account will fail.

Examples To configure the number of login failures that will lock out a user account to two login attempts, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa local authentication attempts max-fail 2
```

To restore the number of login failures that will lock out a user account to the default number of login attempts (five login attempts), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no aaa local authentication attempts max-fail
```

Related Commands **aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time**
clear aaa local user lockout

accounting login

This command applies a login accounting method list to console or vty lines for user login. When login accounting is enabled using this command, logging events generate an accounting record to the accounting server.

The accounting method list must be configured first using this command. If an accounting method list is specified that has not been created by this command then accounting will be disabled on the specified lines.

The **no** variant of this command resets AAA (Authentication, Authorization, Accounting) Accounting applied to console or vty lines for local or remote login. **default** login accounting is applied after issuing the **no accounting login** command. Accounting is disabled with **default**.

Syntax `accounting login {default|<list-name>}`
`no accounting login`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>default</code> | Default accounting method list. |
| <code><list-name></code> | Named accounting method list. |

Default By default login accounting is disabled in the **default** accounting server. No accounting will be performed until accounting is enabled using this command beforehand.

Mode Line Configuration

Examples To apply the accounting server `USERS` to all vty lines use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 32
awplus(config-line)# accounting login USERS
```

To reset accounting for login sessions on the console, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# no accounting login
```

Related Commands [aaa accounting commands](#)
[aaa accounting login](#)

clear aaa local user logout

Use this command to clear the lockout on a specific user account or all user accounts.

Syntax `clear aaa local user logout {username <username>|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| username | Clear lockout for the specified user. |
| <username> | Specifies the user account. |
| all | Clear lockout for all user accounts. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To unlock the user account 'bob' use the following command:

```
awplus# clear aaa local user logout username bob
```

To unlock all user accounts use the following command:

```
awplus# clear aaa local user logout all
```

Related Commands [aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time](#)

debug aaa

This command enables AAA debugging.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable AAA debugging.

Syntax `debug aaa [accounting|all|authentication|authorization]`
`no debug aaa [accounting|all|authentication|authorization]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| accounting | Accounting debugging. |
| all | All debugging options are enabled. |
| authentication | Authentication debugging. |
| authorization | Authorization debugging. |

Default AAA debugging is disabled by default.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable authentication debugging for AAA, use the command:

```
awplus# debug aaa authentication
```

To disable authentication debugging for AAA, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug aaa authentication
```

Related Commands [show debugging aaa](#)
[undebug aaa](#)

login authentication

Use this command to apply an AAA server for authenticating user login attempts from a console or remote logins on these console or VTY lines. The authentication method list must be specified by the **aaa authentication login** command. If the method list has not been configured by the **aaa authentication login** command, login authentication will fail on these lines.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset AAA Authentication configuration to use the default method list for login authentication on these console or VTY lines.

Command Syntax `login authentication {default|<list-name>}`
`no login authentication`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>default</code> | The default authentication method list. If the default method list has not been configured by the aaa authentication login command, the local user database is used for user login authentication. |
| <code><list-name></code> | Named authentication server. |

Default The default login authentication method list, as specified by the **aaa authentication login** command, is used to authenticate user login. If this has not been specified, the default is to use the local user database.

Mode Line Configuration

Examples To apply the authentication method list called `CONSOLE` to the console port terminal line (asyn 0), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line console 0
awplus(config-line)# login authentication CONSOLE
```

To reset user authentication configuration on all VTY lines, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# line vty 0 32
awplus(config-line)# no login authentication
```

Related Commands **aaa authentication login**
line

show debugging aaa

This command displays the current debugging status for AAA (Authentication, Authorization, Accounting).

Syntax `show debugging aaa`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current debugging status of AAA, use the command:

```
awplus# show debug aaa
```

Output **Figure 43-1: Example output from the show debug aaa command**

```
AAA debugging status:
  Authentication debugging is on
  Accounting debugging is off
```

undebug aaa

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug aaa** command on page 43.26.

Chapter 44: RADIUS Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 44.2 |
| RADIUS Packets | 44.3 |
| RADIUS Attributes..... | 44.4 |
| RADIUS Security..... | 44.5 |
| RADIUS Proxy | 44.6 |
| RADIUS Accounting | 44.7 |
| RADIUS Configuration | 44.9 |
| Switch Configuration Tasks..... | 44.9 |
| Switch to RADIUS Server Communication..... | 44.10 |
| AAA Server Groups Configuration..... | 44.12 |
| RADIUS Configuration Examples..... | 44.15 |
| RADIUS Authentication | 44.15 |
| Single RADIUS Server Configuration..... | 44.16 |
| Multiple RADIUS Server Configuration | 44.17 |
| RADIUS Server Group Configuration | 44.17 |
| RADIUS Server Configuration using Server Groups | 44.18 |

Introduction

The main purpose of RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) is to enable the authentication of network users stored in a database on a server known as a RADIUS Server.

When users connect to the network, the switch the users connect to can challenge the users for authentication, and pass on the authentication to the RADIUS server to check. Based on the result of the check against the database, the RADIUS Server informs the switch whether or not to allow the connected user access to the network.

A RADIUS Server can do more than allow or deny access to the network. A RADIUS Server can send back parameters to the connected users, such as an IP address for the user, or a VLAN for the user, or a privilege level for a session. RADIUS also provides an accounting service. Switches can inform the RADIUS Server how long a user has been connected to the network, and how much traffic the user has sent and received while connected to the network.

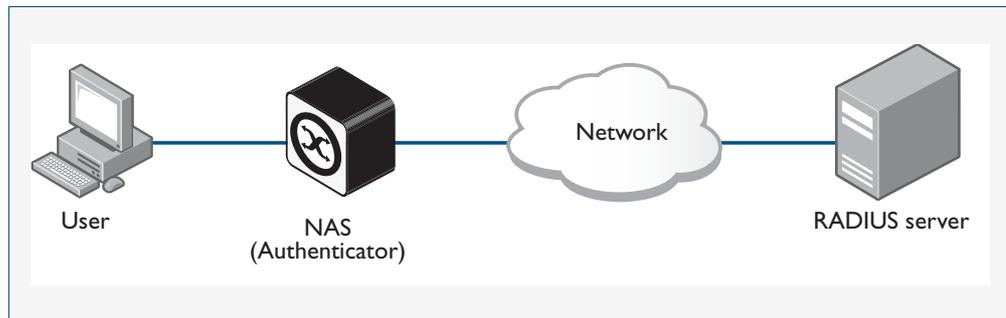
The original use for RADIUS was for the authentication of users dialing into an ISP (Internet Service Provider). A PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol) connection would be established between the remote client and the ISP's access switch. The ISP's access switch would receive the client's username and password using PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) or using CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) and pass on the client's username and password to the RADIUS server to authenticate the client. The RADIUS Server's response to the authentication request would be sent back to the client as a PAP or CHAP allow or deny.

RADIUS has been adapted to network access authentication applications. Network access authentication using RADIUS follows a similar method to the PPP dial-up application for ISPs. For general network access authentication there is the RADIUS Server where the database of user authentication data is stored and a NAS (Network Access Server), which is the switch that user connects to first. The RADIUS Server and the NAS communicate with each other through exchanging attributes. Usernames and passwords are treated as attributes in RADIUS packets to and from a RADIUS Server and a NAS. The RADIUS Server is configured with a list of valid NASs that are allowed to send authentication requests to the RADIUS Server.

The RADIUS Server will not accept authentication requests from a NAS that is not on the list of valid NASs. Each NAS has a shared secret, which is a shared key with the RADIUS Server that is used to authenticate requests. The RADIUS Server has access to a list of user authentication data, stored within the RADIUS Server or accessed from another server.

Communication between the NAS and RADIUS Server uses the RADIUS protocol. The RADIUS protocol uses UDP packets. There are two UDP ports used as the destination port for RADIUS authentication packets (ports 1645 and 1812). Note that port 1812 is in more common use than port 1645 for authentication packets. UDP ports (ports 1646 and 1813) are used for RADIUS accounting separately from the ports used for RADIUS authentication.

Figure 44-1: Example showing a user to a NAS to a RADIUS server network connection



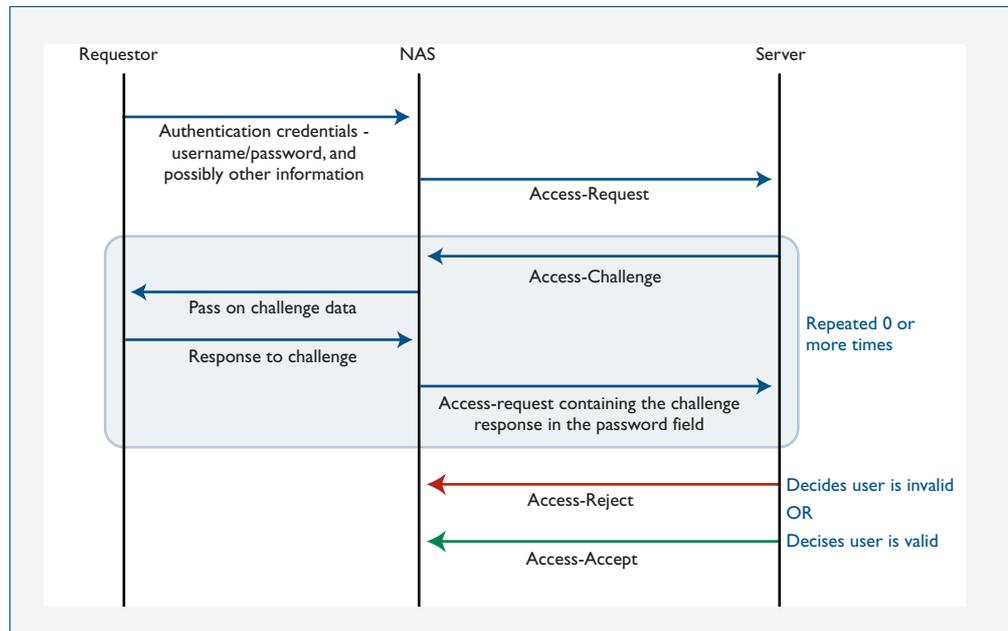
RADIUS Packets

The RADIUS RFCs define the RADIUS packet types and attributes. RADIUS authentication is defined by RFC2058, RFC2138, RFC2865, and RFC2868. RADIUS accounting is defined by RFC2059, RFC2139, RFC2866, and RFC2867. These RADIUS RFCs define over fifty attributes and six packet types (*Access-Request*, *Access-Accept*, *Access-Reject*, *Accounting-Request*, *Accounting-Response*, *Access-Challenge*).

A RADIUS exchange is initiated by the NAS when a user requests access to the NAS. The NAS obtains the user authentication data and adds them into a RADIUS *Access-Request* packet type and sends the RADIUS *Access-Request* packet to the RADIUS Server.

- If a RADIUS Server has not been configured for authentication request from a NAS then it will silently discard an *Access-Request* packet from it.
- If the RADIUS Server accepts the request from the NAS it considers the authentication data provided in the *Access-Request* packet. The RADIUS Server may verify the user from its own database or it may connect to other servers to verify.
- If the RADIUS Server decides that the user is not allowed access to the NAS it responds to the NAS with an *Access-Reject* packet and the NAS will block the user.
- If the RADIUS Server decides that the user is valid but needs more information to verify that the user is not an imposter, it may send an *Access-Challenge* packet to the NAS that the NAS forwards to the user. The NAS forwards the user response to the *Access-Challenge* packet in an *Access-Request* packet to the RADIUS Server to accept or reject to allow or deny NAS user access.
- If the RADIUS Server rejects the user it sends an *Access-Reject* packet to the NAS.
- If the RADIUS Server accepts the user it sends an *Accept-Accept* packet to the NAS. The *Accept-Accept* packet to the NAS contains attributes that the NAS can apply.

Figure 44-2: Example showing an exchange from a requestor to a NAS to a RADIUS server



RADIUS Attributes

Each attribute is identified by its RFC-defined name, followed by its attribute ID in parenthesis.

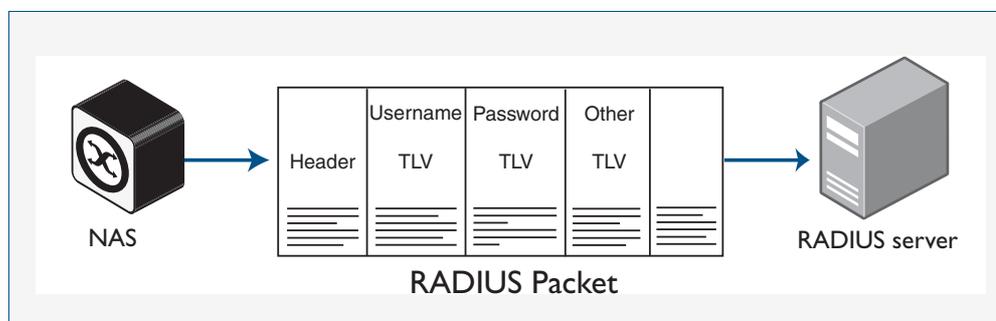
- **User-name(1)**
User-names are strings of at least three characters and have a maximum of 253 characters, which is the upper limit on all RADIUS attributes.
- **User-password(2)**
User-passwords are encrypted using an MD5 hash of the password, the NAS's shared secret with the RADIUS Server, and a request authenticator value. User-passwords can either be used at the initial authentication attempt or in response to an Access-Challenge packet type from the RADIUS Server to the NAS.
- **CHAP-password(3)**
CHAP-passwords are used if the NAS is using CHAP to authenticate the user, and doesn't receive the user's password but sends the CHAP response to the RADIUS Server instead. The CHAP password is an encrypted string that is an MD5 hash of the password and challenge value sent by the user.
- **Framed-IP-Address(8)**
Used for dial-in user making PPP connections to the NAS who are dynamically allocated an IP address that they can use for the duration of their connect. The RADIUS Server sends the Framed-IP-Address to the NAS to allocate.
- **Service-Type(6)**
Used when the NAS is authenticating a user who wants to open a management session on the NAS, and is sent by the RADIUS Server back to the NAS in an Access-Accept type packet to indicate the level of access the NAS gives a user. Service-Type(6) is mapped to a Privileged management session for AlliedWare Plus.
- **NAS-Port-Type(61)**

Identifies the type of port on which the user is accessing the NAS. The NAS-Port-Type(61) attribute is sent by the NAS to the RADIUS Server in Access-Request type packet, so the RADIUS Server may use it to choose access type. For 802.1X sessions, the NAS-Port-Type sent by the NAS is Ethernet (15).

- **802.1X VLAN assignment uses:**
Tunnel-Type(64), Tunnel-Medium-Type(65), Tunnel-Private-Group-ID(81), Egress-VLANID(56), and Egress-VLAN-Name(58) attributes (specified in RFC4675 used to specify 802.1Q tagged and untagged VLAN assignments with LLDP-MED/Voice-VLAN).

Attributes are carried within RADIUS packets in the form of TLVs (Type Length Values). Every attribute has an attribute ID number in the Type field of the TLV. The Length field holds a one-byte number that represents then length of the TLV. The Value field holds the value of the attribute.

Figure 44-3: Example showing TLVs in a RADIUS packet from a NAS to a RADIUS server



RADIUS Security

RADIUS is used for network security and carries user authentication information, so can be a target for security attacks. To counter threats there are three elements to RADIUS security:

- **Shared secret**
- **Authenticator**
- **Password Encryption**

Shared secret

Every NAS and server are configured with a pre-shared key, called the “shared secret”, which is a key string, with no particular format of at least 16 characters.

The protocol has no method for choosing and sharing the secret between the NAS and the server. The secret must be manually generated and separately configured on the NAS and on the server.

The shared secret itself never appears in any RADIUS packets. It is used as an input to the algorithms used for creating encrypted values that are carried in the packets.

Authenticator

The authenticator is a random 16-byte value generated by the NAS. The NAS creates a new authenticator value for each `Access-Request` that it sends.

The response packets that come back from the server contain a value called the Response Authenticator. This is a value that is created by performing an MD5 hash on a string that is created by concatenating the packet type identifier, Session ID, Authenticator sent in the request packet, Attribute fields in the packet, Shared secret that the server shares with the NAS to which it is responding.

When the NAS receives the response packet, it performs the same hash on the same values, and verifies that it comes up with the same result. If not, then it must assume that the response packet has been spoofed, and silently discards it.

Password encryption

The value placed in the user-password TLV of an `Access-Request` packet is not simply an exact copy of the password sent from the requestor to the NAS.

The NAS concatenates together the shared secret and the authenticator that it has randomly generated for this request and then performs manipulations (MD5, XOR) on that concatenation, and the password to create the value to go into password TLV.

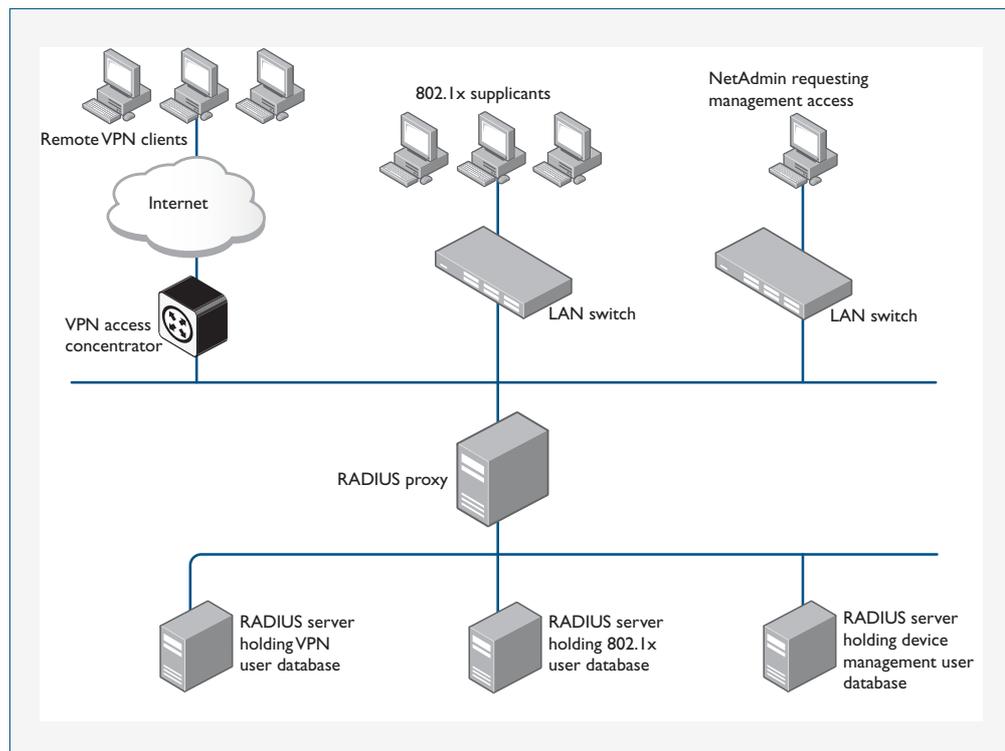
When the server validates the `Access-Request`, it retrieves the user's password from the user credentials database, and performs the same manipulation upon that password. If the result matches the value in the user-password field of the `Access-Request`, then the password sent by the requestor is deemed to be correct.

RADIUS Proxy

The user database, which user credentials sent to a RADIUS server are looked up in, may not reside on the RADIUS server itself. The external user database may reside on another RADIUS server, and the communication to that server uses RADIUS. In the case where a RADIUS server communicates with a NAS, but also acts as a client to another RADIUS server, is said to be acting as a RADIUS proxy.

There are a variety of situations where RADIUS proxy is useful. Multiple RADIUS servers could have been set up, holding user databases for different purposes such as Authentication, Switch management sessions, Authenticating VPN connections, and Authenticating 802.1X sessions.

But it is convenient for there to be just one address that all the NASs in the network use as their RADIUS server. That one RADIUS server that the NASs send their requests to, can act as a proxy for all the servers holding the different user databases.

Figure 44-4: Example showing RADIUS proxy

RADIUS Accounting

There are only two types of RADIUS accounting packet: `Accounting-Request` and `Accounting-Response`.

The `Accounting-Request` packets are always sent from the NAS to the server. The `Accounting-Response` packets are always sent from the server to the NAS, and are effectively ACKs of the `Accounting-Request` packets.

The `Accounting-Request` packets always carry the attribute `Acct-Status-Type`. The most commonly used values of this attribute are:

- **Start** – which denotes a packet marking that a session is beginning
- **Stop** – which denotes a packet marking that a session is ending
- **Interim update** – packets sent periodically during the session to give update reports on the statistics that are being collected.

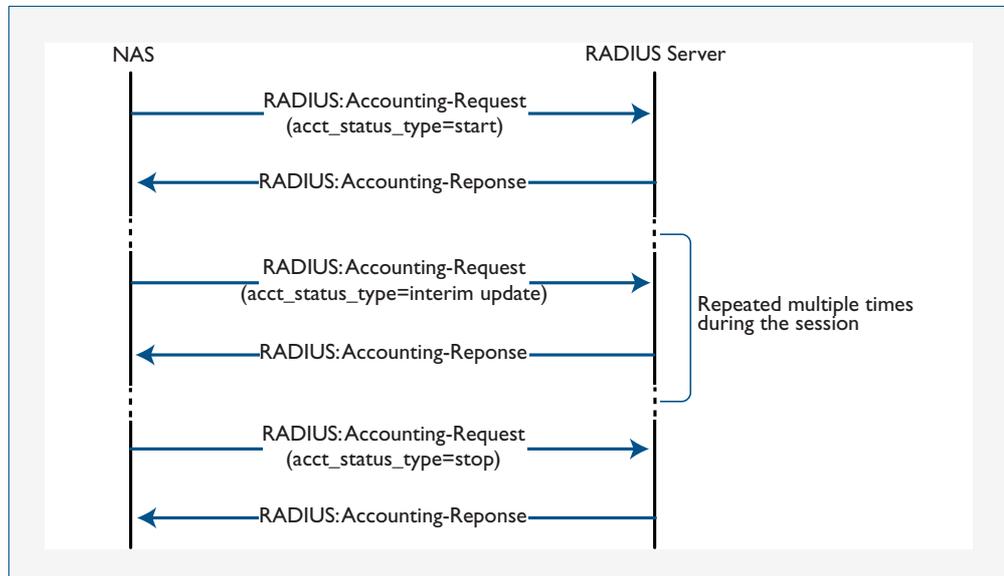
The statistics that can be exchanged in the session are:

- **Input Octets**
- **Input Packets**
- **Output Octets**
- **Output Packets**
- **Session Duration**

There is no requirement to exchange all these statistics – NAS implementations are at liberty to choose which statistics they will send. Each of these statistics has a corresponding attribute type. The attributes are sent in `Interim-Update` and `Stop` accounting request packets.

Each accounting session has a unique session ID, which is chosen by the NAS. The session ID is carried in an `Acct-Session-Id` attribute, that should be present in every packet involved in the session. The accounting packets typically do not use the same UDP port as the authentication packets. The default port for RADIUS accounting is 1813.

Figure 44-5: Example showing RADIUS accounting between a NAS and a RADIUS server



RADIUS Configuration

This section describes how to configure RADIUS with the available AAA commands. For a description of AAA commands, refer to the [AAA Commands](#) chapter. For a description of the RADIUS commands used, refer to the [RADIUS Commands](#) chapter.

RADIUS is often used in a variety of networks that need high security while maintaining access for remote users. RADIUS is suitable for the following networks that require access security:

- Networks with multiple-vendor access servers, each supporting RADIUS. For example, access servers from several vendors use a single RADIUS server-based security database.
- Networks in which a user may access a single service. Using RADIUS, you can control user access to a single host, or to a single utility such as Telnet.
- Networks that require accounting. You can use RADIUS accounting independent of RADIUS authentication. The RADIUS accounting functions allow data to be sent at the start and end of services, indicating the amount of resources (time, packets, bytes) used.

Switch Configuration Tasks

To configure RADIUS on your switch or access server, you must perform the following tasks:

- Use the **aaa authentication** command to define method lists for RADIUS authentication. For information about this command, refer to the [AAA Commands](#) chapter.
- Use authentication commands to enable the defined method lists to be used. For more information, refer to the [Authentication Commands](#) chapter.

The following configuration tasks are optional:

- You can use the **aaa group server** command to group selected RADIUS hosts for specific services. For detailed information about this command, refer to the [AAA Server Groups Configuration](#) section in this chapter and refer to the [AAA Commands](#) chapter.
- You can use the **aaa accounting login** command to enable accounting for RADIUS connections. For information about this command, refer to the [AAA Commands](#) chapter.

This section describes how to set up RADIUS for authentication and accounting on your network, and includes the following sections:

- Switch to RADIUS Server Communication (Required)
- Configuring AAA Server Groups (Optional)
- Configuring AAA Server Groups with Deadtime (Optional)
- Specifying RADIUS Authentication
- Specifying RADIUS Accounting (Optional)

For RADIUS configuration examples using the commands in this chapter, refer to the section [RADIUS Configuration Examples](#) at the end of this chapter.

Switch to RADIUS Server Communication

The RADIUS host is normally a multiuser system running RADIUS server software from a software provider. Switch to RADIUS server communication has several components:

- Host name or IP address
- Authentication destination port
- Accounting destination port
- Timeout period
- Retransmission value
- Key string

RADIUS security servers are identified on the basis of their host name or IP address, host name and specific UDP port numbers, or IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. This unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address.

A RADIUS server and a switch use a shared secret text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. To configure RADIUS using the AAA security commands, you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and a secret text string that it shares with the switch, which you can specify using the **key** parameter in the **radius-server host** command.

The timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values are configurable globally for all RADIUS servers, on a per-server basis, or in some combination of global and per-server settings. To apply these settings globally to all RADIUS servers communicating with the switch, use the three global commands: **radius-server timeout**, **radius-server retransmit**, and **radius-server key**. To apply these values on a specific RADIUS server, use the **radius-server host** command.

 **Note** You can configure both global and per-server timeout, retransmission, and key value commands simultaneously on the same Network Access Server.

If both global and per-server functions are configured on a switch, the per-server timer, retransmission, and key value commands override global timer, retransmission, and key value commands.

To configure per-server RADIUS server communication, use the following command in the Global Configuration mode:

| Mode and Command | Command Purpose |
|--|---|
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server host {<hostname> <ip-address>} [auth-port <port-number>] [acct-port <port-number>] [timeout <seconds>] [retransmit <retries>] [key <string>]</pre> | <p>Specifies the IP address or host name of the remote RADIUS server host and assigns authentication and accounting destination UDP port numbers.</p> <p>Use the <code>auth-port <port-number></code> option to configure a specific UDP port on this RADIUS server to be used solely for authentication.</p> <p>Use the <code>acct-port <port-number></code> option to configure a specific UDP port on this RADIUS server to be used solely for accounting.</p> <p>To configure the network access server to recognize more than one host entry associated with a single IP address, simply repeat this command as many times as necessary, making sure that each UDP port number is different.</p> <p>Set the timeout, retransmit, and encryption key values to use with the specific RADIUS host. If no timeout is set, the global value is used; otherwise, enter a value in the range 1 to 1000.</p> <p>If no retransmit value is set, the global value is used; otherwise enter a value in the range 1 to 1000. If no key string is specified, the global value is used.</p> |

To configure global communication settings between the switch and a RADIUS server, use the following **radius-server** commands in the Global Configuration mode:

| Mode and Command | Command Purpose |
|---|---|
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server key <key></pre> | <p>Specifies the shared secret text string used between the switch and a RADIUS server (no default is set).</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server retransmit <retries></pre> | <p>Specifies how many times the switch transmits each RADIUS request to the RADIUS server before giving up (the default is 3).</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server timeout <seconds></pre> | <p>Specifies for how many seconds a switch waits for a reply to a RADIUS request before retransmitting the request.</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server deadtime <minutes></pre> | <p>Specifies for how many minutes a RADIUS server that is not responding to authentication requests is passed over by requests for RADIUS authentication.</p> |

AAA Server Groups Configuration

Configuring the switch to use AAA server groups provides a way to group existing server hosts. This allows you to select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. A server group is used in conjunction with a global server-host list. The server group lists the IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

Server groups also can include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and a UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service.

To define a server host with a server group name, enter the following commands in the Global Configuration mode. The listed RADIUS server must exist in the Global Configuration mode:

| Mode and Command | Command Purpose |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# radius-server host {<hostname> <ip-address>} [auth-port <port-number>] [acct-port <port-number>] [timeout <seconds>] [retransmit <retries>] [key <string>]</pre> | <p>Specifies and defines the IP address of the server host before configuring the AAA server-group. Refer to the section Switch to RADIUS Server Communication of this chapter for more information on the radius-server host command.</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# aaa group server <group-name></pre> | <p>Defines the AAA server group with a group name. This command puts the switch in server group sub configuration mode.</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config-sg)# server {<hostname> <ip-address>} [auth-port <port-number>] [acct-port <port-number>]</pre> | <p>Associates a particular RADIUS server with the defined server group. Each security server is identified by its IP address and UDP port number. Repeat this step for each RADIUS server in the AAA server group. Each server in the group must be defined previously using the radius-server host command.</p> |

Configuring AAA server groups with deadline

After you have configured a server host with a server name, you can use the **deadline (RADIUS server group)** command to configure each server per server group. Configuring deadline within a server group allows you to direct AAA traffic to separate groups of servers that have different operational characteristics.

Configuring **deadline** is no longer limited to a global configuration. A separate timer has been attached to each server host in every server group. When a server is found to be unresponsive after numerous retransmissions and time-outs, the server is assumed to be dead. The timers attached to each server host in all server groups are triggered. In essence, the timers are checked and subsequent requests to a server, once it is assumed to be dead, are directed to alternate servers, if configured. When the network access server receives a reply from the server, it checks and stops all configured timers, if running, for that server in all server groups.

If the timer has expired, only the server to which the timer is attached is assumed to be alive. This becomes the only server that can be tried for later AAA requests using the server groups to which the timer belongs.

Note  Since one server has different timers and may have different deadline values configured in the server groups, the same server may in the future have different states, dead and alive, at the same time. To change the state of a server, you must start and stop all configured timers in all server groups.

The size of the server group will be increased because of the addition of new timers and the deadline attribute. The overall impact of the structure depends on the number and size of the server groups and how the servers are shared among server groups in a specific configuration.

To configure deadline within a server group, use the following commands beginning in the Global Configuration mode:

| Mode and Command | Command Purpose |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus(config)# aaa group server radius group1</code> | Defines a RADIUS type server group. |
| <code>awplus(config-sg)# deadline 1</code> | Configures and defines a deadline value in minutes. |
| <code>awplus(config-sg)# exit</code> | Exits server group configuration mode. |

Specifying RADIUS authentication

After you have identified the RADIUS server and defined the RADIUS authentication key, you must define method lists for RADIUS authentication. Because RADIUS authentication is facilitated through AAA, you must enter the **aaa authentication login** command, specifying RADIUS as the authentication method. For detailed **aaa authentication login** command information, refer to the **AAA Commands** chapter.

Specifying RADIUS accounting

The AAA accounting feature enables you to track the services users are accessing as well as the amount of network resources they are consuming. Because RADIUS accounting is facilitated through AAA, you must issue the **aaa accounting login** command, specifying RADIUS as the accounting method. For detailed **aaa accounting login** command information, refer to the **AAA Commands** chapter.

Monitoring and maintaining RADIUS

To monitor and maintain RADIUS, use the following commands in Privileged Exec mode:

| Mode and Command | Command Purpose |
|---|--|
| <pre>awplus# debug radius</pre> | <p>Displays information associated with RADIUS.</p> <p>For detailed debug radius command information, refer to the RADIUS Commands chapter.</p> |
| <pre>awplus# show radius statistics</pre> | <p>Displays the RADIUS statistics for accounting and authentication packets.</p> <p>For detailed show radius statistics command information, refer to the RADIUS Commands chapter.</p> |

RADIUS Configuration Examples

The following sections provide RADIUS configuration examples:

- RADIUS Authentication
- Single RADIUS Server Configuration
- Multiple RADIUS Server Configuration
- RADIUS Server Group Configuration
- RADIUS Server Configuration using Server Groups

RADIUS Authentication

Example The following example shows how to configure the switch to authenticate using RADIUS.

Figure 44-6: Sample RADIUS authentication to configure the switch to authenticate users

```
!  
radius-server host 172.10.10.1  
radius-server key radiuspass  
username newuser password newpass  
aaa authentication login admin  
!
```

The lines in this example RADIUS authentication and accounting configuration are defined as follows:

- The **radius-server host** command defines the IP address of the RADIUS server host.
- The **radius-server key** command defines the shared secret text string between the network access server and the RADIUS server host.
- The **aaa authentication login** command defines a method list named **admin** for login authentication.

Example The following example shows how to configure the switch to authenticate logins using RADIUS.

Figure 44-7: Sample RADIUS authentication to authenticate logins

```
!  
aaa authentication login radius-login group radius  
!
```

This sample RADIUS authentication configuration is defined as follows:

- The **aaa authentication login radius-login group radius** command configures the switch to use RADIUS for authentication at the login prompt.

Example The following example shows how to configure the authentication method to verify a username and password at login. In this example, if a username is entered at the username prompt, that username is used for authentication.

Figure 44-8: Sample RADIUS authentication to verify a username and password

```
!  
aaa authentication login default group radius  
radius-server host 172.10.10.1 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813  
!
```

The lines in this sample RADIUS authentication configuration are defined as follows:

- The **aaa authentication login default group radius** command specifies that the username and password are verified by RADIUS.
- The **radius-server host 172.10.10.1 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813** command specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server host, the UDP destination port for authentication requests, and the UDP destination port for accounting requests.

Single RADIUS Server Configuration

Example The following example shows how to configure server-specific timeout, retransmit, and key values for the RADIUS server with IP address 172.2.2.2.

Figure 44-9: Single RADIUS server sample configuration

```
!  
radius-server host 172.2.2.2 timeout 5 retransmit 5 key 10  
!
```

Multiple RADIUS Server Configuration

Example The following example shows how to configure two RADIUS servers with specific timeout, retransmit, and key values. The **radius-server retransmit** command changes the global retransmission value to 4 for all RADIUS servers. The **radius-server host** command configures specific timeout, retransmission, and key values for the RADIUS server hosts with IP addresses 172.2.2.2 and 172.1.1.1

Figure 44-10: Multiple RADIUS server sample configuration

```
!  
! Enable and configure radius authentication and accounting  
! services on the switch:  
!  
aaa authentication login default group radius  
aaa accounting default start-stop group radius  
!  
! Change the retransmission value for all RADIUS servers:  
!  
radius-server retransmit 4  
!  
! Configure per-server specific timeout, retransmission, and  
! key values. Change the default auth-port and acct-port  
! values.  
!  
radius-server host 172.2.2.2 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646  
timeout 3 retransmit 3 key radkey  
!  
! Configure per-server specific timeout and key values. This  
! server uses the global retransmission value.  
!  
radius-server host 172.1.1.1 timeout 6 key rad123  
!
```

RADIUS Server Group Configuration

Example The following example shows how to create server group `group2` with three RADIUS server members, each with the same IP address but with unique authentication and accounting ports.

Figure 44-11: RADIUS server group sample configuration using the same IP address

```
!  
aaa group server radius group2  
server 172.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646  
server 172.1.1.1 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813  
server 172.1.1.1 auth-port 2000 acct-port 2001  
!
```

RADIUS Server Configuration using Server Groups

The following example shows how to configure the network access server to recognize two different RADIUS server groups.

One of these groups, `group1`, has two different host entries on the same RADIUS server configured for the same services. The second host entry configured acts as fail over backup to the first one. Each group is individually configured for `deadtime`; `deadtime` for `group1` is one minute, and `deadtime` for `group2` is two minutes.

Figure 44-12: Multiple RADIUS servers using server groups sample configuration

```
!  
! The following command configures default RADIUS parameters:  
!  
aaa authentication login default group group1  
!  
! The following commands define the group1 RADIUS server group  
! and associate servers with it and configures a deadtime of  
! one minute:  
!  
aaa group server radius group1  
  server 172.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646  
  server 172.2.2.2 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813  
  deadtime 1  
!  
! The following commands define the group2 RADIUS server group  
! and associate servers with it and configures a deadtime of  
! two minutes:  
!  
aaa group server radius group2  
  server 172.2.2.2 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813  
  server 172.3.3.3 auth-port 2000 acct-port 2001  
  deadtime 2  
!  
! The following commands configure the RADIUS attributes  
! for each host entry associated with one of the defined  
! server groups:  
!  
radius-server host 172.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646  
radius-server host 172.2.2.2 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813  
radius-server host 172.3.3.3 auth-port 2000 acct-port 2001  
!
```

Chapter 45: RADIUS Commands



| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 45.2 |
| deadtime (RADIUS server group) | 45.2 |
| debug radius | 45.3 |
| ip radius source-interface..... | 45.4 |
| radius-server deadtime | 45.5 |
| radius-server host..... | 45.6 |
| radius-server key | 45.10 |
| radius-server retransmit..... | 45.11 |
| radius-server timeout | 45.12 |
| server (Server Group)..... | 45.14 |
| show debugging radius..... | 45.16 |
| show radius | 45.17 |
| show radius statistics..... | 45.19 |
| undebug radius | 45.19 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure the device to use RADIUS servers.

deadtime (RADIUS server group)

Use this command to configure the **deadtime** parameter for the RADIUS server group. This command overrides the global dead-time configured by the [radius-server deadtime command on page 45.5](#). The configured deadtime is the time period in minutes to skip a RADIUS server for authentication or accounting requests if the server is “dead”. Note that a RADIUS server is considered “dead” if there is no response from the server within a defined time period.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the deadtime configured for the RADIUS server group. If the global deadtime for RADIUS server is configured the value will be used for the servers in the group. The global deadtime for the RADIUS server is set to 0 minutes by default.

Syntax `deadtime <0-1440>`
`no deadtime`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code><0-1440></code> | Amount of time in minutes. |

Default The deadtime is set to 0 minutes by default.

Mode Server Group Configuration

Usage If the RADIUS server does not respond to a request packet, the packet is retransmitted the number of times configured for the **retransmit** parameter (after waiting for a **timeout** period to expire). The server is then marked “dead”, and the time is recorded. The **deadtime** parameter configures the amount of time to skip a dead server; if a server is dead, no request message is sent to the server for the **deadtime** period.

Examples To configure the deadtime for 5 minutes for the RADIUS server group “GROUP1”, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius GROUP1
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.1.1
awplus(config-sg)# deadtime 5
```

To remove the deadtime configured for the RADIUS server group “GROUP1”, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius GROUP1
awplus(config-sg)# no deadtime
```

Related Commands [aaa group server](#)
[radius-server deadtime](#)

debug radius

This command enables RADIUS debugging. If no option is specified, all debugging options are enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable RADIUS debugging. If no option is specified, all debugging options are disabled.

Syntax `debug radius [packet|event|all]`
`no debug radius [packet|event|all]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| packet | Debugging for RADIUS packets is enabled or disabled. |
| event | Debugging for RADIUS events is enabled or disabled. |
| all | Enable or disable all debugging options. |

Default RADIUS debugging is disabled by default.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable debugging for RADIUS packets, use the command:

```
awplus# debug radius packet
```

To enable debugging for RADIUS events, use the command:

```
awplus# debug radius event
```

To disable debugging for RADIUS packets, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug radius packet
```

To disable debugging for RADIUS events, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug radius event
```

Related Commands [show debugging radius](#)
[undebug radius](#)

ip radius source-interface

This command configures the source IP address of every outgoing RADIUS packet to use a specific IP address or the IP address of a specific interface. If the specified interface is down or there is no IP address on the interface, then the source IP address of outgoing RADIUS packets depends on the interface the packets leave.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the source interface configuration. The source IP address in outgoing RADIUS packets will be the IP address of the interface from which the packets are sent.

Syntax `ip radius source-interface {<interface>|<ip-address>}`
`no ip radius source-interface`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface></code> | Interface name. |
| <code><ip-address></code> | IP address in the dotted decimal format A.B.C.D. |

Default Source IP address of outgoing RADIUS packets depends on the interface the packets leave.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure all outgoing RADIUS packets to use the IP address of the interface "vlan1" for the source IP address, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip radius source-interface vlan1
```

To configure the source IP address of all outgoing RADIUS packets to use 192.168.1.10, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip radius source-interface 192.168.1.10
```

To reset the source interface configuration for all outgoing RADIUS packets, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip radius source-interface
```

Related Commands [radius-server host](#)
[show radius statistics](#)

radius-server deadtime

Use this command to specify the global **deadtime** for all RADIUS servers. If a RADIUS server is considered dead, it is skipped for the specified deadtime. This command specifies for how many minutes a RADIUS server that is not responding to authentication requests is passed over by requests for RADIUS authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the global deadtime to the default of 0 seconds, so that RADIUS servers are not skipped even if they are dead.

Syntax `radius-server deadtime <minutes>`

`no radius-server deadtime`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><minutes></code> | RADIUS server deadtime in minutes in the range 0 to 1440 (24 hours). |

Default The default RADIUS deadtime configured on the system is 0 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The RADIUS client considers a RADIUS server to be dead if it fails to respond to a request after it has been retransmitted as often as specified globally by the **radius-server retransmit** command or for the server by the **radius-server host** command. To improve RADIUS response times when some servers may be unavailable, set a **deadtime** to skip dead servers.

Examples To set the dead time of the RADIUS server to 60 minutes, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server deadtime 60
```

To disable the dead time of the RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server deadtime
```

Related Commands **deadtime (RADIUS server group)**
radius-server host
radius-server retransmit
show radius statistics

radius-server host

Use this command to specify a remote RADIUS server host for authentication or accounting, and to set server-specific parameters. The parameters specified with this command override the corresponding global parameters for RADIUS servers. This command specifies the IP address or host name of the remote RADIUS server host and assigns authentication and accounting destination UDP port numbers.

This command adds the RADIUS server address and sets parameters to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server is added to the running configuration after you issue this command. If parameters are not set using this command then common system settings are applied.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified server host as a RADIUS authentication and/or accounting server and set the destination port to the default RADIUS server port number (1812).

Syntax

```
radius-server host {<host-name>|<ip-address>} [acct-port <0-65535>]
[auth-port <0-65535>] [key <key-string>] [retransmit <0-100>]
[timeout <1-1000>]

no radius-server host {<host-name>|<ip-address>}
[acct-port <0-65535>] [auth-port <0-65535>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i><host-name></i> | Server host name. The DNS name of the RADIUS server host. |
| <i><ip-address></i> | The IP address of the RADIUS server host. |
| acct-port | Accounting port. Specifies the UDP destination port for RADIUS accounting requests. If 0 is specified, the server is not used for accounting. The default UDP port for accounting is 1813. |
| <i><0-65535></i> | UDP port number (Accounting port number is set to 1813 by default) Specifies the UDP destination port for RADIUS accounting requests. If 0 is specified, the host is not used for accounting. |
| auth-port | Authentication port. Specifies the UDP destination port for RADIUS authentication requests. If 0 is specified, the server is not used for authentication. The default UDP port for authentication is 1812. |
| <i><0-65535></i> | UDP port number (Authentication port number is set to 1812 by default) Specifies the UDP destination port for RADIUS authentication requests. If 0 is specified, the host is not used for authentication. |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|------------------|--|
| timeout | Specifies the amount of time to wait for a response from the server. If this parameter is not specified the global value configured by the radius-server timeout command is used. |
| <1-1000> | Time in seconds to wait for a server reply (timeout is set to 5 seconds by default) The time interval (in seconds) to wait for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting a request or considering the server dead. This setting overrides the global value set by the radius-server timeout command. If no timeout value is specified for this server, the global value is used. |
| retransmit | Specifies the number of retries before skip to the next server. If this parameter is not specified the global value configured by the radius-server retransmit command is used. |
| <0-100> | Maximum number of retries (maximum number of retries is set to 3 by default) The maximum number of times to resend a RADIUS request to the server, if it does not respond within the timeout interval, before considering it dead and skipping to the next RADIUS server. This setting overrides the global setting of the radius-server retransmit command. If no retransmit value is specified, the global value is used. |
| key | Set shared secret key with RADIUS servers |
| <key-string> | Shared key string applied Specifies the shared secret authentication or encryption key for all RADIUS communications between this device and the RADIUS server. This key must match the encryption used on the RADIUS daemon. All leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the string are used. If spaces are used in the string, do not enclose the string in quotation marks unless the quotation marks themselves are part of the key. This setting overrides the global setting of the radius-server key command. If no key value is specified, the global value is used. |

Default The RADIUS client address is not configured (null) by default. No RADIUS server is configured.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Multiple **radius-server host** commands can be used to specify multiple hosts. The software searches for hosts in the order they are specified. If no host-specific timeout, retransmit, or key values are specified, the global values apply to that host. If there are multiple RADIUS servers for this client, use this command multiple times—once to specify each server.

If you specify a host without specifying the auth port or the acct port, it will by default be configured for both authentication and accounting, using the default UDP ports. To set a host to be a RADIUS server for authentication requests only, set the **acct-port** parameter to 0; to set the host to be a RADIUS server for accounting requests only, set the **auth-port** parameter to 0.

A RADIUS server is identified by IP address, authentication port and accounting port. A single host can be configured multiple times with different authentication or accounting ports. All the RADIUS servers configured with this command are included in the predefined RADIUS server group **radius**, which may be used by AAA authentication, authorization and accounting commands. The client transmits (and retransmits, according to the **retransmit** and **timeout** parameters) RADIUS authentication or accounting requests to the servers in the order you specify them, until it gets a response.

Examples To add the RADIUS server 10.0.0.20, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host 10.0.0.20
```

To set the secret key to **allied** on the RADIUS server 10.0.0.20, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host 10.0.0.20 key allied
```

To delete the RADIUS server 10.0.0.20, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server host 10.0.0.20
```

To configure **rad1.company.com** for authentication only, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host rad1.company.com
                    acct-port 0
```

To remove the RADIUS server **rad1.company.com** configured for authentication only, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server host rad1.company.com
                    acct-port 0
```

To configure **rad2.company.com** for accounting only, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host rad2.company.com
                    auth-port 0
```

To configure 192.168.1.1 with authentication port 1000, accounting port 1001 and retransmit count 5, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host 192.168.1.1 auth-port 1000
acct-port 1001 retransmit 5
```

Related Commands

- [aaa group server](#)
- [radius-server key](#)
- [radius-server retransmit](#)
- [radius-server timeout](#)
- [show radius statistics](#)

radius-server key

This command sets a global secret key for RADIUS authentication on the switch. The shared secret text string is used for RADIUS authentication between the switch and a RADIUS server.

Note that if no secret key is explicitly specified for a RADIUS server, the global secret key will be used for the shared secret for the server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the secret key to the default (null).

Syntax radius-server key <key>
no radius-server key

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <key> | Shared secret among radius server and 802.1X client. |

Default The RADIUS server secret key on the system is not set by default (null).

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to set the global secret key shared between this client and its RADIUS servers. If no secret key is specified for a particular RADIUS server using the **radius-server host** command, this global key is used.

After enabling AAA authentication with the **aaa authentication login** command, set the authentication and encryption key using the **radius-server key** command so the key entered matches the key used on the RADIUS server.

Examples To set the global secret key to **allied** for RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server key allied
```

To set the global secret key to **secret** for RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server key secret
```

To delete the global secret key for RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server key
```

Related Commands [radius-server host](#)
[show radius statistics](#)

radius-server retransmit

This command sets the retransmit counter to use RADIUS authentication on the switch. This command specifies how many times the switch transmits each RADIUS request to the RADIUS server before giving up.

This command configures the **retransmit** parameter for RADIUS servers globally. If the **retransmit** parameter is not specified for a RADIUS server by the **radius-server host** command then the global configuration set by this command is used for the server instead.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the re-transmit counter to the default (3).

Syntax `radius-server retransmit <retries>`
`no radius-server retransmit`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><retries></code> | RADIUS server retries in the range <0-100>. The number of times a request is resent to a RADIUS server that does not respond, before the server is considered dead and the next server is tried. If no retransmit value is specified for a particular RADIUS server using the radius-server host command, this global value is used. |

Default The default RADIUS retransmit count on the switch is 3.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the RADIUS **retransmit** count to 1, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server retransmit 1
```

To set the RADIUS **retransmit** count to the default (3), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server retransmit
```

To configure the RADIUS **retransmit** count globally with 5, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server retransmit 5
```

To disable retransmission of requests to a RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server retransmit 0
```

Related Commands [radius-server deadtime](#)
[radius-server host](#)
[show radius statistics](#)

radius-server timeout

Use this command to specify the RADIUS global timeout value. This is how long the device waits for a reply to a RADIUS request before retransmitting the request, or considering the server to be dead. If no timeout is specified for the particular RADIUS server by the **radius-server host** command, it uses this global timeout value.

Note that this command configures the **timeout** parameter for RADIUS servers globally.

The **no** variant of this command resets the transmit timeout to the default (5 seconds).

Syntax `radius-server timeout <seconds>`

`no radius-server timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><seconds></code> | RADIUS server timeout in seconds in the range 1 to 1000. The global time in seconds to wait for a RADIUS server to reply to a request before retransmitting the request, or considering the server to be dead (depending on the radius-server retransmit command). |

Default The default RADIUS transmit timeout on the system is 5 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To globally set the device to wait 20 seconds before retransmitting a RADIUS request to unresponsive RADIUS servers, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server timeout 20
```

To set the RADIUS **timeout** parameter to 1 second, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server timeout 1
```

To set the RADIUS **timeout** parameter to the default (5 seconds), use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server timeout
```

To configure the RADIUS server **timeout** period globally with 3 seconds, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server timeout 3
```

To reset the global **timeout** period for RADIUS servers to the default, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no radius-server timeout
```

Related Commands

- [radius-server deadtime](#)
- [radius-server host](#)
- [radius-server retransmit](#)
- [show radius statistics](#)

server (Server Group)

This command adds a RADIUS server to a server group in Server-Group Configuration mode. The RADIUS server should be configured by the [radius-server host](#) command.

The server is appended to the server list of the group and the order of configuration determines the precedence of servers. If the server exists in the server group already, it will be removed before added as a new server.

The server is identified by IP address and authentication and accounting UDP port numbers. So a RADIUS server can have multiple entries in a group with different authentication and/or accounting UDP ports. The **auth-port** specifies the UDP destination port for authentication requests to the server. To disable authentication for the server, set **auth-port** to 0. If the authentication port is missing, the default port number is 1812. The **acct-port** specifies the UDP destination port for accounting requests to the server. To disable accounting for the server, set **acct-port** to 0. If the accounting port is missing, the default port number is 1812.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a RADIUS server from the server group.

Syntax

```
server {<hostname>|<ip-address>}
      [auth-port <0-65535>][acct-port <0-65535>]
no server {<hostname>|<ip-address>}
      [auth-port <0-65535>][acct-port <0-65535>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i><hostname></i> | Server host name |
| <i><ip-address></i> | Server IP address The server is identified by IP address, authentication and accounting UDP port numbers. So a RADIUS server can have multiple entries in a group with different authentication and/or accounting UDP ports. |
| auth-port | Authentication port The auth-port specifies the UDP destination port for authentication requests to the server. To disable authentication for the server, set auth-port to 0. If the authentication port is missing, the default port number is 1812. |
| <i><0-65535></i> | UDP port number (default: 1812) |
| acct-port | Accounting port The acct-port specifies the UDP destination port for accounting requests to the server. To disable accounting for the server, set acct-port to 0. If the accounting port is missing, the default port number is 1813. |
| <i><0-65535></i> | UDP port number (default: 1813) |

Default The default Authentication port number is 1812 and the default Accounting port number is 1813.

Mode Server Group Configuration

Usage The RADIUS server to be added must be configured by the **radius-server host** command. In order to add or remove a server, the **auth-port** and **acct-port** parameters in this command must be the same as the corresponding parameters in the **radius-server host** command.

Examples To create a RADIUS server group RAD_AUTH1 for authentication, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius RAD_AUTH1
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.1.1 acct-port 0
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.2.1 auth-port 1000
acct-port 0
```

To create a RADIUS server group RAD_ACCT1 for accounting, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius RAD_ACCT1
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.2.1 auth-port 0
acct-port 1001
awplus(config-sg)# server 192.168.3.1 auth-port 0
```

To remove server 192.168.3.1 from the existing server group **GROUP1**, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# aaa group server radius GROUP1
awplus(config-sg)# no server 192.168.3.1
```

Related Commands

- [aaa accounting auth-mac default](#)
- [aaa accounting auth-web default](#)
- [aaa accounting dot1x](#)
- [aaa accounting login](#)
- [aaa authentication auth-mac](#)
- [aaa authentication auth-web](#)
- [aaa authentication login](#)
- [aaa group server](#)
- [radius-server host](#)

show debugging radius

This command displays the current debugging status for the RADIUS servers.

Syntax `show debugging radius`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current debugging status of RADIUS servers, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging radius
```

Output **Figure 45-1: Example output from the show debugging radius command**

```
RADIUS debugging status:  
RADIUS event debugging is off  
RADIUS packet debugging is off
```

show radius

This command displays the current RADIUS server configuration and status.

Syntax show radius

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current status of RADIUS servers, use the command:

```
awplus# show radius
```

Output **Figure 45-2: Example output from the show radius command showing RADIUS servers**

```
RADIUS Global Configuration
Source Interface : not configured
Secret Key : secret
Timeout : 5 sec
Retransmit Count : 3
Deadtime : 20 min
Server Host : 192.168.1.10
Authentication Port : 1812
Accounting Port : 1813
Secret Key : secret
Timeout : 3 sec
Retransmit Count : 2
Server Host : 192.168.1.11
Authentication Port : 1812
Accounting Port : not configured
Server Name/Auth Acct Auth Acct
IP Address Port Port Status Status
-----
192.168.1.10 1812 1813 Alive Alive
192.168.1.11 1812 N/A Alive N/A
```

Example See the sample output below showing RADIUS client status and RADIUS configuration:

```
awplus# show radius
```

Output **Figure 45-3: Example output from the show radius command showing RADIUS client status**

```
RADIUS global interface name: awplus
Secret key:
Timeout: 5
Retransmit count: 3
Deadtime: 0

Server Address: 150.87.18.89
Auth destination port: 1812
Accounting port: 1813
Secret key: swg
Timeout: 5
Retransmit count: 3
Deadtime: 0show radius local-server group
```

| Output Parameter | Meaning | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|---|-------|----------------------|-------|-------------------------------|------|--|---------|--|
| Source Interface | The interface name or IP address to be used for the source address of all outgoing RADIUS packets. | | | | | | | | |
| Secret Key | A shared secret key to a radius server. | | | | | | | | |
| Timeout | A time interval in seconds. | | | | | | | | |
| Retransmit Count | The number of retry count if a RADIUS server does not response. | | | | | | | | |
| Deadtime | A time interval in minutes to mark a RADIUS server as "dead". | | | | | | | | |
| Interim-Update | A time interval in minutes to send Interim-Update Accounting report. | | | | | | | | |
| Group Deadtime | The deadtime configured for RADIUS servers within a server group. | | | | | | | | |
| Server Host | The RADIUS server hostname or IP address. | | | | | | | | |
| Authentication Port | The destination UDP port for RADIUS authentication requests. | | | | | | | | |
| Accounting Port | The destination UDP port for RADIUS accounting requests. | | | | | | | | |
| Auth Status | <p>The status of the authentication port.</p> <p>The status ("dead", "error", or "alive") of the RADIUS authentication server and, if dead, how long it has been dead for.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Alive</td> <td>The server is alive.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Error</td> <td>The server is not responding.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dead</td> <td>The server is detected as dead and it will not be used for deadtime period. The time displayed in the output shows the server is in dead status for that amount of time.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unknown</td> <td>The server is never used or the status is unknown.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Alive | The server is alive. | Error | The server is not responding. | Dead | The server is detected as dead and it will not be used for deadtime period. The time displayed in the output shows the server is in dead status for that amount of time. | Unknown | The server is never used or the status is unknown. |
| Alive | The server is alive. | | | | | | | | |
| Error | The server is not responding. | | | | | | | | |
| Dead | The server is detected as dead and it will not be used for deadtime period. The time displayed in the output shows the server is in dead status for that amount of time. | | | | | | | | |
| Unknown | The server is never used or the status is unknown. | | | | | | | | |
| Acct Status | <p>The status of the accounting port.</p> <p>The status ("dead", "error", or "alive") of the RADIUS accounting server and, if dead, how long it has been dead for.</p> | | | | | | | | |

show radius statistics

This command shows the RADIUS client statistics for the switch.

Syntax show radius statistics

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example See the sample output below showing RADIUS client statistics and RADIUS configuration:

```
awplus# show radius statistics
```

Output **Figure 45-4: Example output from the show radius statistics command:**

```
RADIUS statistics for Server: 150.87.18.89
Access-Request Tx : 5 - Retransmit : 0
Access-Accept Rx : 1 - Access-Reject Rx : 2
Access-Challenge Rx : 2
Unknown Type : 0 - Bad Authenticator: 0
Malformed Access-Resp: 0 - Wrong Identifier: 0
Bad Attribute : 0 - Packet Dropped : 0
TimeOut : 0 - Dead count : 0
Pending Request: 0
```

undebug radius

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug radius** command on page 45.3.

Chapter 46: TACACS+ Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|------|
| Introduction | 46.2 |
| TACACS+ Overview | 46.2 |
| The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ Implementation..... | 46.2 |
| Authentication | 46.3 |
| Authorization | 46.3 |
| Accounting..... | 46.4 |
| Configuration | 46.5 |
| Configure TACACS+ | 46.5 |
| TACACS+ Configuration Example..... | 46.7 |

Introduction

This chapter provides information about the AlliedWare Plus implementation of TACACS+ and how to configure it on this switch. For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure TACACS+, see [Chapter 47, TACACS+ Commands](#). For information about Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA), see [Chapter 42, AAA Introduction and Configuration](#) and [Chapter 43, AAA Commands](#).

TACACS+ Overview

TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) provides a method for securely managing multiple network access points from a single management service.

TACACS+ is a TCP-based access control protocol, utilizing TCP port 49, that allows a device to forward a user's username and password to an authentication server to determine whether access can be allowed. In addition to this authentication service, TACACS+ can also provide authorization and accounting services.

One of the features of TACACS+ is the ability to separate authentication, authorization and accounting so that these functions can be provided independently on separate servers. Authentication involves identifying a user, typically by requiring the user to supply a valid username and password before access is granted. Following authentication, the user must gain authorization to perform tasks. For example, after logging into a switch, a user may try to issue configuration commands. The authorization process determines whether the user has the authority to issue these commands. Authorization is always preceded by authentication.

The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ Implementation

The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation provides authentication, authorization, and accounting. Note that:

- Authorization cannot be performed independently of the authentication process. There are no authorization commands available.
- Authentication and authorization must be configured on the same server.
- Authorization is only applicable if enable password authentication has not been configured with the **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+** command.

With the AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation, all traffic that passes between the TACACS+ client and the TACACS+ servers on the network is encrypted. TACACS+ encrypts the entire payload of packets, which means that it encrypts the user's password between the client and the server.

A TACACS+ client is available on your switch. You need a system running TACACS+ server software from a software provider to use the TACACS+ functionality on your switch.

Authentication

The TACACS+ protocol can forward many types of username and password information. The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation supports username and password login authentication, as well as enable password authentication. This information is encrypted over the network with MD5 (Message Digest 5).

When TACACS+ login authentication is enabled on the switch with the **aaa authentication login** command and at least one TACACS+ server is configured and reachable, all user login authentications are authenticated against the TACACS+ server. No local login or other means of authentication is allowed or accepted by the switch unless the switch has been configured to use another authentication method as a backup, and the TACACS+ server is not reachable.

When TACACS+ enable password authentication is enabled on the switch with the **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+** command and at least one TACACS+ server is configured and reachable, all user attempts to access a higher privilege level using the **enable (Privileged Exec mode)** command are authenticated against the TACACS+ server. If TACACS+ enable password authentication is enabled and the TACACS+ server is not reachable, then the user is only granted access to the desired privilege level if a backup authentication method is also configured.

 **Note** If TACACS+ login authentication is enabled on the switch, and enable password authentication is configured as default with the **aaa authentication enable default local** command, then a local enable password must be configured for each privilege level that needs to be accessible to users.

Authorization

In the AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation, authorization cannot be performed independently of the authentication process. Authorization is concerned with what users are allowed to do once they have gained access to the managed device. This involves the passing of Attribute Value pairs (AV pairs) from the TACACS+ server to the managed device. An AV pair is made up of two pieces of information: the attribute that identifies the parameter to be set, and the value that specifies the value to assign to that parameter. These AV pairs are configured on a per-user or per-group basis on the TACACS+ server. The AV pairs that are supported by the AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation are:

- **Privilege Level**

Privilege levels range from 1 to 15, with 15 being the highest. For information about privilege levels see [“How to Add and Remove Users” on page 1.27](#) and the [username](#) command on page 5.38.
- **Timeout**

The value assigned to this attribute specifies the length of time that the session can exist. After this value has expired, the session will either be disconnected, or have the privilege of the user reduced. The valid range of timeout values is 0 to 65535 (minutes).
- **Idletime**

If no input or output traffic is received or sent in the period specified by the value for this attribute, the session is disconnected. The valid idletime range is 0 to 65535 (minutes).

 **Note** In the AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ implementation, authorization for privilege level, timeout, and idletime AV pairs is only attempted if enable password authentication (**aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+** command) is not configured. If enable password authentication is configured then the privilege level a user is granted access to is determined during the enable password authentication session.

Accounting

TACACS+ accounting usually takes place after authentication and authorization. However, because TACACS+ separates these three functions, neither authentication nor authorization are required for accounting to function. TACACS+ accounting provides the following two distinct functions:

- a record of services used for billing purposes
- an audit trail for user exec sessions

The AlliedWare Plus TACACS+ accounting implementation supports an audit trail for user exec sessions only. This includes the ability to configure accounting for user logins and logouts, and accounting of any commands executed by the user while they are logged into the switch.

TACACS+ accounting includes three different types of accounting records:

- **start** records that indicate a service is about to start
- **stop** records that indicate a service has just ended
- **update** records that indicate a service is still in progress

Configuration

This section describes how to set up TACACS+ for login authentication, enable password authentication, and accounting.

The TACACS+ server is normally a multiuser system running TACACS+ server software from a software provider. TACACS+ servers are identified on the basis of their host name or IP address. A TACACS+ server and a switch use a shared secret text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. To configure TACACS+, you must specify the host running the TACACS+ server software and a secret text string that it shares with the switch.

Configure TACACS+

Table 46-1: General configuration procedure for TACACS+ authentication and accounting

Step 1. Specify a remote TACACS+ server and the shared secret key

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# tacacs-server host {<host-name> <ip-address>} [key [8]<key-string>]</pre> | <p>Specify the IP address or host name of the remote TACACS+ server host and the shared secret key to use with the specified TACACS+ server.</p> <p>Specify 8 if you are entering a password as a string that has already been encrypted instead of entering a plain text password.</p> <p>As many as four TACACS+ servers can be configured and consulted for authentication and accounting. The first server configured is regarded as the primary server and if the primary server fails then the backup servers are consulted in turn.</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config)# tacacs-server key [8] <key-string></pre> | <p>Specify the global shared secret text string used between the switch and all TACACS+ servers.</p> <p>Specify 8 if you are entering a password as a string that has already been encrypted instead of entering a plain text password.</p> <p>If no secret key is explicitly specified for a TACACS+ server with the tacacs-server host command, the global secret key will be used.</p> |

Step 2. Specify the timeout value

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# tacacs-server timeout <seconds></pre> | Specify for how many seconds a switch waits for a reply to a TACACS+ request before considering the TACACS+ server dead. |
|--|--|

Table 46-1: General configuration procedure for TACACS+ authentication and accounting(cont.)**Step 3. Define the method list for TACACS+ login authentication**

```

awplus(config)#
aaa authentication login
{default|<list-name>} {[local]
[group {radius|tacacs+|
<group-name>}]}

```

This method list defines the AAA server type used for login authentication. The server types are always used in the order specified with this command. If the first server in the method list is unreachable, the switch sends the request to the next server in the list. If the authentication server denies the authentication request because of an incorrect username or password then the user login fails.

Step 4. Define the method list for TACACS+ enable password authentication

```

awplus(config)#
aaa authentication enable
default group tacacs+ [local]
[none]

```

This method list defines the authentication method used to determine the privilege command level a user can access. Specify **local** to use the locally configured enable password and **none** to grant access to Privileged Exec mode with no authentication, if the TACACS+ server goes offline, or is not reachable during enable password authentication.

Step 5. Define the method for TACACS+ login accounting

```

awplus(config)#
aaa accounting login {default|
<list-name>} {start-stop|
stop-only|none} {group {radius|
tacacs+|<group-name>}}

```

You can only define one method for login accounting, either RADIUS or TACACS+. Specify **start-stop** to send both start and stop login accounting records, **stop-only** to send only stop login accounting records, or **none** to disable the sending of login accounting records.

Step 6. Configure TACACS+ command accounting

```

awplus(config)#
aaa accounting commands <1-15>
default stop-only group tacacs+

```

TACACS+ command accounting is configured per privilege level and only commands of the specified privilege level are accounted. Therefore, if you require that all commands are accounted to the TACACS+ server, you must configure command accounting for each privilege level separately. Commands are accounted to the TACACS+ server after they have successfully executed.

Step 7. Troubleshooting TACACS+

```

awplus(config)#
show tacacs+

```

Display the current TACACS+ server configuration and status.

```

awplus#
debug aaa authentication

```

Enable debug output for TACACS+ authentication.

```

awplus#
debug aaa authorization

```

Enable debug output for TACACS+ authorization.

```

awplus#
debug aaa accounting

```

Enable debug output for TACACS+ accounting.

TACACS+ Configuration Example

Example The following example shows how to configure the switch to authenticate and account using TACACS+.

Figure 46-1: Sample TACACS+ authentication and accounting to configure the switch to authenticate and account user exec sessions

```
!  
tacacs-server host 172.10.10.1  
tacacs-server key tacacspass  
aaa authentication login admin group tacacs+ local  
aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ local  
aaa accounting login admin start-stop group tacacs+  
aaa accounting commands 1 default stop-only group tacacs+  
aaa accounting commands 7 default stop-only group tacacs+  
aaa accounting commands 15 default stop-only group tacacs+  
  
line console 0  
login authentication admin  
accounting login admin  
!
```

The lines in this example TACACS+ authentication and accounting configuration are defined as follows:

- The **tacacs-server host** command defines the IP address of the TACACS+ server host.
- The **tacacs-server key** command defines the global shared secret text string between the network access server and the TACACS+ server host.
- The **aaa authentication login** command defines a method list named **admin** to use first the TACACS+ servers and then the local user database for user login authentication.
- The **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+** command defines a method list to use first the TACACS+ servers and then the local enable passwords, set with the **enable password** command, for user enable password authentication.
- The **aaa accounting login** command defines a method named **admin** to use TACACS+ servers for login accounting.
- The **aaa accounting commands** command specifies the privilege level of the commands that will be accounted.
- The **login authentication** command specifies that this method list will be used for authenticating users logging in on the asynchronous console port.
- The **accounting login** command specifies that this method list will be used for accounting users logging in on the asynchronous console port.

Chapter 47: TACACS+ Commands



| | |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Command List | 47.2 |
| tacacs-server host | 47.2 |
| tacacs-server key | 47.4 |
| tacacs-server timeout | 47.5 |
| show tacacs+ | 47.6 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure the device to use TACACS+ servers. For more information about TACACS+, see [Chapter 46, TACACS+ Introduction and Configuration](#).

tacacs-server host

Use this command to specify a remote TACACS+ server host for authentication, authorization and accounting, and to set the shared secret key to use with the TACACS+ server. The parameters specified with this command override the corresponding global parameters for TACACS+ servers.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified server host as a TACACS+ authentication and authorization server.

Syntax `tacacs-server host {<host-name>|<ip-address>} [key [8]<key-string>]`
`no tacacs-server host {<host-name>|<ip-address>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><host-name></code> | Server host name. The DNS name of the TACACS+ server host. |
| <code><ip-address></code> | The IP address of the TACACS+ server host, in dotted decimal notation A.B.C.D. |
| <code>key</code> | Set shared secret key with TACACS+ servers. |
| <code>8</code> | Specifies that you are entering a password as a string that has already been encrypted instead of entering a plain text password. The running config displays the new password as an encrypted string even if password encryption is turned off. |
| <code><key-string></code> | Shared key string applied, a value in the range 1 to 64 characters. Specifies the shared secret authentication or encryption key for all TACACS+ communications between this device and the TACACS+ server. This key must match the encryption used on the TACACS+ server. This setting overrides the global setting of the tacacs-server key command. If no key value is specified, the global value is used. |

Default No TACACS+ server is configured by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage A TACACS+ server host cannot be configured multiple times like a RADIUS server.

As many as four TACACS+ servers can be configured and consulted for login authentication, enable password authentication and accounting. The first server configured is regarded as the primary server and if the primary server fails then the backup servers are consulted in turn. A backup server is consulted if the primary server fails, not if a login authentication attempt is rejected. The reasons a server would fail are:

- it is not network reachable
- it is not currently TACACS+ capable
- it cannot communicate with the switch properly due to the switch and the server having different secret keys

Examples To add the server `tacl1.company.com` as the TACACS+ server host, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# tacacs-server host tacl1.company.com
```

To set the secret key to `secret` on the TACACS+ server `192.168.1.1`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.1.1 key secret
```

To remove the TACACS+ server `tacl1.company.com`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no tacacs-server host tacl1.company.com
```

Related Commands

- [aaa accounting commands](#)
- [aaa authentication login](#)
- [tacacs-server key](#)
- [tacacs-server timeout](#)
- [show tacacs+](#)

tacacs-server key

This command sets a global secret key for TACACS+ authentication, authorization and accounting. The shared secret text string is used for TACACS+ communications between the switch and all TACACS+ servers.

Note that if no secret key is explicitly specified for a TACACS+ server with the **tacacs-server host** command, the global secret key will be used for the shared secret for the server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the global secret key.

Syntax tacacs-server key [8] <key-string>

no tacacs-server key

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| 8 | Specifies a string in an encrypted format instead of plain text. The running config will display the new password as an encrypted string even if password encryption is turned off. |
| <key-string> | Shared key string applied, a value in the range 1 to 64 characters. Specifies the shared secret authentication or encryption key for all TACACS+ communications between this device and all TACACS+ servers. This key must match the encryption used on the TACACS+ server. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to set the global secret key shared between this client and its TACACS+ servers. If no secret key is specified for a particular TACACS+ server using the **tacacs-server host** command, this global key is used.

Examples To set the global secret key to `secret` for TACACS+ server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# tacacs-server key secret
```

To delete the global secret key for TACACS+ server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no tacacs-server key
```

Related Commands **tacacs-server host**
show tacacs+

tacacs-server timeout

Use this command to specify the TACACS+ global timeout value. The timeout value is how long the device waits for a reply to a TACACS+ request before considering the server to be dead.

Note that this command configures the **timeout** parameter for TACACS+ servers globally.

The **no** variant of this command resets the transmit timeout to the default (5 seconds).

Syntax `tacacs-server timeout <seconds>`
`no tacacs-server timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><seconds></code> | TACACS+ server timeout in seconds, in the range 1 to 1000. |

Default The default timeout value is 5 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the timeout value to 3 seconds, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# tacacs-server timeout 3
```

To reset the timeout period for TACACS+ servers to the default, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no tacacs-server timeout
```

Related Commands [tacacs-server host](#)
[show tacacs+](#)

show tacacs+

This command displays the current TACACS+ server configuration and status.

Syntax `show tacacs+`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current status of TACACS+ servers, use the command:

```
awplus# show tacacs+
```

Output **Figure 47-1: Example output from the show tacacs+ command**

```
TACACS+ Global Configuration
  Timeout           : 5 sec

Server Host/      Server
IP Address        Status
-----
192.168.1.10     Alive
192.168.1.11     Unknown
```

Table 47-1: Parameters in the output of the show tacacs+ command

| Output Parameter | Meaning |
|------------------------|--|
| Timeout | A time interval in seconds. |
| Server Host/IP Address | TACACS+ server hostname or IP address. |
| Server Status | The status of the authentication port. |
| Alive | The server is alive. |
| Dead | The server has timed out. |
| Error | The server is not responding or there is an error in the key string entered. |
| Unknown | The server is never used or the status is unknown. |
| Unreachable | The server is unreachable. |
| Unresolved | The server name can not be resolved. |

Chapter 48: Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|--|------|
| Local RADIUS Server Introduction | 48.2 |
| Enable the Local RADIUS Server | 48.2 |
| Add the Local RADIUS Server as a RADIUS Server | 48.3 |
| Add Authenticators to the List of Authenticators..... | 48.3 |
| Configure the Local RADIUS Server User Database..... | 48.3 |
| Authenticating Login Sessions | 48.5 |
| RADIUS Authentication with User Privileges | 48.5 |
| Creating Certificates for Single Users and All Users | 48.8 |
| Defined RADIUS Attributes List..... | 48.9 |

Local RADIUS Server Introduction

Local RADIUS Server provides a user authentication service feature. This feature must be enabled on the switch, because it is disabled by default. For details of commands used to configure the local RADIUS server, see [Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands](#).

Enable the Local RADIUS Server

The Local RADIUS Server is disabled by default. Enter the following commands to enable the Local RADIUS Server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# server enable
```

This will automatically initialize the internal Certificate Authority (CA) in the switch. It will also automatically create a server certificate and enroll the certificate with the Local CA by implicitly executing the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# crypto pki trustpoint local
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local
```

The **crypto pki trustpoint local** command declares the Local CA as the CA from which to obtain Certificates. The Local CA has been defined first so Certificates can be obtained from it. The **crypto pki enroll local** command obtains the system certificate from the Local CA.

The switch is automatically added to the list of authenticators that may send authentication requests to the Local RADIUS Server by implicitly executing the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-
server
```

 **Note** The key **awplus-local-radius-server** is a pre-defined component that can be used for internal exchanges between the switch's RADIUS client and its RADIUS server.

Add the Local RADIUS Server as a RADIUS Server

Although the switch is automatically defined as a NAS (Network Access Server) for the Local RADIUS Server, you must manually add the Local RADIUS Server to the server list defined for the Local RADIUS Client.

Use the following commands to add the Local RADIUS Server as a RADIUS Server. The Local RADIUS Client can then send authentication requests to its Local RADIUS Server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-
radius-server
```

Add Authenticators to the List of Authenticators

Authenticators can send authentication requests to the Local RADIUS Server.

Use the following commands to add other authenticators to the list of authenticators.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# nas <nas-ip-address> key <nas-keystring>
```

Configure the Local RADIUS Server User Database

Add users to the RADIUS user list without assigning VLANs

For entries that will be used to authenticate dot1x supplicants, but not assign them to a VLAN, the following commands will add users to the RADIUS user list:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user <radius-user-name> password <user-
password>
```

Add users to the RADIUS user list and assign VLANs

Add users to the RADIUS user list, and define a VLAN ID that will be assigned to them.

To add entries to be used to authenticate dot1x supplicants, and assign them to a VLAN, follow the two steps shown below:

Step 1: Create groups associated with the VLANs that will be allocated

Enter the following commands to create groups with the VLANs that will be allocated to them:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group VLAN10Users
awplus(config-radsrv)# vlan 10
awplus(config-radsrv)# group VLAN11Users
awplus(config-radsrv)# vlan 11
```

Step 2: Add the users after creating groups

Add the users and refer to the relevant group in the command that creates the user as below:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user VCSPCVLAN10 password VCSPCPass
group VLAN10Users
awplus(config-radsrv)# user VCSPCVLAN11 password VCSPCPass
group VLAN11Users
```

Authenticating Login Sessions

Authentication can be performed in multiple contexts, such as the authentication of users logging in at a console, as well as tri-authentication of devices connecting to switch ports, see [Tri-Authentication Configuration](#) in [Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration](#).

RADIUS Authentication with User Privileges

There are three groups of privilege levels:

- Users with privilege levels 1 to 6 have access to privilege 1 level commands.
- Users with privilege 7 to 14 have access to privilege level 1 commands and all show commands.
- Users with privilege level 15 have access to all commands.

When a user logs into a management session on a switch by console, telnet, or SSH and is being authenticated by RADIUS, the RADIUS server needs to be able to indicate to the switch what privilege level to assign to the user's session.

The way that the privilege level is associated with a user is to use the RADIUS attributes. The attributes are configured on RADIUS groups.

Because there are three group of security privilege levels there will need to be up to three different groups for login users; each group specifying a different privilege level.

The attributes that need to be configured on the three different RADIUS groups are as follows:

1. For the users with a privilege level of 1-6 use just the RADIUS attribute `Service-Type`, and assign it the value `NAS-Prompt-User`:

```
attribute Service-Type NAS-Prompt-User
```

2. For users with the security privilege of 7-14 use the following 2 RADIUS attributes:

```
attribute Cisco-AVPair shell:priv-lvl=7
attribute Service-Type NAS-Prompt-User
```

3. User with the administrator security privilege use just the RADIUS attribute `Service-Type`, and assign it the value `Administrative-User`:

```
attribute Service-Type Administrative-User
```

Since there is not an explicit RADIUS attribute for the users with the security privilege level 7, use "Cisco-AVPair" to specify this user privilege. Also, it is very important that you specify the attribute `Service-Type NAS-Prompt-User` as well, otherwise the following error is generated when a user allocated to this group tries to login into the AlliedWare Plus switch:

```
19:09:14 awplus login[16974]: Invalid user name "tests" in
main:698. Abort.
```

The RADIUS Server attribute `NAS-Prompt-User` is used for non-privileged level users as per the RADIUS RFC. This attribute is used for users with security privilege levels of 1 to 6.

Configuring these RADIUS Server attributes is achieved using Local RADIUS Server commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group users
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute Service-Type NAS-
Prompt_User
```

See the below sample configuration for an AlliedWare Plus switch acting as the RADIUS Server, with the three different security privileges for admin, middle-management, and users groups:

Figure 48-1: Sample RADIUS Server configuration for three different security privileges:

```
crypto pki trustpoint local
!
crypto pki enroll local
radius-server local
  server enable
  nas 10.1.1.1 key test
  nas 127.0.0.1 key awplus-local-radius-server
group admin
  attribute Service-Type Administrative-User
group middle-management
  attribute Cisco-AVPair shell:priv-lvl=7
  attribute Service-Type NAS-Prompt-User
group users
  attribute Service-Type NAS-Prompt-User
  user test encrypted password UukoSyvxY2v9iWXm8e/
  JMDJd9iIc3RPyY09lGOb3pA4= group users
  user tested encrypted password
  sEDhM4iJRfJrLhhs+RgjpgkDXtCwuji6AllpApi9EjA= group admin
  user tests encrypted password il9aIh8JLOT6kHDV+Ix7/
  8fzyfVpAwRErJg6NPQdJy8= group middle-management
```

Removing users from the RADIUS users list

To remove the user Tom from the user database of the Local RADIUS server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no user Tom
```

Creating Certificates for Single Users and All Users

Create a certificate for a single user

A certificate for user Tom can be created from the local CA by using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local user Tom
```

Create a certificate for all users

Certificates can be created for all currently defined users by using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users
```

Exporting certificates

User certificates can be exported in PKCS12 format.

To export a certificate for user Tom and upload it to the TFTP server at 192.168.1.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki export local pkcs12 Tom tftp://
192.168.1.1/tomcert.pkcs
```

Defined RADIUS Attributes List

This is a full list of valid attributes and pre-defined values that may be used in conjunction with the **attribute** command on page 49.2, to show or configure defined RADIUS attributes.

Table 48-1 lists all Standard attributes and values, **Table 48-2** lists the Vendor-Specific attribute (attribute ID 26) names and values.

More detailed information can be found in the following RFCs, defining the attributes and values for RADIUS server:

- RFC2865: Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)
- RFC2866: RADIUS Accounting
- RFC2867: RADIUS Accounting Modifications for Tunnel Protocol Support
- RFC2868: RADIUS Attributes for Tunnel Protocol Support
- RFC2869: RADIUS Extensions
- RFC3162: RADIUS and IPv6
- RFC3576: Dynamic Authorization Extensions to Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)
- RFC3580: IEEE 802.1X Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) Usage Guidelines
- RFC4072: Diameter Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) Application
- RFC4372: Chargeable User Identity
- RFC4603: Additional Values for the NAS-Port-Type Attribute
- RFC4675: RADIUS Attributes for Virtual LAN and Priority Support
- RFC4679: DSL Forum Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes
- RFC4818: RADIUS Delegated-IPv6-Prefix Attribute
- RFC4849: RADIUS Filter Rule Attribute
- RFC5176: Dynamic Authorization Extensions to Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)
- RFC5580: Carrying Location Objects in RADIUS and Diameter
- RFC5607: Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) Authorization for Network Access Server (NAS) Management
- RFC5904: RADIUS Attributes for IEEE 802.16 Privacy Key Management Version 1 (PKMv1) Protocol Support

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 User-Name | string |
| 2 User-Password | string |
| 3 CHAP-Password | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 4 NAS-IP-Address | ipaddr (IPv4 address) |
| 5 NAS-Port | Integer |
| 6 Service-Type | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Administrative-User (6) ■ Authenticate-Only (8) ■ Authorize-Only (17) ■ Callback-Administrative (11) ■ Callback-Framed-User (4) ■ Callback-Login-User (3) ■ Callback-NAS-Prompt (9) ■ Call-Check (10) ■ Framed-Management (18) ■ Framed-User (2) ■ Login-User (1) ■ NAS-Prompt-User (7) ■ Outbound-User (5) |
| 7 Framed-Protocol | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ARAP (3) ■ Gandalf-SLML (4) ■ PPP (1) ■ SLIP (2) ■ X.75-Synchronous (6) ■ Xylogics-IPX-SLIP (5) |
| 8 Framed-IP-Address | ipaddr (IPv4 address) |
| 9 Framed-IP-Netmask | ipaddr (IPv4 address) |
| 10 Framed-Routing | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Broadcast (1) ■ Broadcast-Listen (3) ■ Listen (2) ■ None (0) |
| 11 Filter-Id | string |
| 12 Framed-MTU | Integer |
| 13 Framed-Compression | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ IPX-Header-Compression (2) ■ None (0) ■ Stac-LZS (3) ■ Van-Jacobson-TCP-IP (1) |
| 14 Login-IP-Host | IP Address |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|--|
| 15 Login-Service | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ LAT (4) ■ PortMaster (3) ■ Rlogin (1) ■ TCP-Clear (2) ■ TCP-Clear-Quiet (8) ■ Telnet (0) ■ X25-PAD (5) ■ X25-T3POS (6) |
| 16 Login-TCP-Port | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Rlogin (513) ■ Rsh (514) ■ Telnet (23) |
| 18 Reply-Message | string |
| 19 Callback-Number | string |
| 20 Callback-Id | string |
| 22 Framed-Route | string |
| 23 Framed-IPX-Network | IP address |
| 24 State | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 25 Class | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 26 Vendor-Specific | Use the Vendor-specific Attribute Name. For valid values, see “Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes” on page 48.19. |
| 27 Session-Timeout | Integer |
| 28 Idle-Timeout | Integer |
| 29 Termination-Action | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Default (0) ■ RADIUS-Request (1) |
| 30 Called-Station-Id | string |
| 31 Calling-Station-Id | string |
| 32 NAS-Identifier | string |
| 33 Proxy-State | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 34 Login-LAT-Service | string |
| 35 Login-LAT-Node | string |
| 36 Login-LAT-Group | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 37 Framed-AppleTalk-Link | Integer |
| 38 Framed-AppleTalk-Network | Integer |
| 39 Framed-AppleTalk-Zone | string |
| 40 Acct-Status-Type | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Accounting-Off (8) ■ Accounting-On (7) ■ Alive (3) ■ Failed (15) ■ Interim-Update (3) ■ Start (1) ■ Stop (2) ■ Tunnel-Link-Reject (14) ■ Tunnel-Link-Start (12) ■ Tunnel-Link-Stop (13) ■ Tunnel-Reject (11) ■ Tunnel-Start (9) ■ Tunnel-Stop (10) |
| 41 Acct-Delay-Time | Integer |
| 42 Acct-Input-Octets | Integer |
| 43 Acct-Output-Octets | Integer |
| 44 Acct-Session-Id | string |
| 45 Acct-Authentic | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Diameter (4) ■ Local (2) ■ RADIUS (1) ■ Remote (3) |
| 46 Acct-Session-Time | Integer |
| 47 Acct-Input-Packets | Integer |
| 48 Acct-Output-Packets | Integer |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|--------------------------|--|
| 49 Acct-Terminate-Cause | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Admin-Reboot (7) ■ Admin-Reset (6) ■ Callback (16) ■ Host-Request (18) ■ Idle-Timeout (4) ■ Lost-Carrier (2) ■ Lost-Service (3) ■ NAS-Error (9) ■ NAS-Reboot (11) ■ NAS-Request (10) ■ Port-Disabled (22) ■ Port-Error (8) ■ Port-Preempted (13) ■ Port-Reinit (21) ■ Port-Suspended (14) ■ Port-Unneeded (12) ■ Reauthentication-Failure (20) ■ Service-Unavailable (15) ■ Session-Timeout (5) ■ Supplicant-Restart (19) ■ User-Error (17) ■ User-Request (1) |
| 50 Acct-Multi-Session-Id | string |
| 51 Acct-Link-Count | Integer |
| 52 Acct-Input-Gigawords | Integer |
| 53 Acct-Output-Gigawords | Integer |
| 55 Event-Timestamp | date (Not supported) |
| 56 Egress-VLANID | Integer |
| 57 Ingress-Filters | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Disabled (2) ■ Enabled (1) |
| 58 Egress-VLAN-Name | string |
| 59 User-Priority-Table | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 60 CHAP-Challenge | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|---|
| 61 NAS-Port-Type | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ADSL-CAP (12) ■ ADSL-DMT (13) ■ Async (0) ■ Cable (17) ■ Ethernet (15) ■ FDDI (21) ■ G.3-Fax (10) ■ HDLC-Clear-Channel (7) ■ IDSL (14) ■ ISDN (2) ■ ISDN-V110 (4) ■ ISDN-V120 (3) ■ PIAFS (6) ■ PPPoA (30) ■ PPPoEoA (31) ■ PPPoEoE (32) ■ PPPoEoQinQ (34) ■ PPPoEoVLAN (33) ■ SDSL (11) ■ Sync (1) ■ Token-Ring (20) ■ Virtual (5) ■ Wireless-802.11 (19) ■ Wireless-Other (18) ■ X.25 (8) ■ X.75 (9) ■ xDSL (16) |
| 62 Port-Limit | Integer |
| 63 Login-LAT-Port | string |
| 64 Tunnel-Type | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ AH (6) ■ ATMP (4) ■ DVS (11) ■ ESP (9) ■ GRE (10) ■ IP (7) ■ IP-in-IP (12) ■ L2F (2) ■ L2TP (3) ■ MIN-IP (8) ■ PPTP (1) ■ VLAN (13) ■ VTP (5) |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|----------------------------|---|
| 65 Tunnel-Medium-Type | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Appletalk (12) ■ Banyan-Vines (14) ■ BBN-1822 (5) ■ DecNet-IV (13) ■ E.163 (7) ■ E.164 (8) ■ E.164-NSAP (15) ■ F.69 (9) ■ HDLC (4) ■ IEEE-802 (6) ■ IP (1) ■ IPv4 (1) ■ IPv6 (2) ■ IPX (11) ■ NSAP (3) ■ X.121 (10) |
| 66 Tunnel-Client-Endpoint | string |
| 67 Tunnel-Server-Endpoint | string |
| 68 Acct-Tunnel-Connection | string |
| 69 Tunnel-Password | string |
| 70 ARAP-Password | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 71 ARAP-Features | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 72 ARAP-Zone-Access | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Default-Zone (1) ■ Zone-Filter-Exclusive (4) ■ Zone-Filter-Inclusive (2) |
| 73 ARAP-Security | Integer |
| 74 ARAP-Security-Data | string |
| 75 Password-Retry | integer |
| 76 Prompt | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Echo (1) ■ No-Echo (0) |
| 77 Connect-Info | string |
| 78 Configuration-Token | string |
| 79 EAP-Message | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 80 Message-Authenticator | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 81 Tunnel-Private-Group-Id | string |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 82 | Tunnel-Assignment-Id | string |
| 83 | Tunnel-Preference | Integer |
| 84 | ARAP-Challenge-Response | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 85 | Acct-Interim-Interval | Integer |
| 86 | Acct-Tunnel-Packets-Lost | Integer |
| 87 | NAS-Port-Id | string |
| 88 | Framed-Pool | string |
| 89 | Chargeable-User-Identity | string |
| 90 | Tunnel-Client-Auth-Id | string |
| 91 | Tunnel-Server-Auth-Id | string |
| 92 | NAS-Filter-Rule | string |
| 95 | NAS-IPv6-Address | ipv6addr (IPv6 address) |
| 96 | Framed-Interface-Id | ifid (Not supported) |
| 97 | Framed-IPv6-Prefix | ipv6prefix (Not supported) |
| 98 | Login-IPv6-Host | ipv6addr (IPv6 address) |
| 99 | Framed-IPv6-Route | string |
| 100 | Framed-IPv6-Pool | string |
| 101 | Error-Cause | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Administratively-Prohibited (501) ■ Invalid-Attribute-Value (407) ■ Invalid-EAP-Packet (202) ■ Invalid-Request (404) ■ Missing-Attribute (402) ■ Multiple-Session-Selection-Unsupported (508) ■ NAS-Identification-Mismatch (403) ■ Proxy-Processing-Error (505) ■ Proxy-Request-Not-Routable (502) ■ Request-Initiated (507) ■ Residual-Context-Removed (201) ■ Resources-Unavailable (506) ■ Session-Context-Not-Found (503) ■ Session-Context-Not-Removable (504) ■ Unsupported-Attribute (401) ■ Unsupported-Extension (406) ■ Unsupported-Service (405) |
| 102 | EAP-Key-Name | string |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| 123 | Delegated-IPv6-Prefix | ipv6prefix |
| 126 | Operator-Name | string |
| 127 | Location-Information | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 128 | Location-Data | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 129 | Basic-Location-Policy-Rules | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 130 | Extended-Location-Policy-Rules | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 131 | Location-Capable | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Civix-Location (1) ■ Geo-Location (2) ■ NAS-Location (8) ■ Users-Location (4) |
| 132 | Requested-Location-Info | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Civix-Location (1) ■ Future-Requests (16) ■ Geo-Location (2) ■ NAS-Location (8) ■ None (32) ■ Users-Location (4) |
| 133 | Framed-Management | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ FTP (4) ■ Netconf (3) ■ RCP (7) ■ SCP (8) ■ SFTP (6) ■ SNMP (1) ■ TFTP (5) |
| 134 | Management-Transport-Protection | Integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Integrity-Confidentiality-Protection (3) ■ Integrity-Protection (2) ■ No-Protection (1) |
| 135 | Management-Policy-Id | string |
| 136 | Management-Privilege-Level | Integer |
| 137 | PKM-SS-Cert | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 138 | PKM-CA-Cert | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 139 | PKM-Config-Settings | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 140 | PKM-Cryptosuite-List | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 141 | PKM-SAID | short |

Table 48-1: Standard RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Attribute ID and Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Values |
|-----------------------|--|
| 142 PKM-SA-Descriptor | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |
| 143 PKM-Auth-Key | octets (Hexadecimal string followed by 0x) |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Actual-Data-Rate-Downstream | integer |
| Actual-Data-Rate-Upstream | integer |
| Actual-Interleaving-Delay-Downstream | integer |
| Actual-Interleaving-Delay-Upstream | integer |
| ADSL-Agent-Circuit-Id | string |
| ADSL-Agent-Remote-Id | string |
| Attainable-Data-Rate-Downstream | integer |
| Attainable-Data-Rate-Upstream | integer |
| call-id | string |
| Cisco-Abort-Cause | string |
| Cisco-Account-Info | string |
| Cisco-Assign-IP-Pool | integer |
| Cisco-AVPair | string |
| Cisco-Call-Filter | integer |
| Cisco-Call-Type | string |
| Cisco-Command-Code | string |
| Cisco-Control-Info | string |
| Cisco-Data-Filter | integer |
| Cisco-Data-Rate | integer |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Cisco-Disconnect-Cause | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ CLID-Authentication-Failure - 4 ■ Control-C-Detected - 27 ■ EXEC-Program-Destroyed - 28 ■ Exit-Raw-TCP - 24 ■ Exit-Telnet-Session - 22 ■ Failed-PPP-CHAP-Auth - 43 ■ Failed-PPP-LCP-Negotiation - 41 ■ Failed-PPP-PAP-Auth-Fail - 42 ■ Failed-PPP-Remote-Auth - 44 ■ Idle-Timeout - 21 ■ Invalid-Protocol - 120 ■ Lost-Carrier - 1 ■ No-Carrier - 0 ■ No-Detected-Result-Codes - 2 ■ No-Remote-IP-Addr - 23 ■ Password-Fail - 25 ■ PPP-Closed-Event - 46 ■ PPP-Remote-Terminate - 45 ■ Raw-TCP-Disabled - 26 ■ Session-End-Callback - 02 ■ Session-Failed-Security - 01 ■ Session-Timeout - 00 ■ Timeout-PPP-LCP - 40 ■ Unknown - 2 ■ User-Ends-Session - 20 |
| Cisco-Email-Server-Ack-Flag | string |
| Cisco-Email-Server-Address | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Account-Id-Origin | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Auth-Status | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Connect-Speed | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Coverpage-Flag | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Dsn-Address | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Dsn-Flag | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Mdn-Address | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Mdn-Flag | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Modem-Time | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Msg-Id | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Pages | string |
| Cisco-Fax-Process-Abort-Flag | string |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Cisco-Fax-Recipient-Count | string |
| Cisco-Gateway-Id | string |
| Cisco-Idle-Limit | integer |
| Cisco-IP-Direct | integer |
| Cisco-IP-Pool-Definition | string |
| Cisco-Link-Compression | integer |
| Cisco-Maximum-Channels | integer |
| Cisco-Maximum-Time | integer |
| Cisco-Multilink-ID | integer |
| Cisco-NAS-Port | string |
| Cisco-Num-In-Multilink | integer |
| Cisco-Policy-Down | string |
| Cisco-Policy-Up | string |
| Cisco-Port-Used | string |
| Cisco-PPP-Async-Map | integer |
| Cisco-PPP-VJ-Slot-Comp | integer |
| Cisco-Pre-Input-Octets | integer |
| Cisco-Pre-Input-Packets | integer |
| Cisco-Pre-Output-Octets | integer |
| Cisco-Pre-Output-Packets | integer |
| Cisco-PreSession-Time | integer |
| Cisco-PW-Lifetime | integer |
| Cisco-Route-IP | integer |
| Cisco-Service-Info | string |
| Cisco-Subscriber-Password | string |
| Cisco-Target-Util | integer |
| Cisco-Xmit-Rate | integer |
| gw-final-xlated-cdn | string |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| gw-final-xlated-cgn | string |
| gw-rxd-cdn | string |
| gw-rxd-cgn | string |
| h323-billing-model | string |
| h323-call-origin | string |
| h323-call-type | string |
| h323-conf-id | string |
| h323-connect-time | string |
| h323-credit-amount | string |
| h323-credit-time | string |
| h323-currency | string |
| h323-disconnect-cause | string |
| h323-disconnect-time | string |
| h323-gw-id | string |
| h323-incoming-conf-id | string |
| h323-preferred-lang | string |
| h323-prompt-id | string |
| h323-redirect-ip-address | string |
| h323-redirect-number | string |
| h323-remote-address | string |
| h323-return-code | string |
| h323-setup-time | string |
| h323-time-and-day | string |
| h323-voice-quality | string |
| incoming-req-uri | string |
| IWF-Session | octets |
| Maximum-Data-Rate-Downstream | integer |
| Maximum-Data-Rate-Upstream | integer |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--|---|
| Maximum-Interleaving-Delay-Downstream | integer |
| Maximum-Interleaving-Delay-Upstream | integer |
| method | string |
| Minimum-Data-Rate-Downstream | integer |
| Minimum-Data-Rate-Downstream-Low-Power | integer |
| Minimum-Data-Rate-Upstream | integer |
| Minimum-Data-Rate-Upstream-Low-Power | integer |
| MS-Acct-Auth-Type | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ CHAP - 2 ■ EAP - 5 ■ MS-CHAP-1 - 3 ■ MS-CHAP-2 - 4 ■ PAP - 1 |
| MS-Acct-EAP-Type | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Generic-Token-Card - 6 ■ MD5 - 4 ■ OTP - 5 ■ TLS -13 |
| MS-AFW-Protection-Level | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ HECP-Response-Sign-And-Encrypt - 2 ■ HECP-Response-Sign-Only - 1 |
| MS-AFW-Zone | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ MS-AFW-Zone-Boundary-Policy - 1 ■ MS-AFW-Zone-Protected-Policy - 3 ■ MS-AFW-Zone-Unprotected-Policy - 2 |
| MS-ARAP-PW-Change-Reason | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Admin-Requires-Password-Change - 3 ■ Expired-Password - 2 ■ Just-Change-Password - 1 ■ Password-Too-Short - 4 |
| MS-BAP-Usage | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Allowed - 1 ■ Not-Allowed - 0 ■ Required - 2 |
| MS-CHAP2-CPW | octets |
| MS-CHAP2-Response | octets |
| MS-CHAP2-Success | octets |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|---|
| MS-CHAP-Challenge | octets |
| MS-CHAP-CPW-1 | octets |
| MS-CHAP-CPW-2 | octets |
| MS-CHAP-Domain | string |
| MS-CHAP-Error | string |
| MS-CHAP-LM-Enc-PW | octets |
| MS-CHAP-MPPE-Keys | octets |
| MS-CHAP-NT-Enc-PW | octets |
| MS-CHAP-Response | octets |
| MS-Extended-Quarantine-State | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Infected - 2 ■ No-Data - 4 ■ Transition - 1 ■ Unknown - 3 |
| MS-Filter | octets |
| MS-HCAP-Location-Group-Name | string |
| MS-HCAP-User-Groups | string |
| MS-HCAP-User-Name | string |
| MS-Identity-Type | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Ignore-User-Lookup-Failure - 2 ■ Machine-Health-Check - 1 |
| MS-IPv4-Remediation-Servers | octets |
| MS-IPv6-Filter | octets |
| MS-IPv6-Remediation-Servers | octets |
| MS-Link-Drop-Time-Limit | integer |
| MS-Link-Utilization-Threshold | integer |
| MS-Machine-Name | string |
| MS-MPPE-Encryption-Policy | octets |
| MS-MPPE-Encryption-Type | octets |
| MS-MPPE-Encryption-Types | octets |
| MS-MPPE-Recv-Key | octets |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|---|
| MS-MPPE-Send-Key | octets |
| MS-Network-Access-Server-Type | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ DHCP-Server - 3 ■ HCAP-Server - 6 ■ HRA - 5 ■ Remote-Access-Server - 2 ■ Terminal-Server-Gateway - 1 ■ Unspecified - 0 ■ Wireless-Access-Point - 4 |
| MS-New-ARAP-Password | octets |
| MS-Old-ARAP-Password | octets |
| MS-Primary-DNS-Server | ipaddr |
| MS-Primary-NBNS-Server | ipaddr |
| MS-Quarantine-Grace-Time | integer |
| MS-Quarantine-IPFilter | octets |
| MS-Quarantine-Session-Timeout | integer |
| MS-Quarantine-SOH | octets |
| MS-Quarantine-State | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Full-Access - 0 ■ Probation - 2 ■ Quarantine - 1 |
| MS-Quarantine-User-Class | string |
| MS-RAS-Client-Name | string |
| MS-RAS-Client-Version | string |
| MS-RAS-Correlation | octets |
| MS-RAS-Vendor | integer |
| MS-RAS-Version | string |
| MS-RNAP-Not-Quarantine-Capable | integer. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ SoH-Not-Sent - 1 ■ SoH-Sent - 0 |
| MS-Secondary-DNS-Server | ipaddr |
| MS-Secondary-NBNS-Server | ipaddr |
| MS-Service-Class | string |
| MS-TSG-Device-Redirection | integer |

Table 48-2: Vendor-specific RADIUS attributes (cont.)

| Vendor-Specific Attribute Name | Value Type/Pre-defined Value |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| MS-User-IPv4-Address | ipaddr |
| MS-User-IPv6-Address | ipv6addr |
| MS-User-Security-Identity | string |
| next-hop-dn | string |
| next-hop-ip | string |
| outgoing-req-uri | string |
| prev-hop-ip | string |
| prev-hop-via | string |
| release-source | string |
| remote-media-address | string |
| session-protocol | string |
| sip-conf-id | string |
| sip-hdr | string |
| subscriber | string |

Chapter 49: Local RADIUS Server Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Command List | 49.2 |
| attribute | 49.2 |
| authentication | 49.5 |
| clear radius local-server statistics | 49.6 |
| copy fdb-radius-users (to file) | 49.7 |
| copy local-radius-user-db (from file) | 49.9 |
| copy local-radius-user-db (to file) | 49.10 |
| crypto pki enroll local | 49.11 |
| crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users | 49.12 |
| crypto pki enroll local user | 49.13 |
| crypto pki export local pem | 49.14 |
| crypto pki export local pkcs12 | 49.15 |
| crypto pki trustpoint local | 49.16 |
| debug crypto pki | 49.17 |
| domain-style | 49.18 |
| egress-vlan-id | 49.19 |
| egress-vlan-name | 49.20 |
| group | 49.21 |
| nas | 49.22 |
| radius-server local | 49.23 |
| server auth-port | 49.24 |
| server enable | 49.25 |
| show crypto pki certificates | 49.26 |
| show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users | 49.28 |
| show crypto pki certificates user | 49.29 |
| show crypto pki trustpoints | 49.30 |
| show radius local-server group | 49.31 |
| show radius local-server nas | 49.32 |
| show radius local-server statistics | 49.33 |
| show radius local-server user | 49.34 |
| user (RADIUS server) | 49.36 |
| vlan (RADIUS server) | 49.38 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure the local RADIUS server on the device. For more information, see [Chapter 48, Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration](#).

attribute

Use this command to define a RADIUS attribute for the local RADIUS server user group.

For a complete list of defined RADIUS attributes and values, see [“Defined RADIUS Attributes List” on page 48.9](#).

When used with the **help** parameter the **attribute** command displays a list of standard and vendor specific valid RADIUS attributes that are supported by the local RADIUS server.

If an attribute name is specified with the **help** parameter, then the **attribute** command displays a list of predefined attribute names. Note that you can only use the defined RADIUS attribute names and not define your own.

When used with the **value** parameter the **attribute** command configures RADIUS attributes to the user group. If the specified attribute is already defined then it is replaced with the new value.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete an attribute from the local RADIUS server user group.

Syntax

```
attribute [<attribute-name>|<attribute-id>] help
attribute {<attribute-name>|<attribute-id>} <value>
no attribute {<attribute-name>|<attribute-id>}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <attribute-name> | RADIUS attribute name for standard attributes (see Table 48-1 on page 48.10) or Vendor-Specific attributes (see Table 48-2 on page 48.19). |
| <attribute-id> | RADIUS attribute numeric identifier for standard attributes (Table 48-1 on page 48.10). |
| <value> | RADIUS attribute value. |
| help | Display a list of available attribute types. |

Default By default, no attributes are configured.

Mode RADIUS Server Group Configuration

Usage For the Standard attributes, the attribute may be specified using either the attribute name, or its numeric identifier. For example, command:

```
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute acct-terminate-cause
help
```

will produce the same results as command:

```
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute 49 help
```

In the same way, where the specific attribute has a pre-defined value, the parameter *<value>* may be substituted with the Value Name or with its numeric value, for example command:

```
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute acct-terminate-cause
user-request
```

will produce the same results as command:

```
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute 49 1
```

or command:

```
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute acct-terminate-cause 1
```

Examples To check a list of all available defined RADIUS attribute names, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group Admin
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute help
```

A list of Vendor-specific Attributes displays after the list of defined Standard Attributes.

To get help for valid RADIUS attribute values for the attribute *Service-Type*, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group Admin
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute Service-Type help
```

```
Service-Type : integer (Integer number)
Pre-defined values :
Administrative-User (6)
Authenticate-Only (8)
Authorize-Only (17)
Callback-Administrative (11)
Callback-Framed-User (4)
Callback-Login-User (3)
Callback-NAS-Prompt (9)
Call-Check (10)
Framed-User (2)
Login-User (1)
NAS-Prompt-User (7)
Outbound-User (5)
```

To define the attribute name 'Service-Type' with Administrative User (6) to the RADIUS User Group 'Admin', use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group Admin
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# attribute Service-Type 6
```

To delete the attribute 'Service-Type' from the RADIUS User Group 'Admin', use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group Admin
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# no attribute Service-Type
```

Related Commands [egress-vlan-id](#)
[egress-vlan-name](#)

authentication

Use this command to enable the specified authentication methods on the local RADIUS server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable specified authentication methods on the local RADIUS server.

Syntax `authentication {mac|eapmd5|eaptls|peap}`
`no authentication {mac|eapmd5|eaptls|peap}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| mac | Enable MAC authentication method. |
| eapmd5 | Enable EAP-MD5 authentication method. |
| eaptls | Enable EAP-TLS authentication method. |
| peap | Enable EAP-PEAP authentication method. |

Default All authentication methods are enabled by default.

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Examples The following commands enable EAP-MD5 authentication methods on the local RADIUS server.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# authentication eapmd5
```

The following commands disable EAP-MD5 authentication methods on Local RADIUS server.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no authentication eapmd5
```

Related Commands [server enable](#)
[show radius local-server statistics](#)

clear radius local-server statistics

Use this command to clear the statistics stored on the switch for the local RADIUS server.

Use this command without any parameters to clear all types of local RADIUS server statistics.

Syntax `clear radius local-server statistics [nas|server|user]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| nas | Clear the NAS (Network Access Server) statistics on the switch. For example, clearing statistics stored for NAS server invalid passwords. |
| server | Clear the Local RADIUS Server statistics on the switch. For example, clearing Local RADIUS Servers statistics for all failed login attempts. |
| user | Clear the Local RADIUS Server user statistics. For example, clearing statistics stored for the number of successful user logins. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Refer to the sample output for the [show radius local-server statistics](#) for further information about the type of statistics each parameter option for this command clears. Both the **nas** and **server** parameters clear unknown username and invalid passwords statistics, while the **user** parameter clears the number of successful and failed logins for each local RADIUS server user.

Examples To clear the NAS (Network Access Server) statistics stored on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# clear radius local-server statistics nas
```

To clear the local RADIUS server statistics stored on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# clear radius local-server statistics server
```

To clear the local RADIUS server user statistics stored on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# clear radius local-server statistics user
```

Related Commands [show radius local-server statistics](#)

copy fdb-radius-users (to file)

Use this command to create a set of local RADIUS server users from MAC addresses in the local FDB. A local RADIUS server user created using this command can be used for MAC authentication.

Syntax `copy fdb-radius-users {local-radius-user-db|flash|nvs|card|debug|tftp|scp|fserver|<url>} [interface <port>] [vlan <vid>] [group <name>] [export-vlan [<radius-group-name>]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| local-radius-user-db | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to the local RADIUS server. |
| flash | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to Flash memory. |
| nvs | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to NVS memory. |
| card | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to SD card. |
| debug | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to debug. |
| tftp | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to the TFTP destination. |
| scp | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to the SCP destination. |
| fserver | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to the remote file server. |
| <url> | Copy the local RADIUS server users created to the specified URL. |
| interface <port> | Copy only MAC addresses learned on a specified switch port. Wildcards may be used when specifying an interface name. |
| vlan <vid> | Copy only MAC addresses learned on a specified VLAN. |
| group <name> | Assign a group name to the local RADIUS server users created. |
| export-vlan | Export VLAN ID assigned to exported FDB entry. |
| <radius-group-name> | Prefix for Radius group name storing VLAN ID |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The local RADIUS server users created are written to a specified destination file in local RADIUS user CSV (Comma Separated Values) format. The local RADIUS server users can then be imported to a local RADIUS server using the [copy local-radius-user-db \(from file\)](#) command.

The name and password of the local RADIUS server users created use a MAC address, which can be used for MAC authentication.

This command does not copy a MAC address learned by the CPU or the management port.

This command can filter FDB entries by the interface name and the VLAN ID. When the

interface name and the VLAN ID are specified, this command generates local RADIUS server users from only the MAC address learned on the specified interface and on the specified VLAN.

Examples To register the local RADIUS server users from the local FDB directly to the local RADIUS server, use the command:

```
awplus# copy fdb-radius-users local-radius-user-db
```

To register the local RADIUS server users from the interface `port1.0.1` to the local RADIUS server, use the command:

```
awplus# copy fdb-radius-users local-radius-user-db interface  
port1.0.1
```

To copy output generated as local RADIUS server user data from MAC addresses learned on `vlan10` on interface `port1.0.1` to the file `radius-user.csv`, use the command:

```
awplus# copy fdb-radius-users radius-user.csv interface  
port1.0.1 vlan10
```

To copy output generated as local RADIUS server user data from MAC addresses learned on `vlan10` on interface `port1.0.1` to a file on the remote file server, use the command:

```
awplus# copy fdb-radius-users fserver interface port1.0.1  
vlan10
```

Related Commands [copy local-radius-user-db \(to file\)](#)
[copy local-radius-user-db \(from file\)](#)

copy local-radius-user-db (from file)

Use this command to copy the Local RADIUS server user data from a file. The file, including the RADIUS user data in the file, must be in the CSV (Comma Separated Values) format.

You can select **add** or **replace** as the copy method. The **add** parameter option copies the contents of specified file to the local RADIUS server user database. If the same user exists then the old user is removed before adding a new user. The **replace** parameter option deletes all contents of the local RADIUS server user database before copying the contents of specified file.

Syntax `copy <source-url> local-radius-user-db [add|replace]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><source-url></code> | URL of the source file. |
| <code>add</code> | Add file contents to local RADIUS server user database. |
| <code>replace</code> | Replace current local RADIUS server user database with file contents. |

Default When no copy method is specified with this command the **replace** option is applied.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To replace the current local RADIUS server user data to the contents of `http://datahost/user.csv`, use the following command:

```
awplus# copy http://datahost/user.csv local-radius-user-db
```

To add the contents of `http://datahost/user.csv` to the current local RADIUS server user database, use the following command:

```
awplus# copy http://datahost/user.csv local-radius-user-db add
```

Related commands [copy fdb-radius-users \(to file\)](#)
[copy local-radius-user-db \(to file\)](#)

copy local-radius-user-db (to file)

Use this command to copy the local RADIUS server user data to a file. The output file produced is CSV (Comma Separated Values) format.

Syntax `copy local-radius-user-db {flash|nvs|card|tftp|scp|<destination-url>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| flash | Copy to flash memory. |
| nvs | Copy to NVS memory. |
| card | Copy to SD card. |
| tftp | Copy to TFTP destination. |
| scp | Copy to SCP destination. |
| <destination-url> | URL of the Destination file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example Copy the current local RADIUS server user data to http://datahost/user.csv.

```
awplus# copy local-radius-user-db http://datahost/user.csv
```

Related Commands [copy fdb-radius-users \(to file\)](#)
[copy local-radius-user-db \(from file\)](#)

crypto pki enroll local

Use this command to obtain a system certificate from the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete system certificates created by a Local CA (Certificate Authority).

Syntax `crypto pki enroll local`
`no crypto pki enroll local`

Default The system certificate is not available until this command is issued.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following command obtains the system certificate from the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local
```

The following command deletes the system certificate created by the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no crypto pki enroll local
```

Related Commands [crypto pki trustpoint local group](#)

crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users

Use this command to create certificates for all users registered in the local RADIUS server. These certificates are created by the Local Certificate Authority (CA) on the switch.

Syntax `crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users`

Default By default, there are no certificates for users in the local RADIUS server.

Mode Global Configuration

Example The following command obtains the local RADIUS server certificates for the user from the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users
```

Related Commands [crypto pki trustpoint local](#)
[show crypto pki certificates](#)

crypto pki enroll local user

Use this command to obtain a local user certificate from the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete user certificates created by the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

Syntax `crypto pki enroll local user <user-name>`
`no crypto pki enroll local user <user-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| <code><user-name></code> | User name. |

Default By default, there is no user certificate.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following command obtains Tom's certificate from the Local CA (Certificate Authority).

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local user Tom
```

The following command deletes Tom's certificates created by the Local CA (Certificate Authority):

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no crypto pki enroll local user Tom
```

Related Commands [crypto pki trustpoint local](#)
[show crypto pki certificates](#)

crypto pki export local pem

Use this command to export the certificate associated with the Local CA to a PEM format file.

Syntax `crypto pki export local pem url <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
| <url> | URL string. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example The following command exports the Local CA certificate to a PEM format file.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki export local pem url tftp://
192.168.1.1/cacert.pem
```

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local](#)

crypto pki export local pkcs12

Use this command to export a specified certificate to a PKCS12 format file.

This command cannot be used for exporting certificates for the local system.

Syntax `crypto pki export local pkcs12 <user-name> <destination-url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code><user-name></code> | User name. |
| <code><destination-url></code> | Destination URL string. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following commands exports a certificate for a user named **client** to a PKCS12 format file.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki export local pkcs12 client tftp://
192.168.1.1/cacert.pem
```

To export Tom's certificate to PKSC12 format file, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki export local pksc12 Tom tftp://
192.168.1.1/tom.pfx
```

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local](#)

crypto pki trustpoint local

Use this command to declare the Local CA (Certificate Authority) as the trustpoint that the system uses. The ca-trustpoint configuration mode is available after this command is issued.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete all information and certificates associated with Local CA as the trustpoint.

Syntax `crypto pki trustpoint local`
`no crypto pki trustpoint local`

Default Local CA is not a trustpoint.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples Use the following commands to declare the Local CA as the trustpoint.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto pki trustpoint local
```

Use the following commands to delete all information and certificates associated with the Local CA.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no crypto pki trustpoint local
```

To create a client certificate for all users registered to the local RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus(config)# crypto pki trustpoint local
awplus(ca-trust-point)# exit
awplus(config)# crypto pki enroll local alternative
```

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local](#)
[show crypto pki trustpoints](#)

debug crypto pki

Use this command to enable Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) debugging. When PKI debugging is enabled, the PKI module starts generating diagnostic messages to the system log.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) debugging. When PKI debugging is disabled, the PKI module stops generating diagnostic messages to the system log.

Syntax `debug crypto pki`
`no debug crypto pki`

Default PKI debugging is disabled by default

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable the PKI debugging facility, use the command:

```
awplus# debug crypto pki
```

To disable the PKI debugging facility, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug crypto pki
```

domain-style

Use this command to enable a specified domain style on the local RADIUS server. The local RADIUS server decodes the domain portion of a username login string when this command is enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the specified domain style on the local RADIUS server.

Syntax `domain-style {suffix-atsign|ntdomain}`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>suffix-atsign</code> | Enable at sign "@" delimited suffix style, i.e. "user@domain". |
| <code>ntdomain</code> | Enable NT domain style, i.e. "domain\user". |

Default This feature is disabled by default.

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Usage When both domain styles are enabled, the first domain style configured has the highest priority. A username login string is matched against the first domain style enabled. Then, if the username login string is not decoded, it is matched against the second domain style enabled.

Examples To enable NT domain style on the local RADIUS server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# domain-style ntdomain
```

To disable NT domain style on the local RADIUS server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no domain-style ntdomain
```

Related Commands [server enable](#)

egress-vlan-id

Use this command to configure the standard RADIUS attribute “Egress-VLANID (56)” for the local RADIUS Server user group.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the Egress-VLANID attribute from the local RADIUS server user group.

Syntax `egress-vlan-id <vid> [tagged|untagged]`
`no egress-vlan-id`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <vid> | The VLAN identifier to be used for the Egress VLANID attribute, in the range 1 to 4094. |
| tagged | Set frames on the VLAN as tagged. This sets the tag indication field to indicate that all frames on this VLAN are tagged. |
| untagged | Set all frames on the VLAN as untagged. This sets the tag indication field to indicate that all frames on this VLAN are untagged. |

Default By default, no Egress-VLANID attributes are configured.

Mode RADIUS Server Group Configuration

Usage When a Voice VLAN is configured for dynamic VLAN allocation ([switchport voice vlan command on page 17.30](#)), the RADIUS server must be configured to send the VLAN information when an IP phone is successfully authenticated. Use either the [egress-vlan-id command](#) or the [egress-vlan-name command on page 49.20](#), and specify the **tagged** parameter.

Examples To set the “Egress-VLANID” attribute for the NormalUsers local RADIUS server user group to VLAN identifier 200, with tagged frames, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# egress-vlan-id 200 tagged
```

To remove the “Egress-VLANID” attribute for the NormalUsers local RADIUS server user group, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# no egress-vlan-id
```

Related Commands [attribute](#)
[egress-vlan-name](#)
[switchport voice vlan](#)

egress-vlan-name

Use this command to configure the standard RADIUS attribute “Egress-VLAN-Name (58)” for the local RADIUS server user group.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the Egress-VLAN-Name attribute from the local RADIUS server user group.

Syntax `egress-vlan-name <vlan-name> [tagged|untagged]`
`no egress-vlan-name`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><vlan-name></code> | The VLAN name to be configured as the Egress-VLAN-Name attribute. |
| <code>tagged</code> | Set frames on the VLAN as tagged. This sets the tag indication field to indicate that all frames on this VLAN are tagged. |
| <code>untagged</code> | Set all frames on the VLAN as untagged. This sets the tag indication field to indicate that all frames on this VLAN are untagged. |

Default By default, no Egress-VLAN-Name attributes are configured.

Mode RADIUS Server Group Configuration

Usage When a Voice VLAN is configured for dynamic VLAN allocation (**switchport voice vlan command on page 17.30**), the RADIUS server must be configured to send the VLAN information when an IP phone is successfully authenticated. Use either the **egress-vlan-id command on page 49.19** or the **egress-vlan-name** command, and specify the **tagged** parameter.

Examples To configure the “Egress-VLAN-Name” attribute for the RADIUS server user group NormalUsers with the VLAN name “vlan2” and all frames on this VLAN tagged, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# egress-vlan-name vlan2 tagged
```

To delete the “Egress-VLAN-Name” attribute for the NormalUsers group, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# no egress-vlan-name
```

Related Commands **attribute**
egress-vlan-id
switchport voice vlan

group

Use this command to create a local RADIUS server user group, and enter local RADIUS Server User Group Configuration mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the local RADIUS server user group.

Syntax `group <user-group-name>`
`no group <user-group-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code><user-group-name></code> | User group name string. |

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Examples The following command creates the user group NormalUsers.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
```

The following command deletes user group NormalUsers.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no group NormalUsers
```

Related Commands [user \(RADIUS server\)](#)
[show radius local-server user](#)
[vlan \(RADIUS server\)](#)

nas

This command adds a client device (the Network Access Server or the NAS) to the list of devices that are able to send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server. The NAS is identified by its IP address and a shared secret (also referred to as a shared key) must be defined that the NAS will use to establish its identity.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a NAS client from the list of devices that are allowed to send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server.

Syntax `nas <ip-address> key <nas-keystring>`
`no nas <ip-address>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <code><ip-address></code> | RADIUS NAS IP address. |
| <code><nas-keystring></code> | NAS shared keystring. |

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Examples The following commands add the NAS with an IP address of 192.168.1.2 to the list of clients that may send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server. Note the shared key that this NAS will use to establish its identify is NAS_PASSWORD.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# nas 192.168.1.2 key NAS_PASSWORD
```

The following commands remove the NAS with an IP address of 192.168.1.2 from the list of clients that are allowed to send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no nas 192.168.1.2
```

Related Commands [show radius local-server nas](#)

radius-server local

Use this command to navigate to the Local RADIUS server configuration mode (config-radsrv) from the Global Configuration mode (config).

Syntax radius-server local

Mode Global Configuration

Example Local RADIUS Server commands are available from config-radsrv configuration mode. To change mode from User Exec mode to the Local RADIUS Server mode (config-radsrv), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)#
```

Output

```
awplus(config)#radius-server local
Creating Local CA repository.....OK
Enrolling Local System to local trustpoint..OK
awplus(config-radsrv)#
```

Related Commands

- server enable**
- show radius local-server group**
- show radius local-server nas**
- show radius local-server statistics**
- show radius local-server user**

server auth-port

Use this command to change the UDP port number for local RADIUS server authentication.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the RADIUS server authentication port back to the default.

Syntax `server auth-port <1-65535>`
`no server auth-port`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| <code><1-65535></code> | UDP port number. |

Default The default local RADIUS server UDP authentication port number is 1812.

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Examples The following commands set the RADIUS server authentication port to 10000.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# server port 10000
```

The following commands reset the RADIUS server authentication port back to the default UDP port of 1812.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no server port
```

Related Commands [server enable](#)
[show radius local-server statistics](#)

server enable

This command enables the local RADIUS server. The local RADIUS server feature is started immediately when this command is issued.

The **no** variant of this command disables local RADIUS server. When this command is issued, the local RADIUS server stops operating.

Syntax `server enable`
`no server enable`

Default The local RADIUS server is disabled by default and must be enabled for use with this command.

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Examples To enable the local RADIUS server, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# server enable
```

To disable the local RADIUS server, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no server enable
```

Related Commands [server auth-port](#)
[show radius local-server statistics](#)

show crypto pki certificates

Use this command to display certificate information for Local CA and Local System certificates.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show crypto pki certificates [local-ca|local]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| local-ca | Local CA certificate. |
| local | Local system certificate. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples The following command displays Local CA (Certificate Authority) certificate information.

```
awplus# show crypto pki certificates local-ca
```

The following command displays Local System certificate information.

```
awplus# show crypto pki certificates local
```

The following command displays information for all Local CA and Local System certificates.

```
awplus# show crypto pki certificates
```

Output

Figure 49-1: Example output from the show crypto pki certificates command showing Local System and Local CA certificates

```
awplus#show crypto pki certificates
Certificate: Local System
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 4 (0x4)
    Signature Algorithm: sha1WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=AlliedwarePlusCA
    Validity
      Not Before: Oct  8 07:50:55 2009 GMT
      Not After  : Oct  6 07:50:55 2019 GMT
    Subject: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=Tom
Certificate: Local CA
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 0 (0x0)
    Signature Algorithm: sha1WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=AlliedwarePlusCA
    Validity
      Not Before: Oct  8 07:55:55 2009 GMT
      Not After  : Oct  6 07:55:55 2019 GMT
    Subject: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=Tom
```

Table 49-1: Parameters in the output of the show crypto pki certificates command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Certificate | Certificate name. |
| Version | Protocol version. |
| Serial Number | Serial number of the certificate. |
| Signature Algorithm | Algorithm used for the certificate signature. |
| Issuer | Subject of issuer creating the certificate. |
| Validity | Validity period. |
| Subject | Subject of the certificate. |

Related Commands `crypto pki enroll local`

show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users

Use this command to display certificate information for local RADIUS server users.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays information of all local RADIUS server user certificates.

```
awplus# show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users
```

Output

Figure 49-2: Example output from the show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users command

```
awplus#show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 2 (0x2)
    Signature Algorithm: sha1WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=AlliedwarePlusCA
    Validity
      Not Before: Oct  8 07:50:55 2009 GMT
      Not After : Oct  6 07:50:55 2019 GMT
    Subject: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=Tom
```

Table 49-2: Parameters in the output of the show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Certificate | Certificate name. |
| Version | Protocol version. |
| Serial Number | Serial number of the certificate. |
| Signature Algorithm | Algorithm used for the certificate signature. |
| Issuer | Subject of issuer creating the certificate. |
| Validity | Validity period. |
| Subject | Subject of the certificate. |

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users](#)

show crypto pki certificates user

Use this command to display certificate information for a specified local RADIUS server user.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show crypto pki certificates user [*<user-name>*]

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| <i><user-name></i> | User name. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays Tom’s certificate information.

```
awplus# show crypto pki certificates user Tom
```

Output

Figure 49-3: Example output from the show crypto pki certificates user command to show certificate information for user Tom

```
awplus#show crypto pki certificates user Tom
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 2 (0x2)
    Signature Algorithm: sha1WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=AlliedwarePlusCA
    Validity
      Not Before: Oct  8 07:50:55 2009 GMT
      Not After : Oct  6 07:50:55 2019 GMT
    Subject: O=Allied-Telesis, CN=Tom
```

Table 49-3: Parameters in the output of the show crypto pki certificates user command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Certificate | Certificate name. |
| Version | Protocol version. |
| Serial Number | Serial number of the certificate. |
| Signature Algorithm | Algorithm used for the certificate signature. |
| Issuer | Subject of issuer creating the certificate. |
| Validity | Validity period. |
| Subject | Subject of the certificate. |

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local user](#)

show crypto pki trustpoints

Use this command to display trustpoint information.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show crypto pki trustpoints

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays trustpoint information.

```
awplus# show crypto pki trustpoint
```

Output

Figure 49-4: Example output from the show crypto pki trustpoints command

```
Trustpoint local:
Subject Name:
CN = AlliedwarePlusCA
o = Allied-Telesis
Serial Number:0C
```

Table 49-4: Parameters in the output of the show crypto pki trustpoints command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| Subject Name | CA certificate subject. |
| Serial Number | Current serial number of CA. |

Related Commands [crypto pki enroll local](#)

show radius local-server group

Use this command to display information about the local RADIUS server user group.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show radius local-server group [<user-group-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <user-group-name> | User group name string. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays Local RADIUS server user group information.

```
awplus# show radius local-server group
```

Output

Figure 49-5: Example output from the show radius local-server group command

| | |
|------------------|---------------|
| Group-Name | Vlan |
| ----- | |
| NetworkOperators | ManagementNet |
| NormalUsers | CommonNet |

Table 49-5: Parameters in the output of the show radius local-server group command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| Group-Name | Group name. |
| Vlan | VLAN name assigned to the group. |

Related Commands [group](#)

show radius local-server nas

Use this command to display information about NAS (Network Access Servers) registered to the local RADIUS server.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show radius local-server nas [<ip-address>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <ip-address> | Specify NAS IP address for show output. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example The following command displays NAS information.

```
awplus# show radius local-server nas
```

Output

Figure 49-6: Example output from the show radius local-server nas command

| | |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| NAS-Address | Shared-Key |
| ----- | |
| 127.0.0.1 | awplus-local-radius-server |

Table 49-6: Parameters in the output of the show radius local-server nas command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| NAS-Address | IP address of NAS. |
| Shared-Key | Shared key used for RADIUS connection. |

Related Commands `nas`

show radius local-server statistics

Use this command to display statistics about the local RADIUS server.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax show radius local-server statistics

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Both unknown usernames and invalid passwords will display as failed logins in the show output.

Example The following command displays Local RADIUS server statistics.

```
awplus# show radius local-server statistics
```

Output

Figure 49-7: Example output from the show radius local-server statistics command

```
Server status : Run (administrative status is enable)
Enabled methods: MAC EAP-MD5 EAP-TLS EAP-PEAP

Successes          :1  Unknown NAS          :0
Failed Logins      :0  Invalid packet from NAS :0
Internal Error     :0  Unknown Error          :0

NAS : 127.0.0.1
Successes          :0  Shared key mismatch     :0
Failed Logins      :0  Unknown RADIUS message  :0
Unknown EAP message :0  Unknown EAP auth type   :0
Corrupted packet  :0

NAS : 192.168.1.61
Successes          :0  Shared key mismatch     :0
Failed Logins      :0  Unknown RADIUS message  :0
Unknown EAP message :0  Unknown EAP auth type   :0
Corrupted packet  :0

NAS : 192.168.1.63
Successes          :1  Shared key mismatch     :0
Failed Logins      :0  Unknown RADIUS message  :0
Unknown EAP message :0  Unknown EAP auth type   :0
Corrupted packet  :0

NAS : 192.168.1.65
Successes          :0  Shared key mismatch     :0
Failed Logins      :0  Unknown RADIUS message  :0
Unknown EAP message :0  Unknown EAP auth type   :0
Corrupted packet  :0

Username      Successes  Failures
a              1          0
admin         0          0
```

Related Commands

- [clear radius local-server statistics](#)
- [radius-server local](#)
- [server enable](#)
- [server auth-port](#)

show radius local-server user

Use this command to display information about the local RADIUS server user.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show radius local-server user [*<user-name>*]
 show radius local-server user *<user-name>* format csv

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i><user-name></i> | RADIUS user name. If no user name is specified, information for all users is displayed. |
| format | File format. |
| csv | Comma separated value format. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage You can send output from any show command, including the CSV format output from this command, to a file. See [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Examples The following command displays Local RADIUS server user information for user Tom.

```
awplus# show radius local-server user Tom
```

Figure 49-8: Example output from the show radius local-server user command

| User-Name | Password | Group | Vlan |
|-----------|----------|------------------|---------------|
| Tom | abcd | NetworkOperators | ManagementNet |

The following command displays all Local RADIUS server information for all users.

```
awplus# show radius local-server user
```

The following command displays Local RADIUS server user information for TOM in CSV format.

```
awplus# show radius local-server user Tom format csv
```

Figure 49-9: Example output from the show radius local-server user csv command

| |
|---|
| true,"NetworkOperators","Tom", "abcd",0,2099/01/ 01,1,"","","ManagementNet",false,3600,false,0,"",false," |
|---|

Table 49-7: Parameters in the output from the show radius local-server user command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| User-Name | User name. |
| Password | User password. |
| Group | Group name assigned to the user. |
| Vlan | VLAN name assigned to the user. |

Related Commands **group**
user (RADIUS server)

user (RADIUS server)

Use this command to register a user to the local RADIUS server.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete a user from the local RADIUS server.

Syntax `user <radius-user-name> [encrypted] password <user-password> [group <user-group>]`
`no user <radius-user-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <code><radius-user-name></code> | RADIUS user name. This can also be a MAC address in the IEEE standard format of HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH if you are configuring MAC authentication to use local RADIUS server. |
| <code>encrypted</code> | Specifies that the password is being entered in its encrypted form, so that it is not further encrypted. When creating a new user, enter the password in plaintext, and do not use the encrypted parameter. Use the encrypted parameter only when referring to a user that has previously been created. For instance, when adding an existing user from another RADIUS server, use the encrypted parameter, and enter the encrypted version of the password that appears in the output of show commands for the user. |
| <code><user-password></code> | User password. This can also be a MAC address in the IEEE standard format of HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH if you are configuring MAC authentication to use local RADIUS server. |
| <code>group</code> | Specify the group for the user. |
| <code><user-group></code> | User group name. |

Mode RADIUS Server Configuration

Usage RADIUS user names cannot contain question mark (?), space (), or quote (" ") characters. RADIUS user names containing the below characters cannot use certificate authentication:

`/ \ ` $ & () * ; < > ` |`

Certificates cannot be created and exported for RADIUS user names that contain the above characters. We advise you to avoid using these characters in RADIUS user names if you need to use certificate authentication, because you will not be able to create and export certificates.

You also can use the IEEE standard format hexadecimal notation (HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH) to specify a supplicant MAC address to configure the user name and user password parameters to use local RADIUS server for MAC Authentication. See the **Sample MAC-Authentication Configuration** in **Chapter 42, AAA Introduction and Configuration**. See also the command `user 00-db-59-ab-70-37 password 00-db-59-ab-70-37` as shown in the command examples.

Examples The following commands add user Tom to the local RADIUS server and sets his password to QwerSD.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user Tom password QwerSD
```

The following commands add user Tom to the local RADIUS server user group NormalUsers and sets his password QwerSD.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user Tom password QwerSD group
NormalUsers
```

The following commands remove user Tom from the local RADIUS server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no user Tom
```

The following commands add the supplicant MAC address 00-d0-59-ab-70-37 to the local RADIUS server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# user 00-db-59-ab-70-37 password 00-db-
59-ab-70-37
```

The following commands remove the supplicant MAC address 00-d0-59-ab-70-37 from the local RADIUS server:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# no user 00-db-59-ab-70-37
```

Related Commands [group](#)
[show radius local-server user](#)

vlan (RADIUS server)

Use this command to set the VLAN ID or name for the local RADIUS server user group. The VLAN information is used for authentication with the dynamic VLAN feature.

Use the **no** variant of this command to clear the VLAN ID or VLAN name for the local RADIUS server user group.

Syntax `vlan {<vid>|<vlan-name>}`
`no vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| <code><vid></code> | VLAN ID. |
| <code><vlan-name></code> | VLAN name. |

Default VLAN information is not set by default.

Mode RADIUS Server Group Configuration

Examples The following commands set VLAN ID 200 to the group named NormalUsers:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# vlan 200
```

The following commands remove VLAN ID 200 from the group named NormalUsers:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# radius-server local
awplus(config-radsrv)# group NormalUsers
awplus(config-radsrv-group)# no vlan
```

Related Commands [group](#)
[show radius local-server user](#)

Chapter 50: Secure Shell (SSH) Introduction



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 50.2 |
| Secure Shell on the AlliedWare Plus OS | 50.2 |
| Configuring the SSH Server | 50.4 |
| Creating a Host Key | 50.4 |
| Enabling the Server | 50.4 |
| Modifying the Server | 50.5 |
| Validating the Server Configuration | 50.6 |
| Adding SSH Users | 50.6 |
| Authenticating SSH Users | 50.7 |
| Adding a Login Banner | 50.7 |
| Monitoring the Server and Managing Sessions | 50.8 |
| Debugging the Server | 50.8 |
| Configuring the SSH Client | 50.9 |
| Modifying the Client | 50.9 |
| Adding SSH Servers | 50.10 |
| Authenticating with a Server | 50.10 |
| Connecting to a Server and Running Commands | 50.11 |
| Copying files to and from the Server | 50.11 |
| Debugging the Client | 50.11 |

Introduction

This chapter describes how the Secure Shell protocol is implemented in the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. It covers:

- Support for Secure Shell.
- Configuring your device as a Secure Shell server and client.
- Using Secure Shell to manage your device.

The AlliedWare Plus™ OS supports SSH version 2 and SSH version 1.5, making it backwards compatible with SSH version 1.

Secure management is important in modern networks, as the ability to easily and effectively manage switches and routers, and the requirement for security, are two almost universal requirements. Protocols such as Telnet and rlogin allow you to manage devices remotely, but can have serious security problems, such as relying on reusable plaintext passwords that are vulnerable to wiretapping or password guessing. The Secure Shell (SSH) protocol is superior to these protocols by providing encrypted and strongly authenticated remote login sessions.

SSH provides sessions between a host running a SSH server and a machine with a SSH client. The AlliedWare Plus™ OS includes both a SSH server and a SSH client to enable you to securely—with the benefit of cryptographic authentication and encryption—manage your devices over an insecure network:

- SSH replaces Telnet for remote terminal sessions; SSH is strongly authenticated and encrypted.
- Remote command execution allows you to send commands to a device securely and conveniently, without requiring a terminal session on the device.
- SSH allows you to connect to another host from your switch or router.

The AlliedWare Plus™ OS supports Secure Copy (SCP) and SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP). Both these protocols allow you to securely copy files between your device and remote machines. SFTP provides additional features from SCP, such as allowing you to manipulate the remote files, and halt or resume file transfers without closing the session.

Secure Shell on the AlliedWare Plus OS

The AlliedWare Plus™ OS implementation of SSH is compatible with the following RFCs and Internet Drafts:

- The Secure Shell (SSH) Protocol Architecture (RFC 4251)
- The Secure Shell (SSH) Authentication Protocol (RFC 4252)
- The Secure Shell (SSH) Transport Layer Protocol (RFC 4253)
- The Secure Shell (SSH) Connection Protocol (RFC 4254)
- The SSH (Secure Shell) Remote Login Protocol (draft-ylonen-ssh-protocol-00.txt)
- SSH File Transfer Protocol (draft-ietf-secsh-filexfer-13.txt)

Secure Shell supports the following features for both SSH version 2 and SSH version 1.5:

- Inbound SSH connections (server mode) and outbound SSH connections (client mode).
- File loading to and from remote machines using Secure Copy, using either the SSH client or SSH server mode.
- RSA public keys with lengths of 768–32768 bits, and DSA keys with lengths of 1024 bits. Keys are stored in a format compatible with other SSH implementations, and mechanisms are provided to copy keys to and from your device.
- Secure encryption, such as Triple DES and Blowfish.
- Remote non-interactive shell that allows arbitrary commands to be sent securely to your device, possibly automatically.
- Compression of Secure Shell traffic.
- Tunneling of TCP/IP traffic.

Secure Shell supports the following features for SSH version 2 only:

- File loading from remote machines using SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP).
- A login banner on the SSH server, that displays when SSHv2 clients connect to the server.

Configuring the SSH Server

This section provides instructions on:

- [Creating a Host Key](#)
- [Enabling the Server](#)
- [Modifying the Server](#)
- [Validating the Server Configuration](#)
- [Adding SSH Users](#)
- [Authenticating SSH Users](#)
- [Adding a Login Banner](#)
- [Monitoring the Server and Managing Sessions](#)
- [Debugging the Server](#)

Creating a Host Key

The SSH server uses either an RSA or DSA host key to authenticate itself with SSH clients. This key must be configured before the SSH server can operate. If no host key exists, you cannot start the SSH server.

Once created, the host key is stored securely on the device. To generate a host key for the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key generate hostkey {dsa|rsa|rsa1}
[<768-32768>]
```

This command has two parameters for creating RSA keys. The `rsa` parameter creates a host key for SSH version 2 sessions only. To create a host key for SSH version 1 sessions, use the `rsa1` parameter.

To destroy a host key, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key destroy hostkey {dsa|rsa|rsa1}
```

To display a host key stored on your device, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# show crypto key hostkey [dsa|rsa|rsa1]
```

Enabling the Server

You must enable the SSH server before connections from SSH, SCP, and SFTP clients are accepted. When the SSH server is disabled it rejects connections from SSH clients. The SSH server is disabled by default on your device.

To enable the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# service ssh [ip|ipv6]
```

To disable the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no service ssh [ip|ipv6]
```

When enabled, the SSH server allows SCP and SFTP sessions by default. To disable these services, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# no ssh server scp
```

```
awplus(config)# no ssh server sftp
```

This allows you to reject SCP or SFTP file transfer requests, while still allowing Secure Shell connections. To re-enable SCP and SFTP services, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server scp
```

```
awplus(config)# ssh server sftp
```

Modifying the Server

To modify the SSH version that the server supports, or the TCP port that the server listens to for incoming sessions, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server {[v1v2|v2only] |<1-65535>}
```

The server listens on port 22 for incoming sessions, and supports both SSH version 2 and SSH version 1, by default.

To modify session and login timeouts on the SSH server, and the number of unauthenticated connections the server allows, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server {[session-timeout <0-3600>]
                        [login-timeout <1-600>]
                        [max-startups <1-128>]}
```

The SSH server waits 60 seconds for a client to authenticate itself, by default. You can alter this waiting time by using the **login-timeout** parameter. If the client is still not authenticated after the set timeout, then the SSH server disconnects the session.

The SSH server only allows only 10 unauthenticated SSH sessions at any point in time, by default. You can modify the number of unauthenticated sessions it allows, by using the **max-startups** parameter.

Once a client has authenticated, the SSH session does not time out, by default. Use the **session-timeout** parameter to set a **maximum time period the server waits before deciding that a session is inactive and terminating it**

For example, to set the session timeout to 600 seconds, the login timeout to 30 seconds, and the maximum number of concurrent unauthenticated sessions to 5, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server session-timeout 600 login-timeout
                        30 max-startups 5
```

To remove the configured session timeout, login timeout, or maximum startups, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no ssh server session-timeout login-timeout
                        max-startups
```

Validating the Server Configuration

To validate the SSH server configuration, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# show running-config ssh
```

Adding SSH Users

The SSH server requires you to register SSH users. Users that are not registered cannot access the SSH server. Ensure first that you have defined the user in the Authorized User Database of your device. To add a new user, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# username USERNAME (privilege 1-15) password  
PASSWORD
```

To register a user with the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users <username-pattern>  
[<hostname-pattern>]
```

Registered entries can contain just the username, or the username with some host details, such as an IP address range. Additionally you can specify a range of users or hostname details by using an asterisk to match any string of characters. For example, to allow any user from the IP range 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.255, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users * 192.168.1.*
```

To display the list of allowed users, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server allow-users
```

To delete an entry from the list of allowed users, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no ssh server allow-users <username-pattern>  
[<hostname-pattern>]
```

The SSH server also contains a list of denied users. The server checks all incoming sessions against this list and denies any matching session, regardless of whether the session matches an entry in the allowed users list. To add an entry to the list of denied users, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server deny-users <username-pattern>  
[<hostname-pattern>]
```

This allows you to deny specific users from a range of allowed users. For example, to deny a user with the IP address 192.168.1.12, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server deny-users * 192.168.1.12
```

To display the database of denied users, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server deny-users
```

To delete a client from the database of denied users, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no ssh server deny-users <username-pattern>
[<hostname-pattern>]
```

Authenticating SSH Users

SSH users can use either their password or public key authentication to authenticate themselves with the SSH server. To use public key authentication, copy the user's public key file from their client device to the SSH server. To associate the key with a user, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username>
[<filename>]
```

For example, to associate the file `key.pub` with the user "langley", use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey langley
key.pub
```

To add a key as text into the terminal for user "geoff", first enter the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey geoff
```

then paste or type the key in as text.

You can add multiple keys for the same user. To display the list of public keys associated with a user, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey
<username> [<1-65535>]
```

The `<1-65535>` parameter allows you to display an individual key.

To delete a key associated with a user from your device, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no crypto key pubkey-chain userkey
<username> <1-65535>
```

Adding a Login Banner

You can add a login banner to the SSH server for sessions with SSH version 2 clients. The server displays the banner to clients before the login prompt. To set the login banner's message, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# banner login
```

then enter your message and use Ctrl+D to finish.

To view the configured login banner, use the command:

```
awplus# show banner login
```

To remove the configured message for the login banner, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no banner login
```

Monitoring the Server and Managing Sessions

To display the current status of the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server
```

To display the current status of SSH sessions on your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh
```

Note that this displays both SSH server and SSH client sessions that your Allied Telesis device is running. Use this command to view the unique identification number assigned to each incoming or outgoing SSH session. You need the ID number when terminating a specific session from your device.

To terminate a session, or all sessions, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ssh {<1-65535>|all}
```

Debugging the Server

Information which may be useful for troubleshooting the SSH server is available using the SSH debugging function. You can enable server debugging while the SSH server is functioning. Use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh server [brief|full]
```

To disable SSH server debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ssh server
```

Configuring the SSH Client

This section provides instructions on:

- [Modifying the Client](#)
- [Adding SSH Servers](#)
- [Authenticating with a Server](#)
- [Connecting to a Server and Running Commands](#)
- [Copying files to and from the Server](#)
- [Debugging the Client](#)

Modifying the Client

You can configure a selection of variables when using the SSH client. Note that the following configuration commands apply only to client sessions initiated after the command. The configured settings are not saved; after you have logged out from the SSH client, the client returns to using the default settings. Use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh client {port <1-65535>|version {1|2}|  
session-timeout <0-3600>|connect-timeout  
<1-600>}
```

The SSH client uses TCP port 22, by default. You can change the TCP port for the remote SSH server by using the **port** parameter.

The client supports both SSH version 1 and version 2 sessions, by default. To change the SSH client to only use a specific SSH version for sessions, for example SSH version 1, use the **version** parameter.

The client terminates sessions that are not established after 30 seconds, by default. You can change this time period by using the **session-timeout** parameter.

Once the client has authenticated with a server, the client does not time out the SSH session, by default. Use the **session-timeout** parameter to set a maximum time period the client waits before deciding that a session is inactive and terminating the session.

To modify the SSH client so that it uses port 2000 for sessions, and supports only SSH version 1 connections, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh client port 2000 version 1
```

To modify the SSH client so that unestablished sessions time out after 60 seconds, and inactive sessions time out after 100 seconds, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh client session-timeout 100 connect-timeout  
100
```

To remove the configured port, SSH version, session timeout, and connection timeout settings, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# no ssh client port version session-timeout  
connect-timeout
```

Adding SSH Servers

SSH servers identify themselves using a host key (see [“Creating a Host Key” on page 50.4](#)). Before the SSH client establishes a session with a SSH server, it confirms that the host key sent by the server matches its database entry for the server. If the database does not contain a host key for the server, then the SSH client requires you to confirm that the host key sent from the server is correct.

To add an SSH server to the client’s database, use the command:

```
awplus# crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts [ip|ipv6]
        <hostname> [rsa|dsa|rsa1]
```

To display the SSH servers in the client’s database, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts
        [<1-65535>]
```

To remove an entry in the database, use the command:

```
awplus# no crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts <1-65535>
```

Authenticating with a Server

You can authenticate your session with a server by either using a password, or using RSA or DSA public key authentication. To use public key authentication, you must generate a pair of keys, one private and one public, and copy the public key onto the SSH server.

To generate an RSA or DSA set of private and public keys for an SSH user, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key generate userkey <username> {dsa|
        rsa|rsa1} [<768-32768>]
```

You can generate one key of each encryption type per user on your client. When authenticating with an SSH server that supports SSH version 1 only, you must use a key generated by the **rsa1** parameter.

To copy the public key onto the SSH server, you must display the key onscreen. To display the public key associated with a user, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key userkey <username> [dsa|rsa|
        rsa1]
```

To display the public keys set for other users, you must specify their username. Only users with the highest privilege setting can use this command to view the keys of other users.

To delete a public and private pair of keys associated with a user, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# crypto key destroy userkey <username> {dsa|rsa|
        rsa1}
```

Connecting to a Server and Running Commands

To connect to a remote SSH server and execute a command, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh [ip|ipv6][[user <username>]| [port  
<1-65535>]| [version {1|2}]] <hostname>  
[<line>]
```

By default, the SSH client attempts to use SSH version 2 with the SSH server. If this fails, the client uses SSH version 1.

For example, to connect to the SSH server at 192.168.1.2 as user "john", and execute the command "show sys", use the command:

```
awplus# ssh user john 192.168.1.2 "show sys"
```

Copying files to and from the Server

You can use either the SCP or SFTP client to transfer files from a remote SSH server. Use the command:

```
awplus# copy <source-url> <destination-url>
```

For example, to use SFTP to load a file from the SSH server 192.168.1.2, onto the flash memory of your device, use the command:

```
awplus# copy sftp://192.168.1.2/key.pub flash
```

To upload files to the SSH server, you must use SCP. For example, to upload the file bobskey.pub as the user "bob", use the command:

```
awplus# copy flash:/bobskey.pub scp://bob@192.168.1.2
```

For more information see [Chapter 6, Creating and Managing Files](#).

Debugging the Client

Information which may be useful for troubleshooting the SSH client is available using the SSH debugging function. You can enable client debugging while the SSH client is functioning. Use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh client [brief|full]
```

To disable SSH client debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ssh client
```


Chapter 51: Secure Shell (SSH) Configuration



| | |
|--|------|
| SSH Server Configuration Example | 51.2 |
|--|------|

SSH Server Configuration Example

This chapter provides a Secure Shell server configuration example. For more information about the SSH server, see [Chapter 50, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Introduction](#). For detailed information about the commands used to configure the SSH server, see [Chapter 52, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Commands](#).

The following example configures a SSH server where:

- the SSH server uses RSA encryption
- the SSH server is compatible with both SSH version 1 and version 2 clients
- three SSH users are configured: Manager, John, and Asuka. “manager” can connect from only a defined range of hosts, while “john” and “asuka” can SSH from all hosts
- the SSH users use RSA private and public key authentication

This example shows how to create RSA encryption keys, configure the Secure Shell server, and register users to make Secure Shell connections to your device.

Step 1: Login as a highest Privileged User.

To create the keys and add users, you must login as a privileged user.

Step 2: Create encryption keys.

Two RSA private keys are required before enabling the Secure Shell server for each type of SSH version. Use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate hostkey rsa
awplus(config)# crypto key generate hostkey rsa1
awplus(config)# exit
```

To verify the key creation, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key hostkey
```

Step 3: Enable the Secure Shell server.

Enable Secure Shell on the device using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service ssh
```

Modify the SSH server settings as desired. For example, to set the login-timeout to 60, and the session-timeout to 3600, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server session-timeout 3600 login-timeout
60
```

To verify the server configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh
```

Step 4: Create SSH users.

In order to connect and execute commands, you must register users in the SSH user database, and in the User Authentication Database of the device.

To create the users `john` and `asuka` in the User Authentication Database, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# username john privilege 15 password secret
awplus(config)# username asuka privilege 15 password
very secret
```

To register `john` and `asuka` as SSH clients, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users john
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users asuka
```

To register “`manager`” as an SSH client so that can only connect from the IP address 192.168.1.1, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users manager 192.168.1.1
```

Step 5: Set up authentication.

SSH users cannot connect unless the server can authenticate them. There are two ways to authenticate an SSH session: password authentication, and RSA or DSA private/public key authentication. When using password authentication, the user must supply their User Authentication Database password.

To use private/public key authentication, copy the public keys for each user onto the device. To copy the files onto flash from the key directory of an attached TFTP server, use the command:

```
awplus# copy tftp://key/john.pub flash:/john.pub
awplus# copy tftp://key/asuka.pub flash:/asuka.pub
```

To associate the key file with each user, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey john john.pub
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey asuka
asuka.pub
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey manager
manager.pub
```


Chapter 52: Secure Shell (SSH) Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 52.2 |
| Command List | 52.2 |
| banner login (SSH) | 52.2 |
| clear ssh | 52.3 |
| crypto key destroy hostkey | 52.4 |
| crypto key destroy userkey | 52.5 |
| crypto key generate hostkey | 52.6 |
| crypto key generate userkey | 52.7 |
| crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts | 52.8 |
| crypto key pubkey-chain userkey | 52.10 |
| debug ssh client | 52.12 |
| debug ssh server | 52.13 |
| service ssh | 52.14 |
| show banner login | 52.16 |
| show crypto key hostkey | 52.17 |
| show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts | 52.18 |
| show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey | 52.19 |
| show crypto key userkey | 52.20 |
| show running-config ssh | 52.21 |
| show ssh | 52.22 |
| show ssh client | 52.23 |
| show ssh server | 52.24 |
| show ssh server allow-users | 52.25 |
| show ssh server deny-users | 52.26 |
| ssh | 52.27 |
| ssh client | 52.29 |
| ssh server | 52.31 |
| ssh server allow-users | 52.33 |
| ssh server authentication | 52.35 |
| ssh server deny-users | 52.37 |
| ssh server resolve-host | 52.38 |
| ssh server scp | 52.39 |
| ssh server sftp | 52.40 |
| undebug ssh client | 52.41 |
| undebug ssh server | 52.41 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure Secure Shell (SSH). For more information, see [Chapter 50, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Introduction](#), and [Chapter 51, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Configuration](#).

Command List

banner login (SSH)

This command configures a login banner on the SSH server. This displays a message on the remote terminal of the SSH client before the login prompt. SSH client version 1 does not support this banner.

To add a banner, first enter the command **banner login**, and hit [Enter]. Write your message. You can use any character and spaces. Use Ctrl+D at the end of your message to save the text and re-enter the normal command line mode.

The banner message is preserved if the device restarts.

The **no** variant of this command deletes the login banner from the device.

Syntax banner login
no banner login

Default No banner is defined by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set a login banner message, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# banner login
```

Type CNTL/D to finish.

```
... banner message comes here ...
```

```
^D
```

```
awplus(config)#
```

and enter the message. Use Ctrl+D to finish.

To remove the login banner message, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no banner login
```

Related Commands [show banner login](#)

clear ssh

This command deletes Secure Shell sessions currently active on the device. This includes both incoming and outgoing sessions. The deleted sessions are closed. You can only delete an SSH session if you are a system manager or the user who initiated the session. If **all** is specified then all active SSH sessions are deleted.

Syntax `clear ssh {<1-65535>|all}`

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|--|
| <1-65535> | Specify a session ID in the range 1 to 65535 to delete a specific session. |
| all | Delete all SSH sessions. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To stop the current SSH session 123, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ssh 123
```

To stop all SSH sessions active on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ssh all
```

Related Commands [service ssh](#)
[ssh](#)

crypto key destroy hostkey

This command deletes the existing public and private keys of the SSH server. Note that for an SSH server to operate it needs at least one set of hostkeys configured before an SSH server is started.

Syntax `crypto key destroy hostkey {dsa|rsa|rsa1}`

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|--|
| dsa | Deletes the existing DSA public and private keys. |
| rsa | Deletes the existing RSA public and private keys configured for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Deletes the existing RSA public and private keys configured for SSH version 1 connections. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To destroy the RSA host key used for SSH version 2 connections, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key destroy hostkey rsa
```

Related Commands [crypto key generate hostkey](#)
[service ssh](#)

crypto key destroy userkey

This command destroys the existing public and private keys of an SSH user configured on the device.

Syntax `crypto key destroy userkey <username> {dsa|rsa|rsa1}`

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|--|
| <username> | Name of the user whose userkey you are destroying. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen and full stop symbols. |
| dsa | Deletes the existing DSA userkey. |
| rsa | Deletes the existing RSA userkey configured for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Deletes the existing RSA userkey for SSH version 1 connections. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To destroy the RSA user key for the SSH user `remoteuser`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key destroy userkey remoteuser rsa
```

Related Commands [crypto key generate hostkey](#)
[show ssh](#)
[show crypto key hostkey](#)

crypto key generate hostkey

This command generates public and private keys for the SSH server using either an RSA or DSA cryptography algorithm. You must define a host key before enabling the SSH server. Start SSH server using the **service ssh** command. If a host key exists with the same cryptography algorithm, this command replaces the old host key with the new key.

This command is not saved in the device configuration. However, the device saves the keys generated by this command in the non-volatile memory.

Syntax `crypto key generate hostkey {dsa|rsa|rsa1} [<768-32768>]`

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------|--|
| dsa | Creates a DSA hostkey. Both SSH version 1 and 2 connections can use the DSA hostkey. |
| rsa | Creates an RSA hostkey for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Creates an RSA hostkey for SSH version 1 connections. |
| <768-32768> | The length in bits of the generated key. The default is 1024 bits. |

Default 1024 bits is the default key length. The DSA algorithm supports 1024 bits.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To generate an RSA host key for SSH version 2 connections that is 2048 bits in length, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate hostkey rsa 2048
```

To generate a DSA host key, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate dsa
```

Related Commands [crypto key destroy hostkey](#)
[service ssh](#)
[show crypto key hostkey](#)

crypto key generate userkey

This command generates public and private keys for an SSH user using either an RSA or DSA cryptography algorithm. To use public key authentication, copy the public key of the user onto the remote SSH server.

This command is not saved in the device configuration. However, the device saves the keys generated by this command in the non-volatile memory.

Syntax `crypto key generate userkey <username> {dsa|rsa|rsa1} [<768-32768>]`

| Parameters | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <username> | Name of the user that the user key is generated for. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen and full stop symbols. |
| dsa | Creates a DSA userkey. Both SSH version 1 and 2 connections can use a key created with this command. |
| rsa | Creates an RSA userkey for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Creates an RSA userkey for SSH version 1 connections. |
| <768-32768> | The length in bits of the generated key. The DSA algorithm supports only 1024 bits. Default: 1024. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To generate a 2048-bits RSA user key for SSH version 2 connections for the user bob, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate userkey bob rsa 2048
```

To generate a DSA user key for the user lapo, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate userkey lapo dsa
```

Related Commands [crypto key destroy userkey](#)
[show crypto key userkey](#)

crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts

This command adds a public key of the specified SSH server to the known host database on your switch. The SSH client on your switch uses this public key to verify the remote SSH server.

The key is retrieved from the server. Before adding a key to this database, check that the key sent to you is correct.

If the server's key changes, or if your SSH client does not have the public key of the remote SSH server, then your SSH client will inform you that the public key of the server is unknown or altered.

The **no** variant of this command deletes the public key of the specified SSH server from the known host database on your device.

Syntax `crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts [ip|ipv6] <hostname> [rsa|dsa|rsa1]`

`no crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts <1-65535>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>ip</code> | Keyword used prior to specifying an IPv4 address |
| <code>ipv6</code> | Keyword used prior to specifying an IPv6 address |
| <code><hostname></code> | IPv4/IPv6 address or hostname of a remote server in the format <code>a.b.c.d</code> for an IPv4 address, or in the format <code>x:x::x:x</code> for an IPv6 address. |
| <code>rsa</code> | Specify the RSA public key of the server to be added to the known host database. |
| <code>dsa</code> | Specify the DSA public key of the server to be added to the known host database. |
| <code>rsa1</code> | Specify the SSHv1 public key of the server to be added to the know host database. |
| <code><1-65535></code> | Specify a key identifier when removing a key using the no parameter. |

Default If no cryptography algorithm is specified, then **rsa** is used as the default cryptography algorithm.

Mode Privilege Exec

Usage This command adds a public key of the specified SSH server to the known host database on the switch. The key is retrieved from the server. The remote SSH server is verified by using this public key. The user is requested to check the key is correct before adding it to the database.

If the remote server's host key is changed, or if the device does not have the public key of the remote server, then SSH clients will inform the user that the public key of the server is altered or unknown.

Examples To add the RSA host key of the remote SSH host IPv4 address `192.0.2.11` to the known

host database, use the command:

```
awplus# crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts 192.0.2.11
```

To delete the second entry in the known host database, use the command:

```
awplus# no crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts 2
```

Validation Commands **show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts**

crypto key pubkey-chain userkey

This command adds a public key for an SSH user on the SSH server. This allows the SSH server to support public key authentication for the SSH user. When configured, the SSH user can access the SSH server without providing a password from the remote host.

The **no** variant of this command removes a public key for the specified SSH user that has been added to the public key chain. When a SSH user's public key is removed, the SSH user can no longer login using public key authentication.

Syntax `crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username> [<filename>]`
`no crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username> <1-65535>`

| Parameters | Description |
|------------|--|
| <username> | Name of the user that the SSH server associates the key with. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen and full stop symbols. Default: no default |
| <filename> | Filename of a key saved in flash. Valid characters are any printable character. You can add a key as a hexadecimal string directly into the terminal if you do not specify a filename. |
| <1-65535> | The key ID number of the user's key. Specify the key ID to delete a key. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You should import the public key file from the client node. The device can read the data from a file on the flash or user terminal.

Or you can add a key as text into the terminal. To add a key as text into the terminal, first enter the command **crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username>**, and hit [Enter]. Enter the key as text. Note that the key you enter as text must be a valid SSH RSA key, not random ASCII text. Use [Ctrl]+D after entering it to save the text and re-enter the normal command line mode.

Note you can generate a valid SSH RSA key on the switch first using the **crypto key generate host rsa** command. View the SSH RSA key generated on the switch using the **show crypto hostkey rsa** command. Copy and paste the displayed SSH RSA key after entering the **crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username>** command. Use [Ctrl]+D after entering it to save it.

Examples To generate a valid SSH RSA key on the switch and add the key, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key generate host rsa
awplus(config)# exit

awplus# show crypto key hostkey rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAr1s7SokW5aW2fcOw1TStpb9J
20bWluhnUC768EoWhyPW6FZ2t536005M29EpKBmGq1kQaz5V0mU9
IQe66+5YyD4UxOKSDtTI+7jtjDcoGWHb2u4sFwRpXwJZcgYrXW16
+6NvNbk+h+c/pqGDijj4SvfZZfeITzvvyZW4/I4pbN8=

awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey joe
Type CNTL/D to finish:
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAr1s7SokW5aW2fcOw1TStpb9J
20bWluhnUC768EoWhyPW6FZ2t536005M29EpKBmGq1kQaz5V0mU9
IQe66+5YyD4UxOKSDtTI+7jtjDcoGWHb2u4sFwRpXwJZcgYrXW16
+6NvNbk+h+c/pqGDijj4SvfZZfeITzvvyZW4/I4pbN8=
control-D

awplus(config)#
```

To add a public key for the user `graydon` from the file `key.pub`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey graydon key.pub
```

To add a public key for the user `tamara` from the terminal, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# crypto key pubkey-chain userkey tamara
```

and enter the key. Use `Ctrl+D` to finish.

To remove the first key entry from the public key chain of the user `john`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no crypto key pubkey-chain userkey john 1
```

Related Commands [show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey](#)

debug ssh client

This command enables the SSH client debugging facility. When enabled, any SSH, SCP and SFTP client sessions send diagnostic messages to the login terminal.

The **no** variant of this command disables the SSH client debugging facility. This stops the SSH client from generating diagnostic debugging message.

Syntax `debug ssh client [brief|full]`
`no debug ssh client`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| brief | Enables brief debug mode. |
| full | Enables full debug mode. |

Default SSH client debugging is disabled by default.

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To start SSH client debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh client
```

To start SSH client debugging with extended output, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh client full
```

To disable SSH client debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ssh client
```

Related Commands [debug ssh server](#)
[show ssh client](#)
[undebug ssh client](#)

debug ssh server

This command enables the SSH server debugging facility. When enabled, the SSH server sends diagnostic messages to the system log. To display the debugging messages on the terminal, use the **terminal monitor** command.

The **no** variant of this command disables the SSH server debugging facility. This stops the SSH server from generating diagnostic debugging messages.

Syntax `debug ssh server [brief|full]`
`no debug ssh server`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| brief | Enables brief debug mode. |
| full | Enables full debug mode. |

Default SSH server debugging is disabled by default.

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To start SSH server debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh server
```

To start SSH server debugging with extended output, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ssh server full
```

To disable SSH server debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ssh server
```

Related Commands [debug ssh client](#)
[show ssh server](#)
[undebug ssh server](#)

service ssh

This command enables the Secure Shell server on the device. Once enabled, connections coming from SSH clients are accepted.

SSH server needs a host key before it starts. If an SSHv2 host key does not exist, then this command fails. If SSHv1 is enabled but a host key for SSHv1 does not exist, then SSH service is unavailable for version 1.

The **no** variant of this command disables the Secure Shell server. When the Secure Shell server is disabled, connections from SSH, SCP, and SFTP clients are not accepted. This command does not affect existing SSH sessions. To terminate existing sessions, use the **clear ssh** command.

Syntax `service ssh [ip|ipv6]`
`no service ssh [ip|ipv6]`

Default The Secure Shell server is disabled by default. Both IPv4 and IPv6 Secure Shell server are enabled when you issue **service ssh** without specifying the optional **ip** or **ipv6** parameters.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable both the IPv4 and the IPv6 Secure Shell server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service ssh
```

To enable the IPv4 Secure Shell server only, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service ssh ip
```

To enable the IPv6 Secure Shell server only, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service ssh ipv6
```

To disable both the IPv4 and the IPv6 Secure Shell server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service ssh
```

To disable the IPv4 Secure Shell server only, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service ssh ip
```

To disable the IPv6 Secure Shell server only, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service ssh ipv6
```

Related Commands

- crypto key generate hostkey**
- show running-config ssh**
- show ssh server**
- ssh server allow-users**
- ssh server deny-users**

show banner login

This command displays the banner message configured on the device. The banner message is displayed to the remote user before user authentication starts.

Syntax `show banner login`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec, Global Configuration, Interface Configuration, Line Configuration

Example To display the current login banner message, use the command:

```
awplus# show banner login
```

Related Commands [banner login \(SSH\)](#)

show crypto key hostkey

This command displays the SSH host keys generated by RSA and DSA algorithm.

A host key pair (public and private keys) is needed to enable SSH server. The private key remains on the device secretly. The public key is copied to SSH clients to identify the server

Syntax `show crypto key hostkey [dsa|rsa|rsa1]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| dsa | Displays the DSA algorithm public key. |
| rsa | Displays the RSA algorithm public key for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Displays the RSA algorithm public key for SSH version 1 connections. |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To show the public keys generated on the device for SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key hostkey
```

To display the RSA public key of the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key hostkey rsa
```

Output **Figure 52-1: Example output from the show crypto key hostkey command**

| Type | Bits | Fingerprint |
|------|------|---|
| rsa | 2058 | 4e:7d:1d:00:75:79:c5:cb:c8:58:2e:f9:29:9c:1f:48 |
| dsa | 1024 | fa:72:3d:78:35:14:cb:9a:1d:ca:1c:83:2c:7d:08:43 |
| rsa1 | 1024 | e2:1c:c8:8b:d8:6e:19:c8:f4:ec:00:a2:71:4e:85:8b |

Table 52-1: Parameters in output of the show crypto key hostkey command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Type | Algorithm used to generate the key. |
| Bits | Length in bits of the key. |
| Fingerprint | Checksum value for the public key. |

Related Commands [crypto key destroy hostkey](#)
[crypto key generate hostkey](#)

show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts

This command displays the list of public keys maintained in the known host database on the device.

Syntax `show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts [<1-65535>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-65535> | Key identifier for a specific key. Displays the public key of the entry if specified. |

Default Display all keys.

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To display public keys of known SSH servers, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts
```

To display the key data of the first entry in the known host data, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts 1
```

Output **Figure 52-2: Example output from the show crypto key public-chain knownhosts command**

| No | Hostname | Type | Fingerprint |
|----|---|------|---|
| 1 | 172.16.23.1 | rsa | c8:33:b1:fe:6f:d3:8c:81:4e:f7:2a:aa:a5:be:df:18 |
| 2 | 172.16.23.10 | rsa | c4:79:86:65:ee:a0:1d:a5:6a:e8:fd:1d:d3:4e:37:bd |
| 3 | 5ffe:1053:ac21:ff00:0101:bcdF:ffff:0001 | rsa1 | af:4e:b4:a2:26:24:6d:65:20:32:d9:6f:32:06:ba:57 |

Table 52-2: Parameters in the output of the show crypto key public-chain knownhosts command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| No | Number ID of the key. |
| Hostname | Host name of the known SSH server. |
| Type | The algorithm used to generate the key. |
| Fingerprint | Checksum value for the public key. |

Related Commands [crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts](#)

show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey

This command displays the public keys registered with the SSH server for SSH users. These keys allow remote users to access the device using public key authentication. By using public key authentication, users can access the SSH server without providing password.

Syntax `show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey <username> [<1-65535>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| <username> | User name of the remote SSH user whose keys you wish to display. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen and full stop symbols. |
| <1-65535> | Key identifier for a specific key. |

Default Display all keys.

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the public keys for the user `manager` that are registered with the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey manager
```

Output **Figure 52-3: Example output from the show crypto key public-chain userkey command**

```
No Type Bits Fingerprint
-----
1 dsa 1024 2b:cc:df:a8:f8:2e:8f:a4:a5:4f:32:ea:67:29:78:fd
2 rsa 2048 6a:ba:22:84:c1:26:42:57:2c:d7:85:c8:06:32:49:0e
```

Table 52-3: Parameters in the output of the show crypto key userkey command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| No | Number ID of the key. |
| Type | The algorithm used to generate the key. |
| Bits | Length in bits of the key. |
| Fingerprint | Checksum value for the key. |

Related Commands [crypto key pubkey-chain userkey](#)

show crypto key userkey

This command displays the public keys created on this device for the specified SSH user.

Syntax `show crypto key userkey <username> [dsa|rsa|rsa1]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <username> | User name of the local SSH user whose keys you wish to display. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen and full stop symbols. |
| dsa | Displays the DSA public key. |
| rsa | Displays the RSA public key used for SSH version 2 connections. |
| rsa1 | Displays the RSA key used for SSH version 1 connections. |

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To show the public key generated for the user, use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key userkey manager
```

To store the RSA public key generated for the user manager to the file "user.pub", use the command:

```
awplus# show crypto key userkey manager rsa > manager-rsa.pub
```

Output **Figure 52-4: Example output from the show crypto key userkey command**

| Type | Bits | Fingerprint |
|------|------|---|
| rsa | 2048 | e8:d6:1b:c0:f4:b6:e6:7d:02:2e:a9:d4:a1:ca:3b:11 |
| rsa1 | 1024 | 12:25:60:95:64:08:8e:a1:8c:3c:45:1b:44:b9:33:9b |

Table 52-4: Parameters in the output of the show crypto key userkey command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Type | The algorithm used to generate the key. |
| Bits | Length in bits of the key. |
| Fingerprint | Checksum value for the key. |

Related Commands [crypto key generate userkey](#)

show running-config ssh

This command displays the current running configuration of Secure Shell (SSH).

Syntax `show running-config ssh`

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration of SSH, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config ssh
```

Output **Figure 52-5: Example output from the show running-config ssh command**

```
!
ssh server session-timeout 600
ssh server login-timeout 30
ssh server allow-users manager 192.168.1.*
ssh server allow-users john
ssh server deny-user john*.a-company.com
ssh server
```

Table 52-5: Parameters in the output of the show running-config ssh command

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>ssh server</code> | SSH server is enabled. |
| <code>ssh server v2</code> | SSH server is enabled and only support SSHv2. |
| <code>ssh server <port></code> | SSH server is enabled and listening on the specified TCP port. |
| <code>no ssh server scp</code> | SCP service is disabled. |
| <code>no ssh server sftp</code> | SFTP service is disabled. |
| <code>ssh server session-timeout</code> | Configure the server session timeout. |
| <code>ssh server login-timeout</code> | Configure the server login timeout. |
| <code>ssh server max-startups</code> | Configure the maximum number of concurrent sessions waiting authentication. |
| <code>no ssh server authentication password</code> | Password authentication is disabled. |
| <code>no ssh server authentication publickey</code> | Public key authentication is disabled. |
| <code>ssh server allow-users</code> | Add the user (and hostname) to the allow list. |
| <code>ssh server deny-users</code> | Add the user (and hostname) to the deny list. |

Related Commands [service ssh](#)
[show ssh server](#)

show ssh

This command displays the active SSH sessions on the device, both incoming and outgoing.

Syntax `show ssh`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current SSH sessions on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh
```

Output **Figure 52-6: Example output from the show ssh command**

```
Secure Shell Sessions:
ID  Type  Mode   Peer Host      Username      State          Filename
-----
414 ssh   server 172.16.23.1   root          open
456 ssh   client 172.16.23.10 manager       user-auth
459 scp   client 172.16.23.12 root          download      550dev_.awd
463 ssh   client 5ffe:33fe:5632:ffbb:bc35:ddee:0101:ac51
                                manager       user-auth
```

Table 52-6: Parameters in the output of the show ssh command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| ID | Unique identifier for each SSH session. |
| Type | Session type; either SSH, SCP, or SFTP. |
| Mode | Whether the device is acting as an SSH client (client) or SSH server (server) for the specified session. |
| Peer Host | The hostname or IP address of the remote server or client. |
| Username | Login user name of the server. |
| State | The current state of the SSH session. One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> connecting The device is looking for a remote server. connected The device is connected to the remote server. accepted The device has accepted a new session. host-auth host-to-host authentication is in progress. user-auth User authentication is in progress. authenticated User authentication is complete. open The session is in progress. download The user is downloading a file from the device. upload The user is uploading a file from the device. closing The user is terminating the session. closed The session is closed. |
| Filename | Local filename of the file that the user is downloading or uploading. |

Related Commands [clear ssh](#)

show ssh client

This command displays the current configuration of the Secure Shell client.

Syntax `show ssh client`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration for SSH clients on the login shell, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh client
```

Output **Figure 52-7: Example output from the show ssh client command**

```
Secure Shell Client Configuration
-----
Port                               : 22
Version                            : 2,1
Connect Timeout                    : 30 seconds
Session Timeout                    : 0 (off)
Debug                              : NONE
```

Table 52-7: Parameters in the output of the show ssh client command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Port | SSH server TCP port where the SSH client connects to. The default is port 22. |
| Version | SSH server version; either "1", "2" or "2,1". |
| Connect Timeout | Time in seconds that the SSH client waits for an SSH session to establish. If the value is 0, the connection is terminated when it reaches the TCP timeout. |
| Debug | Whether debugging is active on the client. |

Related Commands [show ssh server](#)

show ssh server

This command displays the current configuration of the Secure Shell server.

Note that changes to the SSH configuration affects only new SSH sessions coming from remote hosts, and does not affect existing sessions.

Syntax `show ssh server`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration of the Secure Shell server, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server
```

Output **Figure 52-8: Example output from the show ssh server command**

```
Secure Shell Server Configuration
-----
SSH Server           : Enabled
Port                 : 22
Version              : 2
Services              : scp, sftp
User Authentication  : publickey, password
Idle Timeout         : 60 seconds
Maximum Startups     : 10
Debug                : NONE
```

Table 52-8: Parameters in the output of the show ssh server command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| SSH Server | Whether the Secure Shell server is enabled or disabled. |
| Port | TCP port where the Secure Shell server listens for connections. The default is port 22. |
| Version | SSH server version; either "1", "2" or "2,1". |
| Services | List of the available Secure Shell service; one or more of SHELL, SCP or SFTP. |
| Authentication | List of available authentication methods. |
| Login Timeout | Time (in seconds) that the SSH server will wait the SSH session to establish. If the value is 0, the client login will be terminated when TCP timeout reaches. |
| Idle Timeout | Time (in seconds) that the SSH server will wait to receive data from the SSH client. The server disconnects if this timer limit is reached. If set at 0, the idle timer remains off. |
| Maximum Startups | The maximum number of concurrent connections that are waiting authentication. The default is 10. |
| Debug | Whether debugging is active on the server. |

Related Commands [show ssh](#)
[show ssh client](#)

show ssh server allow-users

This command displays the user entries in the allow list of the SSH server.

Syntax `show ssh server allow-users`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the user entries in the allow list of the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server allow-users
```

Output **Figure 52-9: Example output from the show ssh server allow-users command**

| Username | Remote Hostname (pattern) |
|----------|---------------------------|
| awplus | 192.168.* |
| john | |
| manager | *.alliedtelesis.com |

Table 52-9: Parameters in the output of the show ssh server allow-users command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Username | User name that is allowed to access the SSH server. |
| Remote Hostname (pattern) | IP address or hostname pattern of the remote client. The user is allowed requests from a host that matches this pattern. If no hostname is specified, the user is allowed from all hosts. |

Related Commands [ssh server allow-users](#)
[ssh server deny-users](#)

show ssh server deny-users

This command displays the user entries in the deny list of the SSH server. The user in the deny list is rejected to access the SSH server. If a user is not included in the access list of the SSH server, the user is also rejected.

Syntax `show ssh server deny-users`

Mode User Exec, Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the user entries in the deny list of the SSH server, use the command:

```
awplus# show ssh server deny-users
```

Output **Figure 52-10: Example output from the show ssh server deny-user command**

| Username | Remote Hostname (pattern) |
|----------|---------------------------|
| john | *.b-company.com |
| manager | 192.168.2.* |

Table 52-10: Parameters in the output of the show ssh server deny-user command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Username | The user that this rule applies to. |
| Remote Hostname (pattern) | IP address or hostname pattern of the remote client. The user is denied requests from a host that matches this pattern. If no hostname is specified, the user is denied from all hosts. |

Related Commands [ssh server allow-users](#)
[ssh server deny-users](#)

ssh

This command initiates a Secure Shell connection to a remote SSH server.

If the server requests a password for the user login, the user needs to type in the correct password on "Password:" prompt.

SSH client identifies the remote SSH server by its public key registered on the client device. If the server identification is changed, server verification fails. If the public key of the server has been changed, the public key of the server must be explicitly added to the known host database.

Note  Note that any hostname specified with ssh cannot begin with a hyphen (-) character.

Syntax `ssh [ip|ipv6][[user <username>]| [port <1-65535>]| [version {1|2}]] <hostname> [<line>]`

| Parameter | Description | | | | |
|-----------|---|---|--------------------|---|--------------------|
| ip | Specify IPv4 SSH. | | | | |
| ipv6 | Specify IPv6 SSH. | | | | |
| user | <p>Login user. If user is specified, the username is used for login to the remote SSH server when user authentication is required. Otherwise the current user name is used.</p> <p><username> User name to login on the remote server.</p> | | | | |
| port | <p>SSH server port. If port is specified, the SSH client connects to the remote SSH server with the specified TCP port. Other- wise, the client port configured by "ssh client" command or the default TCP port (22) is used.</p> <p><1-65535> TCP port.</p> | | | | |
| version | <p>SSH client version. If version is specified, the SSH client supports only the specified SSH version. By default, SSH client uses SSHv2 first. If the server does not support SSHv2, it will try SSHv1. The default version can be configured by "ssh client" command.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Use SSH version 1.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Use SSH version 2.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | 1 | Use SSH version 1. | 2 | Use SSH version 2. |
| 1 | Use SSH version 1. | | | | |
| 2 | Use SSH version 2. | | | | |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><hostname></code> | IPv4/IPv6 address or hostname of a remote server in the format <code>a.b.c.d</code> for an IPv4 address, or in the format <code>x::x::x:x</code> for an IPv6 address corresponding to the <code>ip</code> or <code>ipv6</code> optional keywords used. Note that any hostname specified with <code>ssh</code> cannot begin with a hyphen (-) character. |
| <code><line></code> | Command to execute on the remote server. If a command is specified, the command is executed on the remote SSH server and the session is disconnected when the remote command finishes. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To login to the remote SSH server at 192.0.2.5, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh ip 192.0.2.5
```

To login to the remote SSH server at 192.0.2.5 as user **manager**, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh ip user manager 192.0.2.5
```

To login to the remote SSH server at 192.0.2.5 that is listening TCP port 2000, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh port 2000 192.0.2.5
```

To login to the remote SSH server with `example_host` using IPv6 session, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh ipv6 example_host
```

To run the **cmd** command on the remote SSH server at 192.0.2.5, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh ip 192.0.2.5 cmd
```

Related Commands [crypto key generate userkey](#)
[crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts](#)
[debug ssh client](#)
[ssh client](#)

ssh client

This command modifies the default configuration parameters of the Secure Shell (SSH) client. The configuration is used for any SSH client on the device to connect to remote SSH servers. Any parameters specified on SSH client explicitly override the default configuration parameters.

The change affects the current user shell only. When the user exits the login session, the configuration does not persist. This command does not affect existing SSH sessions.

The **no** variant of this command resets configuration parameters of the Secure Shell (SSH) client changed by the **ssh client** command, and restores the defaults.

This command does not affect the existing SSH sessions.

Syntax `ssh client {port <1-65535>|version {1|2}|session-timeout <0-3600>|connect-timeout <1-600>}`
`no ssh client {port|version|session-timeout|connect-timeout}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| port | The default TCP port of the remote SSH server. If an SSH client specifies an explicit port of the server, it overrides the default TCP port. Default: 22 <hr/> <code><1-65535></code> TCP port number. |
| version | The SSH version used by the client for SSH sessions. The SSH client supports both version 2 and version 1 Default: version 2 Note: SSH version 2 is the default SSH version. SSH client supports SSH version 1 if SSH version 2 is not configured using a ssh version command. <hr/> 1 SSH clients on the device supports SSH version 1 only. <hr/> 2 SSH clients on the device supports SSH version 2 only |
| session-timeout | The global session timeout for SSH sessions. If the session timer lapses since the last time an SSH client received data from the remote server, the session is terminated. If the value is 0, then the client does not terminate the session. Instead, the connection is terminated when it reaches the TCP timeout. Default: 0 (session timer remains off) <hr/> <code><0-3600></code> Timeout in seconds. |
| connect-timeout | The maximum time period that an SSH session can take to become established. The SSH client terminates the SSH session if this timeout expires and the session is still not established. Default: 30 <hr/> <code><1-600></code> Timeout in seconds. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To configure the default TCP port for SSH clients to 2200, and the session timer to 10 minutes, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh client port 2200 session-timeout 600
```

To configure the connect timeout of SSH client to 10 seconds, use the command:

```
awplus# ssh client connect-timeout 10
```

To restore the connect timeout to its default, use the command:

```
awplus# no ssh client connect-timeout
```

Related Commands [show ssh client](#)
[ssh](#)

ssh server

This command modifies the configuration of the SSH server. Changing these parameters affects new SSH sessions connecting to the device.

The **no** variant of this command restores the configuration of a specified parameter to its default. The change affects the SSH server immediately if the server is running. Otherwise, the configuration is used when the server starts.

To enable the SSH server, use the **service ssh** command.

Syntax

```
ssh server {[v1v2|v2only] | <1-65535>}
ssh server {[session-timeout <0-3600>} [login-timeout <1-600>}
    [max-startups <1-128>]}
no ssh server {[session-timeout] [login-timeout] [max-startups]}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| v1v2 | Supports both SSHv2 and SSHv1 client connections. Default: v1v2 |
| v2only | Supports SSHv2 client connections only. |
| <1-65535> | The TCP port number that the server listens to for incoming SSH sessions. Default: 22 |
| session-timeout | There is a maximum time period that the server waits before deciding that a session is inactive and should be terminated. The server considers the session inactive when it has not received any data from the client, and when the client does not respond to keep alive messages. Default: 0 (session timer remains off). <0-3600> Timeout in seconds. |
| login-timeout | The maximum time period the server waits before disconnecting an unauthenticated client. Default: 60 <1-600> Timeout in seconds. |
| max-startups | The maximum number of concurrent unauthenticated connections the server accepts. When the number of SSH connections awaiting authentication reaches the limit, the server drops any additional connections until authentication succeeds or the login timer expires for a connection. Default: 10 <1-128> Number of sessions. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure the session timer of SSH server to 10 minutes (600 seconds), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server login-timeout 600
```

To configure the login timeout of SSH server to 30 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server login-timeout 30
```

To limit the number of SSH client connections waiting authentication from SSH server to 3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server max-startups
```

To set max-startups parameters of SSH server to the default configuration, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server max-startups
```

To support the Secure Shell server with TCP port 2200, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server 2200
```

To force the Secure Shell server to support SSHv2 only, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server v2only
```

To support both SSHv2 and SSHv1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server v1v2
```

Related Commands [show ssh server](#)
[ssh client](#)

ssh server allow-users

This command adds a username pattern to the allow list of the SSH server. If the user of an incoming SSH session matches the pattern, the session is accepted.

When there are no registered users in the server's database of allowed users, the SSH server does not accept SSH sessions even when enabled.

SSH server also maintains the deny list. The server checks the user in the deny list first. If a user is listed in the deny list, then the user access is denied even if the user is listed in the allow list.

The **no** variant of this command deletes a username pattern from the allow list of the SSH server. To delete an entry from the allow list, the username and hostname pattern should match exactly with the existing entry.

Syntax `ssh server allow-users <username-pattern> [<hostname-pattern>]`
`no ssh server allow-users <username-pattern> [<hostname-pattern>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code><username-pattern></code> | The username pattern that users can match to. An asterisk acts as a wildcard character that matches any string of characters. |
| <code><hostname-pattern></code> | The host name pattern that hosts can match to. If specified, the server allows the user to connect only from hosts matching the pattern. An asterisk acts as a wildcard character that matches any string of characters. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To allow the user `john` to create an SSH session from any host, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users john
```

To allow the user `john` to create an SSH session from a range of IP address (from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.255), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users john 192.168.1.*
```

To allow the user `john` to create a SSH session from `a-company.com` domain, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server allow-users john *.a-company.com
```

To delete the existing user entry `john 192.168.1.*` in the allow list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server allow-users john 192.168.1.*
```

Related Commands [show running-config ssh](#)
 [show ssh server allow-users](#)
 [ssh server deny-users](#)

ssh server authentication

This command enables RSA public-key or password user authentication for SSH Server. Apply the **password** keyword with the **ssh server authentication** command to enable password authentication for users. Apply the **publickey** keyword with the **ssh server authentication** command to enable RSA public-key authentication for users.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable RSA public-key or password user authentication for SSH Server. Apply the **password** keyword with the **no ssh authentication** command to disable password authentication for users. Apply the required **publickey** keyword with the **no ssh authentication** command to disable RSA public-key authentication for users.

Syntax `ssh server authentication {password|publickey}`
`no ssh server authentication {password|publickey}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| password | Specifies user password authentication for SSH server. |
| publickey | Specifies user publickey authentication for SSH server. |

Default Both RSA public-key authentication and password authentication are enabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage For password authentication to authenticate a user, password authentication for a user must be registered in the local user database or on an external RADIUS server, before using the **ssh server authentication password** command.

For RSA public-key authentication to authenticate a user, a public key must be added for the user, before using the **ssh server authentication publickey** command.

Examples To enable `password` authentication for users connecting through SSH, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server authentication password
```

To enable `publickey` authentication for users connecting through SSH, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server authentication publickey
```

To disable `password` authentication for users connecting through SSH, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server authentication password
```

To disable `publickey` authentication for users connecting through SSH, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server authentication publickey
```

Related Commands [crypto key pubkey-chain userkey](#)
[service ssh](#)
[show ssh server](#)

ssh server deny-users

This command adds a username pattern to the deny list of the SSH server. If the user of an incoming SSH session matches the pattern, the session is rejected.

SSH server also maintains the allow list. The server checks the user in the deny list first. If a user is listed in the deny list, then the user access is denied even if the user is listed in the allow list.

If a hostname pattern is specified, the user is denied from the hosts matching the pattern.

The **no** variant of this command deletes a username pattern from the deny list of the SSH server. To delete an entry from the deny list, the username and hostname pattern should match exactly with the existing entry.

Syntax `ssh server deny-users <username-pattern> [<hostname-pattern>]`
`no ssh server deny-users <username-pattern> [<hostname-pattern>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <code><username-pattern></code> | The username pattern that users can match to. The username must begin with a letter. Valid characters are all numbers, letters, and the underscore, hyphen, full stop and asterisk symbols. An asterisk acts as a wildcard character that matches any string of characters. |
| <code><hostname-pattern></code> | The host name pattern that hosts can match to. If specified, the server denies the user only when they connect from hosts matching the pattern. An asterisk acts as a wildcard character that matches any string of characters. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To deny the user john to access SSH login from any host, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server deny-users john
```

To deny the user john to access SSH login from a range of IP address (from 192.168.2.1 to 192.168.2.255), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server deny-users john 192.168.2.*
```

To deny the user john to access SSH login from b-company.com domain, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server deny-users john*.b-company.com
```

To delete the existing user entry `john 192.168.2.*` in the deny list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server deny-users john 192.168.2.*
```

Related Commands [show running-config ssh](#)
[show ssh server deny-users](#)
[ssh server allow-users](#)

ssh server resolve-host

This command enables resolving an IP address from a host name using a DNS server for client host authentication.

The **no** variant of this command disables this feature.

Syntax `ssh server resolve-hosts`
`no ssh server resolve-hosts`

Default This feature is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Your device has a DNS Client that is enabled automatically when you add a DNS server to your device. To add a DNS server to the list of servers that the device sends DNS queries to use the [ip name-server](#) command on page 25.16.

Example To resolve a host name using a DNS server, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server resolve-hosts
```

Related Commands [ip name-server](#)
[show ssh server](#)
[ssh server allow-users](#)
[ssh server deny-users](#)

ssh server scp

This command enables the Secure Copy (SCP) service on the SSH server. Once enabled, the server accepts SCP requests from remote clients.

You must enable the SSH server as well as this service before the device accepts SCP connections. The SCP service is enabled by default as soon as the SSH server is enabled.

The **no** variant of this command disables the SCP service on the SSH server. Once disabled, SCP requests from remote clients are rejected.

Syntax `ssh server scp`
`no ssh server scp`

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable the SCP service, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server scp
```

To disable the SCP service, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server scp
```

Related Commands [show running-config ssh](#)
[show ssh server](#)

ssh server sftp

This command enables the Secure FTP (SFTP) service on the SSH server. Once enabled, the server accepts SFTP requests from remote clients.

You must enable the SSH server as well as this service before the device accepts SFTP connections. The SFTP service is enabled by default as soon as the SSH server is enabled. If the SSH server is disabled, SFTP service is unavailable.

The **no** variant of this command disables SFTP service on the SSH server. Once disabled, SFTP requests from remote clients are rejected.

Syntax `ssh server sftp`
`no ssh server sftp`

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable the SFTP service, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ssh server sftp
```

To disable the SFTP service, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ssh server sftp
```

Related Commands [show running-config ssh](#)
[show ssh server](#)

undebug ssh client

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug ssh client** command.

undebug ssh server

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug ssh server** command.

Chapter 53: DHCP Snooping Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction | 53.2 |
| DHCP Snooping | 53.2 |
| DHCP Snooping Database | 53.3 |
| Traffic Filtering with DHCP Snooping | 53.4 |
| ARP Security | 53.6 |
| MAC Address Verification | 53.6 |
| DHCP Snooping Violations | 53.6 |
| Interactions with Other Features | 53.7 |
| Configuration | 53.8 |
| Configure DHCP Snooping | 53.8 |
| Disabling DHCP Snooping | 53.13 |
| Related Features | 53.13 |

Introduction

This chapter provides information about DHCP snooping, support for it on this switch, and how to configure it.

For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure DHCP snooping, see [Chapter 54, DHCP Snooping Commands](#); for related ACL commands, see [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#).

For information about Dynamic Host Configuration protocol and how to configure it, see [Chapter 62, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol \(DHCP\) Introduction](#) and [Chapter 63, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol \(DHCP\) Commands](#).

DHCP Snooping

DHCP snooping provides an extra layer of security on the switch via dynamic IP source filtering. DHCP snooping filters out traffic received from unknown, or 'untrusted' ports, and builds and maintains a DHCP snooping database.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) dynamically assigns IP addresses to client devices. The use of dynamically assigned addresses requires traceability, so that a service provider can determine which clients own a particular IP address at a certain time.

With DHCP snooping, IP sources are dynamically verified, and filtered accordingly. IP packets that are not sourced from recognized IP addresses can be filtered out. This ensures the required traceability.

With DHCP snooping, an administrator can control port-to-IP connectivity by:

- permitting port access to specified IP addresses only
- permitting port access to DHCP issued IP addresses only
- dictating the number of IP clients on any given port
- passing location information about an IP client to the DHCP server
- permitting only known IP clients to ARP

Ports on the switch are classified as either trusted or untrusted:

- Trusted ports receive only messages from within your network.
- Untrusted ports receive messages from outside your network.

DHCP snooping blocks unauthorized IP traffic from untrusted ports, and prevents it from entering the trusted network. It validates DHCP client packets from untrusted ports and forwards them to trusted ports in the VLAN.

On this switch, DHCP snooping is disabled by default, and can be enabled on per-VLAN basis to operate over switch ports and over static and dynamic (LACP) link aggregators (channel groups).

DHCP Snooping Database

When you enable DHCP snooping, the switch intercepts all DHCP packets it receives, and sends them to the Central Processing Unit (CPU), where they are verified. The DHCP snooping database stores and maintains this information. The database contains entries for:

- current IP address leases dynamically allocated by a DHCP server
- static or dynamic entries added from the command line—typically used to add a DHCP snooping entry for a client that has a preconfigured IP address on an untrusted port

Database backup The switch periodically saves the dynamic entries in the DHCP snooping database to a hidden file (`.dhcp.dsn.gz`) in Non-Volatile Storage (NVS), or can be configured to save them to Flash memory or to an SD card.

If such a database file exists, it is loaded when the switch starts up with DHCP snooping enabled, or when DHCP snooping is subsequently enabled.

Lease entries Each entry in the database corresponds to a DHCP IP address lease.

For dynamic entries added automatically by DHCP snooping, each entry contains the following information:

- the IP address that was allocated to that client
- the MAC address of the client device
- the time until expiry
- the VLAN to which the client is attached
- the port to which the client is attached
- the IP address of the DHCP server

For static entries added from the command line, each entry contains the following subset of information:

- the IP address allocated to the client
- the MAC address of the client device (optional)
- the VLAN to which the client is attached
- the port to which the client is attached

Each entry also shows its source: Dynamic or Static.

On this switch, the maximum number of lease entries that can be stored in the DHCP snooping database for each port can be configured—the default is 1.

Expired entries For dynamic entries, the switch receives expiry information with the client lease information in DHCP packets. Entries expire when the time left to expiry is 0 seconds. Expired entries are automatically deleted from the database. Static entries have no expiry information, and are not checked. All dynamic entries in the database are written to the backup file. Whenever DHCP snooping is enabled, the DHCP snooping database is repopulated from the backup file and any static entries in the start-up configuration file. Any entries present in the backup file that have expired are ignored.

Traffic Filtering with DHCP Snooping

DHCP filtering prevents IP addresses from being falsified or 'spoofed'. This guarantees that users cannot avoid detection by spoofing IP addresses that are not actually allocated to them. With DHCP filtering, the switch permits packets to enter over a specific port if their source IP address is currently allocated to a client connected to that port.

Support on this switch

On this switch, Access Control Lists (ACLs) based on DHCP snooping can be used with access groups to filter IP packets. For instance, IP traffic on untrusted ports can be limited to packets matching valid DHCP lease information stored in the DHCP snooping database. Quality of Service (QoS) configuration can also be applied to these ACLs.

The DHCP snooping feature is enabled or disabled per VLAN, and several of the related configuration settings are applied per port. If there are multiple VLANs on a port, all the VLANs will be subject to the same per-port settings.

Operation

Table 53-1 on page 53.5 shows the filtering that is applied by DHCP snooping on a switch with the following DHCP filtering configuration for untrusted ports:

- DHCP snooping is enabled on all VLANs (**service dhcp-snooping** command on page 54.19, **ip dhcp snooping** command on page 54.9)
- ARP security (**arp security** command on page 54.2) is enabled on all VLANs
- MAC address verification is enabled on the switch (**ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address** command on page 54.16; enabled by default), and all DHCP clients are directly connected to the switch.
- Access Control Lists allow IP packets that match the source IP address and MAC address of a valid lease entry in the DHCP snooping database, and deny other IP packets (**access-list** commands in **Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List (ACL) Commands**).
- Log messages and SNMP notifications are enabled for DHCP snooping and ARP security violations (**ip dhcp snooping violation** command on page 54.17, **arp security violation** command on page 54.3, **snmp-server enable trap** command on page 67.18).

Table 53-1: DHCP filtering on the switch

| When the switch ... | and ... | then the switch ... |
|---|---|--|
| DHCP packets | | |
| Receives a DHCP BOOTP packet on a trusted port | | Forwards the DHCP packet. |
| | The packet contains a valid IP address lease for a client, and the maximum number of leases for the client port has not been reached. | Adds or updates a lease entry in the DHCP snooping database. |
| | The maximum number of leases for the client port has been reached. | Drops the DHCP packet, generates a log message for the violation, generates an SNMP notification (trap), and does not add a lease entry to the database. |
| A lease entry in the DHCP snooping database expires | | Removes the expired entry from the database. |
| Receives a DHCP BOOTP request packet on an untrusted port | The source MAC address and client hardware address do not match. | Drops the packet, generates a log message for the violation, and sends an SNMP notification (trap). |
| Receives a DHCP BOOTP reply packet on an untrusted port | | Drops the DHCP packet, generates a log message for the violation, and sends an SNMP notification (trap). |
| IP packets | | |
| Receives an IP packet on a trusted port | | Forwards the IP packet. |
| Receives an IP packet on an untrusted port | Its source MAC address, IP address, and receiving port match a valid lease entry in the DHCP snooping database. | Forwards the IP packet. |
| Receives an IP packet on an untrusted port | Its source MAC address, IP address, and receiving port do not match a valid lease entry in the DHCP snooping database. | Drops the packet. Does not generate a log message or an SNMP notification. |
| ARP packets | | |
| Receives an ARP request on a trusted port | | Forwards the ARP packet. |
| Receives an ARP request on an untrusted port | Its source MAC address, IP address, and receiving port match a valid entry in the DHCP snooping database | Forwards the ARP packet. |
| Receives an ARP request on an untrusted port | Its source MAC address, IP address, and receiving port do not match an entry in the DHCP snooping database | Drops the packet, generates a log message for the violation, and sends an SNMP notification (trap). |

ARP Security

ARP security prevents ARP spoofing. ARP spoofing occurs when devices send fake, or 'spoofed', ARP messages to an Ethernet LAN. This makes it possible for an unauthorized host to claim to be an authorized host. The unauthorized host can then intercept traffic intended for the authorized host, and can access the wider network.

Spoofed ARP messages contain the IP address of an authorized host, with a MAC address which does not match the real MAC address of the host. When ARP security is enabled for DHCP snooping, the switch checks ARP packets sourced from untrusted ports against the entries in the DHCP snooping binding database. If it finds a matching entry, it forwards the ARP packet as normal. If it does not find a matching entry, it drops the ARP packet. This ensures that only trusted clients (with a recognized IP address and MAC address) can generate ARP packets into the network. ARP security is not applied to packets received on trusted ports.

ARP security is disabled by default, and can be enabled on VLANs to ensure that on untrusted ports, only trusted clients (with a recognized IP address and MAC address) can generate ARP packets into the network. ARP security is applied to both dynamic and static DHCP snooping entries. For static DHCP entries without a MAC address defined, ARP security compares only the IP address details.

MAC Address Verification

When MAC address verification is enabled, the switch forwards DHCP packets received on untrusted ports only if the source MAC address and client hardware address match. MAC address verification is enabled by default.

DHCP Snooping Violations

Packets violating DHCP snooping or ARP security checks (if these are enabled) are automatically dropped. The switch can also be configured to send SNMP notifications (atDhcpsnTrap and atArpsecTrap), to generate log messages, or to shut down the link on which the packet was received.

If the switch is configured to send notifications for DHCP snooping or ARP security violations, the rate is limited to one notification per second. If there are any further violations within a second, no notifications are sent for them. After one second, the switch only sends further notifications if the source MAC address and/or the violation reason are different from previous notifications. (If log messages are also generated for ARP security and DHCP snooping violations, you can see a record of all violations in the log, even if notifications were not sent for all of them.)

Interactions with Other Features

DHCP snooping interacts with other switch features as follows:

- **Ports in trunk mode**

The DHCP snooping feature is enabled or disabled per VLAN, and several of the related configuration settings are applied to ports. If there are multiple VLANs on a port, all the VLANs will be subject to the same per-port settings.

- **DHCP snooping can be configured with port provisioning.**

- **Authentication**

DHCP snooping cannot be enabled on a switch that is configured for web authentication (**auth-web enable** command on page 41.32), roaming authentication (**auth roaming enable** command on page 41.17, **auth roaming disconnected** command on page 41.15), or guest VLAN authentication (**auth guest-vlan** command on page 41.8), or vice versa.

- **Link aggregators**

DHCP snooping can operate over switch ports, and over static and dynamic (LACP) link aggregators (channel groups). If a switch port is added to an aggregator, DHCP snooping configuration is applied to the aggregator; configuration of the original switch port is not preserved. If the switch port is then removed from the aggregator, it returns to default DHCP snooping settings.

- **Private VLANs**

Private VLANs are not supported for DHCP snooping.

Configuration

This section provides a general configuration procedure for DHCP snooping.

Configure DHCP Snooping

Note that if a port in trunk mode has multiple VLANs attached, then the DHCP snooping configuration settings for the port apply to all the VLANs.

Table 53-2: General configuration procedure for DHCP snooping

| Step 1. Enable DHCP snooping | | |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. | <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. | <code>awplus(config)# service dhcp-snooping</code> | Enable DHCP snooping on the switch. Default: disabled |
| 3. | <code>awplus(config)# interface <vid-list></code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the VLANs to enable DHCP snooping on. |
| 4. | <code>awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping</code> | Enable DHCP snooping on these VLANs. Default: disabled |
| 5. | <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 6. | <code>awplus(config-if)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports connected to the trusted network. The port(s) connected to the DHCP server(s) must be configured as trusted ports. |
| 7. | <code>awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping trust</code> | Set these ports to be trusted ports. Default: untrusted |
| 8. | <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 9. | <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | If you want to allow more than one DHCP lease for any ports, enter Interface Configuration mode for the required ports. The default is likely to be suitable for edge ports; on an aggregation switch, you may need to increase the maximum number of leases for ports connected to other switches and/or for multiple VLANs. Note that you cannot change this setting once DHCP snooping ACLs are attached to these interfaces. |

Table 53-2: General configuration procedure for DHCP snooping(cont.)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 10. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping max-bindings <0-520></pre> | Change the maximum number of leases for these ports. Default: 1 |
| 11. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| Step 2. Configure DHCP filtering | | |
| 12. | <pre>awplus(config)# access-list hardware <name></pre> | Create a hardware access list, and enter Hardware Access List Configuration mode to configure it. See the access-list hardware (named) command on page 33.18 . |
| 13. | <pre>awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# [<seqnum>] permit ip dhcpsnooping any [<seqnum>] deny ip any any</pre> <p>OR</p> <pre>awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# [<seqnum>] permit mac dhcpsnooping any [<seqnum>] deny mac any any</pre> | Configure the hardware access list to permit traffic with <i>source IP address</i> matching valid entries in the DHCP snooping database, and to deny other traffic. (The last filter applied to the ports by any access list must be the filter that denies all other traffic.) OR Configure the hardware access list to permit traffic with <i>source MAC address</i> matching valid entries in the DHCP snooping database, and to deny other traffic. (The last filter applied to the ports by any access list must be the filter that denies all other traffic.) See the (access-list hardware IP protocol filter) command on page 33.23 . |
| 14. | <pre>awplus(config-ip-hw-acl)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 15. | <pre>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the ports to add the DHCP snooping access list to. Typically this would be all untrusted ports. |
| 16. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# access-group <name></pre> | Add the hardware-based access list(s) to these ports. The <i>name</i> in this command is the name of the access list specified in Step 12 . |
| 17. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |

Table 53-2: General configuration procedure for DHCP snooping(cont.)

| Step 3. Configure ARP security | | |
|---|---|---|
| 18. | <pre>awplus(config)# interface <vid-list></pre> | Enter Interface Configuration mode for the VLANs to enable ARP security on. Default: disabled |
| 19. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# arp security</pre> | Enable ARP security on particular VLANs if required. On untrusted ports, ARP security forwards ARP packets that have a source IP address and MAC address matching a dynamic entry in the DHCP snooping database, or an IP address matching a static entry. It drops other ARP packets, and treats them as ARP security violations. Default: disabled |
| 20. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| Step 4. Configure MAC address verification | | |
| 21. | <pre>awplus(config)# no ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address</pre> | If not required, disable MAC address verification. Default: enabled |
| Step 5. Configure the DHCP snooping database | | |
| 22. | <pre>awplus(config)# ip dhcp snooping database {nvs flash}</pre> | If required, change the location of the file to which the switch writes the dynamic entries from the DHCP snooping database. Default: nvs (non-volatile storage) |
| 23. | <pre>awplus(config)# no ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client</pre> | By default, the switch deletes DHCP lease entries from the DHCP snooping database when it receives matching DHCP release messages. Disable these deletions if required, so that lease entries remain in the database until they expire. Default: enabled—entries are deleted when leases are released. |
| 24. | <pre>awplus(config)# ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown</pre> | If required, set the switch to delete dynamic entries from the DHCP snooping database when their ports go down. Default: disabled—entries remain if links go down. |
| 25. | <pre>awplus(config)# ip source binding <ipaddr> [<macaddr>] vlan <vid> interface <port></pre> | You can actively add, modify, or remove static entries from the DHCP snooping database. |

Table 53-2: General configuration procedure for DHCP snooping(cont.)

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| 26. | <pre>awplus# ip dhcp snooping binding <ipaddr> [<macaddr>] vlan <vid> interface <port> expiry <expiry-time></pre> | <p>You can actively add or remove dynamic entries from the DHCP snooping database. These changes affect the current database and backup file, but are not stored in the running configuration.</p> |
| Step 6. Configure violation actions | | |
| 27. | <pre>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></pre> | <p>Enter Interface Configuration mode for the ports for which you want to configure actions in response to DHCP snooping or ARP security violations.</p> |
| 28. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping violation {log trap link-down} ... arp security violation {log trap link- down} ...</pre> | <p>If required, set the switch to generate an SNMP notification (trap), to generate a log message, and/or to block traffic on the port on which a DHCP snooping and/or ARP security violation is detected.</p> <p>Default: By default, if a packet does not match the DHCP snooping and ARP security restrictions, the packet is dropped, but no other action is taken.</p> |
| 29. | <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | <p>Return to Global Configuration mode.</p> |
| 30. | <pre>awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap dhcpsnooping</pre> | <p>In order to send SNMP notifications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ set the action for violations to trap (Step 28) ■ configure SNMP—see Chapter 67, SNMP Commands ■ set the SNMP server to enable DHCP snooping notifications (by default notifications are disabled on the SNMP server). <p>The port connecting the switch to the SNMP manager should be set as a trusted port (Step 7 on page 53.8).</p> |
| 31. | <pre>awplus(config)# exit</pre> | <p>Return to Privileged Exec mode.</p> |

Table 53-2: General configuration procedure for DHCP snooping(cont.)

| Step 7. Check the configuration | | |
|--|--|--|
| 32. | <pre> awplus# show ip dhcp snooping show ip dhcp snooping interface [<port-list>] show ip dhcp snooping acl show arp security show arp security interface [<port- list>] show running-config dhcp </pre> | Check the DHCP snooping configuration. |
| Step 8. Troubleshooting DHCP snooping | | |
| 33. | <pre> awplus# show ip dhcp snooping binding </pre> | Check all entries in the DHCP snooping database. |
| 34. | <pre> awplus# show ip source binding </pre> | Check the static entries in the DHCP snooping database. |
| 35. | <pre> awplus# show ip dhcp snooping statistics [detail] [interface <interface-list>] clear ip dhcp snooping statistics [interface <port-list>] </pre> | Check DHCP snooping statistics. |
| 36. | <pre> awplus# show arp security statistics [detail] [interface <port-list>] clear arp security statistics [interface <port-list>] </pre> | Check ARP security statistics. |
| 37. | <pre> awplus# debug ip dhcp snooping {all acl db packet [detail]} show debugging ip dhcp snooping debug arp security show debugging arp security </pre> | Enable debug output for DHCP snooping and/or ARP security. |
| 38. | | If you have not already set the switch to log DHCP snooping and ARP security violations, you can do this for troubleshooting purposes. See Step 28 on page 53.11 . |
| 39. | <pre> awplus# show log </pre> | Display the contents of the buffered log, including any DHCP snooping log and debug messages. (See also Chapter 10, Logging Commands .) |

Disabling DHCP Snooping

If you disable DHCP snooping on the whole switch (**no service dhcp-snooping** command on page 54.19), all the DHCP snooping configuration is removed, except for the Access Control Lists (ACL). Any ACLs on a port that permit traffic matching DHCP snooping entries and block other traffic, will block all traffic if DHCP snooping is disabled on the port. If you disable DHCP snooping either on the whole switch or on particular VLANs (**no ip dhcp snooping** command on page 54.9), you must also remove any DHCP snooping ACLs from the ports to maintain connectivity (**no access-group** command on page 33.4).

Related Features

In addition to configuring DHCP snooping as described in **Table 53-2**, consider whether you also need to configure the following:

- VLANs—see **Chapter 16, VLANs Introduction** and **Chapter 17, VLAN Commands**
- Additional ACL filters—see **Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction** and **Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List (ACL) Commands**
- QoS—see **Chapter 36, Quality of Service (QoS) Introduction** and **Chapter 37, QoS Commands**
- SNMP—**Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction** and **Chapter 67, SNMP Commands**

Chapter 54: DHCP Snooping Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Command List | 54.2 |
| arp security | 54.2 |
| arp security violation | 54.3 |
| clear arp security statistics | 54.4 |
| clear ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.5 |
| clear ip dhcp snooping statistics | 54.6 |
| debug arp security | 54.7 |
| debug ip dhcp snooping | 54.8 |
| ip dhcp snooping | 54.9 |
| ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.10 |
| ip dhcp snooping database | 54.11 |
| ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client | 54.12 |
| ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown | 54.13 |
| ip dhcp snooping max-bindings | 54.14 |
| ip dhcp snooping trust | 54.15 |
| ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address | 54.16 |
| ip dhcp snooping violation | 54.17 |
| ip source binding | 54.18 |
| service dhcp-snooping | 54.19 |
| show arp security | 54.21 |
| show arp security interface | 54.22 |
| show arp security statistics | 54.23 |
| show debugging arp security | 54.25 |
| show debugging ip dhcp snooping | 54.26 |
| show ip dhcp snooping | 54.27 |
| show ip dhcp snooping acl | 54.28 |
| show ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.30 |
| show ip dhcp snooping interface | 54.31 |
| show ip dhcp snooping statistics | 54.33 |
| show ip source binding | 54.35 |

Command List

This chapter gives detailed information about the commands used to configure DHCP snooping. For detailed descriptions of related ACL commands, see [Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#). For more information about DHCP snooping, see [Chapter 53, DHCP Snooping Introduction and Configuration](#).

DHCP snooping can operate on static link aggregators (e.g. sa2) and dynamic link aggregators (e.g. po2), as well as on switch ports (e.g. port1.0.2).

arp security

Use this command to enable ARP security on untrusted ports in the VLANs, so that the switch only responds to/forwards ARP packets if they have recognized IP and MAC source addresses.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable ARP security on the VLANs.

Syntax arp security
no arp security

Default Disabled

Mode Interface Configuration (VLANs)

Usage Enable ARP security to provide protection against ARP spoofing. DHCP snooping must also be enabled on the switch ([service dhcp-snooping command on page 54.19](#)), and on the VLANs ([ip dhcp snooping command on page 54.9](#)).

Example To enable ARP security on VLANs 2 to 4, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# arp security
```

Related Commands [arp security violation](#)
[show arp security](#)
[show arp security interface](#)
[show arp security statistics](#)

arp security violation

Use this command to specify an additional action to perform if an ARP security violation is detected on the ports. ARP security must also be enabled ([arp security command on page 54.2](#)).

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified action, or all actions. Traffic violating ARP security will be dropped, but no other action will be taken.

Syntax `arp security violation {log|trap|link-down} ...`
`no arp security violation [log|trap|link-down] ...`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| log | Generate a log message. To display these messages, use the show log command on page 10.37 . |
| trap | Generate an SNMP notification (trap). To send SNMP notifications, SNMP must also be configured, and DHCP snooping notifications must be enabled using the snmp-server enable trap command on page 67.18 . Notifications are limited to one per second and to one per source MAC and violation reason. Additional violations within a second of a notification being sent will not result in further notifications. Default: disabled. |
| link-down | Shut down the port that received the packet. Default: disabled. |

Default When the switch detects an ARP security violation, it drops the packet. By default, it does not perform any other violation actions.

Mode Interface Configuration (switch ports, static or dynamic aggregated links)

Usage When the switch detects an ARP security violation on an untrusted port in a VLAN that has ARP security enabled, it drops the packet. This command sets the switch to perform additional actions in response to ARP violations.

If a port has been shut down in response to a violation, to bring it back up again after any issues have been resolved, use the [no shutdown command on page 12.15](#).

Example To send SNMP notifications for ARP security violations on ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap dhcpsnooping
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# arp security violation trap
```

Related Commands [arp security](#)
[show arp security interface](#)
[show arp security statistics](#)
[show log](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)

clear arp security statistics

Use this command to clear ARP security statistics for the specified ports, or for all ports.

Syntax `clear arp security statistics [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to clear statistics for. If no ports are specified, statistics are cleared for all ports. The ports may be switch ports, or static or dynamic link aggregators. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To clear statistics for ARP security on interface port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# clear arp security statistics interface port1.0.1
```

Related Commands [arp security violation](#)
[show arp security](#)
[show arp security statistics](#)

clear ip dhcp snooping binding

Use this command to remove one or more DHCP Snooping dynamic entries from the DHCP Snooping binding database. If no options are specified, all entries are removed from the database.

Caution  If you remove entries from the database for current clients, they will lose IP connectivity until they request and receive a new DHCP lease. If you clear all entries, all clients connected to untrusted ports will lose connectivity.

Syntax `clear ip dhcp snooping binding [<ipaddr>] [interface <port-list>]
[vlan <vid-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <ipaddr> | Remove the entry for this client IP address. |
| <port-list> | Remove all entries for these ports. The port list may contain switch ports, and static or dynamic link aggregators (channel groups). |
| <vid-list> | Remove all entries associated with these VLANs. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command removes dynamic entries from the database. Note that dynamic entries can also be deleted by using the **no** variant of the [ip dhcp snooping binding command on page 54.10](#).

Dynamic entries can individually be restored by using the [ip dhcp snooping binding command](#).

To remove static entries, use the **no** variant of the [ip source binding command on page 54.18](#).

Example To remove a dynamic lease entry from the DHCP snooping database for a client with the IP address 192.168.1.2, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ip dhcp snooping binding 192.168.1.2
```

Related Commands [ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
[ip source binding](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping binding](#)

clear ip dhcp snooping statistics

Use this command to clear DHCP snooping statistics for the specified ports, or for all ports.

Syntax `clear ip dhcp snooping statistics [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports to clear statistics for. If no ports are specified, statistics are cleared for all ports. The port list can contain switch ports, or static or dynamic link aggregators. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To clear statistics for the DHCP snooping on interface port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ip dhcp snooping statistics interface port1.0.1
```

Related Commands

- [clear arp security statistics](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping statistics](#)

debug arp security

Use this command to enable ARP security debugging.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable debugging for ARP security.

Syntax `debug arp security`
`no debug arp security`

Default Disabled

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To enable ARP security debugging, use the commands:

```
awplus# debug arp security
```

Related Commands [show debugging arp security](#)
[show log](#)
[terminal monitor](#)

debug ip dhcp snooping

Use this command to enable the specified types of debugging for DHCP snooping.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the specified types of debugging.

Syntax `debug ip dhcp snooping {all|acl|db|packet [detail]}`
`no debug ip dhcp snooping {all|acl|db|packet [detail]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| all | All DHCP snooping debug. |
| acl | DHCP snooping access list debug. |
| db | DHCP snooping binding database debug. |
| packet | DHCP snooping packet debug. For the no variant of this command, this option also disables detailed packet debug, if it was enabled. |
| detail | Detailed packet debug. |

Default Disabled

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To enable access list debugging for DHCP snooping, use the commands:

```
awplus# debug ip dhcp snooping acl
```

Related Commands [debug arp security](#)
[show debugging ip dhcp snooping](#)
[show log](#)
[terminal monitor](#)

ip dhcp snooping

Use this command to enable DHCP snooping on one or more VLANs.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable DHCP snooping on the VLANs.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping`
`no ip dhcp snooping`

Default DHCP snooping is disabled on VLANs by default.

Mode Interface Configuration (VLANs)

Usage For DHCP snooping to operate on a VLAN, it must:

- be enabled on the particular VLAN by using this command
- be enabled globally on the switch by using the [service dhcp-snooping](#) command on [page 54.19](#)
- have at least one port connected to a DHCP server configured as a trusted port by using the [ip dhcp snooping trust](#) command on [page 54.15](#)

Any ACLs on a port that permit traffic matching DHCP snooping entries and block other traffic, will block all traffic if DHCP snooping is disabled on the port. If you disable DHCP snooping on particular VLANs using this command, you must also remove any DHCP snooping ACLs from the ports to maintain connectivity ([no access-group](#) command on [page 33.4](#)).

Examples To enable DHCP snooping on VLANs 2 to 4, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping
```

To disable DHCP snooping on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan2-vlan4
awplus(config-if)# no ip dhcp snooping
```

Related Commands [ip dhcp snooping trust](#)
[service dhcp-snooping](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping](#)

ip dhcp snooping binding

Use this command to manually add a dynamic-like entry (with an expiry time) to the DHCP snooping database. Once added to the database, this entry is treated as a dynamic entry, and is stored in the DHCP snooping database backup file. This command is not stored in the switch's running configuration.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete a dynamic entry for an IP address from the DHCP snooping database, or to delete all dynamic entries from the database.

Caution  **If you remove entries from the database for current clients, they will lose IP connectivity until they request and receive a new DHCP lease. If you clear all entries, all clients connected to untrusted ports will lose connectivity.**

Syntax

```
ip dhcp snooping binding <ipaddr> [<macaddr>] vlan <vid> interface
  <port> expiry <expiry-time>

no ip dhcp snooping binding [<ipaddr>]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <ipaddr> | Client's IP address. |
| <macaddr> | Client's MAC address in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. |
| <vid> | The VLAN ID for the entry, in the range 1 to 4094. |
| <port> | The port the client is connected to. The port can be a switch port, or a static or dynamic link aggregation (channel group). |
| <expiry-time> | The expiry time for the entry, in the range 5 to 2147483647 seconds. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Note that dynamic entries can also be deleted from the DHCP snooping database by using the [clear ip dhcp snooping binding command on page 54.5](#).

To add or remove static entries from the database, use the [ip source binding command on page 54.18](#).

Example To restore an entry in the DHCP snooping database for a DHCP client with the IP address 192.168.1.2, MAC address 0001.0002.0003, on port1.0.6 of vlan6, and with an expiry time of 1 hour, use the commands:

```
awplus# ip dhcp snooping binding 192.168.1.2 0001.0002.0003
      vlan 6 interface port1.0.6 expiry 3600
```

Related Commands

- [clear ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
- [ip source binding](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping binding](#)

ip dhcp snooping database

Use this command to set the location of the file to which the dynamic entries in the DHCP snooping database are written. This file provides a backup for the DHCP snooping database.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the database location back to the default, **nvs**.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping database {nvs|flash|card}`
`no ip dhcp snooping database`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| nvs | The switch checks the database and writes the file to non-volatile storage (NVS) on the switch at 2 second intervals if it has changed. |
| flash | The switch checks the database and writes the file to Flash memory on the switch at 60 second intervals if it has changed. |
| card | The switch checks the database and writes the file to an SD card installed in the switch at 2 second intervals if it has changed. Note that a current DHCP snooping backup database file is essential to maintain connectivity for DHCP clients after a switch reboot. If you configure the switch to save this file to an SD card, we recommend that you ensure the card is always present. |

Default NVS

Mode Global Configuration

Usage In a stack, the backup file is automatically synchronized across all stack members to the location configured. If the backup file is stored on an SD card on the stack master, it is only synchronized across stack members that also have an SD card installed.

If the location of the backup file is changed by using this command, a new file is created in the new location, and the old version of the file remains in the old location. This can be removed if necessary (hidden file: **.dhcp.dsn.gz**).

Example To set the location of the DHCP snooping database to non-volatile storage on the switch, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip dhcp snooping database nvs
```

Related Commands [show ip dhcp snooping](#)

ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client

Use this command to set the switch to remove a dynamic entry from the DHCP snooping database when it receives a valid DHCP release message with matching IP address, VLAN ID, and client hardware address on an untrusted port, and to discard release messages that do not match an entry in the database.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the switch to forward DHCP release messages received on untrusted ports without removing any entries from the database.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client`
`no ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client`

Default Enabled: by default, DHCP lease entries are deleted from the DHCP snooping database when matching DHCP release messages are received.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage DHCP clients send a release message when they no longer wish to use the IP address they have been allocated by a DHCP server. Use this command to enable DHCP snooping to use the information in these messages to remove entries from its database immediately. Use the **no** variant of this command to ignore these release messages. Lease entries corresponding to ignored DHCP release messages eventually time out when the lease expires.

Examples To set the switch to delete DHCP snooping lease entries from the DHCP snooping database when a matching release message is received, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client
```

To set the switch to forward and ignore the content of any DHCP release messages it receives, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client
```

Related Commands [show ip dhcp snooping](#)

ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown

Use this command to set the switch to remove a dynamic entry from the DHCP snooping database when its port goes down. If the port is part of an aggregated link, the entries in the database are only deleted if all the ports in the aggregated link are down.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the switch not to delete entries when ports go down.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown`
`no ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown`

Default Disabled: by default DHCP Snooping bindings are not deleted when an interface goes down.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the switch to delete DHCP snooping lease entries from the DHCP snooping database when links go down, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown
```

To set the switch *not* to delete DHCP snooping lease entries from the DHCP snooping database when links go down, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown
```

Related Commands [show ip dhcp snooping](#)

ip dhcp snooping max-bindings

Use this command to set the maximum number of DHCP lease entries that can be stored in the DHCP snooping database for each of the ports. Once this limit has been reached, no further DHCP lease allocations made to devices on the port are stored in the database.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the maximum to the default, 1.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping max-bindings <0-520>`
`no ip dhcp snooping max-bindings`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code><0-520></code> | The maximum number of bindings that will be stored for the port in the DHCP snooping binding database. If 0 is specified, no entries will be stored in the database for the port. |

Default The default for maximum bindings is 1.

Mode Interface Configuration (port)

Usage The maximum number of leases cannot be changed for a port while there are DHCP snooping Access Control Lists (ACL) associated with the port. Before using this command, remove any DHCP snooping ACLs associated with the ports. To display ACLs used for DHCP snooping, use the [show ip dhcp snooping acl command on page 54.28](#).

In general, the default (1) will work well on an edge port with a single directly connected DHCP client. If the port is on an aggregation switch that is connected to an edge switch with multiple DHCP clients connected through it, then use this command to increase the number of lease entries for the port.

If there are multiple VLANs configured on the port, the limit is shared between all the VLANs on this port. For example, the default only allows one lease to be stored for one VLAN. To allow connectivity for the other VLANs, use this command to increase the number of lease entries for the port.

Example To set the maximum number of bindings to be stored in the DHCP snooping database to 10 per port for ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping max-bindings 10
```

Related Commands [access-group](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping acl](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping interface](#)

ip dhcp snooping trust

Use this command to set the ports to be DHCP snooping trusted ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to return the ports to their default as untrusted ports.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping trust`
`no ip dhcp snooping trust`

Default All ports are untrusted by default.

Mode Interface Configuration (port)

Usage Typically, ports connecting the switch to trusted elements in the network (towards the core) are set as trusted ports, while ports connecting untrusted network elements are set as untrusted. Configure ports connected to DHCP servers as trusted ports.

Example To set switch ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.2 to be trusted ports, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping trust
```

Related Commands [show ip dhcp snooping interface](#)

ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address

Use this command to verify that the source MAC address and client hardware address match in DHCP packets received on untrusted ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable MAC address verification.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address`
`no ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address`

Default Enabled—source MAC addresses are verified by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage When MAC address verification is enabled, the switch treats DHCP packets with source MAC address and client hardware address that do not match as DHCP snooping violations: it drops them and applies any other violation action specified by the **ip dhcp snooping violation** command on page 54.17. To bring the port back up again after any issues have been resolved, use the **no shutdown** command on page 12.15.

Example To disable MAC address verification on the switch, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address
```

Related Commands **ip dhcp snooping violation**
show ip dhcp snooping
show ip dhcp snooping statistics

ip dhcp snooping violation

Use this command to specify the action the switch will take when it detects a DHCP snooping violation by a DHCP packet on the ports.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the specified violation actions, or all violation actions.

Syntax `ip dhcp snooping violation {log|trap|link-down} ...`
`no ip dhcp snooping violation [{log|trap|link-down} ...]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| log | Generate a log message. To display these messages, use the show log command on page 10.37 . Default: disabled. |
| trap | Generate an SNMP notification (trap). To send SNMP notifications, SNMP must also be configured, and DHCP snooping notifications must be enabled using the snmp-server enable trap command on page 67.18 . Notifications are limited to one per second and to one per source MAC and violation reason. Default: disabled. |
| link-down | Set the port status to link-down. Default: disabled. |

Default By default, DHCP packets that violate DHCP snooping are dropped, but no other violation action is taken.

Mode Interface Configuration (port)

Usage If a port has been shut down in response to a violation, to bring it back up again after any issues have been resolved, use the [no shutdown command on page 12.15](#).

IP packets dropped by DHCP snooping filters do not result in other DHCP snooping violation actions.

Example To set the switch to send an SNMP notification and set the link status to link-down if it detects a DHCP snooping violation on switch ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.4, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap dhcpsnooping
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping violation trap link-down
```

Related Commands [show ip dhcp snooping interface](#)
[show log](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)

ip source binding

Use this command to add or replace a static entry in the DHCP snooping database.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the specified static entry or all static entries from the database.

Syntax `ip source binding <ipaddr> [<macaddr>] vlan <vid> interface <port>`
`no ip source binding [<ipaddr>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <ipaddr> | Client's IP address. If there is already an entry in the DHCP snooping database for this IP address, then this command replaces it with the new entry. |
| <macaddr> | Client's MAC address in HHHH.HHHH.HHHH format. |
| <vid> | The VLAN ID associated with the entry. |
| <port> | The port the client is connected to. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command removes static entries from the database.

To remove dynamic entries, use the [clear ip dhcp snooping binding](#) command on page 54.5 or the **no** variant of the [ip dhcp snooping binding](#) command on page 54.10.

Examples To add a static entry to the DHCP snooping database for a client with the IP address 192.168.1.2, MAC address 0001.0002.0003, on port1.0.6 of vlan6, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ip source binding 192.168.1.2 0001.0002.0003
vlan 6 interface port1.0.6
```

To remove the static entry for IP address 192.168.1.2 from the database, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip source binding 192.168.1.2
```

To remove all static entries from the database, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ip source binding
```

Related Commands [clear ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
[ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
[show ip source binding](#)

service dhcp-snooping

Use this command to enable the DHCP snooping service globally on the switch. This must be enabled before other DHCP snooping configuration commands can be entered.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the DHCP snooping service on the switch. This removes all DHCP snooping configuration from the running configuration, except for any DHCP snooping maximum bindings settings ([ip dhcp snooping max-bindings command on page 54.14](#)), and any DHCP snooping-based Access Control Lists (ACLs), which are retained when the service is disabled.

Syntax `service dhcp-snooping`
`no service dhcp-snooping`

Default DHCP snooping is disabled on the switch by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage For DHCP snooping to operate on a VLAN, it must be enabled on the switch by using this command, and also enabled on the particular VLAN by using the [ip dhcp snooping command on page 54.9](#).

For DHCP snooping to operate on a VLAN, it must:

- be enabled globally on the switch by using this command
- be enabled on the particular VLAN by using the [ip dhcp snooping command on page 54.9](#)
- have at least one port connected to a DHCP server configured as a trusted port by using the [ip dhcp snooping trust command on page 54.15](#)

If you disable the DHCP snooping service by using the **no** variant of this command, all DHCP snooping configuration (including ARP security, but excluding maximum bindings and ACLs) is removed from the running configuration, and the DHCP snooping database is deleted from active memory. If you re-enable the service, the switch:

- repopulates the DHCP snooping database from the dynamic lease entries in the database backup file (in NVS by default—see the [ip dhcp snooping database command on page 54.11](#)). The lease expiry times are updated.

The DHCP snooping service cannot be enabled on a switch that is configured with any of the following features, or vice versa:

- web authentication ([auth-web enable command on page 41.32](#))
- roaming authentication ([auth roaming enable command on page 41.17](#), [auth roaming disconnected command on page 41.15](#))
- guest VLAN authentication ([auth guest-vlan command on page 41.8](#)).

Any ACLs on a port that permit traffic matching DHCP snooping entries and block other traffic, will block all traffic if DHCP snooping is disabled on the port. If you disable DHCP snooping on the switch using this command, you must also remove any DHCP snooping ACLs from the ports to maintain connectivity ([no access-group command on page 33.4](#)).

Examples To enable DHCP snooping on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# service dhcp-snooping
```

To disable DHCP snooping on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no service dhcp-snooping
```

Related Commands [ip dhcp snooping](#)
[ip dhcp snooping database](#)
[ip dhcp snooping max-bindings](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping](#)

show arp security

Use this command to display ARP security configuration.

Syntax show arp security

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display ARP security configuration on the switch use the command:

```
awplus# show arp security
```

Figure 54-1: Example output from the show arp security command

```
awplus# show arp security
ARP Security Information:
Total VLANs enabled ..... 2
Total VLANs disabled ..... 11
vlan1 ..... Disabled
vlan2 ..... Disabled
vlan3 ..... Disabled
vlan4 ..... Disabled
vlan5 ..... Disabled
vlan100 ..... Disabled
vlan101 ..... Disabled
vlan102 ..... Disabled
vlan103 ..... Disabled
vlan104 ..... Disabled
vlan105 ..... Enabled
vlan1000 ..... Disabled
vlan1001 ..... Enabled
```

Table 54-1: Parameters in the output from the show arp security command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Total VLANs enabled | The number of VLANs that have ARP security enabled. |
| Total VLANs disabled | The number of VLANs that have ARP security disabled. |

Related Commands

- arp security
- show arp security interface
- show arp security statistics

show arp security interface

Use this command to display ARP security configuration for the specified ports or all ports.

Syntax `show arp security interface [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports to display ARP security information about. The port list can include switch ports, and static or dynamic aggregated links. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display ARP security configuration for ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show arp security interface
```

Figure 54-2: Example output from the show arp security interface command

```
awplus#show arp security interface
Arp Security Port Status and Configuration:
  Port: Provisioned ports marked with brackets, e.g. (portx.y.z)
  KEY:  LG = Log
        TR = Trap
        LD = Link down

Port          Action
-----
port1.0.1    -- -- --
port1.0.2    -- -- --
port1.0.3    LG TR LD
port1.0.4    LG -- --
port1.0.5    LG -- --
port1.0.6    LG TR --
port1.0.7    LG -- LD
...
```

Table 54-2: Parameters in the output from the show arp security interface command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Action | The action the switch takes when it detects an ARP security violation on the port. |
| Port | The port. Parentheses indicate that ports are configured for provisioning. |
| LG, Log | Generate a log message |
| TR, Trap | Generate an SNMP notification (trap). |
| LD, Link down | Shut down the link. |

Related Commands [arp security violation](#)
[show arp security](#)

[show arp security statistics](#)
[show log](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)

show arp security statistics

Use this command to display ARP security statistics for the specified ports or all ports.

Syntax `show arp security statistics [detail] [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| detail | Display detailed statistics. |
| interface <port-list> | Display statistics for the specified ports. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the brief statistics for the ARP security, use the command:

```
awplus# show arp security statistics
```

Figure 54-3: Example output from the show arp security statistics command

```
awplus# show arp security statistics
DHCP Snooping ARP Security Statistics:
  Interface      In      In
  Packets       Discards
-----
port1.0.3       20      20
port1.0.4       30      30
port1.0.12      120     0
```

Table 54-3: Parameters in the output from the show arp security statistics command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Interface | A port name. Parentheses indicate that ports are configured for provisioning. |
| In Packets | The total number of incoming ARP packets that are processed by DHCP Snooping ARP Security |
| In Discards | The total number of ARP packets that are dropped by DHCP Snooping ARP Security. |

Figure 54-4: Example output from the show arp security statistics detail command

```
awplus#show arp security statistics detail

DHCP Snooping ARP Security Statistics:

Interface ..... port1.0.3
  In Packets ..... 20
  In Discards ..... 20
  No Lease ..... 20
  Bad Vlan ..... 0
  Bad Port ..... 0
  Source Ip Not Allocated .... 0

Interface ..... port1.0.4
  In Packets ..... 30
  In Discards ..... 30
  No Lease ..... 30
  Bad Vlan ..... 0
  Bad Port ..... 0
  Source Ip Not Allocated .... 0

Interface ..... port1.0.12
  In Packets ..... 120
  In Discards ..... 0
  No Lease ..... 0
  Bad Vlan ..... 0
  Bad Port ..... 0
  Source Ip Not Allocated .... 0
```

Related Commands

- arp security**
- arp security violation**
- clear arp security statistics**
- show arp security**
- show arp security interface**
- show log**

show debugging arp security

Use this command to display the ARP security debugging configuration.

Syntax show debugging arp security

Mode User and Privileged Exec

Example To display the debugging settings for ARP security on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging arp security
```

Figure 54-5: Example output from the show debugging arp security command

```
awplus# show debugging arp security
ARP Security debugging status:
  ARP Security debugging is off
```

Related Commands [arp security violation](#)
[debug arp security](#)

show debugging ip dhcp snooping

Use this command to display the DHCP snooping debugging configuration.

Syntax show debugging ip dhcp snooping

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the DHCP snooping debugging configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging ip dhcp snooping
```

Figure 54-6: Example output from the show debugging ip dhcp snooping command

```
awplus# show debugging ip dhcp snooping

DHCP snooping debugging status:
  DHCP snooping debugging is off
  DHCP snooping all debugging is off
  DHCP snooping acl debugging is off
  DHCP snooping binding DB debugging is off
  DHCP snooping packet debugging is off
  DHCP snooping detailed packet debugging is off
```

Related Commands [debug ip dhcp snooping](#)
[show log](#)

show ip dhcp snooping

Use this command to display DHCP snooping global configuration on the switch.

Syntax show ip dhcp snooping

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display global DHCP snooping configuration on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping
```

Figure 54-7: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping command

```
DHCP Snooping Information:
  DHCP Snooping service ..... Enabled
  Binding delete by client ..... Disabled
  Binding delete by link down ..... Disabled
  Verify MAC address ..... Disabled
  SNMP DHCP Snooping trap ..... Disabled

DHCP Snooping database:
  Database location ..... nvs
  Number of entries in database ..... 2

DHCP Snooping VLANs:
  Total VLANs enabled ..... 1
  Total VLANs disabled ..... 9
  vlan1 ..... Enabled
  vlan2 ..... Disabled
  vlan3 ..... Disabled
  vlan4 ..... Disabled
  vlan5 ..... Disabled
  vlan100 ..... Disabled
  vlan101 ..... Disabled
  vlan105 ..... Disabled
  vlan1000 ..... Disabled
  vlan1001 ..... Disabled
```

Related Commands

- [service dhcp-snooping](#)
- [show arp security](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping acl](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping interface](#)

show ip dhcp snooping acl

Use this command to display information about the Access Control Lists (ACL) that are using the DHCP snooping database.

Syntax `show ip dhcp snooping acl`
`show ip dhcp snooping acl [detail|hardware] [interface`
 `[<interface-list>]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| detail | Detailed DHCP Snooping ACL information. |
| hardware | DHCP Snooping hardware ACL information. |
| interface | ACL Interface information. |
| <interface-list> | The interfaces to display information about. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display DHCP snooping ACL information, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping acl
```

Figure 54-8: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping acl command

```
awplus#show ip dhcp snooping acl
DHCP Snooping Based Filters Summary:
```

| Interface | Bindings | Maximum Bindings | Template Filters | Attached Hardware Filters |
|--------------|----------|------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| port1.0.1 | 1 | 520 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.2 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 6 |
| port1.0.3 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| port1.0.4 | 1 | 2 | 7 | 14 |
| port1.0.5 | 0 | 2 | 6 | 12 |
| port1.0.6 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.7 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.8 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.9 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.10 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.11 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.12 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| (port2.0.1) | 0 | 520 | 0 | 0 |
| (port2.0.2) | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |

To display DHCP snooping hardware ACL information, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping acl hardware
```

Figure 54-9: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping acl hardware command

```
awplus#show ip dhcp snooping acl hardware
```

DHCP Snooping Based Filters in Hardware:

| Interface | Access-list(/ClassMap) | Source IP | Source MAC |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 10.10.10.10 | aaaa.bbbb.cccc |
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 20.20.20.20 | 0000.aaaa.bbbb |
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.2 | dhcpsn1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 30.30.30.30 | aaaa.bbbb.dddd |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 40.40.40.40 | 0000.aaaa.cccc |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 50.50.50.50 | 0000.aaaa.dddd |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 60.60.60.60 | 0000.aaaa.eeee |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.3 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 0.0.0.0 | 0000.0000.0000 |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn3/cmap2 | 70.70.70.70 | |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn3/cmap2 | 80.80.80.80 | |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 70.70.70.70 | |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn2/cmap1 | 80.80.80.80 | |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn1 | 70.70.70.70 | |
| port1.0.4 | dhcpsn1 | 80.80.80.80 | |

To display detailed DHCP snooping ACL information for port 1.0.4, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping acl detail interface port1.0.4
```

Figure 54-10: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping acl detail interface command

```
awplus#show ip dhcp snooping acl detail interface port1.0.4
```

DHCP Snooping Based Filters Information:

```
port1.0.4 : Maximum Bindings ..... 2
port1.0.4 : Template filters ..... 7
port1.0.4 : Attached hardware filters .. 14
port1.0.4 : Current bindings ..... 1, 1 free
port1.0.4 : Client 1 ..... 120.120.120.120
port1.0.4 : Templates: cheese (via class-map: cmap2)
port1.0.4 : 10 permit ip dhcpsnooping 100.0.0.0/8
port1.0.4 : Template: dhcpsn2 (via class-map: cmap1)
port1.0.4 : 10 permit ip dhcpsnooping any
port1.0.4 : 20 permit ip dhcpsnooping 10.0.0.0/8
port1.0.4 : 30 permit ip dhcpsnooping 20.0.0.0/8
port1.0.4 : 40 permit ip dhcpsnooping 30.0.0.0/8
port1.0.4 : Template: dhcpsn1 (via access-group)
port1.0.4 : 10 permit ip dhcpsnooping any mac dhcpsnooping abcd.0000.0000 00
00.ffff.ffff
port1.0.4 : 20 permit ip dhcpsnooping any
```

Related Commands [access-list hardware \(named\)](#)
 [show access-list \(IPv4 Hardware ACLs\)](#)

show ip dhcp snooping binding

Use this command to display all dynamic and static entries in the DHCP snooping binding database.

Syntax show ip dhcp snooping binding

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display entries in the DHCP snooping database, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping binding
```

Figure 54-11: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping binding command

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping binding
DHCP Snooping Bindings:
```

| Client IP Address | MAC Address | Server IP Address | VLAN | Port | Expires (sec) | Type |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|------|-------|---------------|------|
| 1.2.3.4 | aaaa.bbbb.cccc | -- | 7 | 1.0.6 | Infinite | Stat |
| 1.2.3.6 | any | -- | 4077 | 1.0.6 | Infinite | Stat |
| 1.3.4.5 | any | -- | 1 | sa1 | Infinite | Stat |
| 111.111.100.101 | 0000.0000.0001 | 111.112.1.1 | 1 | 1.0.6 | 4076 | Dyna |
| 111.111.101.108 | 0000.0000.0108 | 111.112.1.1 | 1 | 1.0.6 | 4084 | Dyna |
| 111.111.101.109 | 0000.0000.0109 | 111.112.1.1 | 1 | 1.0.6 | 4085 | Dyna |
| 111.211.100.101 | -- | -- | 1 | 1.0.2 | 2147483325 | Dyna |
| 111.211.100.109 | 00b0.0000.0009 | 111.112.111.111 | 1 | 1.0.2 | 21 | Dyna |
| 111.211.101.101 | 00b0.0000.0101 | 111.112.111.111 | 1 | 1.0.2 | 214 | Dyna |

Total number of bindings in database: 9

Table 54-4: Parameters in the output from the show ip dhcp snooping binding command

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Client IP | The IP address of the DHCP client. |
| MAC Address | The MAC address of the DHCP client. |
| Server IP | The IP address of the DHCP server. |
| VLAN | The VLAN associated with this entry. |
| Port | The port the client is connected to. |
| Expires (sec) | The time in seconds until the lease expires. |
| Type | The source of the entry: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Dyna: dynamically entered by snooping DHCP traffic, configured by the ip dhcp snooping binding command, or loaded from the database backup file. ■ Stat: added statically by the ip source binding command |
| Total number of bindings in database | The total number of dynamic and static lease entries in the DHCP snooping database. |

Related Commands

- [ip dhcp snooping binding](#)
- [ip dhcp snooping max-bindings](#)
- [show ip source binding](#)

show ip dhcp snooping interface

Use this command to display information about DHCP snooping configuration and leases for the specified ports, or all ports.

Syntax `show ip dhcp snooping interface [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports to display DHCP snooping configuration information for. If no ports are specified, information for all ports is displayed. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display DHCP snooping information for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping interface
```

Figure 54-12: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping interface command

```
awplus#show ip dhcp snooping interface
DHCP Snooping Port Status and Configuration:
  Port: Provisioned ports marked with brackets, e.g. (portx.y.z)
  Action: LG = Log
          TR = Trap
          LD = Link down
```

| Port | Status | Full Leases | Max Leases | Action | Subscriber-ID |
|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|----------|--------------------|
| port1.0.1 | Untrusted | 1 | 1 | LG -- -- | |
| port1.0.2 | Untrusted | 0 | 50 | LG TR LD | Building 1 Level 1 |
| port1.0.3 | Untrusted | 0 | 50 | LG -- -- | |
| port1.0.4 | Untrusted | 0 | 50 | LG -- -- | Building 1 Level 2 |
| port1.0.5 | Untrusted | 0 | 50 | LG -- LD | Building 2 Level 1 |
| port1.0.6 | Untrusted | 0 | 1 | LG -- -- | |
| port1.0.7 | Untrusted | 0 | 1 | LG -- -- | |
| port1.0.8 | Untrusted | 0 | 1 | LG -- -- | |
| port1.0.9 | Untrusted | 0 | 1 | -- TR -- | |
| port1.0.10 | Untrusted | 0 | 1 | -- -- LD | |
| port1.0.11 | Trusted | 0 | 1 | -- -- -- | |
| port1.0.12 | Trusted | 0 | 1 | -- -- -- | |

Table 54-5: Parameters in the output from the show ip dhcp snooping interface command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Port | The port interface name. |
| Status | The port status: untrusted (default) or trusted. |
| Full Leases | The number of entries in the DHCP snooping database for the port. |
| Max Leases | The maximum number of entries that can be stored in the database for the port. |
| Action | The DHCP snooping violation actions for the port. |
| Subscriber ID | The subscriber ID for the port. If the subscriber ID is longer than 34 characters, only the first 34 characters are displayed. To display the whole subscriber ID, use the show running-config dhcp command on page 7.41 . |

Related Commands

- [show ip dhcp snooping](#)
- [show ip dhcp snooping statistics](#)
- [show running-config dhcp](#)

show ip dhcp snooping statistics

Use this command to display DHCP snooping statistics.

Syntax show ip dhcp snooping statistics [detail] [interface <interface-list>]

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| detail | Display detailed statistics. |
| interface <interface-list> | Display statistics for the specified interfaces. The interface list can contain switch ports, static or dynamic link aggregators (channel groups), or VLANs. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the current DHCP snooping statistics for all interfaces, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping statistics
```

Figure 54-13: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping statistics command

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping statistics
```

DHCP Snooping Statistics:

| Interface | In Packets | In BOOTP Requests | In BOOTP Replies | In Discards |
|-----------|------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------|
| vlan1 | 444 | 386 | 58 | 223 |
| port1.0.1 | 386 | 386 | 0 | 223 |
| port1.0.2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| port1.0.6 | 58 | 0 | 58 | 0 |

Figure 54-14: Example output from the show ip dhcp snooping statistics detail command

```
awplus# show ip dhcp snooping statistics detail
```

DHCP Snooping Statistics:

```
Interface ..... port1.0.1, All counters 0
Interface ..... port1.0.2, All counters 0
Interface ..... port1.0.3, All counters 0
Interface ..... port1.0.4
  In Packets ..... 50
  In BOOTP Requests ..... 25
  In BOOTP Replies ..... 25
  In Discards ..... 1
  Invalid BOOTP Information ..... 0
  Invalid DHCP ACK ..... 0
  Invalid DHCP Release or Decline ..... 0
  Invalid IP/UDP Header ..... 0
  Max Bindings Exceeded ..... 1
  Reply Received On Untrusted Port ..... 0
  Source MAC/CHADDR Mismatch ..... 0
  Static Entry Already Exists ..... 0
Interface ..... port1.0.5, All counters 0
Interface ..... port1.0.6, All counters 0
```

Table 54-6: Parameters in the output from the show ip dhcp snooping statistics command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Interface | The interface name. |
| In Packets | The total number of incoming packets that are processed by DHCP Snooping. |
| In BOOTP Requests | The total number of incoming BOOTP Requests. |
| In BOOTP Replies | The total number of incoming BOOTP Replies. |
| In Discards | The total number of incoming packets that have been discarded. |
| Invalid BOOTP Information | Packet contained invalid BOOTP information, such as an invalid BOOTP.OPCode. |
| Invalid DHCP ACK | A DHCP ACK message was discarded, for reasons such as missing Server Option or Lease Option. |
| Invalid DHCP Release or Decline | A DHCP Release or Decline message was discarded, for reasons such as mismatch between received interface and current binding information. |
| Invalid IP/UDP Header | A problem was detected in the IP or UDP header of the packet. |
| Max Bindings Exceeded | Accepting the packet would cause the maximum number of bindings on a port to be exceeded. |
| Reply Received On Untrusted Port | A BOOTP reply was received on an untrusted port. |
| Source MAC/CHADDR Mismatch | The L2 Source MAC address of the packet did not match the client hardware address field (BOOTP.CHADDR). |
| Static Entry Already Exists | An entry could not be added as a static entry already exists. |

Related Commands [clear ip dhcp snooping statistics](#)
[ip dhcp snooping](#)
[ip dhcp snooping violation](#)

show ip source binding

Use this command to display static entries in the DHCP snooping database. These are the entries that have been added by using the [ip source binding command on page 54.18](#).

Syntax `show ip source binding`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display static entries in the DHCP snooping database information, use the command:

```
awplus# show ip source binding
```

Figure 54-15: Example output from the show ip source binding command

```
awplus# show ip source binding
IP Source Bindings:
Client      MAC
IP Address  Address      VLAN  Port          Expires
-----
1.1.1.1     0000.1111.2222  1    port1.0.1     Infinite  Static
```

Table 54-7: Parameters in the output from the show ip source binding command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Client IP Address | The IP address of the DHCP client. |
| MAC Address | The MAC address of the DHCP client. |
| VLAN | The VLAN ID the packet is received on. |
| Port | The Layer 2 port name the packet is received on. |
| Expires (sec) | Always infinite for static bindings, or when the leave time in the DHCP message was 0xffffffff (infinite). |
| Type | DHCP Snooping binding type: Static |

Related Commands [ip source binding](#)
[show ip dhcp snooping binding](#)

Part 6: Network Availability



- **Chapter 55** EPSR Introduction and Configuration
- **Chapter 56** EPSR Commands
- **Chapter 57** RRP Snooping Introduction and Commands

Chapter 55: EPSR Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 55.2 |
| Ring Components and Operation | 55.2 |
| Fault Detection and Recovery | 55.4 |
| Fault Recovery | 55.4 |
| Restoring Normal Operation | 55.5 |
| Managing Rings with Two Breaks | 55.6 |
| Recovery When One Break is Restored | 55.8 |
| Configuration Examples | 55.10 |
| Single Domain, Single Ring Network | 55.10 |
| Single Ring, Dual Domain Network | 55.15 |
| Interconnected Rings | 55.16 |
| Superloop Protection | 55.17 |
| EPSR Superloop Prevention | 55.18 |
| Configuring a Basic Superloop Protected Two Ring EPSR Network | 55.21 |
| Sample Show Output | 55.37 |
| Adding a New Data VLAN to a Functioning Superloop Topology | 55.40 |
| EPSR and Spanning Tree Operation | 55.43 |

Introduction

Ethernet Protection Switching Ring (EPSR) is a protection system that prevents loops within Ethernet ring based topologies. EPSR offers a rapid detection and recovery time (in the order of 50 ms, depending on configuration) if a link or node fails. This rapid recovery time makes EPSR a more effective alternative to spanning tree options when using ring-based topologies to create high speed resilient Layer 2 networks.

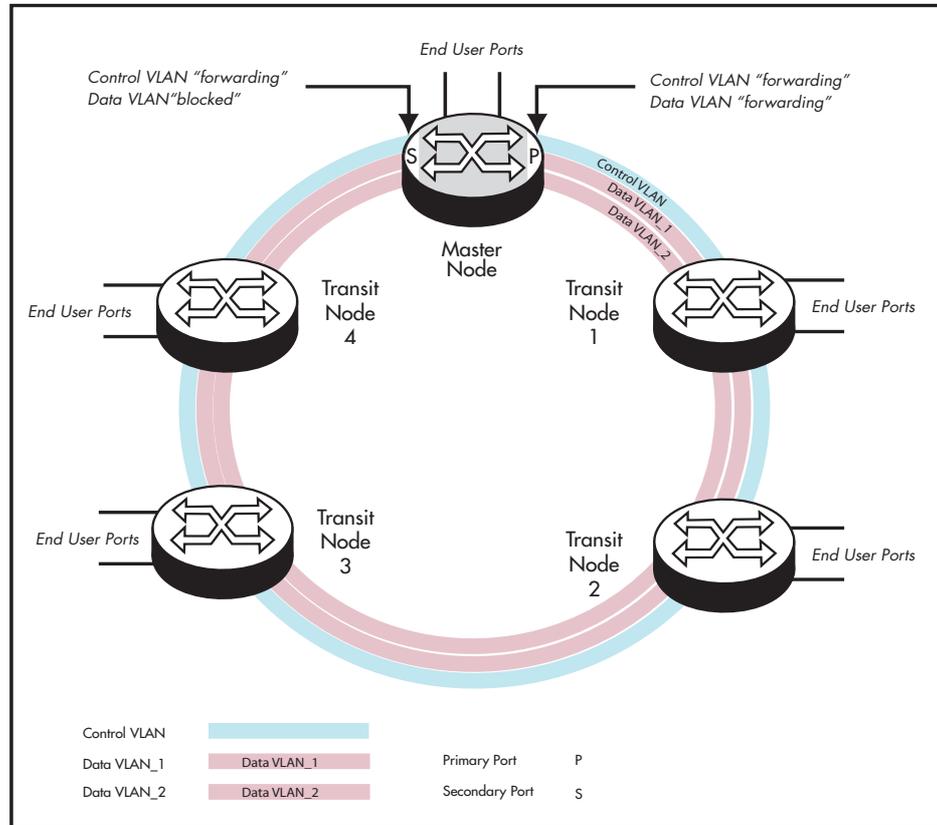
Ring Components and Operation

EPSR operates only on ring-based topologies. An EPSR ring comprises a series of nodes (Ethernet bridges) connected end to end. The figure below shows a basic ring configuration. A ring comprises one master node and a number of transit nodes. Each node connects to the ring via two ports. On the master node one port is configured to be the primary port and the other, the secondary port.

Note Within an EPSRing your switch can only operate as transit node. To form an EPSR ring using switches of this type, you will need to use an alternative Allied Telesis switch, such as an x610 Series switch or an x510 Series switch (with a Premium License), to function as the master node.

In the configuration examples shown later in this chapter, master node configuration is included for completeness; however, the commands shown will need to be applied to the switch selected to be the master node.

Figure 55-1: Simple EPSR ring configuration



EPSR instances and domains Each physical EPSR ring contains one or more EPSR domains. An EPSR instance can be thought of as a component of an EPSR ring domain that exists on a single node. A set of instances across the whole ring is called a “domain.” Therefore a ring whose individual nodes each have two instances results in a two domain ring. Each instance contains a control VLAN and a number of data VLANs.

The EPSR control VLAN and its associated data VLANs form a Ring Domain. Although a physical ring can have more than one domain, each domain must operate as a separate logical group of VLANs and must have its own master node. This means that several domains may share the same physical network, but must operate as logically separate VLAN groups.

Control VLAN The function of the control VLAN is to monitor the ring domain and maintain its operational functions. To do this it transmits and monitors operational healthcheck messages using EPSR healthcheck control frames. The control VLAN carries no user data.

Data VLAN The data VLAN carries the user data around the ring. Several data VLANs can share a common control VLAN.

Master node The master node controls the ring operation. It issues healthcheck messages at regular intervals from its primary port and monitors their arrival back at its secondary port - after they have circled the ring. Under normal operating conditions the master node's secondary port is always in the blocking state to all data VLAN traffic. This is to prevent data loops forming within the ring. This port however, operates in the forwarding state for the traffic on the control VLAN. Loops do not occur on the control VLAN because the control messages stop at the secondary port, having completed their path around the ring.

 **Note** Within an EPSRing your switch can only operate as transit node. To form an EPSR ring using switches of this type, you will need to use an alternative Allied Telesis switch, such as an x610 Series switch or an x510 Series switch (with a Premium License), to function as the master node.

In the configuration examples shown later in this chapter, master node configuration is included for completeness; however, the commands shown will need to be applied to the switch selected to be the master node.

Transit nodes The transit nodes operate as conventional Ethernet bridges, but with the additional capability of running the EPSR protocol. This protocol requires the transit nodes to forward the healthcheck messages from the master node, and respond appropriately when a ring fault is detected. The fault condition procedure is explained in **“Fault Detection and Recovery” on page 55.4**.

Fault Detection and Recovery

EPSR uses the following methods to detect outages in a node or a link in the ring:

- Master node polling fault detection
- Transit node unsolicited fault detection

Master node polling

The master node issues healthcheck messages from its primary port as a means of checking the condition of the EPSR network ring. These messages are sent at regular periods, controlled by the **hellotime** parameter of the **epsr command on page 56.4**. A failover timer is set each time a healthcheck message leaves the master node's primary port. The timeout value for this timer is set by the **failover** parameter of the **epsr command on page 56.4**. If the failover timer expires before the transmitted healthcheck message is received by the master node's secondary port, the master node assumes that there is a fault in the ring, and implements its fault recovery procedures. Because this method relies on a timer expiry, its operation is inherently slower than the "transit node unsolicited detection method" described next.

Transit node unsolicited

Transit node unsolicited fault detection relies on transit nodes detecting faults at their interfaces, and immediately notifying master nodes about the break. When a transit node detects a connectivity loss, it sends a "links down" message over its good link. Because a link spans two nodes, both nodes send the "links down" message back to the master node. These nodes also change their state from "links up" to "links down," and change the state of the port connecting to the broken link, from "forwarding" to "blocking."

Fault Recovery

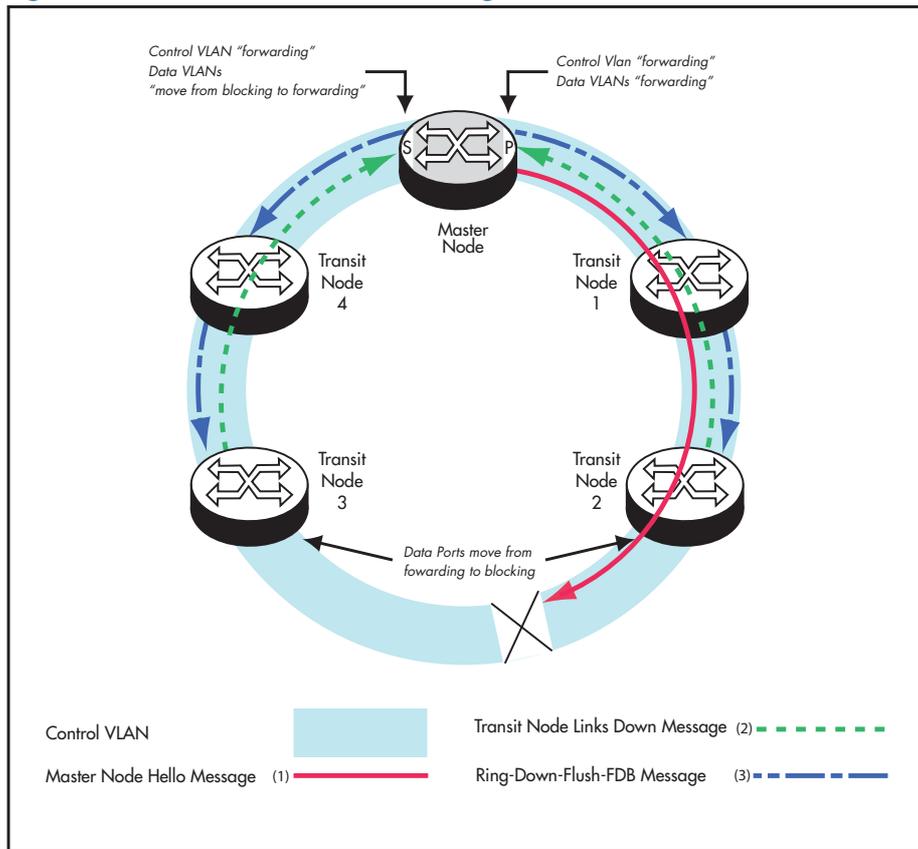
When the master node detects an outage in the ring by using its detection methods, it does the following:

1. Declares the ring to be in a "failed" state.
2. Unblocks its secondary port to enable the data VLAN traffic to pass between its primary and secondary ports.
3. Flushes its own forwarding database (FDB) for (only) the two ring ports.
4. Sends an EPSR Ring-Down-Flush-FDB control message to all the transit nodes, via both its primary and secondary ports.

Transit nodes respond to the Ring-Down-Flush-FDB message by flushing their forward databases for each of their ring ports. As the data starts to flow in the ring's new configuration, each of the nodes (master and transit) re-learn their Layer 2 addresses. During this period, the master node continues to send health check messages over the control VLAN. This situation continues until the faulty link or node is repaired. For a multi-domain ring, this process occurs separately for each domain within the ring.

The following figure shows the flow of control frames under fault conditions.

Figure 55-2: EPSR fault detection messages



Restoring Normal Operation

Transit nodes Once a fault in the ring or node has been rectified, the transit nodes that span the previously faulty link section detect that link connectivity has returned. They then move their appropriate ring port state, from Links-Down to Pre-Forwarding, and await the Ring-Up-Flush control message from the master node.

Once these transit nodes receive the Ring-Up-Flush message, they:

- flush their forward databases for both their ring ports.
- change the state of their ports from blocking to forwarding, which allows data to flow through their previously blocked ring ports.

Note  The transit nodes do not enter the forward state until they have received the Ring-Up-Flush message. This prevents the possibility of a loop condition occurring caused by the transit nodes moving into the forwarding state before the master node secondary port can return to the blocking state. During such a period, the ring would have no ports blocked.

Master node With the link restored, the healthcheck messages that are sent from the primary port of the master node now complete the loop and arrive at the master node's secondary port. The master node restores normal conditions as follows:

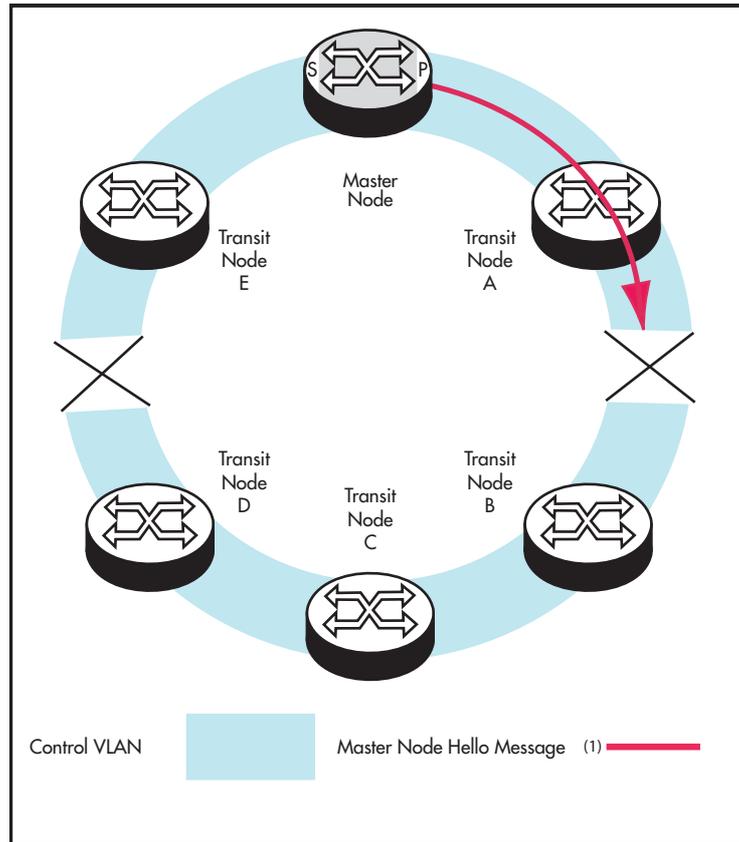
1. Declares the ring to be in a "complete" state.
2. Blocks its secondary port for data (non-control) traffic.
3. Flushes its forwarding database for its two ring ports.

4. Sends a Ring-Up-Flush-FDB message from its primary port, to all transit nodes.

Managing Rings with Two Breaks

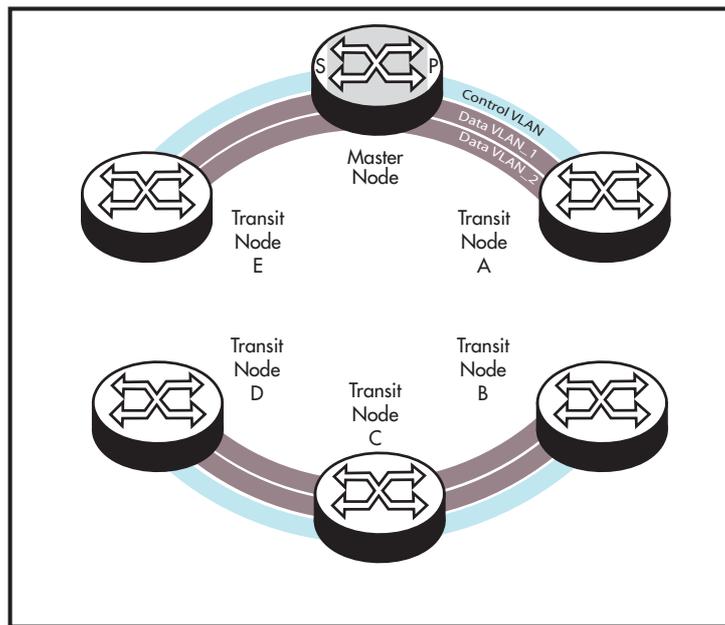
To restore a link with two breaks you need to run the EPSR Enhanced Recovery feature. Consider the network shown below:

Figure 55-3: EPSR ring with two breaks



In this situation the ring will attempt to recover as previously described in **“Fault Recovery” on page 55.4**. This will result in the split-ring operation shown in **Figure 55-4 on page 55.7**.

Figure 55-4: EPSR split ring

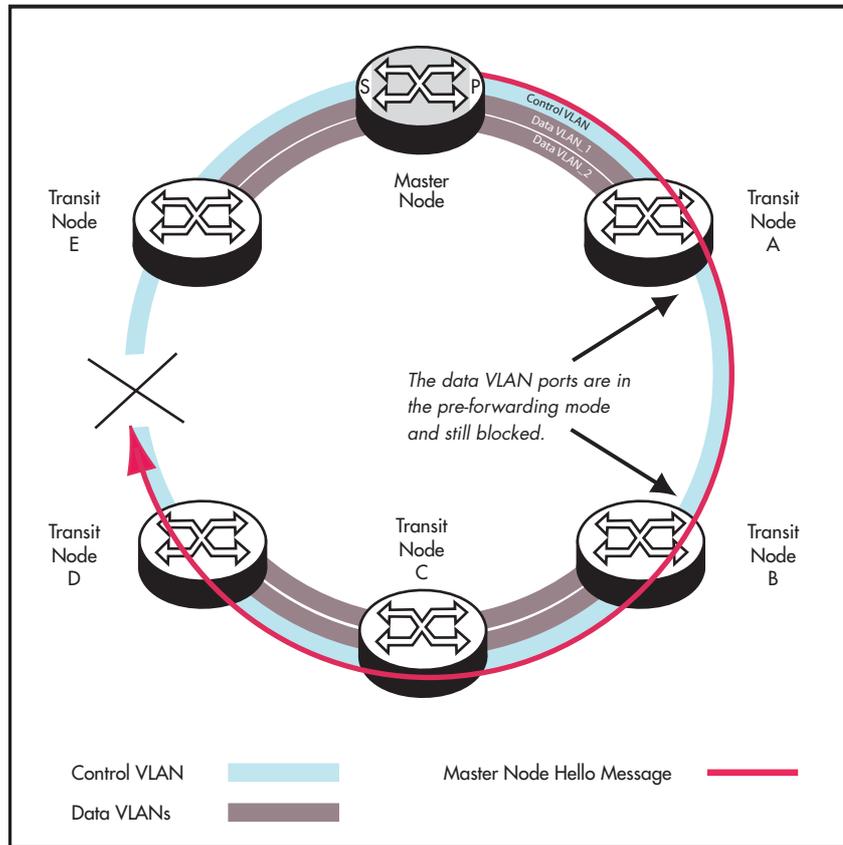


In this operational mode each portion of the ring operates as an independent link layer broadcast domain each containing the original data VLANs and control VLAN.

Recovery When One Break is Restored

Figure 55-5 on page 55.8 shows a ring with the link between nodes A and B restored. At this point the ring's behavior will depend on whether the **epsr enhancedrecovery enable** command on page 56.6 has been set.

Figure 55-5: EPSR ring with one link restored



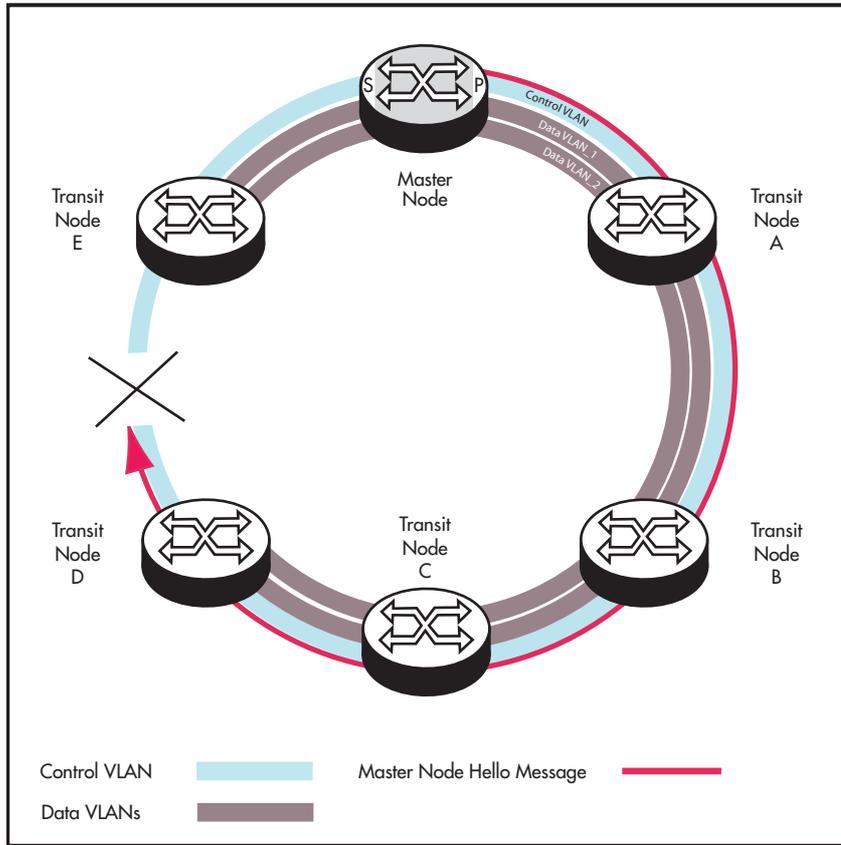
Enhanced Recovery Disabled

With the enhanced recovery feature disabled, the Hello messages will now reach the remaining ring break; however from a users perspective, the ring will remain as shown in **Figure 55-4**.

Enhanced Recovery Enabled

With the enhanced recovery feature enabled, switch nodes A and B are able to detect the restored link, and will place all their ring ports in the forwarding state. Although the ring will remain in the "failed" state because of the remaining break; communication between the nodes is restored. The network then operates as shown in **Figure 55-6**.

Figure 55-6: EPSR operation in partially recovered state



Configuration Examples

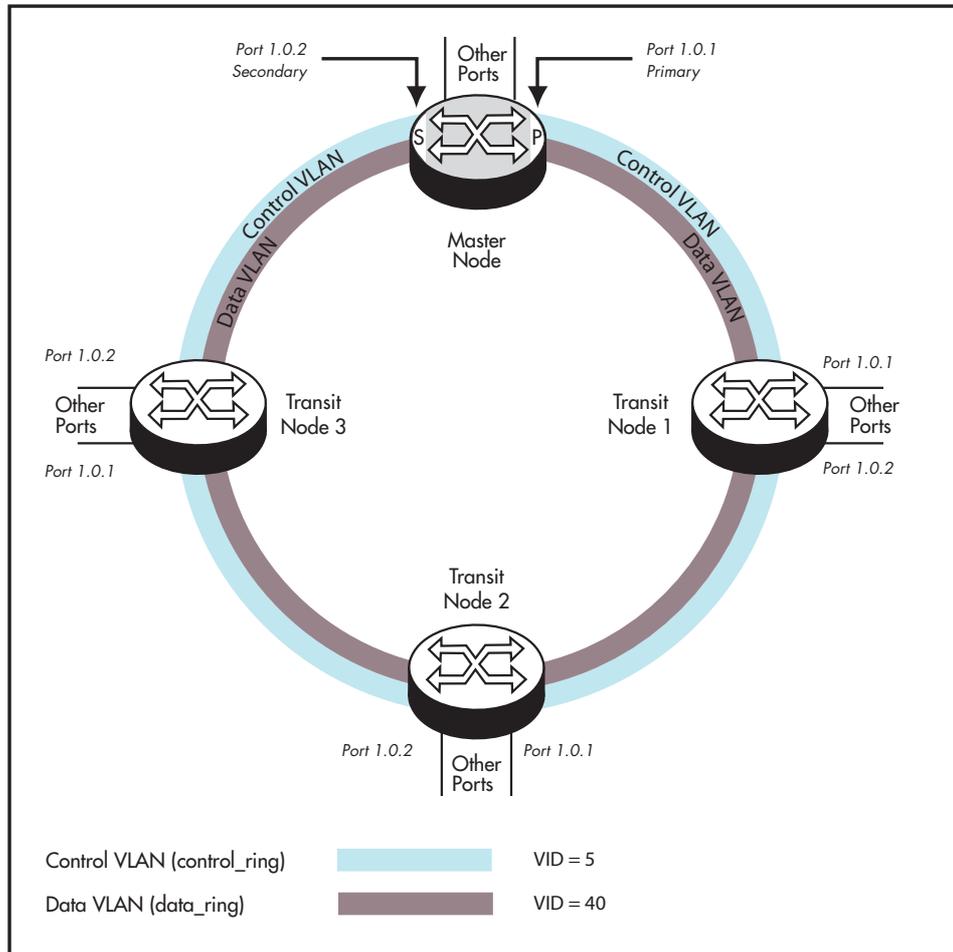
This section describes how to configure EPSR in following ways:

- **Single Domain, Single Ring Network**
- **Single Ring, Dual Domain Network**
- **EPSR and Spanning Tree Operation**

Single Domain, Single Ring Network

This example shows a simple single ring, single domain configuration with no connecting lobes.

Figure 55-7: EPSR single domain, single ring network



Configure the Master Node

 **Note** Within an EPSRing your switch can only operate as transit node. To form an EPSR ring using switches of this type, you will need to use an alternative Allied Telesis switch, such as an x610 Series switch or an x510 Series switch (with a Premium License), to function as the master node.

In the configuration examples shown later in this chapter, master node configuration is included for completeness; however, the commands shown will need to be applied to the switch selected to be the master node.

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs on the Master Node

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)# vlan database</code> | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 5 name control_vlan state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 5 called <code>control_vlan</code> on the Master Node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 40 name data_vlan state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 40 called <code>data_vlan</code> on the Master Node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)# exit</code> | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Add port1.0.1 to these VLANs

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1</code> | Specify the interface (<code>port1.0.1</code>) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</code> | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5</code> | Enable VLAN 5 on this port. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40</code> | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 3: Add port 1.0.2 to these VLANs

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2</pre> | Specify the interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</pre> | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5</pre> | Enable VLAN 5 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40</pre> | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 4: Create the EPSR instance called "blue" on the master node; make VLAN 5 the control VLAN and port 1.0.1 the primary port

| | |
|---|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# epsr configuration</pre> | Enter the EPSR Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue mode master controlvlan 5 primaryport port1.0.1</pre> | <p>Create an EPSR instance called blue on vlan5.</p> <p>Make vlan5 the control VLAN.</p> <p>Make port 1.0.1 the primary port.</p> <p>Make this node the master.</p> <p>Note that you can only run this command on switches that have EPSR Master capability.</p> |

Step 5: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called "blue" on the Master Node

| | |
|---|---|
| <pre>awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue datavlan 40</pre> | <p>On epsr instance called blue make vlan40 the data VLAN.</p> <p>Note that you can only run this command on switches that have EPSR Master capability.</p> |
|---|---|

Step 6: Enable the EPSR instance called "blue" on the Master Node

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue state enable</pre> | <p>Enable the EPSR instance named blue.</p> <p>Note that you can only run this command on switches that have EPSR Master capability.</p> |
| <pre>awplus(config-epsr)# exit</pre> | Exit the EPSR Configuration mode. |

Now you can configure the transit nodes.

Step 7: Create the control and data VLANs on a transit node

| | |
|---|--|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 5 name control_vlan state enable | Enable VLAN 5 called control_vlan on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 40 name data_vlan state enable | Enable VLAN 40 called data_vlan on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# exit | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 8: Add port1.0.1 to the VLANs

| | |
|--|--|
| awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1 | Specify the interface (port1.0.1) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5 | Enable VLAN 5 on this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40 | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 9: Add port1.0.2 to the VLANs

| | |
|--|--|
| awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2 | Specify the interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5 | Enable VLAN 5 on this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40 | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 10: Create the EPSR instance called "blue" on a transit node, make VLAN 5 the control VLAN

| | |
|--|---|
| awplus(config)# epsr configuration | Enter the EPSR Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue mode transit controlvlan 5 | Create an EPSR instance called blue on vlan5. Make vlan5 the control VLAN. Make this node a transit node. |

Step 11: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called "blue" on the transit node

| | |
|---|---|
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue datavlan 40 | On the EPSR instance called blue make vlan40 the data VLAN. |
|---|---|

Step 12: Enable the EPSR instance called "blue" on the transit node

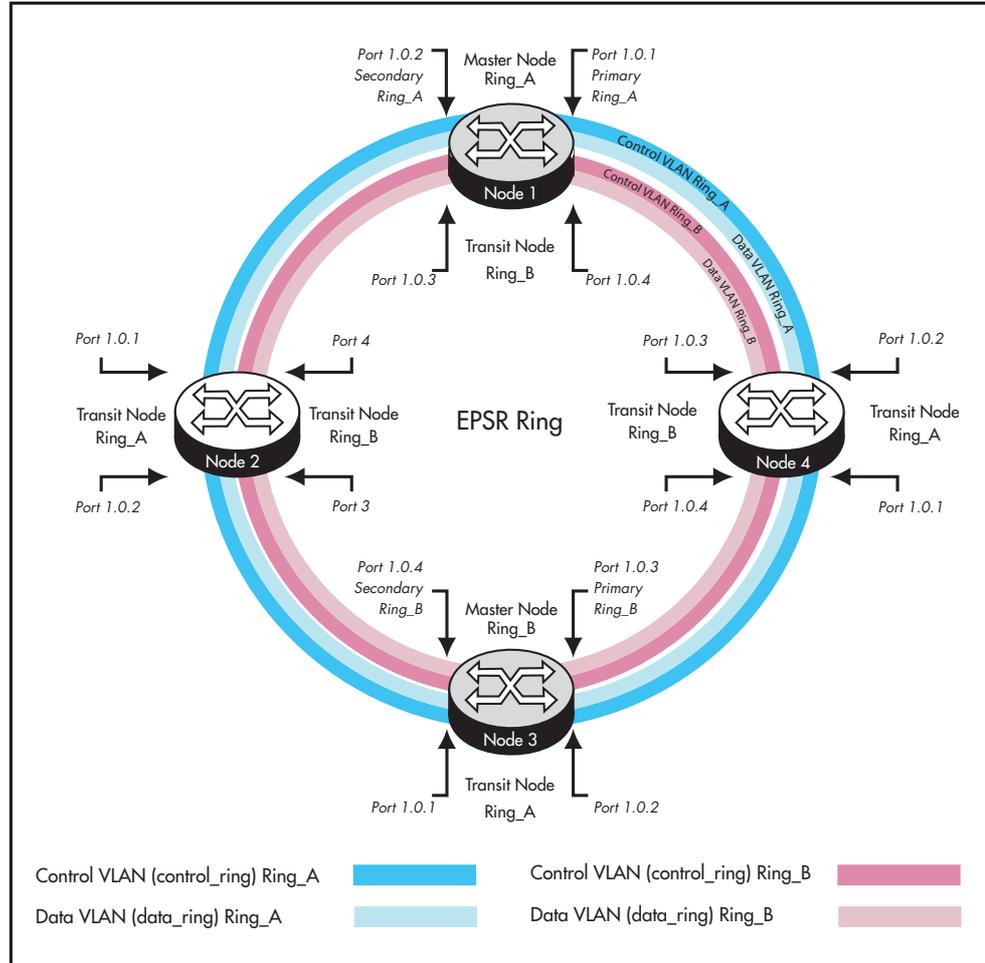
| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue state enable | Enable the EPSR instance named blue. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# exit | Exit the EPSR Configuration mode. |

Now you can use the same procedure to configure the remaining transit nodes.

Single Ring, Dual Domain Network

This example shows an EPSR configuration where two EPSR domains share the same physical ring. This configuration enables two sets of users to run totally separate Layer 2 networks. Better load distribution around the ring can be achieved by configuring different nodes to be the master for each ring.

Figure 55-8: EPSR single ring network, two domain network

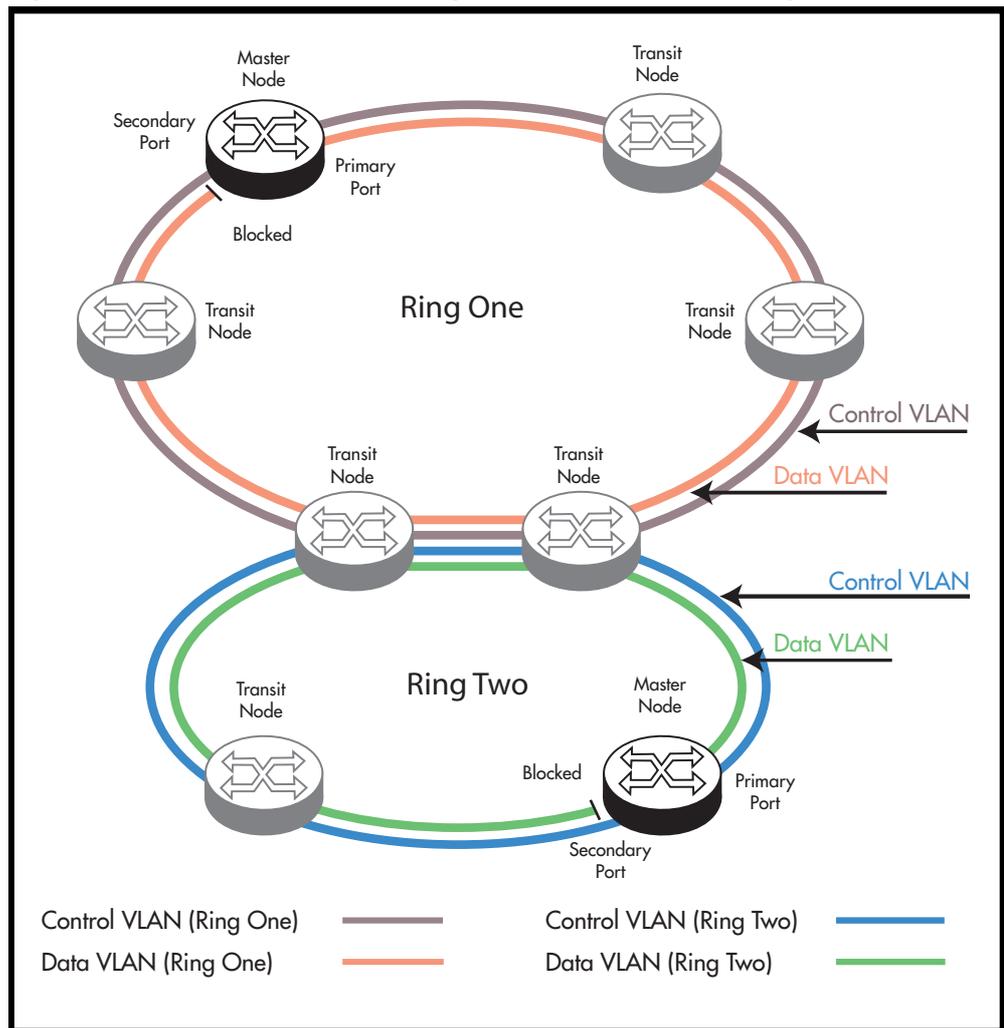


Interconnected Rings

This example shows an EPSR configuration where two rings share a common segment. This configuration will operate as two independent rings, providing that there is no data VLAN sharing between the two rings. If a break occurs in either ring then, each ring will implement its own independent recovery procedures. If a break occurs in the common segment, then each Master node will unblock its secondary port using the normal fault recovery procedure.

Where data VLANs are shared between the rings a fault condition known as "SuperLoop" can occur. The next section deals with superloops and how to manage them.

Figure 55-9: Interconnected EPSR Rings with no data VLAN sharing



Superloop Protection

Careful attention must be paid when creating EPSR networks with interconnecting links, to avoid an error condition known as superloops. This sections explains what superloops are and how to prevent them.

What is an EPSR superloop?

An EPSR superloop is a data loop whose path traverses more than a single EPSR ring. This fault condition usually occurs when there is a break in a physical segment that is shared by the two rings. For a superloop condition to occur, the two physical rings must share some of their data VLANs. **Figure 55-10 on page 55.17** shows an EPSR ring with a superloop condition caused by a break in the common ring segment. **Figure 55-11 on page 55.18** shows the Superloop data path ring caused by the broken common ring segment. The superloop condition occurs because both rings detect the ring segment break and as a result both master nodes unblock their secondary ports.

Figure 55-10: Interconnected EPSR rings with data VLAN sharing

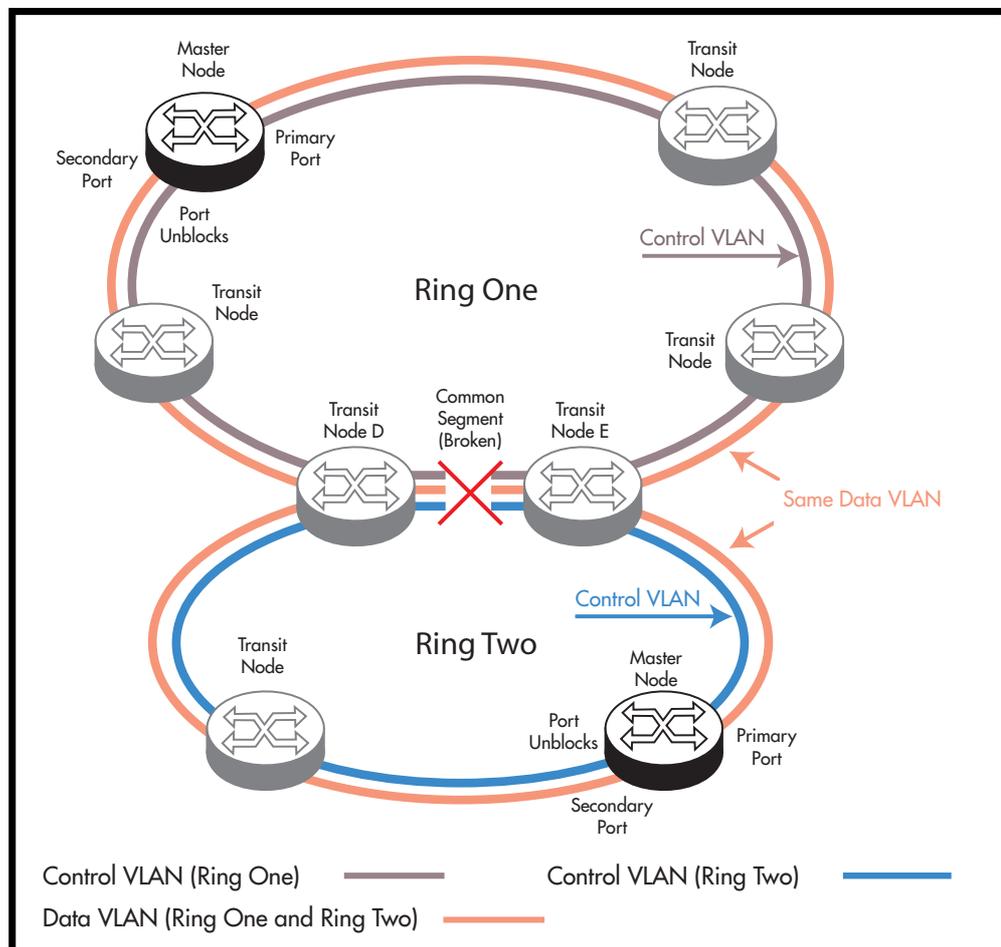
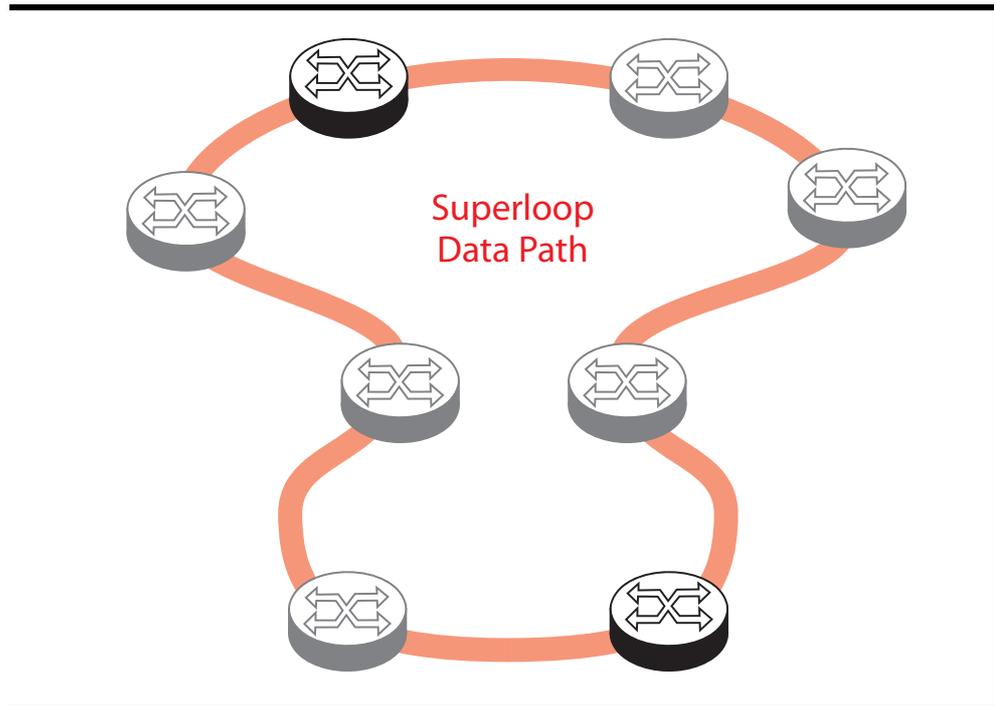


Figure 55-11: EPSR superloop data path caused by a broken common ring segment


EPSR Superloop Prevention

Alliedware Plus version 5.4.2 onwards contains mechanisms to prevent superloops forming. The Superloop prevention facility enables rings to be assigned priority level between 0 and 127, with 1 representing the lowest priority and 127 the highest. Level 0 (the default setting) applies the functionality of no Superloop prevention. Enabling superloop prevention changes the way the EPSR nodes respond under fault conditions.

Superloop prevention is enabled for an EPSR ring instance by setting the **epsr priority command** on [page 56.9](#). Setting a priority value greater than 0 applies superloop prevention to that particular instance. How the superloop function is applied will depend on the role of the node within the ring, i.e. whether it is a master node or a transit node, and its physical location within the ring. Here is how the functions of Superloop prevention modify the nodal behavior for a particular ring instance:

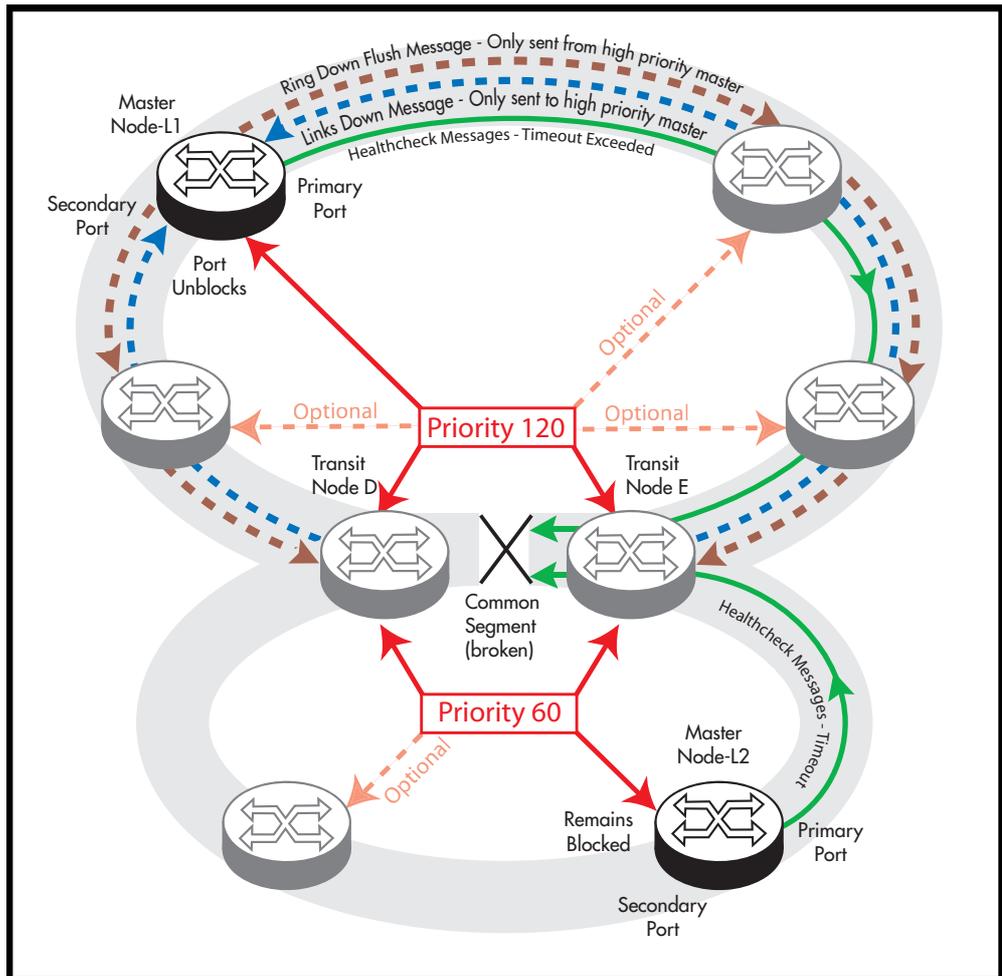
- A master node with its epsr priority set to zero will consider the superloop function to be turned off.
- A master node with its epsr priority set within the range 1-127 will consider the superloop function to be enabled, and will change its behavior in the following ways.
 - « It will **not** unblock its secondary port following the expiry of the Master Node Hello message timer. However, a ring-down-flush message will still be sent.
 - « It **will** only unblock its secondary port when it receives a Links Down message from a transit node.
- A transit node that is not connect to a shared link will be unaffected by having its epsr priority set for any of its instances.
- A transit node that is connected to a shared link will change its behavior in the following ways:
 - « It will compare its priority settings applied to each of the instances sharing the common link. So for the network of [Figure 55-10 on page 55.17](#) Transit Node D

will compare the priority setting for Ring One, with the priority setting for Ring Two.

If the shared link fails, the transit node will only issue a **Transit Node Links Down message** on the ring that is configured with the highest priority.

The result of these behavior changes is that when the shared link fails, only the master node located on the higher priority ring will unblock its secondary port; because this is the only master node that will receive the **Transit Node Links Down message**. Note also that the master node will receive these messages from the transit nodes at either end of the broken shared link (Nodes D and E). This concept is illustrated in the following figure.

Figure 55-12: EPSR behavior under fault conditions with superloop enabled



For this process to work certain configuration rules must be obeyed.

Configuration rules for superloop protected EPSR rings

The following configuration rules are advised when configuring EPSR rings that share one or more common segments.

- Allocate a priority order to each of the interconnected rings, with 127 being the highest priority and 1 the lowest.
- A higher priority ring can have its master node located in any position; although, where possible, avoid connecting a common segment to the secondary port of a master node.
- Do not locate the master node on a segment that is shared with a higher priority ring, but you “can” locate it on a common segment that is shared with a lower priority ring. In this situation however, the port that connects to the common segment must be configured as the primary port.

For example, in [Figure 55-12](#), the upper portion of Node D could be configured as a Master Node of the upper ring (having a priority of 120), but its lower portion must be configured as a transit node (having the lower priority of 60).

- On the transit nodes that connect to shared links, allocate the ring’s priority to the ports that connect to each ring. Note that both of these nodes “must” be set to the same priority value.



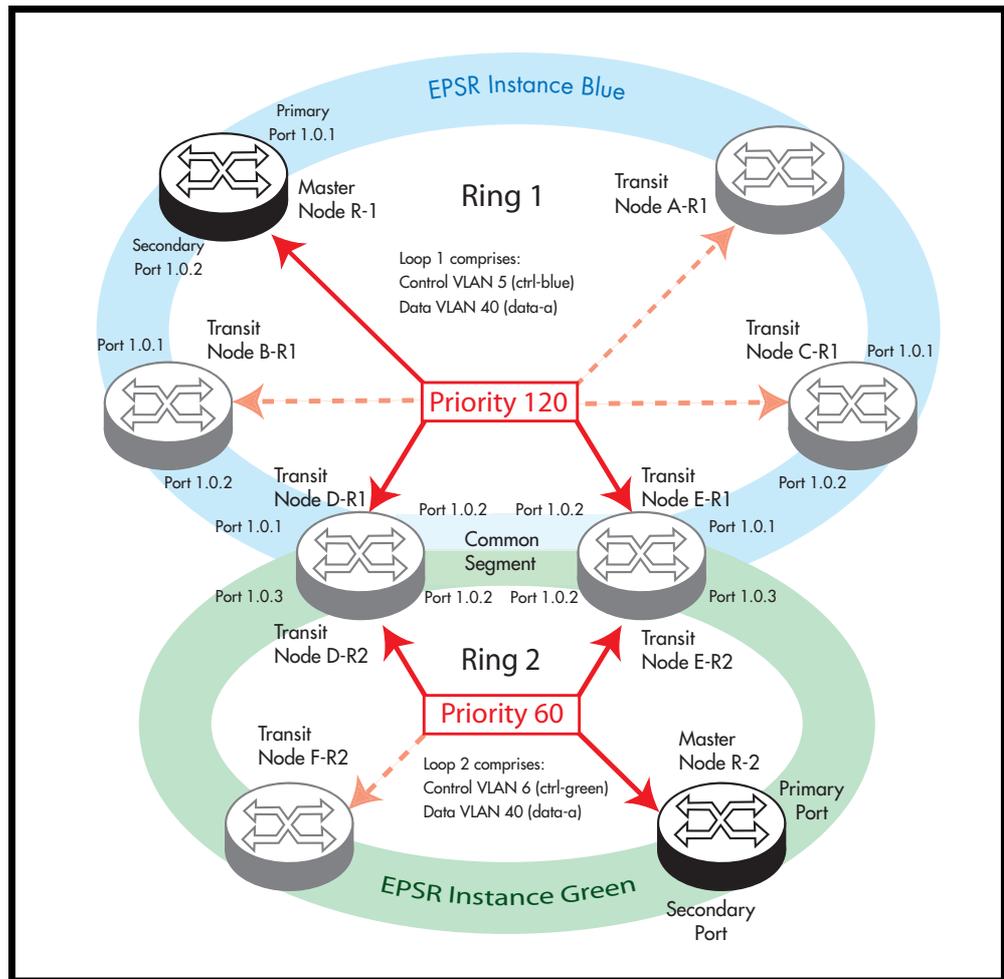
Note For good practice, we advise that you set all nodes within a ring to the priority assigned to that ring. So, for the network of [Figure 55-12](#) each of the nodes that form part of the upper ring would be configured with a priority of 120, and each of the nodes that form the lower ring would all be configured with a priority of 60.

Configuring a Basic Superloop Protected Two Ring EPSR Network

Configuration example

This section shows how to configure a basic EPSR network such as that shown in the figure below.

Figure 55-13: EPSR two shared ring example



The configuration suggested comprises the following basic steps:

- **“On Ring 1 - configure the Master Node R-1” on page 55.22**
- **“On Ring 1 - configure the transit nodes A to C” on page 55.24**
- **“On Ring 2 - configure the Master Node R-2” on page 55.26**
- **“On Rings 1 and 2 - configure the Transit Nodes D and E” on page 55.28**
- **“On Ring 2 - configure the Transit Node F” on page 55.34**

Note  Within an EPSRing your switch can only operate as transit node. To form an EPSR ring using switches of this type, you will need to use an alternative Allied Telesis switch, such as an x610 Series switch or an x510 Series switch (with a Premium License), to function as the master node.

In the configuration examples shown later in this chapter, master node configuration is included for completeness; however, the commands shown will need to be applied to the switch selected to be the master node.

On Ring 1- configure the Master Node R-1

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs (configure on the Master Node R-1)

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan database</code> | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 5 name ctrl-blue state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 5 called ctrl-blue on the Master Node R-1. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 40 name data-a state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 40 called data-a on the Master Node R-1. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Add the control VLAN (ctrl-blue) to the ring ports

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2</code> | Specify the two ring ports (port1.0.1 and port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport mode trunk</code> | Set the switching characteristics of these ports to Trunk mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5</code> | Enable VLAN 5 on these ports. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk native vlan none</code> | Remove the native VLAN from these ring ports. |

Step 3: Create the EPSR instance called “blue”, make VLAN 5 the control VLAN and port 1.0.1 the primary port (configure on the Master Node R-1)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr blue mode master controlvlan 5 primaryport port1.0.1
```

Create an EPSR instance called blue on vlan 5.
Make vlan 5 the control VLAN.
Make port 1.0.1 the primary port.
Make this node the master.

Step 4: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called “blue” (Configure on the Master Node R-1)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr blue datavlan 40
```

On epsr instance called blue data-a the data VLAN.

Step 5: Assign a priority to the ring instance (Configure on the Master Node R-1)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr blue priority 120
```

Set the ring instance priority to the value selected for the ring. The priority value selected is 120.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
exit
```

Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.

Step 6: Enable the EPSR instance called “blue” (configure on the Master Node R-1)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr blue state enable
```

Enable the EPSR instance named blue.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
exit
```

Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.

Step 7: Add port1.0.1 to these VLANs (configure on the Master Node R-1)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2
```

Specify the EPSR ring ports (port1.0.1 and 1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40
```

Enable VLAN 40 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

On Ring 1 - configure the transit nodes A to C

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs (on Transit Nodes A to C)

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan database</code> | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 5 name ctrl-blue state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 5 called <code>ctrl-blue</code> on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 40 name data-a state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 40 called <code>data-a</code> on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Add the EPSR control vlan (ctrl-blue) to EPSR ring ports

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2</code> | Specify the two ring ports (<code>port1.0.1</code> and <code>port1.0.2</code>) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport mode trunk</code> | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5</code> | Enable VLAN 5 on these ports. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk native vlan none</code> | Remove the native VLAN from the ring ports. |

Step 3: Create the EPSR instance called “blue”, make VLAN 5 the control VLAN (on Transit Nodes A to C)

```
awplus(config)#  
epsr configuration Enter the EPSR Configuration mode.  
  
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue mode transit controlvlan 5 Create an EPSR instance called blue on vlan 5.  
Make vlan 5 the control VLAN.  
Make this node a transit node.
```

Step 4: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called “blue” (on Transit Nodes A to C)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue datavlan 40 On the EPSR instance called blue make vlan 40 the  
data VLAN.
```

Step 5: Assign a priority to the ring instance (on Transit Nodes A to C)

This step is mandatory on transit nodes that connect to a common segment, and good practice on other transit nodes.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue priority 120 Set the ring instance priority to the priority selected  
for the ring 120.
```

Step 6: Enable the EPSR instance called “blue” (on Transit Nodes A to C)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue state enable Enable the EPSR instance named blue.  
  
awplus(config-epsr)#  
exit Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.
```

Step 7: Add the physical ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.2 to VLAN 40 (on Transit Nodes A to C)

```
awplus(config)#  
interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2 Specify the physical ring ports (ports1.0.1 and  
ports 1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the  
Interface Configuration mode.  
  
awplus(config-if)#  
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40 Enable VLAN 40 on these ports.  
  
awplus(config-if)#  
exit Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global  
Configuration mode.
```

On Ring 2 - configure the Master Node R-2

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs (configure on the Master Node R-2)

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>awplus#</code> | |
| <code>configure terminal</code> | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan database</code> | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 6 name ctrl-green state enable</code> | Enable vlan 6 called ctrl-green on the Master Node R-2. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>vlan 40 name data-a state enable</code> | Enable VLAN 40 called data-a on the Master Node R-2. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| <code>awplus(config-vlan)#</code> | |
| <code>exit</code> | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Add the control VLAN (ctrl-green) to the ring ports

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>awplus(config)#</code> | |
| <code>interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2</code> | Specify the ports (port1.0.1 and port1.0.2) that you are configuring, and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk allowed vlan add 6</code> | Enable vlan 6 on these ports. |
| <code>awplus(config-if)#</code> | |
| <code>switchport trunk native vlan none</code> | Remove the native VLAN from these ring ports. |

Step 3: Create the EPSR instance called “green”, make VLAN 6 the control VLAN and port1.0.1 the primary port (configure on the Master Node R-2)

```
awplus(config)#
  epsr configuration  Enter the EPSR Configuration mode.

awplus(config-epsr)#
  epsr green mode master controlvlan 6  Create an EPSR instance called ctrl-green on
  primaryport port1.0.1                 vlan 6.
                                         Make vlan 6 the control VLAN.
                                         Make port 1.0.1 the primary port.
                                         Make this node the master.
```

Step 4: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance “green” (configure on the Master Node R-2)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
  epsr green datavlan 40  On epsr instance called green make vlan 40 the
                          data VLAN.
```

Step 5: Assign a priority to the ring instance (configure on the Master Node R-2)

This step is mandatory on transit nodes that connect to a common segment, and good practice on other transit nodes.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
  epsr green priority 60  Set the ring instance priority to the value selected for
                          the ring. The priority value selected is 60.
```

Step 6: Enable the EPSR instance called “green” (configure on the Master Node R-2)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
  epsr green state enable  Enable the EPSR instance named green.

awplus(config-epsr)#
  exit  Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.
```

Step 7: Add ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.2 to these VLANs (configure on the Master Node R-2)

| | |
|--|--|
| awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.2 | Specify the ports (port1.0.1 and port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk | Set the switching characteristics of these ports to Trunk mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40 | Enable VLAN 40 on this port |
| awplus(config-if)# exit | Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

On Rings 1 and 2 - configure the Transit Nodes D and E

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

| | |
|---|--|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 5 name ctrl-blue state enable | Enable VLAN 5 called ctrl-blue on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 40 name data-a state enable | Enable VLAN 40 called data-a on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 6 name ctrl-green state enable | Enable VLAN 6 called ctrl-green on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# exit | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Add physical port1.0.1 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.1
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.1) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5
```

Enable VLAN 5 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk native vlan none
```

Remove the native VLAN.

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

Step 3: Add physical port1.0.2 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.2
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 5
```

Enable VLAN 5 (ctrl-blue) on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 6
```

Enable VLAN 6 (ctrl-green) on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk native vlan none
```

Remove the native VLAN.

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

Step 4: Add physical port1.0.3 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.3
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.3) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 6 Enable VLAN 6 on this port.

awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk native vlan none Remove the native VLAN.
```

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global
      Configuration mode.
```

Step 5: Create the EPSR instance called “blue” on a transit node, make VLAN 5 the control VLAN (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#  
epsr configuration Enter the EPSR Configuration mode.  
  
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue mode transit controlvlan 5 Create an EPSR instance called blue on vlan 5.  
Make vlan 5 the control VLAN.  
Make this node a transit node.
```

Step 6: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called “blue” (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue datavlan 40 On the EPSR instance called blue make vlan 40 the  
data VLAN.
```

Step 7: Assign a priority to the ring instance (on Transit Nodes D and E)

This step is mandatory on transit nodes that connect to a common segment, and good practice on other transit nodes.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue priority 120 Set the ring instance priority to 120 - the value  
selected for the ring.  
  
awplus(config-epsr)#  
exit Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.
```

Step 8: Enable the EPSR instance called “blue” (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr blue state enable Enable the EPSR instance named blue.
```

Step 9: Create the EPSR instance called “green” on a transit node, make VLAN 6 the control VLAN (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr green mode transit controlvlan 6 Create an EPSR instance called green on  
vlan 6.  
Make vlan 6 the control VLAN.  
Make this node a transit node.
```

Step 10: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called “green” (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#  
epsr green datavlan 40 On the EPSR instance called green make  
vlan 40 the data VLAN.
```

Step 11: Assign a priority to the ring instances (on Transit Nodes D and E)

This step is mandatory on transit nodes that connect to a common segment, and good practice on other transit nodes.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr green priority 60
```

Set the ring instance priority to 60 - this being the priority selected for the ring.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
exit
```

Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.

Step 12: Enable the EPSR instance called "green" (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr green state enable
```

Enable the EPSR instance named green.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
exit
```

Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.

Step 13: Add the physical port 1.0.1 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.1
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.1) that you are configuring, and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40
```

Enable VLAN 40 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

Step 14: Add the physical port 1.0.2 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.2
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40
```

Enable VLAN 40 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

Step 15: Add the physical port 1.0.3 to these VLANs (on Transit Nodes D and E)

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3</pre> | Specify the physical interface (<code>port1.0.3</code>) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</pre> | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40</pre> | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

On Ring 2 - configure the Transit Node F

Step 1: Create the control and data VLANs (on Transit Node F)

| | |
|---|--|
| awplus# configure terminal | Enter the Global Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config)# vlan database | Enter the VLAN Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 6 name ctrl-green state enable | Enable VLAN 6 called ctrl-green on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# vlan 40 name data-a state enable | Enable VLAN 40 called data-a on the transit node. Specifying the enable state allows forwarding of frames on the VLAN-aware node. |
| awplus(config-vlan)# exit | Exit the VLAN Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 2: Create the EPSR instance called “green” on a transit node, make VLAN 6 the control VLAN (on Transit Node F)

| | |
|---|--|
| awplus(config)# epsr configuration | Enter the EPSR Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr green mode transit controlvlan 6 | Create an EPSR instance called green on vlan 6. Make vlan 6 the control VLAN. Make this node a transit node. |

Step 3: Add a data VLAN to the EPSR instance called “green” (on Transit Node F)

| | |
|--|---|
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr green datavlan 40 | On the EPSR instance called green make vlan 40 the data VLAN. |
|--|---|

Step 4: Enable the EPSR instance called “green” (on Transit Node F)

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| awplus(config-epsr)# epsr green state enable | Enable the EPSR instance named green. |
|---|---------------------------------------|

Step 5: Assign a priority to the ring instance (on Transit Node F)

This step is mandatory on transit nodes that connect to a common segment, and good practice on other transit nodes.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
epsr green priority 120
```

Set the ring instance priority to the priority selected for the ring 120.

```
awplus(config-epsr)#
exit
```

Exit the EPSR Configuration mode.

Step 6: Add the physical port1.0.1 to VLANs 6 and 40 (on Transit Node F)

```
awplus(config)#
interface port1.0.1
```

Specify the physical interface (port1.0.1) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport mode trunk
```

Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 6
```

Enable VLAN 6 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40
```

Enable VLAN 40 on this port.

```
awplus(config-if)#
switchport trunk native vlan none
```

Remove the native VLAN

```
awplus(config-if)#
exit
```

Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode.

Step 7: Add the physical port 1.0.2 to VLANs 6 and 40 (on Transit Node F)

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2</pre> | Specify the interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</pre> | Set the switching characteristics of this port to Trunk mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 6</pre> | Enable VLAN 6 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 40</pre> | Enable VLAN 40 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan none</pre> | Remove the native VLAN |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Sample Show Output

For the above network configuration, running the command **show epsr** on node R1 will display the following output when operating normally. Note the blocked state of its secondary port.

Figure 55-14: Output from the show epsr command run on Master Node R1 - with Ring 1 - EPSR instance blue operating normally

```

-----
EPSR Information
-----
Name .....blue
Mode .....Master
Status .....Enabled
State .....Complete
Control Vlan .....5
Data VLAN(s) .....40
Interface Mode .....Ports Only
Primary Port .....port1.0.1
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Secondary Port .....port1.0.2
  Status .....Blocked
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Hello Time .....1 s
Failover Time .....2 s
Ring Flap Time .....0 s
Trap .....Enabled
Enhanced Recovery .....Disabled
Priority .....120
-----
    
```

If a fault occurs somewhere within the blue network ring the Master Node-R1 would respond by placing its secondary port into the forwarding state. Figure **Figure 55-15** displays its resultant state. Note that the state of its secondary port has now moved from Blocked, Forwarding.

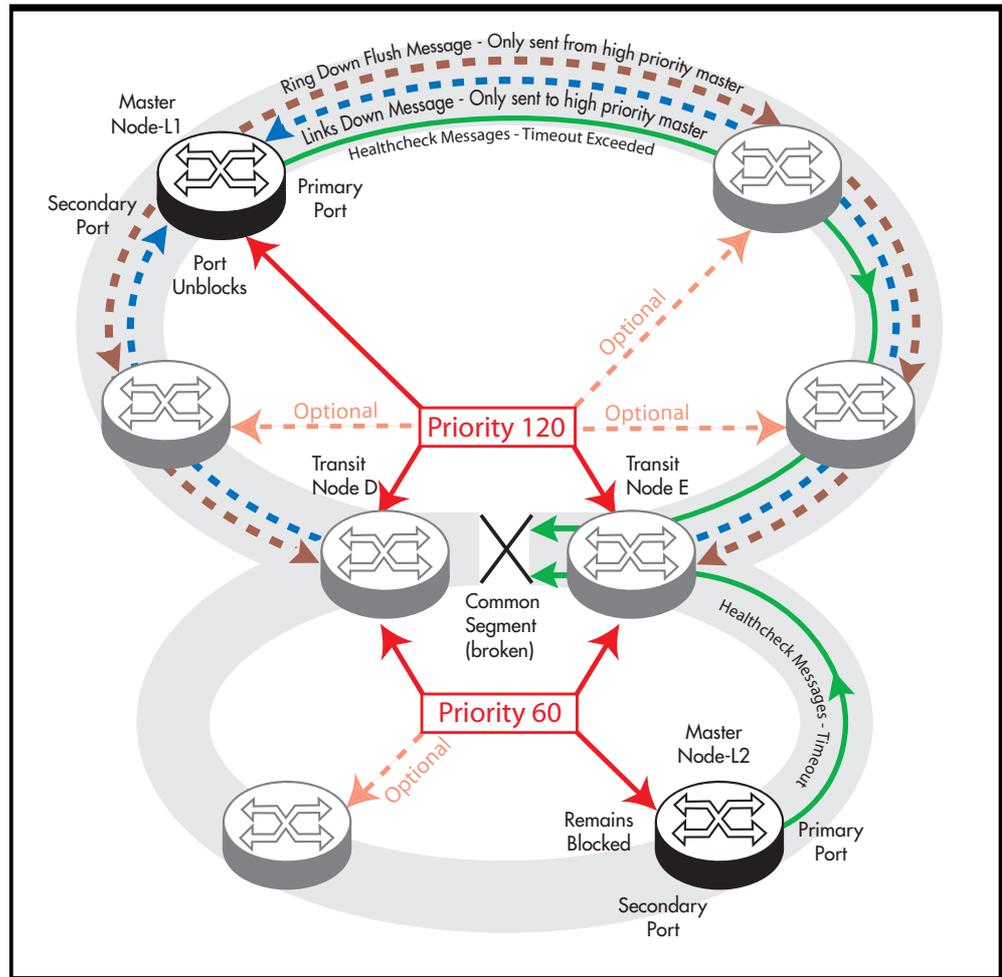
Figure 55-15: Output from the show epsr command run on Master Node R2, where a break exists within the Ring 1 - EPSR instance blue

```

-----
EPSR Information
-----
Name .....blue
Mode .....Master
Status .....Enabled
State .....Failed
Control Vlan .....6
Data VLAN(s) .....40
Interface Mode .....Ports Only
Primary Port .....port1.0.1
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Secondary Port .....port1.0.2
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Hello Time .....1 s
Failover Time .....2 s
Ring Flap Time .....0 s
Trap .....Enabled
Enhanced Recovery .....Disabled
Priority .....60
-----
    
```

If a fault occurs in the common segment of the ring then the Master Node-R2 being on the lower priority ring would detect a timeout of its transmitted Healthcheck Message. It would also detect the absence of the expected **Ring Down Flush** message, see **Figure 55-16**. The Master node then assumes that there is a break somewhere in the Common Segment, and will display the status shown in **Figure 55-17**.

Figure 55-16: EPSR behavior with a faulty common segment and superloop enabled



Note that the secondary port on Master Node-L2 remains in the blocked state; its state now appears in show output as being as blocked (for superloop prevention). See **Figure 55-17**.

The Master-L1 on the blue ring will also detect a timeout in the healthcheck message, but because ring 1 has the higher priority (of 120), it will receive a Links Down message from each of the transit nodes (D and E) that connect to the common segment. As a result, the state of the Master Node will be as shown in **Figure 55-17**; note particularly the change in its Secondary Port status.

Figure 55-17: Output from the show epsr command run on Master Node L2 (green)

```

-----
EPSR Information
-----
Name .....green
Mode .....Master
Status .....Enabled
State .....Failed
Control Vlan .....6
Data VLAN(s) .....40
Interface Mode .....Ports Only
Primary Port .....port1.0.1
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Secondary Port .....port1.0.2
  Status .....Blocked (for superloop prevention)
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Hello Time .....1 s
Failover Time .....2 s
Ring Flap Time .....0 s
Trap .....Enabled
Enhanced Recovery .....Disabled
Priority .....60
-----
    
```

Figure 55-18: Output from the show epsr command run on Master Node L1 (blue)

```

-----
EPSR Information
-----
Name .....blue
Mode .....Master
Status .....Enabled
State .....Failed
Control Vlan .....6
Data VLAN(s) .....40
Interface Mode .....Ports Only
Primary Port .....port1.0.1
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Secondary Port .....port1.0.2
  Status .....Forwarding
  Is On Common Segment .....No
  Blocking Control .....Physical
Hello Time .....1 s
Failover Time .....2 s
Ring Flap Time .....0 s
Trap .....Enabled
Enhanced Recovery .....Disabled
Priority .....60
-----
    
```

Adding a New Data VLAN to a Functioning Superloop Topology

This example shows how to add another data VLAN called **data-b** to the superloop topology. We recommend that you apply the configuration steps in the order shown.

1. Add VLAN to the common segment (for both instances)
2. Add VLAN to blue master
3. Add VLAN to other blue transits
4. Add VLAN to green master
5. Add VLAN to other green transits

On Ring 1 EPSR instance blue - configure each of the transit nodes that connect to the common segment

Select one of the transit nodes that connects to the common segment, and carry out the following steps:

Step 1: Add VLAN 50 to the VLAN database and set its state to enable

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| awplus# | |
| configure terminal | Enter terminal config mode |
| awplus(config)# | |
| vlan database | Enter the EPSR Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# | |
| vlan 50 name data-b enable | Create VLAN 50, name it data-b and enable it. |

Step 2: Add the VLAN 50 to the EPSR Instances called "blue" and "green" on the transit nodes

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| awplus(config)# | |
| epsr configuration | Enter the EPSR Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# | |
| epsr blue datavlan 50 | On the EPSR instance called blue add vlan 50 as a data VLAN. |
| awplus(config-epsr)# | |
| epsr green datavlan 50 | On the EPSR instance called green add vlan 50 as a data VLAN. |

Step 3: Add the common physical port (port1.0.2 in this example) to VLAN 50

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| awplus(config)# | |
| interface port1.0.2 | Specify the physical interface (port1.0.2) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| awplus(config-if)# | |
| switchport trunk allowed vlan add 50 | Enable VLAN 50 on this port. |
| awplus(config-if)# | |
| exit | Exit the Interface mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 4: to VLAN 50

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1</pre> | Specify the interface (port1.0.1) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 50</pre> | Enable VLAN 50 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Step 5: Add physical port1.0.3to VLAN 50

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3</pre> | Specify the interface (port1.0.3) that you are configuring and enter the Interface Configuration mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 50</pre> | Enable VLAN 50 on this port. |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Exit the Interface Configuration mode and enter the Global Configuration mode. |

Select the next transit node that connects to the common segment, and repeat the above steps:

On Ring 1 EPSR instance blue - Add VLAN 50 to the Master Node

Carry out this process using the same basic procedure shown in Steps 1 to 5

On Ring 1 EPSR instance blue - Add VLAN 50 to the transit nodes

Carry out this process using the same basic procedure shown in Steps 1 to 5

On Ring 2 EPSR instance green - Add VLAN 50 to the Master Node

Carry out this process using the same basic procedure shown in Steps 1 to 5

On Ring 2 EPSR instance green - Add VLAN 50 to the remaining transit node

Carry out this process using the same basic procedure shown in Steps 1 to 5

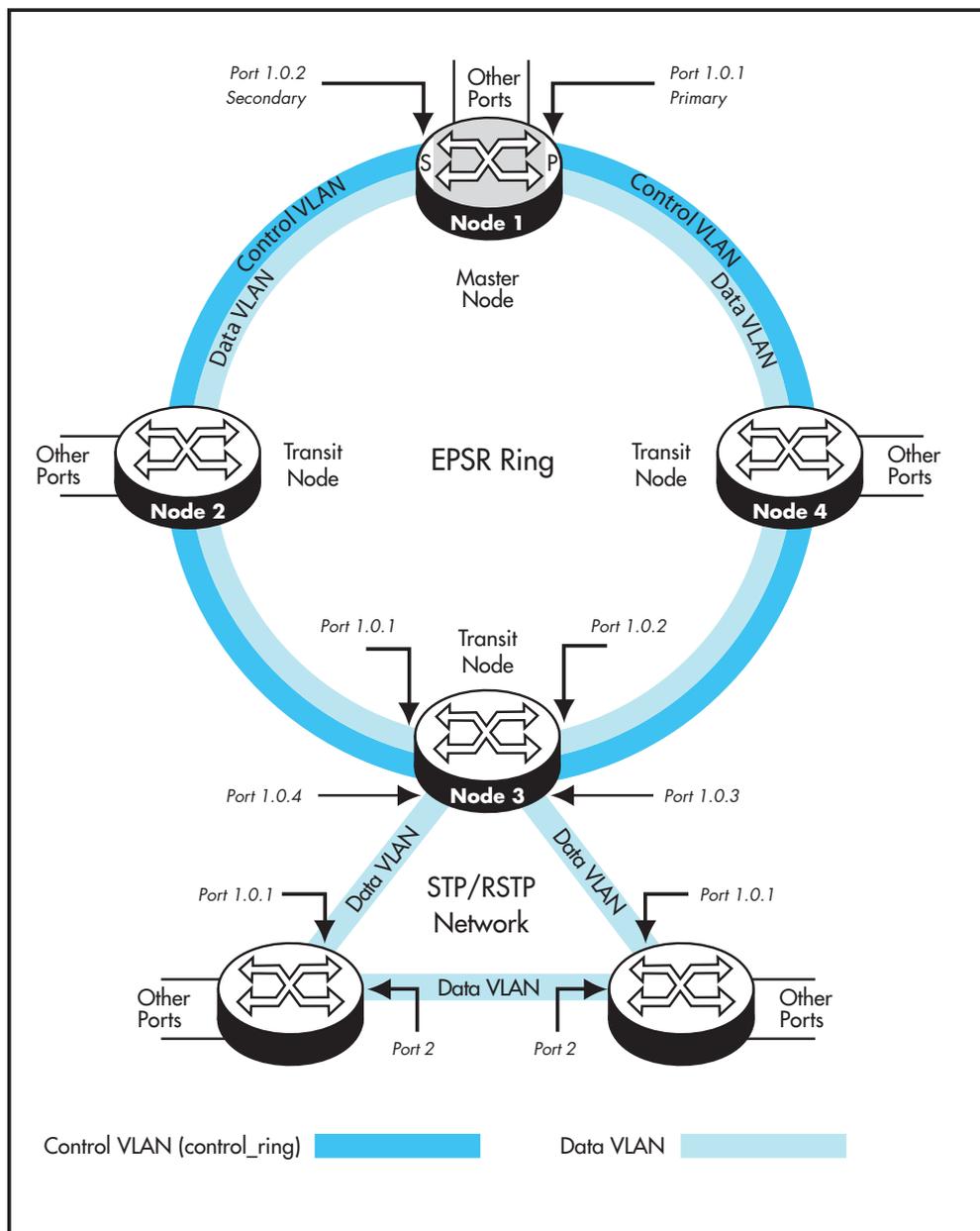
EPSR and Spanning Tree Operation

EPSR and the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) address data loop prevention, although they do it differently. EPSR is manually configured to explicitly identify which links are broken in the defined ring, whereas STP/RSTP calculates where to break links based on user-provided values (metrics) that are compared to determine the “best” (or lowest cost) paths for data traffic.

At the practical level you can use these two techniques to create complementary hybrid EPSR /STP configurations. This configuration might have a high speed fiber loop topology backbone-controlled and managed using EPSR. Lobes could extend out from each loop node into a user mesh network. Any loops in this mesh network would be controlled and managed using STP/RSTP. Note that EPSR and STP cannot share the same ports.

The following figure shows a basic combined EPSR / STP network.

Figure 55-19: EPSR and spanning tree operation



Chapter 56: EPSR Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Command List | 56.2 |
| debug epsr..... | 56.3 |
| epsr..... | 56.4 |
| epsr configuration | 56.4 |
| epsr datavlan | 56.5 |
| epsr enhancedrecovery enable | 56.6 |
| epsr mode master controlvlan primary port..... | 56.7 |
| epsr mode transit controlvlan | 56.8 |
| epsr priority | 56.9 |
| epsr state..... | 56.10 |
| epsr trap..... | 56.11 |
| show debugging epsr | 56.11 |
| show epsr | 56.12 |
| show epsr common segments..... | 56.15 |
| show epsr config-check..... | 56.16 |
| show epsr <epsr-instance> | 56.17 |
| show <epsr-instance> counters..... | 56.17 |
| show epsr counters | 56.18 |
| show epsr summary | 56.19 |
| undebg epsr | 56.19 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure EPSR. For more information, see [Chapter 55, EPSR Introduction and Configuration](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

debug epsr

This command enables EPSR debugging.

The **no** variant of this command disables EPSR debugging.

Syntax `debug epsr {info|msg|pkt|state|timer|all}`
`no debug epsr {info|msg|pkt|state|timer|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| info | Send general EPSR information to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude the above information from being sent to the console. |
| msg | Send the decoded received and transmitted EPSR packets to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude the above packets from being sent to the console. |
| pkt | Send the received and transmitted EPSR packets as raw ASCII text to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude the above packets from being sent to the console. |
| state | Send EPSR state transitions to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude state transitions from being sent to the console. |
| timer | Send EPSR timer information to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude timer information from being sent to the console. |
| all | Send all EPSR debugging information to the console. Using this parameter with the no debug epsr command will explicitly exclude any debugging information from being sent to the console. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Examples To enable state transition debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# debug epsr state
```

To disable EPSR packet debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug epsr pkt
```

Related Commands [undebug epsr](#)

epsr

This command sets the timer values for an EPSR instance. These are only valid for master nodes.



Note This command will only run on switches that are capable of running as an EPSR master node. However, even if your switch cannot function as an EPSR master node; you will still need to configure this command on whatever switch is the master within your EPSR network.

Refer to the manual of your master node's switch.

epsr configuration

Use this command to enter EPSR Configuration mode so that EPSR can be configured.

Syntax `epsr configuration`

Mode Global Configuration

Example To change to EPSR mode, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# epsr configuration
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr](#)
[show epsr](#)

epsr datavlan

This command adds a data VLAN or a range of VLAN identifiers to a specified EPSR instance.

The **no** variant of this command removes a data vlan or data vlan range from an EPSR instance.

Syntax `epsr <epsr-instance> datavlan {<vlanid>|<vlanid-range>}`
`no epsr <epsr-instance> datavlan {<vlanid>|<vlanid-range>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |
| <code>datavlan</code> | Adds a data VLAN to be protected by the EPSR instance. |
| <code><vlanid></code> | The VLAN's VID - a number between 1 and 4094 excluding the number selected for the control VLAN. |
| <code><vlanid-range></code> | Specify a range of VLAN identifiers using a hyphen to separate identifiers. |

Mode EPSR Configuration

Usage We suggest setting the `epsr controlvlan` to `vlan2` using the **epsr mode master controlvlan primary port** and **epsr mode transit controlvlan** commands, then setting the EPSR data VLAN between to be a value 3 and 4094 using the **epsr datavlan** command.

Examples To add `vlan3` to the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue datavlan vlan3
```

To add `vlan2` and `vlan3` to the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue datavlan vlan2-vlan3
```

To remove `vlan3` from the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# no epsr blue datavlan vlan3
```

To remove `vlan2` and `vlan3` from the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# no epsr blue datavlan vlan2-vlan3
```

Related Commands **epsr mode master controlvlan primary port**
epsr mode transit controlvlan
show epsr

epsr enhancedrecovery enable

This command enables EPSR's enhanced recovery mode. Enhanced recovery mode enables a ring to apply additional recovery procedures when a ring with more than one break, partially mends. For more information see ["Managing Rings with Two Breaks" on page 55.6](#).

The **no** variant of this command disables the enhancedrecovery mode.

Syntax `epsr <epsr-instance> enhancedrecovery enable`
`no epsr <epsr-instance> enhancedrecovery enable`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |

Default Default is enhancedrecovery mode disabled.

Mode EPSR Configuration

Example To apply enhanced recovery on the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue enhancedrecovery enable
```

Related Commands [show epsr](#)

epsr mode master controlvlan primary port

This command creates a master EPSR instance. Your switch is unable to run this command because it cannot function as an EPSR master node. To include these switches in an EPSR ring you will need to use an alternative Allied Telesis switch, such as an x610 Series switch, as the master node. For more information on this command, refer to the manual of your master EPSR node's switch.

epsr mode transit controlvlan

This command creates a transit EPSR instance.

Syntax `epsr <epsr-instance> mode transit controlvlan <2-4094>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |
| <code>mode</code> | Determines the node is acting as a transit node. |
| <code>transit</code> | Sets switch to be the transit node for the named EPSR ring. |
| <code>controlvlan</code> | The VLAN that will transmit EPSR control frames. |
| <code><2-4094></code> | VLAN id. |

Note  The software allows you to configure more than two ports or static channel groups to the control VLAN within a single switch. However, we advise against this because in certain situations it can produce unpredictable results. If the control VLAN contains more than two ports (or static channels) an algorithm selects the two ports or channels with the lowest number to be the ring ports. However if the switch has only one channel group is defined to the control vlan, EPSR will not operate on the secondary port. EPSR does not support Dynamic link aggregation (LACP).

Mode EPSR Configuration

Example To create a transit EPSR instance called `blue` with `vlan2` as the control VLAN, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue mode transit controlvlan vlan2
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
[show epsr](#)

epsr priority

This command sets the priority of an EPSR instance on an EPSR node. Priority is used to prevent “superloops” forming under fault conditions with particular ring configurations. Setting a node to have a priority greater than one, also has the effect of turning on **superloop protection**.

The **no** variant of this command returns the priority of the EPSR instance back to its default value of 0, which also disables EPSR Superloop prevention.

Syntax `epsr <epsr-instance> priority <0-127>`

`no <epsr-instance> priority`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |
| <code>priority</code> | The priority of the ring instance selected by the <code>epsr-name</code> parameter. |
| <code><0-127></code> | The priority to be applied (0 is the lowest priority and represents no superloop protection). |

Default The default priority of an EPSR instance on an EPSR node is 0. The negated form of this command resets the priority of an EPSR instance on an EPSR node to the default value.

Mode EPSR Configuration

Example To set the priority of the EPSR instance called `blue` to the highest priority (127), use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue priority 127
```

To reset the priority of the EPSR instance called `blue` to the default (0), use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# no epsr blue priority
```

Related Commands [epsr configuration](#)

epsr state

This command enables or disables an EPSR instance.

Syntax `epsr <epsr-instance> state {enabled|disabled}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | The name of the EPSR instance. |
| <code>state</code> | The operational state of the ring. |
| <code>enabled</code> | EPSR instance is enabled. |
| <code>disabled</code> | EPSR instance is disabled. |

Mode EPSR Configuration

Example To enable the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue state enabled
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)

epsr trap

This command enables SNMP traps for an EPSR instance. The traps will be sent when the EPSR instance changes state.

The **no** variant of this command disables SNMP traps for an EPSR instance. The traps will no longer be sent when the EPSR instance changes state.

Syntax

```
epsr <epsr-instance> trap
no epsr <epsr-instance> trap
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| <epsr-instance> | Name of the EPSR instance. |
| trap | SNMP trap for the EPSR instance. |

Mode EPSR Configuration

Example To enable traps for the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# epsr blue trap
```

To disable traps for the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus(config-epsr)# no epsr blue trap
```

Related Commands

- [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
- [epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
- [show epsr](#)

show debugging epsr

This command shows the debugging modes enabled for EPSR.

Syntax `show debugging epsr`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the enabled debugging modes, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging epsr
```

Related Commands [debug epsr](#)

show epsr

This command displays information about all EPSR instances.

Syntax show epsr

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the current settings of all EPSR instances, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr
```

Output The following examples show the output display for a non superloop topology network.

Figure 56-1: Example output from the show epsr command run on a transit node

```

EPSR Information
-----
Name ..... test2
Mode ..... Transit
Status ..... Enabled
State ..... Links-Up
Control Vlan ..... 2
Data VLAN(s) ..... 10
Interface Mode ..... Ports Only
First Port ..... port1.0.1
First Port Status ..... Down
First Port Direction ..... Unknown
Second Port ..... port1.0.2
Second Port Status ..... Down
Second Port Direction ..... Unknown
Trap ..... Enabled
Master Node ..... Unknown
Enhanced Recovery ..... Disabled
-----

```

The following examples show the output display for superloop topology network

Figure 56-2: Example output from the show epsr command run on a Transit Node

```

EPSR Information
-----
Name ..... test4
Mode ..... Transit
Status ..... Enabled
State ..... Complete
Control Vlan ..... 4
Data VLAN(s) ..... 20
Interface Mode ..... Ports Only
Primary Port ..... port1.0.3
  Status ..... Forwarding (logically blocking)
  Is On Common Segment ..... No
  Blocking Control ..... Physical
Secondary Port ..... port1.0.4
  Status ..... Blocked
  Is On Common Segment ..... No
  Blocking Control ..... Physical
Hello Time ..... 1 s
Failover Time ..... 2 s
Ring Flap Time ..... 0 s
Trap ..... Enabled
Enhanced Recovery ..... Disabled
SLP Priority ..... 12
-----
    
```

Table 56-1: Parameters displayed in the output of the show epsr command

| Parameter on Master Node | Parameter on Transit Node | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Name | Name | The name of the EPSR instance. |
| Mode | Mode | The mode in which the EPSR instance is configured - either Master or Transit |
| Status | Status | Indicates whether the EPSR instance is enabled or disabled |
| State | State | Indicates state of the EPSR instance's state machine. Master states are: Idle, Complete, and Failed. Transit states are Links-Up, Links-Down, and Pre-Forwarding. |
| Control Vlan | Control Vlan | Displays the VID of the EPSR instance's control VLAN. |
| Data VLAN(s) | Data VLAN(s) | The VID(s) of the instance's data VLANs. |
| Interface Mode | Interface Mode | Whether the EPSR instance's ring ports are both physical ports (Ports Only) or are both static aggregators (Channel Groups Only). |
| Primary Port | First Port | The EPSR instance's primary ring port. |
| - Status | - Status | Whether the ring port is forwarding (Forwarding) or blocking (Blocked), or has link down (Down), and if forwarding or blocking, "(logical)" indicates the instance has only logically set the blocking state of the port because it does not have physical control of it. |
| | - Direction | The ring port on which the last EPSR control packet was received is indicated by "Upstream". The other ring port is then "Downstream" |

Table 56-1: Parameters displayed in the output of the show epsr command (cont.)

| Parameter on Master | Parameter on Transit | Description(cont.) |
|------------------------|------------------------|--|
| - Is On Common Segment | - Is On Common Segment | Whether the ring port is on a shared common segment link to another node, and if so, "(highest rank)" indicates it is the highest priority instance on that common segment. |
| - Blocking Control | - Blocking Control | Whether the instance has "physical" or "logical" control of the ring port's blocking in the instance's data VLANs. |
| Secondary Port | Second Port | The EPSR instance's secondary port. |
| - Status | - Status | Whether the ring port is forwarding (Forwarding) or blocking (Blocked), or has link down (Down), and if forwarding or blocking, "(logical)" indicates the instance has only logically set the blocking state of the port, because it does not have physical control of it. Note that on a master configured for SuperLoop Prevention (non-zero priority) its secondary ring port can be physically forwarding, but logically blocking. This situation arises when it is not the highest priority node in the topology (and so does not receive LINKS-DOWN messages upon common segment breaks) and a break on a common segment in its ring is preventing reception of its own health messages. |
| | - Direction | The ring port on which the last EPSR control packet was received is indicated by "Upstream". The other ring port is then "Downstream" |
| - Is On Common Segment | - Is On Common Segment | Whether the ring port is on a shared common segment link to another node, and if so, "(highest rank)" indicates it is the highest priority instance on that common segment |
| - Blocking Control | - Blocking Control | Whether the instance has "physical" or "logical" control of the ring port's blocking in the instance's data VLANs |
| Hello Time | | The EPSR instance's setting for the interval between transmissions of health check messages (in seconds) |
| Failover Time | | The time (in seconds) the EPSR instance waits to receive a health check message before it decides the ring is down |
| Ring Flap Time | | The minimum time the EPSR instance must remain in the failed state |
| Trap | Trap | Whether the EPSR instance has EPSR SNMP traps enabled |
| Enhanced Recovery | Enhanced Recovery | Whether the EPSR instance has enhanced recovery mode enabled |
| SLP Priority | SLP Priority | The EPSR instance's priority (for SuperLoop Prevention) |

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
[show epsr counters](#)

show epsr common segments

This command displays information about all the superloop common segment ports on the switch

Syntax `show epsr common segments`

Example To display information about all the superloop common segment ports on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr common segments
```

Figure 56-3: Example output from the show epsr common segments command

| EPSR Common Segments | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|---------|------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Common Seg Ring Port | EPSR Instance | Mode | Prio | Port Type | Phys Ctrl of Port? | Ring Port Status |
| port1.0.24 | test_inst_Red | Transit | 127 | Second | Yes | Fwding |
| | test_inst_Blue | Transit | 126 | Second | No | Fwding (logical) |
| | test_inst_Green | Transit | 125 | First | No | Fwding (logical) |
| sa4 | testA | Master | 15 | Primary | Yes | Blocking |
| | testB | Transit | 14 | Second | No | Fwding (logical) |
| sa5 | test_55 | Transit | 8 | First | Yes | Down |
| | test_77 | Transit | 7 | First | No | Down |

Related Commands

- `show epsr`
- `show epsr summary`
- `show epsr counters`

show epsr config-check

This command checks the configuration of a specified EPSR instance, or all EPSR instances.

If an instance is enabled, this command will check for the following errors or warnings:

- The control VLAN has the wrong number of ports.
- There are no data VLANs.
- Some of the data VLANs are not assigned to the ring ports.
- The failover time is less than 5 seconds, for a stacked device.
- The instance is a master that shares a common segment with a higher priority instance.
- The instance is a master that shares a common segment with another master.
- The instance is a master with its secondary port on a common segment.

Syntax `show epsr <instance> config-check`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code><instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance to check on. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To check the configuration of all EPSR instances and display the results, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr config-check
```

Figure 56-4: Example output from the show epsr config-check command

| EPSR Instance | Status | Description |
|---------------|---------|--|
| red | Warning | Failover time is 2s but should be 5s because device is stacked |
| white | OK. | |
| blue | Warning | Primary port is not in data VLANs 29-99. |
| orange | OK. | |

Don't forget to check that this node's configuration is consistent with all other nodes in the ring.

Related Commands [show epsr](#)

show epsr <epsr-instance>

This command displays information about the specified EPSR instance.

Syntax `show epsr <epsr-instance>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the current settings of the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr blue
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
[show epsr counters](#)

show <epsr-instance> counters

This command displays counter information about the specified EPSR instance.

Syntax `show epsr <epsr-instance> counters`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code><epsr-instance></code> | Name of the EPSR instance. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the counters of the EPSR instance called `blue`, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr blue counters
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
[show epsr](#)

show epsr counters

This command displays counter information about all EPSR instances.

Syntax `show epsr counters`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the counters of all EPSR instances, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr counters
```

Related Commands [epsr mode master controlvlan primary port](#)
[epsr mode transit controlvlan](#)
[show epsr](#)

show epsr summary

This command displays summary information about all EPSR instances on the switch

Syntax `show epsr summary`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display epsr summary information, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr summary
```

Example To display EPSR summary information, use the command:

```
awplus# show epsr summary
```

Figure 56-5: Example output from the show epsr summary command

```

EPSR Summary Information

Abbreviations:
M = Master node
T = Transit node
C = is on a common segment with other instances
P = instance on a common segment has physical control of the shared port's
  data VLAN blocking
LB = ring port is Logically Blocking - applicable to master only
    
```

| EPSR Instance | Mode | Status | State | Ctrl VLAN | Prio | Primary/1st Port Status | Secondary/2nd Port Status |
|---------------|------|----------|------------|-----------|------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| test-12345 | T | Enabled | Links-Down | 6 | 127 | Blocking (C,P) | Blocking (C,P) |
| test1 | M | Enabled | Complete | 5 | 12 | Fwding | Fwding (LB) |
| test2 | T | Enabled | Pre-Fwding | 4 | 126 | Fwding (C) | Blocking (C) |
| localB | T | Disabled | Idle | 40 | 0 | Unknown | Unknown |
| localC | T | Disabled | Idle | 41 | 0 | Unknown | Unknown |

undebg epsr

This command applies the functionality of the [no debug epsr](#) command on page 56.3.

Chapter 57: RRP Snooping Introduction and Commands



| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| RRP Snooping Introduction..... | 57.2 |
| Command List | 57.3 |
| ip rrp snooping | 57.3 |
| show ip rrp snooping..... | 57.4 |

RRP Snooping Introduction

This chapter describes the Router Redundancy Protocol (RRP) Snooping feature provided by the switch. For detailed RRP command descriptions, examples and output, see [“Command List” on page 57.3](#).

The Router Redundancy Protocol (RRP) allows multiple routers to share the same virtual IP address and MAC address. In network topologies where redundant router paths or links exist, the protocol enables routers, through an election process, to designate one as the master router. This router functions as the provider of the primary path between LAN segments. Backup routers function as backup paths in the event that the master router or primary path fails.

Because the master and backup routers are able to share the same virtual IP address and MAC address, a change in data paths need not necessitate an adjustment to the default gateways on the network nodes that employ the routers. When a backup router transitions to master, it uses the same IP address as the previous master router, making the transition transparent to the network end nodes. In large networks, these transparent transitions can save the time and effort of having to manually reconfigure default gateway addresses on large numbers of network nodes when a router pathway fails.

RRP snooping on the switch facilitates the transition to a new master router by minimizing the loss of traffic, and so reduces the impact the transition could have on your network traffic.

RRP snooping monitors ingress RRP packets, determined by their source MAC address. The switch looks for packets with a source MAC address of 00:E0:2B:00:00:80-9F (ESRP).

A port receiving an RRP packet is deemed by the switch as the master RRP port. The virtual MAC address of the router is entered as a dynamic address on the port. If the switch starts to receive RRP packets on another port, it assumes that a backup router has made the transition to the role of the new master router.

The switch responds by deleting all dynamic MAC addresses from the MAC address table. As the switch relearns the addresses, the virtual MAC address of the new master router is learned on the new master RRP port, rather than the old port. Any packets received by the switch and destined for the router are forwarded to the new master router.

You cannot use RRP Snooping at the same time as the following features:

- STP, RSTP, or MSTP, except for edge ports. RSTP is enabled by default. To disable it, use the command [“no spanning-tree {mstp|rstp|stp} enable” on page 19.40](#).
- Port security (the command `switchport port-security`)
- Port authentication
- EPSR
- Port mirroring

Commands Used `ip rrp snooping`
`show ip rrp snooping`

Command List

This section provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure the Router Redundancy Protocol (RRP).

ip rrp snooping

Use this command to enable RRP snooping.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable RRP Snooping.

Syntax ip rrp snooping
no ip rrp snooping

Default The default is **disabled**.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Use this command to enable the RRP Snooping feature. You cannot use RRP Snooping at the same time as the following features:

- STP, RSTP, or MSTP, except for edge ports. RSTP is enabled by default. To disable it, use the command **“no spanning-tree {mstp|rstp|stp} enable” on page 19.40**.
- Port security (the command **switchport port-security**)
- Port authentication
- EPSR
- Port mirroring

Examples The example below shows you how to enable RRP Snooping.

```
awplus# enable
awplus(config)# configure terminal
awplus(config-router)# ip rrp snooping
```

Related Commands [show ip rrp snooping](#)

show ip rrp snooping

Use this command to display Router Redundancy Protocol snooping global settings and status.

Syntax show ip rrp snooping

Mode Privileged Exec

Output The following example show the output display for the **show ip rrp snooping** command

```
awplus#show ip rrp snooping
Status           : Enabled

Vlan             Master      Virtual MAC Address      UpTime
-----
vlan1            Port1.0.1  00e0.2b00.0085          00:00:39
-----
```

The following table shows the output display for the **show ip rrp snooping** command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Status | Displays if RRP Snooping is enabled or disabled |
| Vlan | Displays the VLAN ID |
| Master | Displays the port ID connected to the master router or the network of the master router |
| Virtual MAC Address | Displays the virtual MAC address of the router |
| UpTime | Displays the time that the current master router has been the master router |

Related Commands [ip rrp snooping](#)

Part 7: Network Management



- **Chapter 7 File Management Commands**
- **Chapter 58 AMF Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 59 AMF Commands**
- **Chapter 60 NTP Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 61 NTP Commands**
- **Chapter 62 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Introduction**
- **Chapter 63 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Commands**
- **Chapter 64 DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 65 DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Commands**
- **Chapter 66 SNMP Introduction**
- **Chapter 67 SNMP Commands**
- **Chapter 68 SNMP MIBs**
- **Chapter 69 LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 70 LLDP Commands**
- **Chapter 71 SMTP Commands**
- **Chapter 72 RMON Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 73 RMON Commands**
- **Chapter 74 Triggers Introduction**

- **Chapter 75 Triggers Configuration**
- **Chapter 76 Trigger Commands**
- **Chapter 77 Ping Polling Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 78 Ping-Polling Commands**
- **Chapter 79 sFlow Introduction and Configuration**
- **Chapter 80 sFlow Commands**

Chapter 58: AMF Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|--|-------|
| Introduction to AMF..... | 58.2 |
| AMF Supported Products and Software Versions | 58.2 |
| Key Benefits of AMF..... | 58.3 |
| Unified Command-Line | 58.3 |
| Configuration Backup and Recovery | 58.3 |
| Rolling-Reboot Upgrade | 58.3 |
| Node Provisioning..... | 58.4 |
| AMF Terminology and Introduction..... | 58.5 |
| AMF Network..... | 58.5 |
| AMF Nodes | 58.5 |
| Node Licensing | 58.5 |
| Node Interconnection..... | 58.6 |
| AMF Domains | 58.6 |
| AMF Network Operational Concepts | 58.8 |
| Retention and Use of the 'Manager' Username..... | 58.8 |
| Working-Set | 58.8 |
| AMF Restricted-Login | 58.9 |
| Loop-Free Data Plane..... | 58.9 |
| Aggregators | 58.9 |
| VCStacks..... | 58.9 |
| AMF External Removable Media | 58.9 |
| AMF Interaction with QoS and ACLs..... | 58.10 |
| NTP and AMF | 58.10 |
| Configuring AMF | 58.11 |
| AMF Tunneling (Virtual Links) | 58.17 |
| Verifying the AMF Network | 58.21 |
| AMF Backups..... | 58.23 |
| Using External Media Storage | 58.23 |
| Performing a Manual Backup | 58.24 |
| Backing up to Remote Servers | 58.27 |
| Node Recovery..... | 58.30 |
| Automatic Node Recovery..... | 58.30 |
| Restoring a Node to a "Clean" State..... | 58.31 |
| Manual Node Recovery..... | 58.32 |
| Node Recovery on VCStacks | 58.33 |
| AMF Safe Configuration..... | 58.34 |
| Detecting AMF Safe Configuration Operation | 58.34 |
| AMF Safe Configuration Procedures..... | 58.34 |
| Undoing an AMF Safe Configuration..... | 58.35 |
| Using the Unified CLI with Working-Sets | 58.36 |
| Working-Set Groups..... | 58.37 |
| Executing Commands on Working-Sets..... | 58.39 |
| Interactive Commands..... | 58.42 |
| Rolling-Reboot Firmware Upgrade..... | 58.43 |
| Performing a Rolling-Reboot Upgrade | 58.45 |
| Node Provisioning | 58.47 |

Introduction to AMF

The Allied Telesis Management Framework (AMF) is a suite of features that combine to simplify network management across all supported network switches from the core to the edge.

AMF also provides simplified switch recovery and firmware upgrade management. The primary function of AMF is to reduce the management and maintenance overhead on a network, while improving on responsiveness and handling of switch failures within the network.

This chapter provides a conceptual introduction to AMF together with its benefits, together with configuration guidelines showing how to use AMF in practical networks. For more information on the commands used in this chapter, see [“AMF Commands” on page 59.1](#).

AMF Supported Products and Software Versions

The following list shows which Allied Telesis switches are capable of running AMF and indicates those capable of operating as Master Nodes.

An AMF-Master feature license is required for each AMF master node in the AMF network. AMF-Master feature licenses are only available for the SBx8100 and SBx908 platforms.

- SwitchBlade™ x8100 family (Master Node capability)
- SwitchBlade™ x908 series switches (Master Node capability)
- x900 series switches (Network node capability)
- x610 series switches (Network Node capability)
- x510 series switches (Network node capability)
- IX5-28GPX switches (Network node capability)
- x310 series switches (Network node capability)
- x230 series switches (Network node capability)
- x210 series switches (Network node capability)
- DC2552XS switch (Network node capability)

Key Benefits of AMF

The key benefits of AMF include its unified command-line, simple configuration backup and recovery process, and time-saving rolling firmware upgrade.

Unified Command-Line

The conventional means of configuring and controlling AlliedWare Plus (AW+) switches is to use their text-based command-line interface (CLI). In existing networks, the CLI is available via a serial console port and also to remote login sessions such as SSH.

AMF extends this capability from managing either a single switch to managing a whole network by using a single (unified) CLI session. Using the unified CLI, a network administrator can nominate all nodes or a subset of nodes within the AMF network to comprise an entity known as a **“working-set”**. Commands can then be executed concurrently across all switching nodes within the defined working-set as if they were a single unit. Any existing configuration or diagnostic actions can thus be applied to multiple devices using a single command sequence, thus reducing maintenance costs and configuration complexity, while still retaining complete flexibility in network design and control.

Multiple AMF networks can exist side by side across a single physical network. Note that AMF treats a Virtual Chassis Stack (VCStack) as a single node.

Configuration Backup and Recovery

The **master** nodes use external storage to automatically backup the complete configuration information for all their member nodes, including boot configuration, firmware, licenses, and user scripts.

If an AMF member node should fail, the AMF process will automatically recognize and reconfigure an unconfigured replacement (standby) unit, completely recreating the stored configuration of the failed unit into the replacement unit. The new unit will then reboot and resume service, without any need for user intervention beyond physical hardware replacement and cable connection. In this way AMF provides a complete zero-touch recovery solution. For more information, see **“AMF Backups” on page 58.23**.

Rolling-Reboot Upgrade

Installing Firmware upgrades on a production network is typically an infrequent but sensitive and labor-intensive process. AMF is able to roll-out upgrades to a user-selected subset of nodes. All that needs to be entered is the target group of nodes, and the location where the new firmware is stored; AMF will then take care of the rest. Nodes are upgraded in a serial fashion, with each node tested before continuing the upgrade on the next node.

If an upgrade fails on a particular node, the upgrade process is automatically terminated and that node will revert to its previous firmware version. In this way firmware updates are almost completely hands-free, whilst also providing confidence that a bad update will not result in loss of service. For more information, see **“Performing a Rolling-Reboot Upgrade” on page 58.45**.

Node Provisioning

It is generally undesirable to have unconfigured devices connected to the network. Node provisioning enables you to preconfigure a port ready to accept and automatically configure a "clean" (as new) device for connection at a later date. This is achieved by storing the future node's configuration in the master node's backup files ready to be loaded to the new device when connected.

AMF Terminology and Introduction

This section contains a glossary of terminology used to describe AMF networking.

AMF Network

Conceptually an AMF network is a collection of interconnected network switch nodes. This interconnection in turn comprises a hierarchy of network domains. These terms are explained in more detail later in this chapter.

Network name Because networks are able to interconnect an AMF network *name* is necessary to identify the AMF network to which any given node belongs. It follows therefore, that all nodes within a single AMF network must be configured with the same AMF network name.

AMF Nodes

An AMF network comprises a number of interconnected devices (nodes).

An AMF network comprises of two node types, Master Nodes and Member Nodes

Master Nodes AMF master nodes are user defined by configuration. They then form the core domain of the AMF network. Aspects of master node functionality include:

- responsibility for performing file system backups of all nodes in the AMF network.
- provide an essential requirement for the formation of an AMF network. That is, at least one master node must be present for an AMF network to exist.

Member Nodes AMF members are commonly referred to as nodes. A node can be either a single switch, or a VCStack.

Node Licensing

Master node License AMF master nodes are supported on x610, SBx908, and SBx8100 platforms: an AMF license is required for each master.

Only one AMF master license is required even if two CFCs (Controller Fabric Cards - for SBx8100 only) are installed. The license is for the chassis, not the CFC.

A VCStack needs to have consistent licensing on all stack members. Therefore, an AMF master license would be required on both devices in an SBx908 stack.

When more than one AMF master node exists in an AMF network, it is important to know that these operate completely independently of each other, and there is no synchronization between AMF master nodes.

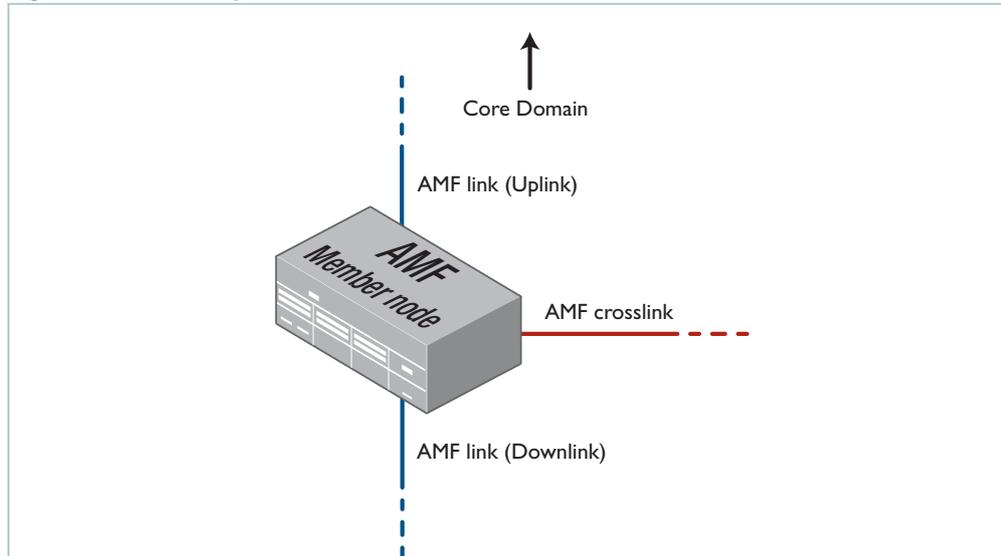
For redundancy, an AMF network can have multiple master nodes, each acting as a master for the network. However, there is no synchronization of status or data files between the masters. The behavior of a master node is not changed at all by the presence of other master nodes.

Core distance This is the distance (hop count) between a particular domain and its Core domain. The Core domain has a Core distance of 0, and the maximum recommended Core distance in an AMF network is 8.

Node Interconnection

Nodes can connect either horizontally using crosslinks, or vertically using Uplinks/Downlinks. This is shown in the illustration below:

Figure 58-1: AMF Uplinks, Downlinks, and Crosslinks



AMF links, of either type, are used to pass AMF management traffic between nodes; however, they can also carry other network traffic. Configuring an interface as an **AMF-link** will automatically put the port into trunk mode. An AMF link can be either a single link or a static aggregator. For more information on trunk mode see [“Configuring VLANs” on page 16.3](#).

Crosslinks AMF crosslinks are used to connect AMF nodes to other AMF nodes within what is termed an AMF Domain. Configuring an interface as an AMF-crosslink will automatically put its port into trunk mode. A crosslink can be either a single link or a static aggregator.

AMF master nodes must be connected using AMF crosslinks to ensure they are part of the uppermost domain level.

Up/Down Links Uplinks/Downlinks interconnect domains in what is a vertical hierarchy, the highest domain being the core domain.

AMF Domains

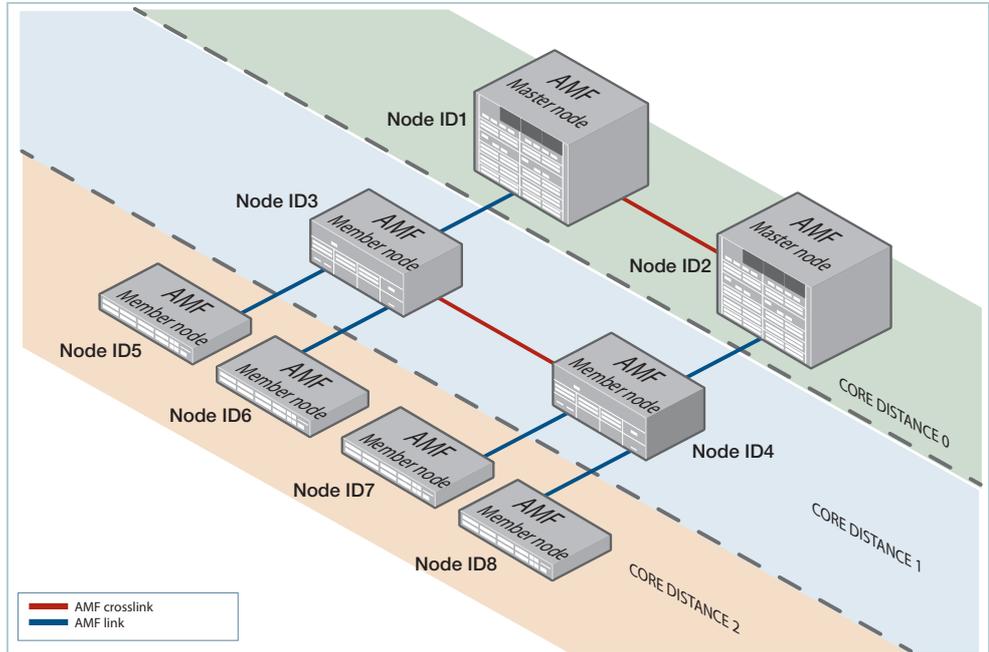
Every AMF node belongs to an AMF domain. Domains can comprise of a single node or multiple nodes. AMF master nodes are included in highest domain level, sometimes called the core domain, and all other domains are rooted in this domain.

As previously mentioned, AMF domains are determined by AMF crosslinks, (see [“Working-Set” on page 58.8](#)). All nodes connected via AMF crosslinks form part of the same domain, and nodes connected via regular AMF links will be part of either higher or lower level domains.

Nodes within a domain must be connected in either a chain or ring topology. This means that a maximum of two crosslinks should be configured on any single node. The advantage of an AMF domain is that two links from a domain to a single higher level domain will provide redundant AMF links. We recommend that an AMF domain should only be connected to a single higher level domain, though it may be connected to multiple lower level domains. We also recommend that you set a maximum number of 12 nodes per domain.

Hop-Count The vertical distance of a domain from the core domain is known as its Hop-Count. The illustration “Core distance hop-counts between domains” on page 58.7 shows the relationship between nodes, domains and core distance (hop-count).

Figure 58-2: Core distance hop-counts between domains



Node provisioning Node provisioning enables you to configure a node before it is physically present in the AMF network. When the node is eventually connected to an expectant port, it will automatically set itself up with the previously stored configuration files and release.

AMF Network Operational Concepts

Retention and Use of the 'Manager' Username

The default **username** for an AlliedWare Plus login is "manager", with a documented default **password**. Users should change this password on all their nodes to provide login security.

It is possible to add new usernames and passwords to nodes, but to retain the ability to centrally manage the network, usernames should be uniformly configured across all AMF nodes within the AMF network.

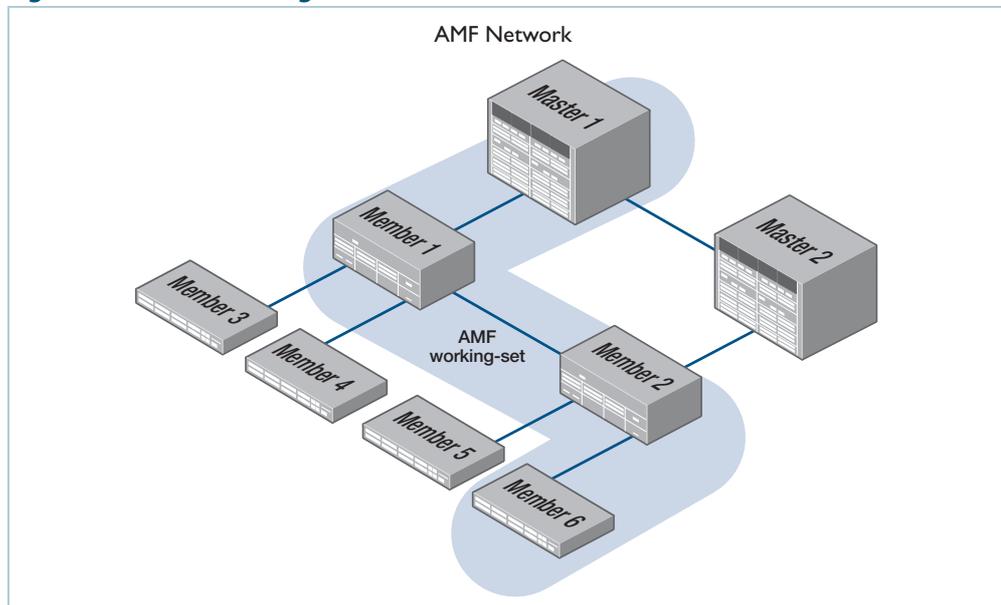
Note that managing a network with AMF is incompatible with user authentication via RADIUS or TACACS+. Use the normal local database for user authentication.

Working-Set

Conceptually a working set is a collection of switches that can then be configured centrally as if there were a single device. A working set may comprise a pre-defined group that has been automatically created based on some common set of physical attributes such as switch type etc, or it may be created by a network user for ease of configuration.

Specifying or selecting a working-set allows CLI commands to be executed on all nodes within the selected working-set with a single command. A working-set can be defined, selected and configured from any node within an AMF network. The illustration "[AMF working-set](#)" on page 58.8 shows a number of switches which comprise a working set.

Figure 58-3: AMF working-set



AMF Restricted-Login

By default, a user logged into any node on an AMF network is able to manage any other node by using either working-sets or atmf remote login (provided the login username exists on all nodes). Where the access provided by this feature is too wide, or contravenes network security restrictions, this access can be limited by running the command **“atmf restricted-login”** on page 59.47. This command will not be saved in the running configuration; it is a network property that can be enabled or disabled from any ATMF master. The status of restricted-login will be retained over a reboot.

When restricted login is enable on the network, only the ATMF Master nodes are able to create working-sets or manage other devices via atmf remote-logins. Other nodes may remote login to the ATMF Master, but they will require password authentication on that master, and will then be able to create working-sets originating from the Master.

Note that once you have run this command, certain other commands that utilize the AMF working-set command, such as the **include**, **atmf reboot-rolling** and **show atmf group members** commands, will operate only on master nodes.

Loop-Free Data Plane

The current version of AMF does not control the data plane, so it is a requirement that the network is configured such that the data plane (i.e. the paths defined by the data VLANs) is kept loop free.

Aggregators

Dynamic Aggregators (LACP) cannot be used on ports configured as AMF links or cross-links. Therefore any aggregated links in an AMF network need to be configured as static aggregators.

VCStacks

If any VCStacks are included as AMF nodes it is a requirement that the *VCS virtual MAC* feature is enabled to ensure correct operation of the AMF network. If the VCStack is running as an AMF master node and backup is required, then removable external storage media should be installed in both stack members.

AMF External Removable Media

In order to maintain a recovery capability, all AMF master nodes require external storage media installed, such as a USB or SD card. This external storage is used to hold a backup of all relevant files from all nodes within the AMF network, including other master nodes, so it must be large enough to accommodate all of the backed up files. Files that are backed up include all configuration files, release files, and scripts, but not core dumps, exception logs, or technical support files.

Typically a 4GB capacity external media device would be of sufficient size to hold backups for a 40 node AMF network.

When using Dual CFCs (Controller Fabric Card) in a SBx8100, a memory stick is required in both CFCs.

AMF Interaction with QoS and ACLs

It's important that ACL and QoS rules do not block any traffic on VLANs 4091 and 4092 because they are the default AMF control VLANs. Similarly, ACL and QoS rules should not block any Layer 3 traffic on 172.31.0.* or 172.31.128.* as these are the default AMF management traffic subnets. Packets with protocol type 0xfbbae and BPDUs that use the MAC address: 0180.c200.002e should also not be blocked.

Note The AMF control VLANs and AMF management subnets can be manually changed.



With AMF enabled, the number of ACLs on the x210, 230, x310, x510 and x610 switches decreases from 2049 to 2048. If this is problematic and you are not using AMF, you can disable AMF, which will allow the previous maximum of 2049.

NTP and AMF

AMF uses NTP to synchronize the system clocks across nodes within the network. For this to operate there must either be one or more external NTP servers configured on the network, or one single AMF node must be configured as the NTP "master" using the **ntp master** command on page 61.6

Note that it is invalid to have an NTP master configured on an AMF node anywhere in the network if any external NTP servers exist, because this will prevent clock synchronization.

If there is no external server, and instead the network has a node configured with the command: **ntp master**, the following commands will work as expected:

```
awplus(config)# atmf working-set group all
awplus(config)# clock set 16:51:00 24 Jul 2014
```

The **clock set** command may also be used prior to configuring an external NTP server to set the network approximately up to the correct time, so that NTP will synchronize faster.

The primary function of NTP within an AMF network is to ensure that time and date stamps on backups are consistent across member nodes within the backup. This is particularly important in an AMF network that has multiple AMF master nodes, to ensure that node recovery is performed with the most up-to-date backup.

Configuring AMF

The following configuration example uses a simplified network to explain the steps required to configure AMF.

Figure 58-4: Simple AMF single master example

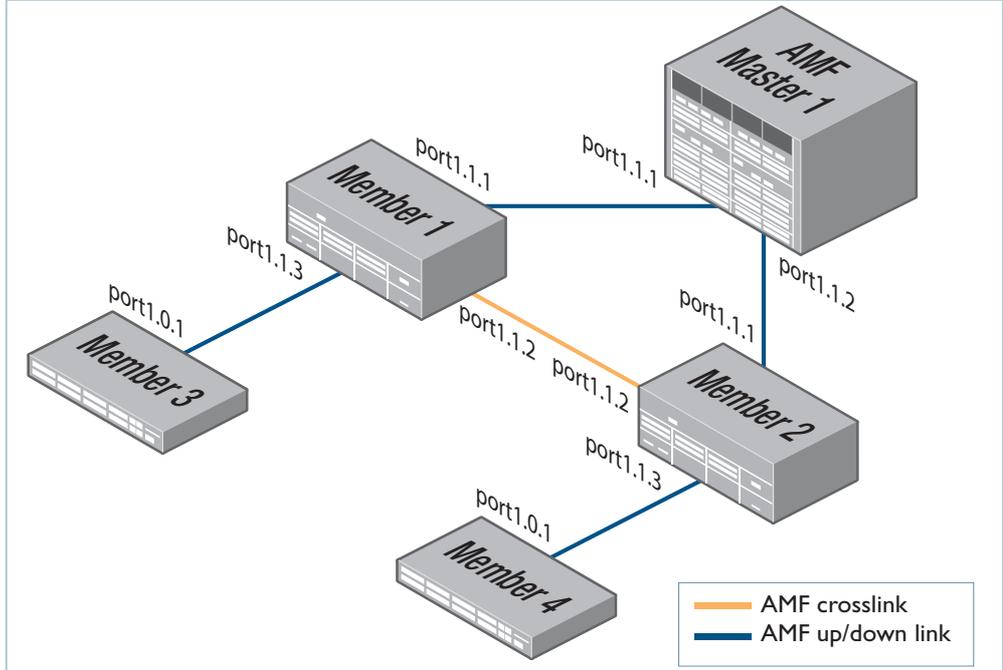


Table 58-1: Configure the AMF master node

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| Step 1. Set the host name. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | (awplus#) | configure terminal |
| Set the host name | awplus(config)# | hostname AMF_Master |
| Note that host names are used as the AMF node name and MUST BE UNIQUE within the AMF network. | | |
| Step 2. Set the AMF network name. | | |
| Set the AMF network name. | AMF_Master(config)# | atmf network-name atmf1 |
| Note that the AMF network name must be the same on all nodes within the AMF network, and the device must be <i>rebooted</i> before the AMF network name takes effect. | | |
| Step 3. Configure the switch to be the AMF master. | | |
| | AMF_Master(config)# | atmf master |
| An AMF network must have at least one master configured. A license is required for each AMF master in the AMF network. If an AT-SBx8100 with dual CFCs is configured as an AMF master a license is only required on the CFC master, as the license will be synchronized across CFCs. If an AT-SBx908 is configured as an AMF master, a license is required to be installed on both stack members. | | |
| Step 4. Configure the data VLANs. | | |
| | AMF_Master(config)# | vlan database |
| | AMF_Master(config-vlan)# | vlan 2-3 |
| Step 5. Configure ports as AMF-links. | | |
| | AMF_Master(config)# | interface port1.1.1-1.1.2 |
| | AMF_Master(config-if)# | switchport atmf-link |
| Step 6. Configure data VLANs on AMF-links as required. | | |
| | AMF_Master(config-if)# | switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-3 |
| Step 7. Save the configuration and reboot the switch. | | |
| | AMF_Master# | copy running-config startup- config |
| Building configuration...[OK] | | |
| | AMF_Master# | reload |
| Are you sure you want to reboot the whole chassis? (y/n): y | | |

Table 58-2: Configure the first member node (Member1)

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Step 1. Set the host name. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | (awplus#) | configure terminal |
| Set the host name | awplus(config)# | hostname Member1 |
| Note that host names are used as the AMF node name and MUST BE UNIQUE within the AMF network. | | |
| Step 2. Set the AMF network name. | | |
| Set the AMF network name to atmf1. | Member1(config)# | atmf network-name atmf1 |
| Note that the AMF network name must be the same on all nodes within the AMF network, and the device must be <i>rebooted</i> before the AMF network name takes effect. | | |
| Step 3. Configure the data VLANs. | | |
| Enter the VLAN Configuration mode | Member1(config)# | vlan database |
| Create VLANs 2 and 3 | Member1(config-vlan)# | vlan 2-3 |
| Step 4. Configure ports as AMF-links. | | |
| Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.1.1 to 1.1.3 | Member1(config)# | interface port1.1.1-1.1.3 |
| Configure these ports as AMF links | Member1(config-if)# | switchport atmf-link |
| Step 5. Configure data VLANs on the AMF-links as required. | | |
| Set VLANs 2 to 3 to be data VLANs | Member1(config-if)# | switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-3 |
| Step 6. Configure AMF-crosslink. | | |
| Enter the Interface Configuration mode for port 1.1.2 | Member1(config)# | interface port1.1.2 |
| Set this port to be an AMF-crosslink | Member1(config-if)# | switchport atmf-crosslink |
| | Member1(config-if)# | switchport trunk native vlan none |
| Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy. | | |
| Step 7. Save the configuration and reboot the switch. | | |
| | Member1# | copy running-config startup-config |
| Building configuration...[OK] | | |
| | Member1# | reload |
| Are you sure you want to reboot the whole chassis? (y/n): | | y |

Table 58-3: Configure the first member node (Member2)

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Step 1. Set the host name. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | awplus#) | configure terminal |
| Set the host name | awplus(config)# | hostname Member2 |
| Note that host names are used as the AMF node name and MUST BE UNIQUE within the AMF network. | | |
| Step 2. Set the AMF network name. | | |
| Set the AMF network name to atmf1. | Member2(config)# | atmf network-name atmf1 |
| Note that the AMF network name must be the same on all nodes within the AMF network, and the device must be <i>rebooted</i> before the AMF network name takes effect. | | |
| Step 3. Configure the data VLANs. | | |
| Enter the VLAN Configuration mode | Member2(config)# | vlan database |
| Create VLANs 2 and 3 | Member2(config-vlan)# | vlan 2-3 |
| Step 4. Configure ports as AMF-links. | | |
| Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.1.1 to 1.1.3 | Member2(config)# | interface port1.1.1-1.1.3 |
| Configure these ports as AMF links | Member2(config-if)# | switchport atmf-link |
| Step 5. Configure data VLANs on the AMF-links as required. | | |
| Set VLANs 2 to 3 to be data VLANs | Member2(config-if)# | switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-3 |
| Step 6. Configure AMF-crosslink. | | |
| Enter the Interface Configuration mode for port 1.1.2 | Member2(config)# | interface port1.1.2 |
| Set this port to be an AMF-crosslink | Member2(config-if)# | switchport atmf-crosslink |
| | Member2(config-if)# | switchport trunk native vlan none |
| Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy. | | |
| Step 7. Save the configuration and reboot the switch. | | |
| | Member2# | copy running-config startup-config |
| Building configuration...[OK] | | |
| | Member2# | reload |
| Are you sure you want to reboot the whole chassis? (y/n): | | y |

Table 58-4: Configure the first member node (Member3)

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Step 1. Set the host name. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | (awplus#) | configure terminal |
| Set the host name | awplus(config)# | hostname Member3 |
| Note that host names are used as the AMF node name and MUST BE UNIQUE within the AMF network. | | |
| Step 2. Set the AMF network name. | | |
| Set the AMF network name to atmf1. | Member3(config)# | atmf network-name atmf1 |
| Note that the AMF network name must be the same on all nodes within the AMF network, and the device must be <i>rebooted</i> before the AMF network name takes effect. | | |
| Step 3. Configure the data VLANs | | |
| Enter the VLAN Configuration mode | Member3(config)# | vlan database |
| Create VLANs 2 and 3 | Member3(config-vlan)# | vlan 2-3 |
| Step 4. Configure ports as AMF-links. | | |
| Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.3 | Member3(config)# | interface port1.0.1-1.0.3 |
| Configure these ports as AMF links | Member3(config-if)# | switchport atmf-link |
| Step 5. Configure data VLANs on the AMF-links as required. | | |
| Set VLANs 2 to 3 to be data VLANs | Member3(config-if)# | switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-3 |
| Step 6. Configure AMF-crosslink. | | |
| Enter the Interface Configuration mode for port 1.0.2 | Member3(config)# | interface port1.0.2 |
| Set this port to be an AMF crosslink | Member3(config-if)# | switchport atmf-crosslink |
| | Member3(config-if)# | switchport trunk native vlan none |
| Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy. | | |
| Step 7. Save the configuration and reboot the switch. | | |
| | Member3# | copy running-config startup-config |
| Building configuration...[OK] | | |
| | Member3# | reload |
| Are you sure you want to reboot the whole chassis? (y/n): | | y |

Table 58-5: Configure the first member node (Member4)

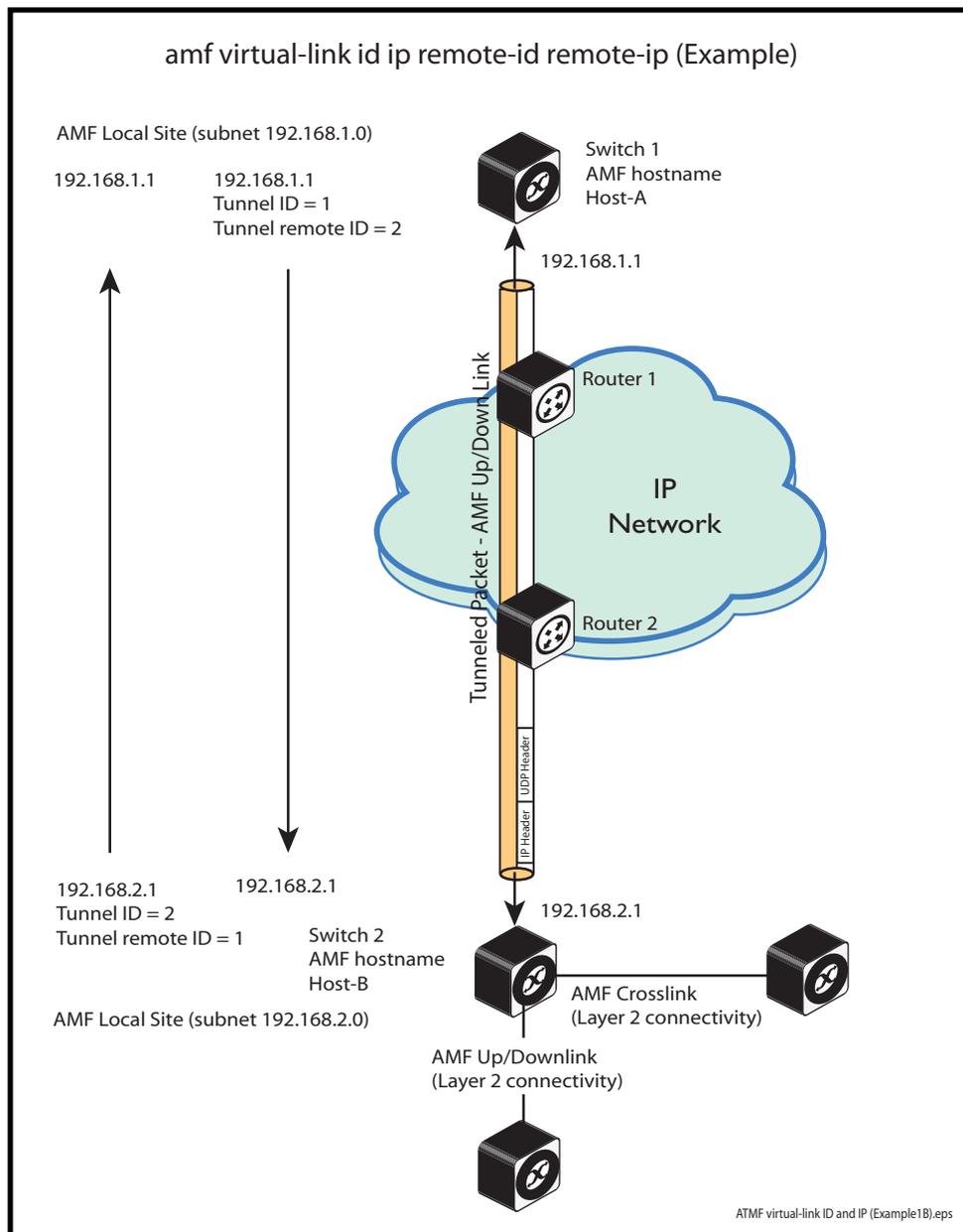
| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| Step 1. Set the host name. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | (awplus#) | configure terminal |
| Set the host name | awplus(config)# | hostname Member4 |
| Note that host names are used as the AMF node name and MUST BE UNIQUE within the AMF network. | | |
| Step 2. Set the AMF network name. | | |
| Set the AMF network name to atmf1. | Member4(config)# | atmf network-name atmf1 |
| Note that the AMF network name must be the same on all nodes within the AMF network, and the device must be <i>rebooted</i> before the AMF network name takes effect. | | |
| Step 3. Configure the data VLANs. | | |
| Enter the VLAN Configuration mode | Member4(config)# | vlan database |
| Create VLANs 2 and 3 | Member4(config-vlan)# | vlan 2-3 |
| Step 4. Configure ports as AMF-links. | | |
| Enter Interface Configuration mode for ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.3 | Member4(config)# | interface port1.0.1-1.0.3 |
| Configure these ports as AMF links | Member4(config-if)# | switchport atmf-link |
| Step 5. Configure data VLANs on the AMF-links as required. | | |
| Set VLANs 2 to 3 to be data VLANs | Member4(config-if)# | switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2-3 |
| Step 6. Configure AMF-crosslink. | | |
| Enter the Interface Configuration mode for port 1.0.2 | Member4(config)# | interface port1.0.2 |
| Set this port to be an AMF crosslink | Member4(config-if)# | switchport atmf-crosslink |
| | Member4(config-if)# | switchport trunk native vlan none |
| Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy. | | |
| Step 7. Save the configuration and reboot the switch. | | |
| | Member4# | copy running-config startup- config |
| Building configuration...[OK] | | |
| | Member4# | reload |
| Are you sure you want to reboot the whole chassis? (y/n): | | y |

AMF Tunneling (Virtual Links)

AMF Tunneling enables you to extend your local uplinks and downlinks across a wide area network. The tunneled data is then wrapped in a Layer 3 IP packet for transmission across a wide area IP network. A simple AMF tunnel is shown in **“AMF virtual link” on page 58.17**. Switches 1 and 2 encapsulate the Layer 2 AMF uplink and downlink data and wrap this inside a Layer 3 IP packet to enable it to traverse an IP Network. Routers 1 and 2 (and any other routers within the cloud) perform a conventional routing function, reading the IP addresses of the tunneled packets and forwarding them to their destination.

Once connected through the tunnel, the remote AMF members will have the same AMF capabilities as a directly connected AMF member.

Figure 58-5: AMF virtual link



Configuring a virtual link

The Layer 2 tunnel created by the command **atmf virtual-link id ip remote-id remote-ip command** on page 1.48 enables a local AMF session to appear to pass transparently across a Wide Area Network (WAN) such as the Internet. The addresses configured as the local and remote tunnel IP addresses must have IP connectivity to each other. If the tunnel is configured to connect a head office and branch office over the Internet, typically this would involve using some type of managed WAN service such as a site-to-site VPN. Tunnels are only supported using IPv4.

Configuration involves creating the following:

- local tunnel ID
- local IP address
- remote tunnel ID
- remote IP address

A reciprocal configuration is also required on the corresponding remote device. The local tunnel ID must be unique to the device on which it is configured.

The tunneled link may operate via external (non AlliedWare Plus) routers in order to provide wide area network connectivity. However, in this configuration, these devices perform a conventional router-to-router connection. The protocol tunneling function is accomplished by the AMF nodes.

Note that the requirement to preconfigure the local IP address and tunnel ID on a device located at the far end of an AMF virtual-link tunnel means that zero touch device replacement cannot be achieved on a remote device that terminates the tunnel.

Example Use the following command to create the tunnel shown in figure **Figure 58-5** on page 58.17.

```
Host-A(config)# atmf virtual-link id 1 ip 192.168.1.1
                  remote-id 2 remote-ip 192.168.2.1

Host-B(config)# atmf virtual-link id 2 ip 192.168.2.1
                  remote-id 1 remote-ip 192.168.1.1
```

Caution On an IP interface that is carrying ATMF virtual link traffic, do not set the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) below its default value of 1500 bytes.



Prioritizing the tunneled traffic

On the switch that interfaces to the wide area network router, we advise that you prioritize the tunneled traffic directed to the CPU over other CPU-bound user data. You can achieve this by allocating a higher Class of Service (CoS) tag to tunnel traffic than other traffic. The following configuration example shows an appropriate method. In the following configuration example, the virtual link traffic is between IP addresses 192.168.1.1 (on Host-A) and 192.168.2.1 (on Host-B). This connection is mapped to VLAN 10.

Note that the following process will prioritize the AMF traffic only within Switch 1 and Switch 2. To prioritize the tunneled AMF data across the IP network would require applying Layer 3 QoS by applying a DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) priority at the network boundary (Router 1 and Router 2) and ensuring that these priority levels are managed throughout the wide area network. Applying and managing QoS through the wide area network is outside the scope of this document.

Virtual link - configuration example

This example is based on the network shown in the illustration [Figure 58-5 on page 58.17](#).

In this example, the virtual link traffic flows between 192.168.1.1 at the local end and 192.168.2.1 at the remote end. Subnet 192.168.1.1 exists on vlan10. Note that because this policy is being applied to incoming traffic, the switch IP address should match destination address in the ACL.

Figure 58-6: Prioritizing the tunneled traffic - Configured on Switch 1, Host-A

```

atmf virtual-link id 1 ip 192.168.1.1 remote-id 2 remote-ip
192.168.2.1
[...]

mls qos enable
access-list hardware vlink
 permit ip 192.168.2.1/32 ip 192.168.1.1/32
!
class-map vlink
 match access-group vlink
!
class-map vlinkarp
 match eth-format ethii-any protocol 0806
 match vlan 10
!
policy-map vlink
 class default
 class vlink
  remark new-cos 4 both
 class vlinkarp
  remark new-cos 4 both
!
[...]
!
interface port1.0.10
 switchport
 switchport mode access
 switchport access vlan 10
 service-policy input vlink
!
[...]
interface vlan10
 ip address 192.168.1.1/24
!
    
```

Table 58-6: Set QoS CoS for an AMF tunneling switch

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|---|----------------------|--|
| Step 1. Create VLAN 10. | | |
| Enter Global Configuration mode | (Host-A#) | configure terminal |
| Enter VLAN config mode | Host-A(config)# | vlan database |
| Create and enable VLAN 10 | Host-A(vlan-config)# | vlan 10 name virtual-link state enable |
| Step 2. Configure VLAN10 | | |
| Enter the VLAN configuration mode for VLAN10. | Host-A(vlan-config)# | interface vlan10 |

Table 58-6: Set QoS CoS for an AMF tunneling switch(cont.)

| Description | Prompt | Command |
|--|---------------------------|---|
| Set the IP address for VLAN10 to be 192.168.1.1/24 | Host-A(vlan-config-if)# | ip address 192.168.1.1/24 |
| Return to config mode | Host-A(config-if)# | exit |
| Step 3. Add policy map vlink to port 1.0.10 | | |
| Set port 1.0.10 for configuring | Host-A(config)# | interface port 1.0.10 |
| Set the port to access mode | Host-A(config-if)# | switchport mode access |
| Associate the port with VLAN10 | Host-A(config-if)# | switchport access vlan10 |
| Add policy map vlink to port 1.0.10 | Host-A(config-if)# | service-policy input vlink |
| Return to config mode | Host-A(config-if)# | exit |
| Step 4. Create an AMF virtual-link tunnel | | |
| Create the virtual link tunnel | Host-A(config)# | atmf virtual-link id 1 ip 192.168.1.1 remote-id 2 remote-ip 192.168.2.1 |
| Step 5. Create an ACL to permit tunneled traffic | | |
| Enable QoS on switch 1 | Host-A(config)# | mls qos enable |
| Create an access-list for the virtual link | Host-A(config)# | access-list hardware vlink |
| Permit traffic that has the tunneled IP addresses | Host-A(config-ip-hw-acl)# | permit ip 192.168.2.1/32 ip 192.168.1.0/32 |
| Step 6. Create a class-map for the virtual link | | |
| Create a class-map named vlink | Host-A(config)# | class-map vlink |
| Step 7. | | |
| Create a class-map named vlinkarp | Host-A(config)# | class-map vlinkarp |
| | Host-A(config-cmap)# | match eth-format ethii-any protocol 0806 |
| Ensure vlinkarp packets on vlan10 are also sent to the CPU | | match vlan10 |
| Step 8. | | |
| | Host-A(config)# | policy-map vlink |
| | | match access-group |
| | Host-A(config-pmap)# | class default |
| Send vlink traffic to CoS queue 6 | | class vlink remark new-cos 4 both |
| Send vlinkarp traffic to CoS queue 6 | | class vlinkarp remark new-cos 4 both |

Verifying the AMF Network

To check that all nodes have joined the AMF network use the [show atmf command on page 1.58](#) with the summary parameter. You can run this command from any node in an AMF network.

Figure 58-7: Checking AMF configuration using the show atmf summary command

```
AMF_Master#show atmf summary
ATMF Summary Information:
ATMF Status           : Enabled
Network Name          : atmf1
Node Name              : AMF_Master
Role                   : Master
Current ATMF Nodes    : 5
AMF_Master#
```

The **Current AMF Nodes** field in the output above shows that all 5 nodes have joined the AMF network.

Use the [show atmf nodes command on page 1.80](#) with the nodes parameter, to check information on individual nodes:

Figure 58-8: Output from the show atmf nodes command

```
AMF_Master#show atmf nodes
Node Information:
 * = Local device
 SC = Switch Configuration:
   C = Chassis   S = Stackable   N = Standalone
Node      Device      ATMF      SC   Parent      Node
Name     Type              Master    SC   Parent      Depth
-----
* AMF_Master  AT-SBx81CFC400    Y         C   none        0
Member1     SwitchBlade x908     N         S   AMF_Master  1
Member2     SwitchBlade x908     N         S   AMF_Master  1
Member4     x510-52GTX       N         S   Member2     2
Member3     x510-52GTX       N         S   Member2     2
Current ATMF node count 5
```

Note that the *Parent* field in the output above refers to the parent *domain* and not the upstream device. In the example output above, Member2 is the domain controller for the parent domain for Member3 and Member4.

Use the [show atmf links command on page 1.69](#) to check information on individual AMF links:

Figure 58-9: Checking output with the show atmf links command

```
switch1# show atmf links

ATMF Links Brief:

Local   Link   Port   ATMF   Adjacent   Adjacent   Link
Port   Type   Status State   Node       Ifindex    State
-----
sa1     Crosslink Up      TwoWay   Building_1 4501      Forwarding
1.0.1   Downlink Up      Full     Bld1_Floor_1 5001      Forwarding
1.0.2   Downlink Up      Full     Bld1_Floor_2 5003      Forwarding
1.0.3   Downlink Up      Full     Bld2_Floor_1 6101      Forwarding
1.0.4   Crosslink Down    Init     *switch3    *         Blocking

* = provisioned
```

AMF Backups

AMF backups are a valuable part of AMF network operation. They are the mechanism by which AMF master nodes update their records of the AMF network. By default, AMF master nodes are configured to perform automatic scheduled backups of the entire AMF network once per day at 3.00am. AMF backups can be stored on **remote file servers** or **external removable media** such as USB sticks or SD cards. These backup files can be used in the recovery of a failed node.

Using External Media Storage

If storing data on external media, it is a requirement that all AMF masters have external removable media installed with sufficient capacity to hold all of the relevant files stored in the Flash on every node in the AMF network.

Typically a 4 GB capacity external media storage would be of sufficient size to hold backups for a 40 node AMF network.

The AMF node backup system has been designed such that the external media used to store the backup data can still be used to store other data. However, care needs to be taken to ensure that enough space is reserved for future AMF backups.

- AMF requires up to 128 MB backup space for SBx8100 nodes and up to 64 MB backup space for other nodes. The output from the [show atmf backup command on page 59.62](#) will provide warnings if capacity on the backup media falls below a safe level.

Here is an output example from the [show atmf backup](#) command showing a backup media space warning:

Figure 58-10: Output showing backup media space warning

```
master1#show atmf backup
Scheduled Backup ..... Disabled
Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 12:45
Next Backup Time .... 25 May 2014 12:45
Backup Media ..... SD (Total 3827.0MB, Free 7.1MB)
                               WARNING: Space on backup media is below 64MB
Current Action ..... Idle
Started ..... -
Current Node ..... -
```

Safe removal of external storage media

Removing external storage media, or rebooting the master node, while an AMF backup is underway could potentially cause corruption to files in the backup. Although files damaged as a result of mishandling backup media will be replaced during the next backup cycle, if the file system on the media becomes damaged, it may require reformatting before being inserted into the AMF master. To avoid any damage to the AMF backup files or file system, we recommend that the following procedure be followed before rebooting or removing any external storage media from an AMF master.

1. Disable backups to prevent a scheduled backup from occurring while the card is being removed.
2. Terminate any backup already in process.

3. Verify that it is safe to remove the media by checking that backups are disabled and that there are no backups currently in progress.

Figure 58-11: Example of the safe external storage media removal procedure

```

master1#conf t

master1(config)#no atmf backup enable
master1(config)#exit
master1#atmf backup stop
master1#show atmf backup

Scheduled Backup ..... Disabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 12:45
  Next Backup Time .... 25 May 2014 12:45
Backup Media ..... SD (Total 3827.0MB, Free 3257.1MB)
Current Action ..... Idle
  Started ..... -
  Current Node ..... -

```

Once the media has been reinstalled, ensure that the backup scheduler is re-enabled.

Performing a Manual Backup

Whenever a new device is added to the AMF network as a provisioned node, we advise that you perform a manual backup from the AMF master. This is to ensure that the removable media installed on the master node has an up to date backup of all nodes within the AMF.

To perform a manual backup of the entire AMF network, on the AMF master enter the command **atmf backup now** command on page 59.8:

```

Master1# atmf backup now

Master1(config)# atmf backup enable

Master1(config)# exit

```

To check the status of the AMF backup use the **show atmf backup** command on page 59.62.

Figure 58-12: Example output from the show atmf backup command entered during a backup

```

AMF_Master#show atmf backup
Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time .... 14 Dec 2013 03:00
Backup Media ..... USB (Total 3692.6MB, Free 1782.7MB)
Current Action ..... Doing manual backup
  Started ..... 13 Dec 2012 05:20
  Current Node ..... Member1
Node Name           Date           Time           In ATMF   On Media   Status
-----
AMF_Master          13 Dec 2012   05:20:16      Yes       Yes        Good
Member1             -             -              Yes       Yes        -
Member2             -             -              Yes       No         -
Member3             -             -              Yes       No         -
Member4             -             -              Yes       No         -

```

Below is example output from the `show atmf backup` command entered after the backup has completed.

Figure 58-13: Example output from the show atmf backup command entered after backup was completed

```

AMF_Master#show atmf backup
Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time .... 13 Dec 2013 03:00
Backup Media ..... USB (Total 3692.6MB, Free 1651.1MB)
Current Action ..... Idle
  Started ..... -
  Current Node ..... -

Node Name                Date           Time           In ATMF  On Media  Status
-----
ATMF_Master              13 Dec 2013   05:20:16      Yes      Yes      Good
Member1                  13 Dec 2013   05:20:27      Yes      Yes      Good
Member2                  13 Dec 2013   05:20:40      Yes      Yes      Good
Member3                  13 Dec 2013   05:20:52      Yes      Yes      Good
Member4                  13 Dec 2013   05:21:08      Yes      Yes      Good
    
```

Note that the file system used by the AMF backup does not support the backing up of files that have the same name but have different case (e.g. “test.txt” and “TEST.txt”), and only **one** of these files will be stored in the backup. For this reason we recommend that all files on a node be given unique file names.

Backups on a VCStack running as AMF masters

This section is only applicable in configurations that are NOT using remote backup servers.

When a VCStack is operating as an AMF master node, AMF backups will only occur on the external removable media of the CFC that is the stack master. Therefore, in the event of a CFC failure, the new VCS master CFC will have no access to this backup information.

To avoid this situation, you can either configure a remote backup file server or use *trigger scripts* to automatically perform a manual backup of the AMF network following a failover event. This section explains how to use trigger scripts to automatically apply a manual backup. To apply the remote file server solution see **“Backing up to Remote Servers” on page 58.27**.

Example 1 This example uses a manual backup activation script called `triggered-atmfbackup.scp`. When activated, this script applies the following commands to initiate a network backup:

```

enable
wait 180
atmf backup now
    
```

When a CFC failure event occurs, the trigger `type chassis active-CFC-fail` will activate. The following example shows how the above scripted steps can be automatically applied if this event occurs.

Example 2 This example shows a trigger script configuration for the **SBx8100**:

```
MasterNode# conf t
MasterNode(config)# trigger 1
MasterNode(config-trigger)# type chassis active-CFC-fail
MasterNode(config-trigger)# script 1 triggered-atmfbackup.scp
```

To explain the sequence; if there is a failure of a CFC that is operating as a stack master, trigger 1, which is associated with the trigger `type chassis active-CFC-fail`, will activate. This process runs the script `triggered-atmfbackup.scp`, which will then apply the preconfigured instructions shown in Example 1.

Example 3 In the event of a stack master failure, the trigger `type stack master-fail` will activate. The following example shows how the above scripted steps can be automatically applied if this event occurs.

This example shows a trigger script configuration that can operate when a stack master node fails.:

```
MasterNode# conf t
MasterNode(config)# trigger 1
MasterNode(config-trigger)# type type stack master-fail
MasterNode(config-trigger)# script 1 triggered-atmfbackup.scp
```

To explain the sequence; if there is a failure of a node that is operating as a stack master, trigger 1, which is associated with the trigger `type stack master-fail`, will activate. This process runs the script `triggered-atmfbackup.scp`, which will then apply the preconfigured instructions shown in Example 1.

Backing up all master nodes

If there are multiple AMF master nodes in the network, you may also want to use a trigger script or perform a manual backup of "all" master nodes after a failover event, so that all backups are up to date.

Create an AMF working-set group that contains all master nodes, then use the `atmf working-set` command in the trigger script to execute the manual backup on all nodes within the working-set.

To create a working-set containing all AMF master nodes, first manually select all AMF masters using the **atmf working-set** command:

```
MasterNode# atmf working-set Master1,Master2
MasterNode(config)# trigger 1
```

This command displays an output screen similar to the one shown below:

```
=====
Master1, Master2
=====

Working set join

ATMF1[2]#
```

Example configuration commands for the type stack master-fail, one per line. End with CNTL/Z:

```
ATMF1{2}# conf t
ATMF1[2](config)# trigger 1
ATMF1[2](config-trigger)# type type stack master-fail
ATMF1[2](config-trigger)# script 1 triggered-atmfbackup.scp
```

Example configuration commands for the type chassis active-CFC-fail, one per line. End with CNTL/Z:

```
ATMF1{2}# conf t
ATMF1[2](config)# trigger 1
ATMF1[2](config-trigger)# type chassis active-CFC-fail
ATMF1[2](config-trigger)# script 1 triggered-atmfbackup.scp
```

Next, create a user defined working-set group containing the nodes in the current working-set using the **atmf group (membership)** command:

```
atmf1[2]# conf t
atmf1[2](config)# atmf group AMF_masters
```

Here is an example manual backup activation script called `atmfbackup_all_masters.scp`. This script will initiate an amf backup on all masters within the working-set.

Backing up to Remote Servers

System backup data can be held on up to two remote backup servers rather than on the Master node's external media. These servers are used for both backup and recovery.

Each AMF master supports a maximum of two remote file servers. The remote backup file servers are mounted on the Master's file system using SSH and appear as folders.

Configuring a backup to a remote server

First configure the servers. After you have configured the servers you can check the backup media, location, log details and server status using the **show atmf backup** command. You can also manually synchronize the contents of an active server and other configured servers, if required. The following steps show how to set up two backup servers:

1. Use the command **“atmf backup server” on page 59.10** for backup server 1
This command configures a remote file server(s) as the destination for AMF backups. Configuration of a remote server will switch the backup to remote server functionality and disable any further backup to external media. Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the destination servers and revert to backup from external media.
Note that if no servers are configured, the backup will go to external media. If no servers are configured and no external media exists, no backup will occur.
2. Repeat step (1) for backup server 2
You should now have two file servers configured to backup your network.
3. Use the **“atmf backup now” on page 59.8** to force a manual backup of your network.

Note This step is optional. Alternatively you could wait until the next scheduled back occurs.



4. Use the command **“show atmf backup” on page 59.62**.
If you forced a manual backup, you will probably want to display the location and state of each configured file server. The display from this command also shows diagnostic results that test connectivity to each server by using the optional `server-status` parameter.

Below is example output from the **show atmf backup** command showing the configuration of two remote backup file servers.

Figure 58-14: Output from the show atmf backup command showing the configuration of two remote backup file servers

```
x900a#show atmf backup
Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
Schedule ..... 24 per day starting at 14:25
Next Backup Time .... 19 May 2014 11:25
Backup Bandwidth ..... Unlimited
Backup Media ..... FILE SERVER (Total 503837.5MB, Free 186818.0MB)
Server Config .....
Synchronization ..... Synchronized
  Last Run ..... 19 May 2014 11:09:50
  1 ..... Configured (Mounted)
    Host ..... 10.36.150.54
    Username ..... user_1
    Path ..... temp/x900a_1
    Port ..... -
  * 2 ..... Configured (Mounted, Primary)
    Host ..... tb165.test.com
    Username ..... user_2
    Path ..... temp/x900a_2
    Port ..... -
Current Action ..... Idle
Started ..... -
Current Node ..... -
```

| Node Name | Date | Time | In ATMF | On Media | Status |
|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------|----------|--------|
| Synchronization | Date | Time | From Id | To Id | Status |
| - | | | | | |
| x210a | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:37 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:46 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x610a | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:17 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:19 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x610b | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:49 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:49 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x610c | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:20 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:20 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x610d | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:19 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:19 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x900a | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:49 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:50 | 2 | 1 | Good |
| x908stk | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:47 | Yes | Yes | Good |
| | 19 May 2014 | 11:09:48 | Yes | Yes | Good |

You can use the **show atmf backup** with the parameter `server-status` to display the results of the diagnostics that test connectivity to each server:

Figure 58-15: Output from the show atmf backup command showing diagnostic test results from each server

```
MasterNode#sh atmf backup server-status
Id Last Check State
-----
1      186 s File server ready
2         1 s SSH no route to host
```

Node Recovery

Automatic Node Recovery

With AMF, you can replace a failed node with another device and let AMF automatically load the appropriate configuration onto the replacement device.

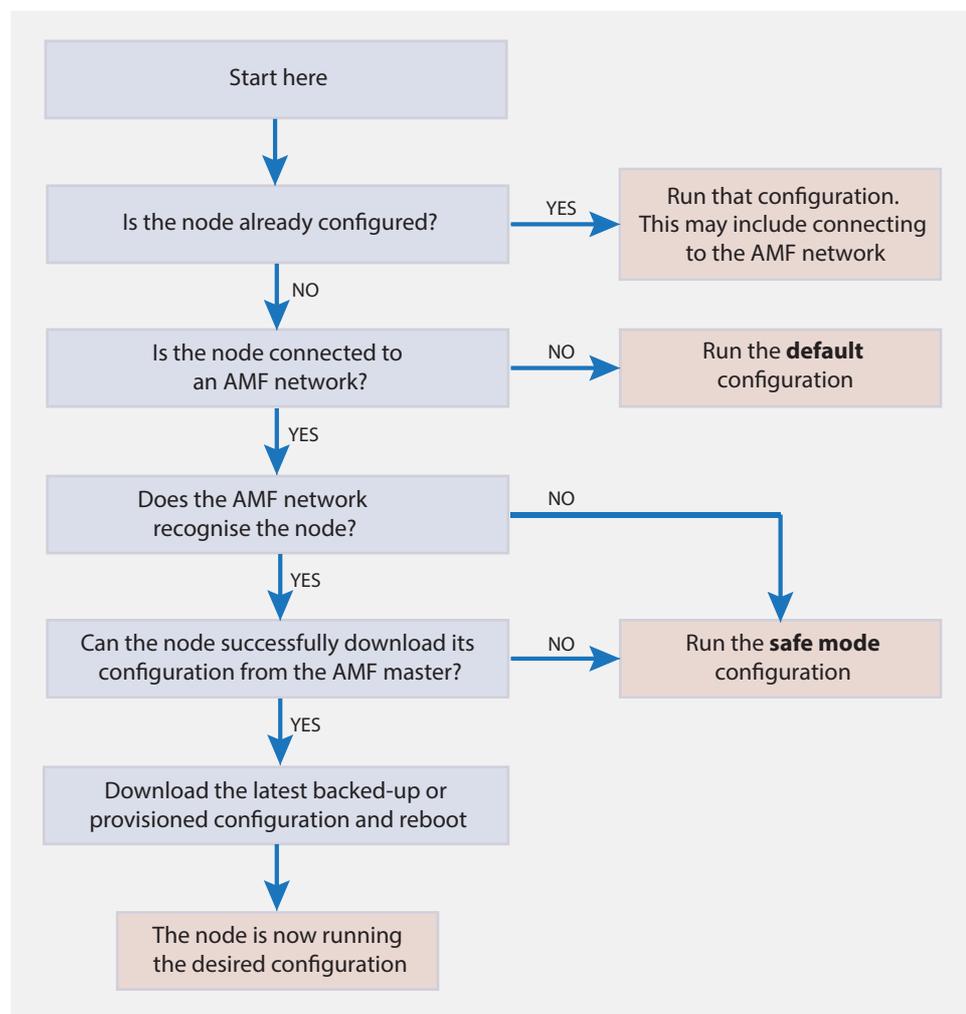
For this to work, the replacement device must have no configuration file. This means it must be either:

- a factory-new device, or
- a used device that has been returned to a “clean” state (see [“Restoring a Node to a “Clean” State” on page 58.31](#))

To replace a failed device with a new device of a different platform or with a different node name, you need to provision the network to expect the new device. See [“Node Provisioning” on page 58.47](#).

When a switch boots up, it goes through the process in the following flowchart to determine what configuration to use. This flowchart indicates when automatic node recovery will be successful.

Figure 58-16: How a switch determines which configuration to use



Automatic node recovery is not intended to recover multiple nodes simultaneously. If multiple nodes have failed, recover them one at a time.

Caution  Do not make any changes to the device's configuration while a node recovery is underway. A log message will appear on the console or other VTY session indicating when recovery has finished (whether successfully or with errors). This message can also be found by viewing the log with the **show log** command.

Figure 58-17: Example log output showing automatic node recovery

```
23:03:15 awplus ATMF[863]: ATMF network detected
23:03:15 awplus ATMF[863]: ATMF safe config applied (forwarding disabled)
23:03:25 awplus ATMF[863]: Shutting down all non ATMF ports
23:03:26 x510_1 ATMF[863]: Automatic node recovery started
23:03:26 x510_1 ATMF[863]: Attempting to recover as x510_1
23:03:26 x510_1 ATMF[863]: Checking master node availability
23:03:32 x510_1 ATMF[863]: Master has joined. 2 members in total.
23:03:32 x510_1 ATMF[863]: x908_VCS_2 has joined. 3 members in total.
23:03:32 x510_1 ATMF[863]: x908_VCS_1 has joined. 4 members in total.
23:03:37 x510_1 ATMFFSR[2950]: Retrieving recovery data from master node Master
23:05:18 x510_1 ATMFFSR[2950]: File recovery from master node succeeded. Node will
now reboot
Flushing file system buffers...
Unmounting any remaining filesystems...
Restarting system.
```

Recovery progress indication

This is a visual feature that displays the recovery status during automatic recovery. This feature uses two distinct flash patterns to indicate the following states:

| Recovery State | LED Indication (green) |
|----------------------|--|
| Recovery in progress | Progressive strobing of all port LEDs. |
| Recovery failure | All port LEDs alternating on and off, flashing at the same time. |

When using this feature during a recovery failure, you can turn off the failure-alert indication and return the port LEDs to their normal running state. To do this, use the command **"atmf recover led-off"** on page 59.45.

You can repeat this process until the recovery failure has been fixed.

Note that the Find me and Ecofriendly LED features cannot be used while AMF recovery progress indication is active.

Restoring a Node to a "Clean" State

When replacing a failed device, your replacement device should be one of the following types, in order for AMF automatic node recovery to work:

- A factory-new device
- A used device that has been returned to a "clean" state

A clean device is one that has had its previous configuration components removed. The process of cleaning is required when replacing a failed device with one that, although in working condition, has been used previously and still retains components of its previous configuration.

If you keep on-site spares, store them with clean configurations and current releases. When you upgrade your network to a new AlliedWare Plus version, we recommend you upgrade your spare devices too.

To clean up a previously used device, use the **atmf cleanup** command on page 59.14. This command erases all data from NVS and Flash **apart from**:

- The boot release file (a .rel file) and its release setting file
- v1 license files /.configs/.swfeature.lic
- v2 license files /.configs/.sw_v2.lic

The device is then rebooted to put it into a clean state. The device can then be used for automatic node recovery.

Any other user files that remain in Flash will be overwritten during the automatic recovery process. If there are any files stored in the Flash of the replacement device that need to be retained, back these files up prior to installing the device into the AMF network.

Manual Node Recovery

There are certain situations where automatic recovery may fail. Automatic recovery has been designed to be cautious in its approach to recovering nodes for reasons such as:

- The backup stored on the AMF master not having a “Good” status
- The replacement device having a release of the AlliedWare Plus Operating System installed on it that is old enough to be incompatible with AW+ on the neighbor or the master.

When these situations occur, automatic node recovery will fail.

In this failed state, the replacement device will have the AMF safe configuration mode applied (see “**AMF Safe Configuration Procedures**” on page 58.34). After investigating the failure and taking remedial action, you may want to initiate manual node recovery. To do this, enter the following command:

```
amf1# atmf recover {<node_name>} {<master_node_name>}
```

where:

- **node_name** is the host name of the device you wish to recover.
- **master_node_name** is the host name of the AMF master that contains the backup you want to use for the recovery.

The manual recovery command will bypass the usual checks performed by automatic node recovery. Make sure that the backup configuration stored on the specified AMF master is correct before you execute the command.

If you attempt to manually recover a node with the backup file of a node from a **different platform**, the release file from the backup will be incompatible and won't be copied to the replacement device. Instead, the existing release on the replacement device will be used, in order to ensure the device can join the AMF network and function correctly.

Figure 58-18: Example output showing manual recovery

```
amf1#atmf recover x510_1 Master
This command will erase ALL flash contents. Continue node recovery? (y/n)y
Manual node recovery successfully initiated
x510_1#23:15:32 x510_1 ATMFFSR[8477]: Retrieving recovery data from master node
Master
23:17:17 x510_1 ATMFFSR[8477]: Manual node recovery completed
x510_1#
```

Node Recovery on VCStacks

Node recovery on VCStacks that are part of an AMF network is somewhat different to node recovery of standalone devices.

This is because VCStack has its own node recovery mechanism that has different requirements to AMF.

In the extremely unlikely situation of needing to replace an entire VCStack that is a member of an AMF network, you can use AMF automatic node recovery to first recover Stack ID 1, which will become the VCStack master.

The replacement device which will become the VCStack master must be a clean unit (see [“Restoring a Node to a “Clean” State” on page 58.31](#)).

The procedure for recovering an entire stack is as follows:

1. Connect a clean device to the AMF network, and power it on. The connections into the AMF network should be between the appropriately configured AMF links on the neighboring node, and the ports previously configured as AMF links in the backup for the failed node configuration.
2. The AMF network should detect the replacement device and begin automatic node recovery. Wait until automatic node recovery completes, then check that the replacement device has come up correctly as VCStack ID 1, and that the configuration is correct.
3. Configure the next replacement device as VCStack ID 2. Ensure it is installed with a compatible release and the same set of licenses that exist on ID 1. Connect the VCStack cables and power it on.
4. VCStack ID 1 should detect ID 2 and synchronize the configuration and firmware release. Once this has completed, check that the VCStack has formed correctly, and then connect the remaining network connections.

For any additional VCStack members, repeat the last two steps, ensuring that the VCStack ID is set to the next sequential value for each additional device that is added to the VCStack.

For more information on VC Stacking, see:

- [“VCStack Introduction” on page 113.2](#)
- [“Replacing a stack member” on page 113.36](#)

AMF Safe Configuration

If AMF automatic node recovery fails, AMF contains a safety net feature that puts the replacement node into a safe configuration state. This is to prevent an unconfigured device from joining the network and creating loops.

Detecting AMF Safe Configuration Operation

A log message will be generated when AMF safe configuration is applied. This message will appear in the log some time after the startup sequence.

The message will also be output to the console or any connected VTY session.

AMF Safe Configuration Procedures

The procedures for AMF safe configuration are shown below:

- A special VLAN is created in the disabled state and given the name `atmf_node_recovery_safe_vlan`. The VID of this VLAN is determined dynamically to ensure that it does not conflict with either of the AMF management VLANs, or any other VLANs that are detected on the AMF network.
- All ports are removed from their default VLAN membership (VLAN 1).
- All ports are set as tagged members of the safe VLAN.
- Additionally, all ports that are not an AMF link or cross-link are shut down. The links and crosslinks are detected by AMF and added to the dynamic configuration. This is done to ensure correct behavior of static aggregators and Layer 3 protocols configured on the neighboring devices.

Figure 58-19: Example output from the `show vlan` command with the `brief` parameter set for a device in AMF safe configuration mode

```
awplus#sh vlan brief
VLAN ID  Name                Type      State  Member ports  (u)-Untagged, (t)-Tagged
=====  =====
1        default              STATIC    ACTIVE
4090     atmf_node_recovery_safe_vlan
                STATIC    SUSPEND  port1.0.1(t)  port1.0.2(t)  port1.0.3(t)
                port1.0.4(t)  port1.0.5(t)  port1.0.6(t)
                port1.0.7(t)  port1.0.8(t)  port1.0.9(t)
                port1.0.10(t) port1.0.11(t)
                port1.0.12(t) port1.0.13(t)
                port1.0.14(t) port1.0.15(t)
                port1.0.16(t) port1.0.17(t)
                port1.0.18(t) port1.0.19(t)
                port1.0.20(t) port1.0.21(t)
                port1.0.22(t) port1.0.23(t)
                port1.0.24(t)
```

Figure 58-20: Example output from the show running-config command for a device in AMF safe configuration mode

```
atmf1#show running-config
...
!
vlan database
  vlan 4090 name atmf_node_recovery_safe_vlan
  vlan 4090 state disable
!
interface port1.0.1-1.0.4
  shutdown
  switchport
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan add 4090
  switchport trunk native vlan none
!
interface port1.0.5
  switchport
  switchport atmf-link
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan add 4090
  switchport trunk native vlan none
!
interface port1.0.6-1.0.24
  shutdown
  switchport
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan add 4090
  switchport trunk native vlan none
!
...
```

Undoing an AMF Safe Configuration

If your node has had AMF safe configuration applied, you can use normal CLI configuration commands to modify the running-configuration to whatever configuration is required.

See below for an example of returning a device from AMF safe configuration mode to having default VLAN and port settings. Note that in this example a 24-port device has been used.

```
atmf1[2]# configure terminal
atmf1[2](config)# interface port1.0.1-port1.0.24
atmf1[2](config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 1
atmf1[2](config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan remove 4090
atmf1[2](config-if)# switchport mode access
% port1.0.5 has ATMF link configured so
its mode cannot be changed
```

```

atmf1[2](config-if)# no shutdown

atmf1[2](config-if)# exit

atmf1[2](config-if)# vlan database

atmf1[2](config-if)# no vlan 4090

atmf1[2](config-if)# end

```

In order to retain connectivity to the AMF network, AMF link and crosslink settings should not be changed. In the example above you can see that port 1.0.5 is an automatically configured AMF link. You can also see the error message indicating it was skipped by the **“switchport mode access” on page 17.16**. This is because AMF links must be in trunk mode.

Caution  No changes should be made to the device's configuration while a node recovery is underway. A log message will appear on the console or other logged in session indicating when recovery has finished (whether successfully or with errors). This message can also be found by viewing the log with the command **“show log” on page 10.37**.

Using the Unified CLI with Working-Sets

The unified CLI is a central component of AMF. It provides you with a configuration and display interface that can control a selected collection of nodes, or the entire AMF network, from a single point. This control is provided through the **atmf working-set** command.

The working-set An AMF working-set is a set of nodes that can be collectively configured from a single device. Working sets can either **arbitrarily user defined** or **automatically created** (a pre-defined working-set). Specifying or selecting a working-set enables CLI commands to be executed on all nodes within the working-set by using a single command. A working-set can be defined, selected, and configured from any node within an AMF network.

Note  For security reasons you can limit the action of working sets by applying “restrictive login.” For more information, see **“atmf restricted-login” on page 59.47**

By default, when you first log into a node that is part of an AMF network, you are implicitly placed into the working-set group **local**, a working-set that contains only the local node. In this instance the CLI prompt when you log in will be either:

- the host-name, if one has been assigned, or
- in the case of a new node in safe mode, a host name based on its MAC address followed by the usual prompt (> or #)

```

Node1> enable

Node1#

```

To create a working set containing a set of nodes use the command **atmf working-set** followed by a comma separated list of the nodes you wish to control. Whenever you select a working set containing any nodes other than the local device, the CLI prompt will display the AMF network name, followed by the number of nodes contained in the working set in square brackets (**atmf1[2]** in the following example).

```

Node1# atmf working-set Node1,Node2
-----
Node1,Node2
-----
Working set join
-----
atmf1[2]#
    
```

To return to just controlling the local device from any other working set, use the command **atmf working-set group local**.

Working-Set Groups

AMF contains the ability to have working-set groups, so that it is not always necessary to use a comma separated list to specify a working-set.

AMF working-set groups can be split into two types:

- Automatic
- User-defined

Automatic working-set groups

There are three automatic working-set groups that will exist on every AMF network:

1. *All*—all nodes within the AMF network.
2. *Current*—the current working-set of nodes. This group is useful for adding additional nodes to the current working-set.
3. *Local*—the local device

In any AMF network there will also be a number of other automatic working-set groups that are dependent on the platform types which exist within the network. To see the platform dependent automatic working-set groups that exist on the AMF network use the command **show atmf group** with the automatic parameter:

```

x908_VCS_1#show atmf group members automatic

Retrieving Automatic groups from:
x510_1 Master x908_VCS_2 x908_VCS_1

ATMF Group membership

Automatic      Total
Groups         Members  Members
poe            1        Master
x510           1        x510_1
SBx8100        1        Master
x900           2        x908_VCS_2 x908_VCS_1
    
```

To select a working-set group use the **atmf working-set** command with the group parameter, followed by the group name. You can specify a single group, a comma-separated list of groups, or a comma-separated list of individual nodes followed by a comma-separated list of groups:

```
x908_VCS_1# atmf working-set x510_1,x510_2 group x900
x510_1, x510_2, x908_VCS_1, x908_VCS_2
Working set join
atmf1[4]#
```

If you specify a partially invalid working-set node list or group list, only the valid nodes or groups will join the working set. If you specify a completely invalid working-set, you will create a working-set containing no nodes. The switch will generate a warning message to alert you that the current working-set is empty:

```
atmf1[3]# atmf working-set group x511
% Warning - working set is now empty
atmf1[0]#
```

User-defined working-set groups

In addition to the automatic working-set groups, you can create user-defined groups for arbitrary sets of nodes that you wish to group together, for example, all AMF master nodes.

To create a user-defined working-set group:

1. Create a working-set containing the desired nodes.
2. In global configuration mode use the command **“atmf group (membership)”** on [page 59.19](#).

```
Master# atmf working-set Master1,Master2
Working set join
atmf1[2]# conf t
atmf1[2]# atmf group new-group-name
```

You can see all user-defined working-set groups that exist on the AMF network with the command **“show atmf group members”** on page 59.68:

```
x908_VCS_1#show atmf group members user-defined
```

```
Retrieving Automatic groups from:
x510_1 Master1, Master2, x908_VCS_2 x908_VCS_1
```

```
ATMF Group membership
```

| User-defined Groups | Total Members | Members |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Masters | 2 | Master1 Master2 |

```
Master#
```

Executing Commands on Working-Sets

Executing commands on a working-set of nodes is very similar to executing commands on a single AlliedWare Plus device.

When a command is executed that is valid for all nodes within the working-set, the output is displayed for each of the nodes separately. However, output will be grouped when it is the same for more than one node.

Here is an example output of the **show arp** command run from a working-set:

```

atmf1[4]#show arp
=====
Master:
=====

  IP Address      MAC Address      Interface      Port      Type
  172.31.0.1      eccd.6d7d.a542   ATMF           sa1       dynamic
  172.31.0.3      0000.cd2b.0329   ATMF           sa1       dynamic
  172.31.0.10     0000.cd37.0163   ATMF           sa1       dynamic

=====
x510_1:
=====

  IP Address      MAC Address      Interface      Port      Type
  172.31.0.2      eccd.6d03.10f9   ATMF           sa4       dynamic

=====
x908_VCS_1:
=====

  IP Address      MAC Address      Interface      Port      Type
  172.31.0.2      0000.cd37.1050   ATMF           sa1       dynamic

=====
x908_VCS_2:
=====

  IP Address      MAC Address      Interface      Port      Type
  172.31.0.2      0000.cd37.1050   ATMF           sa3       dynamic

atmf1[4]#

```

Invalid working-set commands

Some commands can only be executed on *certain* nodes within the working-set. In this case the command will be attempted on all nodes within the working-set. For any node for which the command is not valid, the command execution will fail and the output displayed will indicate the nodes on which the command succeeded and nodes on which the command failed.

Below is example output from the **show card** command run from a working-set, which is only a valid command for the SBx8100 series switches.

```

atmf1[4]# show card
=====
Master:
=====

Slot Card Type          State
-----
1    AT-SBx81GP24       Online
2    AT-SBx81GP24       Online
3    AT-SBx81GP24       Online
4    AT-SBx81XS6        Online
5    AT-SBx81CFC400     Online (Active)
6    -                  -
7    -                  -
8    -                  -
9    -                  -
10   -                  -
11   -                  -
12   -                  -
-----

=====
x510_1, x908_VCS_1, x908_VCS_2:
=====
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
    
```

Sub-configuration limitations for some nodes in a working-set

There will be some instances where a sub-configuration mode is only valid for some of the nodes in the working-set. One example of this would be when entering interface configuration mode for a port that exists on some members of the working-set and not on others. For example:

```

atmf1[4]# conf t

atmf1[4](config)# int port1.1.1

% Can't find interface port1.1.1

atmf1[4:2](config-if)# conf t
    
```

In the example above the interface **port1.1.1** exists on two of the nodes in the working-set, but doesn't exist on nodes "Master" or "x510_1". The interface configuration mode fails for these nodes, and a warning message is output to indicate this. Inside the square brackets, the first number indicates the total number of nodes in the working-set, and the second number indicates the number of nodes in the sub-configuration mode that has been entered. Any configuration commands configured in this mode will only be executed on the nodes that successfully entered the sub-configuration mode.

Entering **exit** while in this mode will return to global configuration mode for all nodes within the working-set:

```

atmf1[4:2](config-if)# exit

atmf1[4](config)# (config)#
    
```

Interactive Commands

It is inappropriate to execute **interactive** commands simultaneously across multiple nodes within a working-set. These commands can only be executed on the local node working-set or on a working-set with a single member.

When any interactive commands are entered from within a working-set they will give an error:

```
atmf1[4]# ping 4.2.2.1
```

```
% Working set must contain only single node for this command
```

The list of current interactive commands, including any optional parameters, are:

- ping
- mtrace/mstat
- traceroute
- boot system
- boot configuration-file
- banner login
- tcpdump
- edit
- copy
- mail
- delete
- move
- terminal monitor

Rolling-Reboot Firmware Upgrade

The rolling-reboot firmware upgrade feature enables nodes within an AMF network to be rebooted and upgraded in a rolling sequence so that downtime and management overheads are minimized. First, specify a set of nodes within the AMF network using the **atmf working-set** command, then use the **atmf reboot-rolling** command. All nodes in the specified working-set will be rebooted and upgraded one by one, starting with the nodes furthest from the core domain, and ending with nodes closest to, or in, the core domain.

Once the rebooted node has finished running its configuration and has brought its ports up, it re-joins the AMF network and the next node in the working-set is rebooted and upgraded.

Note The **atmf rolling-reboot** command can also be used to reboot a set of nodes without upgrading the firmware.



To upgrade firmware, a download URL can be selected from any media location.

Supported media locations include:

- flash:
- card:
- usb:
- tftp:
- scp:
- http:

The latest compatible release for a node will be selected from one of these locations. Several checks need to be performed to ensure the upgrade will succeed. This includes checking that the current node release boots from Flash and that there is enough space in Flash on this node. The new release name is updated using the **boot system backup** command. The old release will become the backup release file.

Note that if the release file is to be copied from a remote location (e.g. via TFTP or HTTP), the URL should specify the exact release filename without using wild card characters.

The node is rebooted and the new software version will be used. On bootup, the software release is verified. Should an upgrade fail, the upgrading unit will fail back to its old software version. At the completion of this command, a report is run showing the release upgrade status of each node.

The **force** parameter enforces a node reboot, even though the node may not be suitable for upgrading software. This command can take a significant amount of time to complete.

Note Rolling-reboot firmware upgrades can be performed on a working-set that includes the controlling node, although in this instance the user will not be presented with a summary report upon completion.



Here is an example of a Rolling-reboot firmware upgrade summary report:

```

=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot Complete
Node Name      Reboot Status      Release Name          Release Status
-----
Node1          Rebooted           x510-main-20121018-2.rel  Upgraded
Node2          Rebooted           x900-main-20121018-2.rel  Upgraded
Node3          Rebooted           x900-main-20121018-2.rel  Upgraded
Node4          Rebooted           x510-main-20121018-2.rel  Upgraded
=====
    
```

Performing a Rolling-Reboot Upgrade

To perform a Rolling-reboot firmware upgrade on all nodes in the AMF network, first select all nodes using the default working-set group **all**:

```
SBSBx8100# atmf working-set group all
```

```
SBSBx8100, SBx908-VCS1, SBx908-VCS2, x510_1, x510_2:
```

```
Working set join
```

Next, using the **atmf reboot-rolling** command, specify the path to the release files to use for the upgrade. In the following example the release files are stored on the external USB storage media installed in the node controlling the Rolling-reboot firmware upgrade, in a directory called "rel". Note that because the node controlling the Rolling-reboot firmware upgrade is included in the nodes to be upgraded, a message is output indicating that no summary will be available on completion.

```
csg_vcf[5]#atmf reboot-rolling usb:/rel/*.rel
Retrieving data from SBSBx8100
Retrieving data from SBx908-VCS2
Retrieving data from x510_1
Retrieving data from x510_2
Retrieving data from SBx908-VCS1

ATMF Rolling Reboot Nodes:

Node Name                Timeout
                        (Minutes)  New Release File           Status
-----
x510_2                    9          x510-main-20121203-1.rel   Release ready
x510_1                    6          x510-main-20121203-1.rel   Release ready
SBx908-VCS1               9          x900-main-20121203-1.rel   Release ready
SBx908-VCS2               9          x900-main-20121203-1.rel   Release ready
SBSBx8100                 11         SBx81CFC400-main-20121203
                        -1.rel       Release ready

% The controlling node (SBSBx8100) is included in the
rolling reboot and will be rebooted last.
No summary will be available on completion.
Continue upgrading releases ? (y/n):
=====
Copying Release      : x510-main-20121203-1.rel to x510_2
Updating Release    : x510-main-20121203-1.rel information on x510_2
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting x510_2
=====
02:11:32 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_2 has left. 4 members in total.

% x510_2 has left the working-set
02:13:30 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_2 has joined. 5 members in total.
Reboot of x510_2 has completed
```

Although in this example no summary report was generated, you can refer to the progress messages output on the console to confirm that the upgrades were successful. You can also use the **atmf working-set** and the **show boot** commands to confirm the current boot image for each node in the AMF network.

```

=====
Copying Release      : x510-main-20121203-1.rel to x510_1
Updating Release     : x510-main-20121203-1.rel information on x510_1
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting x510_1
=====
02:14:13 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_1 has left. 4 members in total.

% x510_1 has left the working-set
02:15:53 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_1 has joined. 5 members in total.
Reboot of x510_1 has completed

=====

Copying Release      : x900-main-20121203-1.rel to SBx908-VCS1
Updating Release     : x900-main-20121203-1.rel information on SBx908-VCS1
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SBx908-VCS1
=====
02:19:02 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_1 has left. 4 members in total.
02:19:02 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: SBx908-VCS1 has left. 3 members in total.

% SBx908-VCS1 has left the working-set
02:20:48 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: SBx908-VCS1 has joined. 4 members in total.
Reboot of SBx908-VCS1 has completed
02:20:51 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_1 has joined. 5 members in total.
=====
Copying Release      : x900-main-20121203-1.rel to SBx908-VCS2
Updating Release     : x900-main-20121203-1.rel information on SBx908-VCS2
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SBx908-VCS2
=====
02:21:54 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_2 has left. 4 members in total.
02:21:54 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: SBx908-VCS2 has left. 3 members in total.

% SBx908-VCS2 has left the working-set
02:23:35 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: SBx908-VCS2 has joined. 4 members in total.
Reboot of SBx908-VCS2 has completed
=====
Copying Release      : SBx81CFC400-main-20121203-1.rel to SBSBx8100
02:23:39 SBSBx8100 ATMF[1973]: x510_2 has joined. 5 members in total.
Updating Release     : SBx81CFC400-main-20121203-1.rel information on SBSBx8100
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SBSBx8100
=====
02:24:07 SBSBx8100 ATMF: reboot-rolling Rebooting SBSBx8100 at request of user
manager.

```

Node Provisioning

You can pre-configure, or provision, a port for a future node before the node is added to the network. A provisioned node can be created as a new unique entity, or can be cloned using the backup data from an existing node. When you connect the new node to the provisioned port in the AMF network, its configuration is loaded from the information stored in the backup media.

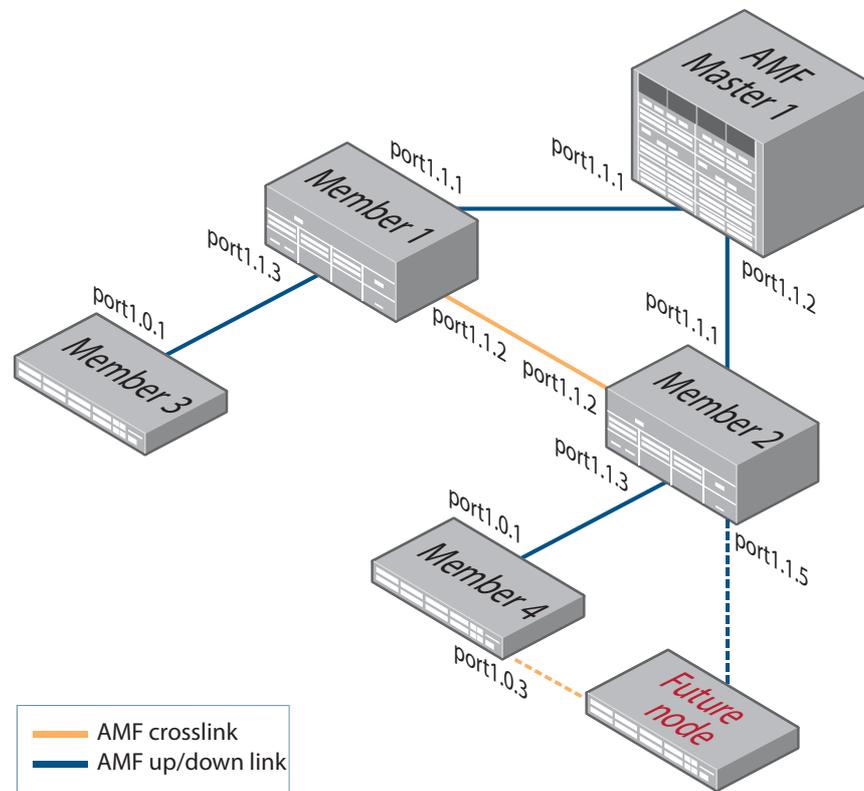
AMF commands are used to create and configure a provisioned node and to specify the port(s) that the node is expected to appear on.

When to use node provisioning

Node provisioning can be used in these instances:

- For future extension of the AMF network. You can pre-configure future AMF network nodes via the **atmf provision node** commands. The following figure illustrates the position of a future, provisioned node. Port1.1.5 on Member 2 and port1.0.3 on Member 4 would need to be configured to expect the future node

Figure 58-21: Provisioning for a future node



- For replacing an existing node with a new node of a **different platform** (e.g. replacing an x310 switch with an x510), and/or with a **different host name**. Using the **atmf provision node** commands you can configure the ports on adjacent nodes to accept a replacement AMF member.

Note If you are replacing an existing node with a new node of the **same platform and host name**, refer to **“Node Recovery” on page 58.30**. In this case, node provisioning is not necessary, and node recovery will suffice.

Creating a new provisioned node

You can pre-configure nodes by **creating** a new directory or by **cloning** an existing node (see [Table 58-7](#) and [Table 58-8](#)).

These two methods can briefly be described as:

1. Using the command “[atmf provision node create](#)” on page 59.33.

This command creates an “empty” directory to which release and configuration files can be added for use on a future node. You can copy configuration and release files from existing switches into the new directory. Alternatively, you can create the configuration files by following the instructions in these sections:

« [“Creating and Using Configuration Files” on page 6.8](#)

« [“Configuring AMF” on page 58.11.](#)

2. Using the command “[atmf provision node clone](#)” on page 59.29.

This command creates a new directory and copies most settings and files from another backup or provisioned node. You can make additional changes manually to these files, if needed.

We recommend that you select the donor node to be as close as possible to the new node, and for it to contain the same number of ports. This will limit the number of manual changes that will be required to the replicated configuration of the new node.

AMF stores the configuration files for the provisioned node on the master node’s backup media or a remote backup server. These files are automatically loaded onto the new node’s Flash when it is introduced to the network.

Configuring adjacent nodes

You need to configure the AMF links and cross-links on the adjacent node before the new node is connected. Later, when the provisioned node is introduced to the AMF network, the adjacent node(s) will recognize it and the new node will automatically join the AMF network.

If you plan to **replace** an existing AMF node with one that has a **different host name**, use the [“atmf provision” on page 59.28](#) to configure the adjacent node to expect the new node in the future. This command is used to configure all AMF links and cross-links to the new node (excluding virtual links).

If you plan to **extend** your AMF network via ports that have not been used before, you must first fully configure the ports beforehand. Such configuration includes using the [“atmf provision” on page 59.28](#) and other commands, some of which are shown in **Step d** in [Table 58-7](#).

More information on configuring switches can be found in [“Creating and Using Configuration Files” on page 6.8](#).

[Table 58-7 on page 58.49](#) outlines the procedures to follow if you want to:

- **create** a provisioned node.
- configure the existing node(s) that the provisioned node will eventually connect to.

[Table 58-8 on page 58.50](#) outlines the procedures to follow if you want to:

- **clone** a provisioned node.
- configure the existing node(s) that the provisioned node will eventually connect to.

Table 58-7: Procedure for creating a provisioned node and configuring its adjacent node(s)

| | |
|--|---|
| Step a. Enter Privileged Exec mode | <pre>Member_4>enable</pre> |
| Step b. Set the name of the provisioned node to "future_node" | <pre>Member_4#atmf provision node future_node create</pre> <p>This command sets up an empty directory on the backup media for use with a provisioned node.</p> |
| Step c. Copy and set release file | <p>To copy a release file from member4's Flash into the future_node directory, and set that release file to load onto future_node when it first boots up, enter the following commands:</p> <pre>Member_4#atmf provision node future_node locate Member_4#copy flash:member4.rel ./future_node.rel Member_4#atmf provision node future_node configure boot system future_node.rel</pre> <p>OR</p> <pre>Member_4#atmf provision node future_node locate Member_4#copy current-software member4.rel ./ future_node.rel Member_4#atmf provision node future_node configure boot system future_node.rel</pre> <p>For information on downloading AlliedWare Plus release files see the Download Centre at www.alliedtelesis.com/support For information on copying files see "Copying Files to and from Your Device" on page 1.16</p> |
| Step d. Copy and set configuration file | <p>To copy a configuration file named current.cfg from member4's Flash into the future_node directory, and set that configuration file to load onto future_node when it first boots up, enter the following commands:</p> <pre>Member_4#atmf provision node future_node locate Member_4#copy flash:current.cfg ./future_node.cfg Member_4#atmf provision node future_node configure boot config future_node.cfg</pre> <p>For information on configuring a switch see "Creating and Using Configuration Files" on page 1.11 For information on configuring a switch for AMF see "Configuring AMF" on page 58.11</p> |
| Step e. Edit configuration file if necessary. | <p>Note that it is important to give the provisioned node a unique hostname. To alter the config file in the AlliedWare Plus text editor, use the edit command on page 1.30. For information on configuring a switch see "Creating and Using Configuration Files" on page 1.11 For information on configuring a switch for AMF see "Configuring AMF" on page 58.11</p> |

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Step f. Copy and set license file</p> | <p>To copy a license certificate named <code>member_4.txt</code> from member4's Flash into the <code>future_node</code> directory, and set that license certificate to load onto <code>future_node</code> when it first boots up, enter the following commands:</p> <pre>Member_4#atmf provision node future_node locate Member_4#copy flash:member_4.txt ./future_node.txt Member_4#atmf provision node future_node license-cert future_node.txt</pre> <p>For information on licensing for AMF see the atmf provision node license-cert command on page 1.37 and the Licensing Introduction and Configuration chapter in your switch's Software Reference.</p> |
| <p>Step g. Configure the port node(s) that will be connected to the provisioned node. In this example, port1.0.3 on member4 is being configured as an AMF link and to expect the provisioned node <code>future_node</code></p> | <pre>Member_4#configure terminal Member_4(config)#interface port1.0.3 Member_4(config-if)#switchport atmf-link Member_4(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan none Member_4(config-if)#atmf provision future_node Member_4(config-if)#exit Member_4(config)#exit Member_4#atmf working-set group local</pre> <p>Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy.</p> <p>Step g can be repeated to configure the ports on other adjacent nodes that will be connected to the provisioned node.</p> |

Table 58-8: Procedure for cloning a provisioned node and configuring its adjacent nodes

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Step a. Enter Privileged Exec mode</p> | <pre>AMF_Master1>enable</pre> |
| <p>Step b. Set the name of the provisioned node to "future_node". In this example, the provisioned node will be a clone of member_3</p> | <pre>AMF_Master1#atmf provision node future_node clone member_3</pre> <p>If further changes are required, follow the commands shown in Step c in the table above.</p> |
| <p>Step c. Configure the port node(s) that will be connected to the provisioned node. In this example, port1.0.3 on member_4 is being configured as an AMF link and to expect the provisioned node <code>future_node</code></p> | <pre>AMF_Master1#atmf working-set member_4 member_4#configure terminal member_4(config)#interface port1.0.3 member_4(config-if)#switchport atmf-link member_4(config-if)#switchport trunk native vlan none member_4(config-if)#atmf provision future_node member_4(config-if)#exit member_4(config)#exit member_4#atmf working-set group local AMF_Master1#</pre> <p>Note that AMF links and crosslinks do not need to be configured with data VLANs and can be used solely to provide AMF management VLAN redundancy.</p> <p>Step c can be repeated to configure the ports on other adjacent nodes to expect the provisioned node.</p> |

Connecting a provisioned node to an AMF network

When you add the new node to the AMF network, its settings and files are automatically downloaded from the master node's backup media, or a remote backup server, to the new node's Flash.

All you need to do is cable the new device into the network. The switch's port LEDs will flash to show that its settings are being loaded. Progressive strobing of all the port LEDs indicates that a recovery is underway. For more information on the node recovery LEDs see **"Recovery progress indication" on page 58.31**.

The following example shows the expected output when a provisioned node named *future_node* joins the AMF network to replace a node called *member_5*.

```
21:57:35 awplus ATMF[999]: ATMF network detected
21:57:35 awplus ATMF[999]: ATMF safe config applied (forwarding disabled)
21:57:45 awplus ATMF[999]: Shutting down all non ATMF ports
21:57:45 awplus ATMF[999]: member_5 has left. 0 member in total.
21:57:45 x510-2 ATMF[999]: future_node has joined. 1 member in total.
21:57:45 x510-2 ATMF[999]: Automatic node recovery started
21:57:45 x510-2 ATMF[999]: Attempting to recover as future_node
21:57:46 x510-2 ATMF[999]: Checking master node availability
21:57:52 x510-2 ATMF[999]: AMF_Master1 has joined. 2 members in total.
21:57:54 x510-2 ATMF[999]: member_1 has joined. 3 members in total.
21:57:56 x510-2 ATMF[999]: member_2 has joined. 4 members in total.
21:58:00 x510-2 ATMF[999]: member_3 has joined. 5 members in total.
21:58:03 x510-2 ATMF[999]: member_4 has joined. 6 members in total.
21:58:04 x510-2 ATMFFSR[6779]: Retrieving recovery data from master node
AMF_Master1
21:58:34 x510-2 ATMFFSR[6779]: Licence installed from certificate.
21:58:35 x510-2 ATMFFSR[6779]: File recovery from master node succeeded. Node will
now reboot
```


Chapter 59: AMF Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 59.3 |
| AMF Naming Convention | 59.3 |
| atmf backup | 59.4 |
| atmf backup bandwidth | 59.5 |
| atmf backup delete | 59.6 |
| atmf backup enable | 59.7 |
| atmf backup now | 59.8 |
| atmf backup server | 59.10 |
| atmf backup stop | 59.12 |
| atmf backup synchronize | 59.13 |
| atmf cleanup | 59.14 |
| atmf distribute firmware | 59.15 |
| atmf domain vlan | 59.17 |
| atmf enable | 59.18 |
| atmf group (membership) | 59.19 |
| atmf log-verbose | 59.21 |
| atmf management subnet | 59.22 |
| atmf management vlan | 59.24 |
| atmf master | 59.26 |
| atmf network-name | 59.27 |
| atmf provision | 59.28 |
| atmf provision node clone | 59.29 |
| atmf provision node configure boot config | 59.31 |
| atmf provision node configure boot system | 59.32 |
| atmf provision node create | 59.33 |
| atmf provision node delete | 59.35 |
| atmf provision node license-cert | 59.37 |
| atmf provision node locate | 59.39 |
| atmf reboot-rolling | 59.40 |
| atmf recover | 59.44 |
| atmf recover led-off | 59.45 |
| atmf remote-login | 59.46 |
| atmf restricted-login | 59.47 |
| atmf virtual-link id ip remote-id remote-ip | 59.48 |
| atmf working-set | 59.50 |
| clear atmf links statistics | 59.51 |
| debug atmf | 59.52 |
| debug atmf packet | 59.54 |
| erase factory-default | 59.57 |
| show atmf | 59.58 |
| show atmf backup | 59.62 |
| show atmf detail | 59.64 |
| show atmf group | 59.66 |
| show atmf group members | 59.68 |
| show atmf links | 59.69 |
| show atmf links detail | 59.70 |
| show atmf links statistics | 59.76 |

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| show atmf memory | 59.79 |
| show atmf nodes..... | 59.81 |
| show atmf provision nodes | 59.82 |
| show atmf tech | 59.83 |
| show atmf working-set | 59.85 |
| show debugging atmf..... | 59.86 |
| show debugging atmf packet | 59.87 |
| show running-config atmf..... | 59.88 |
| switchport atmf-crosslink | 59.89 |
| switchport atmf-link..... | 59.91 |
| type atmf node | 59.92 |

Introduction

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for AMF commands.

AMF Naming Convention

When AMF is enabled on a switch, it will automatically be assigned a host name. If a host name has already been assigned, by using the command **“hostname” on page 8.13**, this will remain. If however, no host name has been assigned, then the name applied will be the prefix, **host_** followed (without a space) by the MAC address of the device. For example, a device whose MAC address is **0016.76b1.7a5e** will have the name **host_0016_76b1_7a5e** assigned to it.

To efficiently manage your network using AMF, we strongly advise that you devise a naming convention for your network switches, and accordingly apply an appropriate hostname to each switch in your AMF network.

atmf backup

This command can only be applied to a master node. It manually schedules an AMF backup to start at a specified time and to execute a specified number of times per day.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the schedule.

Syntax `atmf backup {default|<hh:mm> frequency <1-24>}`
`no atmf backup enable`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| default | Restore the default backup schedule. |
| <hh:mm> | Sets the time of day to apply the first backup, in hours and minutes. Note that this parameter uses the 24 hour clock. |
| backup | Enables AMF backup to external media. |
| frequency <1-24> | Sets the number of times within a 24 hour period that backups will be taken. |

Default Backups run daily at 03:00 AM, by default

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Running this command only configures the schedule. To enable the schedule, you should then apply the command **atmf backup enable**.

Example To schedule backup requests to begin at 11 am and execute twice per day (11 am and 11 pm), use the following command:

```
VCF_1# configure terminal
VCF_1(config)# atmf backup 11:00 frequency 2
```

Caution



File names that comprise identical text, but with differing case, such as Test.txt and test.txt, will not be recognized as being different on a FAT32 based backup media such as a USB storage device. However, these filenames will be recognized as being different on your Linux based switch. Therefore, for good practice, ensure that you apply a consistent case structure for your back-up file names.

Related Commands **atmf backup enable**
atmf backup stop
show atmf backup

atmf backup bandwidth

This command sets the maximum bandwidth in kilobytes per second (kBps) available to the AMF backup process. This command enables you to restrict the bandwidth that is utilized for downloading file contents during a backup.

Note This command will only run on an AMF master. An error message will be generated if the command is attempted on node that is not a master.



Also note that setting the bandwidth value to zero will allow the transmission of as much bandwidth as is available, which can exceed the maximum configurable speed of 100 kBps. So effectively, zero means unlimited.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset (to its default value of zero) the maximum bandwidth in kilobytes per second (kBps) available when initiating an AMF backup. A value of zero tells the backup process to transfer files using unlimited bandwidth.

Syntax `atmf backup bandwidth <0-1000>`

`no atmf backup bandwidth`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><0-1000></code> | Sets the bandwidth in kilobytes per second (kBps) |

Default The default value is zero, allowing unlimited bandwidth when executing an AMF backup.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set an atmf backup bandwidth of 750 kBps, use the commands:

```
node2# configure terminal
node2(config)# atmf backup bandwidth 750
```

To set the atmf backup bandwidth to the default value for unlimited bandwidth, use the commands:

```
node2# configure terminal
node2(config)# no atmf backup bandwidth
```

Related Commands [show atmf backup](#)

atmf backup delete

This command removes the backup file from the external media of a specified AMF node.

Syntax `atmf backup delete <node name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><node name></code> | The AMF node name of the backup file to be deleted. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To delete the backup file from node2, use the following command:

```
Node_1# atmf backup delete node2
```

Related Commands [show atmf backup](#)
[atmf backup now](#)
[atmf backup stop](#)

atmf backup enable

This command enables automatic AMF backups on the AMF master node that you are connected to. By default, automatic backup starts at 3:00 AM. However, this schedule can be changed by the [atmf backup command on page 59.4](#). Note that backups are initiated and stored only on the master nodes.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable any AMF backups that have been scheduled and previously enabled.

Syntax atmf backup enable
no atmf backup enable

Default Automatic AMF backup functionality is enabled on the AMF master when it is configured and external media, i.e. an SD card or a USB storage device or remote server, is detected.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage A warning message will appear if you run the **atmf backup enable** command with either insufficient or marginal memory availability on your external storage device.

You can use the command **“show atmf backup” on page 59.62** to check the amount of space available on your external storage device.

Example To turn on automatic AMF backup, use the following command:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup enable
```

Related Commands [show atmf](#)
[show atmf backup](#)
[atmf backup](#)
[atmf backup now](#)
[atmf enable](#)

atmf backup now

This command initiates an immediate AMF backup of either all AMF members, or a selected AMF member. Note that this backup information is stored in the external media on the master node of the switch on which this command is run, even though the selected AMF member may not be a master node.

Syntax `atmf backup now [<nodename>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <nodename> or <hostname> | The name of the AMF member to be backed up - as set by the command " hostname " on page 8.13. Where no name has been assigned to this device, then you must apply the prefix, host underscore followed (without a space) by the MAC address of the device to be backed up. For example <code>host_0016_76b1_7a5e</code> Note that the node-name appears as the command Prompt when in Privileged Exec mode. |

Default A backup is initiated for all nodes on the AMF (but stored on the master nodes).

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage Although this command will select the AMF node to be backed-up; it can only be run from any AMF master node.

 **Note** The backup produced will be for the selected node but the backed-up config will reside on the external media of the AMF master node on which the command was run. However, this process will result in the information on one master being more up-to-date. To maintain concurrent backups on both masters, you can apply the backup now command to the master working-set. This is shown in "**Example 4**" on page 59.9.

Example 1 In this example, an AMF member has not been assigned a host name. The following command is run on the AMF_Master_2 node to immediately backup the device - identified by its MAC address of 0016.76b1.7a5e:

```
AMF_Master_2# atmf backup now host_0016_76b1_7a5e
```

 **Note** When a host name is derived from its MAC address, the syntax format entered changes from XXXX.XXXX.XXXX to XXXX_XXXX_XXXX.

Example 2 In this example, an AMF member has the host name, **office_annex**. The following command will immediately backup this device:

```
AMF_Master_2# atmf backup now office_annex
```

This command is initiated on the switch's master node named **AMF_Master_2** and initiates an immediate backup on the switch named **office_annex**.

Example 3 To initiate from AMF_master_1 an immediate backup of all AMF member nodes, use the following command:

```
AMF_Master_1# amf backup now
```

Example 4 To initiate an immediate backup of the node with the host-name “office_annex” and store the configuration on both masters, use the following process:

From the AMF_master_1, set the working-set to comprise only of the automatic group, master nodes.

```
AMF_Master_1# atmf working-set group master
```

This command returns the following display:

```
=====
AMF_Master_1, AMF_Master_2
=====

Working set join
```

Backup the AMF member with the host name, **office_annex** on both the master nodes as defined by the working set.

```
AMF_Master[2]# atmf backup now office_annex
```

Note that the [2] shown in the command prompt indicates a 2 node working-set.

Related Commands

- atmf backup**
- atmf backup stop**
- hostname**
- show atmf backup**

atmf backup server

This command configures remote file servers as the destination for AMF backups.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the destination server(s). When all servers are removed the system will revert to backup from external media.

Syntax `atmf backup server id {1/2} <hostlocation> username <username> [path <path> | port <1-65535>]`
`no atmf backup server id {1/2}`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| id | Remote server backup server identifier. |
| {1/2} | The backup server identifier number (1 or 2). Note that there can be up to two backup servers, numbered 1 and 2 respectively, and you would need to run this command separately for each server. |
| <hostlocation> | Either the name or the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the selected backup server (1 or 2). |
| username | Configure the username to log in with on the selected remote file server. |
| <username> | The selected remote file server's username. |
| path | The location of the backup files on the selected remote file server. By default this will be the home directory of the username used to log in with. |
| <path> | The directory path utilized to store the backup files on the selected remote file server. No spaces are allowed in the path. |
| port | The connection to the selected remote backup file server using SSH. By default SSH connects to a device on TCP port 22 but this can be changed with this command. |
| <1-65535> | A TCP port within the specified range. |

Defaults Remote backup servers are not configured. The default SSH TCP port is 22. The path utilized on the remote file server is the home directory of the username.

Mode Global Exec

Usage The hostname and username parameters must both be configured.

Examples To configure a remote backup server at 192.168.1.1 with the login username of backup1, the backup repository on atmf/network/location/ port 1024, use the command:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup server id 1 192.168.1.1
                        username backup1 path atmf/network/
                        location/port 1024
```

To configure server 1 with an ipv4 address and a username of backup1, use the commands:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup server id 1 192.168.1.1
                        username backup1
```

To configure server 1 with an ipv6 address and a username of backup1, use the command:

```
AMF_backup1_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup server id 1 FFEE::01 username
                        backup1
```

To configure server 2 with a hostname and username, use the command:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup server id 2 www.example.com
                        username backup2
```

To configure server 2 with a hostname and username in addition, the optional path and port parameters, use the command:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# atmf backup server id 2 www.example.com
                        username backup2 path tokyo port 1024
```

To unconfigure the AMF remote backup file server 1, use the command:

```
AMF_Master_1# configure terminal
AMF_Master_1(config)# no atmf backup server id 1
```

Related Commands [show atmf backup](#)

atmf backup stop

Running this command stops a backup that is currently running on the master node you are logged onto. Note that if you have two masters and want to stop both, then you can either run this command separately on each master node, or add both masters to a working set, and issue this command to the working set.

Syntax `atmf backup stop`

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is used to halt an AMF backup that is in progress. In this situation the backup process will finish on its current node and then stop.

Example To stop a backup that is currently executing on master node VCF-1, use the following command:

```
AMF_Master_1# amf backup stop
```

Related Commands [atmf backup](#)
[atmf backup enable](#)
[atmf backup now](#)
[show atmf backup](#)

atmf backup synchronize

For the master node you are connected to, this command initiates a system backup of files from the node's active remote file server to its backup remote file server. Note that this process happens automatically each time the network is backed up.

Syntax atmf backup synchronize

Mode Privileged Exec

Example When connected to the master node AMF_Master_1, the following command will initiate a backup of all system related files from its active remote file server to its backup remote file server.

```
AMF_Master_1# atmf backup synchronize
```

Related Commands [show atmf backup](#)
[atmf backup enable](#)
[show atmf](#)

atmf cleanup

This command erases all data from nvs and all data from Flash **excluding** the following:

- The current release file and its /flash/.release file
- The backup release file and /flash/.backup file
- v1 license files /flash/.configs/.swfeature.lic
- v2 license files /flash/.configs/.sw_v2.lic

It then reboots to put the device in a clean state ready to be used as a replacement node on a provisioned port.

Syntax atmf cleanup

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is an alias to the [erase factory-default](#) command on page 59.57.

Example To erase data, use the command:

```
Node_1(config)# atmf cleanup
```

```
This command will erase all NVS, all flash contents except  
for the boot release, and any license files, and then  
reboot the switch. Continue? (y/n):y
```

Related Commands [erase factory-default](#)

atmf distribute firmware

This command can be used to upgrade software one AMF node at a time. A URL can be selected from any media location. The latest compatible release for a node will be selected from this location.

Several procedures are performed to ensure the upgrade will succeed. This includes checking the current node release boots from flash. If there is enough space on flash the software release is copied to flash on the new location.

The new release name is updated using the **boot system** command. The old release will become the backup release file. If a release file exists in a remote device (such as TFTP or HTTP, for example) then the URL should specify the exact release filename without using a wild card character.

Supported units include x908, x8100, x610, x210 and all stack configurations.

The command will continue to upgrade software until all nodes are upgraded. At the end of the upgrade cycle the **reboot** command should be used on the working-set.

Syntax `atmf distribute firmware <url>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code><url></code> | The URL of the file. See “URL Syntax” on page 6.12 for valid URL syntax. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To upgrade nodes in a atmf network with a predefined AMF group called `sw_team`, use the following commands:

```
SW_Team1# atmf working-set group sw_team
```

Output

```
=====
SW_Team1, SW_Team2, SW_Team3:
=====

Working set join
```

```
ATMF_NETWORK[3]# atmf distribute firmware card:*.rel
```

Output

```
Retrieving data from SW_Team1
Retrieving data from SW_Team2
Retrieving data from SW_Team3

ATMF Firmware Upgrade:

Node Name           New Release File           Status
-----
SW_Team1            x510-main-20140204-2.rel   Release ready
SW_Team2            x610-main-20140204-2.rel   Release ready
SW_Team3            x610-main-20140204-2.rel   Release ready
Continue the rolling reboot ? (y/n):y
=====
Copying Release     : x510-main-20140204-2.rel to SW_Team1
Updating Release    : x510-main-20140204-2.rel information on SW_Team1
=====
Copying Release     : x610-main-20140204-2.rel to SW_Team2
Updating Release    : x610-main-20140204-2.rel information on SW_Team2
=====
Copying Release     : x610-main-20140204-2.rel to SW_Team3
Updating Release    : x610-main-20140204-2.rel information on SW_Team3
=====
New firmware will not take effect until nodes are rebooted.
=====

ATMF_NETWORK[3]#
```

Related Commands [atmf working-set](#)

atmf domain vlan

The AMF domain vlan is one of the internal VLANs that are used to communicate information about the state of the AMF network between nodes. AMF uses its internal VLANs (the management VLAN and the domain VLAN) to communicate its inter nodal network status information. These VLANs must be reserved for AMF and not used for other purposes.

When an AMF network is first created all its nodes are assigned a domain VLAN with a default (domain) VID of 4091. An important point conceptually is that although this VLAN then exists globally across the AMF network, it is assigned separately to each domain. The AMF network therefore can be thought of as comprising a series of domain VLANs each having the same VID and each being applied to a horizontal slice (domain) of the AMF. It follows therefore that the domain VLANs are only applied to ports that form cross-links and not to ports that form uplinks/downlinks.

If you assign a VLAN ID to this VLAN (i.e. changing its value from the default of 4091) then you will need to do this separately on every device within the AMF network. The AMF domain subnet will then be applied to this new VID when all devices within the AMF network are next rebooted.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the VLAN ID to its default value of 4091.

Syntax `atmf domain vlan <2-4090>`
`no atmf domain vlan .`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><2-4090></code> | The VLAN number in the range 2 to 4090. |

Default The default domain VLAN ID for the AMF is 4091.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The VLANs involved in this process, must be reserved for AMF and cannot be used for other purposes. This command enables you to change the domain VLAN to match your network's specific configuration.

Caution  Setting this command, then rebooting the switch will only apply the AMF VLAN for the switch being configured. The new domain vlan will not become effective for the AMF network until all its member nodes have been updated, and all its member switches rebooted.

As part of its automatic creation process, this VLAN will also be assigned an IP subnet address based on the value configured by the command **"atmf management subnet"** on [page 59.22](#). Refer to this command for more information.

Examples To change the AMF domain VLAN to 4000 use the following commands:

```

VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf domain vlan 4000
    
```

To reset the AMF domain VLAN to its default of 4091, use the following commands:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# no atmf domain vlan
```

atmf enable

This command manually enables (turns on) the AMF feature for the switch being configured.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable (turn off) the AMF feature on the member node.

Syntax atmf enable
no atmf enable

Default Once AMF is configured, the AMF feature starts automatically when the switch starts up.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The switch does not auto negotiate AMF domain specific settings such as the Network Name. You should therefore, configure your switch with any domain specific (non default) settings before enabling AMF.

Examples To turn on the AMF the feature:

```
MyNode# config terminal
MyNode(config)# atmf enable
```

To turn off the AMF feature:

```
MyNode(config)# no atmf enable
```

This command returns the following display:

```
% Warning: The ATMF network config has been set to enable
% Save the config and restart the system for this change to take
effect.
```

atmf group (membership)

This command configures a switch to be a member of one or more AMF groups. Groups exist in three forms: Implicit Groups, Automatic Groups, and User-defined Groups.

- Implicit Groups
 - « all - All nodes in the AMF
 - « current - The current working-set
 - « local - The originating node.

Note that the Implicit Groups do not appear in show group output.
- Automatic Groups - These are defined by hardware architecture, e.g. x510, x610, x900, x8100.
- User-defined Groups - These enable you to define arbitrary groups of AMF members based on your own criteria.

Each node in the AMF is automatically assigned membership to the implicit groups, and the automatic groups that are appropriate to its node type, e.g. x610, PoE. Similarly, nodes that are configured as masters are automatically assigned to the master group.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the membership.

Syntax `atmf group <group-list>`
`no atmf group <group-list>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><group-list></code> | A list of group names. These should be entered as a comma delimited list without spaces. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You can use this command to define your own arbitrary groups of AMF members based on your own network's configuration requirements. Applying a node to a non existing group will result in the group automatically being created.

Note that the master nodes are automatically assigned to be members of the pre-existing master group.

The following example configures the switch to be members of three groups; two are company departments, and one comprises all devices located in building_2. To avoid having to run this command separately on each device that is to be added to these groups, you can remotely assign all of these devices to a working-set, then use the capabilities of the working-set to apply the **atmf group (membership)** command to all members of the working set.

Example To specify the switch to become a member of AMF groups named, Marketing, Sales, and Building_2, use the following command:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf group marketing,sales,building_2
```

First add the nodes "master_node1" and "member_node_1" to the working-set:

```
master_node# atmf working-set master_node1,member_node_1
```

This command returns the following output confirming that the nodes "master_node" and "node_2" are now part of the working-set:

```
=====
master_node1, member_node_1
=====

Working set join
```

```
atmf-net[2]# configure terminal
```

Add the groups building1 and sales to the working-set

```
atmf-net[2](config)# atmf group building1,sales
atmf-net[2](config)# exit
```

Show the groups that are members of the working-set

```
atmf-net[2]# show atmf group
```

This command returns the following output displaying the groups that are members of the working-set.

```
=====
master_node1
=====

AMF group information

building1, sales, master, poe, x8100
```

Related Commands [show atmf group](#)
[show atmf group members](#)

atmf log-verbose

This command limits the number of log messages displayed on the console or permanently logged.

Syntax `atmf log-verbose <1-3>`
`no atmf log-verbose`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-3> | The verbose limitation (3 = noisiest, 1 = quietest) |

Default The default log display is 3.

Usage This command is intended for use in large networks where verbose output can make the console unusable for periods of time while nodes are joining and leaving.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the log-verbose to noise level 2, use the command:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf log-verbose 2
```

Validation Command `show atmf`

atmf management subnet

This command is used to assign a subnet that will be allocated to the AMF management and domain management VLANs. From the address space defined by this command, two subnets are created, a management subnet component and a domain component, as explained in the Usage section of this command description.

AMF uses these internal IPv4 subnets when exchanging its inter nodal status packets. These subnet addresses must be reserved for AMF and should be used for no other purpose.

The new management subnet will not become effective until all members of the AMF network have been updated and all its units rebooted.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the assigned subnet VLANs.

Syntax `atmf management subnet <a.b.0.0>`
`no atmf management subnet`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><a.b.0.0></code> | <p>The IP address selected for the management subnet. Because a mask of 255.255.0.0 (i.e. /16) will be applied automatically, an IP address in the format a.b.0.0 must be selected.</p> <p>Usually this subnet address is selected from an appropriate range from within the private address space of 172.16.0 to 172.31.255.255, or 192.168.0.0 as defined in RFC1918.</p> |

Default 172.31.0.0 (Note that a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 will automatically be applied).

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Typically a network administrator would use this command to change the default subnet address to match local network requirements.

As previously mentioned, running this command will result in the creation of a further two subnets (within the class B address space assigned) and the mask will extend from /16 to /17.

For example, if the management subnet is assigned the address 172.31.0.0/16, this will result in the automatic creation of the following two subnets:

- 172.31.0.0/17 assigned to the **atmf management vlan**
- 172.31.128.0/17 assigned to the **atmf domain vlan**.

Examples To change the AMF management subnet address on node VCF-1 to 172.25.0.0:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf management subnet 172.25.0.0
```

To change the AMF management subnet address on node VCF-1 back to its default of 172.31.0.0:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# no atmf management subnet
```

atmf management vlan

The AMF management VLAN is created when the AMF network is first initiated and is assigned its default VID of 4092. This command enables you to change the VID from this default value.

The AMF management vlan is one of the internal VLANs that are used to communicate information about the state of the AMF network between nodes. AMF uses its internal VLANs (such as the management VLAN and the domain VLAN) to communicate its inter nodal network status information. These VLANs must be reserved for AMF and not used for other purposes.

If you assign a VLAN ID to this VLAN (i.e. change its value from the default of 4092) then you will need to do this separately on every device within the AMF. The AMF management subnet will then be applied to this new VID when all devices within the AMF network are next rebooted.

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the VID to the default of 4092.

Syntax `atmf management vlan <2-4090>`

`no atmf management vlan`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code><2-4090></code> | The VID assigned to the AMF management VLAN. |

Default The default VLAN ID for the AMF is 4092.

Note  Although the value applied by default lies outside the user configurable range. You can use the “no” form of this command to reset the VLAN to its default value.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage You can use this command to change the management VLAN to meet your network’s requirements and standards, particularly in situations where the default address value is unacceptable.

Note  This VLAN will automatically be assigned an IP subnet address based on the value configured by the command **“atmf management subnet”** on [page 59.22](#). Refer to this command description for further details.

Examples To change the AMF management VLAN to 4090 use the following commands:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf management vlan 4090
```

To reset the AMF domain VLAN to its default of 4092, use the following commands:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# no atmf management vlan
```

Related Commands [atmf domain vlan](#)
 [show atmf](#)

atmf master

This command configures the switch to be an AMF master node and automatically creates an AMF master group. The master node is considered to be the core of the AMF network, and must be present for the AMF to form. The AMF master has its node depth set to 0. Note that the node depth vertical distance is determined by the number of uplinks/downlinks that exist between the node and its master.

An AMF master node must be present for an AMF network to form. Up to two AMF master nodes may exist in a network, and they **must** be connected by an AMF crosslink.

Note Master nodes are an essential component of an AMF network. In order to run AMF, an AMF License is required for each master node.



If the crosslink between two AMF masters fails, then one of the masters will become isolated from the rest of the AMF network.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the switch as an AMF master node. The node will retain its node depth of 0 until the network is rebooted.

Note Node depth is the vertical distance (or level) from the master node (whose depth value is 0).



Syntax `atmf master`
`no atmf master`

Default The switch is not configured to be an AMF master node.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To specify that this node is an AMF master, use the following command:

```
VCF-1# configure terminal
VCF-1(config)# atmf master
```

Related Commands [show atmf](#)
[show atmf group](#)

atmf network-name

This command applies an AMF network name to a (prospective) AMF node. In order for an AMF network to be valid, its network-name must be configured on at least two nodes, one of which must be configured as a master and have an AMF License applied. These nodes may be connected using either AMF downlinks or crosslinks.

For more information on configuring an AMF master node, see [“atmf master” on page 59.26](#).

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the AMF network name.

Syntax `atmf network-name <name>`

`no atmf network-name`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><name></code> | The AMF network name. Up to 15 printable characters can be entered for the network-name. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This is one of the essential commands when configuring AMF and must be entered on each node that is to be part of the AMF. This command will not take effect until the particular node is rebooted.

A switching node (master or member) may be a member of only one AMF network.

Caution Ensure that you enter the correct network name. Entering an incorrect name will cause the AMF network to fragment (at the next reboot).



Example To set the AMF network name to `amf_net` use the command:

```
Node_1(config)# atmf network-name amf_net
```

atmf provision

This command configures a specified port on an AMF node to accept a provisioned node, via an AMF link, some time in the future.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the provisioning on the node.

Syntax `atmf provision [<nodename>]`
`no atmf provision`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name of the provisioned node that will appear on the AMF network in the future. |

Default No provision.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The port should be configured as an AMF link or cross link and should be “down” to add or remove a provisioned node.

Example To provision an AMF node named node1 for port1.0.1, use the command:

```
host1(config)# interface port1.0.1
host1(config-if)# atmf provision node1
```

Related Commands [switchport atmf-link](#)
[switchport atmf-crosslink](#)
[show atmf links](#)

atmf provision node clone

This command sets up a space on the backup media for use with a provisioned node and copies into it almost all files and directories from a chosen backup or provisioned node.

Alternatively, you can set up a new, unique provisioned node by using the command **atmf provision node create**.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> clone <source nodename>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name that will be assigned to the clone when connected. |
| <code><source nodename></code> | The name of the node whose configuration is to be copied for loading to the clone. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network.

You must run either this command or **atmf provision node create** command, before you can use other "atmf provision node" commands using the specified node name. If a backup or provisioned node already exists for the specified node then you must delete it before using the **atmf provision node clone** command.

When using this command it is important to be aware of the following:

- A copy of `<media>:atmf/<atmf_name>/nodes/<source_node>/flash` will be made for the provisioned node and stored in the backup media.
- The directory `<node_backup_dir>/flash/.config/ssh` is excluded from the copy.
- All contents of `<root_backup_dir>/nodes/<nodename>` will be deleted or overwritten.
- Settings for the expected location of other provisioned nodes are excluded from the copy.

The active and backup configuration files are automatically modified in the following ways:

- The "hostname" command is modified to match the name of the provisioned node.
- The "stack virtual-chassis-id" command is removed, if present.

Example To copy from the backup of Switch2 to create backup files for the new provisioned node Switch3 use the following command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch3 clone switch2
```

Figure 59-1: Sample output from the atmf provision node clone command

```
switch1#atmf provision node switch3 clone switch2
Copying...
Successful operation
```

To confirm that a new provisioned node has been cloned, use the command:

```
switch1# show atmf backup
```

The output from this command is shown in **Figure 59-2**, below, and shows the details of the new provisioned node switch3.

Figure 59-2: Sample output from the show atmf backup command

```
switch1#show atmf backup

Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time .... 01 Jan 2014 03:00
Backup Bandwidth ..... Unlimited
Backup Media ..... USB (Total 7446.0MB, Free 7297.0MB)
Server Config .....
  Synchronization ..... Unsynchronized
  Last Run ..... -
  1 ..... Unconfigured
  2 ..... Unconfigured
Current Action ..... Idle
Started ..... -
Current Node ..... -

-----
Node Name      Date          Time          In ATMF  On Media  Status
-----
switch3       -             -             No       Yes       Prov
switch1       01 Jan 2014  00:05:49     No       Yes       Good
switch2       01 Jan 2014  00:05:44     Yes      Yes       Good
```

atmf provision node configure boot config

This command sets the configuration file to use during the next boot cycle. This command can also set a backup configuration file to use if the main configuration file cannot be accessed for an AMF provisioned node. To unset the boot configuration or the backup boot configuration use the no boot command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set back to the default.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> configure boot config [backup] [<file-path|URL>]`
`atmf provision node [<nodename>] configure no boot config [backup]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name of the provisioned node. |
| <code><file-path URL></code> | The path or URL and name of the configuration file. |

Default No boot configuration files or backup configuration files are specified for the provisioned node.

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage When using this command to set a backup configuration file, the specified AMF provisioned node must exist. The specified file must exist in the flash directory created for the provisioned node in the AMF remote backup media.

Examples To set the configuration file `branch.cfg` on the AMF provisioned node `node1`, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure boot
config branch.cfg
```

To set the configuration file `backup.cfg` as the backup to the main configuration file on the AMF provisioned node `node1`, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure boot
config backup usb:/atmf/amf_net/nodes/node1/
config/backup.cfg
```

To unset the boot configuration, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure no boot
config
```

To unset the backup boot configuration, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure no boot
config backup
```

Related Commands [atmf provision node configure boot system](#)
[show atmf provision nodes](#)

atmf provision node configure boot system

This command sets the release file that will load onto a specified provisioned node during the next boot cycle. This command can also set the backup release file to be loaded for an AMF provisioned node. To unset the boot system release file or the backup boot release file use the no boot command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set back to the default.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> configure boot system [backup]
[<file-path|URL>]`

`atmf provision node <nodename> configure no boot system [backup]`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name of the provisioned node. |
| <code><file-path URL></code> | The path or URL and name of the release file. |

Default No boot release file or backup release files are specified for the provisioned node.

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage When using this command to set a backup release file, the specified AMF provisioned node must exist. The specified file must exist in the flash directory created for the provisioned node in the AMF remote backup media.

Examples To set the release file `x900-5.4.4-1.rel` on the AMF provisioned node `node1`, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure boot
system x900-5.4.4-1.rel
```

To set the backup release file `900-5.4.4-1.rel` as the backup to the main release file on the AMF provisioned node `node1`, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure boot
system backup card:/atmf/amf_net/nodes/
node1/flash/x900-5.4.4-1.rel
```

To unset the boot release, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure no boot
system
```

To unset the backup boot release, use the command:

```
MasterNodeName# atmf provision node node1 configure no boot
system backup
```

Related Commands [atmf provision node configure boot config](#)
[show atmf provision nodes](#)

atmf provision node create

This command sets up an empty directory on the backup media for use with a provisioned node. This directory can have configuration and release files copied to it from existing switches. Alternatively, the configuration files can be created by the user.

An alternative way to create a new provisioned node is with the command **atmf provision node clone**.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> create`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <nodename> | The name of the node that is being provisioned. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network.

The **atmf provision node create atmf** command (or **atmf provision node clone**) must be executed before you can use other "atmf provision node" commands with the specified node name. If a backup or provisioned node already exists for the specified node name then you must delete it before using this command.

A date and time is assigned to the new provisioning directory reflecting when this command was executed. If there is a backup or provisioned node with the same name on another AMF master then the most recent one will be used.

Example To create a new provisioned node named switch2 use the command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch2 create
```

Running this command will create the following directories:

- <media>:atmf/<atmf_name>/nodes/<node>
- <media>:atmf/<atmf_name>/nodes/<node>/flash

To confirm the new node's settings, use the command:

```
switch1# show atmf backup
```

The output for the show atmf backup command is shown in **Figure 59-3**, and shows details for the new provisioned node switch2.

Figure 59-3: Sample output from the show atmf backup command

```

switch1#show atmf backup

Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time .... 02 Jan 2014 03:00
  Backup Bandwidth ..... Unlimited
  Backup Media ..... USB (Total 7446.0MB, Free 7315.2MB)
  Server Config .....
  Synchronization ..... Unsynchronized
  Last Run ..... -
  1 ..... Unconfigured
  2 ..... Unconfigured
  Current Action ..... Idle
  Started ..... -
  Current Node ..... -

-----
Node Name      Date           Time           In ATMF  On Media  Status
-----
switch2        -              -              No        Yes       Prov
switch1        01 Jan 2014   00:05:49      No        Yes       Good

```

For instructions on how to configure on a provisioned node refer to **“Configuring AMF” on page 58.11** and **“Creating and Using Configuration Files” on page 6.8**.

Related commands **atmf provision node clone**

atmf provision node delete

This command deletes files that have been created for loading onto a provisioned node.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> delete`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <nodename> | The name of the provisioned node to be deleted. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network. The command will only work if the provisioned node specified in the command has already been set up (although the device itself is still yet to be installed). Otherwise, an error message is shown when the command is run.

You may want to use the **atmf provision node delete** command to delete a provisioned node that was created in error or that is no longer needed.

This command cannot be used to delete backups created by the AMF backup procedure. In this case, use the command **atmf backup delete** to delete the files.

Note  This command allows provisioned entries to be deleted even if they have been referenced by the **atmf provision** command, so take care to only delete unwanted entries.

Example To delete backup files for a provisioned node named switch3 use the command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch3 delete
```

To confirm that the backup files for provisioned node switch3 have been deleted use the command:

```
switch1# show atmf backup
```

The output should show that the provisioned node switch3 no longer exists in the backup file, as shown in **Figure 59-4**:

Figure 59-4: Sample output showing the show atmf backup command

```

switch1#show atmf backup

Scheduled Backup ..... Enabled
  Schedule ..... 1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time .... 01 Jan 2014 03:00
Backup Bandwidth ..... Unlimited
Backup Media ..... USB (Total 7446.0MB, Free 7297.0MB)
Server Config .....
  Synchronization ..... Unsynchronized
  Last Run ..... -
  1 ..... Unconfigured
  2 ..... Unconfigured
Current Action ..... Idle
  Started ..... -
  Current Node ..... -

-----
Node Name      Date           Time           In ATMF  On Media  Status
-----
switch1       01 Jan 2014   00:05:49      No        Yes       Good
switch2       01 Jan 2014   00:05:44      Yes       Yes       Good

```

Related commands [atmf provision node create](#)

atmf provision node license-cert

This command is used to set up the license certificate for a provisioned node.

The certificate file usually has all the license details for the network, and can be stored anywhere in the network. This command makes a hidden copy of the certificate file and stores it in the space set up for the provisioned node on AMF backup media.

For node provisioning, the new device has not yet been part of the AMF network, so the user is unlikely to know its product ID or its MAC address. When such a device joins the network, assuming that this command has been applied successfully, the copy of the certificate file will be applied automatically to the provisioned node.

Once the new device has been resurrected on the network and the certificate file has been downloaded to the provisioned node, the hidden copy of the certificate file is deleted from AMF backup media.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set it back to the default.

Syntax `atmf provision node {<nodename>} license-cert <file-path/URL>`
`no atmf provision node {<nodename>} license-cert`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name of the provisioned node. |
| <code><file-path/URL></code> | The name of the certificate file. This can include the file-path of the file. |

Default No license certificate file is specified for the provisioned node.

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network. It will only operate if the provisioned node specified in the command has already been set up, and if the license certification is present in the backup file. Otherwise, an error message is shown when the command is run.

Example 1 To apply the license certificate cert1.txt stored on tftp server for AMF provisioned node "Switch2", use the command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch2 license-cert
tftp://192.168.1.1/cert1.txt
```

Example 2 To apply the license certificate cert2.txt stored on AMF master's flash directory for AMF provisioned node "host2", use the command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch2 license-cert/
cert2.txt
```

To confirm that the license certificate has been applied to the provisioned node, use the command **show atmf provision nodes**. The output from this command is shown **Figure 59-5** below, and displays license certification details in the last line.

Figure 59-5: Sample output from the show atmf provision nodes command

```
switch1#show atmf provision nodes

ATMF Provisioned Node Information:

Backup Media .....: SD (Total 3827.0MB, Free 3481.1MB)

Node Name           : switch2
Date & Time         : 06-May-2014 & 23:25:44
Provision Path      : card:/atmf/nodes

Boot configuration :
Current boot image  : x510-1766_atmf_backup.rel (file exists)
Backup boot image   : x510-main-20140113-2.rel (file exists)
Default boot config : flash:/default.cfg (file exists)
Current boot config : flash:/abc.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config  : flash:/xyz.cfg (file exists)

Software Licenses :
Repository file    : ../configs/.sw_v2.lic
                  : ../configs/.swfeature.lic
Certificate file   : card:/atmf/lok/nodes/awplus1/flash/.atmf-lic-cert
```

Related commands [show atmf provision nodes](#)

atmf provision node locate

This command changes the present working directory to the directory of a provisioned node. This makes it easier to edit files and create a unique provisioned node in the backup.

Syntax `atmf provision node <nodename> locate`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| <nodename> | The name of the provisioned node. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network. The command will only work if the provisioned node specified in the command has already been set up. Otherwise, an error message is shown when the command is run.

Note We advise that after running this command, you return to a known working directory, typically flash.



Example To change the working directory that happens to be on switch1 to the directory of provisioned node switch2, use the following command:

```
switch1# atmf provision node switch2 locate
```

The directory of the node switch2 should now be the working directory. You can use the command **pwd** to check this, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 59-6: Sample output from the pwd command

```
switch2#pwd
card:/atmf/building_2/nodes/switch2/flash
```

The output above shows that the working directory is now the flash of switch2.

Related commands [atmf provision node create](#)
[atmf provision node clone](#)
[pwd](#)

atmf reboot-rolling

This command enables you to reboot the nodes in an AMF working-set, one at a time, as a rolling sequence in order to minimize downtime. Once a rebooted node has finished running its configuration and its ports are up, it re-joins the AMF network and the next node is rebooted.

By adding the `url` parameter, you can also upgrade your switches' software one AMF node at a time.

The `force` command enforces a node reboot even if a previous node does not rejoin the AMF network. In this situation the unsuitable node will time-out and the rolling reboot process stops. However, with the `force` parameter applied, the process will ignore the timeout and move on to reboot the next node in the sequence.

This command can take a significant amount of time to complete.

Syntax `atmf reboot-rolling [force] [<url>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>force</code> | Ignore a failed node and move on to the next node. Where a node fails to reboot a timeout is applied based on the time taken during the last reboot. |
| <code><url></code> | The url path to the software upgrade file. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage You can load the software from a variety of locations. The latest compatible release for a node will be selected from your selected location - based on the parameters and URL you have entered.

For example `card:/5.4.3/x*-5.4.3-*.rel` will select from the folder `card:/5.4.3` the latest file that matches the selection `x` (wildcard) `-5.4.3-` (wildcard).`rel`. Because `x*` is applied, each switch type will be detected and its appropriate release file will be installed.

Other allowable entries are:

- `card:*.rel:`
Used when loading SW from SD cards.
- `tftp:ip address:`
Used when loading SW from a TFTP server.
- `usb:`
Used when loading SW from a USB flash drive.
- `flash:`
Used when loading SW from flash memory, i.e. from one x900 switch to another.
- `scp:`
Used when loading SW from a secure copy.
- `http:`
Used when loading SW from an HTTP file server site.

Several checks are performed to ensure the upgrade will succeed. These include checking the current node release boots from flash. If there is enough space on flash, the software release is copied to flash to a new location on each node as it is processed. The new release name will be updated using the “boot system <release-name>” command, and the old release will become the backup release file.

Note  If you are using TFTP or HTTP, for example, to access a file on a remote device then the URL should specify the exact release filename without using wild card characters.

On bootup the software release is verified. Should an upgrade fail, the upgrading unit will revert back to its previous software version. At the completion of this command, a report is run showing the release upgrade status of each node.

This function is supported on the following switches: AT-SBx908, SBx8100 Series, x610 Series, x510 Series and AT-IX5-28GPX. It is supported on all stack configurations.

Note  Take care when removing external media or rebooting your switches. Removing an external media while files are being written entails a significant risk of causing a file corruption.

Example 1 To reboot all x510 nodes in an AMF network, use the following command:

```
Bld2_Floor_1# atmf working-set group x510
```

This command returns the following type of screen output:

```
=====
node1, node2, node3:
=====

Working set join

AMF_NETWORK_Name[3]#
```

```
ATMF_NETWORK[3]# atmf reboot-rolling
```

When the reboot has completed, a number of status screens appear. The selection of these screens will depend on the parameters set.

```

Bld2_Floor_1#atmf working-set group x510

=====
SW_Team1, SW_Team2, SW_Team3:
=====

Working set join

ATMF_NETWORK[3]#atmf reboot-rolling
ATMF Rolling Reboot Nodes:

Node Name                Timeout
                          (Minutes)
-----
SW_Team1                  14
SW_Team2                   8
SW_Team3                   8
Continue the rolling reboot ? (y/n):y
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SW_Team1
=====

% SW_Team1 has left the working-set
Reboot of SW_Team1 has completed
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SW_Team2
=====

% SW_Team2 has left the working-set
Reboot of SW_Team2 has completed
=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot: Rebooting SW_Team3
=====

% SW_Team3 has left the working-set
Reboot of SW_Team3 has completed

=====
ATMF Rolling Reboot Complete
Node Name                Reboot Status
-----
SW_Team1                  Rebooted
SW_Team2                  Rebooted
SW_Team3                  Rebooted
=====

```

Example 2 To update firmware releases, use the following command:

```
Node_1# atmf working-set group all
ATMF_NETWORK[9]# atmf reboot-rolling card:/5.4.3/x*-5.4.3-*.rel
```

ATMF Rolling Reboot Nodes:

| Node Name | Timeout (Minutes) | New Release File | Status |
|--------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| SW_Team1 | 8 | x510-5.4.3-0.5.rel | Release Ready |
| SW_Team2 | 10 | x510-5.4.3-0.5.rel | Release Ready |
| SW_Team3 | 8 | --- | Not Supported |
| HW_Team1 | 6 | --- | Incompatible |
| Bld2_Floor_1 | 6 | x900-5.4.3-0.5.rel | Release Ready |
| Bld1_Floor_2 | 2 | x610-5.4.3-0.5.rel | Release Ready |
| Bld1_Floor_1 | 4 | --- | Incompatible |
| Building_1 | 2 | --- | Incompatible |
| Building_2 | 2 | x900-5.4.3-0.5.rel | Release Ready |

Continue upgrading releases ? (y/n):

atmf recover

This command is used to manually initiate the recovery (or replication) of an AMF node, usually when a node is being replaced. The recovery/replication process involves loading the configuration file for a node that is either about to be replaced or has experienced some problem. The configuration file of the device being replaced is selected by the `nodename` parameter, and the master node holding the configuration file is specified by the parameter `<master-nodename>`.

If the `<nodename>` parameter is not entered then the node will attempt to use one that has been previously configured. If the replacement node has no previous configuration (and has no previously used `nodename`), then the recovery will fail.

If the `<master-nodename>` parameter is not specified then the device will poll all known AMF masters and execute an election process (based on the last successful backup and its timestamp) to determine which master node to use. If no valid backup master is found, then this command will fail.

Syntax `atmf recover [<nodename> <master-nodename>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><nodename></code> | The name of the device whose configuration is to be recovered or replicated. |
| <code><master-nodename></code> | The name of the master device that holds the required configuration information. Note that although you can omit both the <code>nodename</code> and the <code>master nodename</code> ; you can only omit the <code>master nodename</code> if you also omit the <code>nodename</code> . |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage No error checking occurs when this command is run, and regardless of the last backup status, the recovering node will attempt to load its configuration from the master node specified by the `master-nodename` parameter.

Note that if the node has previously been configured, we recommend that you suspend any AMF backup before running this command. This is to prevent corruption of the backup files on the AMF master as it attempts to both backup and recover the node at the same time.

Example To recover the AMF node named `Node_10` from the AMF master node named `Master_2`, use the following command:

```
Master_2# atmf recover Node_10 Master_2
```

Related Commands

- `atmf backup stop`
- `show atmf backup`
- `show atmf`

atmf recover led-off

This command turns off the recovery failure flashing port LEDs. It reverts the LED's function to their normal operational mode, and in doing so assists with resolving the recovery problem. You can repeat this process until the recovery failure has been resolved. For more detailed information see [“Recovery progress indication” on page 58.31](#).

Syntax atmf recover led-off

Default Normal operational mode

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To revert the LEDs on Node1 from recovery mode display, to their normal operational mode, use the command:

```
Node1# atmf recover led-off
```

Related Commands [atmf recover](#)

atmf remote-login

Use this command to remotely login to other AMF nodes in order to run commands as if you were a local user of that node.

Syntax `atmf remote-login [user <name>] <nodename>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| <name> | User name. |
| <nodename> | Node name. |

Mode Privileged Exec (This command will only run at privilege level 15)

Usage You do not need a valid login on the local device in order to run this command. The session will take you to the enable prompt on the new device. If the remote login session exits for any reason (i.e. device reboot) you will be returned to the originating node.

The software will not allow you to run multiple remote login sessions. You must exit an existing session before starting a new one.

Example 1 To remotely login from node Node10 to Node20 use the following command:

```
Node10# atmf remote-login node20
```

Example 2 In this example, user Whitney is a valid user of node5. She can remotely login from node5 to node3 by using the following commands:

```
node5# atmf remote-login user whitney
node3
```

Type 'exit' to return to node5#

```
node3> enable
```

Note In the above example the user name whitney is valid on both nodes.



Therefore, to prevent unauthorized access, user names should be unique across all nodes within the AMF network.

atmf restricted-login

This command restricts the use of the “**atmf working-set**” on page 59.50 command on all AMF master nodes to privilege 15 users only. Once entered on any AMF master node, this command will propagate across the network.

Note that once you have run this command, certain other commands that utilize the AMF working-set command, such as the **include**, **atmf reboot-rolling** and **show atmf group members** commands, will operate only on master nodes.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable restricted login on the AMF network. This allows access to the **atmf working-set** command from any node in the AMF network.

Syntax atmf restricted-login
no atmf restricted-login

Mode Privileged Exec

Default Master nodes operate with **atmf restricted-login** disabled.
Member nodes operate with **atmf restricted-login** enabled.

Example To enable restricted login, use the command

```
Node_20(config)# atmf restricted-login node20
```

Validation Command **show atmf**

atmf virtual-link id ip remote-id remote-ip

This command creates one or more Layer 2 tunnels that enable AMF nodes to transparently communicate across a wide area network using Layer 2 connectivity protocols.

Once connected through the tunnel, the remote member will have the same AMF capabilities as a directly connected AMF member.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified virtual link.

Syntax `atmf virtual-link id <1-32> ip <a.b.c.d> remote-id <1-32> remote-ip <a.b.c.d>`

`no atmf virtual-link id <1-32>`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>ip</code> | The Internet Protocol (IP). |
| <code><a.b.c.d></code> | The IP address, of the local amf node (at its interface to the tunnel) entered in a.b.c.d format. |
| <code>remote-id</code> | The ID of the (same) tunnel that will be applied by the remote node. Note that this must match the local-id that is defined on the remote node. This means that (for the same tunnel) the local and remote tunnel IDs are reversed on the local and remote nodes. |
| <code><1-32></code> | The ID range 1-32. |
| <code>remote-ip</code> | The IP address of the remote node |
| <code><a.b.c.d></code> | The IP address, of the remote node (at its interface to the tunnel) entered in a.b.c.d format. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage The Layer 2 tunnel that this command creates enables a local AMF session to appear to pass transparently across a Wide Area Network (WAN) such as the Internet. The addresses configured as the local and remote tunnel IP addresses must have IP connectivity to each other. If the tunnel is configured to connect a head office and branch office over the Internet, typically this would involve using some type of managed WAN service such as a site-to-site VPN. Tunnels are only supported using IPv4.

Configuration involves creating a local tunnel ID, a local IP address, a remote tunnel ID and a remote IP address. A reciprocal configuration is also required on the corresponding remote device. The local tunnel ID must be unique to the device on which it is configured.

The tunneled link may operate via external (non AlliedWare Plus) routers in order to provide wide area network connectivity. However in this configuration, the routers perform a conventional router to router connection. The protocol tunneling function is accomplished by the AMF nodes.

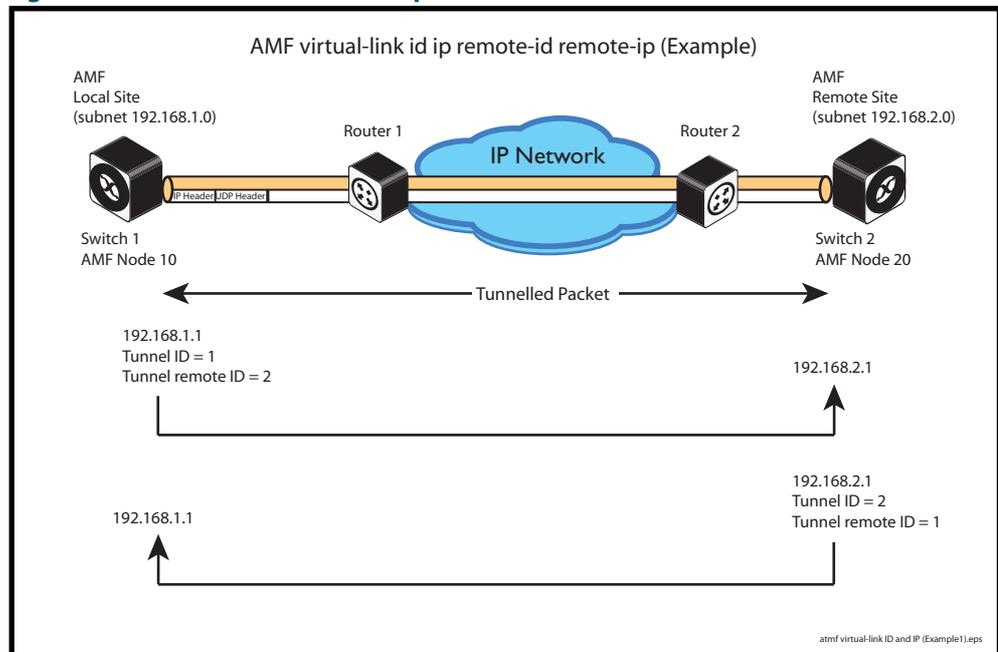
Note  The requirement to pre-configure the local IP address and tunnel ID on a device located at the far end of an AMF virtual-link tunnel means that zero touch device replacement cannot be achieved on a remote device that terminates the tunnel connection.

Example Use the following command to create the tunnel shown in figure **Figure 59-7 on page 59.49**.

```
Node_10(config)# atmf virtual-link id 1 ip 192.168.1.1
                  remote-id 2 remote-ip 192.168.2.1
```

```
Node_20(config)# atmf virtual-link id 2 ip 192.168.2.1
                  remote-id 1 remote-ip 192.168.1.1
```

Figure 59-7: AMF virtual link example



Validation Command `show atmf`

atmf working-set

The AMF working-set command enables you to execute commands across an individually listed set (or preselected group) of AMF nodes. Group selection is made using the **atmf group (membership)** command on page 59.19.

This command opens a session on multiple network devices. When you change the working set to anything other than the local device, the prompt will change to the AMF network name, followed by the size of the working set, shown in square brackets. This command has to be run at privilege level 15.

In addition to the user defined groups, the following system assigned groups are automatically created:

- Implicit Groups
 - « all - All nodes in the AMF
 - « current - All nodes that comprise the current working-set
 - « local - The originating node.
- Automatic Groups - These can be defined by hardware architecture, i.e. x510, x610, x900, x8100, or by certain AMF nodal designations such as master.

Note that the Implicit Groups do not appear in show group output.

If a node is an AMF master it will be automatically added to the master group.

Syntax `atmf working-set {[<node-list>] [group{<group-list>|all|local|current}]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><node-list></code> | A comma delimited list (without spaces) of nodes to be included in the working-set. |
| <code>group</code> | The AMF group. |
| <code><group-list></code> | A comma delimited list (without spaces) of groups to be included in the working-set. Note that this can include either defined groups, or any of the Automatic, or Implicit Groups shown earlier in the bulleted list of groups. |
| <code>all</code> | All nodes in the AMF. |
| <code>local</code> | Local node Running this command with the parameters group local will return you to the local prompt and local node connectivity. |
| <code>current</code> | Nodes in current list. |

Default Needs to be entered

Mode Privileged Exec

Example 1 To add all nodes in the AMF to the working-set, use the command:

```
node1# atmf working-set group all
```

Note  This command adds the implicit group "all" to the working set, where "all" comprises all nodes in the AMF.

This command displays an output screen similar to the one shown below:

```
=====
node1, node2, node3, node4, node5, node6:
=====

Working set join

ATMF_NETWORK_Name [6] #
```

Example 2 To return to the local prompt, and connectivity to only the local node; use the command:

```
ATMF_NETWORK_Name[6]# atmf working-set group local

node1#
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| node1, node2 | The name of the nodes - as set by the hostname command on page 8.13. |
| ATMF_Network_Name | The name of the AMF network - as set by the atmf network-name command on page 59.27. |
| [6] | The number of nodes in the working-set. |

clear atmf links statistics

This command resets the values of all AMF link, port, and global statistics to zero.

Syntax clear atmf links statistics

Mode Privilege Exec

Example To reset the AMF link statistics values, use the command:

```
node_1# clear atmf links statistics
```

Related Commands [show atmf links statistics](#)

debug atmf

This command enables the AMF debugging facilities, and displays information that is relevant (only) to the current node. The detail of the debugging displayed depends on the parameters specified.

If no additional parameters are specified, then the command output will display all AMF debugging information, including link events, topology discovery messages and all notable AMF events.

The “no” variant of this command disables either all AMF debugging information, or only the particular information as selected by the command’s parameters.

Syntax `debug atmf [link|crosslink|database|neighbor|error|all]`
`no debug atmf [link|crosslink|database|neighbor|error|all]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| link | Output displays debugging information relating to uplink or downlink information. |
| crosslink | Output displays all crosslink events. |
| database | Output displays only notable database events. |
| neighbor | Output displays only notable AMF neighbor events. |
| error | Output displays AMF error events. |
| all | Output displays all AMF events. |

Default All debugging facilities are disabled.

Mode User Exec and Global Configuration

Usage If no additional parameters are specified, then the command output will display all AMF debugging information, including link events, topology discovery messages and all notable AMF events.

Note  An alias to the no variant of this command is **“undebug atmf”** on [page 59.94](#).

Examples To debug all AMF debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf
```

To debug all AMF link debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf link
```

To debug all AMF crosslink debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf crosslink
```

To debug all AMF database debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf database
```

To debug all AMF neighbor debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf neighbor
```

To debug all AMF error debugging, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf error
```

To debug all AMF facilities, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf all
```

Related Commands **no debug all**

debug atmf packet

This command configures AMF Packet debugging parameters. The debug only displays information relevant to the current node. The command has following parameters:

Syntax `debug atmf packet [[direction {rx|tx|both}] [level {1|2|3}] [timeout <seconds>] [num-pkts <quantity>] [filter node <name>] [interface <ifname>] [pkt-type {[1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11]]]`

Simplified Syntax

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| <code>debug atmf packet</code> | | <code>[direction {rx tx both}]</code> |
| | | <code>[level {[1][2 3]}]</code> |
| | | <code>[timeout <seconds>]</code> |
| | | <code>[num-pkts <quantity>]</code> |
| <code>debug atmf packet</code> | <code>filter</code> | <code>[node <name>]</code> |
| | | <code>[interface <ifname>]</code> |
| | | <code>[pkt-type [1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11]]</code> |

Note You can combine the syntax components shown, but when doing so, you must retain their original order.



Default Level 1, both Tx and Rx, a timeout of 60 seconds with no filters applied.

Note An alias to the no variant of this command - **undebg atmf** - can be found elsewhere in this chapter.



Mode User Exec and Global Configuration

Usage If no additional parameters are specified, then the command output will apply a default selection of parameters shown below:

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>direction</code> | Sets debug to packet received, transmitted, or both |
| <code>rx</code> | packets received by this node |
| <code>tx</code> | Packets sent from this node |
| <code>1</code> | AMF Packet Control header Information, Packet Sequence Number. Enter 1 to select this level. |
| <code>2</code> | AMF Detailed Packet Information. Enter 2 to select this level. |
| <code>3</code> | AMF Packet HEX dump. Enter 3 to select this level. |
| <code>timeout</code> | Sets the execution timeout for packet logging |
| <code><seconds></code> | Seconds |
| <code>num-pkts</code> | Sets the number of packets to be dumped |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>pkts</code> | The actual number of packets |
| <code>filter</code> | Sets debug to filter packets |
| <code>node</code> | Sets the filter on packets for a particular Node |
| <code><name></code> | The name of the remote node |
| <code>interface</code> | Sets the filter to dump packets from an interface (portx.x.x) on the local node |
| <code>ifname</code> | Interface port or virtual-link |
| <code>pkt-type</code> | Sets the filter on packets with a particular AMF packet type |
| <code>1</code> | Crosslink Hello BPDU packet with crosslink links information. Enter 1 to select this packet type. |
| <code>2</code> | Crosslink Hello BPDU packet with downlink domain information. Enter 2 to select this packet type. |
| <code>3</code> | Crosslink Hello BPDU packet with uplink information. Enter 3 to select this packet type. |
| <code>4</code> | Downlink and uplink hello BPDU packets. Enter 4 to select this packet type. |
| <code>5</code> | Non broadcast hello unicast packets. Enter 5 to select this packet type. |
| <code>6</code> | Stack hello unicast packets. Enter 6 to select this packet type. |
| <code>7</code> | Database description. Enter 7 to select this packet type. |
| <code>8</code> | DBE request. Enter 8 to select this packet type. |
| <code>9</code> | DBE update. Enter 9 to select this packet type. |
| <code>10</code> | DBE bitmap update. Enter 10 to select this packet type. |
| <code>11</code> | DBE acknowledgment. Enter 11 to select this packet type. |

Examples To set a packet debug on node 1 with level 1 and no timeout, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf packet direction tx timeout 0
```

To set a packet debug with level 3 and filter packets received from AMF node 1:

```
node_1# debug atmf packet direction tx level 3 filter
node_1
```

To enable send and receive 500 packets only on vlink1 for packet types 1, 7, and 11, use the command:

```
node_1# debug atmf packet num-pkts 500 filter interface
vlink1 pkt-type 1 7 11
```

This example applies the debug atmf packet command and uses all of its options:

```
node_1# debug atmf packet direction rx level 1 num-pkts
60 filter node x900 interface port1.0.1 pkt-
type 10
```

This example applies the debug atmf packet command and combines many of its options:

```
node_1# debug atmf packet direction rx level 1 num-pkts
60 filter node x900 interface port1.0.1 pkt-
type 4 7 10
```

erase factory-default

This command erases all data from nvs and all data from flash **excluding** the following:

- The current release file and its /flash/.release file
- The backup release file and /flash/.backup file
- v1 license files /flash/.configs/.swfeature.lic
- v2 license files /flash/.configs/.sw_v2.lic

The device is then rebooted and returns the switch to its factory default condition. The switch can then be used for automatic node recovery.

Syntax erase factory-default

Mode Global Configuration.

Usage This command is an alias to the [atmf cleanup command on page 59.14](#).

Example To erase data, use the command:

```
Node_1(config)# erase factory-default
```

```
This command will erase all NVS, all flash contents except  
for the boot release, and any license files, and then  
reboot the switch. Continue? (y/n):y
```

Related Commands [atmf cleanup](#)

show atmf

Displays information about the current AMF node.

Syntax `show atmf [summary|tech|nodes|session]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>summary</code> | Displays summary information about the current AMF node. |
| <code>tech</code> | Displays global AMF information. |
| <code>nodes</code> | Displays a list of AMF nodes together with brief details. |
| <code>session</code> | Displays information on an AMF session. |

Default Only summary information is displayed.

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage AMF uses internal VLANs to communicate between nodes about the state of the AMF network. Two VLANs have been selected specifically for this purpose. Once these have been assigned, they are reserved for AMF and cannot be used for other purposes

Example 1 To show summary information on AMF node_1 use the following command:

```
node_1 show atmf summary
```

The following figure shows some example output from running this command for a specific AMF node.

Figure 59-8: Output from the show atmf summary command

```
node_1#show atmf
ATMF Summary Information:

ATMF Status           : Enabled
Network Name          : ATMF_NET
Node Name              : node_1
Role                   : Master
Current ATMF Nodes    : 8
```

Example 2 To show information specific to AMF nodes use the following command:

```
node_1 show atmf nodes
```

Figure 59-9: Output from the show atmf nodes command

```

Node Information:

* = Local device

SC = Switch Configuration:
C = Chassis   S = Stackable   N = Standalone
    
```

| Node Name | Device Type | AMF Master | SC | Parent | Node Depth |
|--------------|------------------|------------|----|--------------|------------|
| Building_1 | AT-SBx8112 | Y | C | - | 0 |
| * Building_2 | x900-12XT/S | Y | N | - | 0 |
| Bld1_Floor_1 | SwitchBlade x908 | N | S | Building_1 | 1 |
| Bld1_Floor_2 | x600-24Ts/XP | N | N | Building_1 | 1 |
| Bld2_Floor_1 | x610-24Ts-POE+ | N | N | Building_1 | 1 |
| SW_Team1 | x510-28GPX | N | N | Bld1_Floor_2 | 2 |

```

Current AMF node count 8
    
```

The show AMF session command displays all CLI (Command Line Interface) sessions for users that are currently logged in and running a CLI session. For example, in the case below, node_1 and node5 have active users logged in.

Example 3 To display AMF active sessions, use the following command:

```
node_1 show atmf sessions
```

Figure 59-10: Output from the show atmf sessions command

```

node_1#show atmf session

CLI Session Neighbors

Session ID           : 73518
Node Name            : node_1
PID                  : 7982
Link type            : Broadcast-cli
MAC Address          : 0000.0000.0000
Options              : 0
Our bits             : 0
Link State           : Full
Domain Controller    : 0
Backup Domain Controller : 0
Database Description Sequence Number : 00000000
First Adjacency      : 1
Number Events        : 0
DBE Retransmit Queue Length : 0
DBE Request List Length : 0

Session ID           : 410804
Node Name            : node5
PID                  : 17588
Link type            : Broadcast-cli
MAC Address          : 001a.eb56.9020
Options              : 0
Our bits             : 0
Link State           : Full
Domain Controller    : 0
Backup Domain Controller : 0
Database Description Sequence Number : 00000000
First Adjacency      : 1
Number Events        : 0
DBE Retransmit Queue Length : 0
DBE Request List Length : 0
    
```

The AMF tech command collects all the AMF commands, and displays them. You can use this command when you want to see an overview of the AMF network.

Example 4 To display AMF technical information, use the following command:

```
node_1 show atmf tech
```

Figure 59-11: Output from the show atmf nodes command

```
node_1#show atmf tech
ATMF Summary Information:

ATMF Status           : Enabled
Network Name          : ATMF_NET
Node Name              : node_1
Role                   : Master
Current ATMF Nodes    : 8

ATMF Technical information:

Network Name           : ATMF_NET
Domain                 : node_1's domain
Node Depth             : 0
Domain Flags           : 0
Authentication Type    : 0
MAC Address            : 0014.2299.137d
Board ID               : 287
Domain State           : DomainController
Domain Controller      : node_1
Backup Domain Controller : node2
Domain controller MAC  : 0014.2299.137d
Parent Domain          : -
Parent Domain Controller : -
Parent Domain Controller MAC : 0000.0000.0000
Number of Domain Events : 0
Crosslink Ports Blocking : 0
Uplink Ports Waiting on Sync : 0
Crosslink Sequence Number : 7
Domains Sequence Number : 28
Uplink Sequence Number : 2
Number of Crosslink Ports : 1
Number of Domain Nodes : 2
Number of Neighbors     : 5
Number of Non Broadcast Neighbors : 3
Number of Link State Entries : 1
Number of Up Uplinks    : 0
Number of Up Uplinks on This Node : 0
DBE Checksum            : 84fc6
Number of DBE Entries   : 0
Management Domain Ifindex : 4391
Management Domain VLAN  : 4091
Management ifindex      : 4392
Management VLAN         : 4092
```

Table 59-1:

| Parameter | Definition |
|--------------------|---|
| ATMF Status | The Node's AMF status, either Enabled or Disabled. |
| Network Name | The AMF network that a particular node belongs to. |
| Node Name | The name assigned to a particular node. |
| Role | The role configured for this AMF device, either Master or Member. |
| Current ATMF Nodes | The count of AMF nodes in an AMF Network. |
| Node Address | An Address used to access a remotely located node (.atmf). |

Table 59-1:

| Parameter | Definition |
|-----------------|---|
| Node ID | A Unique identifier assigned to a Node on an AMF network. |
| Node Depth | The number of nodes in path from this node to level of the AMF root node. It can be thought of as the vertical depth of the AMF network from a particular node to the zero level of the AMF root node. |
| Domain State | The state of Node in a Domain in AMF network as Controller/Backup. |
| Recovery State | The AMF node recovery status. Indicates whether a node recovery is in progress on this device - Auto, Manual, or None. |
| Management VLAN | <p>The VLAN created for traffic between Nodes of different domain (up/down links).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4092 is configured as the Management VLAN. ■ Management Subnet - Network prefix for the subnet. ■ Management IP Address - The IP address allocated for this traffic. ■ Management Mask - The subnet mask used to create a subnet for this traffic (255.255.128.0). |
| Domain VLAN | <p>The VLAN assigned for traffic between Nodes of same domain (crosslink).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4091 is configured as the domain VLAN. ■ Domain Subnet. The subnet address used for this traffic. ■ Domain IP Address. The IP address allocated for this traffic. ■ Domain Mask. The subnet mask used to create a subnet for this traffic (255.255.128.0). |
| Device Type | The Product Series Name. |
| ATMF Master | The 'Y' if the node belongs to a Core domain. |
| SC | The Switch Configuration, C - Chassis(SBx81series), S - Stackable (VCS) and N - Standalone. |
| Parent | The a Node to which the current node has an active uplink. |
| Node Depth | The the number of nodes in path from this node to the Core domain. |

Related Commands [show atmf detail](#)


Note You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see **“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.**

show atmf backup

This command displays information about AMF backup status for all the nodes in an AMF network. Note that this command can be executed on master nodes only.

Syntax show atmf backup [logs|server-status|synchronize [logs]]

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| logs | Displays detailed log information. |
| server-status | Displays connectivity diagnostics information for each configured remote file server. |
| synchronize | Display the file server synchronization status |
| logs | For each remote file server, display the logs for the last synchronization |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example 1 To display the AMF backup information, use the command:

```
node_1# show atmf backup
```

```
Node_1# show atmf backup
ScheduledBackup .....Enabled
  Schedule.....1 per day starting at 03:00
  Next Backup Time...19 May 2012 03:00
Backup Media.....SD (Total 1974.0 MB, Free197.6MB)
Current Action.....Starting manual backup
Started.....18 May 2012 10:08
CurrentNode.....atmf_testbox1

Node Name                               Date           Time           In ATMF        Status
-----
atmf_testbox1                           17May 2012    09:58:59      Yes            Errors
atmf_testbox2                           17May 2012    10:01:23      Yes            Good

Node_1#show atmf backup logs

Log File Location: card:/atmf/office/logs/rsync_<nodename>.log

Node
Name Log Details-----
atmf_testbox2
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]File list size: 6199
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]File list generation time: 0.011 seconds
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]File list transfer time: 0.000 seconds
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]Total bytes sent: 696
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]Total bytes received: 16.03K
  2012/02/20 03:41:32 [30299]sent 696 bytes received 16.03Kbytes 33.45 K
  bytes/sec
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30299]total size is 21.73M speedup is 1298.93
  2012/05/22 03:41:32 [30297]sent 626 bytes received 6203 bytes total
  size 43451648
```

Example 2 To display the AMF backup information with the optional parameter `server-status`, use the command:

```
Node_1# show atmf backup server-status
```

```
Node1#sh atmf backup server-status
Id  Last Check  State
-----
1      186 s  File server ready
2          1 s  SSH no route to host
```

Table 59-2:

| Parameter | Definition |
|----------------------------|---|
| Scheduled Backup | Indicates whether AMF backup scheduling is enabled or disabled. |
| Schedule | Displays the configured backup schedule. |
| Next Backup Time | Displays the date and time of the next scheduled. |
| Backup Media | The current backup medium in use. This will be one of USB, SD, or NONE. Note that the USB will take precedence over the SD card. Utilized and available memory (MB) will be indicated if backup media memory is present. |
| Current Action | The task that the AMF backup mechanism is currently performing. This will be a combination of either (Idle, Starting, Doing, Stopping), or (manual, scheduled). |
| Started | The date and time that the currently executing task was initiated in the format DD MMM YYYY. |
| Current Node | The name of the node that is currently being backed up. |
| Node Name | The name of the node that is storing backup data - on its backup media. |
| Date | The data of the last backup in the format DD MMM YYYY. |
| Time | The time of the last backup in the format HH:MM:SS. |
| In ATMF | Whether the node shown is active in the AMF network, (Yes or No). |
| Status | The output can contain one of four values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ "-" meaning that the status file cannot be found or cannot be read. ■ "Errors" meaning that there are issues - note that the backup may still be deemed successful depending on the errors. ■ "Stopped" meaning that the backup attempt was manually aborted;. ■ "Good" meaning that the backup was completed successfully. |
| Log File Location | All backup attempts will generate a result log file in the identified directory based on the node name. In the above example this would be: <code>card:/amf/office/logs/rsync_amf_testbox1.log</code> . |
| Log Details | The contents of the backup log file. |
| <code>server-status</code> | Displays connectivity diagnostics information for each configured remove file server. |

 **Note** You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see ["Controlling "show" Command Output" on page 1.34](#).

Related Commands [show atmf](#)
[atmf network-name](#)

show atmf detail

This command displays details about an AMF node.

Syntax show atmf [detail]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| detail | Displays output in greater depth. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example 1 To display the AMF node1 information in detail, use the command:

```
node1# show atmf detail
```

A typical output screen from this command is shown below:

```
node1#show atmf detail
ATMF Detail Information

Network Name           : ATMF_NET
Node Name              : Admin2
Node Address           : Admin2.atmf
Node ID                : 15
Node Depth             : 0
Domain State           : DomainController
Recovery State         : None

Management VLAN
VLAN ID                : 4092
Management Subnet     : 172.31.0.0
Management IP Address : 172.31.0.1
Management Mask       : 255.255.128.0

Domain VLAN
VLAN ID                : 4091
Domain Subnet         : 172.31.128.0
Domain IP Address     : 172.31.128.1
Domain Mask           : 255.255.128.0
```

Table 59-3:

| Parameter | Definition |
|--------------------|--|
| ATMF Status | The Node's AMF status, either Enabled or Disabled. |
| Network Name | The AMF network that a particular node belongs to. |
| Node Name | The name assigned to a particular node. |
| Role | The role configured for this AMF device, either Master or Member. |
| Current ATMF Nodes | The count of AMF nodes in an AMF Network. |
| Node Address | An Address used to access a remotely located node. This is simply the Node Name plus the dotted suffix atmf (.atmf). |
| Node ID | A Unique identifier assigned to a Node on an AMF network. |
| Node Depth | The number of nodes in path from this node to level of the AMF root node. It can be thought of as the vertical depth of the AMF network from a particular node to the zero level of the AMF root node. |
| Domain State | The state of Node in a Domain in AMF network as Controller/Backup. |

Table 59-3:

| Parameter | Definition |
|-----------------|--|
| Recovery State | The AMF node recovery status. Indicates whether a node recovery is in progress on this device - Auto, Manual, or None. |
| Management VLAN | The VLAN created for traffic between Nodes of different domain (up/down links). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4092 is configured as the Management VLAN. ■ Management Subnet - Network prefix for the subnet. ■ Management IP Address - The IP address allocated for this traffic. ■ Management Mask - The subnet mask used to create a subnet for this traffic (255.255.128.0). |
| Domain VLAN | The VLAN assigned for traffic between Nodes of same domain (crosslink). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4091 is configured as the domain VLAN. ■ Domain Subnet. The subnet address used for this traffic. ■ Domain IP Address. The IP address allocated for this traffic. ■ Domain Mask. The subnet mask used to create a subnet for this traffic (255.255.128.0). |
| Device Type | The Product Series Name. |
| ATMF Master | 'Y' if the node belongs to a Core domain. |
| SC | The Switch Configuration, C - Chassis(SBx81series), S - Stackable (VCS) and N - Standalone. |
| Parent | The a Node to which the current node has an active uplink. |
| Node Depth | The number of nodes in the path from this node to the Core domain. |

show atmf group

This command can be used to display the group membership within to a particular AMF node. It can also be used with the working-set command to display group membership within a working set.

Each node in the AMF is automatically added to the group that is appropriate to its hardware architecture, e.g. x510, x610. Nodes that are configured as masters are automatically assigned to the master group.

You can create arbitrary groups of AMF members based on your own selection criteria. You can then assign commands collectively to any of these groups.

Syntax `show atmf group [user-defined|automatic]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>user-defined</code> | User-defined-group information display. |
| <code>automatic</code> | Automatic group information display. |

Default All groups are displayed

Mode Privileged Exec

Example 1 To display group membership of node2, use the following command:

```
node2# show atmf group
```

A typical output screen from this command is shown below:

```
ATMF group information
master, x510
node2#
```

This screen shows that node2 contains the groups, master and x510. Note that although the node also contains the implicit groups, these do not appear in the show output.

Example 2 The following commands (entered on node2) will display all the automatic groups within the working set containing node-1 and all nodes that have been pre-defined to contain the sysadmin group:

First define the working-set:

```
Node-1# #atmf working-set node-1 group sysadmin
```

A typical output screen from this command is shown below:

```

ATMF group information

master, poe, x8100

=====
node-1, node-2, node33, node-4, node-5, node-6:
=====

ATMF group information

sysadmin, x8100

ATMF-Test-NETWORK[6]#
    
```

This confirms that the six nodes (node_1 to node6) are now members of the working-set and that these nodes reside within the AMF-Test-Network.

Note that to run this command, you must have previously entered the **“atmf working-set” on page 59.50**. This can be seen from the network level prompt, which in this case ATM_Network[6]#.

Figure 59-12: Sample output from the show atmf group command for a working set.

```

ATMF_NETWORK[6]#show atmf group
=====
node3, node4, node5, node6:
=====

ATMF group information

edge_switches, x510
    
```

Table 59-4:

| Parameter | Definition |
|------------------------|---|
| ATMF group information | Displays a list of nodes and the groups that they belong to, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ master - Shows a common group name for Nodes configured as AMF masters. ■ Hardware Arch - Shows a group for all Nodes sharing a common Hardware architecture, e.g. x8100, x900, x610, for example. ■ User-defined - Arbitrary groups created by the user for AMF nodes. |

show atmf group members

This command will display all group memberships within an AMF working-set. Each node in the AMF working set is automatically added to automatic groups which are defined by hardware architecture, e.g. x510, x610. Nodes that are configured as masters are automatically assigned to the master group. User can define arbitrary groupings of AMF members based on their own criteria, which can be used to select groups of nodes.

Syntax `show atmf group members [user-defined|automatic]`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>user-defined</code> | User defined group membership display. |
| <code>automatic</code> | Automatic group membership display. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display group membership of all nodes in a working-set, use the command:

```
ATMF_NETWORK[9]# show atmf group members
```

Figure 59-13: Sample output from the show atmf group members command

```

ATMF Group membership

Automatic          Total
Groups            Members  Members
-----
master            1         Building_1
poe               1         HW_Team1
x510              3         SW_Team1 SW_Team2 SW_Team3
x900              1         Bld1_Floor_2
x610              1         HW_Team1
x8100            2         Building_1 Building_2

ATMF Group membership

User-defined       Total
Groups            Members  Members
-----
marketing          1         Bld1_Floor_1
software           3         SW_Team1 SW_Team2 SW_Team3

```

Table 59-5:

| Parameter | Definition |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>Automatic Groups</code> | Lists the Automatic Groups and their nodal composition. The sample output shows AMF nodes based on same Hardware type or belonging to same Master group. |
| <code>User-defined Groups</code> | Shows grouping of AMF nodes in user defined groups. |
| <code>Total Members</code> | Shows the total number of members in each group. |
| <code>Members</code> | Shows the list of AMF Nodes in each group. |

Related Commands [show atmf group](#)
[show atmf](#)
[atmf group \(membership\)](#)

show atmf links

This command displays brief information about AMF links on a switch, such as link status and adjacent nodes.

Provisioned node names will be displayed with a trailing * character, and will not have an entry under Adjacent Ifindex.

Syntax show atmf links

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the AMF links brief details, use the following command:

```
switch1# show atmf links brief
```

Figure 59-14: Sample output from the show atmf links command

```
switch1# show atmf link brief
ATMF Links Brief:
-----
Local  Link      Port  ATMF      Adjacent  Adjacent  Link
Port   Type      Status State     Node      Ifindex   State
-----
sa1    Crosslink Up      TwoWay    Building_1  4501     Forwarding
1.0.1  Downlink  Up      Full      Bld1_Floor_1  5001     Forwarding
1.0.2  Downlink  Up      Full      Bld1_Floor_2  5003     Forwarding
1.0.3  Downlink  Up      Full      Bld2_Floor_1  6101     Forwarding
1.0.4  Crosslink Down    Init      *switch3    *         Blocking
* = provisioned
```

Related Commands

- no debug all
- clear atmf links statistics
- show atmf
- show atmf nodes

show atmf links detail

This command displays detailed information on all the links configured in the AMF network.

Syntax `show atmf links [detail]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| detail | Detailed AMF links information. |

Mode User Exec

Example To display the AMF link details use this command:

```
switch1# show atmf links detail
```

The output from this command will display all the internal data held for AMF links.

Figure 59-15: Sample output from the show atmf links detail command

```
switch1# show atmf links details
ATMF Links Detail:
Port                               : sa1
Ifindex                            : 4501
VR ID                               : 0
Port Status                        : Up
Port State                         : Full
Port BPDU Receive Count            : 44441
Adjacent Node Name                 : Building_2
Adjacent Ifindex                   : 4501
Adjacent VR ID                    : 0
Adjacent MAC                       : 0014.2299.137d
Port Last Message Response         : 0
```

Figure 59-15: Sample output from the show atmf links detail command (cont.)

```

Port                               : port2.0.2
Ifindex                            : 6002
VR ID                              : 0
Port Status                        : Down
Port State                         : Init
Port BPDU Receive Count           : 0

Link State Entries:

Node.Ifindex                       : Building_2.4501 -
Building_1.4501
Transaction ID                     : 3 - 3
MAC Address                        : 0014.2299.137d -
eccd.6d03.10e3
Link State                         : Full - Full

Domain Nodes Tree:

Node                               : Building_2
  Links on Node                   : 1
  Link 0                          : Building_2.4501 -
Building_1.4501
  Forwarding State                : Forwarding
Node                               : Building_1
  Links on Node                   : 1
  Link 0                          : Building_2.4501 -
Building_1.4501
  Forwarding State                : Forwarding

Crosslink Transaction Entries:

Node                               : Building_2
Transaction ID                     : 3
Uplink Transaction ID             : 3
Uplink Information:

Waiting for Sync                   : 0
Transaction ID                     : 3
Number of Links                    : 0
Number of Local Uplinks            : 0

Uplink Information:

Waiting for Sync                   : 0
Transaction ID                     : 3
Number of Links                    : 0
Number of Local Uplinks            : 0

Originating Node                   : Building_2
Domain                             : -'s domain
Node                               : Building_2
Ifindex                            : 0
VR ID                              : 0
Transaction ID                     : 3
Flags                              : 32
Domain Controller                  : -
Domain Controller MAC              : 0000.0000.0000
    
```

Figure 59-15: Sample output from the show atmf links detail command (cont.)

```

Downlink Domain Information:
Domain                               : Bld2_Floor_1's domain
  Domain Controller                   : Bld2_Floor_1
  Domain Controller MAC               : eccd.6d3f.fef7
  Number of Links                     : 2
  Number of Links Up                  : 2
  Number of Links on This Node        : 1
  Links are Blocked                    : 0
  Node Transaction List
    Node                               : Building_2
    Transaction ID                     : 7
  Domain List
    Domain                             : Bld2_Floor_1's domain
    Node                               : Building_2
    Ifindex                             : 5002
    Transaction ID                       : 7
    Flags                               : 1

    Domain                             : Bld2_Floor_1's domain
    Node                               : Building_1
    Ifindex                             : 7002
    Transaction ID                       : 7
    Flags                               : 1

-----
-----
Up/Downlink Ports Information
-----
-----
Port                               : port1.3.1
Ifindex                             : 7001
VR ID                               : 0
Port Status                         : Up
Port State                          : Full
Adjacent Node                       : Bld1_Floor_1
Adjacent Internal ID                : 4
Adjacent Ifindex                    : 6001
Adjacent Board ID                   : 290
Adjacent VR ID                      : 0
Adjacent MAC                        : 0000.cd37.0ea4
Adjacent Domain Controller           : Bld1_Floor_1
Adjacent Domain Controller MAC       : 0000.cd37.0ea4
Port Forwarding State               : Blocking
Port BPDU Receive Count              : 0
Port Sequence Number                 : 12
Port Adjacent Sequence Number        : 9
Port Last Message Response           : 0

Port                               : port1.3.2
Ifindex                             : 7002
VR ID                               : 0
Port Status                         : Up
Port State                          : Full
Adjacent Node                       : Bld2_Floor_1
Adjacent Internal ID                : 3
Adjacent Ifindex                    : 5001
Adjacent Board ID                   : 333
Adjacent VR ID                      : 0
Adjacent MAC                        : eccd.6d3f.fef7
Adjacent Domain Controller           : Bld2_Floor_1
Adjacent Domain Controller MAC       : eccd.6d3f.fef7
Port Forwarding State               : Blocking
Port BPDU Receive Count              : 0
Port Sequence Number                 : 15
Port Adjacent Sequence Number        : 8
Port Last Message Response           : 0

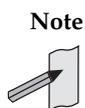
```

Table 59-6: Parameter definitions from the show atmf links detail command output

| Parameter | Definition |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Port Status | Shows status of the local port on the Node as UP/DOWN. |
| Adjacent Node | Shows Adjacent AMF Node to this Node. |
| Adjacent IfIndex | Shows interface on the Adjacent AMF Node connected to this Node. |
| Link State | Shows state of AMF link Forwarding/Blocking. |
| Crosslink Ports Information | <p>Show details of all Crosslink ports on this Node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Port - Name of the Port or static aggregation (sa<*>). ■ Ifindex - Interface index for the crosslink port. ■ VR ID - Virtual router id for the crosslink port. ■ Port Status - Shows status of the local port on the Node as UP/DOWN. ■ Port State - Same as AMF state as described above. ■ Port BPDU Receive Count - The number of AMF protocol PDU's received. ■ Adjacent Node Name - name of the adjacent node in the domain. ■ Adjacent Ifindex - Ifindex of the adjacent node in the domain. ■ Adjacent VR ID - Virtual router id of the adjacent node in the domain. ■ Adjacent MAC - MAC address of the adjacent node in the domain. ■ Port Last Message Response - Response from the remote neighbor to our AMF last hello packet. |
| Link State Entries | <p>Show all the link state database entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Node.Ifindex - Shows adjacent Node names and Interface index. ■ Transaction ID - Shows transaction id of the current crosslink transaction. ■ MAC Address - Shows adjacent Node MAC addresses. ■ Link State - Shows AMF states of adjacent nodes on the link. |
| Domain Nodes Tree | <p>Shows all the nodes in the domain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Node - Name of the node in the domain. ■ Links on Node - Number of crosslinks on a vertex/node. ■ Link no - Shows adjacent Node names and Interface index. ■ Forwarding State - Shows state of AMF link Forwarding/Blocking. |
| Crosslink Transaction Entries | <p>Shows all the transaction entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Node - Name of the AMF node. ■ Transaction ID - transaction id of the node. ■ Uplink Transaction ID - transaction id of the remote node. |
| Uplink Information | <p>Show all uplink entries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Waiting for Sync - Flag if uplinks are currently waiting for synchronization. ■ Transaction ID - Shows transaction id of the local node. ■ Number of Links - Number of up downlinks in the domain. ■ Number of Local Uplinks - Number of uplinks on this node to the parent domain. ■ Originating Node - Node originating the uplink information. ■ Domain - Name of the parent uplink domain. ■ Node - Name of the node in the parent domain, that is connected to the current domain. ■ Ifindex - Interface index of the parent node's link to the current domain. ■ VR ID - Virtual router id of the parent node's link to the current domain. ■ Transaction ID - Transaction identifier for the neighbor in crosslink. ■ Flags - Used in domain messages to exchange the state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_DOWN = 0 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_UP = 1 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_BLOCK = 2 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_NOT_PRESENT = 4 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_NO_NODE = 8 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_NOT_ACTIVE_PARENT = 16 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_NOT_LINKS = 32 ■ ATMF_DOMAIN_FLAG_NO_CONFIG = 64 ■ Domain Controller - Domain Controller in the uplink domain ■ Domain Controller MAC - MAC address of Domain Controller in uplink domain |

Table 59-6: Parameter definitions from the show atmf links detail command output(cont.)

| Parameter | Definition |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Downlink Domain Information | <p>Shows all the downlink entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Domain - Name of the downlink domain. ■ Domain Controller - Controller of the downlink domain. ■ Domain Controller MAC - MAC address of the domain controller. ■ Number of Links - Total number of links to this domain from the Node. ■ Number of Links Up - Total number of links that are in UP state. ■ Number of Links on This Node - Number of links terminating on this node. ■ Links are Blocked - 0 links are not blocked to the domain. 1 All links are blocked to the domain. |
| Node Transaction List | <p>List of transactions from this downlink domain node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Node - 0 links are not blocked to the domain. 1 All links are blocked to the domain. ■ Transaction ID - Transaction id for this node. ■ Domain List: Shows list of nodes in the current domain and their links to the downlink domain.: ■ Domain - Domain name of the downlink node. ■ Node - Name of the node in the current domain. ■ Ifindex - Interface index for the link from the node to the downlink domain. ■ Transaction ID - Transaction id of the node in the current domain. ■ Flags - As mentioned above. |
| Up/Downlink Ports Information | <p>Shows all the configured up and down link ports on this node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Port - Name of the local port. ■ Ifindex - Interface index of the local port. ■ VR ID - Virtual router id for the local port. ■ Port Status - Shows status of the local port on the Node as UP/DOWN. ■ Port State - AMF state of the local port. ■ Adjacent Node - nodename of the adjacent node. ■ Adjacent Internal ID - Unique node identifier of the remote node. ■ Adjacent Ifindex - Interface index for the port of adjacent AMF node. ■ Adjacent Board ID - Product identifier for the adjacent node. ■ Adjacent VR ID - Virtual router id for the port on adjacent AMF node. ■ Adjacent MAC - MAC address for the port on adjacent AMF node. ■ Adjacent Domain Controller - nodename of the Domain controller for Adjacent AMF node. ■ Adjacent Domain Controller MAC - MAC address of the Domain controller for Adjacent AMF node. ■ Port Forwarding State - Local port forwarding state Forwarding or Blocking. ■ Port BPDU Receive Count - count of AMF protocol PDU's received. ■ Port Sequence Number - hello sequence number, incremented every time the data in the hello packet changes. ■ Port Adjacent Sequence Number - remote ends sequence number used to check if we need to process this packet or just note it arrived. ■ Port Last Message Response - response from the remote neighbor to our last hello packet. |



Note You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see **“Controlling “show” Command Output”** on page 1.34.

Related Commands

```
no debug all  
clear atmf links statistics  
show atmf
```

show atmf links statistics

This command displays details of the AMF links configured on the device and also displays statistics about the AMF packet exchanges between the devices.

It is also possible to display the AMF link configuration and packet exchange statistics for a specified interface.

Syntax `show atmf links statistics [interface [<port_number>]]`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>interface</code> | Specifies that the command applies to a specific interface (port) or range of ports. Where both the interface and <code>port_number</code> are unspecified, full statistics (not just those relating to ports) will be displayed. |
| <code><port_number></code> | Enter the port number for which statistics are required. A port range or a static channel can also be specified. Where no <code>port_number</code> is specified, statistics will be displayed for all ports on the switch. |

Mode User Exec

Example 1 To display AMF link statistics for the whole switch, use the command:

```
switch1# show atmf links statistics
```

Figure 59-16: Sample output from the show atmf links statistics command

```

switch1# show atmf links statistics

ATMF Statistics:

-----
                                         Receive          Transmit
-----
Crosslink Hello                          7                14
Crosslink Hello Domain                   18               38
Crosslink Hello Uplink                    3                12
Hello Link                                32               31
Hello Neighbor                            55               57
Hello Stack                               0                0
Database Description                      12              112
Database Request                          5                4
Database Reply                             0                5
Database Update                           35               9
Database Update Bitmap                    0                10
Database Acknowledge                      112              74
Transmit Fails                            0                0
Discards                                  0                0
Total AMF Packets                         300              366

ATMF Database Statistics:

Database Entries                          18
Database Full Ages                         0

ATMF Packet Discards:

Type0      0          Type1      0          Type2      0
Type3      0          Type4      0          Type5      0
Type6      0          Type7      0          Type8      0
Type9      0          Type10     0          Type11     0
Type12     0          Type13     0          Type14     0
Type15     0          Type16     0          Type17     0
Type18     0          Type19     0          Type20     0
Type21     0          Type22     0

ATMF Virtual Link Statistics
Virtual
Link      Receive      Received      Transmit      Transmit
          Dropped
-----
vlink1   0              0              0              0
vlink2   97383         0              36260         0
vlink6   0              3991           0              0
vlink16  0
    
```

Example 2 To display the AMF links statistics on interface port1.0.5, use the command:

```

switch1# show atmf links statistics interface
port1.0.5
    
```

Figure 59-17: Sample output from the show atmf links statistics command for interface 1.0.5

```

switch1# show atmf links statistics interface port1.0.5

ATMF Port Statistics:

Transmit                                         Receive

port1.0.5 Crosslink Hello                       231          232
port1.0.5 Crosslink Hello Domain               116          116
port1.0.5 Crosslink Hello Uplink               116          115
port1.0.5 Hello Link                           0            0
    
```

Table 59-7: Parameter definitions from the show atmf links statistics command output

| Parameter | Definition |
|----------------------|--|
| Receive | Shows a count of AMF protocol packets received per message type. |
| Transmit | Shows the number of AMF protocol packets transmitted per message type. |
| Database Entries | Shows the number of AMF elements existing in the distributed database. |
| Database Full Ages | Shows the number of times the entries aged in the database. |
| ATMF Packet Discards | Shows the number of discarded packets of each type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Type0: The number of discarded crosslink hello msgs received on a non crosslink port. ■ Type1: The number of discarded tx update packets - bad checksum. ■ Type2: The number of discarded tx update bitmap packets - bad checksum. ■ Type3: The number of discarded tx update packets - neighbor not in the correct state. ■ Type4: The number of discarded update packets - bad checksum. ■ Type5: The number of discarded update packets - neighbor not in the correct state. ■ Type6: The number of discarded update bitmap packets - bad checksum. ■ Type7: The number of discarded crosslink hello msgs received on a non crosslink port. ■ Type8: The number of discarded crosslink hello msg received on a port that is not in the correct state. ■ Type9: The number of discarded crosslink domain hello msgs received on a non crosslink port. ■ Type10: The number of discarded crosslink domain hello msgs received on a port that is not in the correct state. ■ Type11: The number of crosslink uplink hello msgs received on a non crosslink port. ■ Type12: The number of discarded crosslink uplink hello msgs ignored on a port that is not in the correct state. ■ Type13: The number of messages with an incorrect name for this AMF network. ■ Type14: The number of over-long packets received on a port. ■ Type15: The number of messages with a bad protocol version received on a port. ■ Type16: The number of messages with a bad packet checksum calculation received on a port. ■ Type17: The number of messages with a bad authentication type received on a port. ■ Type18: The number of messages with a bad simple password received on a port. ■ Type19: The number of discarded packets with an unsupported authentication type received on a port. ■ Type20: The number of discarded packets with an unknown neighbor received on a port. |

 **Note** You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see **“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.**

Related Commands `no debug all`
`clear atmf links statistics`
`show atmf`

show atmf memory

This command displays a summary of the AMF memory usage.

Syntax show atmf memory

Mode User Exec

Example To display AMF memory allocations on Node_1, use the command:

```
node_1# show atmf memory
```

Figure 59-18: Sample output from the show atmf memory command

```
node_1#show atmf memory
ATMF Memory Allocation:
Total memory allocated      : 30020 (bytes)
Total memory allocations    : 77
Line 1238 number           1 memory           28 (bytes)
Line  244 number           2 memory            88 (bytes)
Line 3753 number           2 memory          1872 (bytes)
Line 1616 number           8 memory           320 (bytes)
Line 1391 number           1 memory            60 (bytes)
Line 1837 number          15 memory           600 (bytes)
Line  288 number           1 memory          17716 (bytes)
Line 3916 number           1 memory           1520 (bytes)
Line 1623 number           8 memory            320 (bytes)
Line 4477 number           1 memory          1520 (bytes)
Line  659 number           2 memory            512 (bytes)
Line 1844 number           6 memory            600 (bytes)
Line 1749 number           1 memory            32 (bytes)
Line  203 number           6 memory            600 (bytes)
Line 4205 number           1 memory          1520 (bytes)
Line  206 number           4 memory          1524 (bytes)
Line  549 number           1 memory            232 (bytes)
Line 3495 number           1 memory            56 (bytes)
Line 2628 number           2 memory            72 (bytes)
Line  678 number           1 memory            32 (bytes)
Line 1423 number           1 memory            48 (bytes)
Line 1733 number           3 memory            492 (bytes)
Line 1611 number           8 memory            256 (bytes)
```

Figure 59-18: Sample output from the show atmf memory command (cont.)

```
ATMF Memory Deallocation:

Total memory deallocated      : 4958 (bytes)
Total memory deallocations    : 45
Line   1395  number           4  memory           400 (bytes)
Line   1956  number           1  memory           164 (bytes)
Line   1247  number           1  memory            52 (bytes)
Line    876  number           2  memory            80 (bytes)
Line    166  number           1  memory           232 (bytes)
Line    415  number           7  memory           587 (bytes)
Line    418  number           3  memory           300 (bytes)
Line    822  number           2  memory            80 (bytes)
Line   2341  number           4  memory           160 (bytes)
Line   3025  number           2  memory            88 (bytes)
Line    144  number           3  memory          1596 (bytes)
Line    146  number           6  memory           312 (bytes)
Line   2349  number           4  memory           160 (bytes)
Line   1111  number           1  memory            59 (bytes)
Line   1393  number           4  memory           688 (bytes)

-----
Total memory in use           : 4958 (bytes)
Total memory items           : 45
```

show atmf nodes

This command displays all nodes currently configured within the AMF network. It displays a topographical representation of the network infrastructure.

This command displays a summary of all virtual links currently in the running configuration.

Syntax show atmf nodes

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display AMF information for all nodes in the AMF, use the command:

```
node_1# show atmf nodes
```

Figure 59-19: Sample output from the show atmf nodes command.

```
node1#show atmf nodes
Node Information:
  * = Local device
SC = Switch Configuration:
  C = Chassis   S = Stackable   N = Standalone
```

| Node Name | Device Type | ATMF Master | SC | Parent | Node Depth |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|----|--------------|------------|
| Building_1 | AT-SBx8112 | Y | C | - | 0 |
| * Building_2 | x900-12XT/S | Y | N | - | 0 |
| Bld1_Floor_1 | SwitchBlade x908 | N | S | Building_1 | 1 |
| Bld1_Floor_2 | x600-24Ts/XP | N | N | Building_1 | 1 |
| Bld2_Floor_1 | x610-24Ts-POE+ | N | N | Building_1 | 1 |
| SW_Team1 | x210-24GT | N | N | Bld1_Floor_2 | 2 |

```
Current ATMF node count 8
```

show atmf provision nodes

This command displays information about each provisioned node with details about date and time of creation, boot and configuration files available in the backup, and license files present in the provisioned backup. This includes nodes that have joined the network but are yet to run their first backup.

Syntax show atmf provision nodes

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command is only available on master nodes in the AMF network. The command will only work if provisioned nodes have already been set up. Otherwise, an error message is shown when the command is run.

Example To show the details of all the provisioned nodes in the backup use the command:

```
NodeName# show atmf provision nodes
```

Figure 59-20: Sample output from the show atmf provision nodes command

```
switch1#show atmf provision nodes
ATMF Provisioned Node Information:
Backup Media .....: SD (Total 3827.0MB, Free 3481.1MB)
Node Name           : switch2
Date & Time         : 06-May-2014 & 23:25:44
Provision Path      : card:/atmf/provision_nodes

Boot configuration :
Current boot image  : x510-1766_atmf_backup.rel (file exists)
Backup boot image   : x510-main-20140113-2.rel (file exists)
Default boot config : flash:/default.cfg (file exists)
Current boot config : flash:/abc.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config  : flash:/xyz.cfg (file exists)

Software Licenses :
Repository file    : ../configs/.sw_v2.lic
                  : ../configs/.swfeature.lic
Certificate file   : card:/atmf/nodes/awplus1/flash/.atmf-lic-cert
```

Related commands

- [atmf provision node create](#)
- [atmf provision node clone](#)
- [atmf provision node configure boot config](#)
- [atmf provision node configure boot system](#)
- [show atmf backup](#)

show atmf tech

This command collects and displays all the AMF command output. The command can thus be used to display a complete picture of an AMF network.

Syntax show atmf tech

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display output for all AMF commands, use the command:

```
NodeName# show atmf tech
```

Figure 59-21: Sample output from the show atmf tech command.

```
node1#show atmf tech
ATMF Summary Information:

ATMF Status           : Enabled
Network Name         : ATMF_NET
Node Name            : node1
Role                 : Master
Current ATMF Nodes   : 8

ATMF Technical information:

Network Name           : ATMF_NET
Domain                : node1's domain
Node Depth            : 0
Domain Flags          : 0
Authentication Type   : 0
MAC Address           : 0014.2299.137d
Board ID              : 287
Domain State          : DomainController
Domain Controller     : node1
Backup Domain Controller : node2
Domain controller MAC : 0014.2299.137d
Parent Domain         : -
Parent Domain Controller : -
Parent Domain Controller MAC : 0000.0000.0000
Number of Domain Events : 0
Crosslink Ports Blocking : 0
Uplink Ports Waiting on Sync : 0
Crosslink Sequence Number : 7
Domains Sequence Number : 28
Uplink Sequence Number : 2
Number of Crosslink Ports : 1
Number of Domain Nodes : 2
Number of Neighbors : 5
Number of Non Broadcast Neighbors : 3
Number of Link State Entries : 1
Number of Up Uplinks : 0
Number of Up Uplinks on This Node : 0
DBE Checksum         : 84fc6
Number of DBE Entries : 0
Management Domain Ifindex : 4391
Management Domain VLAN : 4091
Management ifindex   : 4392
Management VLAN      : 4092
...
...
```

Table 59-8:

| Parameter | Definition |
|--------------------|--|
| ATMF Status | Shows status of AMF feature on the Node as Enabled/Disabled. |
| Network Name | The name of the AMF network to which this node belongs. |
| Node Name | The name assigned to the node within the AMF network. |
| Role | The role configured on the switch within the AMF - either master or member. |
| Current ATMF Nodes | A count of the AMF nodes in the AMF network. |
| Node Address | The identity of a node (in the format name.atmf) that enables its access it from a remote location. |
| Node ID | A unique identifier assigned to an AMF node. |
| Node Depth | The number of nodes in path from this node to the core domain. |
| Domain State | A node's state within an AMF Domain - either controller or backup. |
| Recovery State | The AMF node recovery status. Indicates whether a node recovery is in progress on this device - either Auto, Manual, or None. |
| Management VLAN | The VLAN created for traffic between nodes of different domains (up/down links). VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4092 is configured as the Management VLAN. Management Subnet - the Network prefix for the subnet. Management IP Address - the IP address allocated for this traffic. Management Mask - the Netmask used to create a subnet for this traffic 255.255.128.0 (= prefix /17) |
| Domain VLAN | The VLAN assigned for traffic between Nodes of same domain (crosslink). VLAN ID - In this example VLAN 4091 is configured as the domain VLAN. Domain Subnet - the Subnet address used for this traffic. Domain IP Address - the IP address allocated for this traffic. Domain Mask - the Netmask used to create a subnet for this traffic 255.255.128.0 (= prefix /17) |
| Device Type | Shows the Product Series Name. |
| ATMF Master | Indicates the nodes membership of the core domain (membership is indicated by Y) |
| SC | Shows switch configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ C - Chassis (such as SBx8100 series) ■ S - Stackable (VCS) ■ N - Standalone |
| Parent | A node to which connects to the present node's uplink, i.e. one layer higher in the hierarchy. |
| Node Depth | Shows the number of nodes in path from the current node to the Core domain. |

Note  The show atmf tech command can produce very large output. For this reason only the most significant terms are defined in this table.

show atmf working-set

This command displays the nodes that form the current AMF working-set.

Syntax show atmf working-set

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To show current members of the working-set, use the command:

```
ATMF_NETWORK[6]# show atmf working-set
```

Figure 59-22: Sample output from the show atmf working-set command.

```
ATMF Working Set Nodes:
node1, node2, node3, node4, node5, node6
Working set contains 6 nodes
```

Related Commands [atmf working-set](#)
[show atmf](#)
[show atmf group](#)

show debugging atmf

This command shows the debugging modes status for AMF.

Syntax show debugging atmf

Mode User Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the AMF debugging status, use the command:

```
node_1# show debugging atmf
```

Figure 59-23: Sample output from the show debugging atmf command.

```
node1# show debugging atmf
ATMF debugging status:
ATMF link debugging is on
ATMF crosslink debugging is on
ATMF database debugging is on
ATMF neighbor debugging is on
ATMF packet debugging is on
ATMF error debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug atmf packet](#)

show debugging atmf packet

This command shows details of AMF Packet debug command.

Syntax show debugging atmf packet

Mode User Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the AMF packet debugging status, use the command:

```
node_1# show debug atmf packet
```

Figure 59-24: Sample output from the show debugging atmf packet command.

```
ATMF packet debugging is on
=== ATMF Packet Debugging Parameters===
Node Name: x900
Port name: port1.0.1
Limit: 500 packets
Direction: TX
Info Level: Level 2
Packet Type Bitmap:
2. Crosslink Hello BPDU pkt with downlink domain info
3. Crosslink Hello BPDU pkt with uplink info
4. Down and up link Hello BPDU pkts
6. Stack hello unicast pkts
8. DBE request
9. DBE update
10. DBE bitmap update
```

Related Commands [debug atmf](#)
[debug atmf packet](#)

show running-config atmf

This command displays the running system information that is specific to AMF.

Syntax show running-config atmf

Mode User Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the current configuration of AMF, use the following commands:

```
node_1# show running-config atmf
```

Note  You can manage your show output, or make it a more selective, by using a command modifier. For information on using show-command modifiers see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Related Commands [show running-config](#)
[no debug all](#)

switchport atmf-crosslink

This command configures the selected port or (statically) aggregated link to be an AMF crosslink. Running this command will automatically place the port or static aggregator into trunk mode (i.e. switchport mode trunk).

The connection between two AMF masters must utilize a crosslink. Crosslinks are used to carry the AMF control information between master nodes. Multiple crosslinks can be configured between two master nodes, but only one crosslink can be active at any particular time. All other crosslinks between masters will be placed in the blocking state, in order to prevent broadcast storms.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove any crosslink that may exist for the selected port or aggregated link.

Syntax `switchport atmf-crosslink`
`no switchport atmf-crosslink`

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage Crosslinks can be used anywhere within an AMF network. They have the effect of separating the AMF network into separate domains.

Where this command is used, it is also good practice to use the **switchport trunk native vlan** command with its parameter "**none**" selected. This is to prevent a network storm on a topology of ring connected switches.

Example 1 To make a switchport 1.0.1 an AMF crosslink, use the following commands:

```
Node_1# configure terminal
Node_1(config)# interface port1.0.1
Node_1(config-if)# switchport atmf-crosslink
```

Example 2 This example is shown twice. Example 2A is the most basic command sequence. Example 2B is a good practice equivalent that avoids problems such as broadcast storms that can otherwise occur.

Example 2A To make static aggregator sa1 an AMF crosslink, use the following commands:

```
Node_1# configure terminal
Node_1(config)# interface sa1
Node_1(config-if)# switchport atmf-crosslink
```

Example 2B To make static aggregator sa1 an AMF crosslink, use the following commands for good practice:

```
Node_1# configure terminal
Node_1(config)# interface sa1
Node_1(config-if)# switchport atmf-crosslink
Node_1(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan add 2
Node_1(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan none
```

In this example VLAN 2 is assigned to the static aggregator, and the native VLAN (VLAN 1) is explicitly excluded from the aggregated ports and the crosslink assigned to it.

Note The AMF management and domain VLANs are automatically added to the aggregator and the crosslink.



Related Commands [show atmf links statistics](#)

switchport atmf-link

This command enables you to configure a port or aggregator to be an AMF uplink/downlink. Running this command will automatically place the port or aggregator into trunk mode.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove any AMF-link that may exist for the selected port or aggregated link.

Syntax `switchport atmf-link`
`no switchport atmf-link`

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To make a switchport 1.0.1 an AMF crosslink, use the following commands

```
Node_1# configure terminal
Node_1(config)# interface port1.0.1
Node_1(config-if)# switchport atmf-link
```

type atmf node

This command configures a trigger to be activated at an AMF node join event or leave event.

Syntax type atmf node {join|leave}

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| join | AMF node join event. |
| leave | AMF node leave event. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Example 1 To configure trigger 5 to activate at an AMF node leave event, use the following commands. In this example the command is entered on node-1:

```
node1(config)# trigger 5
node1(config-trigger) type atmf node leave
```

Example 2 The following commands will configure trigger 5 to activate if an AMF node join event occurs on any node within the working set:

```
node1# atmf working-set group all
```

This command returns the following display:

```
=====
node1, node2, node3:
=====

Working set join
```

Note that the running the above command changes the prompt from the name of the local node, to the name of the AMF-Network followed, in square brackets, by the number of member nodes in the working set.

```
AMF-Net[3]# conf t
AMF-Net[3](config)# trigger 5
AMF-Net[3](config-trigger)# type atmf node leave
AMF-Net[3](config-trigger)# description "E-mail on AMF Exit"
AMF-Net[3](config-trigger)# active
```

Enter the name of the script to run at the trigger event.

```
AMF-Net[3](config-trigger)# script 1 email_me.scp
AMF-Net[3](config-trigger)# end
```

Display the trigger configurations

```
AMF-Net[3]# show trigger
```

This command returns the following display:

```

=====
node1:
=====

TR# Type & Details      Description          Ac Te Tr Repeat      #Scr Days/Date
-----
001 Periodic (2 min)    Periodic Status Chk Y  N  Y Continuous    1  smtwtfS
005 ATMF node (leave)  E-mail on ATMF Exit Y  N  Y Continuous    1  smtwtfS
-----

=====
Node2, Node3,
=====

TR# Type & Details      Description          Ac Te Tr Repeat      #Scr Days/Date
-----
005 ATMF node (leave)  E-mail on ATMF Exit Y  N  Y Continuous    1  smtwtfS
-----
    
```

Display the triggers configured on each of the nodes in the AMF Network.

```
AMF-Net[3]# show running-config trigger
```

This command returns the following display:

```

=====
Node1:
=====

trigger 1
  type periodic 2
  script 1 atmf.scp
trigger 5
  type atmf node leave
  description "E-mail on ATMF Exit"
  script 1 email_me.scp
!

=====
Node2, Node3:
=====

trigger 5
  type atmf node leave
  description "E-mail on ATMF Exit"
  script 1 email_me.scp
!
    
```

undebbug atm

This command is an alias for the **no** variant of the **debug atm** command on page 59.52.

The IPv4 addresses shown may include those specified for documentation purposes in RFC 5737: 192.0.2.0/24, 198.51.100.0/24, 203.0.113.0/24. These addresses should not be used for practical networks (other than for testing purposes), nor should they appear in any public network.

Chapter 60: NTP Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 60.2 |
| Overview | 60.2 |
| NTP on the Switch..... | 60.3 |
| Troubleshooting..... | 60.4 |
| Configuration Example | 60.5 |

Introduction

This chapter describes the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service provided by the switch, and how to configure and monitor NTP on the switch.

NTP is a protocol for synchronizing the time clocks on a collection of network devices using a distributed client/server mechanism. NTP uses UDP (User Datagram Protocol) as the transport mechanism. NTP evolved from the Time Protocol (RFC 868) and the ICMP Timestamp message (RFC 792).

NTP provides protocol mechanisms to specify the precision and estimated error of the local clock and the characteristics of the reference clock to which it may be synchronized.

For detailed information about the commands used to configure NTP, see [Chapter 61, NTP Commands](#).

Overview

NTP uses a subnetwork with primary reference clocks, gateways, secondary reference clocks, and local hosts. These are organized into a hierarchy with the more accurate clocks near the top and less accurate ones near the bottom.

A number of primary reference clocks, synchronized to national standards, are connected to widely accessible resources (such as backbone gateways or switches) operating as primary time servers. The primary time servers use NTP between them to crosscheck clocks, to mitigate errors due to equipment or propagation failures, and to distribute time information to local secondary time servers. The secondary time servers redistribute the time information to the remaining local hosts.

The hierarchical organization and distribution of time information reduces the protocol overhead, and allows selected hosts to be equipped with cheaper but less accurate clocks. NTP provides information which organizes this hierarchy on the basis of precision or estimated error.

- An NTP entity may be in one of the following operating modes; however, the switch's implementation of NTP supports two modes: client and server.
- An NTP entity operating in a client mode sends periodic messages to its peers, requesting synchronization by its peers.
- An NTP entity enters the server mode temporarily when it receives a client request message from one of its peers, and remains in server mode until the reply to the request has been transmitted.
- An NTP entity operating in symmetric active mode sends messages announcing its willingness to synchronize and be synchronized by its peers.
- An NTP entity enters symmetric passive mode in response to a message from a peer operating in Symmetric Active mode. An NTP entity operating in this mode announces its willingness to synchronize and be synchronized by its peers.
- An NTP entity operating in broadcast mode periodically sends messages announcing its willingness to synchronize all of its peers but not to be synchronized by any of them.

The same message format is used for both requests and replies. When a request is received, the server interchanges addresses and ports, fills in or overwrites certain fields in the message, recalculates the checksum, and returns it immediately. The information included in the NTP message allows each client/ server peer to determine the timekeeping characteristics of its peers, including the expected accuracies of their clocks. Each peer uses this information and selects the best time from possibly several other clocks, updates the local clock, and estimates its accuracy.

There is no provision in NTP for peer discovery, acquisition, or authentication. Data integrity is provided by the IP and UDP checksums. No reachability, circuit-management, duplicate-detection, or retransmission facilities are provided or necessary.

By its very nature clock synchronization requires long periods of time (hours or days) and multiple comparisons in order to maintain accurate timekeeping. The more comparisons performed, the greater the accuracy of the timekeeping.

NTP on the Switch

The implementation of NTP on the switch is based on the following RFCs:

- RFC 958, Network Time Protocol (NTP)
- RFC 1305, Network Time Protocol (Version 3) Specification, Implementation and Analysis
- RFC 1510, The Kerberos Network Authentication Service (V5)

Two modes of operation are supported: client and server. The switch is in client mode most of the time where it polls the configured peer at least once every preconfigured minimum time period.

The peer that the switch refers to must be a more accurate clock source than the switch itself or another switch directly connected to a more accurate clock source. The switch operates as a secondary time server. It cannot operate as a primary time server unless the primary clock source is operating in server mode. A primary clock source usually operates in broadcast mode, which is not supported by the switch's implementation of NTP. When the switch receives a valid reply from the peer, it synchronizes its own internal clock according to the information from the reply.

If the switch receives a synchronization request from an NTP client, it temporarily changes to server mode. It replies to the request with the current time from the switch's internal clock along with other information useful for synchronization. The switch's internal clock is accurate to 0.005 seconds.

Troubleshooting

Problem The switch is not assigning the time to devices on the LAN.

- Solutions**
- Check that the NTP peer's IP address is entered correctly.
 - Check that the NTP peer can reach the switch, by pinging the switch from the NTP peer.

Problem The switch's clock does not synchronize with the NTP peer.

- Solution**
- The switch's clock can synchronize with the NTP peer only when its initial time is similar to the NTP peer's time (after setting the UTC offset). Manually set the switch's time so that it is approximately correct, and enable NTP again.
 - Check that the UTC offset is correct.

Problem The switch's time is incorrect, even though it assigns the correct time to devices on the LAN.

Solution The UTC offset is probably incorrect, or needs to be adjusted for the beginning or end of summer time.

Configuration Example

NTP requires the IP module to be enabled and configured correctly.

The switch's implementation of NTP supports two modes: client and server mode. When a synchronization request is received from a client (e.g. a PC on a LAN), the switch enters server mode and responds with time information derived from the switch's own internal clock. Periodically the switch enters client mode, sending synchronization requests to a predefined peer to synchronize its own internal clock. The peer is assumed to be a primary clock source or another switch connected directly to a primary clock source.

This example illustrates how to configure two switches, one at a Head Office and one at a Regional Office, to provide a network time service. The Head Office switch is connected to a primary time server and provides the most accurate time information. The switch at the Regional Office uses the Head Office switch as its peer to avoid the cost of an additional WAN connection but provides slightly less accurate time information.

To configure NTP on the switch, the NTP module must be enabled and an NTP peer must be defined. NTP transfers time information in UTC format.

To set the switch to automatically change the time when summer time starts and ends, enable a summer time offset setting.

Example configuration parameters for a network time service:

| Site | Regional Office | Head Office |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Switch name | RG1 | HO1 |
| IP Address of Switch | 10.5.35.114 | 10.12.25.4 |
| IP Address of Peer | 10.5.35.113 | 172.16.7.3 |

Step 1: Enable NTP and define the NTP peer.

The NTP feature must be enabled on all switches that are to provide a network time service. Each switch must have a peer defined where the switch synchronizes its own internal clock. Enable NTP on the Head Office switch and specify a primary time server as the peer by using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp peer 172.16.7.3
```

Note that you can also specify an IPv6 address for an NTP peer:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1
```

Step 2: Configure the NTP parameters.

On each switch, the offset of local time from UTC time must be specified. In this example, both switches are in the same time zone, which is 12 hours ahead of UTC time. Use the following commands on both switches:

```
awplus(config)# clock timezone utc plus 12
```

Note that the range of offset is <0-12>.

Step 3: Check the NTP configuration.

Check the NTP configuration on each switch by using the command:

```
awplus# show ntp status
```

This command displays the following information on the Head Office switch.

```
Clock is synchronized, stratum 0, actual frequency is 0.0000  
Hz, precision is 20 reference time is 00000000.00000000  
(6:28:16.000 UTC Fri Feb 7 2036)clock offset is 0.000 msec,  
root delay is 0.000 msec root dispersion is 0.000 msec,
```

Chapter 61: NTP Commands



| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 61.2 |
| ntp access-group..... | 61.2 |
| ntp authenticate..... | 61.3 |
| ntp authentication-key | 61.4 |
| ntp broadcastdelay | 61.5 |
| ntp master..... | 61.6 |
| ntp peer | 61.7 |
| ntp server | 61.9 |
| ntp source | 61.11 |
| ntp trusted-key | 61.12 |
| show counter ntp..... | 61.13 |
| show ntp associations | 61.14 |
| show ntp status..... | 61.15 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure the Network Time Protocol (NTP). For more information, see [Chapter 60, NTP Introduction and Configuration](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

ntp access-group

This command creates an NTP access group, and applies a basic IP access list to it. This allows you to control access to NTP services.

The **no** variant of this command removes the configured NTP access group.

Syntax

```
ntp access-group [peer|query-only|serve|serve-only] [<1-99>|
<1300-1999>]
no ntp access-group [peer|query-only|serve|serve-only]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| peer | Allows time requests and NTP control queries, and allows the system to synchronize itself to a system whose address passes the access list criteria. |
| query-only | Allows only NTP control queries from a system whose address passes the access list criteria. |
| serve | Allows time requests and NTP control queries, but does not allow the system to synchronize itself to a system whose address passes the access list criteria. |
| serve-only | Allows only time requests from a system whose address passes the access list criteria. |
| <1-99> | Standard IP access list. |
| <1300-1999> | Expanded IP access list. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create an NTP peer access group for an extended IP access list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp access-group peer 1998
```

To disable the NTP peer access group created above, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp access-group peer
```

ntp authenticate

This command enables NTP authentication. This allows NTP to authenticate the associations with other systems for security purposes.

The **no** variant of this command disables NTP authentication.

Syntax ntp authenticate
no ntp authenticate

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable NTP authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp authenticate
```

To disable NTP authentication, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp authenticate
```

ntp authentication-key

This command defines each of the authentication keys. Each key has a key number, a type, and a value. Currently, the only key type supported is MD5.

The **no** variant of this disables the authentication key assigned previously using **ntp authentication-key**.

Syntax `ntp authentication-key <keynumber> md5 <key>`
`no ntp authentication-key <keynumber> md5 <key>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><keynumber></code> | <code><1-4294967295></code> The key number. |
| <code><key></code> | The authentication key. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To define an authentication key number 134343 and a key value `mystring`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp authentication-key 134343 md5 mystring
```

To disable the authentication key number 134343 with the key value `mystring`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp authentication-key 134343 md5 mystring
```

ntp broadcastdelay

Use this command to set the estimated round-trip delay for broadcast packets.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset the round-trip delay for broadcast packets to the default offset of 0 microseconds.

Syntax `ntp broadcastdelay <delay>`
`no ntp broadcastdelay`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code><delay></code> | <code><1-999999></code> The broadcast delay in microseconds. |

Default 0 microsecond offset, which can only be applied with the **no** variant of this command.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the estimated round-trip delay to 23464 microseconds for broadcast packets, use these commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp broadcastdelay 23464
```

To reset the estimated round-trip delay for broadcast packets to the default setting (0 microseconds), use these commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp broadcastdelay
```

ntp master

Use this command to make the device to be an authoritative NTP server, even if the system is not synchronized to an outside time source. Note that no stratum number is set by default.

Use the **no** variant of this command to stop the device being the designated NTP server.

Syntax `ntp master [<stratum>]`
`no ntp master`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <stratum> | <1-15> The stratum number defines the configured level that is set for this master within the NTP hierarchy. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The stratum number is null by default and must be set using this command. The stratum levels define the distance from the reference clock and exist to prevent cycles in the hierarchy. Stratum 1 is used to indicate time servers, which are more accurate than Stratum 2 servers. For more information on the Network Time Protocol go to: www.ntp.org/

Examples To stop the switch from being the designated NTP server use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp master
```

To make the switch the designated NTP server with stratum number 2 use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp master 2
```

ntp peer

Use this command to configure an NTP peer association. An NTP association is a peer association if this system is willing to either synchronize to the other system, or allow the other system to synchronize to it.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configured NTP peer association.

Syntax `ntp peer {<peeraddress>|<peername>}`
`ntp peer {<peeraddress>|<peername>} [prefer] [key <key>]`
`[version <version>]`
`no ntp peer {<peeraddress>|<peername>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><peeraddress></code> | Specify the IP address of the peer, entered in the form A . B . C . D for an IPv4 address, or in the form X : XX . X for an IPv6 address. |
| <code><peername></code> | Specify the peer hostname. The peer hostname can resolve to an IPv4 and an IPv6 address. |
| <code>prefer</code> | Prefer this peer when possible. |
| <code>key <key></code> | <code><1-4294967295></code> Configure the peer authentication key. |
| <code>version <version></code> | <code><1-4></code> Configure for this NTP version. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples See the following commands for options to configure NTP peer association, key and NTP version for the peer with an IPv4 address of 192 . 0 . 2 . 23:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 prefer
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 prefer version 4
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 prefer version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 version 4
awplus(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.23 key 1234
```

To remove an NTP peer association for this peer with an IPv4 address of 192 . 0 . 2 . 23, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp peer 192.0.2.23
```

See the following commands for options to configure NTP peer association, key and NTP version for the peer with an IPv6 address of 2001:0db8:010d::1:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 prefer
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 prefer version 4
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 prefer version 4 key
1234
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 version 4
awplus(config)# ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1 key 1234
```

To remove an NTP peer association for this peer with an IPv6 address of 2001:0db8:010d::1, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp peer 2001:0db8:010d::1
```

Related Commands [ntp server](#)
 [ntp source](#)

ntp server

Use this command to configure an NTP server. This means that this system will synchronize to the other system, and not vice versa.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configured NTP server.

Syntax

```
ntp server {<serveraddress>|<servername>}
ntp server {<serveraddress>|<servername>} [prefer] [key <key>]
    [version <version>]
no ntp server {<serveraddress>|<servername>}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <serveraddress> | Specify the IP address of the peer, entered in the form A.B.C.D for an IPv4 address, or in the form X:X::X.X for an IPv6 address. |
| <servername> | Specify the server hostname. The server hostname can resolve to an IPv4 and an IPv6 address. |
| prefer | Prefer this server when possible. |
| key <key> | <1-4294967295> Configure the server authentication key. |
| version <version> | <1-4> Configure for this NTP version. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples See the following commands for options to configure an NTP server association, key and NTP version for the server with an IPv4 address of 192.0.1.23:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 prefer
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 prefer version 4
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 prefer version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 version 4
awplus(config)# ntp server 192.0.1.23 key 1234
```

To remove an NTP peer association for this peer with an IPv4 address of 192.0.1.23, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp server 192.0.1.23
```

See the following commands for options to configure an NTP server association, key and NTP version for the server with an IPv6 address of 2001:0db8:010e::2:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2 prefer
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2 prefer version 4
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2 prefer version 4
                    key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2 version 4 key 1234
awplus(config)# ntp server 22001:0db8:010e::2 version 4
awplus(config)# ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2 key 1234
```

To remove an NTP peer association for this peer with an IPv6 address of 2001:0db8:010e::2, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp server 2001:0db8:010e::2
```

Related Commands [ntp peer](#)
 [ntp source](#)

ntp source

Use this command to configure an IPv4 or an IPv6 address for the NTP source interface. This command defines the socket used for NTP messages, and only applies to NTP client behavior.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the configured IPv4 or IPv6 address from the NTP source interface.

Syntax `ntp source <source-address>`

`no ntp source`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code><source-address></code> | Specify the IP address of the NTP source interface, entered in the form <code>A . B . C . D</code> for an IPv4 address, or in the form <code>X : X : : X . X</code> for an IPv6 address. |

Default An IP address is selected based on the most appropriate egress interface used to reach the NTP peer if a configured NTP client source IP address is unavailable or is an invalid IP address.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Adding an IPv4 or an IPv6 address allows you to select which source interface NTP uses for peering. The IPv4 or IPv6 address configured using this command is matched to the interface.

When selecting a source IP address to use for NTP messages to the peer, if the configured NTP client source IP address is unavailable then default behavior will apply, and an alternative source IP address is automatically selected. This IP address is based on the most appropriate egress interface used to reach the NTP peer. The configured NTP client source IP may be unavailable if the interface is down, or an invalid IP address is configured that does not reside on the device.

Note that this command only applies to NTP client behavior. The egress interface that the NTP messages use to reach the NTP server determined by the **ntp peer** and **ntp server** commands.

Examples To configure the NTP source interface with the IPv4 address `192.0.1.23`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp source 192.0.1.23
```

To configure the NTP source interface with the IPv6 address `2001:0db8:010e::2`, enter the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp source 2001:0db8:010e::2
```

To remove a configured address for the NTP source interface, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp source
```

Related Commands [ntp peer](#)
[ntp server](#)

ntp trusted-key

This command defines a list of trusted authentication keys. If a key is trusted, this system will be ready to synchronize to a system that uses this key in its NTP packets.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a configured trusted authentication key.

Syntax `ntp trusted-key <1-4294967295>`
`no ntp trusted-key <1-4294967295>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <1-4294967295> | The specific key number. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To define a trusted authentication key numbered 234675, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ntp trusted-key 234676
```

To remove the trusted authentication key numbered 234675, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ntp trusted-key 234676
```

show counter ntp

This command displays packet counters for NTP.

Syntax `show counter ntp`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 61-1: Example output from the show counter ntp command**

```
NTP counters
Pkts Sent           ..... 0
Pkts Received       ..... 70958
Pkts Processed      ..... 0
Pkts current version ..... 0
Pkts old version    ..... 0
Pkts unknown version ..... 0
Pkts access denied  ..... 70958
Pkts bad length     ..... 0
Pkts bad auth       ..... 0
Pkts rate exceed    ..... 0
```

Table 61-1: Parameters in the output from the show counter ntp command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Pkts Sent | Total number of NTP client and server packets sent by your device. |
| Pkts Received | Total number of NTP client and server packets received by your device. |
| Pkts Processed | The number of packets processed by NTP. NTP processes a packet once it has determined that the packet is valid by checking factors such as the packet's authentication, format, access rights and version. |
| Pkts current version | The number of version 4 NTP packets received. |
| Pkts old version | The number of NTP packets received that are from an older version, down to version 1, of NTP. NTP is compatible with these versions and processes these packets. |
| Pkts unknown version | The number of NTP packets received that are an earlier version than version 1, or a higher version than version 4. NTP cannot process these packets. |
| Pkts access denied | The number of NTP packets received that do not match any access list statements in the NTP access-groups. NTP drops these packets. |
| Pkts bad length | The number of NTP packets received that do not conform to the standard packet length. NTP drops these packets. |
| Pkts bad auth | The number of NTP packets received that failed authentication. NTP drops these packets. Packets can only fail authentication if NTP authentication is enabled with the ntp authenticate command. |
| Pkts rate exceed | The number of packets dropped because the packet rate exceeded its limits. |

Example To display counters for NTP, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter ntp
```

show ntp associations

Use this command to display the status of NTP associations. Use the detail option for displaying detailed information about the associations.

Syntax show ntp associations [detail]

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example See the sample output of the **show ntp associations** and **show ntp associations detail** commands displaying the status of NTP associations.

Figure 61-2: Example output from the show ntp associations command

```
awplus#show ntp associations
address      ref clock      st when poll reach  delay  offset  disp
~192.0.2.23  INIT          16 - 512 000  0.0    0.0    0.0
* master (syncd), # master (unsyncd), + selected, - candidate, ~ configured
awplus#
```

Figure 61-3: Example output from the show ntp associations detail command

```
awplus#show ntp associations detail
192.0.2.23 configured, sane, valid, leap_sub, stratum 16
ref ID INIT, time 00000000.00000000 (06:28:16.000 UTC Thu Feb 7 2036)
our mode client, peer mode unspec, our poll intvl 512, peer poll intvl 1024
root delay 0.00 msec, root disp 0.00, reach 000,
delay 0.00 msec, offset 0.0000 msec, dispersion 0.00
precision 2**-19,
org time 00000000.00000000 (06:28:16.000 UTC Thu Feb 7 2036)
rcv time 00000000.00000000 (06:28:16.000 UTC Thu Feb 7 2036)
xmt time cfl1f2a4.cedde5e4 (00:39:00.808 UTC Tue Feb 2 2010)
filtdelay = 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
filtoffset = 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
filtererror = 16000.00 16000.00 16000.00 16000.00 16000.00 16000.00 16000.00
0 16000.00
```

Table 61-2: Parameters in the output from the show ntp associations command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| address | Peer IP address |
| ref clock | IP address for reference clock |
| st | Stratum. The number of hops between the server and the accurate time source. |
| poll | Time between NTP requests from the device to the server. |
| reach | Shows whether or not the NTP server responded to the last request. |
| delay | Round trip delay between the device and the server. |
| offset | Difference between the device clock and the server clock. |
| disp | Lowest measure of error associated with peer offset based on delay. |

show ntp status

Use this command to display the status of the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Syntax show ntp status

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example See the sample output of the **show ntp status** command displaying information about the Network Time Protocol.

Figure 61-4: Example output from the show ntp status command

```
awplus#sh ntp status
Clock is synchronized, stratum 3, reference is 127.127.1.0
actual frequency is 0.0000 Hz, precision is 2**-19
reference time is cf11f3f2.c7c081a1 (00:44:34.780 UTC Tue Feb  2
2010)
clock offset is 0.000 msec, root delay is 0.000 msec
root dispersion is 7947729.000 msec,
awplus#
```


Chapter 62: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Introduction



| | |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 62.2 |
| Configuring the DHCP Client | 62.3 |

Introduction

This chapter describes the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) support provided by your device. This includes how to configure your device to use the DHCP client to obtain IP addresses for its own interfaces.

Configuring the DHCP Client

You can configure an interface on your device with a static IP address, or with a dynamic IP address assigned using your device's DHCP client. When you use the DHCP client, it obtains the IP address for the interface, and other IP configuration parameters, from a DHCP server. To configure an interface and gain its IP configuration using the DHCP client, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# interface <ifname>
awplus(config-if)# ip address dhcp [client-id <interface>]
                    [hostname <hostname>]
```

The DHCP client supports the following IP configuration options:

- Option 1—the subnet mask for your device.
- Option 51—lease expiration time.

If an IP interface is configured to get its IP address and subnet mask from DHCP, the interface does not take part in IP routing until the IP address and subnet mask have been set by DHCP.

For information on configuring a static IP address on an interface, see the [ip address command on page 25.13](#).

Chapter 63: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Commands



| | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Command List | 63.2 |
| ip address dhcp..... | 63.3 |
| show counter dhcp-client..... | 63.4 |
| show dhcp lease | 63.5 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure DHCP. For more information, see [Chapter 62, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol \(DHCP\) Introduction](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

ip address dhcp

This command activates the DHCP client on the interface you are configuring. This allows the interface to use the DHCP client to obtain its IP configuration details from a DHCP server on its connected network.

The **client-id** and **hostname** parameters are identifiers that you may want to set in order to interoperate with your existing DHCP infrastructure. If neither option is needed, then the DHCP server uses the MAC address field of the request to identify the host.

The DHCP client supports the following IP configuration options:

- Option 1 - the subnet mask for your device.
- Option 51 - lease expiration time.

The **no** variant of this command stops the interface from obtaining IP configuration details from a DHCP server.

Syntax `ip address dhcp [client-id <interface>] [hostname <hostname>]`
`no ip address dhcp`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <interface> | The name of the interface you are activating the DHCP client on. If you specify this, then the MAC address associated with the specified interface is sent to the DHCP server in the optional identifier field. Default: no default |
| <hostname> | The hostname for the DHCP client on this interface. Typically this name is provided by the ISP. Default: no default |

Examples To set the interface `vlan10` to use DHCP to obtain an IP address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan10
awplus(config-if)# ip address dhcp
```

To stop the interface `vlan10` from using DHCP to obtain its IP address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan10
awplus(config-if)# no ip address dhcp
```

Related Commands [ip address](#)

Validation Commands [show running-config](#)
[show ip interface](#)

show counter dhcp-client

This command shows counters for the DHCP client on your device.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax `show counter dhcp-client`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the message counters for the DHCP client on your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter dhcp-client
```

Output **Figure 63-1: Example output from the show counter dhcp-client command**

```
show counter dhcp-client

DHCPDISCOVER out      ..... 10
DHCPREQUEST out      ..... 34
DHCPEDECLINE out     ..... 4
DHCPRELEASE out      ..... 0
DHCPPOFFER in        ..... 22
DHCPACK in           ..... 18
DHCPNAK in           ..... 0
```

Table 63-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter dhcp-client command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| DHCPDISCOVER out | The number of DHCP Discover messages sent by the client. |
| DHCPREQUEST out | The number of DHCP Request messages sent by the client. |
| DHCPEDECLINE out | The number of DHCP Decline messages sent by the client. |
| DHCPRELEASE out | The number of DHCP Release messages sent by the client. |
| DHCPPOFFER in | The number of DHCP Offer messages received by the client. |
| DHCPACK in | The number of DHCP Acknowledgement messages received by the client. |
| DHCPNAK in | The number of DHCP Negative Acknowledgement messages received by the client. |

Related Commands [ip address dhcp](#)

show dhcp lease

This command shows details about the leases that the DHCP client has acquired from a DHCP server for interfaces on the device.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show dhcp lease [<interface>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <interface> | Interface name to display DHCP lease details for. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To show the current lease expiry times for all interfaces, use the command:

```
awplus# show dhcp lease
```

To show the current lease for vlan1, use the command:

```
awplus# show dhcp lease vlan1
```

Output **Figure 63-2: Example output from the show dhcp lease command**

```
Interface vlan1
-----
IP Address:                192.168.22.4
Expires:                   13 Mar 2007 20:10:19
Renew:                     13 Mar 2007 18:37:06
Rebind:                    13 Mar 2007 19:49:29
Server:
Options:
  subnet-mask              255.255.255.0
  routers                  19.18.2.100,12.16.2.17
  dhcp-lease-time         3600
  dhcp-message-type        5
  domain-name-servers     192.168.100.50,19.88.200.33
  dhcp-server-identifier  192.168.22.1
  domain-name              alliedtelesis.com

Interface vlan2
-----
IP Address:                100.8.16.4
Expires:                   13 Mar 2007 20:15:39
Renew:                     13 Mar 2007 18:42:25
Rebind:                    13 Mar 2007 19:54:46
Server:
Options:
  subnet-mask              255.255.0.0
  routers                  10.58.1.51
  dhcp-lease-time         1000
  dhcp-message-type        5
  dhcp-server-identifier  100.8.16.1
```

Related Commands [ip address dhcp](#)

Chapter 64: DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| DHCPv6 Introduction..... | 64.2 |
| DHCPv6 for IPv6 | 64.3 |
| DHCPv6 RFCs | 64.3 |
| DHCPv6 Messages | 64.4 |
| DHCPv6 Renewal and Rebinding | 64.6 |
| Stateful DHCPv6 Message Exchange | 64.8 |
| Stateless DHCPv6 Message Exchange..... | 64.9 |
| DHCPv6 Client and Server Identification..... | 64.10 |
| DHCPv6 Client Functionality..... | 64.11 |
| DHCPv6 Server Selection by a DHCPv6 Client..... | 64.11 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Stateful Client (Prefix) | 64.12 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Stateless Client..... | 64.13 |
| Configuring DHCPv6 Client..... | 64.14 |

DHCPv6 Introduction

This chapter describes the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) client support provided by your switch, including sample DHCPv6 client configuration.

DHCPv6 is specified in RFC 3315 “Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)”

See the section [DHCPv6 Messages](#) for the sequence of messages sent and received between DHCPv6 Servers and DHCPv6 Clients and brief descriptions of the messages.

For the syntaxes, parameters, descriptions, defaults, and examples for all of the commands used in sample DHCPv6 configurations, refer to [Chapter 65, DHCP for IPv6 \(DHCPv6\) Commands](#) for the DHCPv6 Client commands.

 **Note** The IPv6 addresses shown use the address space 2001:0db8::/32, defined in RFC 3849 for documentation purposes. These addresses should not be used for practical networks (other than for testing purposes) nor should they appear on any public network.

DHCPv6 for IPv6

DHCPv6 is used to delegate IPv6 prefixes and to allocate IPv6 addresses. It offers stateful address autoconfiguration, and complements Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) described in RFC 2462, IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration. Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) allows an IPv6-aware device to be plugged into a network, and given an IPv6 address prefix without manual configuration.

- DHCPv6 Clients first use RA messages to auto-configure themselves with any default IPv6 route(s) via gateway router(s).
- Interface addresses can also be automatically configured that are derived from delegated prefix information.

See the section **“DHCPv6 Messages”** on page 64.4 for solicit message information.

DHCPv6 RFCs

See the below list of DHCPv6 related RFCs:

- RFC 3315 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)
Stateful DHCPv6 - DHCPv6 has been standardized by the IETF through RFC 3315.
- RFC 3646 DNS Configuration Options for DHCPv6.
- RFC 3736 Stateless Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Service for IPv6
Stateless DHCPv6 is a combination of IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (RFC 4862) and Dynamic Host Control Protocol for IPv6 (RFC 3315). It is a counterpart to IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration, and can be used with or without IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration to obtain configuration parameters.
- RFC 4841 Neighbor Discovery for IP version 6 (IPv6).
- RFC 4862 IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration.
- RFC 5007 DHCPv6 Leasequery.

DHCPv6 Messages

DHCPv6 uses multicast and unicast addresses for communication. A multicast address provides the equivalent functionality to an IPv4 broadcast address. It identifies a group of interfaces, and packets are sent to all interfaces in that group. Addresses reserved for DHCPv6 messages are:

- **ff02::1:2.** This link-scope multicast address is used by clients to communicate with DHCPv6 servers. When the DHCPv6 module is enabled the switch listens to this address.
- **ff05::1:3.** This site-scope multicast address is used by clients to communicate with DHCPv6 servers. When the DHCPv6 module is enabled the switch listens to this address.

An IPv6 address may be assigned to the DHCPv6 Client for a limited or unlimited time. If the address lifetime is limited, it has a preferred lifetime and a (generally longer) valid lifetime.

Preferred IPv6 addresses are available to interfaces for unrestricted use and are deprecated when the preferred timer expires.

Deprecated IPv6 addresses are available for use and are discouraged but not forbidden. A deprecated address should not be used as a source address, but packets sent from deprecated addresses are delivered as expected.

An IPv6 address becomes invalid and is not available to an interface when the valid lifetime timer expires. Invalid addresses should not appear as the source or destination for a packet.

Once half the time between address assignment and the preferred lifetime has passed (the T1 time), the client sends a **Renew** message to the server, requesting an extension to the address lifetime.

If the client has not received a reply after 80% of the valid lifetime has passed (the T2 time), it sends a multicast **Rebind** message to discover another DHCPv6 Server

In a DHCPv6 Client/DHCPv6 Server environment, DHCPv6 messages are sent from the DHCPv6 Clients to DHCPv6 Server destination UDP port 547. DHCPv6 Servers respond to DHCPv6 Client destination UDP port 546.

DHCPv6 message types

See the below list of DHCPv6 Message Types supported in AlliedWare Plus:

- **SOLICIT:**
A DHCPv6 Client sends a **SOLICIT** message to locate DHCPv6 Servers.
- **ADVERTISE:**
A DHCPv6 Server sends an **ADVERTISE** message to indicate that it is available for DHCPv6 service in response to a SOLICIT message received from a DHCPv6 Client.
- **REQUEST:**
A DHCPv6 Client sends a **REQUEST** message to request configuration parameters, including IPv6 addresses.
- **CONFIRM:**
A DHCPv6 Client sends a **CONFIRM** message to any available DHCPv6 Server to determine whether the IPv6 addresses it was assigned is still appropriate to the link to which the DHCPv6 Client is connected. This can happen when the DHCPv6 Client detects either a link-layer connectivity change, or if it is powered on and one or more

leases are still valid. The **CONFIRM** message is used to confirm whether the DHCPv6 Client is still on the same link or whether it has been moved. The actual lease(s) are not validated; just the prefix portion of the delegated IPv6 addresses or IPv6 prefixes.

- **RENEW:**

A DHCPv6 Client sends a **RENEW** message to the DHCPv6 Server that originally provided the DHCPv6 Client's addresses and configuration parameters, to extend the lifetimes on the IPv6 addresses assigned to the DHCPv6 Client and to update other configuration parameters.

- **REBIND:**

A DHCPv6 Client sends a **REBIND** message to any available DHCPv6 Server to extend the lifetimes of the IPv6 addresses assigned to the DHCPv6 Client, and to update other configuration parameters. This message is sent after a DHCPv6 Client receives no response to a **RENEW** message.

- **REPLY:**

A DHCPv6 Server sends a **REPLY** message containing assigned IPv6 addresses and configuration parameters in response to a **SOLICIT, REQUEST, RENEW, and REBIND** message received from a DHCPv6 Client. A DHCPv6 Server sends a **REPLY** message containing configuration parameters in response to an **INFORMATION-REQUEST** message. A DHCPv6 Server sends a **REPLY** message in response to a **CONFIRM** message confirming or denying that the IPv6 addresses assigned to the DHCPv6 Client are appropriate to the link to which the DHCPv6 Client is connected. A DHCPv6 Server sends a **REPLY** message to acknowledge receipt of a **RELEASE** or **DECLINE** message.

- **RELEASE:**

A DHCPv6 Client sends a **RELEASE** message to the DHCPv6 Server to inform it that the DHCPv6 Client will no longer use one or more of the assigned IPv6 addresses.

- **DECLINE:**

A DHCPv6 Client sends a **DECLINE** message to a DHCPv6 Server to indicate that the DHCPv6 Client has determined that one or more IPv6 addresses assigned by the DHCPv6 Server are already in use on the link to which the DHCPv6 Client is connected.

- **RECONFIGURE:**

A DHCPv6 Server sends a **RECONFIGURE** message to a DHCPv6 Client to inform the DHCPv6 Client that the DHCPv6 Server has new or updated configuration parameters. The DHCPv6 Client is to initiate a **RENEW/REPLY** or an **INFORMATION-REQUEST/REPLY** transaction with the DHCPv6 Server to receive updated information.

- **INFORMATION-REQUEST:**

A DHCPv6 Client sends an **INFORMATION-REQUEST** message to a DHCPv6 Server to request configuration parameters without the assignment of any IPv6 addresses to the DHCPv6 Client.

DHCPv6 client to DHCPv6 server messages

See the below list of DHCPv6 Messages sent from a DHCPv6 Client to a DHCPv6 Server:

- SOLICIT
- REQUEST
- CONFIRM
- RENEW
- REBIND
- RELEASE
- DECLINE
- INFORMATION-REQUEST

DHCPv6 server to DHCPv6 client messages

See the below list of DHCPv6 Messages sent from a DHCPv6 Server to a DHCPv6 Client:

- ADVERTISE
- REPLY
- RECONFIGURE

DHCPv6 Renewal and Rebinding

See the below list of descriptions for DHCPv6 Renewal and Rebinding terminology:

- **T1 Timer:**
Indicates when a DHCPv6 Client must attempt to renew IPv6 addresses or prefixes.
- **T2 Timer:**
Indicates when a DHCPv6 Client must attempt to rebind IPv6 addresses or prefixes.
- **Preferred Lifetime:**
Indicates when preferred IPv6 addresses or prefixes are available to interfaces for unrestricted use and are deprecated when the preferred timer expires. Deprecated addresses and prefixes are available for use and are discouraged but not forbidden. A deprecated address or prefix should not be used as a source address or prefix, but packets sent from deprecated addresses or prefixes are delivered as expected.
- **Valid Lifetime:**
Indicates when IPv6 addresses or prefixes must be abandoned. An IPv6 address or prefix becomes invalid and is not available to an interface when the valid lifetime

timer expires. Invalid addresses or prefixes should not appear as the source or destination for a packet.

■ **Client States:**

- « **Bound:** Normal operation.
- « **Renewing:** Renewing lease.
- « **Rebinding:** Occurs when no reply has been received from the DHCPv6 Server.
- « **Bound:** Receive, process, and finalize new lease.

■ **Renewal Process:**

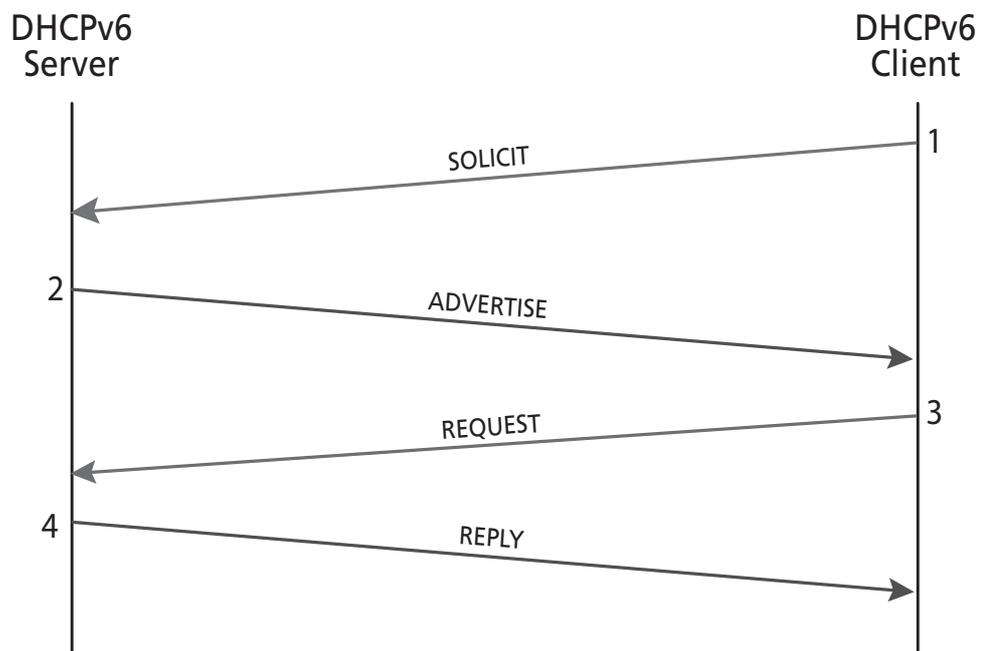
- « Renewal T1 Timer expires (the default T1 Timer period is 50% of the lease length)
- « DHCPv6 Client transitions from Bound to Renewing state.
- « DHCPv6 Client sends DHCPv6 Request/Renew messages (**REQUEST/RENEW** message types)
- « DHCPv6 Client transitions to Rebinding state (if no reply from DHCPv6 Server and the T2 Timer expires).
- « DHCPv6 Client transitions to Bound state (when DHCPv6 Client receives a reply from DHCPv6 Server).

Stateful DHCPv6 Message Exchange

The sequence for stateful DHCPv6 message exchange between a DHCPv6 Client and a DHCPv6 Server is shown below in [Figure 64-1](#).

1. The DHCPv6 Client starts by sending a SOLICIT message to the DHCPv6 Server.
2. The DHCPv6 Server sends an ADVERTISE message back to the DHCPv6 Client.
3. The DHCPv6 Client sends a REQUEST message to the DHCPv6 Server.
4. The DHCPv6 Server sends a REPLY message back to the DHCPv6 Client to finish.

Figure 64-1: Stateful DHCPv6 Message Exchange Diagram



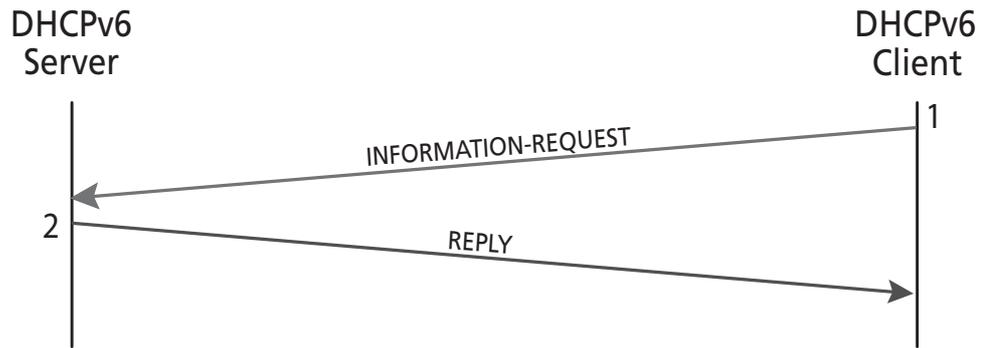
See section [“DHCPv6 Messages”](#) on [page 64.4](#) for descriptions of all DHCPv6 messages.

Stateless DHCPv6 Message Exchange

The sequence for stateless DHCPv6 message exchange between a DHCPv6 Client and a DHCPv6 Server is shown below in **Figure 64-2**.

1. The DHCPv6 Client starts by sending an `INFORMATION-REQUEST` message to the DHCPv6 Server. This request specifically excludes the assignment of any IPv6 address.
2. The DHCPv6 Server sends a `REPLY` message back to the DHCPv6 Client to finish.

Figure 64-2: Stateless DHCPv6 Message Exchange Diagram



See section **“DHCPv6 Messages”** on page 64.4 for descriptions of all DHCPv6 messages.

DHCPv6 Client and Server Identification

DHCPv6 Clients and Servers are identified by a DHCPv6 Unique Identifier (DUID). The DUID consists of a number, followed by a hexadecimal string that identifies the hardware type of the client and the link-layer address of the client.

DHCPv6 Unique Identifier (DUID)

A DUID identifies each DHCPv6 Client and Server, where Client and Server identifier options contain the DUID. The DUID is unique for DHCPv6 Clients and Servers. DHCPv6 uses DUIDs with link-layer addresses for client and server identifiers. The device uses the MAC address from the lowest-numbered interface to determine a DUID.

Prefixes are considered to be for different clients when a DHCPv6 Client requests two prefixes with the same DUID and with different IAIDs on different network interfaces.

Identity associations (IAID, and IANA)

DHCPv6 Clients use identity associations to identify each interface that is configured by DHCPv6. An interface's identity association contains the configuration settings of the interface and an Identity Association Identifier (IAID). When the client requests settings from the server for a particular interface, it includes the IAID, to identify the interface.

IAIDs are consistent after reloading using information from the associated interface that is permanently attached to the device.

DHCPv6 Client Functionality

DHCPv6 Clients can request the delegation of prefixes from a DHCPv6 Server. The IPv6 prefixes acquired from a delegating DHCPv6 Server are stored in an IPv6 prefix pool. The prefixes in the IPv6 prefix pool can be used to number downstream device interfaces.

A DHCPv6 Client is enabled on an individual IPv6-enabled VLAN interface, and can also request and accept those configuration parameters that do not require a DHCPv6 Server to maintain any dynamic state for individual clients, such as DNS server addresses.

DHCPv6 Server Selection by a DHCPv6 Client

A DHCPv6 Client builds a list of DHCPv6 servers by sending a **solicit** message and by receiving **advertisement** replies from DHCPv6 Servers. The replies are ranked by the DHCPv6 Client based on preference value, when DHCPv6 Servers add a preference value to their advertisement messages.

See the section [DHCPv6 Messages](#) for the sequence of messages sent and received between DHCPv6 Servers and DHCPv6 Clients and brief descriptions of the messages.

 **Note** The IPv6 addresses shown use the address space 2001:0db8::/32, defined in RFC 3849 for documentation purposes. These addresses should not be used for practical networks (other than for testing purposes) nor should they appear on any public network.

For the syntaxes, parameters, descriptions, defaults, and examples for all of the commands used in the following DHCPv6 configurations, refer to [Chapter 65, DHCP for IPv6 \(DHCPv6\) Commands](#) for the DHCPv6 Client commands.

Configuring DHCPv6 Stateful Client (Prefix)

In this example, a stateful client can obtain its interface address (via DHCPv6 IANA) and other information (such as DNS, SNTP) configured in the DHCP Server delegation pool.

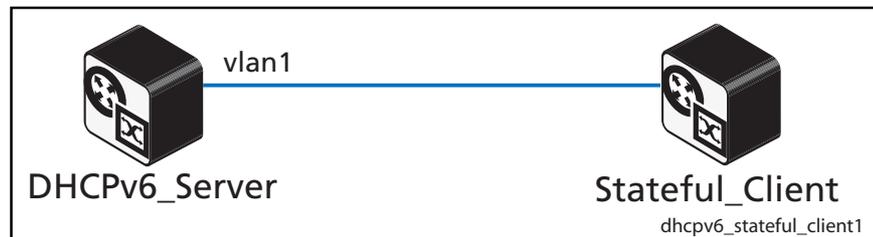
- The client is allocated an address from the address prefix configured in the DHCP Server pool. A stateful client can automatically learn about any gateway router(s) on the LAN and dynamically add associated default route(s) into its routing table via next-hop link-local address of the gateway router via router advertisements.
- RA suppression is turned off in the DHCPv6 Server to facilitate neighbor discovery.

For command information, see the **ipv6 address dhcp** command on the Stateful Client.

Note **bold** configuration command entries show hostnames and interfaces.

Also note the default VLAN interface **vlan1** is applied to all ports on a device.

Figure 64-3: DHCPv6 Stateful Client configuration topology:



Stateful_Client configuration (IANA)

See the below configuration for a device with the hostname **Stateful_Client**:

```
hostname Stateful_Client
!
interface vlan1
  ipv6 address dhcp
```

Configuring DHCPv6 Stateless Client

The Stateless Client can automatically learn about any gateway router(s) on the LAN via router solicitation. It can then dynamically add associated default route(s) into its routing table via the next-hop link-local address of the gateway router.

From RFC 4864, section 5.5.3: If the sum of the prefix length and interface identifier length does not equal 128 bits, the Prefix Information option must be ignored.

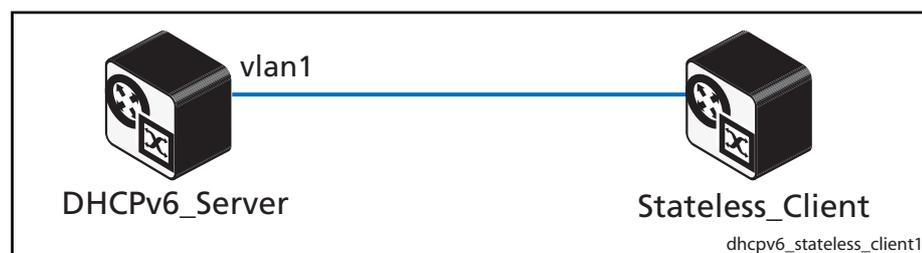
The effect is that prefix information received in an RA will not be applied to form an IPv6 address via SLAAC if the prefix is greater or less than 64. Since EUI is 64 bits in length the IPv6 Prefix of the advertising device must be 64 bits as well.

For command information, see the **ipv6 address autoconfig** command on the Stateless Client.

Note **bold** configuration command entries show hostnames and interfaces.

Also note the default VLAN interface **vlan1** is applied to all ports on a device.

Figure 64-4: DHCPv6 Stateless Client configuration topology:



Stateless_Client configuration (SLAAC)

See the below configuration for a device with the hostname **Stateless_Client**:

```
hostname Stateless_Client
!
interface vlan1
  ipv6 address autoconfig
```

Configuring DHCPv6 Client

In this example, a stateful client device (via IANA) obtains its interface address from a DHCPv6 Server pool. In this example, the DHCPv6 Client resides in a network that is remote from the DHCPv6 Server and communicates via an intermediate DHCPv6 Relay. Diagnostics command output is shown following the configuration output.

The DHCPv6 Server needs a route to the remote LAN, where the client request originates from via the appropriate next-hop. In this example, the next-hop address is the link-local address of the DHCPv6 Relay. The route could be statically configured as in this example, or dynamically learned via an IPv6 routing protocol.

Link addresses are configured in DHCPv6 Server address pools when there are remote clients that communicate via intermediate relay(s).

When an address on the incoming interface of the DHCPv6 Server or a link address set in the incoming delegation request packet matches the link-address prefix configured in the delegation pool, the server is able to match and use the appropriate delegation pool for relayed delegation request messages.

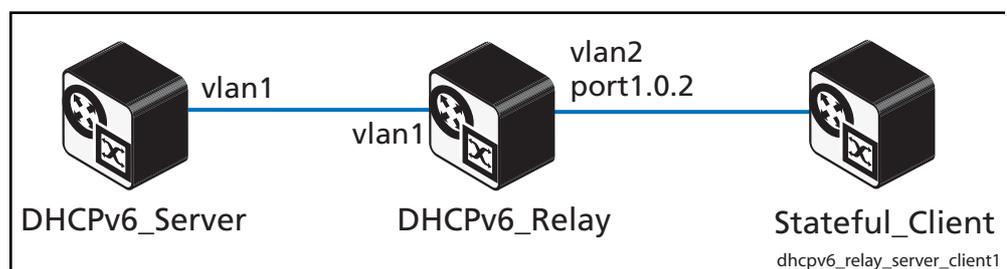
Active bindings are stored in non-volatile memory, and are retained over a device reboot.

For more command information, see the **ipv6 address dhcp** command on the Stateful Client.

Note **bold** configuration command entries show hostnames and interfaces.

Also note the default VLAN interface **vlan1** is applied to all ports on a device.

Figure 64-5: DHCPv6 stateful client configuration topology



Stateful_Client configuration

See the below configuration for a device with the hostname **Stateful_Client**:

```
hostname Stateful_Client
!
interface vlan1
  ipv6 address dhcp
```

Stateful_Client diagnostic output

See the Stateful Client device diagnostic output after entering the command to clear bindings:

```
Stateful_Client#clear ipv6 dhcp client vlan1
Stateful_Client#show ipv6 interface
Interface      IPv6-Address      Status      Protocol
lo             unassigned        admin up    running
vlan1         fe80::215:77ff:fec9:73a3/64
              admin up          running
```

Once the client has an address delegated, see the binding and associated counters below:

```
Stateful_Client#show ipv6 interface
Interface      IPv6-Address      Status      Protocol
lo             unassigned        admin up    running
vlan1         2001:db8:20:0:e2e3:7b54:6d72:28b4/64
              fe80::215:77ff:fec9:73a3/64
              admin up          running
Stateful_Client#show count ipv6 dhcp-client
DHCPv6 client counters
SOLICIT out      ..... 3
ADVERTISE in     ..... 1
REQUEST out      ..... 1
CONFIRM out      ..... 0
RENEW out        ..... 0
REBIND out       ..... 0
REPLY in         ..... 1
RELEASE out      ..... 0
DECLINE out      ..... 0
INFORMATION-REQUEST out ..... 0
```


Chapter 65: DHCP for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Commands



| | |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Command List | 65.2 |
| clear counter ipv6 dhcp-client | 65.3 |
| clear ipv6 dhcp client..... | 65.3 |
| ipv6 address dhcp..... | 65.4 |
| show counter ipv6 dhcp-client | 65.5 |
| show ipv6 dhcp..... | 65.6 |
| show ipv6 dhcp interface..... | 65.7 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure DHCPv6. For introductory information, see [Chapter 64, DHCP for IPv6 \(DHCPv6\) Introduction and Configuration](#).

DHCPv6 is a network protocol used to configure IPv6 hosts with IPv6 addresses and IPv6 prefixes for an IPv6 network. DHCPv6 is used instead of SLAAC (Stateless Address Autoconfiguration) at sites where centralized management of IPv6 hosts is needed. IPv6 routers require automatic configuration of IPv6 addresses and IPv6 prefixes.

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

 **Note** The IPv6 addresses shown use the address space 2001:0db8::/32, defined in RFC 3849 for documentation purposes. These addresses should not be used for practical networks (other than for testing purposes) nor should they appear on any public network.

clear counter ipv6 dhcp-client

Use this command in Privileged Exec mode to clear DHCPv6 client counters.

Syntax `clear counter ipv6 dhcp-client`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To clear DHCPv6 client counters, use the following command:

```
awplus# clear counter ipv6 dhcp-client
```

Related Commands [show counter ipv6 dhcp-client](#)

clear ipv6 dhcp client

Use this command in Privileged Exec mode to restart a DHCPv6 client on an interface.

Syntax `clear ipv6 dhcp client <interface>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><interface></code> | Specify the interface name to restart a DHCPv6 client on. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To restart a DHCPv6 client on interface vlan1, use the following command:

```
awplus# clear ipv6 dhcp client vlan1
```

ipv6 address dhcp

Use this command in Interface Configuration mode to activate the DHCPv6 client on the interface that you are configuring. This allows the interface to use the DHCPv6 client to obtain its IPv6 configuration details from a DHCPv6 server on its connected network.

Use the **no** variant of this command to stop the interface from obtaining IPv6 configuration details from a DHCPv6 server.

The DHCPv6 client supports the following IP configuration options:

- Option 1 - the subnet mask for your switch.
- Option 3 - a list of default routers.
- Option 6 - a list of DNS servers.
- Option 15 - a domain name used to resolve host names.
- Option 51 - lease expiration time.

Syntax `ipv6 address dhcp`
`no ipv6 address dhcp`

Mode Interface Configuration for a VLAN interface or a local loopback interface.

Examples To set the interface `vlan10` to use DHCPv6 to obtain an IPv6 address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan10
awplus(config)# ipv6 enable
awplus(config-if)# ipv6 address dhcp
```

To stop the interface `vlan10` from using DHCPv6 to obtain its IPv6 address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan10
awplus(config-if)# no ipv6 address dhcp
```

Related Commands [ipv6 address](#)

Validation Commands [show running-config](#)

show counter ipv6 dhcp-client

Use this command in User Exec or Privilege Exec mode to show DHCPv6 client counter information.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show counter ipv6 dhcp-client`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the DHCPv6 client counter information, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter ipv6 dhcp-client
```

Output **Figure 65-1: Example output from the show counter ipv6 dhcp-client command**

```
awplus#show counter ipv6 dhcp-client
SOLICIT out          ..... 20
ADVERTISE in         ..... 12
REQUEST out          ..... 1
CONFIRM out          ..... 0
RENEW out            ..... 0
REBIND out           ..... 0
REPLY in             ..... 0
RELEASE out          ..... 0
DECLINE out          ..... 0
INFORMATION-REQUEST out ..... 0
```

Table 65-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter ipv6 dhcp-client command

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| SOLICIT out | Displays the count of SOLICIT messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| ADVERTISE in | Displays the count of ADVERTISE messages received by the DHCPv6 client. |
| REQUEST out | Displays the count of REQUEST messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| CONFIRM out | Displays the count of CONFIRM messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| RENEW out | Displays the count of RENEW messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| REBIND out | Displays the count of REBIND messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| REPLY in | Displays the count of REPLY messages received by the DHCPv6 client. |
| RELEASE out | Displays the count of RELEASE messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| DECLINE out | Displays the count of DECLINE messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |
| INFORMATION-REQUEST out | Displays the count of INFORMATION-REQUEST messages sent by the DHCPv6 client. |

show ipv6 dhcp

Use this command in User Exec or Privileged Exec mode to show the DHCPv6 unique identifier (DUID) configured on your switch.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Syntax show ipv6 dhcp

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage The DUID is based on the link-layer address for both DHCPv6 client and DHCPv6 server identifiers. The switch uses the MAC address from the lowest interface number for the DUID.

The DUID is used by a DHCPv6 client to obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server. A DHCPv6 server compares the DUID with its database of DUIDs and sends configuration data for an IPv6 address plus the preferred and valid lease time values to a DHCPv6 client.

Example To display the DUID configured on your switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 dhcp
```

Output **Figure 65-2: Example output from the show ipv6 dhcp command**

```
awplus#show ipv6 dhcp
DHCPv6 Server DUID: 0001000117ab6876001577f7ba23
```

Related Commands [ipv6 address dhcp](#)

show ipv6 dhcp interface

Use this command in User Exec or Privileged Exec mode to display DHCPv6 information for a specified interface, or all interfaces when entered without the interface parameter.

For information on output options, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34.](#)

Syntax `show ipv6 dhcp interface [<interface-name>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code><interface-name></code> | Optional. Specify the name of the interface to show DHCPv6 information about. Omit this optional parameter to display DHCPv6 information for all interfaces DHCPv6 is configured on. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display DHCPv6 information for all interfaces DHCPv6 is configured on, use the command:

```
awplus# show ipv6 dhcp interface
```

Output **Figure 65-3: Example output from the show ipv6 dhcp interface command**

```
awplus# show ipv6 dhcp interface
vlan1 is in client mode
Address 1001::3c0:1
    preferred lifetime 9000, valid lifetime 5000
    starts at 20 Jan 2012 09:21:35
    expires at 20 Jan 2012 10:25:32
```

Table 65-2: Parameters in the output of the show counter dhcp-client command

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>is in client mode</code> | Displays the specified interface in client mode. |
| <code>Address</code> | Displays the address of the DHCPv6 server on the interface. |
| <code>Preference</code> | Displays the preference value for the DHCPv6 server. |

Chapter 66: SNMP Introduction



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 66.2 |
| Network Management Framework | 66.2 |
| Structure of Management Information..... | 66.4 |
| Names | 66.5 |
| Instances | 66.6 |
| Syntax..... | 66.7 |
| Access..... | 66.7 |
| Status..... | 66.7 |
| Description | 66.7 |
| The SNMP Protocol..... | 66.8 |
| SNMP Versions | 66.8 |
| SNMP Messages..... | 66.9 |
| Polling versus Event Notification | 66.9 |
| Message Format for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c..... | 66.10 |
| SNMP Communities (Version v1 and v2c)..... | 66.11 |
| SNMPv3 Entities..... | 66.11 |
| SNMPv3 Message Protocol Format | 66.12 |
| SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c..... | 66.13 |
| SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c..... | 66.13 |
| SNMP Communities | 66.13 |
| Configuration Example (SNMPv1 and v2)..... | 66.15 |
| SNMPv3..... | 66.18 |
| SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv3 | 66.18 |
| SNMP Groups | 66.18 |
| SNMP Users | 66.18 |
| Configuration Example (SNMPv3) | 66.19 |
| Using SNMP to Manage Files and Software..... | 66.20 |
| Copy a File to or from a TFTP Server | 66.20 |
| Upgrade Software and Configuration Files..... | 66.22 |

Introduction

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is the network management protocol of choice for the Internet and IP-based internetworks.

This chapter describes the main features of SNMP Version 1 (SNMPv1), SNMP Version 2c (SNMPv2c) and Version 3 (SNMPv3). It also describes support for SNMP on the switch, and how to configure the switch's SNMP agent.

Unless a particular version of SNMP is named, "SNMP" in this chapter refers to versions SNMPv1, SNMPv2c and SNMPv3.

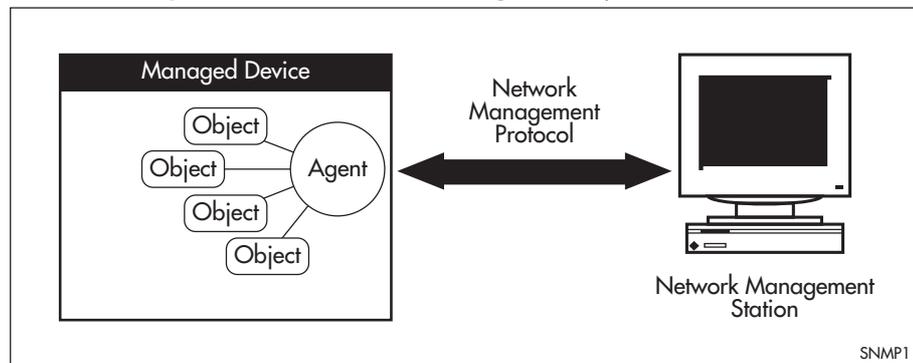
See also [Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#) and [Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#).

Network Management Framework

A network management system has the following components:

- One or more **managed devices**, each containing an agent that provides the management functions. A managed device may be any computing device with a network capability, for example, a host system, workstation, terminal server, printer, router, switch, bridge, hub or repeater.
- One or more **Network Management Stations (NMS)**. An NMS is a host system running a network management protocol and network management applications, enabling the user to manage the network.
- A **network management protocol** used by the NMS and agents to exchange information.

Figure 66-1: Components of a network management system



The Internet-standard Network Management Framework is the framework used for network management in the Internet. The framework was originally defined by the following documents:

- RFC 1155, *Structure and identification of management information for TCP/IP based internets* (referred to as the SMI), details the mechanisms used to describe and name the objects to be managed.
- RFC 1213, *Management Information Base for network management of TCP/IP-based internets: MIB-II* (referred to as MIB-II), defines the core set of managed objects for the Internet suite of protocols. The set of managed objects can be extended by adding other MIBs specific to particular protocols, interfaces or network devices.
- RFC 1157, *A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*, is the protocol used for communication between management stations and managed devices.

Subsequent documents that have defined SNMPv2c are:

- RFC 1901, *Introduction to Community-based SNMPv2*
- RFC 1902, *Structure of Management Information for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)*
- RFC 1903, *Textual Conventions for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)*
- RFC 1904, *Conformance Statements for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol*
- RFC 1905, *Protocol Operations for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)*
- RFC 1906, *Transport Mappings for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)*
- RFC 1907, *Management Information Base for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)*
- RFC 2576, *Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework*
- RFC 2578, *Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2)*
- RFC 2579, *Textual Conventions for SMIv2*
- RFC 2580, *Conformance Statements for SMIv2*

Subsequent documents that have defined SNMPv3 are:

- RFC 3410, *Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet Standard Management Framework*
- RFC 3411, *An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks*
- RFC 3412, *Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*
- RFC 3413, *Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Applications*
- RFC 3414, *User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3)*
- RFC 3415, *View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*
- RFC 3416, *Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*
- RFC 3417, *Transport Mappings for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*
- RFC 3418, *Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

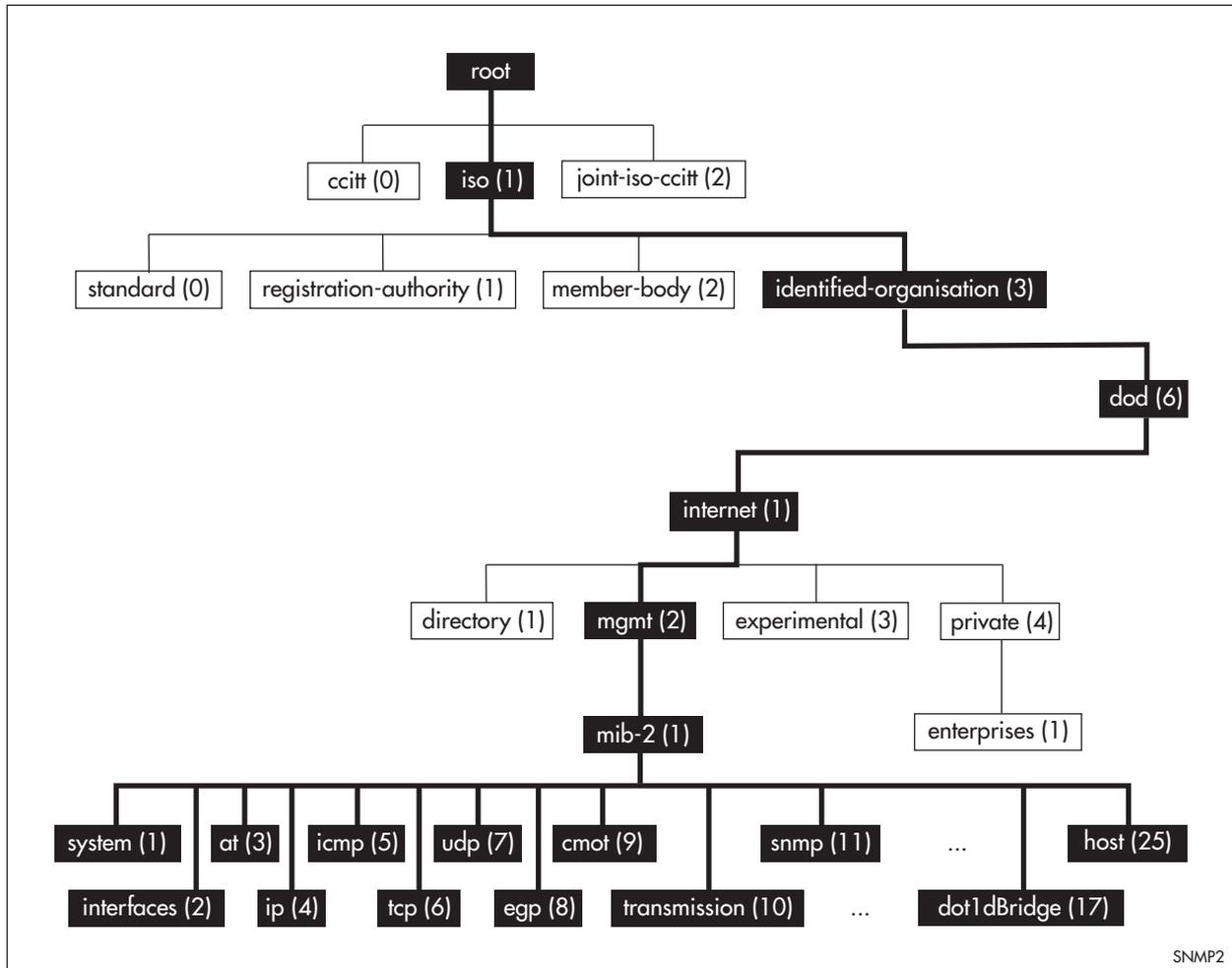
Structure of Management Information

The structure of management information (SMI) defines the schema for a collection of managed objects residing in a virtual store called the management information base (MIB). The information in a MIB includes administrative and operational configuration information, as well as counters of system events and activities.

The MIB is organized into a tree-like hierarchy in which nodes are each assigned an identifier consisting of a non-negative integer and an optional brief textual description.

Each managed object is represented by a leaf node and is defined by its name, syntax, access mode, status and description. It can also be specifically identified by its unique position within the tree. This position is expressed as a series of dot-delimited sub-identifiers that start at the root node and end in the sub-identifier at the particular object's leaf node. For example, in **Figure 66-2** the object named interfaces would be uniquely identified by the string of individual sub-identifiers, 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.

Figure 66-2: Top levels of the Internet-standard Management Information Base (MIB)



Objects defined in the Internet-standard MIB (MIB-II) reside in the mib(1) sub-tree.

Names

Names are used to identify managed objects, and are hierarchical in nature. An object identifier is a globally unique, authoritatively assigned sequence of non-negative integers which traverse the MIB tree from the root to the node containing the object.

Object identifiers may be represented in one of the following forms:

- Dotted notation lists the integer values found by traversing the tree from the root to the node in question, separated by dots. For example, the following identifies the MIB-II sub-tree:

```
1.3.6.1.2.1
```

The following identifies the sysDescr object in the system group of MIB-II:

```
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
```

- Textual notation lists the textual descriptions found by traversing the tree from the root to the node in question, separated by spaces and enclosed in braces. The following example identifies the internet sub-tree:

```
{ iso org dod 1 }
```

The name may be abbreviated to a relative form. The following example identifies the first (directory) node of the internet sub-tree:

```
{ internet 1 }
```

- Combined notation lists both the integer values and textual descriptions found by traversing the tree from the root to the node in question. The integer value is placed in parentheses after the textual description. The labels are separated by spaces and enclosed in braces. For example, the following identifies the first (directory) node in the internet sub-tree:

```
{ iso(1) org(3) dod(6) internet(1) 1 }
```

The name may be abbreviated to the following:

```
directory(1)
```

Since there is no effective limit to the magnitude of non-negative integers, and no effective limit to the depth of the tree, the MIB provides an unlimited name space.

An object is also usually assigned an object descriptor. The object descriptor is a unique, mnemonic, printable string intended for humans to use when discussing the MIB.

Instances

Objects are just templates for data types. An actual value that can be manipulated by an NMS is an instance of an object. An instance is named by appending an instance identifier to the end of the object's object identifier. The instance identifier depends on the object's data type:

- If the object is not a column in a table, the instance identifier is 0 (zero). For example, the instance of the sysDescr object is:

```
sysDescr.0  
or 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
```

- If the object is a column in a table, the method used to assign an instance identifier varies. Typically, the value of the index column or columns is used.

The object ifTable in MIB-II contains information about interfaces and is indexed by the interface number, ifIndex. The instance of the ifDescr object for the first interface is:

```
ifDescr.1  
or 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.1
```

If the index column is an IP address, the entire IP address is used as the instance identifier. The object ipRouteTable in MIB-II contains information about IP routes and is indexed by the destination address, ipRouteDest. The instance of the ipRouteNextHop object for the route 131.203.9.0 is:

```
ipRouteNextHop.131.203.9.0  
or 1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.7.131.203.9.0
```

If the table has more than one index, the values of all the index columns are combined to form the instance identifier. The object tcpConnTable in MIB-II contains information about existing TCP connections and is indexed by the local IP address (tcpConnLocalAddress), the local port number (tcpConnLocalPort), the remote IP address (tcpConnRemAddress) and the remote port number (tcpConnRemPort) of the TCP connection. The instance of the tcpConnState object for the connection between 131.203.8.36,23 and 131.203.9.197,1066 is:

```
tcpConnState.131.203.8.36.23.131.203.9.197.1066  
or 1.3.6.1.2.1.6.13.1.1.131.203.8.36.23.131.203.9.197.1066
```

Syntax

The syntax of an object describes the abstract data structure corresponding to that object type. For example, INTEGER or OCTET STRING.

Access

The access mode of an object describes the level of access for the object.

Access modes for MIB objects:

| Access | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Read-only | The object's value can be read but not set. |
| Read-write | The object's value can be read and set. |
| Write-only | The object's value can be set but not read. |
| Not-accessible | The object's value cannot be read or set. |

Status

The status of an object describes the implementation requirements for the object.

Status values for MIB objects:

| Status | Description |
|------------|---|
| Mandatory | Managed devices must implement the object. |
| Optional | Managed devices may implement the object. |
| Obsolete | Managed devices need no longer implement the object. |
| Deprecated | Managed devices should implement the object. However, the object may be deleted from the next version of the MIB. A new object with equal or superior functionality is defined. |

Description

The definition of an object may include an optional textual description of the meaning and use of the object. This description is often essential for successful understanding of the object.

The SNMP Protocol

The SNMP protocol provides a mechanism for management entities, or stations, to extract information from the Management Information Base (MIB) of a managed device.

The normal method of accessing information in a MIB is to use a Network Management Station (NMS), typically a PC or workstation, to send commands to the managed device (in this case the switch) using the SNMP protocol.

SNMP can use a number of different protocols as its underlying transport mechanism, but the most common transport protocol, and the only one supported by the switch, is UDP. Therefore the IP module must be enabled and properly configured in order to use SNMP. SNMP trap messages are sent to UDP port 162; all other SNMP messages are sent to UDP port 161. The switch's SNMP agent accepts SNMP messages up to the maximum UDP length the switch can receive.

Other transport mappings have been defined (e.g. OSI [RFC 1418], AppleTalk [RFC 1419] and IPX [RFC 1420]), but the standard transport mapping for the Internet (and the one the switch uses) is UDP. The IP module must be enabled and configured correctly. See [Chapter 25, IP Addressing and Protocol Commands](#) for detailed descriptions of the commands required to enable and configure IP.

SNMP Versions

The switch supports SNMP version 1 (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c (SNMPv2c) and SNMP Version 3 (SNMPv3). The three versions operate similarly.

SNMPv2c updated the original protocol, and offered the following main enhancements:

- a new format for trap messages.
- the get-bulk-request PDU allows for the retrieval of large amounts of data, including tables, with one message.
- more error codes mean that error responses to set messages have more detail than is possible with SNMPv1.
- three new exceptions to errors can be returned for get, get-next and get-bulk-request messages. These are: noSuchObject, noSuchInstance, and endOfMibView.

SNMPv3 provides significant enhancements to address the security weaknesses existing in the earlier versions. This is achieved by implementing two new major features:

- Authentication - by using password hashing and time stamping.
- Privacy - by using message encryption.

Support for multiple versions of SNMP is achieved by responding to each SNMP request with a response of the same version. For example, if an SNMPv1 request is sent to the switch, an SNMPv1 response is returned. If an SNMPv2c request is sent, an SNMPv2c response is returned. Therefore, authentication and encryption functions are not invoked when messages are detected as having either an SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c protocol format.

SNMP Messages

The SNMP protocol is termed simple because it has only six operations, or messages—get, get-next, get-response, set, and trap, and SNMPv2c also has the get-bulk-request message. The replies from the managed device are processed by the NMS and generally used to provide a graphical representation of the state of the network. The two major SNMP operations available to a management station for interacting with a client are the get and set operations. The SNMP set operator can lead to security breaches, since SNMP is not inherently very secure. When forced to operate in either SNMPv1 or v2 mode, when operating with older management stations for example, care must be taken in the choice and safe-guarding of community names, which are effectively passwords for SNMP.

Polling versus Event Notification

SNMP employs a polling paradigm. A Network Management Station (NMS) polls the managed device for information as and when it is required, by sending get-request, get-next-request, and/or get-bulk-request PDUs to the managed device. The managed device responds by returning the requested information in a get-response PDU. The NMS may manipulate objects in the managed device by sending a set-request PDU to the managed device.

The only time that a managed device initiates an exchange of information is in the special case of a trap PDU. A managed device may generate a limited set of traps to notify the NMS of critical events that may affect the ability of the NMS to communicate with the managed device or other managed devices on the network, and therefore to “manage” the network. Such events include the restarting or re-initialization of a device, a change in the status of a network link (up or down), or an authentication failure.

Message Format for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c

Table 66-1: Fields in an SNMP message

| Field | Function |
|-----------|--|
| Version | The version of the SNMP protocol. The value is version-1 (0) for the SNMP protocol as defined in RFC 1157, or version-2c (1) for the SNMP protocol as defined in RFC 1902. |
| Community | The name of an SNMP community, for authentication purposes |
| SNMP PDU | An SNMP Protocol Data Unit (PDU). |

Table 66-2: SNMP PDUs

| PDU | Function |
|------------------|--|
| get-request | Sent by an NMS to an agent, to retrieve the value of an object. |
| get-next-request | Sent by an NMS to an agent, to retrieve the value of the next object in the sub-tree. A sub-tree is traversed by issuing a get-request PDU followed by successive get-next-request PDUs. |
| get-bulk-request | Sent by an NMS to an agent to request a large amount of data with a single message. This is for SNMPv2c messages. |
| set-request | Sent by an NMS to an agent, to manipulate the value of an object. SNMP PDU Version Community |
| get-response | Sent by an agent to an NMS in response to a get-request, get-next-request, get-bulk-response, or set-request PDU. |
| trap | Sent by an agent to an NMS to notify the NMS of an extraordinary event. |
| report | Although not explicitly defined in the RFCs, reports are used for specific purposes such as EngineID discovery and time synchronization. |

Table 66-3: Generic SNMP traps

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------|---|
| coldStart | The agent is re-initializing itself. Objects may be altered. |
| warmStart | The agent is re-initializing itself. Objects are not altered. |
| linkDown | An interface has changed state from up to down. |
| linkUp | An interface has changed state from down to up. |
| authenticationFailure | An SNMP message has been received with an invalid community name. |
| egpNeighborLoss | An EGP peer has transitioned to down state. |

SNMP Communities (Version v1 and v2c)

A community is a relationship between an NMS and an agent. The community name is used like a password for a trivial authentication scheme. Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c provide security based on the community name only. The concept of communities does not exist for SNMPv3, which instead provides for a far more secure communications method using entities, users, and groups.

Caution We strongly recommend removing community membership from all SNMPv3 configured devices to prevent access to them via SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, which could bypass the additional SNMPv3 security features.



SNMPv3 Entities

Entities comprise one of the basic components of the SNMPv3 enhanced architecture. They define the functionality and internal structure of the SNMP managers and agents. An in-depth description of entities can be found in RFC 3411, on which the following text is based. SNMPv3 defines two entity types, a manager and an agent. Both entity types contain two basic components: an SNMP engine and a set of applications.

SNMP engine

The engine provides the basic services to support the agents component applications, in this respect it performs much of the functionality expected of the ISO Session and Presentation layers. These functions include message transmission and reception, authentication and encryption, and access control to its managed objects database (MIB). The SNMP engine comprises the following components:

- Dispatcher
- Message processing Subsystem
- Security Subsystem
- Access Control Subsystem

The only security subsystem presently supported is the user based security model (USM).

Each SNMP engine is identified by an `snmpEngineID` that must be unique within the management system. A one to one association exists between an engine and the entity that contains it.

Entity applications

The following applications are defined within the agent applications:

- Command Generator
- Notification Receiver
- Proxy Forwarder
- Command Responder
- Notification Originator
- Other

SNMPv3 Message Protocol Format

Table 66-4: SNMPv3 PDUs

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------------|--|
| msgVersion | Identifies the message format to be SNMPv3. |
| msgID | An identifier used between SNMP entities to coordinate message requests and responses. Note that a message response takes the msgID value of the initiating message. |
| msgMaxSize | Conveys the maximum message size (in octets) an integer between 484 and $2^{31}-1$, supported by the sender of the message. Specified as msgFlags. A single octet whose last three bits indicate the operational mode for privacy, authentication, and report. |
| msgSecurityModel | An identifier used to indicate the security mode (i.e. SNMPv1, SNMPv2c or SNMPv3) to be used when processing the message. Note that although only the SNMPv3 identifier is accepted by the switch, these earlier version message formats are detected by the msgVersion field and processed appropriately. |
| msgAuthoritativeEngineID | The ID of the authoritative engine that relates to a particular message, i.e. the source engine ID for Traps, Responses and Reports, and the destination engine for Gets, GetNexts, Sets, and Informs. |
| msgAuthoritativeEngineBoots | A value that represents the number of times the authoritative engine has rebooted since its installation. Its value has the range 1 to $2^{31}-1$. |
| msgAuthoritativeEngineTime | The number of seconds since the authoritative engine snmpEngineBoots counter was last incremented. |
| msgUserName | The name of the user (principal) on whose behalf the message is being exchanged. |
| msgAuthenticationParameters | If the message has been authenticated, this field contains a serialized OCTET STRING representing the first 12 octets of the HMAC-MD5-96 output done over the whole message. |
| msgPrivacyParameters | For encrypted data, this field contains the "salt" used to create the DES encryption Initialization Vector (IV). |
| ContextEngineID | Within a particular administrative domain, this field uniquely identifies an SNMP entity that may realize an instance of a context with a particular contextName |
| ContextName | A unique name given to a context within a particular SNMP entity. |

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c

Although software levels 2.6.3 and higher support the specific facilities of SNMP v1 and v2, their documentation is available to provide backward compatibility with older network management systems. The far superior security features offered by implementing SNMPv3 should be used wherever possible.

The switch's implementation of SNMPv1 is based on RFC 1157, *A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*, and RFC 1812, *Requirements for IP Version 4 Routers*.

When the SNMP agent is disabled, the agent does not respond to SNMP request messages. The agent is disabled by default. The current state and configuration of the SNMP agent can be displayed.

SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c

An SNMP MIB view is an arbitrary subset of objects in the MIB. Objects in the view may be from any part of the object name space, and not necessarily the same sub-tree. An SNMP community profile is the pairing of an SNMP access mode (read-only or read-write) with the access mode defined by the MIB for each object in the view. For each object in the view, the community profile defines the operations that can be performed on the object.

Pairing an SNMP community with an SNMP community profile determines the level of access that the agent affords to an NMS that is a member of the specified community. When an agent receives an SNMP message, it checks the community name encoded in the message. If the agent knows the community name, the message is deemed to be authentic and the sending SNMP entity is accepted as a member of the community. The community profile associated with the community name then determines the sender's view of the MIB and the operations that can be performed on objects in the view.

SNMP Communities

SNMP communities were introduced into SNMPv1 and retained in version 2c. Although the switch's software still supports communities, this is to provide backward compatibility with legacy management systems. Communities should not be used where a secure network is required. Instead, use the secure network features offered by SNMPv3.

An SNMP community is a pairing of an SNMP agent with a set of SNMP application entities. Communities are the main configuration item in the switch's implementation of SNMPv1 and v2, and are defined in terms of a list of IP addresses which define the SNMP application entities (trap hosts and management stations) in the community.

Important community names act as passwords and provide minimal authentication. Any SNMP application entity that knows a community name can read the value of any instance of any object in the MIB implemented in the switch. Any SNMP application entity that knows the name of a community with write access can change the value of any instance of any object in the MIB implemented in the switch, possibly affecting the operation of the switch. For this reason, take care with the security of community names.

When a trap is generated by the SNMP agent it is forwarded to all trap hosts in all communities. The community name and manager addresses are used to provide trivial authentication. An incoming SNMP message is deemed authentic if it contains a valid community name and originated from an IP address defined as a management station for that community.

When a community is disabled, the SNMP agent behaves as if the community does not exist and generates authentication failure traps for messages directed to the disabled community.

The SNMP agent does not support a default community called “public” with read-only access, traps disabled and open access as mandated in RFC 1812, as this is a security hole open for users who wish to use the switch with minimal modification to the default configuration. The default configuration of the switch has no defined communities. Communities must be explicitly created.

SNMP authentication (for SNMPv1 and v2) is a mechanism whereby an SNMP message is declared to be authentic, that is from an SNMP application entity actually in the community to which the message purports to belong. The mechanism may be trivial or secure. The only form of SNMP authentication implemented by the switch’s SNMP agent is trivial authentication. The authentication failure trap may be generated as a result of the failure to authentication an SNMP message.

Switch interfaces can be enabled or disabled via SNMP by setting the ifAdminStatus object in the ifTable of MIB-II MIB to ‘Up(1)’ or ‘Down(2)’ for the corresponding ifIndex. If it is not possible to change the status of a particular interface the switch returns an SNMP error message.

The switch’s implementation of the ifOperStatus object in the ifTable of MIB-II MIB supports two additional values—“Unknown(4)” and “Dormant(5)” (e.g. an inactive dial-on-demand interface).

Caution  **An unauthorized person with knowledge of the appropriate SNMP community name could bring an interface up or down. Community names act as passwords for the SNMP protocol. When creating an SNMP community with write access, take care to select a secure community name and to ensure that only authorized personnel know it.**

An SNMP MIB view is a subset of objects in the MIB that pertain to a particular network element. For example, the MIB view of a hub would be the objects relevant to management of the hub, and would not include IP routing table objects, for example. The switch’s SNMP agent does not allow the construction of MIB views. The switch supports all relevant objects from all MIBs that it implements.

Note that the switch’s standard set and show commands can also be used to access objects in the MIBs supported by the switch.

Defining Management Stations within Communities

You can add management stations to a community either individually, by entering just its IP address, or you can enter a range of management stations by entering an IP address that ends with a ‘/’ character followed by a number between 1 and 32. The number that follows the ‘/’ character operates as an address mask to define a range of addresses for the management stations. The following example shows how to allocate a band of three binary addresses to a portion of the subnet 146.15.1.X

Example In this example we make provision for up to 8 possible management stations within a community called “admin”.

Step 1:

Decide on the number of management stations that you want to assign to a particular subnet, then decide how many binary digits are required to define this number of addresses. In this case we need up to 8 management stations, so we will assign 3 binary digits (3 binary digits can provide 8 different values). To assign the last 3 binary digits for management stations, we assign a prefix that is a count of all binary digits in the address minus those to be assigned as management stations. In this case the prefix is 29; this being the number of binary digits in an IP address (32) minus the number of digits assigned to the management stations (3).

Step 2:

The method used in this step depends on whether or not the community already exists.

- If the community called “admin” does not exist, create a new community called “admin” and allocate a three binary digit block of addresses to the address subnet 146.15.1.X.
- If the community called “admin” already exists, allocate a three binary digit block of addresses to an existing community called “admin” with the address subnet 146.15.1.X.

For security reasons, the common management prefix should be larger than the IP subnet. This prevents stations on one subnet from being considered valid management stations on a different subnet.

Configuration Example (SNMPv1 and v2)

This example shows how to configure the switch's SNMP agent. Two network management stations have been set up on a large network. The central NMS (IP address 192.168.11.5) monitors devices on the network and uses SNMP set messages to manage devices on the network. Trap messages are sent to this management station. The regional network management station (IP addresses 192.168.16.1) is used just to monitor devices on the network by using SNMP get messages. Link traps are enabled for all interfaces on this particular switch.

IP and VLANs must be correctly configured in order to access the SNMP agent in the switch. This is because the IP module handles both the TCP transport functions, and the UDP functions that enable datagrams to transport SNMP messages. See [Chapter 25, IP Addressing and Protocol Commands](#) for commands that enable and configure IP.

To configure SNMP **Step 1: Enable the SNMP agent.**

Enable the SNMP agent and enable the generation of authenticate failure traps to monitor unauthorized SNMP access. SNMP is enabled by default in AlliedWare Plus.

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap auth
```

Step 2: Create a community with write access for the central NMS.

Create a write access community called “example1rw” for use by the central network management station at 192.168.11.5 Use an ACL to give the central NMS SNMP access to the switch using that community name.

```
awplus(config)# access-list 66 permit 192.168.11.5
awplus(config)# snmp-server community example1rw rw 66
```

Care must be taken with the security of community names. Do not use the names “private” or “public” in your network because they are too obvious. Community names act as passwords and provide only trivial authentication. Any SNMP application entity that knows a community name can read the value of any instance of any object in the MIB implemented in the switch. Any SNMP application entity that knows the name of a community with write access can change the value of any instance of any object in the MIB implemented in the switch, possibly affecting the operation of the switch.

SNMP V1 or V2c provide very minimal security. If security is a concern, you should use SNMPv3.

Step 3: Create a community with read-only access for the regional NMS.

Create a read-only access community called "example2ro" for use by the regional network management station at 192.168.16.1. Use an ACL to give the regional NMS SNMP access to the switch using that community name.

```
awplus(config)# access-list 67 permit 192.168.16.1
awplus(config)# snmp-server community example2ro ro 67
```

Step 4: Enable link traps.

Enable link traps for the desired interfaces. In this example, the NSMs are in VLAN 2 and VLAN 3 and other ports are in VLAN 1 for simplicity.

```
awplus(config)# interface vlan1-3
awplus(config-if)# snmp trap link-status
```

Note that link traps on VLANs are sent when the last port in the VLAN goes down. You will only see a trap for a VLAN if the trap host is in a different VLAN.

You can also enable link traps on channel groups and switch ports. For example, to enable traps on a range of switch ports:

```
awplus(config)# int port1.0.4-1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# snmp trap link-status
```

You can also enable link traps on channel groups and switch ports. For example, to enable traps on a range of switch ports:

Step 5: Configure trap hosts.

Specify the IP address or addresses that the traps will get sent to. In this example, traps will be sent to both NMSes.

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.11.5 version 2c
example1rw
awplus(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.16.1 version 2c
example2ro
```

Step 6: Check the configuration.

Check that the current configuration of the SNMP communities matches the desired configuration:

```
awplus# show snmp-server
awplus# show snmp-server community
awplus# show run snmp
```

This is the output of the **show snmp-server community** command for this example:

```
SNMP community information:
  Community Name ..... example1rw
  Access ..... Read-write
  View ..... none
  Community Name ..... example2ro
  Access ..... Read-only
  View ..... none
```

This is the output of the **show run snmp** command for this example:

```
no snmp-server ip
snmp-server enable trap auth
snmp-server community example1rw rw 66
snmp-server community example2ro 67
snmp-server host 192.168.1.2 version 2c example1rw
snmp-server host 192.168.2.2 version 2c example2ro
!
```

Check that the interface link up/down traps have been correctly configured:

```
awplus# show interface vlan1-3
```

This is the output of the **show interface** command for this example:

```
Interface vlan1
  Scope: both
  Link is UP, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0009.41fd.c029
  index 201 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Sending (suppressed after 20 traps in 60 sec)
  Bandwidth 1g
    input packets 4061, bytes 277043, dropped 0, multicast packets 3690
    output packets 190, bytes 18123, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
Interface vlan2
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0009.41fd.c029
  IPv4 address 192.168.11.50/24 broadcast 192.168.11.255
  index 202 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Sending (suppressed after 20 traps in 60 sec)
  Bandwidth 1g
    input packets 568, bytes 42309, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 183, bytes 18078, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
Interface vlan3
  Scope: both
  Link is DOWN, administrative state is UP
  Hardware is VLAN, address is 0009.41fd.c029
  IPv4 address 192.168.16.50/24 broadcast 192.168.16.255
  index 203 metric 1 mtu 1500
  arp ageing timeout 300
  <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  SNMP link-status traps: Sending (suppressed after 20 traps in 60 sec)
    input packets 0, bytes 0, dropped 0, multicast packets 0
    output packets 0, bytes 0, multicast packets 0 broadcast packets 0
```

SNMPv3

SNMPv3 is the third version of the Simple Network Management Protocol. The architecture comprises the following:

- entities that may be either managers, agents, or both
- a management information base (MIB)
- a transport protocol

At least one manager node runs the SNMP management software in every configuration. Managed devices such as routers, servers, and workstations are equipped with an agent software module. The agent provides access to local objects in the MIB that reflect activity and resources at the node. The agent also responds to manager commands to retrieve values from, and set values in the MIB.

SNMP MIB Views for SNMPv3

An SNMP MIB view is an arbitrary subset of objects in the MIB. Objects in the view may be from any part of the object name space, and not necessarily the same sub-tree.

SNMP Groups

Groups were introduced as part of SNMPv3. They are the means by which users are assigned their views and access control policy. Once a group has been created, users can be added to them. In practice a number of groups would be created, each with varying views and access security requirements. Users would then be added to their most appropriate groups. Each Group name and Security Level pair must be unique within a switch.

SNMP Users

Users were introduced as part of SNMPv3. From a system perspective a user is represented as an entity stored in a table that defines the access and authentication criteria to be applied to access or modify the SNMP MIB data.

 **Note** SNMP **Target Addresses** and **Target Params** in SNMPv3 are not currently supported in Alliedware Plus software.

Configuration Example (SNMPv3)

This example shows how to configure the switch's SNMP agent. Two network management stations have been set up on a large network. The central NMS (IP address 192.168.11.5) monitors devices on the network and uses SNMP set messages to manage devices on the network. Trap messages are sent to this management station.

The IP module must be enabled and correctly configured in order to access the SNMP agent in the switch, since the IP module handles the UDP datagrams used to transport SNMP messages.

To configure SNMP **Step 1: Enable the SNMP agent.**

Enable the SNMP agent and enable the generation of authenticate failure traps to monitor unauthorized SNMP access. SNMP is enabled by default in AlliedWare Plus.

Step 2: Add SNMP views.

You can specify views using their OID or the predefined MIB name.

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server view atmib 1.3.6.1.2.14
included

awplus(config)# snmp-server view atmib alliedtelesis
included
```

Step 3: Add SNMP group.

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server group ord-user noauth read
atmib

awplus(config)# snmp-server group admin-user auth read
atmib write atmib notify atmi
```

Step 4: Add SNMP users.

Add users to the groups by using commands such as:

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server user ken admin-user auth md5
mercury
```

Using SNMP to Manage Files and Software

The Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB ([Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#)) includes objects for managing files and software on the switch. This section includes procedures for using MIB objects on the switch to perform some common tasks, via an SNMP management application:

- [“Copy a File to or from a TFTP Server” on page 66.20](#)
- [“Upgrade Software and Configuration Files” on page 66.22](#)

For more details about the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB and public MIBs on the switch, see [Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#).

Copy a File to or from a TFTP Server

Use this procedure to copy a file (for example, a software version file) to the switch from a TFTP server, or to copy a file (for example, a configuration file) from the switch to a TFTP server. The MIB objects in this procedure reside in the module atFilev2 { modules 600 }, with object ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.600. For detailed descriptions of the MIB objects used in this procedure, and other file management MIB objects, see [“AT-FILEv2-MIB” on page 68.32](#). Other MIB objects can be used in a similar way for moving and deleting files on the switch.

Table 66-5: Procedure for copying a file to or from a device using a TFTP server

| Do this ... | By setting or reading this MIB object ... | Whose object ID is ... | To this value ... |
|--|---|-------------------------|---|
| 1. For a standalone switch, keep the default value, 1. | atFilev2SourceStackId | { atFilev2Operation 1 } | <stack-id> |
| 2. If the destination device is part of a stack, set the stack ID. | atFilev2DestinationStackId | { atFilev2Operation 4 } | <stack-id> |
| 3. Set the source device. | atFilev2SourceDevice | { atFilev2Operation 2 } | 4 (TFTP) or 1 (Flash) |
| 4. Set the destination device. | atFilev2DestinationDevice | { atFilev2Operation 5 } | 4 (TFTP) or 1 (Flash) |
| 5. Set the source filename. Include the path (if any) but not the device. | atFilev2SourceFileName | { atFilev2Operation 3 } | <source-filename> e.g. /awp/config/admin.cfg |
| 6. Set the destination filename. Include the path (if any) but not the device. | atFilev2DestinationFileName | { atFilev2Operation 6 } | <dest-filename> e.g. /config/admin.cfg |

Table 66-5: Procedure for copying a file to or from a device using a TFTP server

| Do this ... | By setting or reading this MIB object ... | Whose object ID is ... | To this value ... |
|--|---|-------------------------|--|
| 7. Set the IP address of the TFTP server. | atFilev2TftpIPAddr | { atFilev2Tftp_4 1 } | <ip-addr> |
| 8. Check that no other transfer is in progress, and that the required parameters have been set. | atFilev2CopyBegin | { atFilev2Operation 7 } | Read: idle |
| 9. Start the file transfer. | atFilev2CopyBegin | { atFilev2Operation 7 } | Set: 1 |
| 10 Monitor file transfer progress. | atFilev2CopyBegin | { atFilev2Operation 7 } | Read: In progress: copying <src> --> <dst> or Success: copy <src> --> <dst> success or Failure: copy <src> --> <dst> failure: <err-msg> |

Upgrade Software and Configuration Files

Use this procedure to upgrade to a new software version and boot configuration file. For detailed descriptions of the MIB objects used in this procedure, and other MIB objects for managing software installation and configuration files, see **“AT-SETUP-MIB” on page 68.56.**

Table 66-6: Procedure for upgrading to a new software version and boot configuration

| Do this ... | By reading or setting this MIB object ... | Whose object ID is ... | To this value ... |
|---|---|--|---|
| 1. Check that you have enough flash memory for the currently running software file, the new software version file, and any configuration scripts required. | | | |
| 2. Check the version and name of the software currently running. | currSoftVersion currSoftName | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.1.1 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.1.2 | Read: <software-name> <software-version> |
| 3. If you do not already have the currently running software as a software version file in flash, save the currently running software with a file name to the flash root. | currSoftSaveToFile | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.1.4 | Set: <backup-filename.rel> |
| 4. Check that the file saved successfully. (The most common failures result from lack of flash memory space.) | currSoftSaveStatus | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.1.5 | Read: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 (idle) - there is no release file save operation in progress ■ 2 (success) - the last release file save operation completed successfully ■ 3 (failure) - the last release file save operation failed ■ 4 (saving) - a release file save operation is currently in progress |
| 5. Copy the new software version file to flash memory on the device | See Table 66-5 . | | |
| 6. Set the new release file to be the current release that the device will install and run the next time it restarts. Include the path. | nextBootPath | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.2.2 | Set: <next-filename> e.g.: flash:/release.rel |
| 7. Check the version of release file set to install next. | nextBootVersion | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.2.1 | Read: <software-version> |

Table 66-6: Procedure for upgrading to a new software version and boot configuration(cont.)

| Do this ... | By reading or setting this MIB object ... | Whose object ID is ... | To this value ... |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 8. Set the previous release file to be the backup release that the device will install and run if the device fails to boot successfully with the new release file. Include the path. | bckpPath | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.3.2 | Set: <backup-filename> e.g.: flash:/release.rel |
| 9. Check the version of backup release file. | bckpVersion | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.2.3.1 | Read: <software-version> |
| 10. If necessary, copy a configuration file to the device (Table 66-5), or save the current running configuration to a file in the root directory of flash. To save the running configuration, specify the filename, but not a device or path. | See Table 66-5 . or runCnfgSaveAs | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.3.1.1 | Set: <filename.cfg> e.g.: myconfig.cfg |
| 11. Check and if necessary set the file the device will use for configuration when it restarts. Include the full path. | bootCnfgPath | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.3.2.1 | Read/set: <filename.cfg> e.g.: flash:/myconfig.cfg |
| 12. Check that a boot configuration file matching the boot configuration path exists. | bootCnfgExists | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.3.2.2 | Read: TRUE (1) or FALSE (2) |
| 13. Check that the default configuration file flash:/default.cfg exists. | dfltCnfgExists | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.3.3.2 | Read: TRUE (1) or FALSE (2) |
| 14. Restart the device. | restartDevice | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500.1 | 1 |

Chapter 67: SNMP Commands



| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 67.2 |
| debug snmp..... | 67.2 |
| show counter snmp-server..... | 67.4 |
| show debugging snmp..... | 67.7 |
| show running-config snmp..... | 67.8 |
| show snmp-server..... | 67.9 |
| show snmp-server community | 67.9 |
| show snmp-server group | 67.10 |
| show snmp-server user | 67.10 |
| show snmp-server view | 67.11 |
| snmp trap link-status | 67.12 |
| snmp trap link-status suppress | 67.13 |
| snmp-server | 67.15 |
| snmp-server community | 67.16 |
| snmp-server contact | 67.17 |
| snmp-server enable trap | 67.18 |
| snmp-server engineID local | 67.20 |
| snmp-server engineID local reset..... | 67.22 |
| snmp-server group | 67.23 |
| snmp-server host | 67.24 |
| snmp-server location | 67.26 |
| snmp-server source-interface..... | 67.27 |
| snmp-server startup-trap-delay..... | 67.28 |
| snmp-server user..... | 67.29 |
| snmp-server view..... | 67.31 |
| undebug snmp | 67.31 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure SNMP. For more information, see [Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction](#), and [Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

debug snmp

This command enables SNMP debugging.

The **no** variant of this command disables SNMP debugging.

Syntax `debug snmp [all|detail|error-string|process|receive|send|xdump]`
`no debug snmp [all|detail|error-string|process|receive|send|xdump]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| all | Enable or disable the display of all SNMP debugging information. |
| detail | Enable or disable the display of detailed SNMP debugging information. |
| error-string | Enable or disable the display of debugging information for SNMP error strings. |
| process | Enable or disable the display of debugging information for processed SNMP packets. |
| receive | Enable or disable the display of debugging information for received SNMP packets. |
| send | Enable or disable the display of debugging information for sent SNMP packets. |
| xdump | Enable or disable the display of hexadecimal dump debugging information for SNMP packets. |

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To start SNMP debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# debug snmp
```

To start SNMP debugging, showing detailed SNMP debugging information, use the command:

```
awplus# debug snmp detail
```

To start SNMP debugging, showing all SNMP debugging information, use the command:

```
awplus# debug snmp all
```

Related Commands [show debugging snmp](#)
[terminal monitor](#)
[undebug snmp](#)

show counter snmp-server

This command displays counters for SNMP messages received by the SNMP agent.

Syntax show counter snmp-server

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the counters for the SNMP agent, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter snmp-server
```

Output **Figure 67-1: Example output from the show counter snmp-server command**

```
SNMP-SERVER counters
inPkts                ..... 11
inBadVersions         ..... 0
inBadCommunityNames  ..... 0
inBadCommunityUses   ..... 0
inASNParseErrs       ..... 0
inTooBig              ..... 0
inNoSuchNames        ..... 0
inBadValues          ..... 0
inReadOnly           ..... 0
inGenErrs            ..... 0
inTotalReqVars       ..... 9
inTotalSetVars       ..... 0
inGetRequests        ..... 2
inGetNexts           ..... 9
inSetRequests        ..... 0
inGetResponses       ..... 0
inTraps              ..... 0
outPkts              ..... 11
outTooBig            ..... 0
outNoSuchNames       ..... 2
outBadValues         ..... 0
outGenErrs           ..... 0
outGetRequests       ..... 0
outGetNexts          ..... 0
outSetRequests       ..... 0
outGetResponses      ..... 11
outTraps             ..... 0
UnsupportedSecLevels ..... 0
NotInTimeWindows     ..... 0
UnknownUserNames     ..... 0
UnknownEngineIDs     ..... 0
WrongDigest          ..... 0
DecryptionErrors     ..... 0
UnknownSecModels     ..... 0
InvalidMsgs          ..... 0
UnknownPDUHandlers   ..... 0
```

Table 67-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter snmp-server command

| Parameter | Meaning |
|---------------|---|
| inPkts | The total number of SNMP messages received by the SNMP agent. |
| inBadVersions | The number of messages received by the SNMP agent for an unsupported SNMP version. It drops these messages. The SNMP agent on your device supports versions 1, 2C, and 3. |

Table 67-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter snmp-server command

| Parameter | Meaning |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>inBadCommunityNames</code> | The number of messages received by the SNMP agent with an unrecognized SNMP community name. It drops these messages. |
| <code>inBadCommunityUses</code> | The number of messages received by the SNMP agent where the requested SNMP operation is not permitted from SNMP managers using the SNMP community named in the message. |
| <code>inASNParseErrs</code> | The number of ASN.1 or BER errors that the SNMP agent has encountered when decoding received SNMP Messages. |
| <code>inTooBigs</code> | The number of SNMP PDUs received by the SNMP agent where the value of the error-status field is 'tooBig'. This is sent by an SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the agent. |
| <code>inNoSuchNames</code> | The number of SNMP PDUs received by the SNMP agent where the value of the error-status field is 'noSuchName'. This is sent by an SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the agent. |
| <code>inBadValues</code> | The number of SNMP PDUs received by the SNMP agent where the value of the error-status field is 'badValue'. This is sent by an SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the agent. |
| <code>inReadOnlys</code> | The number of valid SNMP PDUs received by the SNMP agent where the value of the error-status field is 'readOnly'. The SNMP manager should not generate a PDU which contains the value 'readOnly' in the error-status field. This indicates that there is an incorrect implementations of the SNMP. |
| <code>inGenErrs</code> | The number of SNMP PDUs received by the SNMP agent where the value of the error-status field is 'genErr'. |
| <code>inTotalReqVars</code> | The number of MIB objects that the SNMP agent has successfully retrieved after receiving valid SNMP Get-Request and Get-Next PDUs. |
| <code>inTotalSetVars</code> | The number of MIB objects that the SNMP agent has successfully altered after receiving valid SNMP Set-Request PDUs. |
| <code>inGetRequests</code> | The number of SNMP Get-Request PDUs that the SNMP agent has accepted and processed. |
| <code>inGetNexts</code> | The number of SNMP Get-Next PDUs that the SNMP agent has accepted and processed. |
| <code>inSetRequests</code> | The number of SNMP Set-Request PDUs that the SNMP agent has accepted and processed. |
| <code>inGetResponses</code> | The number of SNMP Get-Response PDUs that the SNMP agent has accepted and processed. |
| <code>inTraps</code> | The number of SNMP Trap PDUs that the SNMP agent has accepted and processed. |
| <code>outPkts</code> | The number of SNMP Messages that the SNMP agent has sent. |

Table 67-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter snmp-server command

| Parameter | Meaning |
|----------------------|--|
| outTooBig | The number of SNMP PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated with the value 'tooBig' in the error-status field. This is sent to the SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the manager. |
| outNoSuchNames | The number of SNMP PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated with the value 'noSuchName' in the error-status field. This is sent to the SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the manager. |
| outBadValues | The number of SNMP PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated with the value 'badValue' in the error-status field. This is sent to the SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the manager. |
| outGenErrs | The number of SNMP PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated with the value 'genErr' in the error-status field. This is sent to the SNMP manager to indicate that an exception occurred when processing a request from the manager. |
| outGetRequests | The number of SNMP Get-Request PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated. |
| outGetNexts | The number of SNMP Get-Next PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated. |
| outSetRequests | The number of SNMP Set-Request PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated. |
| outGetResponses | The number of SNMP Get-Response PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated. |
| outTraps | The number of SNMP Trap PDUs that the SNMP agent has generated. |
| UnSupportedSecLevels | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they requested a securityLevel unknown or not available to the SNMP agent. |
| NotInTimeWindows | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they appeared outside of the authoritative SNMP agent's window. |
| UnknownUserNames | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they referenced an unknown user. |
| UnknownEngineIDs | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they referenced an unknown snmpEngineID. |
| WrongDigest | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they didn't contain the expected digest value. |
| DecryptionErrors | The number of received packets that the SNMP agent has dropped because they could not be decrypted. |
| UnknownSecModels | The number of messages received that contain a security model that is not supported by the server. Valid for SNMPv3 messages only. |
| InvalidMsgs | The number of messages received where the security model is supported but the authentication fails. Valid for SNMPv3 messages only. |
| UnknownPDUHandlers | The number of times the SNMP handler has failed to process a PDU. This is a system debugging counter. |

Related Commands [show snmp-server](#)

show debugging snmp

This command displays whether SNMP debugging is enabled or disabled.

Syntax `show debugging snmp`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the status of SNMP debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging snmp
```

Output **Figure 67-2: Example output from the show debugging snmp command**

```
Snmp (SMUX) debugging status:  
Snmp debugging is on
```

Related Commands [debug snmp](#)

show running-config snmp

This command displays the current configuration of SNMP on your device.

Syntax `show running-config snmp`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the current configuration of SNMP on your device, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config snmp
```

Output **Figure 67-3: Example output from the show running-config snmp command**

```
snmp-server contact AlliedTelesis  
snmp-server location Philippines  
snmp-server group grou1 auth read view1 write view1 notify view1  
snmp-server view view1 1 included  
snmp-server community public  
snmp-server user user1 group1 auth md5 password priv des  
password
```

Related Commands [show snmp-server](#)

show snmp-server

This command displays the status and current configuration of the SNMP server.

Syntax `show snmp-server`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the status of the SNMP server, use the command:

```
awplus# show snmp-server
```

Output **Figure 67-4: Example output from the show snmp-server command**

```
SNMP Server ..... Enabled
IP Protocol ..... IPv4
SNMPv3 Engine ID (configured name) ... Not set
SNMPv3 Engine ID (actual) ..... 0x80001f888021338e4747b8e607
```

Related Commands

- `debug snmp`
- `show counter snmp-server`
- `snmp-server`
- `snmp-server engineID local`
- `snmp-server engineID local reset`

show snmp-server community

This command displays the SNMP server communities configured on the device. SNMP communities are specific to v1 and v2c.

Syntax `show snmp-server community`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the SNMP server communities, use the command:

```
awplus# show snmp-server community
```

Output **Figure 67-5: Example output from the show snmp-server community command**

```
SNMP community information:
Community Name ..... public
Access ..... Read-only
View ..... none
```

Related Commands

- `show snmp-server`
- `snmp-server community`

show snmp-server group

This command displays information about SNMP server groups. This command is used with SNMP version 3 only.

Syntax show snmp-server group

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the SNMP groups configured on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show snmp-server group
```

Output **Figure 67-6: Example output from the show snmp-server group command**

```
SNMP group information:
  Group name ..... guireadgroup
  Security Level ..... priv
  Read View ..... guiview
  Write View ..... none
  Notify View ..... none

  Group name ..... guiwritegroup
  Security Level ..... priv
  Read View ..... none
  Write View ..... guiview
  Notify View ..... none
```

Related Commands [show snmp-server snmp-server group](#)

show snmp-server user

This command displays the SNMP server users and is used with SNMP version 3 only.

Syntax show snmp-server user

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the SNMP server users configured on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show snmp-server user
```

Output **Figure 67-7: Example output from the show snmp-server user command**

| Name | Group name | Auth | Privacy |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|
| ----- freddy | ----- guireadgroup | ----- none | ----- none |

Related Commands [show snmp-server snmp-server user](#)

show snmp-server view

This command displays the SNMP server views and is used with SNMP version 3 only.

Syntax `show snmp-server view`

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the SNMP server views configured on the device, use the command:

```
awplus# show snmp-server view
```

Output **Figure 67-8: Example output from the show snmp-server view command**

```
SNMP view information:
View Name ..... view1
OID ..... 1
Type ..... included
```

Related Commands [show snmp-server snmp-server view](#)

snmp trap link-status

Use this command to enable SNMP to send link status notifications (traps) for the interfaces when an interface goes up (linkUp) or down (linkDown).

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the sending of link status notifications.

Syntax `snmp trap link-status`
`no snmp trap link-status`

Default By default, link status notifications are disabled.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The link status notifications can be enabled for the following interface types:

- switch port (e.g. port 1.0.1)
- VLAN (e.g. vlan2)
- static and dynamic link aggregation (e.g. sa2, po2)

To specify where notifications are sent, use the [snmp-server host](#) command on page 67.24. To configure the switch globally to send other notifications, use the [snmp-server enable trap](#) command on page 67.18.

Examples To enable SNMP to send link status notifications for ports 1.0.2 to 1.0.6, use following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# snmp trap link-status
```

To disable the sending of link status notifications for port 1.0.2, use following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no snmp trap link-status
```

Related Commands [show interface](#)
[snmp trap link-status suppress](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)
[snmp-server host](#)

snmp trap link-status suppress

Use this command to enable the suppression of link status notifications (traps) for the interfaces beyond the specified threshold, in the specified interval.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the suppression of link status notifications for the ports.

Syntax `snmp trap link-status suppress {time {<1-60>|default}|
threshold {<1-20>|default}}`

`no snmp trap link-status suppress`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| time | Set the suppression timer for link status notifications. |
| <1-60> | The suppress time in seconds. |
| default | The default suppress time in seconds (60). |
| threshold | Set the suppression threshold for link status notifications. This is the number of link status notifications after which to suppress further notifications within the suppression timer interval. |
| <1-20> | The number of link status notifications. |
| default | The default number of link status notifications (20). |

Default By default, if link status notifications are enabled (they are enabled by default), the suppression of link status notifications is enabled: notifications that exceed the notification threshold (default 20) within the notification timer interval (default 60 seconds) are not sent.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage An unstable network can generate many link status notifications. When notification suppression is enabled, a suppression timer is started when the first link status notification of a particular type (linkUp or linkDown) is sent for an interface. If the threshold number of notifications of this type is sent before the timer reaches the suppress time, any further notifications of this type generated for the interface during the interval are not sent. At the end of the interval, the sending of link status notifications resumes, until the threshold is reached in the next interval.

Examples To enable the suppression of link status notifications for ports 1.0.2 to 1.0.6 after 10 notifications have been sent in 40 seconds, use following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2-1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# snmp trap link-status suppress time 40
threshold 10
```

To disable the suppression link status notifications for port 1.0.2, use following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no snmp trap link-status suppress
```

Related Commands [show interface](#)
 [snmp trap link-status](#)

snmp-server

Use this command to enable the SNMP agent (server) on the switch. The SNMP agent receives and processes SNMP packets sent to the switch, and generates notifications (traps) that have been enabled by the [snmp-server enable trap](#) command on page 67.18.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the SNMP agent on the switch. When SNMP is disabled, SNMP packets received by the switch are discarded, and no notifications are generated. This does not remove any existing SNMP configuration.

Syntax `snmp-server [ip|ipv6]`
`no snmp-server [ip|ipv6]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <code>ip</code> | Enable or disable the SNMP agent for IPv4. |
| <code>ipv6</code> | Enable or disable the SNMP agent for IPv6. |

Default By default, the SNMP agent is enabled for both IPv4 and IPv6. If neither the **ip** parameter nor the **ipv6** parameter is specified for this command, then SNMP is enabled or disabled for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable SNMP on the switch for both IPv4 and IPv6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server
```

To enable the SNMP agent for IPv4 on the device, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server ip
```

To disable the SNMP agent for both IPv4 and IPv6 on the switch, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server
```

To disable the SNMP agent for IPv4, use the commands:

```
awplus(config)# no snmp-server ipv4
```

Related Commands

- [show snmp-server](#)
- [show snmp-server community](#)
- [show snmp-server user](#)
- [snmp-server community](#)
- [snmp-server contact](#)
- [snmp-server enable trap](#)
- [snmp-server engineID local](#)
- [snmp-server group](#)

snmp-server host
snmp-server location
snmp-server view

snmp-server community

This command creates an SNMP community, optionally setting the access mode for the community. The default access mode is read only. If view is not specified, the community allows access to all the MIB objects. The SNMP communities are only valid for SNMPv1 and v2c and provide very limited security. Communities should not be used when operating SNMPv3.

The **no** variant of this command removes an SNMP community. The specified community must already exist on the device.

Syntax

```
snmp-server community <community-name> {view <view-name> | ro | rw |
    <access-list>}
no snmp-server community <community-name> [{view <view-name> | <access-
    list>}]
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <community-name> | Community name. The community name is a case sensitive string of up to 20 characters. |
| view | Configure SNMP view. If view is not specified, the community allows access to all the MIB objects. |
| <view-name> | View name. The view name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| ro | Read-only community. |
| rw | Read-write community. |
| <access-list> | <1-99> Access list number. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example The following command creates an SNMP community called "public" with read only access to all MIB variables from any management station.

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server community public ro
```

The following command removes an SNMP community called "public"

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server community public
```

Related Commands

- [show snmp-server](#)
- [show snmp-server community](#)
- [snmp-server view](#)

snmp-server contact

This command sets the contact information for the system. The contact name is:

- displayed in the output of the **show system** command
- stored in the MIB object sysContact

The **no** variant of this command removes the contact information from the system.

Syntax `snmp-server contact <contact-info>`

`no snmp-server contact`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <code><contact-info></code> | The contact information for the system, from 0 to 255 characters long. Valid characters are any printable character and spaces. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the system contact information to "support@alliedtelesis.co.nz", use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server contact support@alliedtelesis.co.nz
```

Related Commands [show system](#)
[snmp-server location](#)
[snmp-server group](#)

snmp-server enable trap

Use this command to enable the switch to send the specified notifications (traps).

Note that the Environmental Monitoring traps are enabled by default. So you do not need to issue this command for the Environmental Monitoring traps since these are enabled by default. SNMP environmental monitoring traps defined in AT-ENVMONv2-MIB are enabled by default.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the sending of the specified notifications.

Syntax

```
snmp-server enable trap {[atmf][atmflink][atmfnode][atmfrr][auth]
[dhcpsnooping] [epsr] [lldp] [loopprot] [mstp] [nsm] [ospf] [pim]
[rmon] [thrash-limit]}

no snmp-server enable trap {[atmf][atmflink][atmfnode][atmfrr][auth]
[dhcpsnooping] [epsr] [lldp] [loopprot] [mstp] [nsm] [ospf] [pim]
[rmon] [thrash-limit]}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| atmf | ATMF traps. |
| atmflink | ATMF Link traps. |
| atmfnode | ATMF Node traps. |
| atmfrr | ATMF Reboot Rolling traps. |
| auth | Authentication failure. |
| dhcpsnooping | DHCP snooping and ARP security traps. These notifications must also be set using the ip dhcp snooping violation command on page 54.17, and/or the arp security violation command on page 54.3. |
| epsr | EPSR traps. |
| lldp | Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) traps. These notifications must also be enabled using the lldp notifications command on page 70.13, and/or the lldp med-notifications command on page 70.8. |
| loopprot | Loop Protection traps. |
| mstp | MSTP traps. |
| nsm | NSM traps. |
| ospf | OSPF traps. |
| pim | PIM traps. |
| rmon | RMON traps. |
| thrash-limit | MAC address Thrash Limiting traps. |

Default By default, no notifications are generated.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage This command cannot be used to enable link status notifications globally. To enable link status notifications for particular interfaces, use the **snmp trap link-status** command.

To specify where notifications are sent, use the **snmp-server host** command.

Note that more than one trap can be configured with one command entry, and also note this command applied to notifications send by SNMP version 3.

Examples To enable the device to send a notification if an atm node changes its status, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap atmnode
```

To enable the device to send MAC address Thrash Limiting traps, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap thrash-limit
```

To disable the device from sending MAC address Thrash Limiting traps, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server enable trap thrash-limit
```

To enable the device to send OSPF and VRRP-related traps, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap ospf vrrp
```

To disable OSPF traps being sent out by the switch, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server enable trap ospf
```

Related Commands **show snmp-server**
show ip dhcp snooping
snmp trap link-status
snmp-server host

snmp-server engineID local

Use this command to configure the SNMPv3 engine ID. The SNMPv3 engine ID is used to uniquely identify the SNMPv3 agent on a switch when communicating with SNMP management clients. Once an SNMPv3 engine ID is assigned, this engine ID is permanently associated with the switch until you change it.

Use the **no** variant of this command to set the user defined SNMPv3 engine ID to a system generated pseudo-random value by resetting the SNMPv3 engine. The **no snmp-server engineID local** command has the same effect as the **snmp-server engineID local default** command. Note that the **snmp-server engineID local reset** command is used to force the system to generate a new engine ID when the current engine ID is also system generated.

Syntax `snmp-server engineID local {<engine-id>|default}`
`no snmp-server engineID local`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><engine-id></code> | Specify SNMPv3 Engine ID value, a string of up to 27 characters. |
| <code>default</code> | Set SNMPv3 engine ID to a system generated value by resetting the SNMPv3 engine, provided the current engine ID is user defined. If the current engine ID is system generated, use the snmp-server engineID local reset command to force the system to generate a new engine ID. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage All switches must have a unique engine ID which is permanently set unless it is configured by the user.

Example To set the SNMPv3 engine ID to 800000cf030000cd123456, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server engineID local
800000cf030000cd123456
```

To set a user defined SNMPv3 engine ID back to a system generated value, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server engineID local
```

Output The following example shows the engine ID values after configuration:

```
awplus(config)#snmp-server engineid local asdgdh231234d
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show snmp-server

SNMP Server ..... Enabled
IP Protocol ..... IPv4
SNMPv3 Engine ID (configured name) ... asdgdh231234d
SNMPv3 Engine ID (actual) ..... 0x80001f888029af52e149198483

awplus(config)#no snmp-server engineid local
awplus(config)#exit
awplus#show snmp-server

SNMP Server ..... Enabled
IP Protocol ..... IPv4
SNMPv3 Engine ID (configured name) ... Not set
SNMPv3 Engine ID (actual) ..... 0x80001f888029af52e149198483
```

Validation Commands `show snmp-server`

Related Commands `snmp-server engineID local reset`
`snmp-server group`

snmp-server engineID local reset

Use this command to force the switch to generate a new pseudo-random SNMPv3 engine ID by resetting the SNMPv3 engine. If the current engine ID is user defined, use the **snmp-server engineID local** command to set SNMPv3 engine ID to a system generated value.

Syntax `snmp-server engineID local reset`

Mode Global Configuration

Example To force the SNMPv3 engine ID to be reset to a system generated value, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server engineID local reset
```

**Validation
Commands** `show snmp-server`

Related Commands `snmp-server engineID local`

snmp-server group

This command is used with SNMP version 3 only, and adds an SNMP group, optionally setting the security level and view access modes for the group. The security and access views defined for the group represent the minimum required of its users in order to gain access.

The **no** variant of this command deletes an SNMP group, and is used with SNMPv3 only. The group with the specified authentication/encryption parameters must already exist.

Syntax `snmp-server group <groupname> {auth|noauth|priv} [read <readname> | write <writename> | notify <notifyname>]`
`no snmp-server group <groupname> {auth|noauth|priv}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <groupname> | Group name. The group name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| auth | Authentication. |
| noauth | No authentication and no encryption. |
| priv | Authentication and encryption. |
| read | Configure read view. |
| <readname> | Read view name. |
| write | Configure write view. |
| <writename> | Write view name. The view name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| notify | Configure notify view. |
| <notifyname> | Notify view name. The view name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To add SNMP group, for ordinary users, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server group usergroup noauth read
useraccess write useraccess
```

To delete SNMP group usergroup, use the following commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server group usergroup noauth
```

Related Commands [snmp-server](#)
[show snmp-server](#)
[show snmp-server group](#)
[show snmp-server user](#)

snmp-server host

This command specifies an SNMP trap host destination to which Trap or Inform messages generated by the device are sent.

For SNMP version 1 and 2c you must specify the community name parameter. For SNMP version 3, specify the authentication/encryption parameters and the user name. If the version is not specified, the default is SNMP version 1. Inform messages can be sent instead of traps for SNMP version 2c and 3.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove an SNMP trap host. The trap host must already exist.

The trap host is uniquely identified by:

- host IP address (IPv4 or IPv6),
- inform or trap messages,
- community name (SNMPv1 or SNMP v2c) or the authentication/encryption parameters and user name (SNMP v3).

Syntax

```
snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [traps] [version 1]
  <community-name>]

snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [informs|traps]
  version 2c <community-name>

snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [informs|traps]
  version 3 {auth|noauth|priv} <user-name>

no snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [traps]
  [version 1] <community-name>

no snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [informs|traps]
  version 2c <community-name>

no snmp-server host {<ipv4-address>|<ipv6-address>} [informs|traps]
  version 3 {auth|noauth|priv} <user-name>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <ipv4-address> | IPv4 trap host address in the format A . B . C . D, for example, 192 . 0 . 2 . 2. |
| <ipv6-address> | IPv6 trap host address in the format x : x : : x : x for example, 2001 : db8 : : 8a2e : 7334. |
| informs | Send Inform messages to this host. |
| traps | Send Trap messages to this host (default). |
| version | SNMP version to use for notification messages. Default: version 1. |
| 1 | Use SNMPv1 (default). |
| 2c | Use SNMPv2c. |
| 3 | Use SNMPv3. |
| auth | Authentication. |
| noauth | No authentication. |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| priv | Encryption. |
| <community-name> | The SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c community name. |
| <user-name> | SNMPv3 user name. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To configure the device to send generated traps to the IPv4 host destination 192.0.2.5 with the SNMPv2c community name *public*, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.5 version 2c public
```

To configure the device to send generated traps to the IPv6 host destination 2001:db8::8a2e:7334 with the SNMPv2c community name *private*, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server host 2001:db8::8a2e:7334 version 2c
private
```

To remove a configured trap host of 192.0.2.5 with the SNMPv2c community name *public*, use the following command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server host 192.0.2.5 version 2c public
```

Related Commands [snmp trap link-status](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)
[snmp-server view](#)

snmp-server location

This command sets the location of the system. The location is:

- displayed in the output of the **show system** command
- stored in the MIB object sysLocation

The **no** variant of this command removes the configured location from the system.

Syntax `snmp-server location <location-name>`
`no snmp-server location`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code><location-name></code> | The location of the system, from 0 to 255 characters long. Valid characters are any printable character and spaces. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the location to “server room 523”, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server location server room 523
```

Related Commands **show snmp-server**
show system
snmp-server contact

snmp-server source-interface

Use this command to specify the interface that SNMP traps or informs originate from. You cannot specify an interface that does not already have an IP address assigned to the interface.

Use the **no** variant of this command to reset to the default source interface that SNMP traps or informs originate from (the Egress interface as sent from by default).

Syntax `snmp-server source-interface {traps|informs} <interface-name>`
`no snmp-server source-interface {traps|informs}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| traps | SNMP traps. |
| informs | SNMP informs. |
| <interface-name> | Interface name (with an IP address already assigned). |

Default By default the source interface is the Egress interface where traps or informs were sent from.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage An SNMP trap or inform sent from an SNMP server has the notification IP address of the interface where it was sent from. Use this command to monitor notifications from an interface.

Example To set the interface that SNMP informs originate from to port 1.0.2 for inform packets, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server source-interface informs port1.0.2
```

To reset the interface to the default source interface (the Egress interface) that SNMP traps originate from for trap packets, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server source-interface traps
```

Validation Commands `show running-config`

snmp-server startup-trap-delay

Use this command to set the time in seconds after following completion of the switch startup sequence before the switch sends any SNMP traps (or SNMP notifications).

Use the **no** variant of this command to restore the default startup delay of 30 seconds.

Syntax `snmp-server startup-trap-delay <delay-time>`
`no snmp-server startup-trap-delay`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code><delay-time></code> | Specify an SNMP trap delay time in seconds in the range of 30 to 600 seconds. |

Default The SNMP server trap delay time is 30 seconds. The **no** variant restores the default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To delay the switch sending SNMP traps until 60 seconds after switch startup, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server startup-trap-delay 60
```

To restore the sending of SNMP traps to the default of 30 seconds after switch startup, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server startup-trap-delay
```

Validation Commands `show snmp-server`

snmp-server user

Use this command to create or move users as members of specified groups. This command is used with SNMPv3 only.

The **no** variant of this command removes an SNMPv3 user. The specified user must already exist.

Syntax

```
snmp-server user <username> <groupname> [encrypted] [auth {md5 |
    sha} <auth-password>] [priv {des|aes} <privacy-password>]
no snmp-server user <username>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <username> | User name. The user name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| <groupname> | Group name. The group name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| encrypted | Use the encrypted parameter when you want to enter encrypted passwords. |
| auth | Authentication protocol. |
| md5 | MD5 Message Digest Algorithms. |
| sha | SHA Secure Hash Algorithm. |
| <auth-password> | Authentication password. The password is a string of 8 to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| priv | Privacy protocol. |
| des | DES Data Encryption Standard. |
| aes | AES Advanced Encryption Standards. |
| <privacy-password> | Privacy password. The password is a string of 8 to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Additionally this command provides the option of selecting an authentication protocol and (where appropriate) an associated password. Similarly, options are offered for selecting a privacy protocol and password.

- Note that each SNMP user must be configured on both the manager and agent entities. Where passwords are used, these passwords must be the same for both entities.
- Use the **encrypted** parameter when you want to enter already encrypted passwords in encrypted form as displayed in the running and startup configs stored on the switch. For example, you may need to move a user from one group to another group and keep the same passwords for the user instead of removing the user to apply new passwords.
- User passwords are entered using plaintext without the **encrypted** parameter and are encrypted according to the authentication and privacy protocols selected.
- User passwords are viewed as encrypted passwords in running and startup configs

shown from **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands respectively. Copy and paste encrypted passwords from running-configs or startup-configs to avoid entry errors.

Examples To add SNMP user `authuser` as a member of group `usergroup`, with authentication protocol `md5`, authentication password `Authpass`, privacy protocol `des` and privacy password `Privpass`, use the following commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server user authuser usergroup auth md5
Authpass priv des Privpass
```

Validate the user is assigned to the group using the following command:

```
awplus#show snmp-server user
Name          Group name      Auth           Privacy
-----
authuser      usergroup       md5            des
```

To enter existing SNMP user `authuser` with existing passwords as a member of group `newusergroup` with authentication protocol `md5` plus the encrypted authentication password `0x1c74b9c22118291b0ce0cd883f8dab6b74`, privacy protocol `des` plus the encrypted privacy password `0x0e0133db5453ebd03822b004eeacb6608f`, use the following commands

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server user authuser newusergroup
encrypted auth md5
0x1c74b9c22118291b0ce0cd883f8dab6b74 priv des
0x0e0133db5453ebd03822b004eeacb6608f
```

 **Note** Copy and paste the encrypted passwords from the **running-config** or the **startup-config** displayed, using the **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands respectively, into the command line to avoid key stroke errors issuing this command.

Validate the user has been moved from the first group using the following command:

```
awplus#show snmp-server user
Name          Group name      Auth           Privacy
-----
authuser      newusergroup    md5            des
```

To delete SNMP user `authuser`, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no snmp-server user authuser
```

Related Commands [show snmp-server user](#)
[snmp-server view](#)

snmp-server view

Use this command to create an SNMP view that specifies a sub-tree of the MIB. Further sub-trees can then be added by specifying a new OID to an existing view. Views can be used in SNMP communities or groups to control the remote manager's access.

Note  The object identifier must be specified in a sequence of integers separated by decimal points.

The **no** variant of this command removes the specified view on the device. The view must already exist.

Syntax `snmp-server view <view-name> <mib-name> {included|excluded}`
`no snmp-server view <view-name>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <view-name> | SNMP server view name. The view name is a string up to 20 characters long and is case sensitive. |
| <mib-name> | Object identifier of the MIB. |
| included | Include this OID in the view. |
| excluded | Exclude this OID in the view. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples The following command creates a view called "loc" that includes system location mib sub-tree.

```
awplus(config)# snmp-server view loc 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.6.0 included
```

To remove the view "loc" use the following command

```
awplus(config)# no snmp-server view loc
```

Related Commands [show snmp-server view](#)
[snmp-server community](#)

undebug snmp

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug snmp** command.

Chapter 68: SNMP MIBs



| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Introduction | 68.2 |
| About MIBs | 68.2 |
| About SNMP | 68.2 |
| Obtaining MIBs | 68.2 |
| Loading MIBs | 68.3 |
| Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB | 68.5 |
| AT-ALMMON-MIB | 68.6 |
| AT-ATMF-MIB | 68.8 |
| AT-BOARDS-MIB | 68.13 |
| AT-DHCPSN-MIB | 68.17 |
| AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB | 68.20 |
| AT-ENVMONv2-MIB | 68.21 |
| AT-EPSRv2-MIB | 68.29 |
| AT-FILEv2-MIB | 68.32 |
| AT-IP-MIB | 68.39 |
| AT-LICENSE-MIB | 68.41 |
| AT-LOG-MIB | 68.43 |
| AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB | 68.45 |
| AT-MIBVERSION-MIB | 68.47 |
| AT-NTP-MIB | 68.48 |
| AT-PRODUCTS-MIB | 68.51 |
| AT-RESOURCE-MIB | 68.54 |
| AT-SETUP-MIB | 68.56 |
| AT-SMI-MIB | 68.65 |
| AT-SYSINFO-MIB | 68.67 |
| AT-TRIGGER-MIB | 68.72 |
| AT-USER-MIB | 68.74 |
| Other Enterprise MIBs | 68.78 |
| sFlow-MIB | 68.78 |
| Public MIBs | 68.79 |

Introduction

This chapter describes the Management Information Bases (MIBs) and managed objects supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. The following topics are covered:

- **“Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB” on page 68.5** describes the objects implemented in the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB
- **“Public MIBs” on page 68.79** describes the public MIBs supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System, and any variations from the standard implementation.

About MIBs

A MIB is a collection of managed objects organized into a tree-like hierarchy of nodes in which the managed objects form the leaves. Within the tree, each node is identified by a non-negative integer identifier that is unique among the node’s siblings. The address, or object identifier, of any node within the tree is expressed as a series of dot-delimited node identifiers that trace the path from the root of the tree to the node. For example, the object identifier for the sysDescr object is 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.

For more information about MIBs and the structure of management information, see **Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction**.



Note This chapter does not indicate which MIB objects are not-accessible (and therefore cannot be queried directly). Please consult the MIB files for that information.

About SNMP

A network management station (NMS) uses a protocol known as Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to query or change the values of objects in the MIB of managed devices.

A managed device uses SNMP to respond to queries from an NMS, and to send unsolicited alerts (traps) to an NMS in response to events.

For more information about the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), see **Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction**.

For information about configuring SNMP, see **Chapter 67, SNMP Commands**.

Obtaining MIBs

You can download MIBs from the following locations:

| Download this MIB... | From this location... |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB | The MIB files are available with the software files from the Support area at www.alliedtelesis.com/support/software/restricted |
| Public MIBs defined in RFCs | www.rfc-editor.org/rfc.html |
| IANAifType-MIB | www.iana.org/assignments/ianaiftype-mib |

Loading MIBs

Individual MIBs define a portion of the total MIB for a device. For example, the MAU-MIB defines objects for managing IEEE 802.3 medium attachment units (MAUs), and forms a sub-tree under mib-2 with the object identifier snmpDot3MauMgt (1.3.6.1.2.1.26).

All the objects within a MIB are assigned object identifiers relative to a parent object. Most MIBs import the object identifier of the parent object, along with other object identifiers, textual conventions, macros and syntax types from the MIBs where they are defined. This creates dependencies between MIBs.

Some network management stations and MIB compilers will generate errors if you load a MIB that depends on another MIB that has not already been loaded. To avoid these errors, we recommend that you load MIBs in the following order:

- 1.** RFC 1212
RFC 1239
RFC 2257
RFC 3410
- 2.** RFC1155-SMI (RFC 1155)
SNMPv2-SMI (RFC 2578)
SNMPv2-PDU (RFC 3416)
- 3.** RFC1213-MIB (RFC 1213)
RFC 1215
SNMPv2-TC (RFC 2579)
SNMPv2-CONF (RFC 2580)
- 4.** IP-MIB (RFC 2011)
TCP-MIB (RFC 2012)
UDP-MIB (RFC 2013)
IP-FORWARD-MIB (RFC 2096)
SNMP-MPD-MIB (RFC 2572)
RMON-MIB (RFC 2819)
HCNUM-TC (RFC 2856)
SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB (RFC 3411)
SNMP-MPD-MIB (RFC 3412)
SNMPv2-TM (RFC 3417)
SNMPv2-MIB (RFC 3418)
INET-ADDRESS-MIB (RFC 4001)
IANAifType-MIB
- 5.** IF-MIB (RFC 2863)
SNMP-TARGET-MIB (RFC 3413)
- 6.** SNMP-COMMUNITY-MIB (RFC 2576)
EtherLike-MIB (RFC 3635)
MAU-MIB (RFC 3636)
BRIDGE-MIB (RFC 4188)
DISMAN-PING-MIB (RFC 4560)

SNMP-NOTIFICATION-MIB (RFC 3413)

SNMP-PROXY-MIB (RFC 3413)

7. P-BRIDGE-MIB (RFC 2674)

Q-BRIDGE-MIB (RFC 2674)

RSTP-MIB (RFC 4318)

LLDP-MIB

LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB

LLDP-EXT-DOT3-MIB

LLDP-EXT-MED-MIB

8. AT-SMI-MIB

9. AT-BOARDS-MIB

AT-PRODUCT-MIB

AT-SETUP-MIB

AT-SYSINFO-MIB

AT-TRIGGER-MIB

AT-USER-MIB

AT-RESOURCE-MIB

AT-LICENSE-MIB

AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB

AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB

AT-NTP-MIB

AT-EPSRv2-MIB

AT-FILEv2-MIB

AT-LOG-MIB

AT-IP-MIB

AT-ENVMONv2-MIB

AT-MIBVERSION-MIB

AT-DHCPSN-MIB

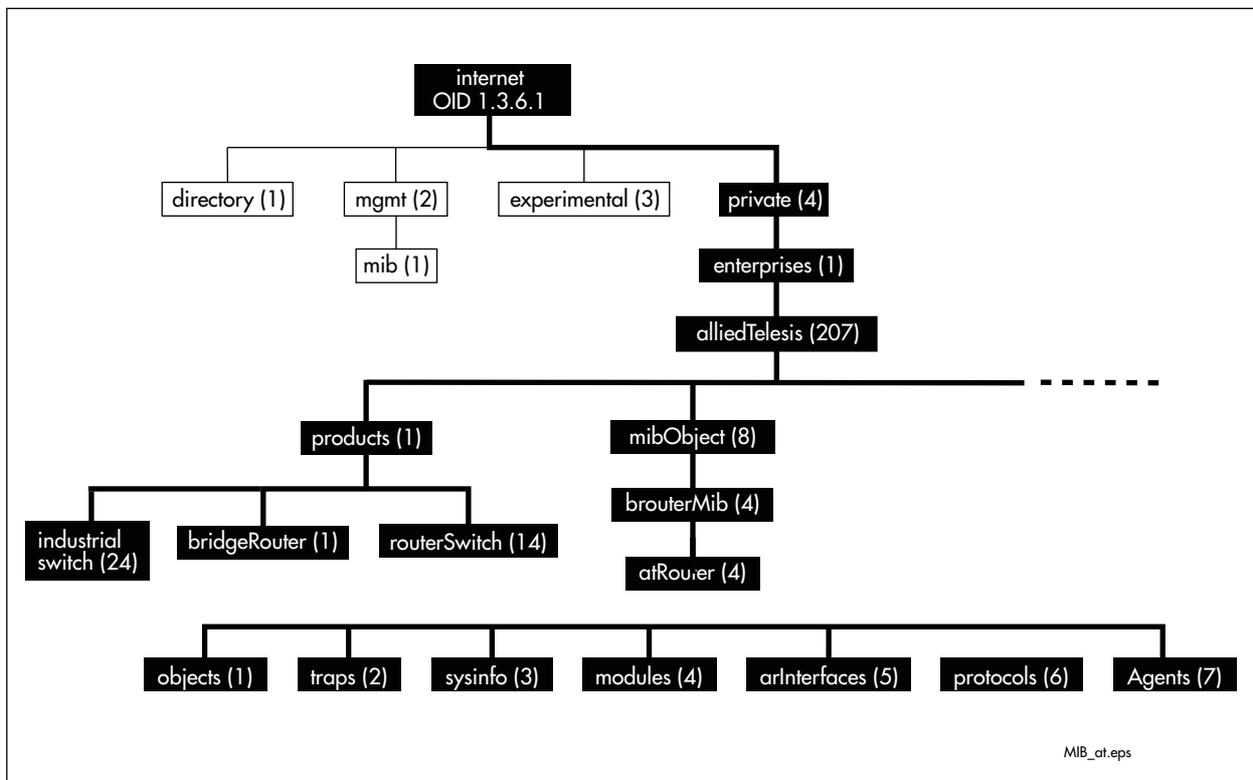
AT-ALMMON-MIB

Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB

The *Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB* defines a portion of the Management Information Base (MIB) for managing Allied Telesis products and features that are not supported by public MIBs. Objects defined in this MIB reside in the private(4) subtree and have the object identifier `alliedTelesis` (`{ enterprises 207 }`).

This document describes only those portions of the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. **Figure 68-1** shows the structure of the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB. Each component MIB is detailed in the following sections of this chapter.

Figure 68-1: The Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB sub-tree of the Internet-standard Management Information Base (MIB)



AT-ALMMON-MIB

AT-ALMMON-MIB defines objects for managing alarms [Table 68-1](#). Objects in this group have the object identifier `sysinfo` (`{ atRouter 3 }`).

Table 68-1: .Objects defined by the atAlmMon MIB

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atAlmMon { atAlmMon 24 } (OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.26) | The AT Alarm Monitoring v2 MIB for managing and reporting device alarms. |
| atAlmMonActionTable { atAlmMon 1 } (207.8.4.4.3.26.1) | Table of information defining alarm monitoring inputs and consequent actions (i.e. fault LED and relay outputs), indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAlmMonActionStackMemberId atAlmMonActionIndex |
| atAlmMonActionEntry { atAlmMonActionTable 1 } (207.8.4.4.3.26.1.1) | A description and configuration of what to do for a specific monitored alarm. |
| atAlmMonActionStackMemberId { atAlmMonActionEntry 1 } (207.8.4.4.3.26.1.1.1) | The index of the stack member of this alarm action. Read only. |
| atAlmMonActionIndex { atAlmMonActionEntry 2 } (207.8.4.4.3.26.1.1.2) | The numeric identifier of this alarm action. Read only. |
| atAlmMonAlarmType { atAlmMonActionEntry 3 } (207.8.4.4.3.26.1.1.3) | The type of alarm that this action monitors. Read only. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> alarmTypeInvalid (0) externalPSU (1) epsr (2) contactInput (3) portLinkDown (4) loopDetect (5) mainPse (6) portPoeFailure (7) temperature (8) |
| atAlmMonAlarmTypeSelection { atAlmMonActionEntry 4 } | The 1-based index of the alarm of the particular type (as categorized by <code>AlmMonAlarmType</code>). |
| atAlmMonActionDescription { atAlmMonActionEntry 5 } | The description of this alarm monitoring entry. Read only. |
| atAlmMonActionUseRelay1 { atAlmMonActionEntry 6 } | Indicates/controls whether or not this alarm monitor drives the first relay output. Read-write. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unused (1) Used (2) |
| atAlmMonActionUseRelay2 { atAlmMonActionEntry 7 } | Indicates/controls whether or not this alarm monitor drives the second relay output. Read-write. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unused (1) Used (2) |

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atAlmMonActionUseRelay3 { atAlmMonActionEntry 8 } | Indicates/controls whether or not this alarm monitor drives the third relay output. Read-write. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Unused (1) ■ Used (2) |
| atAlmMonActionUseFaultLed { alAlmMonActionEntry 9 } | Indicates/controls whether or not this alarm monitor drives the fault LED. Read-write. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Unused (1) ■ Used (2) |
| atAlmMonAbnormalState { atAlmMonActionEntry 10 } | Indicates/sets the abnormal (i.e., alarm active) state for a contact input. Only used for contactInput alarm monitors, ignored for all other types. Read-write. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ open (1) ■ closed (2) |
| atAlmMonActionState { atAlmMonActionEntry 11 } | Indicates the current state of this alarm monitor. Read only. Values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Inactive (1) ■ Active (2) |

AT-ATMF-MIB

The ATMF-MIB defines objects for managing ATMF. Objects and triggers are shown diagrammatically in **Figure 68-2 on page 68.8** and **Figure 68-3 on page 68.9**. Objects in this group have the object identifier ATMF ({ modules 603 }). These are shown listed in **Figure 68-2 on page 68.10**.

Figure 68-2: The upper levels of the AT-ATMF MIB sub-tree

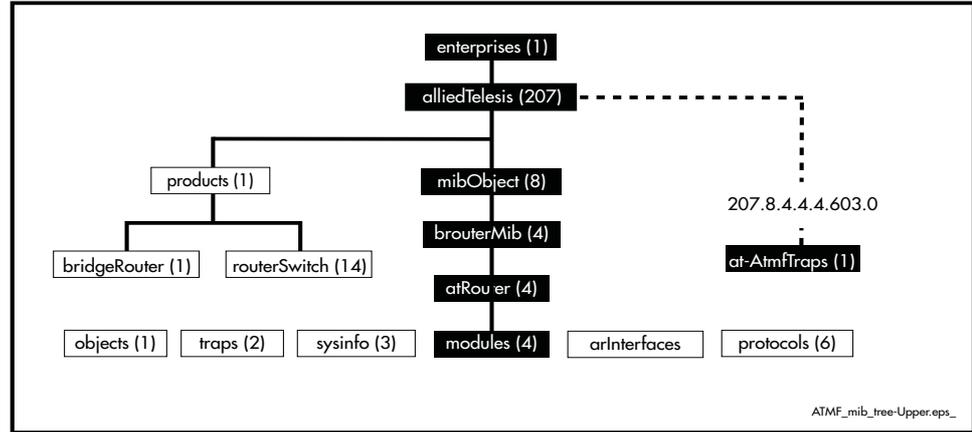
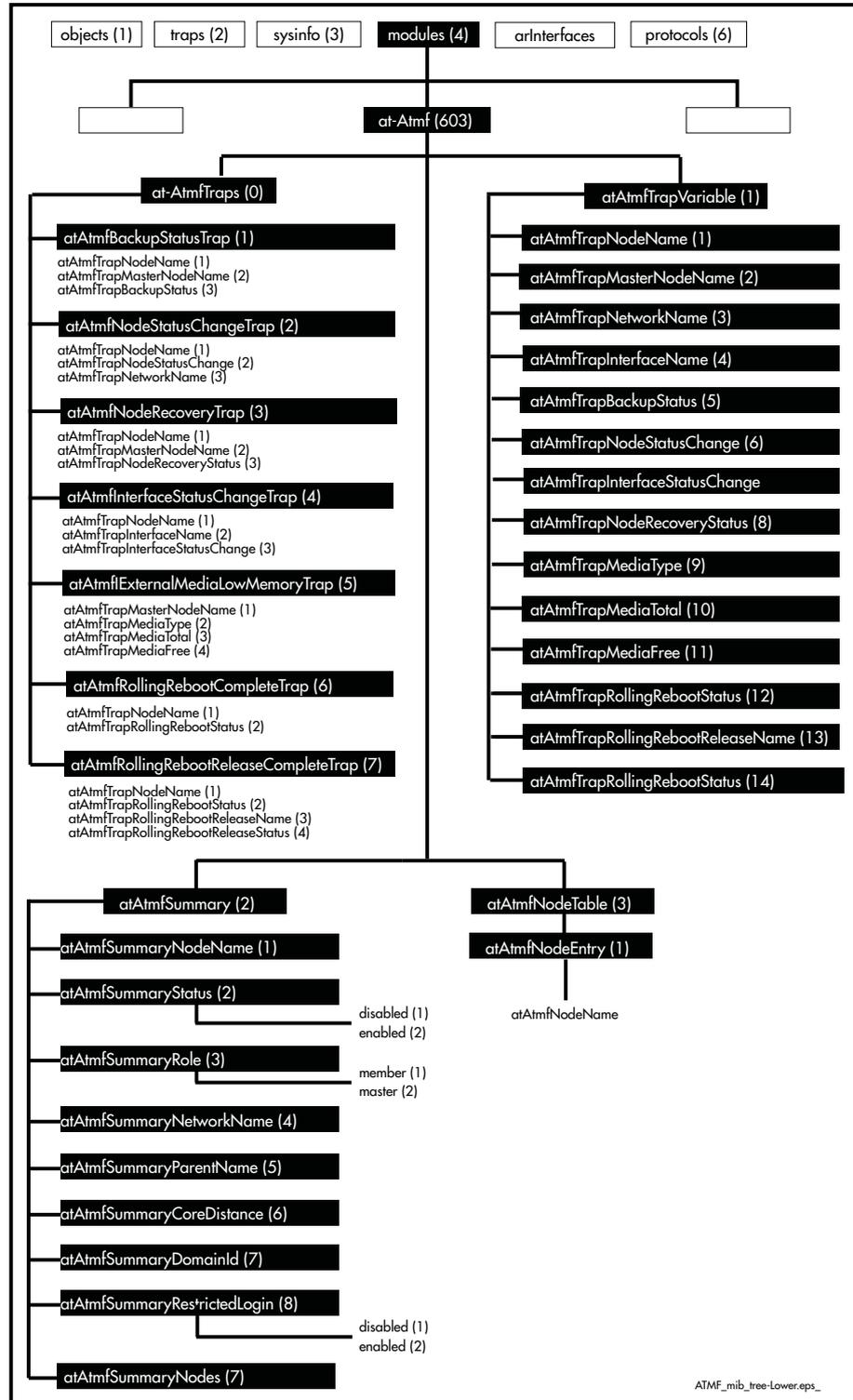


Figure 68-3: The Lower levels of the AT-ATMF MIB sub-tree



ATMF_mib_tree-Lower.eps...

Table 68-2: AT-ATMF MIB Objects

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|---|
| atmf | { modules 603 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.603 | Root of the Allied Telesis ATMF MIB under the private(4) node defined in RFC1155-SMI. |
| atAtmfTraps | { atmf 0 } 207.8.4.4.4.603.0 | Sub-tree of objects describing ATMF traps. |
| atAtmfBackup StatusTrap | atAtmfTraps 1 | This trap is generated when an ATMF master attempts to backup a node's FLASH contents. It states whether the backup of an individual node, or all nodes, to a master node has passed or failed. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapMasterNodeName atAtmfTrapBackupStatus |
| atAtmfNode StatusChange Trap | atAtmfTraps 2 | This trap is generated when an ATMF node joins or leaves the ATMF network. It states whether a node has <left joined> an ATMF network. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapNodeStatusChange atAtmfTrapNetworkName |
| atAtmfNode RecoveryTrap | atAtmfTraps 3 | This trap is generated when an attempt has been made to recover an ATMF node. It states whether an attempt to recover a node from the specified master has passed or failed. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapMasterNodeName atAtmfTrapNodeRecoveryStatus |
| atAtmfInterface StatusChangeTrap | atAtmfTraps 4 | This trap is generated when an ATMF interface status change occurs. It states that an interface on a node has changed status to either blocking or forwarding. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapInterfaceName atAtmfTrapInterfaceStatusChange |
| atAtmfExternal MediaLowMemory Trap | atAtmfTraps 5 | This trap is generated when the available external storage on the ATMF master node falls below a nominated threshold. It states that the external USB or SD card storage on a master node has fallen below the designated threshold and specifies the total available memory <xxx MB> and the total free memory <xxx MB>. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapMasterNodeName atAtmfTrapMediaType atAtmfTrapMediaTotal atAtmfTrapMediaFree |
| atAtmfRolling RebootComplete Trap | atAtmfTraps 6 | This trap is generated when the ATMF rolling reboot process has finished on a particular ATMF node. Nominally, it states that the ATMF rolling reboot, executed against the specified node, has returned a reboot status of either failed or passed. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapRollingRebootStatus |

Table 68-2: AT-ATMF MIB Objects(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| atAtmfRollingRebootReleaseCompleteTrap | atAtmfTraps 7 | This trap is generated when the ATMF rolling reboot process attempts to push a new software release to a specified ATMF node. Nominally, it states that the ATMF rolling reboot release process, executed from the specified node has returned a reboot status of either failed or passed, the name of the attempted release file and the release status of either "failed" or "passed". Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atAtmfTrapNodeName atAtmfTrapRollingRebootStatus atAtmfTrapRollingRebootReleaseName atAtmfTrapRollingRebootReleaseStatus |
| atAtmfTrapVariable | atmf 1 | Sub-tree of objects describing ATMF traps. |
| atAtmfTrapNodeName | atAtmfTrapVariable 1 | The ATMF trap node name. |
| atAtmfTrapMasterNodeName | atAtmfTrapVariable 2 | The ATMF trap master node name. |
| atAtmfTrapNetworkName | atAtmfTrapVariable 3 | The ATMF trap network name. |
| atAtmfTrapInterfaceName | atAtmfTrapVariable 4 | The ATMF interface name, "Trap". |
| atAtmfTrapBackupStatus | atAtmfTrapVariable 5 | The status of the last trap backup attempt on either a specified ATMF node or all nodes in the ATMF network. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> failed(1) passed(2) |
| atAtmfTrapNodeStatusChange | atAtmfTrapVariable 6 | An ATMF trap node has changed its status in the ATMF network. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> left(1) joined(2) |
| AtmfTrapInterfaceStatusChange | atAtmfTrapVariable 7 | An ATMFtrap interface has changed its status. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> blocking(1) forwarding(2) |
| atAtmfTrapNodeRecoveryStatus | atAtmfTrapVariable 8 | The status of the last recovery attempt. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> failed(1) passed(2) |
| atAtmfTrapMedia Type | atAtmfTrapVariable 9 | The media type resident on the ATMF node - USB or SD. |
| atAtmfTrapMedia Total | atAtmfTrapVariable 10 | The total memory available on the resident media, in MB. |
| atAtmfTrapMedia Free | atAtmfTrapVariable 11 | The free memory available on the resident media, in MB. Each node has a maximum flash of 64MB. |
| atAtmfTrapRollingRebootStatus | atAtmfTrapVariable 12 | The status of the last rolling reboot for a node. Its objects are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> failed(1) passed(2) |
| atAtmfTrapRollingRebootRelease Name | atAtmfTrapVariable 13 | The name of the last rolling reboot release. |

Table 68-2: AT-ATMF MIB Objects(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| atAtmfTrapRollingRebootReleaseStatus | atAtmfTrapVariable 14 | The release update status of the last rolling reboot for a node. Its objects are: 1. failed(1) 2. passed(2) |
| atAtmfSummary | atmf 2 | |
| atAtmfSummary NodeName | atAtmfSummary 1 | The name assigned to a particular node. |
| atAtmfSummary Status | atAtmfSummary 2 | The Node's ATMF status. |
| atAtmfSummary Role | atAtmfSummary 3 | The role configured for this ATMF device, either Master or Member. |
| atAtmfSummary NetworkName | atAtmfSummary 4 | The ATMF network that a particular node belongs to. |
| atAtmfSummary ParentName | atAtmfSummary 5 | The parent name of the node or 'none'. |
| atAtmfSummary CoreDistance | atAtmfSummary 6 | The ATMF core distance for this node. |
| atAtmfSummary DomainId | atAtmfSummary 7 | The ATMF domain Id for this node. |
| atAtmfSummary RestrictedLogin | atAtmfSummary 8 | The login for this ATMF device is restricted to only those devices that are designated ATMF Masters. Its objects are: 1. disabled(1) 2. enabled(2) |
| atAtmfSummary Nodes | atAtmfSummary 9 | The number of ATMF nodes known to this device. |
| atAtmfNodeTable | atmf 3 | ATMF Node Entry. |
| atAtmfNodeName | atAtmfNodeTable 1 | The name assigned to a particular node. |

AT-BOARDS-MIB

AT-BOARDS-MIB defines object identifiers for components of Allied Telesis products—base CPU and expansion boards, interface types, and chip sets. Objects in this MIB have the object identifier objects ({ atRouter 1 }), and are organized into the following groups:

- Base CPU and expansion boards ([Table 68-3](#)). These object identifiers are for use with the hrDeviceID object in the Host Resources MIB (see [“Public MIBs” on page 68.79](#)).
- Interface types ([Table 68-4](#)).
- Chip sets ([Table 68-5](#)).

Table 68-3: Object identifiers for base CPU and expansion boards

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|
| boards | { objects 1 } | |
| pprx90024XT | { boards 271 } | x900-24XT Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays |
| pprx90024XS | { boards 272 } | x900-24XS Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays |
| pprAtXum10Gi | { boards 273 } | XEM-1XP Expansion Module, 1 x 10Gbe XFP port |
| pprAtXum12SFPi | { boards 274 } | XEM-12S Expansion Module, 12 x SFP Gigabit ports |
| pprAtXum12Ti | { boards 275 } | XEM-12T Expansion Module, 12 x 10/100/100BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors) |
| pprAtXum12TiN | { boards 280 } | XEM-12T-N Expansion Module, 12 x 10/100/100BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), NEBS compliant |
| pprx90024XTN | { boards 281 } | x900-24XT Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays, NEBS compliant |
| pprSwitchBladex908 | { boards 282 } | Switchblade x908 8 Slot Layer 3 Switch Chassis |
| pprx90012XTS | { boards 288 } | AT-x900-12XT/S Advanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 12 x combo ports (10/100/1000BASE-T copper or SFP), 1 x 30Gbps expansion bay |
| pprAt9524TS | { boards 290 } | x600-24Ts/XP, 24 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprAt9524TSXP | { boards 291 } | x600-24Ts/XP, 24 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x XFP ports |
| pprAt9548TS | { boards 294 } | x600-44Ts, 44 x 1000BASE-T ports, 4 x SFP ports |
| pprAt9548TSXP | { boards 295 } | x600-44Ts/XP, 44 x 1000BASE-T ports, 4 x SFP ports, 2 x XFP ports |
| pprXem2XP | { boards 306 } | XEM-2XP Expansion Module, 2 x 10Gbe XFP port |
| pprATStackXG | { boards 307 } | x600 Expansion Module, Stacking |
| pprATEMXP | { boards 308 } | x600 Expansion Module, 2 x 10G XFP ports |
| pprATLBM | { boards 309 } | x600 Expansion Module, loopback |
| pprAtSBx8112 | { boards 316 } | AT-SBx8112, SwitchBlade x8112 chassis |
| pprAtSBx81CFC400 | { boards 317 } | AT-SBx81CFC, Control Fabric Card for SwitchBlade x8112 |
| pprAtSBx81GP24 | { boards 318 } | AT-SBx81GP24, 24 x 1G PoE line card |
| pprAtSBxPWRSYSAC | { boards 320 } | AT-SBxPWR SYS/AC, system power supply unit for the SwitchBlade x8112 (AC input) |

Table 68-3: Object identifiers for base CPU and expansion boards(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------|-------------------|---|
| pprAtSBxPWRPOEAC | { boards 321 } | AT-SBxPWR POE/AC, PoE power supply unit for the SwitchBlade x8112 (AC input) |
| pprAtSBxFAN12 | { boards 322 } | AT-SBxFAN12, fan tray for the SwitchBlade x8112 |
| pprAtPWR05DC | { boards 323 } | AT-PWR05, DC power supply unit for SwitchBlade x908 |
| pprXem2XT | { boards 325 } | XEM-2XT Expansion Module, 2 x 10Gbe copper XEM port |
| pprx60024TSPOE | { boards 326 } | x600-24Ts-POE, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprx60024TSPOEPLUS | { boards 327 } | x600-24Ts-POE+, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprx61048TsXPOEPlus | { boards 331 } | x610-48Ts/X-POE+, 48 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports (RJ45 connectors), 2 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| pprx61048TsPOEPlus | { boards 332 } | x610-48Ts-POE+, 48 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprx61024TsXPOEPlus | { boards 333 } | x610-24Ts/X-POE+, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| pprx61024TsPOEPlus | { boards 334 } | x610-24Ts-POE+, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprPWR800 | { boards 336 } | AT-PWR800, 800W power supply unit |
| pprPWR1200 | { boards 337 } | AT-PWR1200, 1200W power supply unit |
| pprPWR250 | { boards 338 } | AT-PWR250, 250W power supply unit |
| pprx61048TsX | { boards 339 } | x610-48Ts/X, 48 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 2 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| pprx61048Ts | { boards 340 } | x610-48Ts, 48 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprx61024TsX | { boards 341 } | x610-24Ts/X, 24 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| pprx61024Ts | { boards 342 } | x610-24Ts, 24 x 1000BASE-T ports (RJ45 connectors), 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| pprPWR250DC | { boards 351 } | AT-PWR250DC, 250W DC power supply unit |
| pprAtSBx81GT24 | { boards 352 } | AT-SBx81GT24, 24 x 1G copper line card |
| pprAtSBx81GS24a | { boards 353 } | AT-SBx81GS24a, 24 x 1G SFP line card |
| pprAtSBx81XS6 | { boards 354 } | AT-SBx81XS6, 6 x 10G SFP+ line card |
| pprx2109GT | { boards 367 } | AT-x210-9GT, 8xGigbit, 1xSFP/T |
| pprx21016GT | { boards 368 } | AT-x210-16GT, 14xGigbit, 2xcombo SFP/T |
| pprx21024GT | { boards 369 } | AT-x210-24GT, 20xGigbit, 4xcombo SFP/T |
| pprx51028GTX | { boards 370 } | AT-x510-28GTX board with 24 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and four 10Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprx51028GPX | { boards 371 } | AT-x510-28GPX board with 24 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports and PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| pprx51028GSX | { boards 372 } | AT-x510-28GSX with 24 100/1000 SFP ports and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprx51052GTX | { boards 373 } | AT-x510-52GTX board with 48 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprx51052GPX | { boards 374 } | AT-x510-52GPX board with 48 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports and PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |

Table 68-3: Object identifiers for base CPU and expansion boards(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------|-------------------|--|
| pprAtSBx8106 | { boards 375 } | AT-SBx8106, SwitchBlade x8106 chassis |
| pprAtSBxFAN06 | { boards 376 } | AT-SBxFAN06, fan tray for the SwitchBlade x8106 |
| pprAtSBx81CFC960 | { boards 377 } | AT-SBx81CFC960 Control Fabric Card for SwitchBlade x8100 Series chassis, four 10GbE SFP+ ports. |
| pprAtSBx81GT40 | { boards 381 } | AT-SBx81GT40 RJ point five line card. |
| pprPWR100R | { boards 384 } | AT-PWR100R, 100W power supply unit |
| pprPWR250DCR | { boards 385 } | AT-PWR250R-DC, 250W DC power supply unit |
| pprx510DP52GTX | { boards 386 } | AT-x510DP-52GTX board with 48 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprxIX528GPX | { boards 387 } | AT-IX5-28GPX board with 24 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports and PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| pprx31026FT | { boards 393 } | AT-x310-26FT board with 24 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprx31050FT | { boards 394 } | AT-x310-50FT board with 48 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| pprx31026FP | { boards 395 } | AT-x310-26FP board with 24 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports, plus PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| pprx31050FP | { boards 396 } | AT-x310-50FP board with 48 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports, plus PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| pprIE2006GT | { boards 410 } | IE200-6GT L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X). Note that this is a single board device. |
| pprIE2006GP | { boards 411 } | IE200-6GP L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports (with 802.3at PoE+) and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X). Note that this is a single board device. |
| pprIE2006GPW | { boards 412 } | IE200-6GPW L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports (with 802.3at PoE+) and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X) and 802.11bgn wireless. Note that this is a single board device. |

Table 68-4: Object identifiers for interface types

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| iftypes | { objects 3 } | |
| ifaceEth | { iftypes 1 } | Ethernet |
| ifaceSyn | { iftypes 2 } | Synchronous |
| ifaceAsyn | { iftypes 3 } | Asynchronous |
| ifaceBri | { iftypes 4 } | BRI ISDN |
| ifacePri | { iftypes 5 } | PRI ISDN |
| ifacePots | { iftypes 6 } | POTS (voice) |
| ifaceGBIC | { iftypes 7 } | GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) |
| chipMips_4kcCpu | { chips 6 } | Dual MIPS CPU |

Table 68-5: Object identifiers for chip sets

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| chips | { objects 4 } | |
| chip68020Cpu | { chips 1 } | MC68020 CPU |
| chip68340Cpu | { chips 2 } | MC68340 CPU |
| chip68302Cpu | { chips 3 } | MC68302 CPU |
| chip68360Cpu | { chips 4 } | MC68360 CPU |
| chip860TCpu | { chips 5 } | MPC860T CPU |
| chipMips4kcCpu | { chips 6 } | Dual MIPS CPU |
| chipRtc1 | { chips 21 } | Real Time Clock v1 |
| chipRtc2 | { chips 22 } | Real Time Clock v2 |
| chipRtc3 | { chips 23 } | Real Time Clock v3 |
| chipRtc4 | { chips 24 } | Real Time Clock v4 |
| chipRam1mb | { chips 31 } | 1 MB RAM |
| chipRam2mb | { chips 32 } | 2 MB RAM |
| chipRam3mb | { chips 33 } | 3 MB RAM |
| chipRam4mb | { chips 34 } | 4 MB RAM |
| chipRam6mb | { chips 36 } | 6 MB RAM |
| chipRam8mb | { chips 38 } | 8 MB RAM |
| chipRam12mb | { chips 42 } | 12 MB RAM |
| chipRam16mb | { chips 46 } | 16 MB RAM |
| chipRam20mb | { chips 50 } | 20 MB RAM |
| chipRam32mb | { chips 62 } | 32 MB RAM |
| chipFlash1mb | { chips 71 } | 1 MB FLASH memory |
| chipFlash2mb | { chips 72 } | 2 MB FLASH memory |
| chipFlash3mb | { chips 73 } | 3 MB FLASH memory |
| chipFlash4mb | { chips 74 } | 4 MB FLASH memory |
| chipFlash6mb | { chips 76 } | 6 MB FLASH memory |
| chipFlash8mb | { chips 78 } | 8 MB FLASH memory |
| chipPem | { chips 120 } | Processor Enhancement Module |

AT-DHCPSN-MIB

This MIB contains objects for displaying and managing DHCP snooping and ARP security information on the switch. (Table 68-6). The objects reside in the module atDhcpsn { modules 537 }, organized in the following groups:

- The DHCP Snooping Events group (atDhcpsnEvents) contains notifications (traps)
- The DHCP Snooping table (atDhcpsnVariablesTable) contains DHCP snooping information
- The ARP Security table (atArpsecVariablesTable) contains ARP security information

Table 68-6: Objects defined in AT-DHCPSN-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| atDhcpsn | { modules 537 } | This MIB file contains definitions of managed objects for DHCP Snooping in AlliedWare Plus™. |
| atDhcpsnEvents | { atDhcpsn 1 } | DHCP Snooping notifications (traps) |
| atDhcpsnTrap | { atDhcpsnEvents 1 } | DHCP Snooping violation notification. |
| atArpsecTrap | { atDhcpsnEvents 2 } | DHCP Snooping ARP Security violation notification. |
| atDhcpsnVariablesTable | { atDhcpsn 1 } | The DHCP Snooping table. This table contains rows of DHCP Snooping information. |
| atDhcpsnVariablesEntry | { atDhcpsnVariablesTable 1 } | A set of parameters that describe the DHCP Snooping features. |
| atDhcpsnIfIndex | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 1 } | Ifindex of the port that the packet was received on. |
| atDhcpsnVid | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 2 } | VLAN ID of the port that the packet was received on. |
| atDhcpsnSmac | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 3 } | Source MAC address of the packet that caused the trap. |
| atDhcpsnOpcode | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 4 } | Opcode value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. Only bootpRequest(1) or bootpReply(2) is valid. |
| atDhcpsnCiaddr | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 5 } | Ciaddr value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. |
| atDhcpsnYiaddr | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 6 } | Yiaddr value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. |
| atDhcpsnGiaddr | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 7 } | Giaddr value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. |
| atDhcpsnSiaddr | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 8 } | Siaddr value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. |
| atDhcpsnChaddr | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 9 } | Chaddr value of the BOOTP packet that caused the trap. |

Table 68-6: Objects defined in AT-DHCP SN-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| atDhcpsnVioType | { atDhcpsnVariablesEntry 10 } | <p>The reason that the trap was generated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ invalidBootp(1) indicates that the received BOOTP packet was invalid. For example, it is neither BootpRequest nor BootpReply. ■ invalidDhcpAck(2) indicates that the received DHCP ACK was invalid. ■ invalidDhcpRelDec(3) indicates the DHCP Release or Decline was invalid. ■ invalidIp(4) indicates that the received IP packet was invalid. ■ maxBindExceeded(5) indicates that if the entry was added, the maximum bindings configured for the port would be exceeded. ■ opt82InsertErr(6) indicates that the insertion of Option 82 failed. ■ opt82RxInvalid(7) indicates that the received Option 82 information was invalid. ■ opt82RxUntrusted(8) indicates that Option 82 information was received on an untrusted port. ■ opt82TxUntrusted(9) indicates that Option 82 would have been transmitted out an untrusted port. ■ replyRxUntrusted(10) indicates that a BOOTP Reply was received on an untrusted port. ■ srcMacChaddrMismatch(11) indicates that the source MAC address of the packet did not match the BOOTP CHADDR of the packet. ■ staticEntryExisted(12) indicates that the static entry to be added already exists. ■ dbAddErr(13) indicates that adding an entry to the database failed. |
| atArpsecVariablesTable | { atDhcpsn 2 } | The ARP Security table. This table contains rows of DHCP Snooping ARP Security information. |
| atArpsecVariablesEntry | { atArpsecVariablesTable 1 } | A set of parameters that describe the DHCP Snooping ARP Security features. |
| atArpsecIfIndex | { atArpsecVariablesEntry 1 } | Ifindex of the port that the ARP packet was received on. |
| atArpsecClientIP | { atArpsecVariablesEntry 2 } | Source IP address of the ARP packet. |
| atArpsecSrcMac | { atArpsecVariablesEntry 3 } | Source MAC address of the ARP packet. |
| atArpsecVid | { atArpsecVariablesEntry 4 } | VLAN ID of the port that the ARP packet was received on. |

Table 68-6: Objects defined in AT-DHCP SN-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------|------------------------------|---|
| atArpsecVioType | { atArpsecVariablesEntry 5 } | <p>The reason that the trap was generated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ srcIpNotFound(1) indicates that the Sender IP address of the ARP packet was not found in the DHCP Snooping database. ■ badVLAN(2) indicates that the VLAN of the DHCP Snooping binding entry associated with the Sender IP address of the ARP packet does not match the VLAN that the ARP packet was received on. ■ badPort(3) indicates that the port of the DHCP Snooping binding entry associated with the Sender IP address of the ARP packet does not match the port that the ARP packet was received on. ■ srcIpNotAllocated(4) indicates that the CHADDR of the DHCP Snooping binding entry associated with the Sender IP address of the ARP packet does not match the Source MAC and/or the ARP source MAC of the ARP packet. |

AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB

AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB contains definitions of managed objects for the Allied Telesis DNS Client Configuration.

Objects in this group have the object identifier atDns ({ Modules 501 }). **Table 68-7** lists the objects supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System.

Table 68-7: Objects defined in AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| atDnsClient | { atDns 1 } | MIB File for DNS Client Configuration. |
| atDNSServerIndexNext | { atDnsClient 1 } | The next available value for the object 'atDNSServerIndex'. The value is used by a management application to create an entry in the 'atDNSServerTable'. |
| atDNSServerTable | { atDnsClient 2 } | Table of information about the Domain Name System (DNS) Server configurations in the system, indexed by 'atDNSServerIndex'. |
| atDNSServerEntry | { atDNSServerTable 1 } | Information about a single DNS Server Configuration. |
| atDNSServerIndex | { atDNSServerEntry 1 } | The index corresponding to the particular DNS Server Configuration. When creating a new entry in the table, the value of this object must be equal to the value in the 'atDNSServerIndexNext'. |
| atDNSServerAddrType | { atDNSServerEntry 2 } | The Internet Address Type of the 'atDNSServerAddr' object. Can be one of the following: unknown (0) 1. ipv4 (1) - default 2. ipv6 (2) - not supported 3. ipv4z (3) - not supported 4. ipv6z (4) - not supported 5. dns (16) - not supported |
| atDNSServerAddr | { atDNSServerEntry 3 } | The IP Address of the DNS Server. When a new entry is created, this object is set to the default of '0.0.0.0' { '00000000'h }. The management application will change this to the desired value using a SET operation. |
| atDNSServerStatus | { atDNSServerEntry 4 } | The status of the current entry (row). Can be one of the following: 1. active (1) 2. createAndGo (4) 3. destroy (6) To create a new entry the management application must set this object with value 'createAndGo (4)'. To delete an entry, the management application must set this object with value 'destroy (6)'. Once an entry is deleted, all subsequent entries in the table will be renumbered. The default is 1 (active) |

AT-ENVMONv2-MIB

The AT Environment Monitoring v2 MIB (atEnvMonv2-MIB) has the object path 207.8.4.4.3.12. It contains objects for managing and reporting data relating to fans, voltage rails, temperature sensors and power supply units installed in the device (**Table 68-8**). Objects in this group have the object identifier EnvMonv2 ({ sysinfo 12 }).

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|---|
| atEnvMonv2Notifications { atEnvMonv2 0 } OID (207.8.4.4.3.12.0) | A collection of traps (notification) objects for monitoring fans, voltage rails, temperature sensors, and power supply bays. |
| atEnvMonv2FanAlarmSetNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 1 } OID (207.8.4.4.3.12.0.1) | A notification that is generated when the monitored speed of a fan drops below its lower threshold. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2FanStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2FanBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2FanIndex 4. atEnvMonv2FanDescription 5. atEnvMonv2FanLowerThreshold 6. atEnvMonv2FanCurrentSpeed |
| atEnvMonv2FanAlarmClearedNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 2 } | Notification generated when the monitored speed of a fan returns to an acceptable value, the fan having previously been in an alarm condition. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2FanStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2FanBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2FanIndex 4. atEnvMonv2FanDescription 5. atEnvMonv2FanLowerThreshold 6. atEnvMonv2FanCurrentSpeed |
| atEnvMonv2VoltAlarmSetNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 3 } | Notification generated when the voltage of a monitored voltage rail, goes out of tolerance by either dropping below its lower threshold, or exceeding its upper threshold. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2VoltageStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2VoltageBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2VoltageIndex 4. atEnvMonv2VoltageDescription 5. atEnvMonv2VoltageUpperThreshold 6. atEnvMonv2VoltageLowerThreshold 7. atEnvMonv2VoltageCurrent (i.e. the voltage currently being measured). |
| atEnvMonv2VoltAlarmClearedNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 4 } | Notification generated when the voltage of a monitored voltage rail returns to an acceptable value, having previously been in an alarm condition. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2VoltageStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2VoltageBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2VoltageIndex 4. atEnvMonv2VoltageDescription 5. atEnvMonv2VoltageUpperThreshold 6. atEnvMonv2VoltageLowerThreshold 7. atEnvMonv2VoltageCurrent (i.e. the voltage currently being measured). |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|---|--|
| atEnvMonv2TempAlarmSetNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 5 } | Notification generated when a monitored temperature exceeds its upper threshold. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2TemperatureStackMemberId atEnvMonv2TemperatureBoardIndex atEnvMonv2TemperatureIndex atEnvMonv2TemperatureDescription atEnvMonv2TemperatureUpperThreshold atEnvMonv2TemperatureCurrent |
| atEnvMonv2TempAlarmClearedNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 6 } | Notification generated when a monitored temperature returns to an acceptable value, having previously been in an alarm condition. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2TemperatureStackMemberId atEnvMonv2TemperatureBoardIndex atEnvMonv2TemperatureIndex atEnvMonv2TemperatureDescription atEnvMonv2TemperatureUpperThreshold |
| atEnvMonv2PsbAlarmSetNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 7 } | Notification generated when a monitored parameter of a power supply bay device goes out of tolerance. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2PsbSensorStackMemberId atEnvMonv2PsbSensorBoardIndex atEnvMonv2PsbSensorIndex atEnvMonv2PsbSensorType atEnvMonv2PsbSensorDescription |
| atEnvMonv2PsbAlarmClearedNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 8 } | Notification generated when a monitored parameter of a power supply bay device returns to an acceptable value, having previously been in an alarm condition. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2PsbSensorStackMemberId atEnvMonv2PsbSensorBoardIndex atEnvMonv2PsbSensorIndex atEnvMonv2PsbSensorType atEnvMonv2PsbSensorDescription |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputOpenNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 9 } | Notification generated when a monitored contact input opens. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ContactInputStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ContactInputBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ContactInputIndex atEnvMonv2ContactInputDescription |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputCloseNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 10 } | Notification generated when a monitored contact input closes. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ContactInputStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ContactInputBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ContactInputIndex atEnvMonv2ContactInputDescription |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|---|---|
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUAlarmSetNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 11 } | Notification generated when supply potential of a monitored external power supply is not present. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUIndex atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUDescription |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUAlarmClearedNotify { atEnvMonv2Notifications 12 } | Notification generated when supply potential of a monitored external power supply returns to an acceptable level, having previously been in alarm condition. It returns the value of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusIndex atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusDescription |
| atEnvMonv2FanTable { EnvMonv2 1 } OID (207.8.4.4.3.12.1) | Table of information about fans installed in the device that have their fan speeds monitored by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2FanStackMemberId atEnvMonv2FanBoardIndex atEnvMonv2FanIndex |
| atEnvMonv2FanEntry { atEnvMonv2FanTable 1 } | Description, current speed, lower threshold speed and current status of a single fan. |
| atEnvMonv2FanStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this fan. |
| atEnvMonv2FanBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this fan in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2FanIndex { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 3 } | Numeric identifier of this fan on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2FanDescription { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 4 } | Description of this fan. |
| atEnvMonv2FanCurrentSpeed { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 5 } | Current speed of this fan in revolutions per minute. |
| atEnvMonv2FanLowerThreshold { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 6 } | Minimum acceptable speed of the fan in revolutions per minute. |
| atEnvMonv2FanStatus { atEnvMonv2FanEntry 7 } | Whether this fan is currently in an alarm condition. The values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Failed. Means that the current speed is too low. Good. Means that the current speed is acceptable. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageTable { atEnvMonv2 2 } | Table of information about voltage rails in the device that are monitored by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2VoltageStackMemberId <ul style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2VoltageBoardIndex atEnvMonv2VoltageIndex |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry { atEnvMonv2VoltageTable 1 } | Description, current value, upper & lower threshold settings and current status of a single voltage rail. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this voltage sensor. |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|---|---|
| atEnvMonv2VoltageBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this voltage sensor in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageIndex { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 3 } | Numeric identifier of this voltage rail on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageDescription { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 4 } | Description of this voltage rail. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageCurrent { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 5 } | Current reading of this voltage rail in millivolts. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageUpperThreshold { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 6 } | Maximum acceptable reading of this voltage rail in millivolts. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageLowerThreshold { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 7 } | Minimum acceptable reading of this voltage rail in millivolts. |
| atEnvMonv2VoltageStatus { atEnvMonv2VoltageEntry 8 } | Whether this voltage rail is currently in an alarm condition. Possible values are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <code>outOfRange (1)</code> - means that the current reading is outside the threshold range. 2. <code>inRange (2)</code> - means that the current reading is acceptable. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureTable { atEnvMonv2 3 } | Table of information about temperature sensors in the device that are monitored by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureStackMemberId</code> 2. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureBoardIndex</code> 3. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureIndex</code> 4. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureDescription</code> 5. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureCurrent</code> 6. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureUpperThreshold</code> 7. <code>atEnvMonv2TemperatureStatus</code> |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry { atEnvMonv2TemperatureTable 1 } | Description, current value, upper threshold setting and current status of a single temperature sensor. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this temperature sensor. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this temperature sensor in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureIndex { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 3 } | Numeric identifier of this temperature sensor on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureDescription { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 4 } | Description of this temperature sensor. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureCurrent { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 5 } | Current reading of this temperature sensor in degrees Celsius. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureUpperThreshold { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 6 } | Maximum acceptable reading for this temperature sensor in degrees Celsius. |
| atEnvMonv2TemperatureStatus { atEnvMonv2TemperatureEntry 7 } | Whether this temperature sensor is currently in an alarm condition. Can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <code>outOfRange (1)</code> - means that the current reading is outside the threshold range. 2. <code>inRange (2)</code> - means that the current reading is acceptable. |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atEnvMonv2PsbObjects { atEnvMonv2 4 } | Collection of objects for monitoring power supply bays in the system and any devices that are installed. It contains the following objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2PsbTable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ atEnvMonv2PsbSensorTable |
| atEnvMonv2PsbTable { atEnvMonv2PsbObjects 1 } | Table of information about power supply bays in the system, indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2PsbHostStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2PsbHostBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2PsbHostSlotIndex 4. atEnvMonv2PsbHeldBoardIndex 5. atEnvMonv2PsbHeldBoardId 6. atEnvMonv2PsbDescription |
| atEnvMonv2PsbEntry { atEnvMonv2PsbTable 1 } | Description and current status of a single power supply bay device. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbHostStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this power supply bay. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbHostBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this power supply bay in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbHostSlotIndex { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 3 } | Index of this power supply bay slot on its host board. This index is fixed for each slot, on each type of board. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbHeldBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 4 } | Index of a board installed in this power supply bay. This value corresponds to atEnvMonv2PsbSensorBoardIndex for each sensor on this board. A value of 0 indicates that a board is either not present or not supported. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbHeldBoardId { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 5 } | Type of board installed in this power supply bay. The values of this object are taken from the pprXxx object IDs under the boards sub-tree in the parent MIB. A value of 0 indicates that a board is either not present or not supported. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbDescription { atEnvMonv2PsbEntry 6 } | Description of this power supply bay. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorTable { atEnvMonv2PsbObjects 2 } | Table of information about environment monitoring sensors on devices installed in power supply bays, indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2PsbSensorStackMemberId <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ atEnvMonv2PsbSensorBoardIndex ■ atEnvMonv2PsbSensorIndex |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorTable 1 } | Description and current status of the sensor on a device installed in a power supply bay. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this sensor. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this sensor in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorIndex { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 3 } | Index of this power supply bay environmental sensor on its host board. |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorType { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 4 } | Type of environmental variable this sensor detects. One of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. psbSensorTypeInvalid(0) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ fanSpeedDiscrete(1) ■ temperatureDiscrete(2) ■ voltageDiscrete(3) |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorDescription { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 5 } | Description of this power supply bay environmental sensor. |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorStatus { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 6 } | Whether this environmental sensor is currently in an alarm condition. One of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. failed (1) - the device is in a failure condition 2. good (2) - the device is functioning normally. 3. notPowered (3) - a PSU is installed, but not powered up |
| atEnvMonv2PsbSensorReading { atEnvMonv2PsbSensorEntry 7 } | An indication of whether this environmental sensor is currently reading a value for the monitored device. A value of 'no' indicates that there is no current reading, 'yes' indicates that the monitored device is supplying a reading. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. no 2. yes |
| atEnvMonv2Traps { atEnvMonv2 5 } (207.8.4.4.3.12.5) | Note that objects under this portion of the tree have been deprecated, and replaced by objects under the tree portion 207.8.4.4.3.12.0. |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLedTable { atEnvMonv2 6 } | Table detailing any LED fault indications on the device, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2FaultLedStackMemberId |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry { atEnvMonv2FaultLedTable 1 } | Information pertaining to a given fault LED. |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLedStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this fault LED. |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed1Flash { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 2 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing once. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. heatsinkFanFailure (1) - indicates that one or more heatsink fans have failed, or are operating below the recommended speed 2. noFault (2) |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed2Flashes { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 3 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing twice. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. chassisFanFailure (1) - indicates that one or both of the chassis fans are not installed, or the fans are operating below the recommended speed 2. noFault (2) |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed3Flashes { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 4 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing three times. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. sensorFailure (1) - indicates that the ability to monitor temperature or fans has failed 2. noFault (2) |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed4Flashes { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 5 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing four times. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. xemInitialisationFailure (1) - indicates that a XEM failed to initialise or is incompatible 2. noFault (2) |

Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|---|---|
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed5Flashes { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 6 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing five times. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> alarmMonitorAlarm (1) - indicates that the Alarm Monitor has detected one or more fault conditions. noFault (2) |
| atEnvMonv2FaultLed6Flashes { atEnvMonv2FaultLedEntry 7 } | Indicates whether a fault LED is currently showing a system failure by flashing six times. Values can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> temperatureFailure (1) - indicates that the device's temperature has exceeded the recommended threshold noFault (2) |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputTable { atEnvMonv2 7 } (1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.12.7) | Table of information about contact inputs available in the device that are monitored by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ContactInputStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ContactInputBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ContactInputIndex |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry { atEnvMonv2ContactInputTable 1 } | The description and current state of a contact input. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this input contact. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this input contact in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputIndex { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 3 } | The numeric identifier of this contact input on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputDescription { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 4 } | The description of this contact input. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactInputState { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 5 } | Current state of the input contact - closed (1) or open (2). |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputTable { atEnvMonv2 8 } | Table of information about contact outputs available in the device that are managed by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> atEnvMonv2ContactOutputStackMemberId atEnvMonv2ContactOutputBoardIndex atEnvMonv2ContactOutputIndex |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputEntry { atEnvMonv2ContactOutputTable 1 } | |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this output contact. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this contact output in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputIndex { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 3 } | The numeric identifier of this contact output on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputDescription { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 4 } | The description of this contact output. |
| atEnvMonv2ContactOutputState { atEnvMonv2ContactInputEntry 5 } | Current state of the output contact - closed (1) or open (2). |

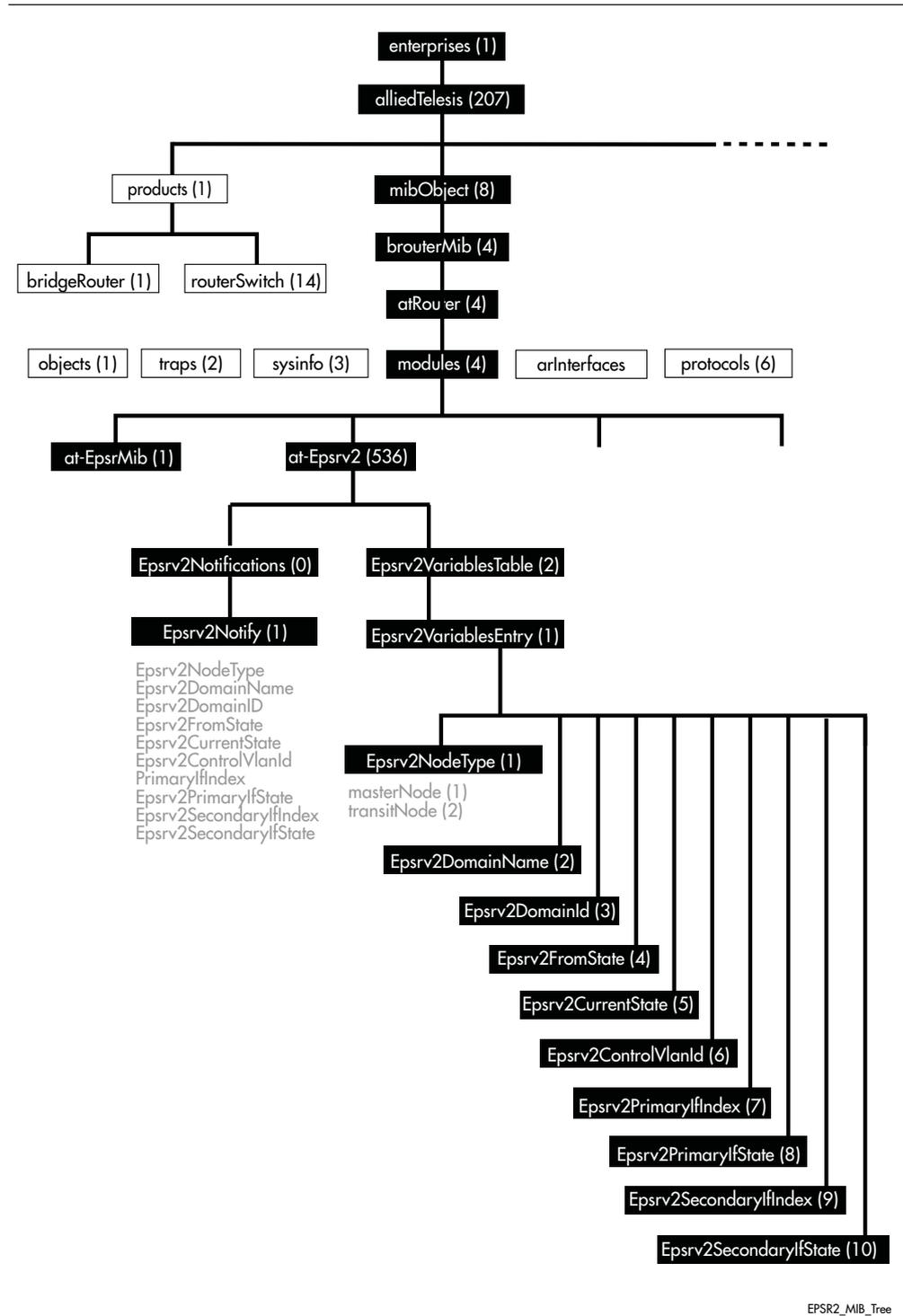
Table 68-8: Objects defined in AT-ENVMONV2-MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUTable { atEnvMonv2 9 } | Table of information about external power supply status monitored by environment monitoring hardware, indexed by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusStackMemberId 2. atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusBoardIndex 3. atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusIndex |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStatusTable 1 } | |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUStackMemberId { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry 1 } | Index of the stack member hosting this external power supply. |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUBoardIndex { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry 2 } | Index of the board hosting this external power supply in the board table. |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUIndex { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry 3 } | The numeric identifier of this external power supply on its host board. |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUDescription { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry 4 } | The description of this external power supply. |
| atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUState { atEnvMonv2ExternalPSUEntry 5 } | Current state of the output contact - good (1) or failed (2). |

AT-EPSRV2-MIB

The EPSRV2 Group-MIB defines objects for managing Epsrv2 objects and triggers (Figure 68-4, Table). Objects in this group have the object identifier Epsrv2 {{ modules 536 }}.

Figure 68-4: The AT-EPSRV2 MIB sub-tree



atEpsrv2Objects Defined in the AT-EPSRV2 MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| { at-Epsrv2 } | { modules 536 } | The root of the Epsrv2 object sub tree. |
| { atEpsrv2Notifications } | { at-Epsrv2 0 } | |
| { atEpsrv2Notify } | { atEpsrv2Notifications 1 } | EPSR Master/Transit node state transition trap. Note that there is a one to one relationship between nodes and domains. |
| { Epsrv2NodeType } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 1 } | The EPSR node type: either master or transit. |
| { atEpsrv2DomainName } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 2 } | The name of the EPSR domain. |
| { atEpsrv2DomainID } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 3 } | The ID of the EPSR domain. |
| { Epsrv2FromState } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 4 } | The previous state of the EPSR domain |
| { Epsrv2Current State } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 5 } | The current state of the EPSR domain. |
| { Epsrv2ControlVlanId } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 6 } | The VLAN identifier for the control VLAN. |
| { Epsrv2PrimaryIfIndex } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 7 } | The IfIndex of the primary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2PrimaryIfState } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 8 } | The current state of the primary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2SecondaryIfIndex } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 9 } | The IfIndex of the secondary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2SecondaryIfState } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 10 } | The state of the secondary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2VariablesTable } | { at-Epsrv2 2 } | The enterprise Epsrv2VariablesTable. |
| { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry } | { atEpsrv2VariablesTable 1 } | Contains entries within the enterprise atEpsrv2VariablesTable. |
| { atEpsrv2NodeType } | { atEpsrv2VariablesEntry 1 } | The EPSR domain node type: either 1. master (1) 2. transit (2) |
| { atEpsrv2DomainName } | { Epsrv2NodeType 2 } | The name of the EPSR domain. |
| { atEpsrv2DomainID } | { Epsrv2NodeType 3 } | The ID of the EPSR domain. |
| { atEpsrv2FromState } | { Epsrv2NodeType 4 } | The previous state of the EPSR domain |
| { atEpsrv2Current State } | { Epsrv2NodeType 5 } | The current state of the EPSR domain. |
| { atEpsrv2ControlVlanId } | { Epsrv2NodeType 6 } | The VLAN identifier for the control VLAN. |
| { Epsrv2PrimaryIfIndex } | { Epsrv2NodeType 7 } | The IfIndex of the primary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2PrimaryIfState } | { Epsrv2NodeType 8 } | The current state of the primary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2SecondaryIfIndex } | { Epsrv2NodeType 9 } | The IfIndex of the secondary interface. |
| { atEpsrv2SecondaryIfState } | { Epsrv2NodeType 10 } | The state of the secondary interface. |
| TEXTUAL CONVENTIONS | | |
| { atEpsrv2NodeState } | | The trap states that can be advertised for an EPSR domain node. The following states are defined: 1. idle (1) 2. complete (2) 3. failed (3) 4. linksUp (4) 5. linksDown (5) 6. preForward (6) 7. unknown (7) |

atEpsrv2Objects Defined in the AT-EPSRV2 MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---|
| { atEpsrv2InterfaceState } | | The trap states that can be advertised for an EPSR interface. The following states are defined: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. unknown (1)2. down (2)3. blocked (3)4. forward (4) |

AT-FILEv2-MIB

This MIB contains objects for displaying and managing file content of Flash, SD cards and NVS on local and stacked devices, and copying, moving and deleting files from local, stacked and remote sources ([Table 68-9](#)).

This MIB contains objects for displaying and managing file content of Flash and NVS, and copying, moving and deleting files from local and remote sources ([Table 68-9](#)).

The objects reside in the module atFilev2 { modules 600 }, organized in the following groups:

- The file operation devices - object for various devices supported for file operations
- The SD card table - information about the SD Cards configured on the device
- The File Info Table - information about all files, including pathnames, that are present on the device

The procedure in [“Copy a File to or from a TFTP Server” on page 66.20](#) shows how to use these MIB objects to upgrade to a new software version and boot configuration file.

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| atFilev2 | { modules 600 } | MIB containing objects for listing and managing files. |
| atFilev2FileOperation | { atFilev2 3 } | Collection of file operation objects available for configuration, to enable copying, moving and deleting files. |
| atFilev2SourceStackID | { atFilev2Operation 1 } | Specifies the Stack ID of the source file. Set an integer corresponding to the stack ID of the stack member to use as the source. For devices that are not capable of being stacked, set with the value 1. This value is ignored if the source device is set to TFTP. |
| atFilev2SourceDevice | { atFilev2Operation 2 } | <p>Specifies the source device for the file to be copied. Valid values are 1 to 5. Set a value that corresponds with the various devices, as below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - Flash - default ■ 2 - Card - not supported ■ 3 - NVS ■ 4 - TFTP ■ 5 - USB - not supported <p>For copying files, you may use any combination of devices for the source and destination, except for copying from TFTP to TFTP.</p> <p>For moving files you cannot use TFTP as source or destination.</p> <p>For deleting files, the source cannot be TFTP.</p> <p>You must fully configure all required parameters before an operation can commence. Where a TFTP operation is configured, an IP address must also be set via atFilev2TftpIPAddr.</p> <p>To copy a file from TFTP to Flash, use 4 for source and 1 for destination.</p> |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| atFilev2SourceFilename | { atFilev2Operation 3 } | <p>Specifies the filename of the source file to copy, move or delete. Include any path as required, but the storage type is not necessary.</p> <p>For example, to copy the file <code>latest.cfg</code> from the <code>backupconfigs/routers</code> directory on the TFTP server, you would set:</p> <pre>backupconfigs/routers/latest.cfg</pre> |
| atFilev2DestinationStackID | { atFilev2Operation 4 } | <p>Specifies the Stack ID for the destination file. For devices that are not capable of being stacked, set with the value 1. This value is ignored if the destination device is set to TFTP, or if a deletion operation is carried out.</p> |
| atFilev2DestinationDevice | { atFilev2Operation 5 } | <p>Specifies the destination device for the files to be copied into. Valid values are 1 to 5. Set a value that corresponds with the various devices, as below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - Flash - default ■ 2 - Card - not supported ■ 3 - NVS ■ 4 - TFTP ■ 5 - USB - not supported <p>For copying files, you may use any combination of devices for the source and destination, except for copying from TFTP to TFTP.</p> <p>For moving files you cannot use TFTP as source or destination.</p> <p>For deleting files, this object is ignored.</p> <p>You must fully configure all required parameters before an operation can commence. Where a TFTP operation is configured, an IP address must also be set via <code>atFilev2TftpIPAddr</code>.</p> <p>To copy a file from TFTP to Flash, use 4 for source and 1 for destination.</p> |
| atFilev2DestinationFilename | { atFilev2Operation 6 } | <p>Specifies the destination filename of the file to be copied or moved. Include any path as required, but the storage type is not necessary.</p> <p>The destination filename does not need to be the same as the source filename, and this object is ignored for file deletion operations.</p> <p>For example, to copy a release file from the TFTP server to the backup release directory on Flash, you would set:</p> <pre>backuprelease/latest.rel</pre> <p>Note: If the destination is set to Flash, card or NVS, any file at the destination that shares the destination filename will be overwritten by a move or copy operation.</p> |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| atFilev2CopyBegin | { atFilev2Operation 7 } | <p>Represents the status of the copy file operation, in the form of octet string.</p> <p>A read on this object can return several possible values, depending on the current status of the system and the various file operation objects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ idle - There is no file operation in progress and all required objects have been set correctly. Setting a '1' to this object will begin the file copy. ■ Error codes: [1-7] - A copy operation cannot be started until these errors are resolved. See below for key. ■ [action]ing x [--> y] - A file operation is currently in progress. You cannot start another operation while the object is returning this value. ■ [action] x [--> y] success - The last copy, move or delete operation was successfully completed. ■ [action] x [--> y] failure: [err] - The last copy, move or delete operation failed, with the error message attached. Common failures include lack of space on the destination file system, incorrect source file names or communication errors with remote services. <p>Upon reading a success or failure message, the message will be cleared and the next read will result in either an 'idle' message or an 'Error codes' message if not all required objects have been correctly set. If the read returned 'idle', a new file operation can now be started.</p> <p>Following are possible values returned as Error codes for file copy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - atFilev2SourceDevice has not been set ■ 2 - atFilev2SourceFilename has not been set ■ 3 - atFilev2DestinationDevice has not been set ■ 4 - atFilev2DestinationFilename has not been set ■ 5 - atFilev2SourceDevice and atFilev2DestinationDevice are both set to TFTP ■ 6 - the combination of source device, stackID and filename is the same as the destination device, stackID and filename (i.e. it is not valid to copy a file onto itself). ■ 7 - TFTP IP address has not been set and TFTP has been set for one of the devices <p>Provided all above requirements are met, immediately upon executing the SNMP set, the device will indicate that it was a success. The actual file copy itself will be started and continue on the device until it has completed. For large files, operations can take several minutes to complete. Subsequent reads of the object will return one of messages shown in the first table, to allow for tracking of the progress of the copy operation.</p> |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| atFilev2MoveBegin | { atFilev2Operation 8 } | <p>Represents the status of the move file operation, in the form of octet string.</p> <p>A read on this object can return several possible values, depending on the current status of the system and the various file operation objects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ idle - There is no file operation in progress and all required objects have been set correctly. Setting a '1' to this object will begin the file move. ■ Error codes: [1-6] - A move operation cannot be started until these errors are resolved. See below for key. ■ [action]ing x [--> y] - A file operation is currently in progress. You cannot start another operation while the object is returning this value. ■ [action] x [--> y] success - The last copy, move or delete operation was successfully completed. ■ [action] x [--> y] failure: [err] - The last copy, move or delete operation failed, with the error message attached. Common failures include lack of space on the destination file system, incorrect source file names or communication errors with remote services. <p>Upon reading a success or failure message, the message will be cleared and the next read will result in either an 'idle' message or an 'Error codes' message if not all required objects have been correctly set. If the read returned 'idle', a new file operation can now be started.</p> <p>Following are possible values returned as Error codes for file move:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - atFilev2SourceDevice has not been set ■ 2 - atFilev2SourceFilename has not been set ■ 3 - atFilev2DestinationDevice has not been set ■ 4 - atFilev2DestinationFilename has not been set ■ 5 - either atFilev2SourceDevice or atFilev2DestinationDevice are set to TFTP ■ 6 - the combination of source device, stackID and filename is the same as the destination device, stackID and filename (i.e. it is not valid to move a file onto itself). <p>Provided all above requirements are met, immediately upon executing the SNMP set, the device will indicate that it was a success. The actual file move itself will be started and continue on the device until it has completed. For large files, operations can take several minutes to complete. Subsequent reads of the object will return one of messages shown in the first table, to allow for tracking of the progress of the move operation.</p> |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------------|---|
| atFilev2DeleteBegin | { atFilev2Operation 9 } | <p>Represents the status of the delete file operation, in the form of octet string.</p> <p>A read on this object can return several possible values, depending on the current status of the system and the various file operation objects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ idle - There is no file operation in progress and all required objects have been set correctly. Setting a '1' to this object will begin the file deletion. ■ Error codes: [1-3] - A delete operation cannot be started until these errors are resolved. See below for key. ■ [action]ing x [--> y] - A file operation is currently in progress. You cannot start another operation while the object is returning this value. ■ [action] x [--> y] success - The last copy, move or delete operation was successfully completed. ■ [action] x [--> y] failure: [err] - The last copy, move or delete operation failed, with the error message attached. Common failures include lack of space on the destination file system, incorrect source file names or communication errors with remote services. <p>Upon reading a success or failure message, the message will be cleared and the next read will result in either an 'idle' message or an 'Error codes' message if not all required objects have been correctly set. If the read returned 'idle', a new file operation can be started.</p> <p>File deletion operations ignore the values set in the atFilev2DestinationStackID, atFilev2DestinationDevice and atFilev2DestinationFilename objects.</p> <p>The file deletion operation is equivalent to the CLI 'delete force [file]' command, so it is possible to delete any normally-protected system files, such as the currently configured boot release.</p> <p>Following are possible values returned as Error codes for file move:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - atFilev2SourceDevice has not been set ■ 2 - atFilev2SourceFilename has not been set ■ 3 - atFilev2SourceDevicehas not been set to TFTP <p>Provided all above requirements are met, immediately upon executing the SNMP set, the device will indicate that it was a success. The actual file move itself will be started and continue on the device until it has completed. For large files, operations can take several minutes to complete. Subsequent reads of the object will return one of messages shown in the first table, to allow for tracking of the progress of the move operation.</p> |
| atFilev2Flash_1 | { atFilev2Operation 10 } | Represents the Flash operation device object |
| atFilev2Card_2 | { atFilev2Operation 11 } | Represents the Card operation device object |
| atFilev2Nvs_3 | { atFilev2Operation 12 } | Represents the NVS operation device object |
| atFilev2Tftp_4 | { atFilev2Operation 13 } | Represents the TFTP operation device object |
| atFilev2TftpIPAddr | { atFilev2Tftp_4 1 } | The IP address of the TFTP server that is to be used for the file copy process. This IP Address needs to be reachable from the device, or the file copy will fail. |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| atFilev2SDcardTable | { atFilev2 4 } | The SD Card table, containing information related to SD Cards. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> atFilev2SDcardStackMemberId |
| atFilev2SDcardEntry | { atFilev2SDcardTable 1 } | Data pertaining to an SD Card instance. |
| atFilev2SDcardPresence | { atFilev2SDcardEntry 2 } | This object indicates whether or not an SD Card is inserted into a slot. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> notPresent (1) present (2) |
| atFilev2InfoEntry | { atFilev2InfoTable 1 } | An entry in the list of files, containing information about a single file. |
| atFilev2InfoFilepath | { atFilev2InfoEntry 1 } | The full path and name of the file. Files are sorted in alphabetical order and any filepath that is longer than 112 characters will not be displayed due to SNMP Object Identifier length limitations. |
| atFilev2InfoFileSize | { atFilev2InfoEntry 2 } | The size of the file in bytes. |
| atFilev2InfoFileCreationTime | { atFilev2InfoEntry 3 } | File creation time in the form <MMM DD YYYY HH:MM:SS>. For example, Sep 7 2008 06:07:54. |
| atFilev2InfoFileIsDirectory | { atFilev2InfoEntry 4 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the entry is a directory, or FALSE if it is not. |
| atFilev2InfoFileIsReadable | { atFilev2InfoEntry 5 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the file is readable, or FALSE if it is not. |
| atFilev2InfoFileIsWritable | { atFilev2InfoEntry 6 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the file is writable, or FALSE if it is not. |
| atFilev2InfoFileIsExecutable | { atFilev2InfoEntry 7 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the file is executable, or FALSE if it is not. |
| atFilev2FileViewerStackId | atFilev2FileViewer 1 | The stack ID of the stack member for which files will be displayed in the FileViewer table. For devices that are not capable of being stacked, this variable will always read as 1, and will cause an error on being written to with any value other than 1. Write this variable with the stack ID of the stack member for which a view of files is required. If the stack member doesn't exist, an error will be returned. For a chassis switch, it corresponds to the card ID. Note that the other variables specifying the files to view will not be altered by changing the stack ID, which means that the file view table could be empty if a non-existent device or path has been referenced previously. |

Table 68-9: Objects defined in AT-FILEv2-MIB(cont.)

| Object(cont.) | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| atFilev2FileViewerDevice | atFilev2FileViewer 2 | <p>The file system device for which files will be displayed in the FileViewer table. The values supported for this variable are identical to the values for other variables in the MIB, although not all values will actually result in the display of files.</p> <p>The different devices and whether they will result in the display of files are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - Flash - Onboard Flash - supported ■ 2 - Card - Removable SD card - supported ■ 3 - NVS - Onboard battery backed RAM - supported ■ 4 - FTP - not supported ■ 5 - USB - Removable USB media - supported <p>Setting this variable to a unsupported value will result in an error, but setting to a value that is supported but on a device that doesn't contain that type of device will not. However, no files will be displayed in the File Viewer table in this case.</p> |
| atFilev2FileViewerCurrentPath | atFilev2FileViewer 3 | <p>The file system path for which files will be displayed in the FileViewer table. This path will always read as a full pathname starting with the '/' character.</p> <p>Setting this variable will specify a new directory for which files will be displayed. The path specified must be the full path, relative setting of path does not work. Only paths with invalid characters in them will cause an error, paths specifying non-existent directories will be accepted, but no files will be displayed in the File Viewer table in this case.</p> |
| atFilev2FileViewerTable | atFilev2FileViewer 4 | <p>A list of all files, not including pathnames, that are present on the device specified by atFilev2FileViewerStackId and atFilev2FileViewerDevice, in the path specified by atFilev2FileViewerCurrentPath.</p> <p>Hidden and system files are not displayed.</p> <p>If the Stack ID, device and path are invalid (the path is for a non-existent directory), the table will be empty. This will allow an MIB walk through the table even though the setup parameters are incorrect.</p> |
| atFilev2FileViewerEntry | atFilev2FileViewerTable 1 | An entry in the list of files, containing information about a single file. |
| atFilev2FileViewerName | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 1 | The name of the file. Files are sorted in alphabetical order, and any name that is longer than 112 characters will not be displayed due to SNMP OID length limitations. |
| atFilev2FileViewerSize | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 2 | The size of the file in bytes. |
| atFilev2FileViewerCreationTime | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 3 | File creation time in the form <MMM DD YYYY HH:MM:SS>. For example, Sep 7 2008 06:07:54. |
| atFilev2FileViewerIsDirectory | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 4 | Returns TRUE if the entry is a directory, FALSE otherwise. |
| atFilev2FileViewerIsReadable | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 5 | Returns TRUE if the file is readable, FALSE otherwise. |
| atFilev2FileViewerIsWritable | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 6 | Returns TRUE if the file is writable, FALSE otherwise. |
| atFilev2FileViewerIsExecutable | atFilev2FileViewerEntry 7 | Returns TRUE if the file is executable, FALSE otherwise. |

AT-IP-MIB

This MIB contains objects for Allied Telesis specific IP address management (**Table 68-10**). The objects reside in the module atIpMib { modules 602 }.

Table 68-10: Objects defined in AT-IP-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------|---|
| atIpMib | { modules 602 } | MIB containing objects for IP addressing management. |
| AtIpAddressAssignmentType | Textual Convention | Object containing conditional coded values for the IP address assignment type being applied to the interface, referred to by objects in this MIB. The possible values and explanation are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> notSet (0) - indicates that the IP address assignment type has not yet been configured. This value can only ever be read. primary (1) - indicates that the address is a primary IP address; only one primary address is allowed per interface. secondary (2) - indicates that the address is a secondary IP address; any number of secondary IP addresses may be applied |
| AtIpAddressTable | { atIpMib 1 } | A table containing mappings between primary or secondary IP addresses, and the interfaces they are assigned to. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> atIpAddressAddrType atIpAddressAddr |
| AtIpAddressEntry | { AtIpAddressTable 1 } | Information about the address mapping for a particular interface. |
| atIpAddressAddrType | { AtIpAddressEntry 1 } | An indication of the IP version of 'atIpAddressAddr' |
| atIpAddressAddr | { AtIpAddressEntry 2 } | The IP address to which this entry's addressing information pertains. The address type of this object is specified in object 'atIpAddressAddrType'. |
| atIpAddressPrefixLen | { AtIpAddressEntry 3 } | An integer, specifying the prefix length of the IP address represented by this entry. |
| atIpAddressLabel | { AtIpAddressEntry 4 } | The name assigned to the IP address represented by this entry. |
| atIpAddressIfIndex | { AtIpAddressEntry 5 } | The index value that uniquely identifies the interface to which this entry is applicable. The interface identified by a particular value of this index corresponds to the interface identified by the same value of the IF-MIB's ifIndex. |
| atIpAddressAssignmentType | { AtIpAddressEntry 6 } | The IP address assignment type for this entry (primary or secondary), as described in the Textual Convention 'AtIpAddressAssignmentType'. |

Table 68-10: Objects defined in AT-IP-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| atIpAddressRowStatus | { AtIpAddressEntry 7 } | <p>The current status of the IP address entry. The following values may be returned when reading this object:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ active (1) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> « The IP address is currently mapped to an interface and is valid. ■ notReady (3) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> « The IP address is currently partially configured and is not mapped to an interface. <p>The following values may be written to this object:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ active (1) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> « An attempt will be made to map the IP address to the configured interface. ■ createAndWait (5) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> « An attempt will be made to create a new IP address entry. ■ destroy (6) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> « The IP address setting will be removed from the device. <p>An entry cannot be made active until its atIpAddressPrefixLen, atIpAddressIfIndex and atIpAddressAssignmentType objects have been set to valid values.</p> |

AT-LICENSE-MIB

The AT-LICENSE-MIB contains objects for managing the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System software licenses: listing applied software licenses, adding new licenses and deleting existing licenses (**Table 68-11**). The objects reside in the module license { sysinfo 22 }, organized in the following groups:

- Base Software License Table - a table containing the installed base software licenses on the device
- Installed Software License Table - a list of installed software licenses; used also to remove software license from the device
- Available Software Features Table
- LicenseNew - Objects used to install a new license

Table 68-11: Objects defined in AT-LICENSE-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------|---|
| license | { sysinfo 22 } | MIB containing objects for listing applied software licenses, adding new licenses, and deleting existing licenses. |
| baseLicenseTable | { license 1 } | Table containing information about base software licenses installed on a device. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ baseLicenseStkId |
| baseLicenseEntry | { baseLicenseTable 1 } | Information about a single license installed on the device. |
| baseLicenseName | { baseLicenseEntry 2 } | The name of the base license. |
| baseLicenseQuantity | { baseLicenseEntry 3 } | The number of licenses issued for this entry. |
| baseLicenseType | { baseLicenseEntry 4 } | The type of base license issued. |
| baseLicenseIssueDate | { baseLicenseEntry 5 } | The date of issue of the base license. |
| baseLicenseExpiryDate | { baseLicenseEntry 6 } | The expiry date of the base license. |
| baseLicenseFeatures | { baseLicenseEntry 7 } | The feature set that this license enables, in the format of an octet string. Each bit in the returned octet string represents a particular feature that can be license-enabled. The bit position within the string maps to the feature entry with the same index, in licenseFeatureTable. A binary '1' indicates that the feature is included in the license; a binary '0' indicates that the feature is not included in the license. |
| licenseTable | { license 2 } | Table containing information about software licenses installed on the device. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ licenseIndex |
| licenseEntry | { licenseTable 1 } | Information about a single installed software license on the device. |
| licenseIndex | { licenseEntry 2 } | The index number of the license entry. |
| licenseName | { licenseEntry 3 } | The name of the license. |
| licenseCustomer | { licenseEntry 4 } | The name of the customer of the license. |
| licenseQuantity | { licenseEntry 5 } | The number of licenses issued for this entry. |
| licenseType | { licenseEntry 6 } | The type of license issued. |
| licenseIssueDate | { licenseEntry 7 } | The date of issue of the license. |
| licenseExpiryDate | { licenseEntry 8 } | The expiry date of the license. |

Table 68-11: Objects defined in AT-LICENSE-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| licenseFeatures | { licenseEntry 9 } | The feature set that this license enables, in the format of octet string. Each bit in the returned octet string represents a particular feature that can be license-enabled. The bit position within the string maps to the feature entry with the same index, in licenseFeatureTable. A binary '1' indicates that the feature is included in the license; a binary '0' indicates that the feature is not included in the license. |
| licenseRowStatus | { licenseEntry 10 } | The current status of the license. The following values may be returned when reading this object: 1. active (1) - the license is currently installed and valid 2. notInService (2) - the license has expired or is invalid The following value may be written to this object: destroy (6) - the license will be removed from the device; this may result in some features being disabled. |
| licenseFeatureTable | { license 3 } | Table containing all available Software Features. A feature must be license-enabled to be utilized on the device. |
| licenseFeatureEntry | { licenseFeatureTable 1 } | Information about a single feature that must be license-enabled in order to be utilized on the device. |
| licenseFeatureIndex | { licenseFeatureEntry 1 } | The index number of the feature which must be license-enabled. |
| licenseFeatureName | { licenseFeatureEntry 2 } | The name of the feature under licensing control. |
| licenseNew | { license 4 } | Group of objects available for updates, used when installing a new software license on the device. |
| licenseNewName | { licenseNew 2 } | The name of the new license to be installed. |
| licenseNewKey | { licenseNew 3 } | The key for the new license to be installed. |
| licenseNewInstall | { licenseNew 4 } | Used to install new licenses. Values can be: 1. true (1) 2. false (2) To commence installation, a valid license name and key must first have been set via the licenseNewName and licenseNewKey respectively. This object should then be set to the value true (1). If either the license name or key is invalid, the write operation will fail. Once installed, the software modules affected by any newly enabled features will automatically be restarted. When read, the object will always return the value false (2). |
| licenseNewInstallStatus | { licenseNew 5 } | The current status of the last license installation request. One of the following values is returned when reading this object: ■ idle (1) ■ processing (2) ■ success (3) ■ failed (4) |

AT-LOG-MIB

The AT Log MIB contains objects for listing log entries from the buffered and permanent logs (**Table 68-12**). The objects reside in the module log { modules 601 }, organized in the following groups:

- Log Table - objects containing the information from log messages issued by the system, ordered from oldest to newest entry
- Log Options - contains objects used to set up the log options configuration

Table 68-12: Objects defined in AT-LOG-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-------------|-------------------|--|
| log | { modules 601 } | MIB containing objects for listing log entries from the buffered and permanent logs. |
| logTable | { log 1 } | A list of log entries from the source specified in the 'logSource' object. The list is ordered from oldest entry to newest entry. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ logIndex |
| logEntry | { logTable 1 } | Information about a single log entry, from the source specified in the 'logSource' object. |
| logIndex | { logEntry 1 } | An index integer. This index is not directly tied to any specific log entry. Over time, the log will grow larger and eventually older entries will be removed from the log. |
| logDate | { logEntry 2 } | The date of the log entry. Data resides in the format octet string, in the form YYYY MMM DD, e.g. 2008 Oct 9. |
| logTime | { logEntry 3 } | The time of the log entry. Data resides in the format octet string, in the form HH:MM:SS, e.g. 07:15:04. |
| logFacility | { logEntry 4 } | The syslog facility that generated the log entry, in the format octet string. See the reference manual for more information. |
| logSeverity | { logEntry 5 } | The severity level of the log entry, in the format octet string. Severities are given below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ emerg Emergency, system is unusable ■ alert Action must be taken immediately ■ crit Critical conditions ■ errr Error conditions ■ warning Warning conditions ■ notice Normal, but significant, conditions ■ info Informational messages ■ debug Debug-level messages |
| logProgram | { logEntry 6 } | The program that generated the log entry, in the format octet string. See the reference manual for more information. |
| logMessage | { logEntry 7 } | The message of the log entry, in the format octet string. |
| logOptions | { log 2 } | Contains objects used to set up the required log options configuration. |

Table 68-12: Objects defined in AT-LOG-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|--|
| logSource | { logOptions 1 } | <p>An integer indicating the source from which the log entries are retrieved. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 - Buffered log (default) ■ 2 - Permanent log. <p>This information is used when retrieving the logTable objects, and also specifies the log to be cleared when the 'clearLog' object is set.</p> |
| logAll | { logOptions 2 } | <p>An integer indicating whether to display all log entries in the logTable objects, or not. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 0 - to display only the most recent log messages. This is the default ■ 1 - to show all available log entries. <p>Note: Choosing to display all log entries may result in delays of several seconds when accessing the logTable objects.</p> |
| clearLog | { logOptions 3 } | <p>An integer indicating whether to clear the log that is specified by the 'logSource' object. Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 0 - do not clear log ■ 1 - clear log |

AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB

The atLoopProtect-MIB (**Figure 68-5, Table 68-13**) defines objects for managing Loop Protection objects and triggers. Objects in this group have the object identifier atLoopProtect ({ modules 4 }).

Figure 68-5: The ATLoopProtect MIB Sub-tree

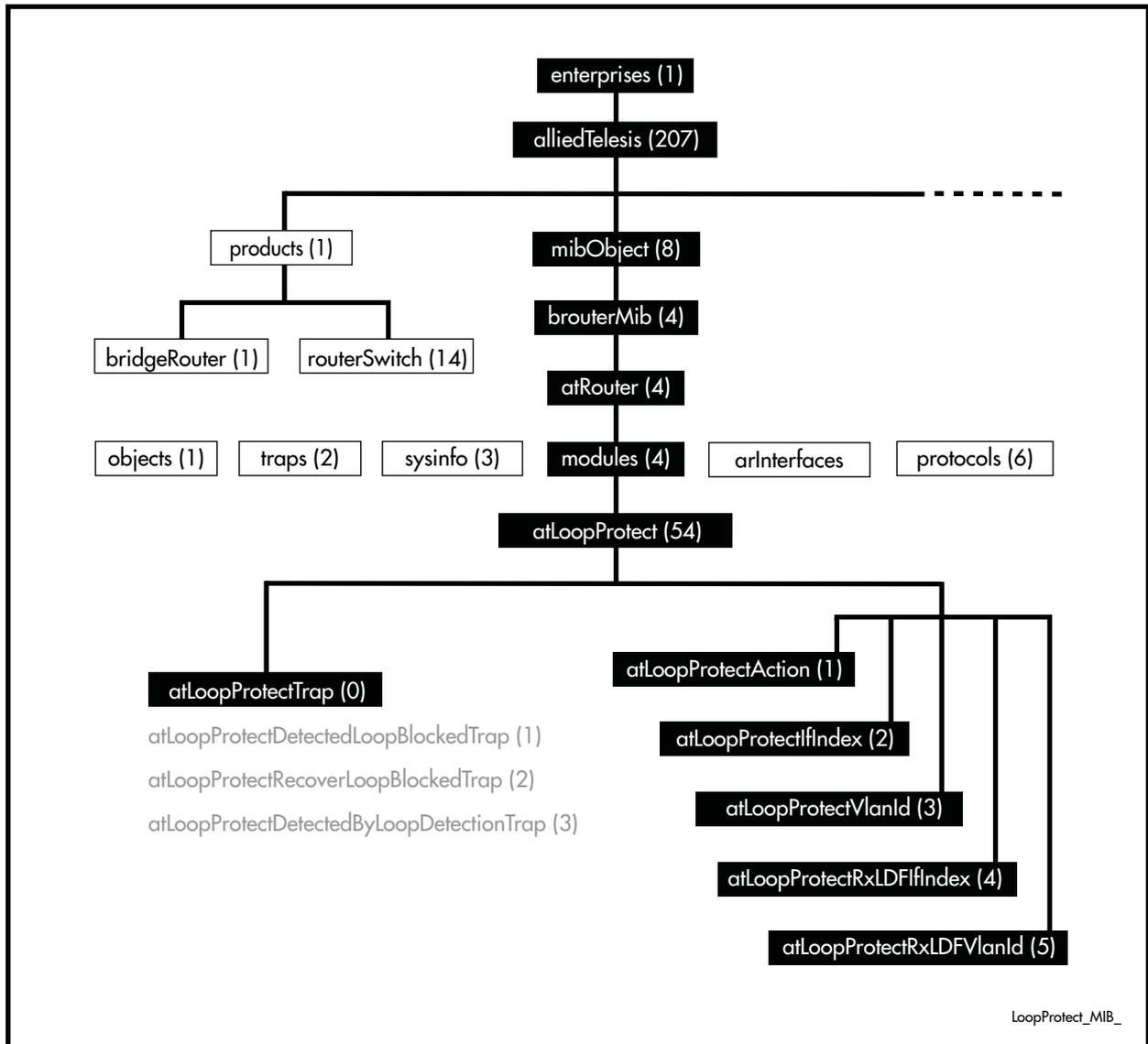


Table 68-13: Objects Defined in the AT-Loop Protect MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------|--|
| { atLoopProtect } | { modules 54 } | The root of the Loop Protect object sub tree. |
| { atLoopProtectTrap } | { atLoopProtect0 } | The Loop Protection node state transition trap. List of traps (notifications) generated for Loop Protection. |

Table 68-13: Objects Defined in the AT-Loop Protect MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--|------------------------|---|
| { atLoopProtectDetectedLoopBlockedTrap } | { atLoopProtectTrap1 } | Notification generated when the Loop Protection feature blocks an interface with a loop. The following bindings are associated with this trap: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atLoopProtectIfIndex 2. atLoopProtectVlanId 3. atLoopProtectAction |
| { atLoopProtectRecoverLoopBlockedTrap } | { atLoopProtectTrap2 } | Notification generated when the Loop Protection feature restores a blocked interface back to normal operation. The following bindings are associated with this trap: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atLoopProtectIfIndex 2. atLoopProtectVlanId 3. atLoopProtectAction |
| { atLoopProtectDetectedByLoopDetectionTrap } | { atLoopProtectTrap3 } | Notification generated when the Loop Protection feature detects a loop by Loop Detection method. The following bindings are associated with this trap: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atLoopProtectIfIndex 2. atLoopProtectVlanId 3. atLoopProtectRxLDFIfIndex 4. atLoopProtectRxLDFVlanId |
| { atLoopProtectAction } | { atLoopProtect1 } | The Action for the Loop Protection feature. The following values are defined: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. atLoopProtectAction-LearnDisable (0) 2. atLoopProtectAction-LearnEnable (1) 3. atLoopProtectAction-PortDisable (2) 4. atLoopProtectAction-PortEnable (3) 5. atLoopProtectAction-LinkDown (4) 6. atLoopProtectAction-LinkUp (5) 7. atLoopProtectAction-VlanDisable (6) 8. atLoopProtectAction-VlanEnable (7) |
| { atLoopProtectIfIndex } | { atLoopProtect2 } | The interface on which the loop was detected. |
| { atLoopProtectVlanId } | { atLoopProtect3 } | The VLAN ID on which the loop was detected. |
| { atLoopProtectRxLDFIfIndex } | { atLoopProtect4 } | The interface on which the loop detection frame was received. |
| { atLoopProtectRxLDFVlanId } | { atLoopProtect5 } | The VLAN ID on which the loop detection frame was received. |

AT-MIBVERSION-MIB

The AT-MIBVERSION-MIB contains an object to display the last software release that contained changes to the supported AT Enterprise MIB definition files ([Table 68-14](#)). Objects in this group have the object identifier atMibsetVersion ({ sysinfo 15 }).

Table 68-14: Object defined in AT-MIBVERSION-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------|-------------------|--|
| atMibVersion | { sysinfo 15 } | This object returns a five digit integer which indicates the last software release that contained changes to the supported AT Enterprise MIB definition files. For example, If the currently loaded software release on the device is 5.3.1-0.3 but the Enterprise MIBs have not changed since 5.3.1-0.1, then the value returned will be 53101. |

AT-NTP-MIB

This MIB contains objects for managing the Allied Telesis Network Time Protocol (NTP) configuration (**Table 68-15**). The objects reside in the module atNtp { modules 502 }, organized in the following groups:

- NTP Peer/Server Table - a table containing information on the Network Time Protocol (NTP) peers or server configurations in the system.
- Associations Table - a list of installed software; used also to remove software from the device.
- Status Table - Objects in this group are not supported.

Table 68-15: Objects defined in AT-NTP-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------|----------------------|---|
| atNtp | { modules 502 } | MIB containing objects for configuring NTP. |
| atNtpPeerIndexNext | { atNtp 6 } | The next available index number to be used for object 'atNtpPeerIndex'. |
| atNtpPeerTable | { atNtp 7 } | Table containing information on the Network Time Protocol (NTP) peers or server configurations in the system. Indexed by: ■ atNtpPeerIndex |
| atNtpPeerEntry | { atNtpPeerTable 1 } | Information about a single NTP server or peer configuration. |
| atNtpPeerIndex | { atNtpPeerEntry 1 } | The index number corresponding to a particular NTP server or peer configuration in the system. To create a new entry, the value of this object should be the same as that of the value of atNtpPeerIndexNext object, otherwise the entry creation will fail. |
| atNtpPeerNameAddr | { atNtpPeerEntry 2 } | The host name, or the IP address of the NTP peer. When a new row (entry) is created, this object is set with a default of '0.0.0.0', and the management application should change it to a desired value by using a SET operation. |
| atNtpPeerMode | { atNtpPeerEntry 3 } | The mode of the peer. Can be one of the following: ■ server (1) ■ peer (2) - default |
| atNtpPeerPreference | { atNtpPeerEntry 4 } | The values in this object specifies whether this peer is the preferred one. Valid values are 0 to 2: ■ 0 - unknown - default ■ 1 - not preferred ■ 2 - preferred When the value is 'not preferred' (1) NTP chooses the peer with which to synchronize the time on the local system. If the object is set to 'preferred' (2) NTP will choose the corresponding peer to synchronize the time with. |

Table 68-15: Objects defined in AT-NTP-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| atNtpPeerVersion | { atNtpPeerEntry 5 } | The NTP version the peer supports. Can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 0 - unknown - default ■ 1 - version 1 ■ 2 - version 2 ■ 3 - version 3 ■ 4 - version 4 |
| atNtpPeerKeyNumber | { atNtpPeerEntry 6 } | The authentication key number. Default number is 0. |
| atNtpPeerRow Status | { atNtpPeerEntry 7 } | The current status of this peer entry. The following values may be returned when reading this object: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ active (1) - this value is returned on reading of this entry. ■ createAndGo (4) - this value is set by the management application when creating a new entry ■ destroy (6) - value set by the management application when deleting the entry. When an entry is deleted, all subsequent entries in the table will be re-indexed. |
| atNtpAssociationTable | { atNtp 10 } | Table containing information on the Network Time Protocol (NTP) associations. Indexed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ atNtpAssociationIndex |
| atNtpAssociationEntry | { atNtpAssociationTable 1 } | Information about a single NTP server or peer configuration. |
| atNtpAssociationIndex | { atNtpAssociationEntry 1 } | The index number corresponding to a particular NTP server or peer configuration in the system. To create a new entry, the value of this object should be the same as that of the value of atNtpPeerIndexNext object, otherwise the entry creation will fail. |
| atNtpAssociationPeerAddr | { atNtpAssociationEntry 2 } | The host name, or the IP address of the NTP peer. When a new row (entry) is created, this object is set with a default of '0.0.0.0', and the management application should change it to a desired value by using a SET operation. |
| atNtpAssociationStatus | { atNtpAssociationEntry 3 } | The status of this association. Can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ master (syncd) ■ master (unsyncd) ■ selected ■ candidate ■ configured ■ unknown |
| atNtpAssociationConfigured | { atNtpAssociationEntry 4 } | The value in this object specifies whether the association is from configuration or not. Value can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ configured ■ dynamic |
| atNtpAssociationRefClkAddr | { atNtpAssociationEntry 5 } | The IP Address for the reference clock. |
| atNtpAssociationStratum | { atNtpAssociationEntry 6 } | The stratum of the peer clock. |

Table 68-15: Objects defined in AT-NTP-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| atNtpAssociationPoll | { atNtpAssociationEntry 7 } | The time between NTP requests from the device to the server, in seconds. |
| atNtpAssociationReach | { atNtpAssociationEntry 8 } | An integer that indicates the reachability status of the peer. |
| atNtpAssociationDelay | { atNtpAssociationEntry 9 } | The round trip delay between the device and the server. |
| atNtpAssociationOffset | { atNtpAssociationEntry 10 } | The difference between the device clock and the server clock. |
| atNtpAssociationDisp | { atNtpAssociationEntry 11 } | The lowest measure of error associated with peer offset, based on delay, in seconds. |
| atNtpStatus | { atNtp 11 } | Group of objects containing system status information. The objects in this group are not supported. |
| atNtpSysClockSync | { atNtpStatus 1 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysStratum | { atNtpStatus 2 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysReference | { atNtpStatus 3 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysFrequency | { atNtpStatus 4 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysPrecision | { atNtpStatus 5 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysRefTime | { atNtpStatus 6 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysClkOffset | { atNtpStatus 7 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysRootDelay | { atNtpStatus 8 } | Not supported. |
| atNtpSysRootDisp | { atNtpStatus 9 } | Not supported. |

AT-PRODUCTS-MIB

AT-PRODUCT-MIB defines object identifiers for Allied Telesis products. Objects in this MIB have the object identifier products ({ alliedTelesis 1 }) OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1.

Table 68-16 lists object identifiers for products supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System.

Table 68-16: Object identifiers for Allied Telesis products supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|
| products | { alliedTelesis 1 } | |
| swhub | { products 4 } | Subtree beneath which switching hubs are defined. |
| at_x200_GE52T | { swhub 181 } | x200-GE52T layer two switch |
| at_x200_GE28T | { swhub 182 } | x200-GE28T layer two switch |
| at_x210_9GT | { swhub 196 } | x210-9GT, 8xGigabit, 1xSFP/T |
| at_x210_16GT | { swhub 197 } | x210-16GT, 14xGigabit, 2xcombo SFP/T |
| at_x210_24GT | { swhub 198 } | x210-24GT, 20xGigabit, 4xcombo SFP/T |
| at_x310_26FT | { swhub 216 } | AT-x310-26FT layer two switch with 24 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| at_x310_50FT | { swhub 217 } | AT-x310-50FT layer two switch with 48 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, and four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| at_x310_26FP | { swhub 218 } | AT-x310-26FP layer two switch with 24 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports, plus PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| at_x310_50FP | { swhub 219 } | AT-x310-50FP layer two switch with 48 10/100 Base-T ports, two 10/100/1000 Base-T ports, four 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports, plus PSE function available on pins 1/2 and 3/6 (Mode A) of every copper port. |
| routerSwitch | { products 14 } | Subtree beneath which router and (non industrial) switch product MIB object IDs are assigned. |
| at_SwitchBladex908 | { routerSwitch 69 } | Switchblade x908 8 Slot Layer 3 Switch Chassis |
| at_x900_12XTS | { routerSwitch 70 } | AT-x900-12XT/S Advanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 12 x combo ports (10/100/1000BASE-T copper or SFP), 1 x 30Gbps expansion bay |
| at_x900_24XT | { routerSwitch 75 } | x900-24XT Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays |
| at_x900_24XS | { routerSwitch 76 } | x900-24XS Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays |
| at_x900_24XT_N | { routerSwitch 77 } | x900-24XT-N Enhanced Gigabit Layer 3+ Expandable Switch, 24 x 10/100/1000BASE-T copper ports (RJ-45 connectors), 2 x 20 Gigabit expansion bays, NEBS compliant |
| at_x600_24Ts | { routerSwitch 80 } | x600-24Ts Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| at_x600_24TsXP | { routerSwitch 81 } | x600-24Ts/XP Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x XFP ports |
| at_x600_48Ts | { routerSwitch 82 } | x600-48Ts Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 48 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP ports |

Table 68-16: Object identifiers for Allied Telesis products supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------|---|
| at_x600_48TsXP | {routerSwitch 83} | x600-48Ts/XP Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 48 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP ports, 2 x XFP ports |
| at_x600-24TsPoE | {routerSwitch 91} | x600-24Ts-POE Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| at_x600_24TPoEPlus | {routerSwitch 92} | x600-24Ts-POE+ Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE+ Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| x610_48Ts_X_POEPlus | {routerSwitch 93} | x610-48Ts/X-POE+ Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE+ Switch, 48 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports, 2 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| x610_48Ts_POEPlus | {routerSwitch 94} | x610-48Ts-POE+ Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE+ Switch, 48 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| x610_24Ts_X_POEPlus | {routerSwitch 95} | x610-24Ts/X-POE+ Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE+ Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| x610_24Ts_POEPlus | {routerSwitch 96} | x610-24Ts-POE+ Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet PoE+ Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T PoE+ ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| x610_48Ts_X | {routerSwitch 97} | x610-48Ts/X Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 48 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 2 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| x610_48Ts | {routerSwitch 98} | x610-48Ts Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| x610_24Ts_X | {routerSwitch 99} | x610-24Ts/X Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| x610_24Ts | {routerSwitch 100} | x610-24Ts Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x 1000BASE-T copper ports, 4 x SFP (combo) ports |
| x610_24SP_X | {routerSwitch 101} | x610-24SP/X Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch, 24 x SFP (combo) ports, 2 x SFP+ ports |
| x510_28GTX | {routerSwitch 109} | x510-28GTX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 24 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| x510_28GPX | {routerSwitch 110} | x510-28GPX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 24 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports with PoE, 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| x510_28GSX | {routerSwitch 111} | x510-28GSX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 24 x 100/1000 SFP ports and 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| x510_52GTX | {routerSwitch 112} | x510-52GTX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 48 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| x510_52GPX | {routerSwitch 113} | x510-52GPX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 48 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports with PoE, and 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| at-SBx8106 | {routerSwitch 114} | AT-SBx8106, SwitchBlade x8106 chassis. |
| x510DP_52GTX | {routerSwitch 116} | x510DP-52GTX Stackable Managed L2+/L3 Ethernet Switch with 48 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports and 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |

Table 68-16: Object identifiers for Allied Telesis products supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------|----------------------|--|
| IX5_28GPX | {routerSwitch 117} | IX5-28GPX Stackable Managed L2+ Ethernet Switch with 24 x 10/100/1000 Base-T ports with PoE, 4 x 10 Gb/s SFP+ ports. |
| industrialSwitch | { products 24 } | Subtree beneath which industrial switch product MIB object IDs are assigned. |
| at_IE200_6GT | {industrialSwitch 1} | IE200-6GT L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X). |
| at_IE200_6GP | {industrialSwitch 2} | IE200-6GP L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports (with 802.3at PoE+) and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X). |
| at_IE200_6GPW | {industrialSwitch 3} | IE200-6GPW L2+ managed industrial Switch with 4 x 10/100/1000T LAN ports (with 802.3at PoE+) and 2 x SFP uplinks (100/1000X) and 802.11bgn wireless. |

AT-RESOURCE-MIB

The AT-RESOURCE-MIB contains objects for displaying system hardware resource and host information ([Table 68-17](#)). Objects in this group have the object identifier rsc ({ sysinfo 21 }).

Table 68-17: Objects defined in AT-RESOURCE-MIB

| Object and OID | Description |
|---|---|
| resource { sysinfo 21 } | Contains objects for displaying system hardware resource and host information. |
| rscBoardTable { resource 1 } | Table containing information about boards installed in a device. Indexed by: 1. rscStkId 2. rscResourceId |
| rscBoardEntry { rscBoardTable 1 } | Information about a single board installed in the device. |
| rscStkId { rscBoardEntry 1 } | The ID of the stack member. It is a number from 1 to 8, assigned to a stackable unit by the operating system when it is stacked. A default of 1 is given to a stand-alone unit. |
| rscResourceId { rscBoardEntry 2 } | The resource ID number of the board. It is a number assigned to a hardware resource when the operating system detects its existence. Can be a value in range 1 to 4294967294. |
| rscBoardType { rscBoardEntry 3 } | The type of board. Can be one of the following: 1. Base 2. Expansion 3. Fan module 4. PSU |
| rscBoardName { rscBoardEntry 4 } | The name of the board. Can be one of the following: 1. SwitchBlade x908 2. XEM-12S 3. AT-PWR05-AC |
| rscBoardId { rscBoardEntry 5 } | The ID number of the board. Its value is an Allied Telesis assigned number, such as 274 for the XEM-12S, or 255 for the AT-9924Ts. |
| rscBoardBay { rscBoardEntry 6 } | The board installation location. Its value can be Bay1, Bay2, PSU1. For a base board, it has a value of a single character space. |
| rscBoardRevision { rscBoardEntry 7 } | The revision number of the board. |
| rscBoardSerialNumber { rscBoardEntry 8 } | The serial number of the board. |
| hostInfoTable { resource 2 } | Table containing general system information. Indexed by rscStkId. |
| hostInfoEntry { hostInfoTable 1 } | Information about a single system parameter |
| hostInfoDRAM { hostInfoTable 2 } | The host DRAM information. |
| hostInfoFlash { hostInfoTable 3 } | The host Flash information. |

Table 68-17: Objects defined in AT-RESOURCE-MIB(cont.)

| Object and OID | Description |
|--|-------------------------------|
| hostInfoUptime { hostInfoTable 4 } | The host up-time. |
| hostInfoBootloaderVersion { hostInfoTable 5 } | The host boot loader version. |

AT-SETUP-MIB

AT-SETUP-MIB defines objects for managing software installation and configuration files (**Figure 68-6, Table 68-18**). Objects in this group have the object identifier setup ({ modules 500 }). The procedure in **Table 66-6 on page 66.22** shows how to use these MIB objects to upgrade to a new software version and boot configuration file. For objects used for file copying, see **“AT-FILEv2-MIB” on page 68.32**.

Figure 68-6: The AT-SETUP-MIB sub-tree

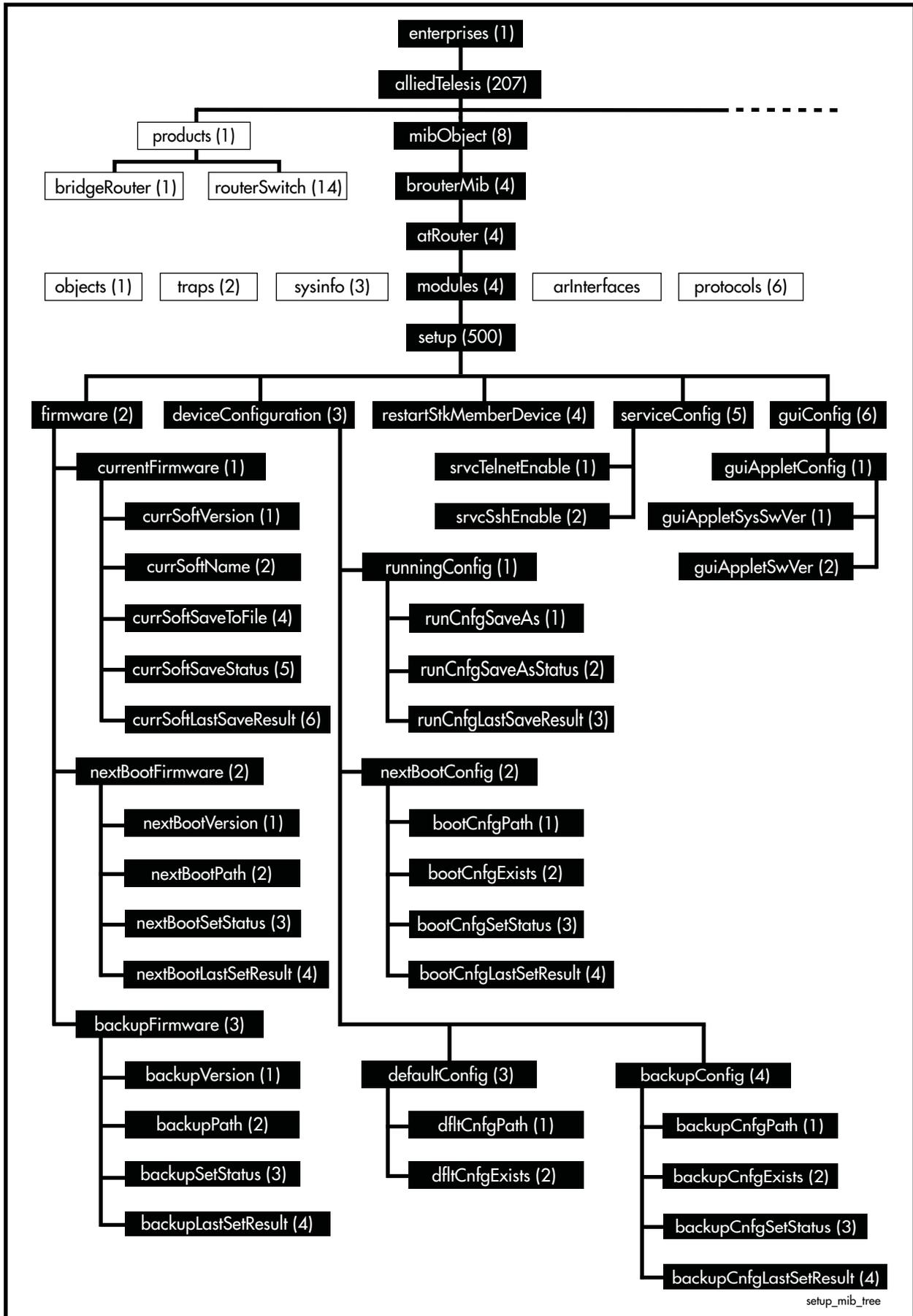


Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| restartDevice | { setup 1 } | Object for restarting the device. When set to '1', the device will restart immediately. Note: This object has been deprecated. Use instead the restartStkMemberDevice object. |
| firmware | { setup 2 } | Objects for managing the software version files that the device will install and run. |
| currentFirmware | { firmware 1 } | Information about the current software version installed on the device. |
| currSoftVersion | { currentFirmware 1 } | Current software version. |
| currSoftName | { currentFirmware 2 } | Current software name. |
| currSoftSaveAs | { currentFirmware 3 } | The file name to save the currently running software to the root of the Flash. Only one save operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users. Note: This object has been deprecated. Use instead the currSoftSaveToFile, currSoftSaveStatus and currSoftLastSaveResult objects. |
| currSoftSaveToFile | { currentFirmware 4 } | Set with a URL to save the currently running software to the root of Flash or USB flash drive (e.g. 'flash:/filename.rel' or 'USB:/filename.rel'). The URL must not contain whitespace characters. Only one save operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of currSoftSaveStatus is 'idle'. Immediately upon executing the set action, the actual firmware save operation is started and will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs. When read, this object will return the URL of the last firmware save operation that was attempted. |
| currSoftSaveStatus | { currentFirmware 5 } | This object will return the status of any current operation to store the running software to a release file. The following values may be returned: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (idle) - there is no release file save operation in progress (success) - the last release file save operation completed successfully (failure) - the last release file save operation failed (saving) - a release file save operation is currently in progress When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading currSoftLastSaveResult. |
| currSoftLastSaveResult | { currentFirmware 6 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to save the running firmware to a release file. |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|-----------------------|------------------------|--|
| nextBootFirmware | { firmware 2 } | Information about the software version to be installed on the device when booting. |
| nextBootVersion | { nextBootFirmware 1 } | Provides information on the software version (major.minor.interim, for example version 5.4.1) that the device will boot from. A zero will be returned if the version cannot be determined. |
| nextBootPath | { nextBootFirmware 2 } | <p>The full path to the release file that will be used the next time the device is rebooted. The URL must not contain whitespace characters.</p> <p>Only one set operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of nextBootSetStatus is 'idle'.</p> <p>Immediately upon executing the set action, the system will attempt to set the new configuration path, and the process will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs.</p> <p>This object can be set with an empty string in order to clear the current boot firmware. Otherwise, the path should be of the form 'flash:/filename.cfg' or 'card:/filename.cfg'.</p> <p>In order to set this object, the file must meet the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ it must exist ■ it must be located in the root of Flash (on the active master in a stacked environment) or USB flash drive ■ it must not be the same as the backup release file ■ it must have a .rel suffix ■ it must pass several internal checks to ensure that it is a genuine release file ■ in a stacked environment, there must be enough disk space available to store the release file on each stack member |
| nextBootSetStatus | { nextBootFirmware 3 } | <p>Returns the status of any current operation to set the next boot release file. The following values may be returned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 (idle) - there is no boot release setting operation in progress ■ 2 (success) - the last boot release setting operation completed successfully ■ 3 (failure) - the last boot release setting operation failed ■ 5 (syncing) - a boot release setting operation is currently in progress and the file is being synchronized across the stack <p>When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading nextBootLastSetResult.</p> |
| nextBootLastSetResult | { nextBootFirmware 4 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to set the boot release filename. |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|---------------------|---------------------------|---|
| backupFirmware | { firmware 3 } | Information about the backup software version and path. |
| backupVersion | { backupFirmware 1 } | Provides information on the backup software version (major.minor.interim, for example version 5.4.1) that the device will boot from. A zero will be returned if the version cannot be determined. |
| backupPath | { backupFirmware 2 } | <p>The full path to the backup release file that will be used the next time the device is rebooted. The URL must not contain whitespace characters.</p> <p>Only one set operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of backupSetStatus is 'idle'. Immediately upon executing the set action, the system will attempt to set the new configuration path, and the process will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs.</p> <p>This object can be set with an empty string in order to clear the current backup firmware. Otherwise, the path should be of the form 'flash:/filename.cfg' or 'card:/filename.cfg'.</p> <p>In order to set this object, the file must meet the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ it must exist ■ it must be located in the root of Flash (on the active master in a stacked environment) or USB flash drive ■ it must not be the same as the configured main release file ■ it must have a .rel suffix ■ it must pass several internal checks to ensure that it is a genuine release file ■ in a stacked environment, there must be enough disk space available to store the release file on each stack member |
| backupSetStatus | { backupFirmware 3 } | <p>Returns the status of any current operation to set the backup boot release file. The following values may be returned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 (idle) - there is no backup boot release setting operation in progress ■ 2 (success) - the last backup boot release setting operation completed successfully ■ 3 (failure) - the last backup boot release setting operation failed ■ 5 (syncing) - a backup boot release setting operation is currently in progress and the file is being synchronized across the stack <p>When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading backupLastSetResult.</p> |
| backupLastSetResult | { backupFirmware 4 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to set the backup boot release filename. |
| deviceConfiguration | { setup 3 } | Objects for managing device configuration. |
| runningConfig | { deviceConfiguration 1 } | |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--|
| runCnfgSaveAs | { runningConfig 1 } | Set with a URL to save the currently running software to the root of Flash or USB flash drive (e.g. 'flash:/filename.rel' or 'usb:/filename.rel'). The URL must not contain whitespace characters. Only one set operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of runCnfgSaveAsStatus is 'idle'. Immediately upon executing the set action, the system will attempt to save the running configuration and the process will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs. When read, this object will return the URL of the last firmware save operation that was attempted. |
| runCnfgSaveAsStatus | { runningConfig 2 } | Returns the status of any current operation to save the running configuration. The following values may be returned: 1. (idle) - there is no config file save operation in progress 2. (success) - the last config file save operation completed successfully 3. (failure) - the last config file save operation failed 4. (saving) - a config file save operation is currently in progress When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading runCnfgLastSaveResult. |
| runCnfgLastSaveResult | { runningConfig 3 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to save the running configuration. |
| nextBootConfig | { deviceConfiguration 2 } | |
| bootCnfgPath | { nextBootConfig 1 } | The full path to the configuration file that will be used the next time the device is rebooted. The URL must not contain whitespace characters. Only one set operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of bootCnfgSetStatus is 'idle'. Immediately upon executing the set action, the system will attempt to set the new configuration path, and the process will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs. This object can be set with an empty string in order to clear the current boot configuration. Otherwise, the path should be of the form 'flash:/myconfig.cfg' or 'card:/filename.cfg'. In order to set this object, the file must meet the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ it must exist ■ it must be located in the root of Flash (on the active master in a stacked environment) or USB flash drive ■ it must have a .cfg suffix ■ in a stacked environment, there must be enough disk space available to store the configuration file on each stack member |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--|
| bootCnfgExists | { nextBootConfig 2 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the currently defined boot configuration file exists, or FALSE if it does not. |
| bootCnfgSetStatus | { nextBootConfig 3 } | Returns the status of any current operation to set the next boot configuration file. The following values may be returned: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 (idle) - there is no boot configuration setting operation in progress ■ 2 (success) - the last boot configuration setting operation completed successfully ■ 3 (failure) - the last boot configuration setting operation failed ■ 5 (syncing) - a boot configuration setting operation is currently in progress and the file is being synchronized across the stack When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading bootCnfgLastSetResult. |
| bootCnfgLastSetResult | { nextBootConfig 4 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to set the boot configuration filename. |
| defaultConfig | { deviceConfiguration 3 } | |
| dfltCnfgPath | { defaultConfig 1 } | The full path of the configuration file to use as backup when the device is rebooted. This object is not settable. The default configuration file is always 'flash:/default.cfg'. |
| dfltCnfgExists | { defaultConfig 2 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the currently defined default configuration file exists, or FALSE if it does not. |
| backupConfig | { deviceConfiguration 4 } | |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--|
| backupCnfgPath | { backupConfig 1 } | <p>The full path to the backup configuration file that will be used the next time the device is rebooted. The URL must not contain whitespace characters.</p> <p>Only one set operation can be executed at a time across all SNMP users and an operation may not be started unless the current value of backupCnfgSetStatus is 'idle'. Immediately upon executing the set action, the system will attempt to set the new backup configuration path, and the process will continue on the device until it has completed or a failure occurs.</p> <p>This object can be set with an empty string in order to clear the current boot configuration. Otherwise, the path should be of the form 'flash:/myconfig.cfg' or 'card:/filename.cfg'.</p> <p>In order to set this object, the file must meet the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ it must exist ■ it must be located in the root of Flash (on the active master in a stacked environment) or USB flash drive ■ it must have a .cfg suffix ■ in a stacked environment, there must be enough disk space available to store the configuration file on each stack member |
| backupCnfgExists | { backupConfig 2 } | This object will return the value TRUE if the currently defined backup configuration file exists, or FALSE if it does not. |
| backupCnfgSetStatus | { backupConfig 3 } | <p>Returns the status of any current operation to set the next backup boot configuration file. The following values may be returned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 (idle) - there is no backup boot configuration setting operation in progress ■ 2 (success) - the last backup boot configuration setting operation completed successfully ■ 3 (failure) - the last backup boot configuration setting operation failed ■ 5 (syncing) - a backup boot configuration setting operation is currently in progress and the file is being synchronized across the stack <p>When a read of this object returns a value of 'success' or 'failure', it will immediately be reset to 'idle' and a new operation may be initiated if desired. A detailed description of the last completed operation may be determined by reading backupCnfgLastSetResult.</p> |
| backupCnfgLastSetResult | { backupConfig 4 } | Gives an indication of the result of the last completed SNMP operation to set the backup boot configuration filename. |

Table 68-18: Objects defined in AT-SETUP-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description | Object Identifier |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| restartStkMemberDevice | { setup 4 } | This object causes a specified device to restart immediately. The restart is initiated by setting its value to the device's stack member ID. Setting its value to zero will cause all devices in the stack, or a standalone device, to restart. Reading the object will always return zero. |
| serviceConfig | { setup 5 } | |
| srvcTelnetEnable | { serviceConfig 1 } | This object is used to either read or set the state of the telnet server on a device. Telnet can be enabled by setting the value of this object to 'enable(1)' or can be disabled by setting the value 'disable(2)'. |
| srvcSshEnable | { serviceConfig 2 } | This object is used to either read or set the state of the SSH server on a device. SSH can be enabled by setting the value of this object to 'enable(1)' or can be disabled by setting the value 'disable(2)'. |
| guiConfig | { setup 6 } | |
| guiAppletConfig | { guiAppletConfig 1 } | |
| guiAppletSysSwVer | { guiAppletConfig 1 } | This object represents the system software release that the currently selected GUI applet was designed to run on. The system automatically searches for GUI applet files that reside in the root directory of the Flash memory, and selects the latest available file that is applicable to the currently running system software. This is the applet that will be uploaded to a user's web browser when they initiate the GUI. |
| | { guiAppletConfig 2 } | This object represents the software version of the currently selected GUI applet. The system automatically searches for GUI applet files residing in the root directory of the Flash memory, and selects the latest available one that is applicable to the currently running system software. This is the applet that will be uploaded to a user's web browser when they initiate the GUI. |

AT-SMI-MIB

AT-SMI-MIB defines the high-level structure and root objects of the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB ([Table 68-19](#)). These objects are imported by other component MIBs of the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB.

Table 68-19: AT Enterprise MIB - High Level Structure

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|------------------|---|--|
| alliedTelesis | { enterprises 207 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207 | Root of the Allied Telesis Enterprise MIB under the private(4) node defined in RFC1155-SMI. |
| products | { alliedTelesis 1 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1 | Sub-tree of all product OIDs. Described in “AT-PRODUCTS-MIB” on page 68.51 . |
| bridgeRouter | { products 1 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1.1 | Sub-tree of bridge product MIB objects (not applicable for AlliedWare Plus). |
| routerSwitch | { products 14 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1.2 | Sub-tree for all router and switch product MIB objects. |
| industrialSwitch | { products 24 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1.24 | Sub-tree for industrial switch product MIB objects. |
| mibObject | { alliedTelesis 8 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8 | Sub-tree for all managed objects. |
| brouterMib | { mibObject 4 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4 | Sub-tree of objects for managing bridges, routers, and switches. |
| atRouter | { brouterMib 4 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4 | Sub-tree of objects for managing multiprotocol routers and switches. |
| objects | { atRouter 1 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.1 | Sub-tree of OIDs for boards, releases, interface types, and chips. |
| traps | { atRouter 2 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.2 | Sub-tree for generic traps (not applicable for AlliedWare Plus). |
| sysinfo | { atRouter 3 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3 | Sub-tree of objects describing general system information. |
| modules | { atRouter 4 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4 | Sub-tree of objects for monitoring and managing software features. |
| arInterfaces | { atRouter 5 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.5 | Sub-tree of objects describing boards, slots and physical interfaces. |
| protocols | { atRouter 6 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.6 | Sub-tree of OIDs for protocols. |
| atAgents | { atRouter 7 } 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.7 | Sub-tree of objects describing variations from standards. |

[Table 68-20](#) lists the major modules of the AT-SMI-MIB grouped by their object identifiers. Note that this is also the order in which they are described in this chapter.

Table 68-20: AT-SMI-MIBs Listed by Object Group

| MIB Section | OID | Description |
|------------------------|-------------------|---|
| AT-SMI-MIB | | This section describes the structure of management information for the Allied Telesis Enterprise object, alliedTelesis { 1.3.6.1.4.1.207 }. |
| AT-PRODUCTS-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.1 | Object identifiers for Allied Telesis products. See “AT-PRODUCTS-MIB” on page 68.51 . |

Table 68-20: AT-SMI-MIBs Listed by Object Group(cont.)

| MIB Section | OID | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| AT-BOARDS-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.1.1 | Object identifiers for boards, interface types, and chip sets. See "AT-BOARDS-MIB" on page 68.13. |
| AT-SYSINFO-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3 | Objects that describe generic system information and environmental monitoring. See "AT-SYSINFO-MIB" on page 68.67. |
| AT-ENVMONv2-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.12 | Objects and traps for monitoring fans, voltage rails, temperature sensors, and power supply bays. See "AT-ENVMONv2-MIB" on page 68.21. |
| AT-MIBVERSION-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.15 | Object to display the last software release that contained changes to the support AT Enterprise MIB definition files. See "AT-MIBVERSION-MIB" on page 68.47. |
| AT-USER-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.20 | Objects for displaying information of users currently logged into a device, or configured in the Local User Data base of the device. See "AT-USER-MIB" on page 68.74. |
| AT-RESOURCE-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.21 | Objects for displaying system hardware resource information. See "AT-RESOURCE-MIB" on page 68.54. |
| AT-LICENSE-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.22 | Objects for managing software licenses on devices using AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. See "AT-LICENSE-MIB" on page 68.41. |
| AT-TRIGGER-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.53 | Objects for managing triggers. See "AT-TRIGGER-MIB" on page 68.72. |
| AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.54 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis Loop Protection. See "AT-LOOPPROTECT-MIB" on page 68.45. |
| AT-SETUP-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.500 | Objects for managing software installation and configuration files. See "AT-SETUP-MIB" on page 68.56. |
| AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.501 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis DNS Client Configuration. See "AT-DNS-CLIENT-MIB" on page 68.20. |
| AT-NTP-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.502 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis Network Time Protocol (NTP) configuration. See "AT-NTP-MIB" on page 68.48. |
| AT-EPSRv2-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.536 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis EPSR. See "AT-EPSRv2-MIB" on page 68.29. |
| AT-DHCPSN-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.537 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis DHCP Snooping. See "AT-DHCPSN-MIB" on page 68.17. |
| AT-FILEv2-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.600 | Objects for displaying and managing file content on local and remote sources. See "AT-FILEv2-MIB" on page 68.32. |
| AT-LOG-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.601 | Objects for listing log entries from the buffered and permanent logs. See "AT-LOG-MIB" on page 68.43. |
| AT-IP-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.4.602 | Objects for Allied Telesis specific IP address management. See "AT-IP-MIB" on page 68.39. |
| AT-ALMMON-MIB | 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.26 | Objects for managing Allied Telesis Alarm Monitor. |

AT-SYSINFO-MIB

AT-SYSINFO-MIB defines objects that describe generic system information and environmental monitoring. Objects in this group have the object identifier sysinfo ({ atRouter 3 }). **Table 68-21** lists the objects supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ sysinfo MIB.

Table 68-21: Objects defined in AT-SYSINFO-MIB

| Object | Description |
|---|---|
| sysinfo { atRouter 3 } (1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3) | Subtree containing generic system information. |
| fanAndPs {sysinfo 1 } (1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.1) | A collection of objects for monitoring fans and power supplies. For devices running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System, these objects are superceded by objects in the AT-ENVMON-MIB (see "AT-ENVMONv2-MIB" on page 68.21). |
| restartGroup {sysinfo 2 } | A collection of objects and traps for activating and monitoring restarts. This group is not supported by devices running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. |
| cpu {sysinfo 3 } | A collection of objects containing information about the CPU utilization over different periods of time. All values are expressed as a percentage - integer in range 0 to 100. |
| cpuUtilisationMax {cpu 1 } | Maximum CPU utilization since the device was last restarted. |
| cpuUtilisationAvg {cpu 2 } | Average CPU utilization since the device was last restarted. |
| cpuUtilisationAvgLastMinute {cpu 3 } | Average CPU utilization over the past minute. |
| cpuUtilisationAvgLast10Seconds {cpu 4 } | Average CPU utilization over the past ten seconds. |
| cpuUtilisationAvgLastSecond {cpu 5 } | Average CPU utilization over the past second. |
| cpuUtilisationAvgMaxLast5Minutes {cpu 6 } | Maximum CPU utilization over the last 5 minutes. |
| cpuUtilisationAvgLast5Minutes {cpu 7 } | Average CPU utilization over the past 5 minutes. |
| sysTemperature {sysinfo 4 } | A collection of objects and traps for monitoring and managing the temperature status. For devices running the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. |
| atContactDetails {sysinfo 5 } | Contact details for Allied Telesis. |
| memory {sysinfo 7 } | A collection of objects and traps for monitoring memory usage and status. |
| atEnvMonv2 {sysinfo 12 } | AT Environment Monitoring v2 MIB for managing and reporting data relating to voltage rails, fan speeds, temperature sensors and power supply units. Objects under this portion of the OID are shown in the "AT-ENVMONv2-MIB" on page 68.21 . |

Table 68-21: Objects defined in AT-SYSINFO-MIB

| Object | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| atPortInfo {sysinfo 14 } | Objects containing information about the transceiver of an interface. This portion of the object tree is documented separately in: "AT-PORTINFO" on page 68.69. |
| atVlanInfo {sysinfo 16 } | A collection of objects for counting bytes or incoming frames within a selected VLAN. Note that these objects are only appropriate for the IX5, x510 and x610 series products. |
| {sysinfo 17 } to {sysinfo 19 } | These objects are not supported on your switch. |
| user {sysinfo 20 } | Contains objects for displaying information of users currently logged into a device, or configured in its local database. Objects under this portion of the OID are shown in the "AT-USER-MIB" on page 68.74. |
| resource {sysinfo 21 } | Contains objects for displaying hardware resource information. Objects under this portion of the OID are shown in the "AT-RESOURCE-MIB" on page 68.54. |
| license {sysinfo 22 } | This MIB, is used for listing applied software licenses, adding new licenses, and deleting existing licenses. Objects under this portion of the OID are shown in the "AT-LICENSE-MIB" on page 68.41. |
| chassis {sysinfo 23 } | This MIB is used for accessing trap notifications on chassis based products. Note that these objects are only appropriate for the x8100 series products. |

AT-PORTINFO

This table defines objects for managing interface port objects such as transceivers. Objects in this group have the object identifier atPortInfo ({ sysinfo 14 }), OID path, 1.3.6.1.4.1.207.8.4.4.3.14.

Table 68-22: Objects defined in AT-ATPORTINFO portion of the MIB

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|---|
| atPortInfo {sysinfo 14} | This object returns information about interface transceivers. |
| atPortInfoTransceiverTable {atPortInfo 1} | A table of information about the transceiver of a interface. |
| atPortInfoTransceiverEntry {atPortInfoTransceiverTable 1} | The description, the transceiver type of a interface. |
| atPortInfoTransceiverifIndex {atPortInfoTransceiverEntry 1} | The ifIndex for the interface represented by this entry of the interfaces table. |
| atPortInfoTransceiverType {atPortInfoTransceiverEntry 2} | This object indicates the type of transceiver on a interface. It contains the following value list objects: |

Table 68-22: Objects defined in AT-ATPORTINFO portion of the MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| | <p>The type of transceiver on an interface can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ rj45(1) ■ sfp-px(2) ■ sfp-bx10(3) ■ sfp-fx(4) ■ sfp-100base-lx(5) ■ sfp-t(6) ■ sfp-cx(7) ■ sfp-zx-cwdm(8) ■ sfp-lx(9) ■ sfp-sx(10) ■ sfp-oc3-lr(11) ■ sfp-oc3-ir(12) ■ sfp-oc3-mm(13) ■ xfp-srsw(14) ■ xfp-lrlw(15) ■ xfp-erew(16) ■ xfp-sr(17) ■ xfp-lr(18) ■ xfp-er(19) ■ xfp-lrm(20) ■ xfp-sw(21) ■ xfp-lw(22) ■ xfp-ew(23) ■ unknown(24) ■ empty(25) ■ sfpp-sr(26) ■ sfpp-lr(27) ■ sfpp-er(28) ■ sfpp-lrm(29) ■ inf-1-x-copper-pasv(30) ■ inf-1-x-copper-actv(31) ■ inf-1-x-lx(32) ■ inf-1-x-sx(33) ■ cx4(34) |

Table 68-22: Objects defined in AT-ATPORTINFO portion of the MIB(cont.)

| Object / Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| atPortRenumberEvents {atPortInfo 2} | The number of times that port number values (represented by the dot1dBasePort object in BRIDGE-MIB), have been re-assigned due to stack member leave/join events or XEM hot-swap events, since the system was initialized. |

AT-TRIGGER-MIB

AT-TRIGGER-MIB defines objects for managing triggers ([Table 68-23](#)). Objects in this group have the object identifier trigger ({ modules 53 }). All objects in this group have read only access.

Table 68-23: Objects defined in AT-TRIGGER-MIB

| Object Identifier | Description |
|--|--|
| triggerTraps { trigger 0 } | Sub-tree for all trigger traps. |
| triggerTrap { triggerTraps 1 } | Notification generated when a trigger is activated. It returns the value of triggerLastTriggerActivated. |
| triggerLastTriggerActivated { trigger 1 } | Trigger number of the most recent trigger activated on the switch. |
| triggerConfigInfoTable { trigger 9 } | Table of information about each trigger that has been configured, indexed by triggerNumber. |
| triggerConfigInfoEntry { triggerConfigInfoTable 1 } | Information about the configuration of a single trigger. |
| triggerNumber { triggerConfigInfoEntry 1 } | ID number of the trigger. Values are in range 1- 250. |
| triggerName { triggerConfigInfoEntry 2 } | Name and description of the trigger. |
| triggerTypeDetail { triggerConfigInfoEntry 3 } | Trigger type and its activation conditions. |
| triggerActiveDaysOrDate { triggerConfigInfoEntry 4 } | The days of a week or the date on which the trigger can be activated. |
| triggerActivateAfter { triggerConfigInfoEntry 5 } | Time after which the trigger can be activated. |
| triggerActivateBefore { triggerConfigInfoEntry 6 } | Time before which the trigger can be activated. |
| triggerActiveStatus { triggerConfigInfoEntry 7 } | Whether or not the trigger can be activated. |
| triggerTestMode { triggerConfigInfoEntry 8 } | Whether or not the trigger is operating in diagnostic (test) mode. |
| triggerSnmpTrap { triggerConfigInfoEntry 9 } | Whether or a not an SNMP trap will be generated when the trigger is activated. |
| triggerRepeatTimes { triggerConfigInfoEntry 10 } | Whether the trigger can repeat an unlimited number of times (continuous) or a specified number of times. If the trigger can repeat only a specified number of times, then the number of times the trigger has already been activated is displayed in brackets. |
| triggerLasttimeModified { triggerConfigInfoEntry 11 } | Date and time that the trigger configuration was last modified. |
| triggerNumberOfActivation { triggerConfigInfoEntry 12 } | Number of times the trigger has been activated since the last restart of the device. |
| triggerLasttimeActivation { triggerConfigInfoEntry 13 } | Date and time that the trigger was last activated. |
| triggerNumberOfScripts { triggerConfigInfoEntry 14 } | Number of scripts that this trigger will execute. Values are in range 0-5. |

Table 68-23: Objects defined in AT-TRIGGER-MIB(cont.)

| Object Identifier | Description |
|---|---|
| triggerScript1 { triggerConfigInfoEntry 15 } | Name of the first script that this trigger will execute if the trigger is activated. |
| triggerScript2 { triggerConfigInfoEntry 16 } | Name of the second script that this trigger will execute if the trigger is activated. |
| triggerScript3 { triggerConfigInfoEntry 17 } | Name of the third script that this trigger will execute if the trigger is activated. |
| triggerScript4 { triggerConfigInfoEntry 18 } | Name of the fourth script that this trigger will execute if the trigger is activated. |
| triggerScript5 { triggerConfigInfoEntry 19 } | Name of the fifth script that this trigger will execute if the trigger is activated. |
| triggerCounters { trigger 10 } | Collection of counters for trigger activations. |
| triggerNumOfActivation { triggerCounters 1 } | Number of times a trigger has been activated. |
| triggerNumOfActivationToday { triggerCounters 2 } | Number of times a trigger has been activated today. |
| triggerNumOfPeriodicActivationToday { triggerCounters 3 } | Number of times a periodic trigger has been activated today. |
| triggerNumOfInterfaceActivationToday { triggerCounters 4 } | Number of times an interface trigger has been activated today. |
| triggerNumOfResourceActivationToday { triggerCounters 5 } | Number of times a CPU or memory trigger has been activated today. |
| triggerNumOfRebootActivationToday { triggerCounters 6 } | Number of times a reboot trigger has been activated today. |
| triggerNumOfPingPollActivationToday { triggerCounters 7 } | Number of times a ping-poll trigger has been activated today. |

AT-USER-MIB

The AT-USER-MIB contains objects for displaying information about users currently logged into a device, or configured in the Local User Database of the device ([Table 68-24](#)).

Objects in this group have the object identifier user ({ sysinfo 20 }).

Table 68-24: Objects defined in AT-USER-MIB

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| userInfoTable (207.8.4.4.3.20.1) | { user 1 } | Table containing information about users. Each entry in the table represents a user currently logged into the device. Indexed by: rscBoardType and rscBoardIndex. |
| userInfoEntry | { userInfoTable 1 } | Information about a single user logged into the device. |
| userInfoType | { userInfoEntry 1 } | The type of connection through which the user logged into the device. Can be: 1. console (1) 2. aux (2) 3. telnet (3) 4. script (4) 5. stack (5) |
| userInfoIndex | { userInfoEntry 2 } | Index of the line upon which the user logged into the device. Can be a value in range 1 to 16. |
| userInfoName | { userInfoEntry 3 } | User name of the user logged into the device. |
| userInfoPrivilegeLevel | { userInfoEntry 4 } | The user's privilege level. Can be a value in range 1 to 15. |
| userInfoIdleTime | { userInfoEntry 5 } | The amount of time since the user was last active, in the form hh:mm:ss. |
| userInfoLocation | { userInfoEntry 6 } | The user location or login method. It can be an IP Address used by the user to telnet into the device, or an asyn port. |
| userInfoPasswordLifetime | { userInfoEntry 7 } | The number of days remaining until the user's password expires. Depending on the current user setting it will display one of the following: No Expiry - the password will never expire (default setting) x days - where x is the remaining lifetime of the current password (maximum lifetime value is 1000 days) -x days (expired) - indicating that the current password expired x days ago |
| userInfoPasswordLastChange | { userInfoEntry 8 } | The number of days since the password was last altered. |

Table 68-24: Objects defined in AT-USER-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| userConfigTable | { user 2 } or (207.8.4.4.3.20.2) | Table containing user configuration information. Each entry in the table relates to a user configured in the Local User Database of the device. Indexed by userConfigIndex. |
| userConfigEntry | { userConfigTable 1 } | Information about a single user configured in the Local User Database of the device. |
| userConfigIndex | { userConfigEntry 1 } | Unique number used to identify entries in the userConfigTable. |
| userConfigName | { userConfigEntry 2 } | The user's name. |
| userConfigPrivilegeLevel | { userConfigEntry 3 } | The privilege level granted to the user. Can be a value in range 1 to 15. |

Table 68-24: Objects defined in AT-USER-MIB(cont.)

| Object | Object Identifier | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| userSecurityPasswordRules | { user 3 } or (207.8.4.4.3.20.3) | Information about user password security rules. |
| userSecurityPasswordHistory | { userSecurityPasswordRules 1 } | The number of previous passwords that are retained for comparison when a user password is created. A new password must be unique when compared against the previous history. A value of 0 represents no restriction. The maximum number of retained passwords is 15. |
| userSecurityPasswordLifetime | { userSecurityPasswordRules 2 } | The maximum number of days that the password may persist before a change is required. A value of 0 represents no expiry. The maximum value is 1000. |
| userSecurityPasswordWarning | { userSecurityPasswordRules 3 } | The number of days before the password expires that a warning message is displayed when the user logs in. A value of 0 indicates no warning. The maximum value is 1000 but must always be less than the password lifetime. |
| userSecurityPasswordMinLength | { userSecurityPasswordRules 4 } | The minimum allowable password length. |
| userSecurityPasswordMinCategory | { userSecurityPasswordRules 5 } | The minimum number of different categories that the password must satisfy to be considered valid. Categories are split into four groups: upper-case letters lower-case letters digits special symbols. ASCII characters not included in the previous three categories. |
| userSecurityPasswordForced | { userSecurityPasswordRules 6 } | Whether or not a user with an expired password is forced to change their password at the next login. At login a user with an expired password is prompted to change their password. If the new password meets the current security password rules the user is allowed to log in, otherwise they are rejected. |
| userSecurityPasswordReject | { userSecurityPasswordRules 7 } | Whether or not a user login attempt with an expired password is rejected. If the user is not rejected then they can log in. |

Other Enterprise MIBs

In general, all objects are supported except where the relevant protocol or feature is either not supported or not applicable to the device. The following MIBs although under the Enterprise Branch (OID 1.3.6.1.4.1) and utilized by AlliedWare Plus products are not within the AlliedTelesis branch of the MIB object tree.

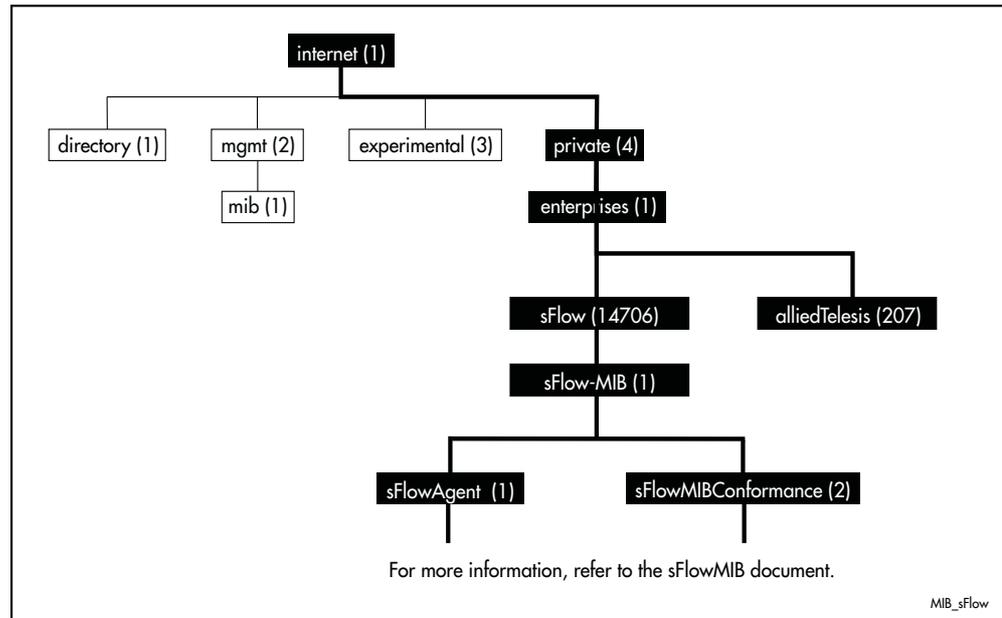
sFlow-MIB

The sFlow-MIB ([Figure 68-7](#), and [Table 68-25](#)) show references to objects for managing the generation and transportation of sFlow data records.

Table 68-25: Objects defined in the sFlow-MIB

| MIB Name | Reference / Implementation |
|-----------|---|
| sFlow-MIB | All MIB objects are fully supported For more information, see www.sflow.org/SFLOW-MIB5.txt |

Figure 68-7: The sFlow Statistics MIB tree



Public MIBs

The following table lists the public MIBs supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. In general, all objects are supported except where the relevant protocol or feature is either not supported or not applicable to the device. Any variations from the standard are listed.

Public MIBs Supported by AlliedWare Plus™

| MIB Name | Reference / Implementation |
|--------------------|---|
| IANAifType-MIB | www.iana.org/assignments/ianaiftype-mib , IANAifType textual convention. |
| RFC1155-SMI | RFC 1155, <i>Structure and Identification of Management Information for TCP/IP-based Internets</i> . |
| - | RFC 1212, <i>Concise MIB Definitions</i> . |
| RFC1213-MIB | See IP-MIB. |
| - | RFC 1215, <i>A Convention for Defining Traps for use with the SNMP</i> . |
| - | RFC 1239, <i>Reassignment of Experimental MIBs to Standard MIBs</i> . |
| IP-MIB | <p>The IP MIB tree encompasses IP-MIB, RFC1213-MIB and IP-FORWARD-MIB definitions. The following documents define the components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ RFC 1213, <i>Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based internets: MIB-II</i> ■ RFC 4292, <i>IP Forwarding Table MIB</i> ■ RFC 4293, <i>Management Information Base for the Internet Protocol (IP)</i> <p>The following objects are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ipForwarding ■ ipDefaultTTL ■ All ipAddrTable objects except ipAdEntReasmMaxSize ■ All ipNetToPhysicalTable objects except ipNetToPhysicalRowStatus (all read-only) ■ ipCidrRouteNumber ■ All ipCidrRouteTable objects except ipCidrRouteTos <p>All other objects in these MIBs are not supported.</p> <p>Note that an Enterprise version of ipAddressTable objects is provided by atIpAddressTable in AT-IP-MIB. This provides equivalent functionality along with support for primary and secondary IP addresses.</p> |
| TCP-MIB | RFC 2012, <i>SNMPv2 Management Information Base for the Transmission Control Protocol using SMIv2</i> . |
| UDP-MIB | RFC 2013, <i>SNMPv2 Management Information Base for the User Datagram Protocol using SMIv2</i> . |
| IP-FORWARD-MIB | See IP-MIB. |
| - | RFC 2257, <i>Agent Extensibility (AgentX) Protocol Version 1</i> . |
| SNMP-MPD-MIB | RFC 2572, <i>Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i> . |
| SNMP-COMMUNITY-MIB | RFC 2576, <i>Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework</i> . |
| SNMPv2-SMI | RFC 2578, <i>Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2)</i> . |
| SNMPv2-TC | RFC 2579, <i>Textual Conventions for SMIv2</i> . |

Public MIBs Supported by AlliedWare Plus™(cont.)

| MIB Name | Reference / Implementation |
|--------------------|---|
| SNMPv2-CONF | RFC 2580, <i>Conformance Statements for SMIv2</i> . |
| P-BRIDGE-MIB | <p>RFC 2674, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges with Traffic Classes, Multicast Filtering and Virtual LAN Extensions</i>.</p> <p>The following objects are not supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dTpPortOverflowTable ■ dot1dTrafficClassesEnabled ■ dot1dGmrpStatus ■ dot1dPortCapabilitiesTable ■ dot1dUserPriority ■ dot1dTrafficClassPriority ■ dot1dPortOutboundAccessPriorityTable ■ all objects in the dot1dGarp group ■ all objects in the dot1dGmrp group <p>The following read-write object is implemented as read-only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dPortNumTrafficClasses |
| Q-BRIDGE-MIB | <p>RFC 2674, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges with Traffic Classes, Multicast Filtering and Virtual LAN Extensions</i>.</p> <p>The following objects are not supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1qGvrpStatus ■ dot1qFdbld ■ dot1qTpFdbAddress ■ dot1qTpGroupTable ■ dot1qForwardAllTable ■ dot1qForwardUnregisteredTable ■ all objects in the dot1qStatic group ■ dot1qVlanTimeMark ■ dot1qVlanIndex ■ dot1qVlanCurrentEgressPorts ■ dot1qVlanCurrentUntaggedPorts ■ dot1qVlanForbiddenEgressPorts ■ dot1qPortGvrpStatus ■ dot1qPortGvrpFailedRegistrations ■ dot1qPortGvrpLastPduOrigin ■ dot1qPortRestrictedVlanRegistration ■ dot1qPortVlanStatisticsTable ■ dot1qPortVlanHCStatisticsTable ■ dot1qLearningConstraintsTable <p>The following read-write objects are implemented as read-only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1qPvid ■ dot1qPortAcceptableFrameTypes |
| HOST-RESOURCES-MIB | <p>RFC 2790, <i>Host Resources MIB</i>.</p> <p>The following objects are not supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ hrStorageAllocationFailures ■ All objects in hrDevice ■ All objects in hrSWRun ■ All objects in hrSWRunPerf ■ All objects in hrSWInstalled ■ All objects in hrMIBAdminInfo |
| SNMPv2-PDU | RFC 3416, <i>Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i> . |

Public MIBs Supported by AlliedWare Plus™(cont.)

| MIB Name | Reference / Implementation |
|------------------|---|
| SNMPv2-TM | RFC 3417, <i>Transport Mappings for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i> . |
| SNMPv2-MIB | RFC 3418, <i>Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i> . |
| EtherLike-MIB | RFC 3635, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet-like Interface Types</i> . The following objects are deprecated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot3StatsEtherChipSet ■ all objects in the dot3Tests group ■ all objects in the dot3Errors group The following read-write object is implemented as read-only: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot3PauseAdminMode |
| MAU-MIB | RFC 3636, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for IEEE 802.3 Medium Attachment Units (MAUs)</i> . The following objects are not supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ all objects in the dot3RpMauBasicGroup group ■ ifMauTypeListBits ■ ifMauHCFALSECarriers ■ all object identifiers in the dot3MauType group ■ ifMauAutoNegCapabilityBits ■ ifMauAutoNegCapAdvertisedBits ■ ifMauAutoNegCapReceivedBits ■ ifMauAutoNegRemoteFaultAdvertised ■ ifMauAutoNegRemoteFaultReceived ■ all objects in the mauMod group The following objects are deprecated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ifMauTypeList ■ all objects in the dot3BroadMauBasicGroup group ■ ifMauAutoNegCapability ■ ifMauAutoNegCapAdvertised ■ ifMauAutoNegCapReceived The following read-write object is implemented as read-only: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ifMauStatus |
| INET-ADDRESS-MIB | RFC 4001, <i>Textual Conventions for Internet Network Addresses</i> . |
| BRIDGE-MIB | RFC 4188, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges</i> . The following read-write objects are implemented as read-only: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dStpPortEnable ■ dot1dStpPortPathCost The following objects are not supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dStaticTable ■ dot1dBaseDelayExceededDiscards ■ dot1dBasePortMtuExceededDiscards |

Public MIBs Supported by AlliedWare Plus™(cont.)

| MIB Name | Reference / Implementation |
|-------------------|---|
| RSTP-MIB | <p>RFC 4318, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges with Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol</i>.</p> <p>The following read-write objects are implemented as read-only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dStpPortProtocolMigration ■ dot1dStpPortAdminEdgePort ■ dot1dStpPortAdminPointToPoint ■ dot1dStpPortAdminPathCost <p>The following object is deprecated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ dot1dStpPathCostDefault |
| DISMAN-PING-MIB | <p>RFC 4560, <i>Definitions of Managed Objects for Remote Ping, Traceroute, and Lookup Operations</i>.</p> <p>The following (IldpLocManAddrTable and IldpConfigManAddrTable) read-write object is implemented as read-only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ pingMaxConcurrentRequests <p>You can specify multiple ping operations, but the device only performs one ping at a time (pingMaxConcurrentRequests).</p> <p>The device uses ICMP echo for ping operations (pingImplementationTypeDomains).</p> |
| LLDP-MIB | <p><i>IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005, Section 12, LLDP MIB Definitions</i>.</p> <p>The following local management address table supports only a single management address per port:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ IldpConfigManAddrTable |
| LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB | <p><i>IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005, Annex F, IEEE 802.1 Organizationally Specific TLVs, Section F.7.1, IEEE 802.1LLDP extension MIB module</i>.</p> <p>In each of the following tables, if one entry is set, all other entries in the table are set to the same value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ IldpXdot1ConfigVlanNameTxEnable ■ IldpXdot1ConfigProtoVlanTxEnable ■ IldpXdot1ConfigProtocolTxEnable |
| LLDP-EXT-DOT3-MIB | <p><i>IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005, Annex G, IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs, Section G.7.1, IEEE 802.3 LLDP extension MIB module</i></p> |
| LLDP-EXT-MED-MIB | <p><i>ANSI/TIA-1057-2006, Section 13.3, LLDP-MED MIB Definition</i></p> |
| RIPv2-MIB | RFC1724 - RIP Version 2 MIB Extension |

In general, all objects are supported except where the relevant protocol or feature is either not supported or not applicable to the device. The following table lists the private MIBs supported by the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System. Any variations from the standard are listed.

Chapter 69: LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration

| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 69.2 |
| Link Layer Discovery Protocol | 69.2 |
| LLDP-MED | 69.3 |
| Voice VLAN | 69.3 |
| LLDP Advertisements | 69.4 |
| Type-Length-Value (TLV)..... | 69.4 |
| LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV | 69.7 |
| Transmission and Reception | 69.8 |
| LLDP-MED Operation | 69.9 |
| Storing LLDP Information | 69.10 |
| Configuring LLDP | 69.11 |
| Configure LLDP | 69.12 |
| Configure LLDP-MED | 69.14 |
| Configure Authentication for Voice VLAN | 69.19 |

Introduction

This chapter describes the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), LLDP for Media Endpoint Devices (LLDP-MED) and Voice VLAN, and general configuration information for these.

LLDP is designed to be managed with the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), and SNMP-based Network Management Systems (NMS). LLDP can be configured, and the information it provides can be accessed, using either the command line interface or SNMP.

- For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure LLDP and LLDP-MED, see [Chapter 70, LLDP Commands](#).
- For Voice VLAN commands, see [Chapter 17, VLAN Commands](#).
- For information about the LLDP and LLDP-MED MIBs, see [“Public MIBs” on page 68.79](#).

Link Layer Discovery Protocol

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is a Layer 2 protocol defined by the *IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005*. This switch supports LLDP as specified in this standard, including *Annex F* and *Annex G*.

LLDP enables Ethernet network devices, such as switches and routers, to transmit and/or receive device-related information to or from directly connected devices on the network, and to store such information learned about other devices. The data sent and received by LLDP is useful for many reasons. The switch can discover neighbors—other devices directly connected to it. Devices can use LLDP to advertise some parts of their Layer 2 configuration to their neighbors, enabling some kinds of misconfiguration to be more easily detected and corrected.

LLDP is a link level (“one hop”) protocol; LLDP information can only be sent to and received from devices that are directly connected to each other, or connected via a hub or repeater. Advertised information is not forwarded on to other devices on the network.

The information transmitted in LLDP advertisements flows in one direction only, from one device to its neighbors, and the communication ends there. Transmitted advertisements do not solicit responses, and received advertisements do not solicit acknowledgment.

LLDP operates over physical ports (Layer 2) only. For example, it can be configured on switch ports that belong to static or dynamic aggregated links (channel groups), but not on the aggregated links themselves; and on switch ports that belong to VLANs, but not on the VLANs themselves.

LLDP provides a way for the switch to:

- transmit information about itself to neighbors
- receive device information from neighbors
- store and manage information in an LLDP MIB

Each port can be configured to transmit local information, receive neighbor information, or both.

LLDP defines:

- a set of common advertisements (“[LLDP Advertisements](#)” on page 69.4)
- a protocol for transmitting and receiving advertisements (“[Transmission and Reception](#)” on page 69.8)
- a method for storing the information that is contained within received advertisements (“[Storing LLDP Information](#)” on page 69.10)

Interactions LLDP has the following interactions with other switch features:

- Spanning tree
Ports blocked by a spanning tree protocol can still transmit and receive LLDP advertisements.
- 802.1x
Ports blocked by 802.1x port authorization cannot transmit or receive LLDP advertisements. If LLDP has stored information for a neighbor on the port before it was blocked, this information will eventually time out and be discarded.
- VLAN tagging
LLDP packets are untagged; they do not contain 802.1Q header information with VLAN identifier and priority tagging.
- Mirror ports
LLDP does not operate on mirror analyzer ports.

LLDP-MED

LLDP for Media Endpoint Devices (LLDP-MED), is an extension of LLDP used between LAN network connectivity devices, such as this switch, and the media endpoint devices connected to them, such as IP phones. LLDP-MED is specified in *ANSI/TIA-1057-2006*. Of the application types specified in *ANSI/TIA-1057-2006*, the switch supports Application Type 1: Voice.

LLDP-MED uses the LLDP advertisement, transmission and storage mechanisms, but transmits, receives, and stores data specifically related to managing the voice endpoint devices. This includes information about network policy, location, hardware configuration, and, for Power over Ethernet-capable devices, power management.

Voice VLAN

Many IP phones (or other IP voice devices) have two interfaces: one to connect to the network and another that allows a computer or similar device to connect to the network via the IP phone. It is often desirable to treat the voice and data traffic separately so that appropriate Quality of Service (QoS) policies can be applied to each. The Voice VLAN feature uses LLDP-MED to convey configuration information (such as VLAN ID and User Priority tagging, and DiffServ Code Point (DSCP)—“[Differentiated Services Architecture](#)” on page 36.4) for the voice traffic to the IP phone. In response, the IP phone sends voice traffic according to this configuration. The data traffic coming through the IP phone from the PC is sent with the default configuration, typically untagged with normal priority.

LLDP Advertisements

LLDP transmits advertisements as packets called LLDP Data Units (LLDPDUs). An LLDPDU consists of a set of Type-Length-Value elements (TLV), each of which contains a particular type of information about the device or port transmitting it.

Type-Length-Value (TLV)

A single LLDPDU contains multiple TLVs. TLVs are short information elements that communicate complex data, such as variable length strings, in a standardized format. Each TLV advertises a single type of information, such as its device ID, type, or management addresses. The following table describes fields in a TLV.

Table 69-1: Fields in a Type Length Value element

| Field | Description |
|--------|---|
| Type | Identifies the kind of information. It consists of a 7-bit Type code. |
| Length | Identifies the length of the information. It consists of a 9-bit value that specifies the number of bytes of data in the Value field. |
| Value | Contains the actual value of the advertised information. This is a variable length data field. |

LLDP sends mandatory TLVs in each advertisement; it can also be configured to send one or more optional TLVs, from the following groups:

- Mandatory Base TLVs, included in all LLDP advertisements. See IEEE 802.1AB-2005.
- Optional Base TLVs, which may be included in any LLDP advertisements. See IEEE 802.1AB-2005.
- IEEE 802.1 Organizationally Specific TLVs (802.1 TLVs). See IEEE 802.1AB-2005 Annex F.
- IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs (802.3 TLVs). See IEEE 802.1AB-2005 Annex G.
- LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs (LLDP-MED TLVs), included in LLDP-MED advertisements. See ANSI/TIA-1057- 2006.

Mandatory and optional TLVs for LLDP and LLDP-MED advertisements are shown in **Table 69-2**.

Table 69-2: TLVs in LLDP advertisements

| TLV | Description |
|--|--|
| Mandatory Base TLVs—IEEE 802.1AB-2005 | |
| Chassis ID | Identifies the device's chassis. On this switch, this is the MAC address of the switch. |
| Port ID | Identifies the port that transmitted the LLDPDU. |
| Time To Live (TTL) | Indicates the length of time in seconds for which the information received in the LLDPDU remains valid. If the value is greater than zero, the information is stored in the LLDP remote system MIB. If the value is zero, the information previously received is no longer valid, and is removed from the MIB. |
| End of LLDPDU | Signals that there are no more TLVs in the LLDPDU. |

Table 69-2: TLVs in LLDP advertisements(cont.)

| TLV | Description |
|---|--|
| Optional Base TLVs—IEEE 802.1AB-2005 | |
| Port description | A description of the device's port in alpha-numeric format. |
| System name | The system's assigned name in alpha-numeric format. |
| System description | A description of the device in alpha-numeric format. This includes information about the device's hardware and operating system. |
| System capabilities | The device's router and bridge functions, and whether or not these functions are currently enabled. |
| Management address | The address of the local LLDP agent. This can be used to obtain information related to the local device. |
| IEEE 802.1 Organizationally Specific TLVs (802.1 TLVs)—IEEE 802.1AB-2005 Annex F | |
| Port VLAN | VLAN identifier that the local port associates with untagged or priority tagged frames. |
| Port & Protocol VLANs | Whether Port & Protocol VLAN is supported and enabled on the port, and the list of Port & Protocol VLAN identifiers. |
| VLAN Names | List of VLAN names that the port is assigned to. |
| Protocol IDs | List of protocols that are accessible through the port, for instance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 9000 (Loopback) ■ 00 26 42 42 03 00 00 00 (STP) ■ 00 27 42 42 03 00 00 02 (RSTP) ■ 00 69 42 42 03 00 00 03 (MSTP) ■ 888e01 (802.1x) ■ aa aa 03 00 e0 2b 00 bb (EPSR) ■ 88090101 (LACP) ■ 00540000e302 (Loop protection) ■ 0800 (IPv4) ■ 0806 (ARP) ■ 86dd (IPv6) |
| IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs (802.3 TLVs)—IEEE 802.1AB-2005 Annex G | |
| MAC/PHY Configuration/Status | The current values of the following for the port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Speed and duplex mode auto-negotiation support ■ Auto-negotiation status ■ PMD (physical media dependent) auto-negotiation advertised capability ■ Operational MAU type This TLV is always included in LLDP-MED advertisements. |
| Power Via MDI | The power-via-MDI capabilities. On devices that are LLDP-MED and PoE-capable, we recommend using the Extended Power-via-MDI TLV instead of this TLV. |
| Link Aggregation | Whether the link is capable of being aggregated, whether it is currently in an aggregation and if in an aggregation, the port of the aggregation. |

Table 69-2: TLVs in LLDP advertisements(cont.)

| TLV | Description |
|--|--|
| Maximum Frame Size | The maximum supported 802.3 frame size that the sending device is capable of receiving—larger frames will be dropped. |
| LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs (LLDP-MED TLVs)—ANSI/TIA-1057- 2006 | |
| LLDP-MED Capabilities | Indicates an LLDP-MED capable device, and advertises which LLDP-MED TLVs are supported and enabled, and the device type. For this switch, the device type is Network Connectivity Device. An advertisement containing this TLV is an LLDP-MED advertisement. |
| Network Policy | Network policy information configured on the port for connected media endpoint devices. The switch supports Application Type 1: Voice, including the following network policy for connected voice devices to use for voice data: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Voice VLAN ID ■ Voice VLAN User Priority tagging ■ Voice VLAN Diffserv Code Point (DSCP) |
| Location Identification | Location information configured for the port, in one or more of the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Civic address ■ Coordinate-based LCI ■ Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN) For more information, see “LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV” on page 69.7. |
| Extended Power-via-MDI | For PoE-capable devices, this TLV includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Power Type field: Power Sourcing Entity (PSE). ■ Power Source field: current power source, either Primary Power Source or Backup Power Source. ■ Power Priority field: power priority configured on the port. ■ Power Value field: In TLVs transmitted by Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) such as this switch, this advertises the power that the port can supply over a maximum length cable based on its current configuration (that is, it takes into account power losses over the cable). In TLVs received from Powered Device (PD) neighbors, the power value is the power the neighbor requests. Available on devices that are PoE-capable. |
| Inventory Management TLV Set | Includes the following TLVs, based on the current hardware platform and the software version, identical on every port on the switch: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Hardware Revision ■ Firmware Revision ■ Software Revision ■ Serial Number ■ Manufacturer Name ■ Model Name ■ Asset ID |

LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV

Location information can be configured for each port, and advertised to remote devices, which can then transmit this information in calls; the location associated with voice devices is particularly important for emergency call services. All ports may be configured with the location of the switch, or each port may be configured with the location of the remote voice device connected to it.

The location information for a particular port can be configured using one or more of the following three data formats: coordinate-based, Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN), and civic address. Up to one location of each type can be assigned to a port.

Location configuration information (LCI) in all configured data formats is transmitted in Location Identification TLVs. When LLDP receives a Location Identification TLV, it updates the remote entry in the LLDP-MED MIB with this information.

Co-ordinate LCI Coordinate-based location data format uses geospatial data, that is, latitude, longitude, and altitude (height or floors), including indications of resolution, with reference to a particular datum: WGS 84, NAD83—North American Vertical Datum of 1988 (NAVD88), or NAD83—Mean Lower Low Water (MLLW). For more information, see *RFC 3825, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Option for Coordinate-based Location Configuration Information*.

ELIN LCI Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN) location data format provides a unique number for each location for Emergency Call Services (ECS). In North America, ELINs are typically 10 digits long; ELINs up to 25 digits are supported.

Civic Address LCI The Civic Address location data format uses common street address format, as described in *RFC4776*.

Transmission and Reception

Table 69-3 describes the LLDP transmission and reception processes. Additional LLDP-MED processes are described in “**LLDP-MED Operation**” on page 69.9.

Table 69-3: LLDP transmission and reception processes

| When ... | and ... | then ... |
|--|---|--|
| LLDP is enabled | Ports are configured to transmit LLDP advertisements | Regular LLDP advertisements are sent via these ports at intervals determined by the transmit interval. Each advertisement contains local information (from the Local Systems MIB) for all the mandatory TLVs and the optional TLVs that the port is configured to send. |
| | Ports are configured to receive LLDP advertisements | Information received in advertisements via these ports is stored in the Neighbor table (Remote Systems MIB). This information is retained until it is replaced by a more recent advertisement from the same neighbor or it times out (the TTL elapses). |
| Local information changes | The transmission delay time has elapsed since the last advertisement was transmitted | New advertisements are sent containing the new set of local information. |
| Neighbor information changes | Notifications are enabled, and the notification interval has elapsed since the last notification was sent | The SNMP notification (trap) <code>lldpRemTablesChange</code> is sent. |
| LLDP transmission and reception is disabled on a port. | An LLDP command was used to do this | It transmits a final ‘shutdown’ LLDPDU with a Time-To-Live (TTL) TLV that has a value of “0”. This tells any remote neighboring devices to remove the information associated with this switch from their remote systems MIB. Then it stops transmitting and receiving advertisements. The neighbor information remains in the Remote Systems MIB until it times out. |
| | A shutdown command was used on the port | It makes a best effort to send a shutdown LLDPDU. Then it stops transmitting and receiving advertisements. The neighbor information remains in the Remote Systems MIB until it times out. |
| | Something else disabled LLDP | It does not send a shutdown LLDPDU. It stops transmitting and receiving advertisements. The neighbor information remains in the Remote Systems MIB until it times out. |
| | It is enabled again | LLDP reinitializes and resumes transmitting and receiving advertisements after the reinitialization interval has elapsed. |
| The Neighbor table has 1600 neighbors | | It discards any further neighbors. |
| LLDP receives a LLDPDU or TLV with a detectable error | | It discards the incorrect TLV. |
| LLDP receives a TLV it does not recognize | It contains no basic format errors | It stores it for possible later retrieval by network management (in the unrecognized TLV information table <code>lldpRemUnknownTLVTable</code> in the LLDP MIB). |

LLDP-MED Operation

When LLDP is enabled, LLDP-MED is enabled by default, and uses the same LLDP transmission and reception process described in [Table 69-3](#). When LLDP receives an advertisement indicating a newly connected LLDP-MED-capable device on a port, it transmits one LLDP-MED advertisement per second via this port, a configurable number of times (the *fast start count*). Thereafter, it sends regular advertisements at the LLDP transmit interval. When the last advertisement for an LLDP-MED-capable device connected to the port times out, it stops sending LLDP-MED advertisements via the port.

If LLDP-MED notifications are enabled for a port, and SNMP traps for LLDP are enabled, LLDP-MED generates a *Topology Change Notification (LLDP-MED IldpXMedTopology ChangeDetected)* when a new LLDP-MED compliant IP telephony device is connected to a port or removed from a port. This notification includes the following information:

- IP Phone Chassis ID and Chassis ID sub-type (IP address)
- LLDP Endpoint Device Class
- Switch Chassis ID (MAC address) and Port ID where the device is attached.

Storing LLDP Information

When an LLDP device receives a valid LLDP advertisement from a neighboring network device, it stores the information in an IEEE-defined Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Information Base (MIB).

LLDP stores information in the LLDP MIB defined in Section 12 of the *IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005*, its extensions defined in *Annex F, Annex G*, and *ANSI/TIA-1057- 2006*, about:

LLDP-EXT-MED-MIB ANSI/TIA-1057- 2006, Section 13.3, LLDP-MED MIB Definition

- Local system information. This is the information that LLDP can transmit in advertisements to its neighbors.
- Remote systems information. This is the data that the device receives in advertisements from its neighbors.
- LLDP configuration. This can be used with SNMP to configure LLDP on the device.
- LLDP statistics. This includes information about LLDP operation on the device, including packet and event counters.

This information can be accessed either via SNMP, or directly using the command line interface.

Local system Information about your device is called local system information. The LLDP local system MIB maintains this information, which consists of device details, as well as any user-configured information that you have set up for your switch, for example a port description or a management address.

LLDP on this device can store one management address per port, and transmit this in LLDP advertisements. It can store multiple management addresses received from each neighbor.

Remote systems Information gained from neighboring devices is called remote system information. The LLDP remote systems MIB maintains this information.

The length of time for which neighbor information remains in the LLDP remote systems MIB is determined by the Time-To-Live (TTL) value of received LLDPDUs. When it receives an advertisement from a neighbor, LLDP starts a timer based on the Time To Live (TTL) information in the advertisement. The Time To Live (TTL) information in an advertisement is:

$TTL = \text{transmit interval} \times \text{holdtime multiplier}$. If the TTL elapses, for instance if the neighbor has been removed, LLDP deletes the neighbor's information from the MIB. This ensures that only valid LLDP information is stored.

Whenever a new neighbor is discovered, or an existing neighbor sends an advertisement with new information that differs from the previous advertisement, for example a new or changed TLV, a remote tables change event is activated. If SNMP notifications are enabled, the notification `lldpRemTablesChange` is sent.

To prevent the remote systems MIB from using large amounts of memory and possibly affecting the operation of your switch, it limits the number of neighbors it stores information for to 1600. If it is storing information from 1600 neighbors, and detects any more neighbors, it is considered to have too many neighbors, and discards advertisements from the rest. There is no per-port limit to the number of neighbors.

SNMP utilities An SNMP utility can read the Neighbors table MIB (Remote Systems Data in the LLDP MIB) on a device to find out about the LLDP neighbors it is directly connected to on each port. Then it can read the Neighbors table MIB on each of these neighbors to find out about their neighboring LLDP devices, and so on.

Configuring LLDP

You can configure LLDP on the device using either:

- the command line interface. For detailed descriptions of the commands, see [Chapter 70, LLDP Commands](#), or
- SNMP—see [Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#).

This section includes the following command line interface configuration procedures:

- **“Configure LLDP” on page 69.12**— This procedure includes configuration for LLDP between network connectivity devices; it does not include LLDP-MED. If you are configuring LLDP-MED only, use the following procedure instead of this one.
- **“Configure LLDP-MED” on page 69.14**—This procedure includes the LLDP configuration required to support LLDP-MED, as well as specific LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN configuration.
- **“Configure Authentication for Voice VLAN” on page 69.19**—This procedure includes 802.1X port authentication configuration including dynamic VLAN assignment to be used with LLDP-MED. Use the previous procedure before using this one.

Because LLDP is often used together with SNMP, consider configuring SNMP before you configure LLDP. LLDP transmits large amounts of data about the network. For security reasons, we recommend configuring SNMP for SNMP version 3 only (for read and write access). Remove all SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 configuration. See [Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction](#), and [Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#).

Configure LLDP

Use the procedure in [Table 69-4](#) below to configure LLDP.

Some optional TLVs send information that can be configured by other commands. If LLDP will be configured to send these TLVs, consider whether to configure the corresponding parameters first.

- Port Description. See the [description \(interface\)](#) command on page 12.2.
- System Name. See the [hostname](#) command on page 8.13.

Table 69-4: Configuration procedure for LLDP

| Step 1. Enable LLDP | |
|---|--|
| 1. | <code>awplus#configure terminal</code> Enter Configuration mode. |
| 2. | <code>awplus(config)#lldp run</code> Enable LLDP. |
| Step 2. Configure ports for LLDP | |
| Configure each port to determine whether and which LLDP messages are transmitted and received. If all the ports running LLDP require the same configuration, configure them all together. Otherwise repeat these commands for each port or group of ports that requires a particular configuration. | |
| 3. | <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> Enter Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports. |
| 4. | <code>awplus(config-if)#lldp tlv-select {[<tlv>]...}</code> <code>awplus(config-if)#lldp tlv-select all</code> By default, the mandatory TLVs are included in LLDP messages. Enable the transmission of one or more optional TLVs through these port as required. |
| 5. | <code>awplus(config-if)#exit</code> Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 6. | <code>awplus(config)#interface <port-list></code> By default, transmission and reception of LLDP advertisements is enabled on all ports. Enter Interface Configuration mode for any switch ports that should have transmission or reception disabled. |
| 7. | <code>awplus(config-if)#no lldp {[transmit] [receive]}</code> Disable transmission and/or reception as required. |
| 8. | <code>awplus(config-if)#exit</code> Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 9. | <code>awplus(config)#exit</code> Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| Step 3. Check LLDP configuration | |
| 10. | <code>awplus#show lldp</code> <code>awplus#show lldp interface [<port-list>]</code> <code>awplus#show lldp local-info [base] [dot1] [dot3] [med] [interface <port-list>]</code> <code>awplus#show running-config lldp</code> Review the LLDP configuration. |
| Step 4. Monitor LLDP | |
| 11. | <code>awplus#show lldp neighbors</code> <code>awplus#show lldp neighbors detail</code> <code>awplus#show lldp statistics</code> <code>awplus#show lldp statistics interface [<port-list>]</code> Monitor LLDP operations and display neighbor information as required. |

Table 69-4: Configuration procedure for LLDP (cont.)

| Step 5. Advanced LLDP configuration | |
|---|--|
| <p>The configuration procedure above and the defaults for other settings suit most networks. Use the following commands for fine tuning if necessary.</p> <p>Timer intervals should be long enough not to create unnecessarily high numbers of advertisements when there are topology changes. However, be aware that if the intervals are long, a neighbor's information can continue to be stored after its information has changed, or after it is disconnected.</p> | |
| 12. | <pre>awplus#configure terminal</pre> <p>Enter Configuration mode.</p> |
| 13. | <pre>awplus(config)#interface <port-list></pre> <p>Enter Interface Configuration mode for the switch ports.</p> |
| 14. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp management-address <ipaddr></pre> <p>Override the default LLDP management address advertised through this port if required. This must be an IPv4 address that is already configured on the device. To see the management address that will be advertised, use the show lldp local-info command on page 70.39.</p> |
| 15. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp notifications</pre> <p>By default, SNMP notifications are not transmitted. Enable them for these ports if required. (SNMP LLDP traps (notifications) must also be enabled.)</p> |
| 16. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#exit</pre> <p>Return to Global Configuration mode.</p> |
| 17. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp timer <5-32768></pre> <p>The transmit interval determines how often regular LLDP transmits advertisements from each port. The transmit interval must be at least four times the transmission delay. Default: 30 seconds</p> |
| 18. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp notification-interval <5-3600></pre> <p>The notification interval determines the minimum interval between sending SNMP notifications (traps). Default: 5 seconds</p> |
| 19. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp tx-delay <1-8192></pre> <p>A series of successive changes over a short period of time can trigger the agent to send a large number of LLDPDUs. To prevent this, there is a transmission delay timer. This establishes a minimum length of time that must elapse between successive LLDP transmissions. The transmission delay cannot be greater than a quarter of the transmit interval. Default: 2 seconds</p> |
| 20. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp reinit <1-10></pre> <p>Reinitialization delay timer determines the minimum time after disabling LLDP on a port before it can reinitialize. Default: 2 seconds</p> |
| 21. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp holdtime-multiplier <2-10></pre> <p>The transmit interval is multiplied by the holdtime multiplier to give the Time To Live (TTL) value that is advertised to neighbors. Default: 4</p> |
| 22. | <pre>awplus(config)#exit</pre> <p>Return to Privileged Exec mode.</p> |
| Step 6. Clear data | |
| <p>If necessary, you can clear either neighbor information or LLDP statistics for particular ports or all ports.</p> | |
| 23. | <pre>awplus#clear lldp table [interface <port-list>]</pre> <p>Clear the information from the table of neighbor information.</p> |
| 24. | <pre>awplus#clear lldp statistics [interface <port-list>]</pre> <p>Clear LLDP statistics (packet and event counters).</p> |

Configure LLDP-MED

Use the procedure in [Table 69-5](#) to configure LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN for voice devices connected to the switch.

Consider whether you also need to configure:

- Simple Network Management Protocol ([Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#))
- 802.1X port authentication ([Chapter 39, 802.1X Commands](#), [Chapter 41, Authentication Commands](#), [Chapter 43, AAA Commands](#))
- RADIUS server ([Chapter 49, Local RADIUS Server Commands](#), or [Chapter 45, RADIUS Commands](#))
- Quality of Service ([Chapter 37, QoS Commands](#))
- Access Control Lists ([Chapter 33, IPv4 Hardware Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#) and [Chapter 34, IPv4 Software Access Control List \(ACL\) Commands](#))
- Power over Ethernet (PoE), if the switch supports PoE ([Chapter 23, Power over Ethernet Commands](#))

In most cases, configuring LLDP-MED using SNMP or using the CLI command line interface (CLI) described in [Chapter 70, LLDP Commands](#) has the same effect. However, the effect of configuring location information using SNMP differs from the CLI. When location information is assigned to a port by SNMP and a matching location is not found on the device, then a new location is automatically created and assigned to the specified port. If the location is unset by SNMP later, then the location is removed to prevent accumulating SNMP-set location information. However, if the location is being used for other ports, the automatically created location is not removed until no ports use it. Once it is modified or assigned to other ports by CLI commands, the location remains even after no ports use the location.

Table 69-5: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED

| Step 1. Configure a Voice VLAN | |
|--|---|
| Create a VLAN for voice data from voice endpoint devices connected to ports on the switch. Specify the network policy for voice data in this voice VLAN. LLDP-MED sends the network policy to voice devices connected to these ports. The voice devices use this network policy to determine the VLAN, priority and DSCP tagging of voice data it transmits. | |
| 1. <code>awplus# configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. <code>awplus(config)# vlan database</code> | Enter VLAN Database Configuration mode. |
| 3. <code>awplus(config-vlan)# vlan <vid> [name <vlan-name>] [state {enable disable}]</code> | Create a VLAN to be used for the voice data to and from voice devices connected to the switch. By default, the new VLAN is enabled. |
| 4. <code>awplus(config-vlan)# exit</code> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| 5. <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter interface configuration mode for the ports to be configured with the same network policy. This may be all the switch ports with voice devices connected to them, or a subset if the network policy will differ between ports. |

Table 69-5: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED(cont.)

| | |
|--|---|
| 6. <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport voice vlan</code> <code>[<vid> dot1p dynamic untagged]</code> | Specify the VLAN tagging to be used for voice data on these ports. Use the dynamic option if the VLAN tagging will be allocated dynamically by a RADIUS server. To configure authentication and dynamic VLAN allocation using the local RADIUS server, see the procedure in Table 69-6 on page 69.19 . Default: none . |
| 7. <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport voice vlan</code> <code>priority <0-7></code> | Specify the priority-tagging that voice endpoint devices should put into their data packets. Default: 5 . |
| 8. <code>awplus(config-if)# switchport voice dscp <0-</code> <code>63></code> | Specify the DSCP value that voice endpoint devices should put into their data packets. Default: 0 . |
| 9. <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| Step 2. Enable LLDP | |
| 10. <code>awplus(config)# lldp run</code> | Enable LLDP on the switch. Default: LLDP is disabled. |
| 11. <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter interface configuration mode for the switch ports LLDP is NOT to run on. |
| 12. <code>awplus(config-if)# no lldp {[transmit] [receive]}</code> | Disable transmission or reception on these ports as required. Default: transmit and receive enabled. |
| 13. <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| Step 3. Configure LLDP-MED location information Create civic address, coordinate, and/or ELIN locations, and assign them to switch ports. | |
| 14. <code>awplus(config)# location civic-location identifier</code> <code><civic-loc-id></code> | Specify a civic location ID, and enter configuration mode for this identifier. |
| 15. <code>awplus(config-civic)# country <country></code> <code>awplus(config-civic)# city <city></code> <code>awplus(config-civic)# primary-road-name</code> <code><primary-road-name></code> <code>awplus(config-civic)# street-suffix <street-</code> <code>suffix></code> <code>awplus(config-civic)# house-number <house-</code> <code>number></code> <code>awplus(config-civic)# <other-civic-location-</code> <code>parameters ...></code> | Specify the civic address location information for the civic address location ID. You must specify a country first, using the upper-case two-letter country code, and then at least one more parameter. For the full set of parameters you can use to specify civic address location, see the location civic-location configuration command on page 70.22 . |
| 16. <code>awplus(config-civic)# exit</code> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| 17. <code>awplus(config)# location coord-location</code> <code>identifier <coord-loc-id></code> | Specify a coordinate location identifier, and enter configuration mode for this identifier. |

Table 69-5: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED(cont.)

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 18 | <pre>awplus(config-coord)# latitude <latitude> awplus(config-coord)# lat-resolution <lat-resolution> awplus(config-coord)# longitude <longitude> awplus(config-coord)# long-resolution <long-resolution> awplus(config-coord)# altitude <altitude> {meters floor} awplus(config-coord)# alt-resolution <alt-resolution> awplus(config-coord)# datum {wgs84 nad83-navd nad83-mlw}</pre> | Specify the coordinate location for the coordinate location identifier. |
| 19 | <pre>awplus(config-coord)# exit</pre> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| 20 | <pre>awplus(config)# location elin-location <elin> identifier <elin-loc-id></pre> | Specify an ELIN location identifier, and the ELIN for this identifier. |
| 21 | <pre>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></pre> | Enter interface configuration mode for one or more switch ports which require the same location information. |
| 22 | <pre>awplus(config-if)# location civic-location-id <civic-loc-id> awplus(config-if)# location coord-location-id <coord-loc-id> awplus(config-if)# location elin-location-id <elin-loc-id></pre> | Assign the civic, coordinate, and/or ELIN location identifier to these ports. LLDP-MED will send the location information associated with a port to the voice endpoint device attached to it. |
| 23 | <pre>awplus(config-if)# exit</pre> | Return to global configuration mode. |
| 24 | <pre>awplus(config)# exit</pre> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| Step 4. Review the LLDP configuration | | |
| 25 | <pre>awplus# show lldp</pre> | Check general LLDP configuration settings. |
| 26 | <pre>awplus# show lldp interface [<port-list>]</pre> | Check LLDP configuration for ports. |
| 27 | <pre>awplus# show lldp local-info [base] [dot1] [dot3] [med] [interface <port-list>]</pre> | Check the information that may be transmitted in LLDP advertisements from ports. |
| 28 | <pre>awplus# show location {civic-location coord- location elin-location} awplus# show location {civic-location coord- location elin-location} identifier {<civic-loc-id> <coord-loc-id> <elin-loc-id>} awplus# show location {civic-location coord- location elin-location} interface <port-list></pre> | Check the location information. |
| 29 | <pre>awplus# show running-config lldp</pre> | If you want to display all the LLDP configuration, use this command. |
| Step 5. Monitor LLDP-MED | | |
| 30 | <pre>awplus# show lldp neighbors [interface <port- list>] awplus# show lldp neighbors detail [base] [dot1] [dot3] [med] [interface <port-list>] awplus# show lldp statistics awplus# show lldp statistics interface [<port-list>]</pre> | Monitor LLDP operation. |

Table 69-5: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED(cont.)

| Step 6. Advanced configuration | |
|---|--|
| The configuration procedure above and the defaults for other settings suit most networks. Use the following commands for fine tuning if necessary. For information about other advanced configuration for LLDP, including LLDP timers, see Table 69-4 . | |
| 31. | <pre>awplus#configure terminal</pre> Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 32. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp faststart-count <1-10></pre> By default, when LLDP-MED detects an LLDP-MED capable device on a port, it sends 3 advertisements at 1s intervals. Change the fast start count if required. Default: fast start count is 3 |
| 33. | <pre>awplus(config)#lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check</pre> By default non-strict order checking for LLDP-MED advertisements is disabled. That is, strict order checking is applied to LLDP-MED advertisements, and LLDP-MED TLVs in non-standard order are discarded. If you require LLDP-MED advertisements with non-standard TLV order to be received and stored, enable non-strict order checking. |
| 34. | <pre>awplus(config)#interface <port-list></pre> Enter interface configuration mode for switch ports which will have the same advanced configuration. |
| 35. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp management-address <ipaddr></pre> Override the default LLDP management address advertised through this port if required. This must be an IPv4 address that is already configured on the device. To see the management address that will be advertised, use the show lldp local-info command on page 70.39 . |
| 36. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp med-notifications</pre> By default, SNMP notifications are not transmitted. Enable LLDP-MED Topology Change Detected notifications for these ports if required. (SNMP LLDP traps (notifications) must also be enabled.) Default: LLDP-MED notifications disabled |
| 37. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp tlv-select {[<tlv>]...}</pre> Enable the transmission of one or more optional LLDP TLVs in LLDP-MED advertisements through this port as required. The mac-phy-config TLV is transmitted in LLDP-MED advertisements whether or not it is enabled by this command. Default: all mandatory TLVs are enabled. |
| 38. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#lldp med-tlv-select {[capabilities] [network-policy] [location] [inventory-management]} awplus(config-if)#lldp med-tlv-select all awplus(config-if)#no lldp med-tlv-select {[capabilities] [network-policy] [location] [inventory-management]} awplus(config-if)#no lldp med-tlv-select all</pre> Enable or disable the transmission of optional LLDP-MED TLVs in LLDP-MED advertisements through these ports as required. Default: capabilities, network-policy, location, power-management are enabled. |
| 39. | <pre>awplus(config-if)#exit</pre> Return to global configuration mode. |

Table 69-5: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED(cont.)

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| 40 | <code>awplus(config)# exit</code> | Return to privileged exec mode. |
| Step 7. Clear data | | |
| If necessary, you can clear either neighbor information or LLDP statistics for particular ports or all ports. | | |
| 41. | <code>awplus# clear lldp table [interface <port-list>]</code> | Clear the information from the table of neighbor information. |
| 42. | <code>awplus# clear lldp statistics [interface <port-list>]</code> | Clear LLDP statistics (packet and event counters). |

Configure Authentication for Voice VLAN

Use the following procedure with LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN to configure 802.1X port authentication and dynamic VLAN assignment using the local RADIUS server on the switch to which the voice endpoint devices are connected.

This procedure assumes that you have already:

- configured Voice VLAN and LLDP-MED using the procedure in [Table 69-5 on page 69.14](#)
- set **switchport voice vlan** to **dynamic** in the above procedure

This procedure configures the local RADIUS server. If your configuration uses one or more remote RADIUS servers instead, set the IP addresses of the remote RADIUS servers using the **radius-server host** command ([Step 2 on page 19](#)), and skip all the steps that configure the local RADIUS server ([Step 3 on page 19](#) to [Step 14 on page 20](#)).

Table 69-6: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN with RADIUS authentication and dynamic VLAN

| Step 1. Configure the IP address of the RADIUS host. | |
|---|--|
| 1. <code>awplus#configure terminal</code> | Enter Global Configuration mode. |
| 2. <code>awplus(config)#radius-server host 127.0.0.1 key <key-string></code> | Configure the IP address for the RADIUS server to be the local loopback interface address, so that RADIUS requests are sent to the local RADIUS server. Set the key that Network Access Servers (NAS) will need to use to get access to this RADIUS server. |
| Step 2. Enable the local RADIUS server. | |
| 3. <code>awplus(config)# radius-server local</code> | Enter RADIUS Server Configuration mode. |
| 4. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# server enable</code> | Enable the local RADIUS server. |
| 5. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# nas 127.0.0.1 key <key-string></code> | Set the switch as a client device (Network Access Server), to allow it to send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server. Use the same local loopback interface IP address and key as in the radius-server host command used in Step 2 on page 19 . |
| Step 3. Configure a local RADIUS user group for connected PCs. | |
| 6. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# group <user-group-name></code> | Create a local RADIUS server user group for PCs connected to the switch, and enter RADIUS Server Group Configuration mode. |
| 7. <code>awplus(config-radsrv-group)# vlan <vid> <vlan-name></code> | Set the VLAN ID for the user group. This will assign the untagged VLAN ID to authenticated ports for PCs connected to the switch. To create multiple user groups for PCs with different VLANs, repeat these two steps. |
| 8. <code>awplus(config-radsrv-group)#exit</code> | Return to RADIUS Server Configuration mode. |
| Step 4. Configure a local RADIUS user group for connected phones. | |
| 9. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# group <user-group-name></code> | Create a new local RADIUS server user group for phones connected to the switch, and enter RADIUS Server Group Configuration mode. |

Table 69-6: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN with RADIUS authentication and dynamic VLAN(cont.)

| | |
|--|--|
| 10. <code>awplus(config-radsrv-group)# vlan {<vid> <vlan-name>}</code> | Configure the local RADIUS user group for connected phones to use the same VLAN as the PCs in Step 7 , so that the phones have access to the same untagged VLAN as the PCs. |
| 11. <code>awplus(config-radsrv-group)# egress-vlan-id <vid> tagged</code> | Set the Egress-VLAN ID attribute for the user group, and set it to send tagged frames. This will assign the tagged VLAN ID to authenticated ports for phones connected to the switch. To create multiple user groups for phones with different VLANs, repeat these two steps. |
| 12. <code>awplus(config-radsrv-group)# exit</code> | Return to RADIUS Server Configuration mode. |
| Step 5. Add users to the local RADIUS server. | |
| 13. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# user <radius-user-name> password <user-password> group <user-group></code> | Add RADIUS user names and passwords to the local RADIUS server for authenticating PCs and phones. Assign the corresponding RADIUS server user groups configured in Step 6 and Step 9 . See the user (RADIUS server) command on page 49.36 . |
| 14. <code>awplus(config-radsrv)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| Step 6. Create VLANs. | |
| 15. <code>awplus(config)# vlan database</code> | Enter VLAN Database Configuration mode. |
| 16. <code>awplus(config-vlan)# vlan <vid-range></code> | Create the VLANs corresponding to the VLAN IDs that will be allocated to the authenticated ports, as configured in Step 7 , Step 10 , and Step 11 . |
| 17. <code>awplus(config-vlan)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| Step 7. Configure 802.1X port authentication. | |
| 18. <code>awplus(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius</code> | Enable 802.1X port authentication and set it to use the default group of RADIUS servers that contains all RADIUS server hosts configured using the radius-server host command. In this procedure, the default group consists of the local RADIUS server. |
| 19. <code>awplus(config)# interface <port-list></code> | Enter interface configuration mode for the ports that have users (PCs and phones) connected to them. |
| 20. <code>awplus(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto</code> | Enable 802.1X for port authentication on these ports. |
| 21. <code>awplus(config-if)# auth host-mode multi-suplicant</code> | Configure the ports to use multi-suplicant mode for authentication, so that the phone and PC can be dynamically allocated to different VLANs. |
| 22. <code>awplus(config-if)# auth dynamic-vlan-creation</code> | Configure the ports to accept dynamic VLAN allocation. In this procedure, the RADIUS server user groups for both the PCs and the phones use the same VLAN (Step 7 and Step 10), so the default rule (deny) allows them both the access they need to the port VLAN. For other options, see the auth dynamic-vlan-creation command on page 41.6 . Default: deny differently assigned VLAN IDs. |

Table 69-6: Configuration procedure for Voice VLAN with RADIUS authentication and dynamic VLAN(cont.)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 23. | <code>awplus(config-if)# exit</code> | Return to Global Configuration mode. |
| 24. | <code>awplus(config)# exit</code> | Return to Privileged Exec mode. |
| Step 8. Review the authentication configuration. | | |
| 25. | <code>awplus# show radius local-server group [<user-group-name>]</code> <code>awplus# show radius local-server nas [<ip-address>]</code> <code>awplus# show radius local-server user [<user-name>]</code> | Check the local RADIUS server configuration. |
| 26. | <code>awplus# show vlan {all brief dynamic static auto static-ports<1-4094>}</code> | Check the VLAN configuration. |
| 27. | <code>awplus# show dot1x [all]</code> | Check the 802.1X authentication configuration. |

Chapter 70: LLDP Commands



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 70.2 |
| Command List | 70.2 |
| clear lldp statistics..... | 70.2 |
| clear lldp table..... | 70.3 |
| debug lldp | 70.4 |
| lldp faststart-count | 70.5 |
| lldp holdtime-multiplier | 70.6 |
| lldp management-address | 70.7 |
| lldp med-notifications | 70.8 |
| lldp med-tlv-select..... | 70.9 |
| lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check | 70.11 |
| lldp notification-interval..... | 70.12 |
| lldp notifications..... | 70.13 |
| lldp port-number-type | 70.14 |
| lldp reinit | 70.15 |
| lldp run..... | 70.16 |
| lldp timer..... | 70.17 |
| lldp tlv-select | 70.18 |
| lldp transmit receive | 70.20 |
| lldp tx-delay | 70.21 |
| location civic-location configuration | 70.22 |
| location civic-location identifier | 70.26 |
| location civic-location-id | 70.27 |
| location coord-location configuration | 70.28 |
| location coord-location identifier | 70.30 |
| location coord-location-id | 70.31 |
| location elin-location..... | 70.32 |
| location elin-location-id..... | 70.33 |
| show debugging lldp | 70.34 |
| show lldp..... | 70.35 |
| show lldp interface | 70.37 |
| show lldp local-info | 70.39 |
| show lldp neighbors | 70.43 |
| show lldp neighbors detail | 70.45 |
| show lldp statistics..... | 70.48 |
| show lldp statistics interface..... | 70.50 |
| show location | 70.52 |

Introduction

LLDP and LLDP-MED can be configured using the commands in this chapter, or by using SNMP with the LLDP-MIB and LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB (“**Public MIBs**” on page 68.79). The Voice VLAN feature can be configured using commands in [Chapter 17, VLAN Commands](#). For more information about LLDP, see [Chapter 69, LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration](#).

LLDP can transmit a lot of data about the network. Typically, the network information gathered using LLDP is transferred to a Network Management System by SNMP. For security reasons, we recommend using SNMPv3 for this purpose ([Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction, Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#)).

LLDP operates over physical ports only. For example, it can be configured on switch ports that belong to static or dynamic channel groups, but not on the channel groups themselves.

Command List

This chapter contains an alphabetical list of commands used to configure LLDP.

clear lldp statistics

This command clears all LLDP statistics (packet and event counters) associated with specified ports. If no port list is supplied, LLDP statistics for all ports are cleared.

Syntax `clear lldp statistics [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports for which the statistics are to be cleared. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To clear the LLDP statistics on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# clear lldp statistics interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

To clear all LLDP statistics for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# clear lldp statistics
```

Related Commands [show lldp statistics](#)
[show lldp statistics interface](#)

clear lldp table

This command clears the table of LLDP information received from neighbors through specified ports. If no port list is supplied, neighbor information is cleared for all ports.

Syntax `clear lldp table [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code><port-list></code> | The ports for which the neighbor information table is to be cleared. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To clear the table of neighbor information received on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# clear lldp table interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

To clear the entire table of neighbor information received through all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# clear lldp table
```

Related Commands [show lldp neighbors](#)

debug lldp

This command enables specific LLDP debug for specified ports. When LLDP debugging is enabled, diagnostic messages are entered into the system log. If no port list is supplied, the specified debugging is enabled for all ports.

The **no** variant of this command disables specific LLDP debug for specified ports. If no port list is supplied, the specified debugging is disabled for all ports.

Syntax

```
debug lldp {[rx][rxpkt][tx][txpkt]} [interface [<port-list>]]
debug lldp operation
no debug lldp {[rx][rxpkt][tx][txpkt]} [interface [<port-list>]]
no debug lldp operation
no debug lldp all
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| rx | LLDP receive debug. |
| rxpkt | Raw LLDPDUs received in hex format. |
| tx | LLDP transmit debug. |
| txpkt | Raw Tx LLDPDUs transmitted in hex format. |
| <port-list> | The ports for which debug is to be configured. |
| operation | Debug for LLDP internal operation on the switch. |
| all | Disables all LLDP debugging for all ports. |

Default By default no debug is enabled for any ports.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable debugging of LLDP receive on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# debug lldp rx interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

To enable debugging of LLDP transmit with packet dump on all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# debug lldp tx txpkt
```

To disable debugging of LLDP receive on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug lldp rx interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

To turn off all LLDP debugging on all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug lldp all
```

Related Commands

- [show debugging lldp](#)
- [show running-config lldp](#)
- [terminal monitor](#)

lldp faststart-count

Use this command to set the fast start count for LLDP-MED. The fast start count determines how many fast start advertisements LLDP sends from a port when it starts sending LLDP-MED advertisements from the port, for instance, when it detects a new LLDP-MED capable device.

The **no** variant of this command resets the LLDP-MED fast start count to the default (3).

Syntax `lldp faststart-count <1-10>`
`no lldp faststart-count`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-10> | The number of fast start advertisements to send. |

Default The default fast start count is 3.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the fast start count to 5, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp faststart-count 5
```

To reset the fast start count to the default setting (3), use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp faststart-count
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)

lldp holdtime-multiplier

This command sets the holdtime multiplier value. The transmit interval is multiplied by the holdtime multiplier to give the Time To Live (TTL) value that is advertised to neighbors.

The **no** variant of this command sets the multiplier back to its default.

Syntax `lldp holdtime-multiplier <2-10>`
`no lldp holdtime-multiplier`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------|
| <2-10> | The multiplier factor. |

Default The default holdtime multiplier value is 4.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The Time-To-Live defines the period for which the information advertised to the neighbor is valid. If the Time-To-Live expires before the neighbor receives another update of the information, then the neighbor discards the information from its database.

Examples To set the holdtime multiplier to 2, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp holdtime-multiplier 2
```

To set the holdtime multiplier back to its default, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp holdtime-multiplier 2
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)

lldp management-address

This command sets the IPv4 address to be advertised to neighbors (in the Management Address TLV) via the specified ports. This address will override the default address for these ports.

The **no** variant of this command clears the user-configured management IP address advertised to neighbors via the specified ports. The advertised address reverts to the default.

Syntax `lldp management-address <ipaddr>`

`no lldp management-address`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code><ipaddr></code> | The IPv4 address to be advertised to neighbors, in dotted decimal format. This must be one of the IP addresses already configured on the device. |

Default The local loopback interface primary IPv4 address if set, else the primary IPv4 interface address of the lowest numbered VLAN the port belongs to, else the MAC address of the device's baseboard if no VLAN IP addresses are configured for the port.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage To see the management address that will be advertised, use the [show lldp interface](#) command or [show lldp local-info](#) command.

Examples To set the management address advertised by ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, to be 192.168.1.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp management-address 192.168.1.6
```

To clear the user-configured management address advertised by ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, and revert to using the default address, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp management-address
```

Related Commands [show lldp interface](#)
[show lldp local-info](#)

lldp med-notifications

Use this command to enable LLDP to send LLDP-MED Topology Change Detected SNMP notifications relating to the specified ports. The switch sends an SNMP event notification when a new LLDP-MED compliant IP Telephony device is connected to or disconnected from a port on the switch.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the sending of LLDP-MED Topology Change Detected notifications relating to the specified ports.

Syntax `lldp med-notifications`
`no lldp med-notifications`

Default The sending of LLDP-MED notifications is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To enable the sending of LLDP-MED Topology Change Detected notifications relating to ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp med-notifications
```

To disable the sending of LLDP-MED notifications relating to ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp med-notifications
```

Related Commands [lldp notification-interval](#)
[lldp notifications](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)
[show lldp interface](#)

lldp med-tlv-select

Use this command to enable LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs for transmission in LLDP advertisements via the specified ports. The LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV must be enabled before any of the other LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs are enabled.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the specified LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs for transmission in LLDP advertisements via these ports. In order to disable the LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV, you must also disable the rest of these TLVs. Disabling all these TLVs disables LLDP-MED advertisements.

Syntax `lldp med-tlv-select {[capabilities] [network-policy] [location] [inventory-management]}`

`lldp med-tlv-select all`

`no lldp med-tlv-select {[capabilities] [network-policy] [location] [inventory-management]}`

`no lldp med-tlv-select all`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| capabilities | LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV. When this is enabled, the MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV from IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs is also automatically included in LLDP-MED advertisements, whether or not it has been explicitly enabled by the lldp tlv-select command. |
| network-policy | Network Policy TLV. This TLV is transmitted if Voice VLAN parameters have been configured using the commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ switchport voice dscp ■ switchport voice vlan ■ switchport voice vlan priority |
| location | Location Identification TLV. This TLV is transmitted if location information has been configured using the commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ location elin-location-id ■ location civic-location identifier ■ location civic-location configuration ■ location coord-location identifier ■ location coord-location configuration ■ location elin-location |
| inventory-management | Inventory Management TLV Set, including the following TLVs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Hardware Revision ■ Firmware Revision ■ Software Revision ■ Serial Number ■ Manufacturer Name ■ Model Name ■ Asset ID |
| all | All LLDP-MED Organizationally Specific TLVs. |

Default By default LLDP-MED Capabilities, Network Policy, Location Identification and Extended Power-via-MDI TLVs are enabled. Therefore, if LLDP is enabled using the **lldp run** command, by default LLDP-MED advertisements are transmitted on ports that detect LLDP-MED neighbors connected to them.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage LLDP-MED TLVs are only sent in advertisements via a port if there is an LLDP-MED-capable device connected to it. To see whether there are LLDP-MED capable devices connected to the ports, use the **show lldp neighbors** command.

Examples To enable inclusion of the Inventory TLV Set in advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp med-tlv-select inventory-management
```

To exclude the Inventory TLV Set in advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp med-tlv-select inventory-management
```

To disable LLDP-MED advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, disable all these TLVs using the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp med-tlv-select all
```

Related Commands

- lldp tlv-select**
- location elin-location-id**
- location civic-location identifier**
- location civic-location configuration**
- location coord-location identifier**
- location coord-location configuration**
- location elin-location**
- show lldp interface**
- switchport voice dscp**
- switchport voice vlan**
- switchport voice vlan priority**

lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check

Use this command to enable non-strict order checking for LLDP-MED advertisements it receives. That is, use this command to enable LLDP to receive and store TLVs from LLDP-MED advertisements even if they do not use standard TLV order.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable non-strict order checking for LLDP-MED advertisements, that is, to set strict TLV order checking, so that LLDP discards any LLDP-MED TLVs that occur before the LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV in an advertisement.

Syntax `lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check`
`no lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check`

Default By default TLV non-strict order checking for LLDP-MED advertisements is disabled. That is, strict order checking is applied to LLDP-MED advertisements, according to ANSI/TIA-1057, and LLDP-MED TLVs in non-standard order are discarded.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage The ANSI/TIA-1057 specifies standard order for TLVs in LLDP-MED advertisements, and specifies that if LLDP receives LLDP advertisements with non-standard LLDP-MED TLV order, the TLVs in non-standard order should be discarded. This implementation of LLDP-MED follows the standard: it transmits TLVs in the standard order, and by default discards LLDP-MED TLVs that occur before the LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV in an advertisement. However, some implementations of LLDP transmit LLDP-MED advertisements with non-standard TLV order. To receive and store the data from these non-standard advertisements, enable non-strict order checking for LLDP-MED advertisements using this command.

Examples To enable strict TLV order checking, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp tlv-order-check
```

To disable strict TLV order checking, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp tlv-order-check
```

Related Commands [show running-config lldp](#)

lldp notification-interval

This command sets the notification interval. This is the minimum interval between LLDP SNMP notifications (traps) of each kind (LLDP Remote Tables Change Notification and LLDP-MED Topology Change Notification).

The **no** variant of this command sets the notification interval back to its default.

Syntax `lldp notification-interval <5-3600>`
`no lldp notification-interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code><5-3600></code> | The interval in seconds. |

Default The default notification interval is 5 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the notification interval to 20 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp notification-interval 20
```

To set the notification interval back to its default, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp notification-interval
```

Related Commands [lldp notifications](#)
[show lldp](#)

lldp notifications

This command enables the sending of LLDP SNMP notifications (traps) relating to specified ports.

The **no** variant of this command disables the sending of LLDP SNMP notifications for specified ports.

Syntax `lldp notifications`
`no lldp notifications`

Default The sending of LLDP SNMP notifications is disabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To enable sending of LLDP SNMP notifications for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp notifications
```

To disable sending of LLDP SNMP notifications for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp notifications
```

Related Commands [lldp notification-interval](#)
[show lldp interface](#)
[snmp-server enable trap](#)

lldp port-number-type

This command sets the type of port identifier used to enumerate, that is to count, the LLDP MIB local port entries. The LLDP MIB (*IEEE Standard 802.1AB-2005, Section 12, LLDP MIB Definitions.*) requires the port number value to count LLDP local port entries.

This command also enables you to optionally set an interface index to enumerate the LLDP MIB local port entries, if required by your management system.

The **no** variant of this command resets the type of port identifier back to the default setting (number).

Syntax `lldp port-number-type [number|ifindex]`
`no lldp port-number-type`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| number | Set the type of port identifier to a port number to enumerate the LLDP MIB local port entries. |
| ifindex | Set the type of port identifier to an interface index to enumerate the LLDP MIB local port entries. |

Default The default port identifier type is number. The no variant of this command sets the port identifier type to the default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the type of port identifier used to enumerate LLDP MIB local port entries to port numbers, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp port-number-type number
```

To set the type of port identifier used to enumerate LLDP MIB local port entries to interface indexes, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp port-number-type ifindex
```

To reset the type of port identifier used to enumerate LLDP MIB local port entries the default (port numbers), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp port-number-type
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)

lldp reinit

This command sets the value of the reinitialization delay. This is the minimum time after disabling LLDP on a port before it can reinitialize.

The **no** variant of this command sets the reinitialization delay back to its default setting.

Syntax `lldp reinit <1-10>`
`no lldp reinit`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| <1-10> | The delay in seconds. |

Default The default reinitialization delay is 2 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the reinitialization delay to 3 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp reinit 3
```

To set the reinitialization delay back to its default, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp reinit
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)

lldp run

This command enables the operation of LLDP on the device.

The **no** variant of this command disables the operation of LLDP on the device. The LLDP configuration remains unchanged.

Syntax `lldp run`

`no lldp run`

Default LLDP is disabled by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enable LLDP operation, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp run
```

To disable LLDP operation, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp run
```

Related Commands [show lldp](#)

lldp timer

This command sets the value of the transmit interval. This is the interval between regular transmissions of LLDP advertisements.

The **no** variant of this command sets the transmit interval back to its default.

Syntax `lldp timer <5-32768>`

`no lldp timer`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><5-32768></code> | The transmit interval in seconds. The transmit interval must be at least four times the transmission delay timer (lldp tx-delay command). |

Default The default transmit interval is 30 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the transmit interval to 90 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp timer 90
```

To set the transmit interval back to its default, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp timer
```

Related Commands **lldp tx-delay**
show lldp

lldp tlv-select

This command enables one or more optional TLVs, or all TLVs, for transmission in LLDP advertisements via the specified ports. The TLVs can be specified in any order; they are placed in LLDP frames in a fixed order (as described in IEEE 802.1AB). The mandatory TLVs (Chassis ID, Port ID, Time To Live, End of LLDPDU) are always included in LLDP advertisements.

In LLDP-MED advertisements the MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV will be always be included regardless of whether it is selected by this command.

The **no** variant of this command disables the specified optional TLVs, or all optional TLVs, for transmission in LLDP advertisements via the specified ports.

Syntax

```
lldp tlv-select {[<tlv>]...}
lldp tlv-select all
no lldp tlv-select {[<tlv>]...}
no lldp tlv-select all
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <tlv> | <p>The TLV to transmit in LLDP advertisements. One of these keywords:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ port-description (specified by the description (interface) command on page 12.2) ■ system-name (specified by the hostname command on page 8.13) ■ system-description ■ system-capabilities ■ management-address ■ port-vlan ■ port-and-protocol-vlans ■ vlan-names ■ protocol-ids ■ mac-phy-config ■ power-management (Power Via MDI TLV) ■ link-aggregation ■ max-frame-size |
| all | All TLVs. |

Default By default no optional TLVs are included in LLDP advertisements. The MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV (**mac-phy-config**) is included in LLDP-MED advertisements whether or not it is selected by this command.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To include the management-address and system-name TLVs in advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp tlv-select management-address system-name
```

To include all optional TLVs in advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp tlv-select all
```

To exclude the management-address and system-name TLVs from advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp tlv-select management-address system-name
```

To exclude all optional TLVs from advertisements transmitted via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp tlv-select all
```

Related Commands

- [description \(interface\)](#)
- [hostname](#)
- [lldp med-tlv-select](#)
- [show lldp interface](#)
- [show lldp local-info](#)

lldp transmit receive

This command enables transmission and/or reception of LLDP advertisements to or from neighbors through the specified ports.

The **no** variant of this command disables transmission and/or reception of LLDP advertisements through specified ports.

Syntax `lldp {[transmit] [receive]}`
`no lldp {[transmit] [receive]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| transmit | Enable or disable transmission of LLDP advertisements via this port or ports. |
| receive | Enable or disable reception of LLDP advertisements via this port or ports. |

Default LLDP advertisement transmission and reception are enabled on all ports by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Examples To enable transmission of LLDP advertisements on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp transmit
```

To enable LLDP advertisement transmission and reception on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# lldp transmit receive
```

To disable LLDP advertisement transmission and reception on ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
awplus(config-if)# no lldp transmit receive
```

Related Commands [show lldp interface](#)

lldp tx-delay

This command sets the value of the transmission delay timer. This is the minimum time interval between transmitting LLDP advertisements due to a change in LLDP local information.

The **no** variant of this command sets the transmission delay timer back to its default setting.

Syntax `lldp tx-delay <1-8192>`
`no lldp tx-delay`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><1-8192></code> | The transmission delay in seconds. The transmission delay cannot be greater than a quarter of the transmit interval (lldp timer command). |

Default The default transmission delay timer is 2 seconds.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the transmission delay timer to 12 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# lldp tx-delay 12
```

To set the transmission delay timer back to its default, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no lldp tx-delay
```

Related Commands [lldp timer](#)
[show lldp](#)

location civic-location configuration

Use these commands to configure a civic address location. The country parameter must be specified first, and at least one of the other parameters must be configured before the location can be assigned to a port.

Use the **no** variants of this command to delete civic address parameters from the location.

Syntax

```
country <country>
state <state>
no state
county <county>
no county
city <city>
no city
division <division>
no division
neighborhood <neighborhood>
no neighborhood
street-group <street-group>
no street-group
leading-street-direction <leading-street-direction>
no leading-street-direction
trailing-street-suffix <trailing-street-suffix>
no trailing-street-suffix
street-suffix <street-suffix>
no street-suffix
house-number <house-number>
no house-number
house-number-suffix <house-number-suffix>
no house-number-suffix
landmark <landmark>
no landmark
additional-information <additional-information>
no additional-information
name <name>
no name
postalcode <postalcode>
no postalcode
```

```

building <building>
no building
unit <unit>
no unit
floor <floor>
no floor
room <room>
no room
place-type <place-type>
no place-type
postal-community-name <postal-community-name>
no postal-community-name
post-office-box <post-office-box>
no post-office-box
additional-code <additional-code>
no additional-code
seat <seat>
no seat
primary-road-name <primary-road-name>
no primary-road-name
road-section <road-section>
no road-section
branch-road-name <branch-road-name>
no branch-road-name
sub-branch-road-name <sub-branch-road-name>
no sub-branch-road-name
street-name-pre-modifier <street-name-pre-modifier>
no street-name-pre-modifier
streetname-post-modifier <streetname-post-modifier>
no streetname-post-modifier

```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <country> | Upper-case two-letter country code, as specified in ISO 3166. |
| <state> | State (Civic Address (CA) Type 1): national subdivisions (state, canton, region). |
| <county> | County (CA Type 2): County, parish, gun (JP), district (IN). |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|--|--|
| <code><city></code> | City (CA Type 3): city, township, shi (JP). |
| <code><division></code> | City division (CA Type 4): City division, borough, city district, ward, chou (JP). |
| <code><neighborhood></code> | Neighborhood (CA Type 5): neighborhood, block. |
| <code><street-group></code> | Street group (CA Type 6): group of streets below the neighborhood level. |
| <code><leading-street-direction></code> | Leading street direction (CA Type 16). |
| <code><trailing-street-suffix></code> | Trailing street suffix (CA Type 17). |
| <code><street-suffix></code> | Street suffix (CA Type 18): street suffix or type. |
| <code><house-number></code> | House number (CA Type 19). |
| <code><house-number-suffix></code> | House number suffix (CA Type 20). |
| <code><landmark></code> | Landmark or vanity address (CA Type 21). |
| <code><additional-information></code> | Additional location information (CA Type 22). |
| <code><name></code> | Name (CA Type 23): residence and office occupant. |
| <code><postal-code></code> | Postal/zip code (CA Type 24). |
| <code><building></code> | Building (CA Type 25): structure. |
| <code><unit></code> | Unit (CA Type 26): apartment, suite. |
| <code><floor></code> | Floor (CA Type 27). |
| <code><room></code> | Room (CA Type 28). |
| <code><place-type></code> | Type of place (CA Type 29). |
| <code><postal-community-name></code> | Postal community name (CA Type 30). |
| <code><post-office-box></code> | Post office box (P.O. Box) (CA Type 31). |
| <code><additional-code></code> | Additional code (CA Type 32). |
| <code><seat></code> | Seat (CA Type 33): seat (desk, cubicle, workstation). |
| <code><primary-road-name></code> | Primary road name (CA Type 34). |
| <code><road-section></code> | Road section (CA Type 35). |
| <code><branch-road-name></code> | Branch road name (CA Type 36). |
| <code><sub-branch-road-name></code> | Sub-branch road name (CA Type 37). |
| <code><street-name-pre-modifier></code> | Street name pre-modifier (CA Type 38). |
| <code><street-name-post-modifier></code> | Street name post-modifier (CA Type 39). |

Default By default no civic address location information is configured.

Mode Civic Address Location Configuration

Usage The **country** parameter must be configured before any other parameters can be configured; this creates the location. The country parameter cannot be deleted. One or more of the other parameters must be configured before the location can be assigned to a port. The country parameter must be entered as an upper-case two-letter country code, as specified in *ISO 3166*. All other parameters are entered as alpha-numeric strings. Do not configure all the civic address parameters (this would generate TLVs that are too long). Configure a subset of these parameters—enough to consistently and precisely identify the location of the device. If the location is to be used for Emergency Call Service (ECS), the particular ECS application may have guidelines for configuring the civic address location. For more information about civic address format, see **“LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV” on page 69.7**.

To specify the civic address location, use the **location civic-location identifier** command. To delete the civic address location, use the **no** variant of the **location civic-location identifier** command. To assign the civic address location to particular ports, so that it can be advertised in TLVs from those ports, use the command **location civic-location-id** command.

Examples To configure civic address location 1 with location "27 Nazareth Avenue, Christchurch, New Zealand" in civic-address format, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# location civic-location identifier 1
awplus(config-civic)# country NZ
awplus(config-civic)# city Christchurch
awplus(config-civic)# primary-road-name Nazareth
awplus(config-civic)# street-suffix Avenue
awplus(config-civic)# house-number 27
```

Related Commands **location civic-location-id**
location civic-location identifier
show lldp local-info
show location

location civic-location identifier

Use this command to enter the Civic Address Location Configuration mode to configure the specified location.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete a civic address location. This also removes the location from any ports it has been assigned to.

Syntax `location civic-location identifier <civic-loc-id>`
`no location civic-location identifier <civic-loc-id>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <code><civic-loc-id></code> | A unique civic address location ID, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default there are no civic address locations.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage To configure the location information for this civic address location identifier, use the **location civic-location configuration** command. To associate this civic location identifier with particular ports, use the **location elin-location-id** command.

Up to 400 locations can be configured on the switch for each type of location information, up to a total of 1200 locations.

Examples To enter Civic Address Location Configuration mode for the civic address location with ID 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# location civic-location identifier 1
awplus(config-civic)#
```

To delete the civic address location with ID 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no location civic-location identifier 1
```

Related Commands **location civic-location-id**
location civic-location configuration
show location
show running-config lldp

location civic-location-id

Use this command to assign a civic address location to the ports. The civic address location must already exist. This replaces any previous assignment of civic address location for the ports. Up to one location of each type can be assigned to a port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a location identifier from the ports.

Syntax `location civic-location-id <civic-loc-id>`
`no location civic-location-id [<civic-loc-id>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><civic-loc-id></code> | Civic address location ID, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default no civic address location is assigned to ports.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The civic address location associated with a port can be transmitted in Location Identification TLVs via the port.

Before using this command, create the location using the following commands:

- **location civic-location identifier** command
- **location civic-location configuration** command

If a civic-address location is deleted using the **no** variant of the **location civic-location identifier** command, it is automatically removed from all ports.

Examples To assign the civic address location 1 to port1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# location civic-location-id 1
```

To remove a civic address location from port1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# no location civic-location-id
```

Related Commands **lldp med-tlv-select**
location civic-location identifier
location civic-location configuration
show location

location coord-location configuration

Use this command to configure a coordinate-based location. All parameters must be configured before assigning this location identifier to a port.

Syntax

```
latitude <latitude>
lat-resolution <lat-resolution>
longitude <longitude>
long-resolution <long-resolution>
altitude <altitude> {meters|floor}
alt-resolution <alt-resolution>
datum {wgs84|nad83-navd|nad83-mllw}
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <lat-resolution> | Latitude resolution, as a number of valid bits, in the range 0 to 34. |
| <latitude> | Latitude value in degrees in the range -90.0 to 90.0 |
| <long-resolution> | Longitude resolution, as a number of valid bits, in the range 0 to 34. |
| <longitude> | Longitude value in degrees, in the range -180.0 to 180.0. |
| <alt-resolution> | Altitude resolution, as a number of valid bits, in the range 0 to 30. A resolution of 0 can be used to indicate an unknown value. |
| <altitude> | Altitude value, in meters or floors. |
| meters | The altitude value is in meters. |
| floors | The altitude value is in floors. |
| datum | The geodetic system (or datum) that the specified coordinate values are based on. |
| wgs84 | World Geodetic System 1984. |
| nad83-navd | North American Datum 1983 - North American Vertical Datum. |
| nad83-mllw | North American Datum 1983 - Mean Lower Low Water vertical datum. |

Default By default no coordinate location information is configured.

Mode Coordinate Configuration

Usage Latitude and longitude values are always stored internally, and advertised in the Location Identification TLV, as 34-bit fixed-point binary numbers, with a 25-bit fractional part, irrespective of the number of digits entered by the user. Likewise altitude is stored as a 30-bit fixed point binary number, with an 8-bit fractional part. Because the user-entered decimal values are stored as fixed point binary numbers, they cannot always be

represented exactly—the stored binary number is converted to a decimal number for display in the output of the **show location** command. For example, a user-entered latitude value of “2.77” degrees is displayed as “2.769999809265136718750000”.

The **lat-resolution**, **long-resolution**, and **alt-resolution** parameters allow the user to specify the resolution of each coordinate element as the number of valid bits in the internally-stored binary representation of the value. These resolution values can be used by emergency services to define a search area.

To specify the coordinate identifier, use the **location coord-location identifier** command. To remove coordinate information, delete the coordinate location by using the **no** variant of that command. To associate the coordinate location with particular ports, so that it can be advertised in TLVs from those ports, use the **location elin-location-id** command.

Example To configure the location for the White House in Washington DC, which has the coordinates based on the WGS84 datum of 38.89868 degrees North (with 22 bit resolution), 77.03723 degrees West (with 22 bit resolution), and 15 meters height (with 9 bit resolution), use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# location coord-location identifier 1
awplus(config-coord)# la-resolution 22
awplus(config-coord)# latitude 38.89868
awplus(config-coord)# lo-resolution 22
awplus(config-coord)# longitude -77.03723
awplus(config-coord)# alt-resolution 9
awplus(config-coord)# altitude 15 meters
awplus(config-coord)# datum wgs84
```

Related Commands **location coord-location-id**
location coord-location identifier
show lldp local-info
show location

location coord-location identifier

Use this command to enter Coordinate Location Configuration mode for this coordinate location.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete a coordinate location. This also removes the location from any ports it has been assigned to.

Syntax location coord-location identifier *<coord-loc-id>*
no location coord-location identifier *<coord-loc-id>*

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <i><coord-loc-id></i> | A unique coordinate location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default there are no coordinate locations.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Up to 400 locations can be configured on the switch for each type of location information, up to a total of 1200 locations.

To configure this coordinate location, use the **location coord-location configuration** command. To associate this coordinate location with particular ports, so that it can be advertised in TLVs from those ports, use the **location coord-location-id** command.

Examples To enter Coordinate Location Configuration mode to configure the coordinate location with ID 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# location coord-location identifier 1
awplus(config-coord)#
```

To delete coordinate location 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no location coord-location identifier 1
```

Related Commands **location coord-location-id**
location coord-location configuration
show lldp local-info
show location

location coord-location-id

Use this command to assign a coordinate location to the ports. The coordinate location must already exist. This replaces any previous assignment of coordinate location for the ports. Up to one location of each type can be assigned to a port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a location from the ports.

Syntax location coord-location-id <coord-loc-id>
no location coord-location-id [<coord-loc-id>]

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <coord-loc-id> | Coordinate location ID, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default no coordinate location is assigned to ports.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The coordinate location associated with a port can be transmitted in Location Identification TLVs via the port.

Before using this command, configure the location using the following commands:

- **location coord-location identifier** command
- **location coord-location configuration** command

If a coordinate location is deleted using the **no** variant of the **location coord-location identifier** command, it is automatically removed from all ports.

Examples To assign coordinate location 1 to port1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# location coord-location-id 1
```

To remove a coordinate location from port1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# no location coord-location-id
```

Related Commands **lldp med-tlv-select**
location coord-location identifier
location coord-location configuration
show location

location elin-location

Use this command to create or modify an ELIN location.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete an ELIN location, and remove it from any ports it has been assigned to.

Syntax `location elin-location <elin> identifier <elin-loc-id>`
`no location elin-location identifier <elin-loc-id>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code><elin></code> | Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN) for Emergency Call Service (ECS), in the range 10 to 25 digits long. In North America, ELINs are typically 10 digits long. |
| <code><elin-loc-id></code> | A unique ELIN location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default there are no ELIN location identifiers.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage Up to 400 locations can be configured on the switch for each type of location information, up to a total of 1200 locations.

To assign this ELIN location to particular ports, so that it can be advertised in TLVs from those ports, use the **location elin-location-id** command.

Examples To create a new ELIN location with ID 1, and configure it with ELIN "1234567890", use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# location elin-location 1234567890 identifier 1
```

To delete existing ELIN location with ID 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no location elin-location identifier 1
```

Related Commands **location elin-location-id**
show lldp local-info
show location

location elin-location-id

Use this command to assign an ELIN location to the ports. The ELIN location must already exist. This replaces any previous assignment of ELIN location for the ports. Up to one location of each type can be assigned to a port.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove a location identifier from the ports.

Syntax location elin-location-id <elin-loc-id>
no location elin-location-id [<elin-loc-id>]

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| <elin-loc-id> | ELIN location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |

Default By default no ELIN location is assigned to ports.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage An ELIN location associated with a port can be transmitted in Location Identification TLVs via the port.

Before using this command, configure the location using the **location elin-location** command.

If an ELIN location is deleted using the **no** variant of one of the **location elin-location** command, it is automatically removed from all ports.

Examples To assign ELIN location 1 to port 1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# location elin-location-id 1
```

To remove an ELIN location from port 1.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1
awplus(config-if)# no location elin-location-id
```

Related Commands **lldp med-tlv-select**
location elin-location
show location

show debugging lldp

This command displays LLDP debug settings for specified ports. If no port list is supplied, LLDP debug settings for all ports are displayed.

Syntax `show debugging lldp [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports for which the LLDP debug settings are shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display LLDP debug settings for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging lldp
```

To display LLDP debug settings for ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging lldp interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
```

Output **Figure 70-1: Example output from the show debugging lldp command**

```

LLDP Debug settings:
Debugging for LLDP internal operation is on
Port      Rx      RxPkt   Tx      TxPkt
-----
1.0.1     Yes    Yes     No      No
1.0.2     Yes    No      No      No
1.0.3     No     No      No      No
1.0.4     Yes    Yes     Yes     No
1.0.5     Yes    No      Yes     No
1.0.6     Yes    Yes     Yes     Yes

```

Table 70-1: Parameters in the output of the show debugging lldp command

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Port | Port name. |
| Rx | Whether debugging of LLDP receive is enabled on the port. |
| RxPkt | Whether debugging of LLDP receive packet dump is enabled on the port. |
| Rx | Whether debugging of LLDP transmit is enabled on the port. |
| RxPkt | Whether debugging of LLDP transmit packet dump is enabled on the port. |

Related Commands `debug lldp`

show lldp

This command displays LLDP status and global configuration settings.

Syntax show lldp

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display LLDP status and global configuration settings, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp
```

Output

Figure 70-2: Example output from the show lldp command

```
awplus# show lldp

LLDP Global Configuration:                               [Default Values]
LLDP Status ..... Enabled                               [Disabled]
Notification Interval ..... 5 secs                     [5]
Tx Timer Interval ..... 30 secs                        [30]
Hold-time Multiplier ..... 4                          [4]
(Computed TTL value ..... 120 secs)
Reinitialization Delay .... 2 secs                     [2]
Tx Delay ..... 2 secs                                  [2]
Port Number Type..... Ifindex                          [Port-Number]
Fast Start Count ..... 5                               [3]

LLDP Global Status:
Total Neighbor Count ..... 47
Neighbors table last updated 0 hrs 0 mins 43 secs ago
```

Table 70-2: Parameters in the output of the show lldp command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| LLDP Status | Whether LLDP is enabled. Default is disabled. |
| Notification Interval | Minimum interval between LLDP notifications. |
| Tx Timer Interval | Transmit interval between regular transmissions of LLDP advertisements. |
| Hold-time Multiplier | The holdtime multiplier. The transmit interval is multiplied by the holdtime multiplier to give the Time To Live (TTL) value that is advertised to neighbors. |
| Reinitialization Delay | The reinitialization delay. This is the minimum time after disabling LLDP transmit on a port before it can reinitialize again. |
| Tx Delay | The transmission delay. This is the minimum time interval between transmitting advertisements due to a change in LLDP local information. |
| Port Number Type | The type of port identifier used to enumerate LLDP MIB local port entries, as set by the lldp port-number-type command. |
| Fast Start Count | The number of times fast start advertisements are sent for LLDP-MED. |

Table 70-2: Parameters in the output of the show lldp command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Total Neighbor Count | Number of LLDP neighbors discovered on all ports. |
| Neighbors table last updated | The time since the LLDP neighbor table was last updated. |

Related Commands [show lldp interface](#)
[show running-config lldp](#)

show lldp interface

This command displays LLDP configuration settings for specified ports. If no port list is specified, LLDP configuration for all ports is displayed.

Syntax show lldp interface [*<port-list>*]

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i><port-list></i> | The ports for which the LLDP configuration settings are to be shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display LLDP configuration settings for ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp interface port1.0.1-1.0.6
```

To display LLDP configuration settings for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp interface
```

Output **Figure 70-3: Example output from the show lldp interface command**

```
awplus# show lldp interface port1.0.1-1.0.8
LLDP Port Status and Configuration:

* = LLDP is inactive on this port because it is a mirror analyser port
Notification Abbreviations:
  RC = LLDP Remote Tables Change      TC = LLDP-MED Topology Change
TLV Abbreviations:
Base:  Pd = Port Description           Sn = System Name
       Sd = System Description        Sc = System Capabilities
       Ma = Management Address
802.1: Pv = Port VLAN ID              Pp = Port And Protocol VLAN ID
       Vn = VLAN Name                 Pi = Protocol Identity
802.3: Mp = MAC/PHY Config/Status     Po = Power Via MDI (PoE)
       La = Link Aggregation          Mf = Maximum Frame Size
MED:  Mc = LLDP-MED Capabilities      Np = Network Policy
       Lo = Location Identification    Pe = Extended PoE      In = Inventory
```

| Port | Rx/Tx | Notif | Management Addr | Optional TLVs Enabled for Tx | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-----------------|------------------------------|----------|----------|------------|
| | | | | Base | 802.1 | 802.3 | MED |
| 1.0.1 | Rx Tx | RC -- | 192.168.100.123 | PdSnSdScMa | ----- | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| *1.0.2 | -- Tx | RC -- | 192.168.100.123 | PdSnSdScMa | ----- | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| 1.0.3 | Rx Tx | RC -- | 192.168.100.123 | Pd--SdScMa | PvPpVnPi | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| 1.0.4 | -- -- | RC -- | 192.168.100.123 | PdSnSd--Ma | ----- | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| 1.0.5 | Rx Tx | RC TC | 192.168.100.123 | PdSnSdScMa | PvPpVnPi | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| 1.0.6 | Rx Tx | RC TC | 192.168.100.123 | Pd---ScMa | ----- | ----- | McNpLoPe-- |
| 1.0.7 | Rx Tx | -- TC | 192.168.100.123 | PdSnSdScMa | PvPpVnPi | MpPoLaMf | McNpLoPeIn |
| 1.0.8 | Rx Tx | -- TC | 192.168.1.1 | PdSn--ScMa | PvPpVnPi | ----- | McNp----- |

Table 70-3: Parameters in the output of the show lldp interface command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Port | Port name. |
| Rx | Whether reception of LLDP advertisements is enabled on the port. |
| Tx | Whether transmission of LLDP advertisements is enabled on the port. |
| Notif | Whether sending SNMP notification for LLDP is enabled on the port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ RM = Remote Tables Change Notification ■ TP = LLDP-MED Topology Change Notification |
| Management Addr | Management address advertised to neighbors. |
| Base TLVs Enabled for Tx | List of optional Base TLVs enabled for transmission: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Pd = Port Description ■ Sn =System Name ■ Sd = System Description ■ Sc =System Capabilities ■ Ma = Management Address |
| 802.1 TLVs Enabled for Tx | List of optional 802.1 TLVs enabled for transmission: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Pv = Port VLAN ID ■ Pp = Port And Protocol VLAN ID ■ Vn = VLAN Name ■ Pi =Protocol Identity |
| 802.3 TLVs Enabled for Tx | List of optional 802.3 TLVs enabled for transmission: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mp = MAC/PHY Configuration/Status ■ Po = Power Via MDI (PoE) ■ La = Link Aggregation ■ Mf = Maximum Frame Size |
| MED TLVs Enabled for Tx | List of optional LLDP-MED TLVs enabled for transmission: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mc = LLDP-MED Capabilities ■ Np = Network Policy ■ Lo = Location Information, ■ Pe = Extended Power-Via-MDI ■ In = Inventory |

Related Commands [show lldp](#)
[show running-config lldp](#)

show lldp local-info

This command displays local LLDP information that can be transmitted through specified ports. If no port list is entered, local LLDP information for all ports is displayed.

Syntax `show lldp local-info [base] [dot1] [dot3] [med] [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| base | Information for base TLVs. |
| dot1 | Information for 802.1 TLVs. |
| dot3 | Information for 802.3 TLVs. |
| med | Information for LLDP-MED TLVs. |
| <port-list> | The ports for which the local information is to be shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Usage Whether and which local information is transmitted in advertisements via a port depends on:

- whether the port is set to transmit LLDP advertisements (**lldp transmit receive** command)
- which TLVs it is configured to send (**lldp tlv-select** command, **lldp med-tlv-select** command)

Examples To display local information transmitted via port 1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp local-info interface port1.0.1
```

To display local information transmitted via all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp local-info
```

Output Figure 70-4: Example output from the show lldp local-info command

```

LLDP Local Information:

Local port1.0.1:
Chassis ID Type ..... MAC address
Chassis ID ..... 0015.77c9.7453
Port ID Type ..... Interface alias
Port ID ..... port1.0.1
TTL ..... 120
Port Description ..... [not configured]
System Name ..... awplus
System Description ..... Allied Telesis router/switch, AW+
v5.4.3A

System Capabilities - Supported .. Bridge, Router
                   - Enabled .... Bridge, Router

Management Address ..... 192.168.1.6
Port VLAN ID (PVID) ..... 1
Port & Protocol VLAN - Supported . Yes
                   - Enabled ... No
                   - VIDs ..... 0

VLAN Names ..... default
Protocol IDs ..... 9000, 0026424203000000, 888e01, aaaa03,
88090101, 00540000e302, 0800, 0806, 86dd

MAC/PHY Auto-negotiation ..... Supported, Enabled
  Advertised Capability ..... 1000BaseTFD, 100BaseTXFD, 100BaseTX,
10BaseTFD, 10BaseT
  Operational MAU Type ..... 1000BaseTFD (30)
Power Via MDI (PoE) ..... Supported, Enabled
  Port Class ..... PSE
  Pair Control Ability ..... Disabled
  Power Class ..... Unknown
Link Aggregation ..... Supported, Disabled
Maximum Frame Size ..... 1522
LLDP-MED Device Type ..... Network Connectivity
LLDP-MED Capabilities ..... LLDP-MED Capabilities, Network Policy,
Location Identification,
Extended Power - PSE, Inventory

Network Policy ..... [not configured]
Location Identification ..... Civic Address
  Country Code ..... NZ
  City ..... Christchurch
  Street Suffix ..... Avenue
  House Number ..... 27
  Primary Road Name ..... Nazareth
Location Identification ..... ELIN
  ELIN ..... 123456789012
Extended Power Via MDI (PoE) ..... PSE
  Power Source ..... Primary Power
  Power Priority ..... Low
  Power Value ..... 4.4 Watts

Inventory Management:
Hardware Revision ..... A-0
Firmware Revision ..... 1.1.0
Software Revision ..... v5.4.3A
Serial Number ..... G1Q78900B
Manufacturer Name ..... Allied Telesis Inc.
Model Name ..... x610-48Ts/XP
Asset ID ..... [zero length]

```

Table 70-4: Parameters in the output of the show lldp local-info command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Chassis ID Type | Type of the Chassis ID. |
| Chassis ID | Chassis ID that uniquely identifies the local device. |
| Port ID Type | Type of the Port ID. |
| Port ID | Port ID of the local port through which advertisements are sent. |
| TTL | Number of seconds that the information advertised by the local port remains valid. |
| Port Description | Port description of the local port, as specified by the description (interface) command on page 12.2. |
| System Name | System name, as specified by the hostname command on page 8.13. |
| System Description | System description. |
| System Capabilities (Supported) | Capabilities that the local port supports. |
| System Capabilities (Enabled) | Enabled capabilities on the local port. |
| Management Addresses | Management address associated with the local port. To change this, use the lldp management-address command. |
| Port VLAN ID (PVID) | VLAN identifier associated with untagged or priority tagged frames received via the local port. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (Supported) | Whether Port & Protocol VLANs (PPV) is supported on the local port. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (Enabled) | Whether the port is in one or more Port & Protocol VLANs. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (VIDs) | List of identifiers for Port & Protocol VLANs that the port is in. |
| VLAN Names | List of VLAN names for VLANs that the local port is assigned to. |
| Protocol IDs | List of protocols that are accessible through the local port. |
| MAC/PHY Auto-negotiation | Auto-negotiation support and current status of the 802.3 LAN on the local port. |
| Power Via MDI (PoE) | PoE-capability and current status on the local port. |
| Port Class | Whether the device is a PSE (Power Sourcing Entity) or a PD (Powered Device) |

Table 70-4: Parameters in the output of the show lldp local-info command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Pair Control Ability | Whether power pair selection can be controlled |
| Power Pairs | Which power pairs are selected for power ("Signal Pairs" or "Spare Pairs") if pair selection can be controlled |
| Power Class | The power class of the PD device on the port (class 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4) |
| Link Aggregation | Whether the link is capable of being aggregated and it is currently in an aggregation. |
| Aggregated Port-ID | Aggregated port identifier. |
| Maximum Frame Size | The maximum frame size capability of the implemented MAC and PHY. |
| LLDP-MED Device Type | LLDP-MED device type |
| LLDP-MED Capabilities | Capabilities LLDP-MED capabilities supported on the local port. |
| Network Policy | List of network policies configured on the local port. |
| VLAN ID | VLAN identifier for the port for the specified application type |
| Tagged Flag | Whether the VLAN ID is to be used as tagged or untagged |
| Layer-2 Priority: | Layer 2 User Priority (in the range 0 to 7) |
| DSCP Value | Diffserv codepoint (in the range 0 to 63) |
| Location Identification | Location configured on the local port. |
| Extended Power Via MDI (PoE) | PoE-capability and current status of the PoE parameters for Extended Power-Via-MDI TLV on the local port. |
| Power Source | The power source the switch currently uses; either primary power or backup power. |
| Power Priority | The power priority configured on the port; either critical, high or low. |
| Power Value | The total power the switch can source over a maximum length cable to a PD device on the port. The value shows the power value in Watts from the PD side. |
| Inventory Management | Inventory information for the device. |

Related Commands [description \(interface\)](#)
[hostname](#)
[lldp transmit receive](#)

show lldp neighbors

This command displays a summary of information received from neighbors via specified ports. If no port list is supplied, neighbor information for all ports is displayed.

Syntax `show lldp neighbors [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <port-list> | The ports for which the neighbor information is to be shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display neighbor information received via all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp neighbors
```

To display neighbor information received via ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6 with LLDP-MED configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp neighbors interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

Output **Figure 70-5: Example output from the show lldp neighbors command**

```

LLDP Neighbor Information:
Total number of neighbors on these ports .... 4

System Capability Codes:
O = Other      P = Repeater    B = Bridge          W = WLAN Access Point
R = Router    T = Telephone    C = DOCSIS Cable Device  S = Station Only
LLDP-MED Device Type and Power Source Codes:
1 = Class I    3 = Class III    PSE = PoE          Both = PoE&Local    Prim = Primary
2 = Class II   N = Network Con. Locl = Local  Unkn = Unknown     Back = Backup

Local  Neighbor      Neighbor      Neighbor      System      MED
Port   Chassis ID    Port ID       Sys Name      Cap.        Ty Pwr
-----
1.0.1  002d.3044.7ba6  port1.0.2    awplus        OPBVRTCS
1.0.1  0011.3109.e5c6  port1.0.3    AT-9924 switch/route... --B-R---
1.0.6  0000.10cf.8590  port3        AR-442S       --B-R---
1.0.6  00ee.4352.df51  192.168.1.2  Jim's desk phone --B--T--    3 PSE
    
```

Table 70-5: Parameters in the output of the show lldp neighbors command

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Local Port | Local port on which the neighbor information was received. |
| Neighbor Chassis ID | Chassis ID that uniquely identifies the neighbor. |
| Neighbor Port Name | Port ID of the neighbor. |
| Neighbor Sys Name | System name of the LLDP neighbor. |

Table 70-5: Parameters in the output of the show lldp neighbors command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Neighbor Capability | Capabilities that are supported and enabled on the neighbor. |
| System Capability | System Capabilities of the LLDP neighbor. |
| MED Device Type | LLDP-MED Device class (Class I, II, III or Network Connectivity) |
| MED Power Source | LLDP-MED Power Source |

Related Commands [show lldp neighbors detail](#)

show lldp neighbors detail

This command displays in detail the information received from neighbors via specified ports. If no port list is supplied, detailed neighbor information for all ports is displayed.

Syntax `show lldp neighbors detail [base] [dot1] [dot3] [med] [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| base | Information for base TLVs. |
| dot1 | Information for 802.1 TLVs. |
| dot3 | Information for 803.1 TLVs. |
| med | Information for LLDP-MED TLVs. |
| <port-list> | The ports for which the neighbor information is to be shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display detailed neighbor information received via all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp neighbors detail
```

To display detailed neighbor information received via ports 1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp neighbors detail interface port1.0.1
```

Output Figure 70-6: Example output from the show lldp neighbors detail command

```

awplus# show lldp neighbors detail interface port1.0.1
LLDP Detailed Neighbor Information:

Local port1.0.1:
  Neighbors table last updated 0 hrs 0 mins 40 secs ago

  Chassis ID Type ..... MAC address
  Chassis ID ..... 0004.cd28.8754
  Port ID Type ..... Interface alias
  Port ID ..... port1.0.6
  TTL ..... 120 (secs)
  Port Description ..... [zero length]
  System Name ..... awplus
  System Description ..... Allied Telesis router/switch, AW+ v5.4.4
  System Capabilities - Supported .. Bridge, Router
  - Enabled .... Bridge, Router
  Management Addresses ..... 0004.cd28.8754
  Port VLAN ID (PVID) ..... 1
  Port & Protocol VLAN - Supported . Yes
  - Enabled ... Yes
  - VIDs ..... 5
  VLAN Names ..... default, vlan5
  Protocol IDs ..... 9000, 0026424203000000, 888e01, 8100,
  88090101, 00540000e302, 0800, 0806, 86dd
  MAC/PHY Auto-negotiation ..... Supported, Enabled
  Advertised Capability ..... 1000BaseTFD, 100BaseTXFD, 100BaseTX,
  10BaseTFD, 10BaseT
  Operational MAU Type ..... 1000BaseTFD (30)
  Power Via MDI (PoE) ..... [not advertised]
  Link Aggregation ..... Supported, Disabled
  Maximum Frame Size ..... 1522 (Octets)
  LLDP-MED Device Type ..... Network Connectivity
  LLDP-MED Capabilities ..... LLDP-MED Capabilities, Network Policy,
  Location Identification,
  Extended Power - PSE, Inventory
  Network Policy ..... [not advertised]
  Location Identification ..... [not advertised]
  Extended Power Via MDI (PoE) .... PD
  Power Source ..... PSE
  Power Priority ..... High
  Power Value ..... 4.4 Watts
  Inventory Management:
  Hardware Revision ..... X1-0
  Firmware Revision ..... 1.1.0
  Software Revision ..... v5.4.4
  Serial Number ..... M1NB73008
  Manufacturer Name ..... Allied Telesis Inc.
  Model Name ..... x900-12XT/S
  Asset ID ..... [zero length]

```

Table 70-6: Parameters in the output of the show lldp neighbors detail command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Chassis ID Type | Type of the Chassis ID. |
| Chassis ID | Chassis ID that uniquely identifies the neighbor. |
| Port ID Type | Type of the Port ID. |
| Port ID | Port ID of the neighbor. |
| TTL | Number of seconds that the information advertised by the neighbor remains valid. |
| Port Description | Port description of the neighbor's port. |

Table 70-6: Parameters in the output of the show lldp neighbors detail

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| System Name | Neighbor's system name. |
| System Description | Neighbor's system description. |
| System Capabilities (Supported) | Capabilities that the neighbor supports. |
| System Capabilities (Enabled) | Capabilities that are enabled on the neighbor. |
| Management Addresses | List of neighbor's management addresses. |
| Port VLAN ID (PVID) | VLAN identifier associated with untagged or priority tagged frames for the neighbor port. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (Supported) | Whether Port & Protocol VLAN is supported on the LLDP neighbor. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (Enabled) | Whether Port & Protocol VLAN is enabled on the LLDP neighbor. |
| Port & Protocol VLAN (VIDs) | List of Port & Protocol VLAN identifiers. |
| VLAN Names | List of names of VLANs that the neighbor's port belongs to. |
| Protocol IDs | List of protocols that are accessible through the neighbor's port. |
| MAC/PHY Auto-negotiation | Auto-negotiation configuration and status |
| Power Via MDI (PoE) | PoE configuration and status of 802.3 Power-Via-MDI TLV |
| Link Aggregation | Link aggregation information |
| Maximum Frame Size | The maximum frame size capability |
| LLDP-MED Device Type | LLDP-MED Device type |
| LLDP-MED Capabilities | LLDP-MED capabilities supported |
| Network Policy | List of network policies |
| Location Identification | Location information |
| Extended Power Via MDI (PoE) | PoE-capability and current status |
| Inventory Management | Inventory information |

Related Commands [show lldp neighbors](#)

show lldp statistics

This command displays the global LLDP statistics (packet and event counters).

Syntax `show lldp statistics`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display global LLDP statistics information, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp statistics
```

Output

Figure 70-7: Example output from the show lldp statistics command

```
awplus# show lldp statistics
Global LLDP Packet and Event counters:

Frames:   Out ..... 345
          In ..... 423
          In Errored ..... 0
          In Dropped ..... 0
TLVs:    Unrecognized ..... 0
          Discarded ..... 0
Neighbors: New Entries ..... 20
           Deleted Entries ..... 20
           Dropped Entries ..... 0
           Entry Age-outs ..... 20
```

Table 70-7: Parameters in the output of the show lldp statistics command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Frames Out | Number of LLDPDU frames transmitted. |
| Frames In | Number of LLDPDU frames received. |
| Frames In Errored | Number of invalid LLDPDU frames received. |
| Frames In Dropped | Number of LLDPDU frames received and discarded for any reason. |
| TLVs Unrecognized | Number of LLDP TLVs received that are not recognized but the TLV type is in the range of reserved TLV types. |
| TLVs Discarded | Number of LLDP TLVs discarded for any reason. |
| Neighbors New Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been inserted into the neighbor table. |
| Neighbors Deleted Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been removed from the neighbor table. |
| Neighbors Dropped Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors could not be entered into the neighbor table because of insufficient resources. |
| Neighbors Entry Age-outs Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been removed from the neighbor table because the information TTL interval has expired. |

Related Commands [clear lldp statistics](#)
[show lldp statistics interface](#)

show lldp statistics interface

This command displays the LLDP statistics (packet and event counters) for specified ports. If no port list is supplied, LLDP statistics for all ports are displayed.

Syntax `show lldp statistics interface [<port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <port-list> | The ports for which the statistics are to be shown. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display LLDP statistics information for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp statistics interface
```

To display LLDP statistics information for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.6, use the command:

```
awplus# show lldp statistics interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
```

Output

Figure 70-8: Example output from the show lldp statistics interface command

```
awplus# show lldp statistics interface port1.0.1,port1.0.6
LLDP Packet and Event Counters:
port1.0.1
  Frames:  Out ..... 27
           In ..... 22
           In Errored ..... 0
           In Dropped ..... 0
  TLVs:   Unrecognized ..... 0
           Discarded ..... 0
  Neighbors: New Entries ..... 3
             Deleted Entries ..... 0
             Dropped Entries ..... 0
             Entry Age-outs ..... 0
port1.0.6
  Frames:  Out ..... 15
           In ..... 18
           In Errored ..... 0
           In Dropped ..... 0
  TLVs:   Unrecognized ..... 0
           Discarded ..... 0
  Neighbors: New Entries ..... 1
             Deleted Entries ..... 0
             Dropped Entries ..... 0
             Entry Age-outs ..... 0
```

Table 70-8: Parameters in the output of the show lldp statistics interface command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| Frames Out | Number of LLDPDU frames transmitted. |
| Frames In | Number of LLDPDU frames received. |

Table 70-8: Parameters in the output of the show lldp statistics interface

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Frames In Errored | Number of invalid LLDPDU frames received. |
| Frames In Dropped | Number of LLDPDU frames received and discarded for any reason. |
| TLVs Unrecognized | Number of LLDP TLVs received that are not recognized but the TLV type is in the range of reserved TLV types. |
| TLVs Discarded | Number of LLDP TLVs discarded for any reason. |
| Neighbors New Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been inserted into the neighbor table. |
| Neighbors Deleted Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been removed from the neighbor table. |
| Neighbors Dropped Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors could not be entered into the neighbor table because of insufficient resources. |
| Neighbors Entry Age-outs Entries | Number of times the information advertised by neighbors has been removed from the neighbor table because the information TTL interval has expired. |

Related Commands **clear lldp statistics**
show lldp statistics

show location

Use this command to display selected location information configured on the switch.

Syntax

```
show location {civic-location|coord-location|elin-location}
show location {civic-location|coord-location|elin-location}
    identifier {<civic-loc-id>|<coord-loc-id>|<elin-loc-id>}
show location {civic-location|coord-location|elin-location} interface
    <port-list>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| civic-location | Display civic location information. |
| coord-location | Display coordinate location information. |
| elin-location | Display ELIN location information. |
| <civic-loc-id> | Civic address location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |
| <coord-loc-id> | Coordinate location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |
| <elin-loc-id> | ELIN location identifier, in the range 1 to 4095. |
| <port-list> | Ports to display information about. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Examples To display a civic address location configured on port1.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# show location civic-location interface port1.0.1
```

Figure 70-9: Example output from the show location command

```
awplus# show location civic-location interface port1.0.1
Port      ID  Element Type          Element Value
-----
1.0.1     1   Country           NZ
          City              Christchurch
          Street-suffix     Avenue
          House-number     27
          Primary-road-name Nazareth
```

To display coordinate location information configured on the identifier 1, use the command:

```
awplus# show location coord-location identifier 1
```

Figure 70-10: Example output from the show location command

```
awplus# show location coord-location identifier 1
ID  Element Type          Element Value
-----
1   Latitude Resolution    15 bits
    Latitude              38.8986481130123138427734375 degrees
    Longitude Resolution   15 bits
    Longitude             130.2323232293128967285156250 degrees
    Altitude Resolution    10 bits
    Altitude              2.500000000 meters
    Map Datum             WGS 84
```

The coordinate location information displayed may differ from the information entered because it is stored in binary format. For more information, see the **location coord-location configuration** command.

To display all ELIN location information configured on the switch, use the command:

```
awplus# show location elin-location
```

Figure 70-11: Example output from the show location command

```
awplus# show location elin-location
ID  ELIN
-----
1   1234567890
2   5432154321
```

- Related Commands**
- location elin-location-id**
 - location civic-location identifier**
 - location civic-location configuration**
 - location coord-location identifier**
 - location coord-location configuration**
 - location elin-location**

Chapter 71: SMTP Commands



| | |
|-------------------------|------|
| Command List | 71.2 |
| debug mail..... | 71.2 |
| delete mail..... | 71.3 |
| mail..... | 71.4 |
| mail from | 71.5 |
| mail smtpserver | 71.6 |
| show counter mail | 71.7 |
| show mail | 71.8 |
| undebg mail | 71.8 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure SMTP.

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

debug mail

This command turns on debugging for sending emails.

The **no** variant of this command turns off debugging for sending emails.

Syntax debug mail
no debug mail

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To turn on debugging for sending emails, use the command:

```
awplus# debug mail
```

To turn off debugging for sending emails, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug mail
```

Related Commands [delete mail](#)
[mail](#)
[mail from](#)
[mail smtpserver](#)
[show mail](#)
[show counter mail](#)
[undebug mail](#)

delete mail

This command deletes mail from the queue.

Syntax delete mail [mail-id <mail-id>|all]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| mail-id | Deletes a single mail from the mail queue. |
| <mail-id> | An unique mail ID number. Use the show mail command to display this for an item of mail. |
| all | Delete all the mail in the queue. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To delete a unique mail item 20060912142356.1234 from the queue, use the command:

```
awplus# delete mail 20060912142356.1234
```

To delete all mail from the queue, use the command:

```
awplus# delete mail all
```

Related Commands [debug mail](#)
[mail](#)
[mail from](#)
[mail smtpserver](#)
[show mail](#)

mail

This command sends an email using the SMTP protocol. If you specify a file the text inside the file is sent in the message body.

If you do not specify the **to**, **file**, or **subject** parameters, the CLI prompts you for the missing information.

Before you can send mail using this command, you must specify the sending email address using the **mail from** command and a mail server using the **mail smtpserver** command.

Syntax `mail [{to <to>|subject <subject>|file <filename>}]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| to | The email recipient. |
| | <to> Email address. |
| subject | Description of the subject of this email. Use quote marks when the subject text contains spaces. |
| | <subject> String. |
| file | File to insert as text into the message body. |
| | <filename> String. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To send an email to `rei@nerv.com` with the subject `dummy plug configuration`, and with the message body inserted from the file `plug.conf` use the command:

```
awplus# mail rei@nerv.com subject dummy plug configuration
filename plug.conf
```

Related Commands

- [debug mail](#)
- [delete mail](#)
- [mail from](#)
- [mail smtpserver](#)
- [show mail](#)
- [show counter mail](#)

mail from

This command sets an email address for the “mail from” SMTP command. You must specify a sending email address with this command before you can send any email.

Syntax `mail from <from>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code><from></code> | The email address that the mail is sent from. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the email address you are sending mail from to “kaji@nerv.com, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# mail from kaji@nerv.com
```

Related Commands

- [delete mail](#)
- [mail](#)
- [mail smtpserver](#)
- [show mail](#)

mail smtpserver

This command sets the IP address of the SMTP server that your device sends email to. You must specify a mail server with this command before you can send any email.

Syntax `mail smtpserver <ip-address>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code><ip-address></code> | Internet Protocol (IP) Address for the mail server specified. |

Mode Global Configuration

Example To specify a mail server at 192.168.0.1, use the command:

```
awplus# mail smtpserver 192.168.0.1
```

Related Commands

- `debug mail`
- `delete mail`
- `mail`
- `mail from`
- `show mail`
- `show counter mail`

show counter mail

This command displays the mail counters.

Syntax `show counter mail`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 71-1: Example output from the show counter mail command**

```
Mail Client (SMTP) counters
Mails Sent           ..... 0
Mails Sent Fails     ..... 1
```

Table 71-1: Parameters in the output of the show counter mail command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Mails Sent | The number of emails sent successfully since the last device restart. |
| Mails Sent Fails | The number of emails the device failed to send since the last device restart. |

Example To show the emails in the queue use the command:

```
awplus# show counter mail
```

Related Commands

- [debug mail](#)
- [delete mail](#)
- [mail](#)
- [mail from](#)
- [show mail](#)

show mail

This command displays the emails in the queue.

Syntax show mail

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the emails in the queue use the command:

```
awplus# show mail
```

Related Commands [delete mail](#)
[mail](#)
[show counter mail](#)

undebug mail

This command applies the functionality of the [no debug mail](#) command on page 71.2.

Chapter 72: RMON Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 72.2 |
| Overview | 72.2 |
| RMON Configuration Example | 72.3 |

Introduction

The chapter describes the Remote Network MONitoring (RMON) service on the switch, and describes a configuration example showing how to set up an RMON alarm.

This RMON alarm configuration example described creates SNMP traps and log messages when the rate of receipt of Broadcast packets on a switch port exceeds a threshold, and creates SNMP traps and log messages when the rate of receipt of Broadcast packets on a switch drops below a lower threshold.

For detailed information about the commands used to configure RMON, see [Chapter 73, RMON Commands](#)

RMON is disabled by default in AlliedWare Plus™. No RMON alarms or events are configured.

Overview

The Remote Network MONitoring (RMON) MIB (RFC2819) was developed by the IETF to support monitoring and protocol analysis of LANs with a focus on Layer 1 and 2 information in networks. RMON is an industry standard that provides the functionality in network analyzers.

An RMON implementation operates in a client/server model. Monitoring devices (or 'probes') contain RMON agents that collect information and analyze packets. The probes are servers and the Network Management applications that communicate with them are clients. While agent configuration and data collection uses SNMP, RMON operates differently than SNMP systems:

- Probes have responsibility for data collection and processing, reducing SNMP traffic and reducing processing load for clients.
- Information is only transmitted to the management application when required, not polled.

RMON is mainly used for 'flow-based' monitoring, while SNMP is mainly used for 'device-based' management. RMON data collected deals mainly with traffic patterns on the network, and SNMP data collected usually deals with the status of individual devices on the network.

One disadvantage of flow based monitoring is that remote devices have much more of the management burden, and require more resources. AlliedWare Plus minimizes the management and resources burden by implementing a subset of the RMON MIB group to provide a minimal RMON agent implementation supporting statistics, history, alarms, and events.

The RMON groups supported in AlliedWare Plus™ are:

- **Statistics** - collects Ethernet statistics on a switch port, such as utilization and collisions.
- **History** - collects a history of Ethernet statistics on a switch port.
- **Alarms** - monitor a MIB object for a specified interval, trigger an alarm at a specified value (the '**rising threshold**'), and resets the alarm at another value (the '**falling threshold**'). Alarms are used with events to trigger alarms, which generate logs or SNMP traps.
- **Events** - specify the action to take when an event is triggered by an alarm.
The action of an event can generate a log or an SNMP trap.

RMON Configuration Example

This configuration example sets up an RMON alarm to create SNMP traps and log messages. This RMON alarm creates SNMP traps and log messages when the rate of receipt of Broadcast packets on a switch port exceeds a threshold, and creates SNMP traps and log messages when the rate of receipt of Broadcast packets on a switch port drops below a lower threshold.

Step 1: Set up an RMON collection on the switch port that is being monitored.

Use the following commands to configure this functionality:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.4
awplus(config-if)# rmon collection stats 4
```

This will cause the software to build a table in which it stores statistics relating to the switch port.

Step 2: Define an RMON event that will be called by the alarm when the thresholds are passed.

Create this as a 'trap and log' event, so that both an SNMP trap and a log message will be generated. The trap will be sent to the SNMP community named 'public'.

Use the following command to configure this functionality:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# rmon event 10 log trap public
```

Step 3: Create the RMON alarm.

Every 5 seconds, the alarm checks the broadcast packet counter in RMON collection stats 4. If the change in the value of that counter over the 5 second interval exceeds 5000 (1000 broadcasts per second), the alarm will trigger the event defined in step 2 above.

Additionally, when the rate broadcast falls below 500 broadcasts per 5 seconds, then the alarm will trigger the event defined in step 2 above again.

Use the below command to configure this functionality:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# rmon alarm 5 etherStatsBroadcastPkts.4
interval 5 delta
rising-threshold 5000 event 10
falling-threshold 500 event 10
alarmstartup 3
```

For the variable 'etherStatsBroadcastPkts.4' in this command, note that '.4' refers to the index number of the RMON collection stats 4 as defined on port1.0.4. So, 'etherStatsBroadcastPkts.4' refers to 'Received broadcasts' in RMON collection stats 4. Further counters for RMON are defined in section 5 of RFC 1757.

Step 4: Enable RMON traps.

To ensure that the SNMP trap is sent, you need to enable RMON traps, and you need to define a trap host in SNMP. Use the below commands to configure this functionality:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# snmp-server
awplus(config)# snmp-server enable trap rmon
awplus(config)# snmp-server community public
awplus(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.2.254 version 2c
public
```

Note that the resulting log message will be of the form listed below:

```
RMON [1024]: Alarm Index 5 alarm Rising Threshold 5000 alarm
Value 5117 alarm Rising event Index 10 event description
RMON_SNMP
```

Chapter 73: RMON Commands



| | |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 73.2 |
| rmon alarm | 73.2 |
| rmon collection history | 73.4 |
| rmon collection stats | 73.5 |
| rmon event | 73.6 |
| show rmon alarm | 73.7 |
| show rmon event | 73.8 |
| show rmon history | 73.9 |
| show rmon statistics | 73.10 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure Remote Monitoring (RMON).

For an introduction to RMON and an RMON configuration example, see [Chapter 72, RMON Introduction and Configuration](#)

RMON is disabled by default in AlliedWare Plus™. No RMON alarms or events are configured.

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

rmon alarm

Use this command to configure an RMON alarm to monitor the value of an SNMP object, and to trigger specified events when the monitored object crosses specified thresholds.

To specify the action taken when the alarm is triggered, use the event index of an event defined by the [rmon event](#) command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the alarm configuration.

 **Note** Only alarms for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be configured.

Syntax `rmon alarm <alarm-index> <oid> interval <1-2147483647> {delta|absolute} rising-threshold <1-2147483647> event <rising-event-index> falling-threshold <1-2147483647> event <falling-event-index> alarmstartup {1|2|3} [owner <owner>]`

`no rmon alarm <alarm-index>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <code><alarm-index></code> | <code><1-65535></code> Alarm entry index value. |
| <code><oid></code> | The variable SNMP MIB Object Identifier (OID) name to be monitored, in the format <code>etherStatsEntry.field.<stats-index></code> . For example, <code>etherStatsEntry.5.22</code> is the OID for the <code>etherStatsPkts</code> field in the <code>etherStatsEntry</code> table for the interface defined by the <code><stats-index> 22</code> in the rmon collection stats command. |
| <code>interval <1-2147483647></code> | Polling interval in seconds. |
| <code>delta</code> | The RMON MIB <code>alarmSampleType</code> : the change in the monitored MIB object value between the beginning and end of the polling interval. |
| <code>absolute</code> | The RMON MIB <code>alarmSampleType</code> : the value of the monitored MIB object. |

| Parameter(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| rising-threshold <1-2147483647> | Rising threshold value of the alarm entry in seconds. |
| <rising-event-index> | <1-65535> The event to be triggered when the monitored object value reaches the rising threshold value. This is an event index of an event specified by the rmon event command. |
| falling-threshold <1-2147483647> | Falling threshold value of the alarm entry in seconds. |
| <falling-event-index> | <1-65535> The event to be triggered when the monitored object value reaches the falling threshold value. This is an event index of an event specified by the rmon event command. |
| alarmstartup {1 2 3} | Whether RMON can trigger a falling alarm (1), a rising alarm (2) or either (3) when you first start monitoring. See the Usage section for more information. |
| owner <owner> | Arbitrary owner name to identify the alarm entry. |

Default By default, there are no alarms.

Mode Global Configuration

Usage RMON alarms have a rising and falling threshold. Once the alarm monitoring is operating, you cannot have a falling alarm unless there has been a rising alarm and vice versa.

However, when you start RMON alarm monitoring, an alarm must be generated without the other type of alarm having first been triggered. The **alarmstartup** parameter allows this. It is used to say whether RMON can generate a rising alarm (1), a falling alarm (2) or either alarm (3) as the first alarm.

Note that the SNMP MIB Object Identifier (OID) indicated in the command syntax with <oid> must be specified as a dotted decimal value with the form **etherStatsEntry.field.<stats-index>**.

Example To configure an alarm to monitor the change per minute in the etherStatsPkt value for interface 22 (defined by stats-index 22 in the **rmon collection stats** command), to trigger event 2 (defined by the **rmon event** command) when it reaches the rising threshold 400, and to trigger event 3 when it reaches the falling threshold 200, and identify this alarm as belonging to Maria, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# rmon alarm 229 etherStatsEntry.22.5 interval 60
delta rising-threshold 400 event 2 falling-
threshold 200 event 3 alarmstartup 3 owner
maria
```

Related Commands **rmon collection stats**
rmon event

rmon collection history

Use this command to create a history statistics control group to store a specified number of snapshots (buckets) of the standard RMON statistics for the switch port, and to collect these statistics at specified intervals. If there is sufficient memory available, then the device will allocate memory for storing the set of buckets that comprise this history control.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the specified history control configuration.

Note  Only a history for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be collected.

Syntax `rmon collection history <history-index> [buckets <1-65535>]
[interval <1-3600>] [owner <owner>]`
`no rmon collection history <history-index>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code><history-index></code> | <code><1-65535></code> A unique RMON history control entry index value. |
| <code>buckets <1-65535></code> | Number of requested buckets to store snapshots. Default 50 buckets. |
| <code>interval <1-3600></code> | Polling interval in seconds. Default 1800 second polling interval. |
| <code>owner <owner></code> | Owner name to identify the entry. |

Default The default interval is 1800 seconds and the default buckets is 50 buckets.

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To create a history statistics control group to store 200 snapshots with an interval of 500 seconds, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# rmon collection history 200 buckets 500
interval 600 owner herbert
```

To disable the history statistics control group, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.2
awplus(config-if)# no rmon collection history 200
```

rmon collection stats

Use this command to enable the collection of RMON statistics on a switch port, and assign an index number by which to access these collected statistics.

Use the **no** variant of this command to stop collecting RMON statistics on this switch port.

Note  Only statistics for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be collected.

Syntax `rmon collection stats <collection-index> [owner <owner>]`
`no rmon collection stats <collection-index>`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code><collection-index></code> | <code><1-65535></code> Give this collection of statistics an index number to uniquely identify it. This is the index to use to access the statistics collected for this switch port. |
| <code>owner <owner></code> | An arbitrary owner name to identify this statistics collection entry. |

Default RMON statistics are not enabled by default.

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To enable the collection of RMON statistics with a statistics index of 200, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# rmon collection stats 200 owner myrtle
```

To stop collecting RMON statistics, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.3
awplus(config-if)# no rmon collection stats 200
```

rmon event

Use this command to create an event definition for a log or a trap or both. The event index for this event can then be referred to by the **rmon alarm** command.

Use the **no** variant of this command to remove the event definition.

 **Note** Only the events for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be collected.

Syntax

```
rmon event <event-index> [description <description>|owner <owner>|
  trap <trap>]

rmon event <event-index> [log [description <description>|
  owner <owner>|trap <trap>] ]

rmon event <event-index> [log trap [description <description>|
  owner <owner>] ]

no rmon event <event-index>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <event-index> | <1-65535> Unique event entry index value. |
| log | Log event type. |
| trap | Trap event type. |
| log trap | Log and trap event type. |
| description <description> | Event entry description. |
| owner <owner> | Owner name to identify the entry. |

Default No event is configured by default.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To create an event definition for a log with an index of 299, use this command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# rmon event 299 log description cond3 owner
alfred
```

To to remove the event definition, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no rmon event 299
```

Related Commands [rmon alarm](#)

show rmon alarm

Use this command to display the alarms and threshold configured for the RMON probe.

Note Only the alarms for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be shown.



Syntax `show rmon alarm`

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the alarms and threshold, use this command:

```
awplus# show rmon alarm
```

Related Commands [rmon alarm](#)

show rmon event

Use this command to display the events configured for the RMON probe.

Note Only the events for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be shown.



Syntax show rmon event

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 73-1: Example output from the show rmon event command**

```
awplus#sh rmon event
event Index = 787
  Description TRAP
  Event type log & trap
  Event community name gopher
  Last Time Sent = 0
  Owner RMON_SNMP

event Index = 990
  Description TRAP
  Event type trap
  Event community name teabo
  Last Time Sent = 0
  Owner RMON_SNMP
```

Note The following etherStats counters are not currently available for Layer 3 interfaces:



- etherStatsBroadcastPkts
- etherStatsCRCAlignErrors
- etherStatsUndersizePkts
- etherStatsOversizePkts
- etherStatsFragments
- etherStatsJabbers
- etherStatsCollisions
- etherStatsPkts64Octets
- etherStatsPkts65to127Octets
- etherStatsPkts128to255Octets
- etherStatsPkts256to511Octets
- etherStatsPkts512to1023Octets
- etherStatsPkts1024to1518Octets

Example To display the events configured for the RMON probe, use this command:

```
awplus# show rmon event
```

Related Commands rmon event

show rmon history

Use this command to display the parameters specified on all the currently defined RMON history collections on the device.

Note Only the history for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be shown.



Syntax show rmon history

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 73-2: Example output from the show rmon history command**

```
awplus#sh_rmon history
  history index = 56
    data source ifindex = 4501
    buckets requested = 34
    buckets granted = 34
    Interval = 2000
    Owner Andrew

  history index = 458
    data source ifindex = 5004
    buckets requested = 400
    buckets granted = 400
    Interval = 1500
    Owner trev
=====
```

Note The following etherStats counters are not currently available for Layer 3 interfaces:



- etherStatsBroadcastPkts
- etherStatsCRCAlignErrors
- etherStatsUndersizePkts
- etherStatsOversizePkts
- etherStatsFragments
- etherStatsJabbers
- etherStatsCollisions
- etherStatsPkts64Octets
- etherStatsPkts65to127Octets
- etherStatsPkts128to255Octets
- etherStatsPkts256to511Octets
- etherStatsPkts512to1023Octets
- etherStatsPkts1024to1518Octets

Example To display the parameters specified on all the currently defined RMON history collections, use the commands:

```
awplus# show rmon history
```

Related Commands [rmon collection history](#)

show rmon statistics

Use this command to display the current values of the statistics for all the RMON statistics collections currently defined on the device.

Note Only statistics for switch port interfaces, not for VLAN interfaces, can be shown.



Syntax show rmon statistics

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current values of the statistics for all the RMON statistics collections, use the commands:

```
awplus# show rmon statistics
```

Output **Figure 73-3: Example output from the show rmon statistics command**

```
awplus#show rmon statistics
rmon collection index 45
stats->ifindex = 4501
input packets 1279340, bytes 85858960, dropped 00, multicast packets 1272100
output packets 7306090, bytes 268724, multicast packets 7305660 broadcast
packets 290
rmon collection index 679
stats->ifindex = 5013
input packets 00, bytes 00, dropped 00, multicast packets 00
output packets 8554550, bytes 26777324, multicast packets 8546690 broadcast
packets 7720
```

Note The following etherStats counters are not currently available for Layer 3 interfaces:



- etherStatsBroadcastPkts
- etherStatsCRCAlignErrors
- etherStatsUndersizePkts
- etherStatsOversizePkts
- etherStatsFragments
- etherStatsJabbers
- etherStatsCollisions
- etherStatsPkts64Octets
- etherStatsPkts65to127Octets
- etherStatsPkts128to255Octets
- etherStatsPkts256to511Octets
- etherStatsPkts512to1023Octets
- etherStatsPkts1024to1518Octets

Related Commands [rmon collection stats](#)

Chapter 74: Triggers Introduction



| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 74.2 |
| Trigger Facility..... | 74.2 |
| Configuring a Trigger | 74.2 |
| Troubleshooting Triggers | 74.5 |

Introduction

This chapter provides information about the Trigger facility on this switch. For specific configuration examples, see [Chapter 75, Triggers Configuration](#). For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure triggers, see [Chapter 76, Trigger Commands](#).

Trigger Facility

The Trigger facility provides a powerful mechanism for automatic and timed management of your device by automating the execution of commands in response to certain events. For example, you can use triggers to deactivate a service during the weekends, or to collect diagnostic information when the CPU usage is high.

A **trigger** is an ordered sequence of scripts that is executed when a certain event occurs. A **script** is a sequence of commands stored as a plain text file on a file subsystem accessible to the device, such as Flash memory. Each trigger may reference multiple scripts and any script may be used by any trigger. When an event activates a trigger, the trigger executes the scripts associated with it in sequence. One script is executed completely before the next script begins. Various types of triggers are supported, each activated in a different way.

Configuring a Trigger

The following describes the general steps to configure a trigger. For specific configuration examples, see [Chapter 75, Triggers Configuration](#).

Step 1: Create a configuration script

Create a configuration script with the commands you would like executed when the trigger conditions are met. To create the configuration script using the CLI, use the command:

```
awplus# edit [<filename>]
```

Alternatively, you can create a script on a PC then load it onto your device using the [copy \(URL\)](#) command.

Step 2: Enter the trigger configuration mode

You must be in the Global Configuration mode to reach the Trigger Configuration mode. Use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
```

To create a trigger, and enter its configuration mode, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# trigger <1-250>
```

Step 3: Set the trigger type

The trigger type determines how the trigger is activated. To set the trigger to activate:

- « when a Secure Digital (SD) or Secure Digital High Capacity (SDHC) card is either inserted or removed, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type card {in|out}
```

- « when CPU usage reaches a certain level, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu <1-100> [up|down|any]
```

- « when the link status of a particular interface changes, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type interface <interface>
                        [up|down|any]
```

- « when the RAM usage reaches a certain level, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type memory <1-100> [up|down|any]
```

- « periodically after a set number of minutes, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type periodic <1-1440>
```

- « when a ping poll identifies that a target device's status has changed, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type ping-poll <1-100> {up|down}
```

- « if your device reboots, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type reboot
```

- « at a specific time of the day, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type time <hh:mm>
```

Note that a combined limit of 10 triggers of the type periodic and type time can be configured. If you attempt to add more than 10 triggers the following error message is displayed:

```
% Cannot configure more than 10 triggers with the type time or
periodic
```

Step 4: Set the time and days that the trigger can activate on

By default triggers can activate at any time of the day, on all days. If you want your trigger to activate only during a specific time of the day, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# time {[after <hh:mm:ss>]
                             [before <hh:mm:ss>]}
```

If you want your trigger to activate only on a specific date, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day <1-31> <month> <2000-2035>
```

If you want the trigger to activate only on specific days of the week, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day <weekday>
```

Note that you can set either a specific date, or specific weekdays, but not both.

Step 5: Specify how often the trigger can activate

By default, triggers can activate an unlimited number of times, as long as the trigger conditions are met. To set a limit on the number of times a trigger can activate, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# repeat {forever|no|once|yes|  
<1-4294967294>}
```

You device maintains two counters that track the number of times a trigger has activated. One counts the total number of times the trigger is activated and is only reset if the device restarts, or when the trigger is destroyed. The other counter tracks the permitted number of repetitions. To reset this counter, use the [repeat command on page 76.6](#).

Step 6: Add the script to the trigger

You can add up to five scripts to the trigger. When a trigger is activated, it executes the scripts in sequence, with the lowest numbered script activated first. The first script runs to completion before the next script begins. To add a script, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script <1-5> {<filename>}
```

Note that a script activated from an SD card trigger cannot be located on the SD or SDHC card. It must be located in Flash memory.

Step 7: Specify a description for the trigger

Specify a description for the trigger, so that you can easily identify the trigger in show commands and log output. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description <description>
```

Step 8: Verify the trigger's configuration

To check the configuration of the trigger, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# show trigger [<1-250>|counter/  
full]
```

Troubleshooting Triggers

You can use the trigger diagnostic mode and trigger debugging to test your triggers and troubleshoot any issues.

Diagnostic mode is set per trigger. In this mode the trigger activates if its trigger conditions are met, but does not run any of its scripts. Your device generates a log message to indicate that the trigger was activated. To place a trigger in diagnostic mode, enter the trigger's configuration mode and use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# test
```

To start debugging for triggers, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# debug trigger
```

This generates detailed messages about how your device is processing the trigger commands and activating the triggers.

Enabling and Disabling

Triggers are enabled by default. This allows the trigger to activate as soon as its trigger conditions are met. If you need to disable a trigger but do not want to delete the trigger, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# no active
```

To enable the trigger again, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# active
```

To delete the trigger, use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# no trigger <1-250>
```


Chapter 75: Triggers Configuration



| | |
|---|-------|
| Introduction | 75.2 |
| Restrict Internet Access..... | 75.2 |
| Capture Unusual CPU and RAM Activity..... | 75.4 |
| See Daily Statistics | 75.6 |
| Turn Off Power to Port LEDs..... | 75.7 |
| Capture Show Output and Save to an SD Card..... | 75.9 |
| Load a Release File From an SD Card | 75.10 |

Introduction

The chapter describes how to configure triggers to:

- Restrict Internet Access
- **Capture Unusual CPU and RAM Activity**
- **See Daily Statistics**
- **Turn Off Power to Port LEDs**
- **Capture Show Output and Save to an SD Card**

For more information about triggers, see [Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction](#). For detailed descriptions of the commands used to configure triggers, see [Chapter 76, Trigger Commands](#).

Restrict Internet Access

In the following configuration the ACME company wants to restrict its employees from accessing popular video sharing websites as this is causing bandwidth problems during work hours. The ACME company is happy for workers to access the site after work hours.

Employee PCs at ACME are on vlan2. Two triggers with associated scripts are needed:

- Trigger 1 activates at 8.30am and runs a script called **shutdown.scp**. This script adds commands to restrict access to the specified sites
- Trigger 2 activates at 5.30pm and runs the script called **open.scp**. This script removes the configuration specified by shutdown.scp

1. Create the **shutdown.scp** script

Create a configuration script using Access Control List commands to restrict users on vlan2 from accessing the specific sites.

2. Create the **open.scp** script

Create a script to remove the ACL configuration specified in the **shutdown.scp** file.

3. Configure trigger 1

To create trigger 1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 1
```

Set the trigger to activate at 8:30am, by using the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type time 08:30
```

Set the trigger to activate on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day mon tue wed thur fri
```

Add the script **shutdown.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 shutdown.scp
```

Specify a helpful description, such as **Stops access to video sharing sites**. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description Stops access to video
sharing sites
```

Change to Global Configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# exit
```

4. Configure trigger 2

To create trigger 2, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# trigger 2
```

Set the trigger to activate at 5.30pm:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type time 17:30
```

Set the trigger to activate on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day mon tue wed thur fri
```

Add the script **open.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 open.scp
```

Specify a helpful description, such as **Access allowed to video sharing sites**. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description Access allowed to video
sharing sites
```

5. Verify the configuration

To check the configuration of the triggers, use the commands:

```
awplus# show trigger 1
```

```
awplus# show trigger 2
```

Capture Unusual CPU and RAM Activity

The following configuration allows you to troubleshoot high CPU or RAM usage by the device. It uses two triggers to capture show output, and places this output in a file.

- Trigger 3 activates the script `cpu-usage.scp` when CPU usage is over 90% and can activate up to 5 times
- Trigger 4 activates the script `ram-usage.scp` when RAM usage is over 95%, and can activate up to 10 times

1. Create the `cpu-usage.scp` configuration script

Create a script with the appropriate show command:

```
awplus# show cpu | redirect showcpu.txt
```

The output of the `show cpu` command has been redirected into a file. It is not possible to display trigger script output on the terminal. Redirecting the command output to a file means it is available for later inspection.

If the trigger activates on more than one occasion the contents of `showcpu.txt` will be overwritten with the latest output. To keep a full record for all activations of this trigger an ASH shell script can be added to the trigger to manage the output of the configuration script. For example:

```
#!/bin/ash
date >> showcpu_bkup.txt
cat showcpu.txt >> showcpu_bkup.txt
```

This script concatenates that date and time of activation and the contents of `showcpu.txt` onto the end of the backup file `showcpu_bkup.txt` in flash memory. Note that the files may grow large accumulating data and consume available flash memory.

2. Create the `ram-usage.scp` configuration script

Create a script with the appropriate show command:

```
awplus# show memory | redirect showmem.txt
```

The output of the `show memory` command has been redirected into a file. It is not possible to display trigger script output on the terminal. Redirecting the command output to a file means it is available for later inspection.

If the trigger activates on more than one occasion the contents of `showcpu.txt` will be overwritten with the latest output. To keep a full record for all activations of this trigger an ASH shell script can be added to the trigger to manage the output of the configuration script. For example:

```
#!/bin/ash
date >> showmem_bkup.txt
cat showmem.txt >> showmem_bkup.txt
```

This script concatenates that date and time of activation and the contents of `showmem.scp` onto the end of the backup file `showmem_bkup.scp` in flash memory. Note that the files may grow large accumulating data and consume available flash memory.

3. Configure trigger 3

To create trigger 3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 3
```

Set the trigger to activate when CPU usage exceeds 80%:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu 90 up
```

Add the script **cpu-usage.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 cpu-usage.scp
```

Return to Global Configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# exit
```

4. Configure trigger 4

To create trigger 4, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# trigger 4
```

Set the trigger to activate when RAM usage exceeds 95%:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu 95 up
```

Add the script **cpu-usage.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 ram-usage.scp
```

5. Verify the configuration

To check the configuration of the triggers, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger 3
awplus# show trigger 4
```

See Daily Statistics

The ACME company has recently set up QoS on its traffic to give traffic different priorities to the ISP. ACME wants to assess how much traffic is dropped with the QoS bandwidths set over the next week. To do this, they want to generate an hourly report on QoS traffic on the first day that this is implemented.

- Trigger 5 activates the script **qos-stats.scp** every 60 minutes.
The trigger is set to only activate during work hours.

1. Create the **qos-stats.scp** script

Create a configuration script with the appropriate show commands. You can either create the configuration script using the CLI with the **edit** command or create a script on a PC then load it onto your device using the **copy (URL)** command on page 7.16.

2. Configure trigger 5

To create trigger 5, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 5
```

Set the trigger to activate periodically every 60 minutes:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type periodic 60
```

Set the trigger to activate only during the hours of 8:00am and 6:00pm:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# time after 8:00 before 18:00
```

Add the script **qos-stats.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 qos-stats.scp
```

3. Verify the configuration

To check the configuration of the trigger, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger 5
```

Turn Off Power to Port LEDs

The following configuration allows you to conserve power by using the eco-friendly LED (Light Emitting Diode) feature to turn off power to the port LEDs during non-work hours.

See the [ecofriendly led](#) command for a detailed command description and command examples. See the section [“Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature” on page 1.31](#).

- Trigger 6 activates at 5:30pm and runs a script called **LEDoff.scp**. This script adds commands to turn off power to all the port LEDs
- Trigger 7 activates at 8:30am and runs the script called **LEDon.scp**. This script removes the configuration specified by **LEDoff.scp**

1. Create the **LEDoff.scp** script

Create a configuration script with the commands that are executed when the trigger conditions are met. You can either create the configuration script using the CLI with the [edit](#) command or create a script on a PC then load it onto your device using the [copy \(URL\)](#) command. The configuration script for this example is:

```
!
enable
configure terminal
ecofriendly led
exit
exit
!
```

2. Create the **LEDon.scp** script

Create a script to remove the configuration specified in the **LEDoff.scp** file. The configuration script for this example is:

```
!
enable
configure terminal
no ecofriendly led
exit
exit
!
```

3. Configure trigger 6

To create trigger 6, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 6
```

Set the trigger to activate at 5:30pm, by using the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type time 17:30
```

Set the trigger to activate on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day mon tue wed thur fri
```

Add the script **LEDOff.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 LEDOff.scp
```

Specify a helpful description, such as **Shutdown power to LEDs**. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description Shutdown power to LEDs
```

Change to Global Configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# exit
```

4. Configure trigger 7

To create trigger 7, use the command:

```
awplus(config)# trigger 9
```

Set the trigger to activate at 8.30am:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type time 08:30
```

Set the trigger to activate on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# day mon tue wed thur fri
```

Add the script **LEDOn.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 LEDOn.scp
```

Specify a helpful description, such as **Turn on power to LEDs**. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description Turn on power to LEDs
```

5. Verify the configuration

To check the configuration of the triggers, use the commands:

```
awplus# show trigger 6
```

```
awplus# show trigger 7
```

Capture Show Output and Save to an SD Card

The following configuration allows you to automatically capture output from the `show tech-support` command when an SD (or SDHC) card is inserted into the switch. It uses a script called by the SD card trigger to capture the `show tech-support` output and places this output in a file on the SD card.

- Trigger 8 activates the script `shtech-sup.scp` when an SD card is inserted in the switch

1. Create the `shtech-sup.scp` script

Create a configuration script with the commands that are executed when the trigger conditions are met. You can either create the configuration script using the CLI with the `edit` command or create a script on a PC then load it onto your device using the `copy (URL)` command. The configuration script for this example is:

```
!
enable
show tech-support outfile card:support.txt.gz
exit
end
!
```

2. Configure trigger 8

To create trigger 8, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 8
```

Set the trigger to activate on the insertion of an SD card:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type card in
```

Add the script `shtech-sup.scp` to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 shtech-sup.scp
```

3. Verify the configuration

To check the configuration of the triggers, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger 8
```

Load a Release File From an SD Card

The following configuration allows you to automatically load a release file from an SD (or SDHC) card into Flash memory when a card is inserted into the switch. It uses a script called by the SD card trigger to load the release file from the SD card.

Note that you can only specify that the release file is on an SD card if there is a backup release file already specified in Flash. See the [boot system backup](#) command for further information.



Caution Anyone with physical access to the switch and who knows the name of the release file loaded by the trigger could insert an SD card and overwrite the boot configuration in flash memory.

- Trigger 10 activates the script **copy.scp** when an SD card is inserted in the switch

1. Create the **copy.scp** script

Create a configuration script with the commands that are executed when the trigger conditions are met. You can either create the configuration script using the CLI with the [edit](#) command or create a script on a PC then load it onto your device using the [copy \(URL\)](#) command. The configuration script for this example is:

```
!
enable
copy card flash x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
wait 5
configure terminal
boot system x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
exit
end
!
```

2. Configure trigger 10

To create trigger 10, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 10
```

Set the trigger to activate on the insertion of an SD card:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type card in
```

Add the script **copy.scp** to the trigger:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# script 1 copy.scp
```

Specify a helpful description, such as **Load a release file**. Use the command:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# description Load a release file
```

After an SD card has been inserted in the switch, use the following two steps to check the trigger and current boot configuration details.

1. Verify the trigger configuration

To check the configuration of the trigger, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger 10
```

Example output from this command is shown below:

```
awplus#show trigger 10
Trigger Configuration Details
-----
Trigger ..... 10
Description ..... Load a release file
Type and details ..... Card (in)
Days ..... smtwfTs
After ..... 00:00:00
Before ..... 23:59:59
Active ..... Yes
Test ..... No
Trap ..... Yes
Repeat ..... Continuous
Modified ..... Wed Sep 15 16:25:33 2010
Number of activations ..... 1
Last activation ..... Wed Sep 15 16:26:49 2010
Number of scripts ..... 1
    1. copy.scp
    2. <not configured>
    3. <not configured>
    4. <not configured>
    5. <not configured>
-----
```

2. Display the current boot configuration

To display the current boot configuration, use the command:

```
awplus# show boot
```

Example output from this command is shown below:

```
awplus#show boot
Boot configuration
-----
Current software   : x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Current boot image : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Backup boot image  : flash:/x230-5.4.4-1.2.rel
Default boot config: flash:/default.cfg
Current boot config: flash:/atplab.cfg (file exists)
Backup boot config: flash:/default.cfg (file exists)
```


Chapter 76: Trigger Commands



| | |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 76.2 |
| active (trigger) | 76.2 |
| day | 76.3 |
| debug trigger | 76.4 |
| description (trigger) | 76.5 |
| repeat | 76.6 |
| script | 76.7 |
| show debugging trigger | 76.9 |
| show running-config trigger..... | 76.9 |
| show trigger..... | 76.10 |
| test..... | 76.15 |
| time (trigger)..... | 76.16 |
| trap..... | 76.18 |
| trigger..... | 76.19 |
| trigger activate..... | 76.20 |
| type card..... | 76.21 |
| type cpu..... | 76.22 |
| type interface..... | 76.23 |
| type memory | 76.24 |
| type periodic..... | 76.25 |
| type ping-poll | 76.26 |
| type reboot..... | 76.26 |
| type time | 76.27 |
| undebg trigger | 76.27 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure Triggers. For more information, see [Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction](#) and [Chapter 75, Triggers Configuration](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

active (trigger)

This command enables a trigger. This allows the trigger to activate when its trigger conditions are met.

The **no** variant of this command disables a trigger. While in this state the trigger cannot activate when its trigger conditions are met.

Syntax active

no active

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage Configure a trigger first before you use this command to activate it. See the [Configuring a Trigger](#) section in [Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction](#) for trigger configuration steps.

Examples To enable trigger 172, so that it can activate when its trigger conditions are met, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 172
awplus(config-trigger)# active
```

To disable trigger 182, preventing it from activating when its trigger conditions are met, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 182
awplus(config-trigger)# no active
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

day

This command specifies the days or date that the can trigger activate on. You can specify either:

- A specific date
- A specific day of the week
- A list of days of the week
- every day

By default, the trigger can activate on any day.

Syntax `day every-day`
`day <1-31> <month> <2000-2035>`
`day <weekday>`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>every-day</code> | Sets the trigger so that it can activate on any day. |
| <code><1-31></code> | Day of the month the trigger is permitted to activate on. |
| <code><month></code> | Sets the month that the trigger is permitted to activate on. Valid keywords are: january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, and december. |
| <code><2000-2035></code> | Sets the year that the trigger is permitted to activate in. |
| <code><weekday></code> | Sets the days of the week that the trigger can activate on. You can specify one or more week days in a space separated list. Valid keywords are: monday, tuesday, wednesday, thursday, friday, saturday, and sunday. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage For example trigger configurations that use the **day** command, see [“Restrict Internet Access” on page 75.2](#) and [“Turn Off Power to Port LEDs” on page 75.7](#).

Examples To permit trigger 55 to activate on the 1 Jun 2010, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 55
awplus(config-trigger)# day 1 Jun 2010
```

To permit trigger 12 to activate on a Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 12
awplus(config-trigger)# day monday wednesday friday
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

debug trigger

This command enables trigger debugging. This generates detailed messages about how your device is processing the trigger commands and activating the triggers.

The **no** variant of this command disables trigger debugging.

Syntax `debug trigger`
`no debug trigger`

Mode Privilege Exec

Examples To start trigger debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# debug trigger
```

To stop trigger debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no trigger
```

Related Commands [show debugging trigger](#)
[show trigger](#)
[test](#)
[trigger](#)
[undebug trigger](#)

description (trigger)

This command adds an optional description to help you identify the trigger. This description is displayed in show command outputs and log messages.

The **no** variant of this command removes a trigger's description. The show command outputs and log messages stop displaying a description for this trigger.

Syntax `description <description>`
`no description`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><description></code> | A word or phrase that uniquely identifies this trigger or its purpose. Valid characters are any printable character and spaces, up to a maximum of 40 characters. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Examples To give trigger 240 the description `daily status report`, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 240
awplus(config-trigger)# description daily status report
```

To remove the description from trigger 36, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 36
awplus(config-trigger)# no description
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[test](#)
[trigger](#)

repeat

This command specifies the number of times that a trigger is permitted to activate. This allows you to specify whether you want the trigger to activate:

- only the first time that the trigger conditions are met
- a limited number of times that the trigger conditions are met
- an unlimited number of times

Once the trigger has reached the limit set with this command, the trigger remains in your configuration but cannot be activated. Use the **repeat** command again to reset the trigger so that it is activated when its trigger conditions are met.

By default, triggers can activate an unlimited number of times. To reset a trigger to this default, specify either **yes** or **forever**.

Syntax `repeat {forever|no|once|yes|<1-4294967294>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>yes forever</code> | The trigger repeats indefinitely, or until disabled. |
| <code>no once</code> | The trigger activates only once. |
| <code><1-4292967294></code> | The trigger repeats the set number of times. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Examples To allow trigger 21 to activate only once, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 21
awplus(config-trigger)# repeat no
```

To allow trigger 22 to activate an unlimited number of times whenever its trigger conditions are met, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 22
awplus(config-trigger)# repeat forever
```

To allow trigger 23 to activate only the first 10 times the conditions are met, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 23
awplus(config-trigger)# repeat 10
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

script

This command specifies one or more scripts that are to be run when the trigger activates. You can add up to five scripts to a single trigger.

The sequence in which the trigger runs the scripts is specified by the number you set before the name of the script file. One script is executed completely before the next script begins.

Scripts may be either ASH shell scripts, indicated by a **.sh** filename extension suffix, or AlliedWare Plus™ scripts, indicated by a **.scp** filename extension suffix. AlliedWare Plus™ scripts only need to be readable.

The **no** variant of this command removes one or more scripts from the trigger's script list. The scripts are identified by either their name, or by specifying their position in the script list. The **all** parameter removes all scripts from the trigger.

Syntax `script <1-5> {<filename>}`
`no script {<1-5>|<filename>|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| <1-5> | The position of the script in execution sequence. The trigger runs the lowest numbered script first. |
| <filename> | The path to the script file. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Examples To configure trigger 71 to run the script `flash:/cpu_trig.sh` in position 3 when the trigger activates, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 71
awplus(config-trigger)# script 3 flash:/cpu_trig.sh
```

To configure trigger 99 to run the scripts **flash:reconfig.scp**, **flash:cpu_trig.sh** and **flash:email.scp** in positions 2, 3 and 5 when the trigger activates, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 99
awplus(config-trigger)# script 2 flash:/reconfig.scp 3 flash:/
cpu_trig.sh 5 flash:/email.scp
```

To remove the scripts 1, 3 and 4 from trigger 71's script list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 71
awplus(config-trigger)# no script 1 3 4
```

To remove the script `flash:/cpu_trig.sh` from trigger 71's script list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 71
awplus(config-trigger)# no script flash:/cpu_trig.sh
```

To remove all the scripts from trigger 71's script list, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 71
awplus(config-trigger)# no script all
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

show debugging trigger

This command displays the current status for trigger utility debugging. Use this command to show when trigger debugging has been turned on or off from the **debug trigger** command.

Syntax show debugging trigger

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display the current configuration of trigger debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging trigger
```

Output **Figure 76-1: Example output from the show debugging trigger command**

```
awplus#debug trigger
awplus#show debugging trigger
Trigger debugging status:
  Trigger debugging is on

awplus#no debug trigger
awplus#show debugging trigger
Trigger debugging status:
  Trigger debugging is off
```

Related Commands **debug trigger**

show running-config trigger

This command displays the current running configuration of the trigger utility.

Syntax show running-config trigger

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display the current configuration of the trigger utility, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config trigger
```

Output **Figure 76-2: Example output from the show running-config trigger command**

```
trigger 1
  type card in
trigger 2
  type card out
!
```

Related Commands **show trigger**

show trigger

This command displays configuration and diagnostic information about the triggers configured on the device. Specify the **show trigger** command without any options to display a summary of the configuration of all triggers.

Syntax `show trigger [<1-250>|counter|full]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-250> | Displays detailed information about a specific trigger, identified by its trigger ID. |
| counter | Displays statistical information about all triggers. |
| full | Displays detailed information about all triggers. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To get summary information about all triggers, use the following command:

```
awplus# show trigger
```

Figure 76-3: Example output from the show trigger command

```
awplus#show trigger
TR# Type & Details          Name                Ac Te Tr Repeat      #Scr Days/Date
-----
001 Card (in)                Y N Y Continuous    0  smtwtfS
002 Card (out)               Y N Y Continuous    0  smtwtfS
003 CPU (80% any)           Busy CPU            Y N Y 5             1  smtwtfS
005 Periodic (30 min)       Regular status check Y N N Continuous    1  -mtwtf-
007 Memory (85% up)         High mem usage      Y N Y 8             1  smtwtfS
011 Time (00:01)            Weekend access      Y N Y Continuous    1  -----s
013 Reboot                  Y N Y Continuous    2  smtwtfS
017 Interface (vlan1 ...    Change config for... Y N Y Once           1  2-apr-2008
019 Ping-poll (5 up)        Connection to svrl  Y N Y Continuous    1  smtwtfS
-----
```

Table 76-1: Parameters in the output of the show trigger command

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| TR# | Trigger identifier (ID). |
| Type & Details | The trigger type, followed by the trigger details in brackets. |
| Name | Descriptive name of the trigger configured with the description (trigger) command. |
| Ac | Whether the trigger is active (Y), or inactive (N). |
| Te | Whether the trigger is in test mode (Y) or not (N). |
| Tr | Whether or not the trigger is enabled to send SNMP traps. See the trap command. |

Table 76-1: Parameters in the output of the show trigger command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Repeat | Whether the trigger repeats continuously, and if not, the configured repeat count for the trigger. To see the number of times a trigger has activated, use the show trigger <1-250> command. |
| #Scr | Number of scripts associated with the trigger. |
| Days/Date | Days or date when the trigger may be activated. For the days options, the days are shown as a seven character string representing Sunday to Saturday. A hyphen indicates days when the trigger cannot be activated. |

To display detailed information about trigger 3, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger 3
```

Figure 76-4: Example output from the show trigger command for a specific trigger

```
awplus#show trigger 3
Trigger Configuration Details
-----
Trigger ..... 1
Description ..... display cpu usage when pass 80%
Type and details ..... CPU (80% up)
Days ..... 26-nov-2007
After ..... 00:00:00
Before ..... 23:59:59
Active ..... Yes
Test ..... No
Trap ..... Yes
Repeat ..... 123 (0)
Modified ..... Tue Dec 20 02:26:03 1977
Number of activations ..... 0
Last activation ..... not activated
Number of scripts ..... 1
    1. shocpu.scp
    2. <not configured>
    3. <not configured>
    4. <not configured>
    5. <not configured>
-----
```

To display detailed information about all triggers, use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger full
```

Figure 76-5: Example output from the show trigger full command

```
awplus#show trigger full
Trigger Configuration Details
-----
Trigger ..... 1
Description ..... <no description>
Type and details ..... Card (in)
Days ..... smtwtfS
After ..... 00:00:00
Before ..... 23:59:59
Active ..... Yes
Test ..... No
Trap ..... Yes
Repeat ..... Continuous
Modified ..... Fri Sep 3 14:45:56 2010
Number of activations ..... 0
Last activation ..... not activated
Number of scripts ..... 0
  1. <not configured>
  2. <not configured>
  3. <not configured>
  4. <not configured>
  5. <not configured>

Trigger ..... 2
Description ..... <no description>
Type and details ..... Card (out)
Days ..... smtwtfS
After ..... 00:00:00
Before ..... 23:59:59
Active ..... Yes
Test ..... No
Trap ..... Yes
Repeat ..... Continuous
Modified ..... Fri Sep 3 14:45:56 2010
Number of activations ..... 0
Last activation ..... not activated
Number of scripts ..... 0
  1. <not configured>
  2. <not configured>
  3. <not configured>
  4. <not configured>
  5. <not configured>

Trigger ..... 3
Description ..... Busy CPU
Type and details ..... CPU (80% up)
Days ..... smtwtfS
Active ..... Yes
Test ..... No
Trap ..... Yes
Repeat ..... Continuous
Modified ..... Fri Feb 2 17:05:16 2007
Number of activations ..... 0
Last activation ..... not activated
Number of scripts ..... 2
  1. flash:/cpu_alert.sh
  2. flash:/reconfig.scp
  3. <not configured>
  4. <not configured>
  5. <not configured>
-----
```

Table 76-2: Parameters in the output of the show trigger full and show trigger commands for a specific trigger

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Trigger | The ID of the trigger. |
| Description | Descriptive name of the trigger. |
| Type and details | The trigger type and its activation conditions. |
| Days | The days on which the trigger is permitted to activate. |
| Date | The date on which the trigger is permitted to activate. Only displayed if configured, in which case it replaces "Days". |
| Active | Whether or not the trigger is permitted to activate. |
| Test | Whether or not the trigger is operating in diagnostic mode. |
| Trap | Whether or not the trigger is enabled to send SNMP traps. |
| Repeat | Whether the trigger repeats an unlimited number of times (Continuous) or for a set number of times. When the trigger can repeat only a set number of times, then the number of times the trigger has been activated is displayed in brackets. |
| Modified | The date and time of the last time that the trigger was modified. |
| Number of activations | Number of times the trigger has been activated since the last restart of the device. |
| Last activation | The date and time of the last time that the trigger was activated. |
| Number of scripts | How many scripts are associated with the trigger, followed by the names of the script files in the order in which they run. |

To display counter information about all triggers use the command:

```
awplus# show trigger counter
```

Figure 76-6: Example output from the show trigger counter command

```
awplus#show trigger counter
Trigger Module Counters
-----
Trigger activations ..... 0
Time triggers activated today ..... 0
Periodic triggers activated today ..... 0
Interface triggers activated today ..... 0
Resource triggers activated today ..... 0
Reboot triggers activated today ..... 0
Ping-poll triggers activated today ..... 0
-----
```

Table 76-3: Parameters in the output of the show trigger counter command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Trigger activations | Number of times a trigger has been activated. |
| Time triggers activated today | Number of times a time trigger has been activated today. |
| Periodic triggers activated today | Number of times a periodic trigger has been activated today. |
| Interface triggers activated today | Number of times an interface trigger has been activated today. |
| Resource triggers activated today | Number of times a CPU or memory resource trigger has been activated today. |
| Ping-poll triggers activated today | Number of times a ping-poll trigger has been activated today. |

Related Commands [trigger](#)

test

This command puts the trigger into a diagnostic mode. In this mode the trigger may activate but when it does it will not run any of the trigger's scripts. A log message will be generated to indicate when the trigger has been activated.

The **no** variant of this command takes the trigger out of diagnostic mode, restoring normal operation. When the trigger activates the scripts associated with the trigger will be run, as normal.

Syntax test

no test

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage Configure a trigger first before you use this command to diagnose it. See the **Configuring a Trigger** section in **Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction** for trigger configuration steps.

Examples To put trigger 5 into diagnostic mode, where no scripts will be run when the trigger activates, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 5
awplus(config-trigger)# test
```

To take trigger 205 out of diagnostic mode, restoring normal operation, use the commands:

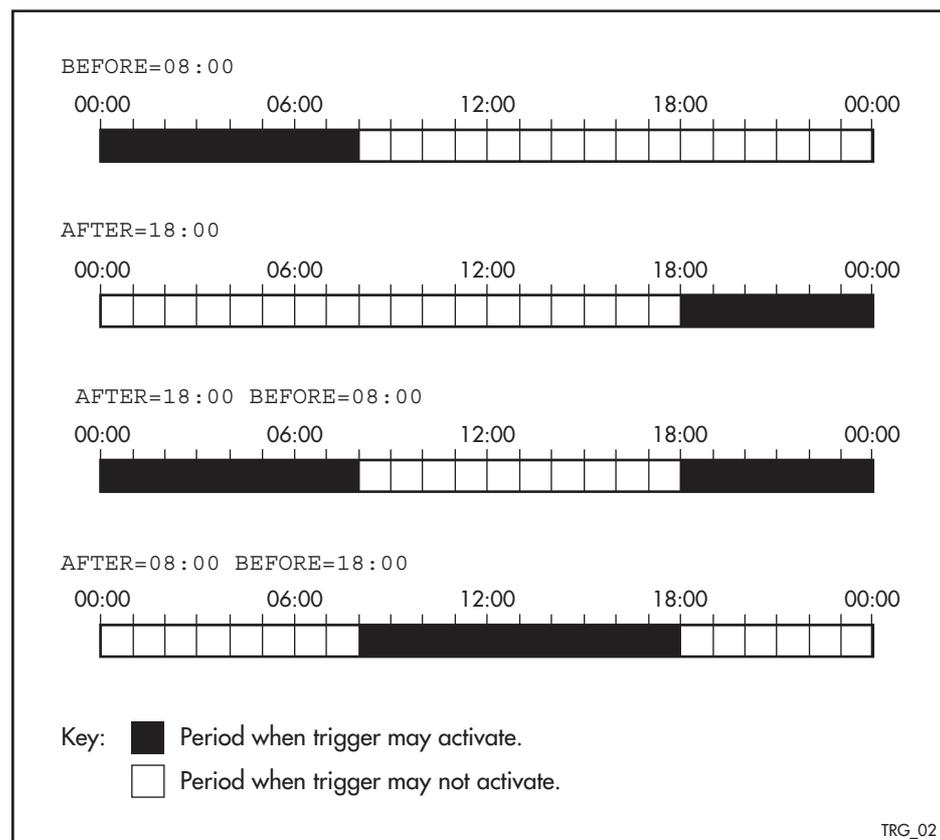
```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 205
awplus(config-trigger)# no test
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

time (trigger)

This command specifies the time of day when the trigger is permitted to activate. The **after** parameter specifies the start of a time period that extends to midnight during which trigger may activate. By default the value of this parameter is 00:00:00 (am); that is, the trigger may activate at any time. The **before** parameter specifies the end of a time period beginning at midnight during which the trigger may activate. By default the value of this parameter is 23:59:59; that is, the trigger may activate at any time. If the value specified for **before** is later than the value specified for **after**, a time period from "after" to "before" is defined, during which the trigger may activate. This command is not applicable to time triggers (**type time**).

The following figure illustrates how the **before** and **after** parameters operate.



Syntax `time {[after <hh:mm:ss>] [before <hh:mm:ss>]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>after <hh:mm:ss></code> | The earliest time of day when the trigger may be activated. |
| <code>before <hh:mm:ss></code> | The latest time of day when the trigger may be activated. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage For example trigger configurations that use the **time (trigger)** command, see [“Restrict Internet Access” on page 75.2](#) and [“Turn Off Power to Port LEDs” on page 75.7](#).

Examples To allow trigger 63 to activate between midnight and 10:30am, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 63
awplus(config-trigger)# time before 10:30:00
```

To allow trigger 64 to activate between 3:45pm and midnight, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 64
awplus(config-trigger)# time after 15:45:00
```

To allow trigger 65 to activate between 10:30am and 8:15pm, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 65
awplus(config-trigger)# time after 10:30:00 before 20:15:00
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

trap

This command enables the specified trigger to send SNMP traps.

Use the **no** variant of this command to disable the sending of SNMP traps from the specified trigger.

Syntax trap
no trap

Default SNMP traps are enabled by default for all defined triggers.

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage You must configure SNMP before using traps with triggers. See the following SNMP chapters:

[Chapter 66, SNMP Introduction](#)

[Chapter 67, SNMP Commands](#)

[Chapter 68, SNMP MIBs](#)

Since SNMP traps are enabled by default for all defined triggers, a common usage will be for the **no** variant of this command to disable SNMP traps from a specified trap if the trap is only periodic. Refer in particular to [AT-TRIGGER-MIB](#) for further information about the relevant SNMP MIB.

Examples To enable SNMP traps to be sent from trigger 5, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 5
awplus(config-trigger)# trap
```

To disable SNMP traps being sent from trigger 205, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 205
awplus(config-trigger)# no trap
```

Related Commands [trigger](#)
[show trigger](#)

trigger

This command is used to access the Trigger Configuration mode for the specified trigger. Once Trigger Configuration mode has been entered the trigger type information can be configured and the trigger scripts and other operational parameters can be specified. At a minimum the trigger type information must be specified before the trigger can become active.

The **no** variant of this command removes a specified trigger and all configuration associated with it.

Syntax `trigger <1-250>`
`no trigger <1-250>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| <code><1-250></code> | A trigger ID. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To enter trigger configuration mode for trigger 12 use the command:

```
awplus# trigger 12
```

To completely remove all configuration associated with trigger 12, use the command:

```
awplus# no trigger 12
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger activate](#)

trigger activate

This command is used to manually activate a specified trigger from the Privileged Exec mode, which has been configured with the **trigger** command from the Global Configuration mode.

Syntax `trigger activate <1-250>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---------------|
| <1-250> | A trigger ID. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Usage This command manually activates a trigger without the normal trigger conditions being met.

The trigger is activated even if it is configured as inactive. The scripts associated with the trigger will be executed even if the trigger is in the diagnostic test mode.

Triggers activated manually do not have their repeat counts decremented or their 'last triggered' time updated, and do not result in updates to the '[type] triggers today' counters.

Example To manually activate trigger 12 use the command:

```
awplus# trigger activate 12
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

type card

Use this command to configure a trigger that activates on either the removal or the insertion of a Secure Digital (SD) or Secure Digital High Capacity (SDHC) card.

Syntax `type card {in|out}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| in | Trigger activates on insertion of a card. |
| out | Trigger activates on removal of a card. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage Card triggers cannot execute script files from a card.

In a VCStack configuration, card triggers are activated on the master for either the insertion or removal of a card on the master only.

For example trigger configurations that use the **type card** command, see [“Capture Show Output and Save to an SD Card” on page 75.9](#).

Examples To configure `trigger 1` to activate on the insertion of a card, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 1
awplus(config-trigger)# type card in
```

Related Commands [trigger](#)
[show running-config trigger](#)
[show trigger](#)

type cpu

This command configures a trigger to activate based on CPU usage level. Selecting the **up** option causes the trigger to activate when the CPU usage exceeds the specified usage level. Selecting the **down** option causes the trigger to activate when CPU usage drops below the specified usage level. Selecting **any** causes the trigger to activate in both situations. The default is **any**.

Syntax type cpu <1-100> [up|down|any]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-100> | The percentage of CPU usage at which to trigger. |
| up | Activate when CPU usage exceeds the specified level. |
| down | Activate when CPU usage drops below the specified level |
| any | Activate when CPU usage passes the specified level in either direction |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage For an example trigger configuration that uses the **type cpu** command, see [“Capture Unusual CPU and RAM Activity” on page 75.4](#).

Examples To configure trigger 28 to be a CPU trigger that activates when CPU usage exceeds 80% use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 28
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu 80 up
```

To configure trigger 5 to be a CPU trigger that activates when CPU usage either rises above or drops below 65%, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 5
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu 65
```

or

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 5
awplus(config-trigger)# type cpu 65 any
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

type interface

This command configures a trigger to activate based on the link status of an interface. The trigger can be activated when the interface becomes operational by using the **up** option, or when the interface closes by using the **down** option. The trigger can also be configured to activate when either one of these events occurs by using the **any** option.

Syntax `type interface <interface> [up|down|any]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <interface> | Interface name. This can be the name of a switch port, an eth-management port, or a VLAN. |
| up | Activate when interface becomes operational. |
| down | Activate when the interface closes. |
| any | Activate when any interface link status event occurs. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Example To configure trigger 19 to be an interface trigger that activates when port1.0.2 becomes operational, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 19
awplus(config-trigger)# type interface port1.0.2 up
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

type memory

This command configures a trigger to activate based on RAM usage level. Selecting the **up** option causes the trigger to activate when memory usage exceeds the specified level. Selecting the **down** option causes the trigger to activate when memory usage drops below the specified level. Selecting **any** causes the trigger to activate in both situations. The default is **any**.

Syntax `type memory <1-100> [up|down|any]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-100> | The percentage of memory usage at which to trigger. |
| up | Activate when memory usage exceeds the specified level. |
| down | Activate when memory usage drops below the specified level. |
| any | Activate when memory usage passes the specified level in either direction. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Examples To configure trigger 12 to be a memory trigger that activates when memory usage exceeds 50% use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 12
awplus(config-trigger)# type memory 50 up
```

To configure trigger 40 to be a memory trigger that activates when memory usage either rises above or drops below 65%, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 40
awplus(config-trigger)# type memory 65
```

or

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 40
awplus(config-trigger)# type memory 65 any
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

type periodic

This command configures a trigger to be activated at regular intervals. The time period between activations is specified in minutes.

Syntax type periodic <1-1440>

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-1440> | The number of minutes between activations. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage A combined limit of 10 triggers of the type periodic and time can be configured. If you attempt to add more than 10 triggers the following error message is displayed:

```
% Cannot configure more than 10 triggers with the type time or
periodic
```

For an example trigger configuration that uses the **type periodic** command, see [“See Daily Statistics” on page 75.6](#).

Example To configure trigger 44 to activate periodically at 10 minute intervals use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 44
awplus(config-trigger)# type periodic 10
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

type ping-poll

This command configures a trigger that activates when Ping Polling identifies that a target device's status has changed. This allows you to run a configuration script when a device becomes reachable or unreachable.

Syntax `type ping-poll <1-100> {up|down}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-100> | The ping poll ID. |
| up | The trigger activates when ping polling detects that the target is reachable. |
| down | The trigger activates when ping polling detects that the target is unreachable. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Example To configure trigger 106 to activate when ping poll 12 detects that its target device is now unreachable, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 106
awplus(config-trigger)# type ping-poll 12 down
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

type reboot

This command configures a trigger that activates when your device is rebooted.

Syntax `type reboot`

Mode Trigger Configuration

Example To configure trigger 32 to activate when your device reboots, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 32
awplus(config-trigger)# type reboot
```

Related Commands [show trigger trigger](#)

type time

This command configures a trigger that activates at a specified time of day.

Syntax type time <hh:mm>

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| <hh:mm> | The time to activate the trigger. |

Mode Trigger Configuration

Usage A combined limit of 10 triggers of the type time and type periodic can be configured. If you attempt to add more than 10 triggers the following error message is displayed:

```
% Cannot configure more than 10 triggers with the type time or
periodic
```

Example To configure trigger 86 to activate at 15:53, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# trigger 86
awplus(config-trigger)# type time 15:53
```

Related Commands [show trigger](#)
[trigger](#)

undebug trigger

This command applies the functionality of the [no debug trigger](#) command.

Chapter 77: Ping Polling Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Introduction | 77.2 |
| How Ping Polling Works | 77.2 |
| Configuring Ping Polling | 77.4 |
| Creating a Polling Instance..... | 77.4 |
| Customizing a Polling Instance | 77.5 |
| Troubleshooting Ping Polling | 77.6 |
| Interaction with Other Protocols..... | 77.7 |

Introduction

Ping polling lets your device regularly check whether it can reach other hosts on a network. It works by sending ICMP Echo Requests to a host and waiting for replies sent back. If ping polling indicates that a host's status has changed, then your device can respond to the new status. When a host is unreachable, ping polling continues monitoring the host's reachability.

You can configure triggers to activate when ping polling determines that the host's status has changed. For example, you could configure a trigger to run a script that opens and configures an alternative link if the host at the other end of a preferred link becomes unavailable. You could then configure a second trigger to run a script that automatically returns traffic to the preferred link as soon as it is available again.

How Ping Polling Works

To determine a host's reachability, your device regularly sends ICMP Echo Request packets ("pings") to the host. As long as your device receives ping responses from the host, it considers the host to be reachable. If your device does not receive a reply to a set number of ICMP Echo Requests, it considers that the host is unreachable. It continues to try to ping the device, at an increased rate. After it receives a set number of responses, it considers the device to be reachable again.

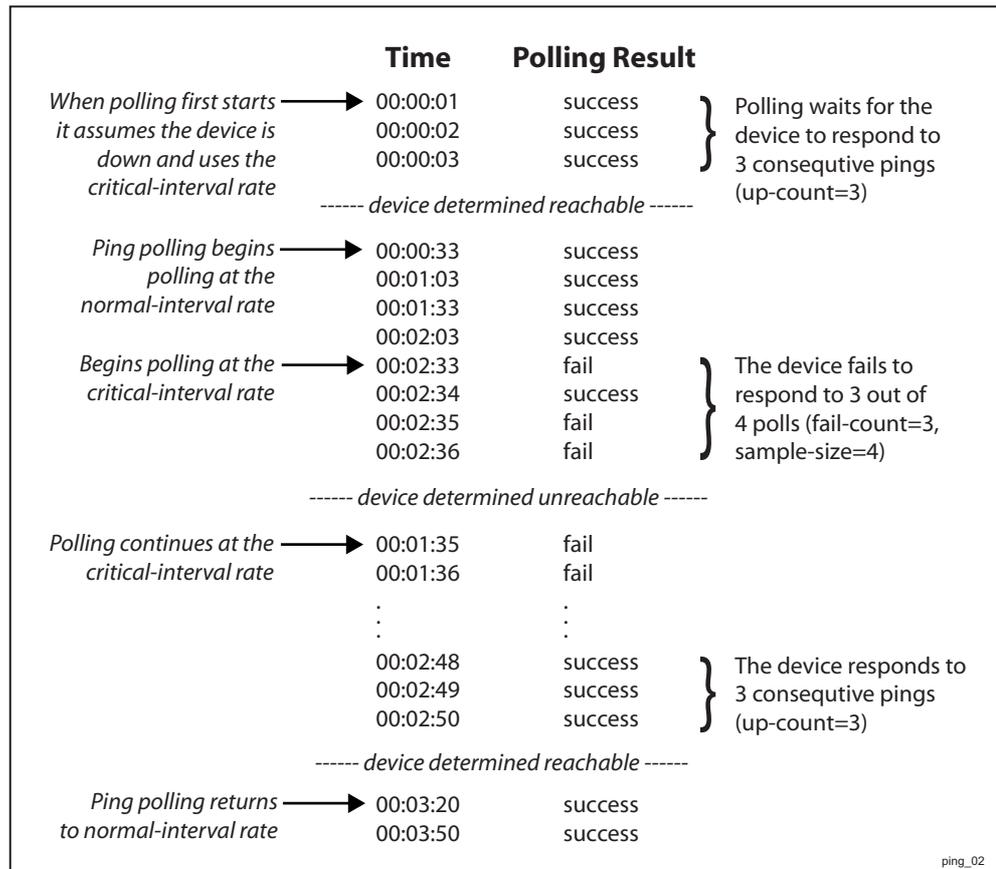
By default, a polling instance sends a ping every 30 seconds as long as it is receiving replies. The frequency of this polling is controlled by the `normal-interval` command. When a reply is not received, the polling instance increases the frequency at which it polls the device. This frequency is controlled by the `critical-interval` command, and by default, is set to send a packet every one second. It maintains this higher rate of polling until it has received sufficient consecutive replies.

The polling instance determines whether a device is reachable or unreachable based on the settings of the `fail-count`, `sample-size`, and `up-count` commands. To determine whether a device is reachable, the polling instance counts the number of failed pings within a set sample size. The sample size is set by the `sample-size` command, and by default is 5 ping responses. Within the sample size, the number of failed pings that means that the device is down is set by the `fail-count` command. By default this is set to 5. Once a polling instance has determined that a device is unreachable, it must receive a set number of consecutive replies before it changes the device's status back to reachable. This number is configured with the `up-count` command.

The following figure illustrates a polling instance where the device becomes unreachable, then reachable. It uses this configuration:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# fail-count 4
awplus(config-ping-poll)# sample-size 5
awplus(config-ping-poll)# up-count 3
awplus(config-ping-poll)# critical-interval 1
awplus(config-ping-poll)# normal-interval 30
```

Figure 77-1: Interaction between states and parameters for ping polling



On some operating systems, some servers may respond to a ping even if no other functionality is available, and therefore remain in an Up state while malfunctioning.

Responding to status changes

To configuring your device to determine and respond to changes in a device’s reachability, you will need to:

- create a polling instance to periodically ping the device
- create scripts to run when the device becomes unreachable and when it becomes reachable again
- configure triggers to run these scripts

To set a trigger to activate when a device’s status changes, its trigger type must be **ping-poll**. This is with the following command in the trigger’s configuration mode:

```
awplus(config-trigger)# type ping-poll <1-100> {up/down}
```

where **up** activates the trigger when the device is reachable, and **down** activates the trigger when the device is unreachable.

If you use triggers to open a backup link to a remote device in the event of the primary link failing (rather than the remote device failing), the backup link and primary link must point to different IP addresses on the remote device. Otherwise, when the backup link points to the IP address that your device is polling, your device receives ping replies through the backup link, considers the device to be reachable again, and attempts to reopen the primary link instead of using the backup link. See **Chapter 74, Triggers Introduction** for more information about configuring Triggers with Ping Polling.

Configuring Ping Polling

This section contains:

- **Creating a Polling Instance**
This explains how to quickly create a polling instance using the ping polling defaults.
- **Customizing a Polling Instance**
This explains how to customize a ping poll and explains the other ping poll commands.
- **Troubleshooting Ping Polling**
This explains how to use the debugging and monitoring commands for ping polling.

Creating a Polling Instance

The Ping Polling feature in the AlliedWare Plus™ OS allows you to easily configure polling instances with a minimum of commands. To configure a ping poll suitable for most network situations:

1. Create a polling instance by using the command:

```
awplus(config)# ping-poll <1-100>
```

The range <1-100> identifies the polling instance in the trigger commands and in other ping poll commands. Your device can poll up to 100 IP addresses at once.

2. Set the IP address of the device you are polling by using the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# ip {<ip-address>|<ipv6-address>}
```

3. Enable the polling instance by using the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# active
```

4. If desired, set an optional description to identify the polling instance, by using the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# description <description>
```

You do not need to configure any other commands for most networks, because convenient defaults exist for all other ping poll settings. The following table summarizes the default configuration created.

| Command | Default |
|-------------------|------------|
| Critical-interval | 1 second |
| Fail-count | 5 |
| Length | 32 bytes |
| Normal-interval | 30 seconds |

| Command(cont.) | Default(cont.) |
|----------------|---|
| Sample-size | 5 |
| Source-ip | The IP address of the interface from which the ping packets are transmitted |
| Time-out | 1 second |
| Up-count | 30 |

Customizing a Polling Instance

Once you've created a polling instance using the `ping-poll` and `ip (ping-polling)` command, you may wish to customize the polling instance for your network.

Packet size If you find that larger packet types in your network are not reaching the polled device while smaller ones such as ping do, you can increase the data bytes included in the ping packets sent by the polling instance. This encourages the polling instance to change the device's status to unreachable when packet of the size you are interested in are being dropped. To change the number of bytes sent in the data portion of the ping packets, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# length <4-1500>
```

Response timeout The polling instance determines that a device hasn't responded to a ping if one second elapses without a response to the ping. In networks where ping packets have a low priority, you may need to set the allowed response time to a longer time period. To change this, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# timeout <1-30>
```

Polling frequency By default, a polling instance polls a reachable device every 30 seconds. You can change this by using the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# normal-interval <1-65536>
```

Once the polling instance has determined that a ping has failed, it starts polling the device at the frequency set as the critical interval—by default, one second. To change the frequency set by the critical interval, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# critical-interval <1-65536>
```

The critical interval enables the polling instance to quickly observe changes in the state of the device, and should be set to a much lower value than the normal interval.

Configuring when the device's status changes The number of pings that the polling instance examines to consider a change in state is controlled by the interaction of the `sample-size`, `fail-count`, and `up-count` commands. See [“How Ping Polling Works” on page 77.2](#) for an example showing this interaction.

To determine whether a device is reachable, the polling instance counts the number of failed pings within a sample of a set size. The sample size is 5 pings by default. To change the sample size, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# sample-size <1-100>
```

To change the number of failed pings that the sample must have, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# fail-count <1-100>
```

If the sample size and fail count are the same, the unanswered pings must be consecutive. If the sample size is greater than the fail count, a device that does not always reply to pings may be declared unreachable.

The upcount is the number of consecutive pings that must be answered for the polling instance to consider the device reachable again. To change this from the default of 30, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# up-count <1-100>
```

Checking the configuration

To check the settings and status of the polling instance, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# show ping-poll [<1-100>|state {up/down}] [brief]
```

Troubleshooting Ping Polling

To disable a polling instance, use the command:

```
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no active
```

The polling instance no longer sends ICMP echo requests to the polled device and the counters for this polling instance are reset.

To clear the counters and change the status of a device to unreachable, enter the Privileged Exec mode and use the command:

```
awplus# clear ping-poll {<1-100>|all}
```

The polling instance changes to the polling frequency specified with the `critical-interval` command. The device status changes to reachable once the device responses have reached the `up-count`.

To start debugging for ping polling, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ping-poll <1-100>
```

Interaction with Other Protocols

Ping polling does not work if the polled host, your device, or any intermediate routers or switches are configured to drop ICMP Echo Requests and Replies.

Ping and Traceroute

Ping and Traceroute are not affected by ping polling. You can enter ping and trace commands at any time and independent of the polling.

Chapter 78: Ping-Polling Commands



| | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Command List | 78.2 |
| active (ping-polling)..... | 78.3 |
| clear ping-poll | 78.4 |
| critical-interval..... | 78.5 |
| debug ping-poll..... | 78.6 |
| description (ping-polling)..... | 78.7 |
| fail-count | 78.8 |
| ip (ping-polling)..... | 78.9 |
| length (ping-poll data)..... | 78.10 |
| normal-interval | 78.11 |
| ping-poll..... | 78.12 |
| sample-size..... | 78.13 |
| show counter ping-poll | 78.14 |
| show ping-poll | 78.16 |
| source-ip..... | 78.20 |
| timeout (ping polling)..... | 78.21 |
| up-count..... | 78.22 |
| undebg ping-poll | 78.22 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for commands used to configure Ping Polling. For more information, see [Chapter 77, Ping Polling Introduction and Configuration](#).

For information about modifying or redirecting the output from **show** commands to a file, see [“Controlling “show” Command Output” on page 1.34](#).

Table 78-1: The following table lists the default values when configuring a ping poll

| Default | Value |
|-------------------|---|
| Critical-interval | 1 second |
| Description | No description |
| Fail-count | 5 |
| Length | 32 bytes |
| Normal-interval | 30 seconds |
| Sample-size | 5 |
| Source-ip | The IP address of the interface from which the ping packets are transmitted |
| Time-out | 1 second |
| Up-count | 30 |

active (ping-polling)

This command enables a ping-poll instance. The polling instance sends ICMP echo requests to the device with the IP address specified by the **ip (ping-polling)** command.

By default, polling instances are disabled. When a polling instance is enabled, it assumes that the device it is polling is unreachable.

The **no** variant of this command disables a ping-poll instance. The polling instance no longer sends ICMP echo requests to the polled device. This also resets all counters for this polling instance.

Syntax active
no active

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To activate the ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# active
```

To disable the ping-poll instance 43 and reset its counters, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no active
```

Related Commands **debug ping-poll**
ip (ping-polling)
ping-poll
show ping-poll

clear ping-poll

This command resets the specified ping poll, or all ping poll instances. This clears the ping counters, and changes the status of polled devices to unreachable. The polling instance changes to the polling frequency specified with the **critical-interval** command. The device status changes to reachable once the device responses have reached the **up-count**.

Syntax `clear ping-poll {<1-100>|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <1-100> | A ping poll ID number. The specified ping poll instance has its counters cleared, and the status of the device it polls is changed to unreachable. |
| all | Clears the counters and changes the device status of all polling instances. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To reset the ping poll instance 12, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ping-poll 12
```

To reset all ping poll instances, use the command:

```
awplus# clear ping-poll all
```

Related Commands [active \(ping-polling\)](#)
[ping-poll](#)
[show ping-poll](#)

critical-interval

This command specifies the time period in seconds between pings when the polling instance has not received a reply to at least one ping, and when the device is unreachable.

This command enables the device to quickly observe changes in state, and should be set to a much lower value than the **normal-interval** command.

The **no** variant of this command sets the critical interval to the default of one second.

Syntax `critical-interval <1-65536>`
`no critical-interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code><1-65536></code> | Time in seconds between pings, when the device has failed to a ping, or the device is unreachable. |

Default The default is 1 second.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To set the critical interval to 2 seconds for the ping-polling instance 99, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 99
awplus(config-ping-poll)# critical-interval 2
```

To reset the critical interval to the default of one second for the ping-polling instance 99, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 99
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no critical-interval
```

Related Commands **fail-count**
normal-interval
sample-size
show ping-poll
timeout (ping polling)
up-count

debug ping-poll

This command enables ping poll debugging for the specified ping-poll instance. This generates detailed messages about ping execution.

The **no** variant of this command disables ping-poll debugging for the specified ping-poll.

Syntax `debug ping-poll <1-100>`
`no debug ping-poll {<1-100>|all}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| <1-100> | A unique ping poll ID number. |
| all | Turn off all ping-poll debugging. |

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable debugging for ping-poll instance 88, use the command:

```
awplus# debug ping-poll 88
```

To disable all ping poll debugging, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ping-poll all
```

To disable debugging for ping-poll instance 88, use the command:

```
awplus# no debug ping-poll 88
```

Related Commands [active \(ping-polling\)](#)
[clear ping-poll](#)
[ping-poll](#)
[show ping-poll](#)
[undebug ping-poll](#)

description (ping-polling)

This command specifies a string to describe the ping-polling instance. This allows the ping-polling instance to be recognized easily in show commands. Setting this command is optional.

By default ping-poll instances do not have a description.

Use the **no** variant of this command to delete the description set.

Syntax `description <description>`
`no description`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code><description></code> | The description of the target. Valid characters are any printable character and spaces. There is no maximum character length. |

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To add the text "Primary Gateway" to describe the ping-poll instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# description Primary Gateway
```

To delete the description set for the ping-poll instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no description
```

Related Commands [ping-poll](#)
[show ping-poll](#)

fail-count

This command specifies the number of pings that must be unanswered, within the total number of pings specified by the **sample-size** command, for the ping-polling instance to consider the device unreachable.

If the number set by the **sample-size** command and the **fail-count** commands are the same, then the unanswered pings must be consecutive. If the number set by the **sample-size** command is greater than the number set by the **fail-count** command, then a device that does not always reply to pings may be declared unreachable.

The **no** variant of this command resets the fail count to the default.

Syntax `fail-count <1-100>`
`no fail-count`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code><1-100></code> | The number of pings within the sample size that a reachable device must fail to respond to before it is classified as unreachable. |

Default The default is 5.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To specify the number of pings that must fail within the sample size to determine that a device is unreachable for ping-polling instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# fail-count 5
```

To reset the fail-count to its default of 5 for ping-polling instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no fail-count
```

Related Commands

- critical-interval**
- normal-interval**
- ping-poll**
- sample-size**
- show ping-poll**
- timeout (ping polling)**
- up-count**

ip (ping-polling)

This command specifies the IPv4 address of the device you are polling.

Syntax `ip {<ip-address>|<ipv6-address>}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-address></code> | An IPv4 address in dotted decimal notation A.B.C.D |
| <code><ipv6-address></code> | An IPv6 address in hexadecimal notation X:X::X:X |

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To set ping-poll instance 5 to poll the device with the IP address 192.168.0.1, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 5
awplus(config-ping-poll)# ip 192.168.0.1
```

To set ping-poll instance 10 to poll the device with the IPv6 address 2001:db8::, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 10
awplus(config-ping-poll)# ip 2001:db8::
```

Related Commands [ping-poll](#)
[source-ip](#)
[show ping-poll](#)

length (ping-poll data)

This command specifies the number of data bytes to include in the data portion of the ping packet. This allows you to set the ping packets to a larger size if you find that larger packet types in your network are not reaching the polled device, while smaller packets are getting through. This encourages the polling instance to change the device's status to unreachable when the network is dropping packets of the size you are interested in.

The **no** variant of this command resets the data bytes to the default of 32 bytes.

Syntax length <4-1500>

no length

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <4-1500> | The number of data bytes to include in the data portion of the ping packet. |

Default The default is 32.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To specify that ping-poll instance 12 sends ping packet with a data portion of 56 bytes, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 12
awplus(config-ping-poll)# length 56
```

To reset the number of data bytes in the ping packet to the default of 32 bytes for ping-poll instance 3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 12
awplus(config-ping-poll)# length
```

Related Commands ping-poll
show ping-poll

normal-interval

This command specifies the time period between pings when the device is reachable.

The **no** variant of this command resets the time period to the default of 30 seconds.

Syntax `normal-interval <1-65536>`

`no normal-interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code><1-65536></code> | Time in seconds between pings when the target is reachable. |

Default The default is 30 seconds.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To specify a time period of 60 seconds between pings when the device is reachable for ping-poll instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# normal-interval 60
```

To reset the interval to the default of 30 seconds for ping-poll instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no normal-interval
```

Related Commands

- [critical-interval](#)
- [fail-count](#)
- [ping-poll](#)
- [sample-size](#)
- [show ping-poll](#)
- [timeout \(ping polling\)](#)
- [up-count](#)

ping-poll

This command enters the ping-poll configuration mode. If a ping-poll exists with the specified number, then this command enters its configuration mode. If no ping poll exists with the specified number, then this command creates a new ping poll with this ID number.

To configure a ping-poll, create a ping poll using this command, and use the **ip (ping-polling)** command to specify the device you want the polling instance to poll. It is not necessary to specify any further commands unless you want to change a command's default.

The **no** variant of this command deletes the specified ping poll.

Syntax `ping-poll <1-100>`
`no ping-poll <1-100>`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code><1-100></code> | A unique ping poll ID number. |

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To create ping-poll instance 3 and enter ping-poll configuration mode, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 3
awplus(config-ping-poll)#
```

To delete ping-poll instance 3, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no ping-poll 3
```

Related Commands **active (ping-polling)**
clear ping-poll
debug ping-poll
description (ping-polling)
ip (ping-polling)
length (ping-poll data)
show ping-poll
source-ip

sample-size

This command sets the total number of pings that the polling instance inspects when determining whether a device is unreachable. If the number of pings specified by the **fail-count** command go unanswered within the inspected sample, then the device is declared unreachable.

If the numbers set in this command and **fail-count** command are the same, the unanswered pings must be consecutive. If the number set by this command is greater than that set with the **fail-count** command, a device that does not always reply to pings may be declared unreachable.

You cannot set this command's value lower than the **fail-count** value.

The polling instance uses the number of pings specified by the **up-count** command to determine when a device is reachable.

The **no** variant of this command resets this command to the default.

Syntax `sample-size <1-100>`
`no sample size`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code><1-100></code> | Number of pings that determines critical and up counts. |

Default The default is 5.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To set the sample-size to 50 for ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# sample-size 50
```

To reset sample-size to the default of 5 for ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no sample-size
```

Related Commands [critical-interval](#)
[fail-count](#)
[normal-interval](#)
[ping-poll](#)
[show ping-poll](#)
[timeout \(ping polling\)](#)
[up-count](#)

show counter ping-poll

This command displays the counters for ping polling.

Syntax show counter ping-poll [<1-100>]

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <1-100> | A unique ping poll ID number. This displays the counters for the specified ping poll only. If you do not specify a ping poll, then this command displays counters for all ping polls. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 78-1: Example output from the show counter ping-poll command**

```

Ping-polling counters
Ping-poll: 1
PingsSent                ..... 15
PingsFailedUpState       ..... 0
PingsFailedDownState     ..... 0
ErrorSendingPing         ..... 2
CurrentUpCount           ..... 13
CurrentFailCount         ..... 0
UpStateEntered           ..... 0
DownStateEntered         ..... 0

Ping-poll: 2
PingsSent                ..... 15
PingsFailedUpState       ..... 0
PingsFailedDownState     ..... 0
ErrorSendingPing         ..... 2
CurrentUpCount           ..... 13
CurrentFailCount         ..... 0
UpStateEntered           ..... 0
DownStateEntered         ..... 0

Ping-poll: 5
PingsSent                ..... 13
PingsFailedUpState       ..... 0
PingsFailedDownState     ..... 2
ErrorSendingPing         ..... 2
CurrentUpCount           ..... 9
CurrentFailCount         ..... 0
UpStateEntered           ..... 0
DownStateEntered         ..... 0

```

Table 78-2: Parameters in output of the show counter ping-poll command

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Ping-poll | The ID number of the polling instance. |
| PingsSent | The total number of pings generated by the polling instance. |
| PingsFailedUpState | The number of unanswered pings while the target device is in the Up state. This is a cumulative counter for multiple occurrences of the Up state. |

Table 78-2: Parameters in output of the show counter ping-poll command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| PingsFailedDownState | Number of unanswered pings while the target device is in the Down state. This is a cumulative counter for multiple occurrences of the Down state. |
| ErrorSendingPing | The number of pings that were not successfully sent to the target device. This error can occur when your device does not have a route to the destination. |
| CurrentUpCount | The current number of sequential ping replies. |
| CurrentFailCount | The number of ping requests that have not received a ping reply in the current sample-size window. |
| UpStateEntered | Number of times the target device has entered the Up state. |
| DownStateEntered | Number of times the target device has entered the Down state. |

Example To display counters for the polling instances, use the command:

```
awplus# show counter ping-poll
```

Related Commands

- debug ping-poll**
- ping-poll**
- show ping-poll**

show ping-poll

This command displays the settings and status of ping polls.

Syntax `show ping-poll [<1-100>|state {up|down}] [brief]`

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------|--|---|
| <1-100> | Displays settings and status for the specified polling instance. | |
| state | Displays polling instances based on whether the device they are polling is currently reachable or unreachable. | |
| | up | Displays polling instance where the device state is reachable. |
| | down | Displays polling instances where the device state is unreachable. |
| brief | Displays a summary of the state of ping polls, and the devices they are polling. | |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Output **Figure 78-2: Example output from the show ping-poll brief command**

```

Ping Poll Configuration
-----
Id Enabled State Destination
-----
1 Yes Down 192.168.0.1
2 Yes Up 192.168.0.100

```

Table 78-3: Parameters in output of the show ping-poll brief command

| Parameter | Meaning | |
|-----------|--|--|
| Id | The ID number of the polling instance, set when creating the polling instance with the ping-poll command. | |
| Enabled | Whether the polling instance is enabled or disabled. | |
| State | The current status of the device being polled: | |
| | Up | The device is reachable. |
| | Down | The device is unreachable. |
| | Critical Up | The device is reachable but recently the polling instance has not received some ping replies, so the polled device may be going down. |
| | Critical Down | The device is unreachable but the polling instance received a reply to the last ping packet, so the polled device may be coming back up. |

Table 78-3: Parameters in output of the show ping-poll brief command(cont.)

| Parameter | Meaning |
|-------------|---|
| Destination | The IP address of the polled device, set with the ip (ping-polling) command. |

Figure 78-3: Example output from the show ping-poll command

```

Ping Poll Configuration
-----

Poll 1:
Description                : Primary Gateway
Destination IP address     : 192.168.0.1
Status                     : Down
Enabled                   : Yes
Source IP address         : 192.168.0.10
Critical interval         : 1
Normal interval           : 30
Fail count                : 10
Up count                  : 5
Sample size               : 50
Length                   : 32
Timeout                   : 1
Debugging                 : Enabled

Poll 2:
Description                : Secondary Gateway
Destination IP address     : 192.168.0.100
Status                     : Up
Enabled                   : Yes
Source IP address         : Default
Critical interval         : 5
Normal interval           : 60
Fail count                : 20
Up count                  : 30
Sample size               : 100
Length                   : 56
Timeout                   : 2
Debugging                 : Enabled
    
```

Table 78-4: Parameters in output of the show ping-poll command

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Description | Optional description set for the polling instance with the description (ping-polling) command. |
| Destination IP address | The IP address of the polled device, set with the ip (ping-polling) command. |

Table 78-4: Parameters in output of the show ping-poll command(cont.)

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Status | The current status of the device being polled: |
| | Up The device is reachable. |
| | Down The device is unreachable. |
| | Critical l Up The device is reachable but recently the polling instance has not received some ping replies, so the polled device may be going down. |
| | Critical l Down The device is unreachable but the polling instance received a reply to the last ping packet, so the polled device may be coming back up. |
| Enabled | Whether the polling instance is enabled or disabled. The active (ping-polling) and no active commands enable and disable a polling instance. |
| Source IP address | The source IP address sent in the ping packets. This is set using the source-ip command. |
| Critical interval | The time period in seconds between pings when the polling instance has not received a reply to at least one ping, and when the device is unreachable. This is set with the critical-interval command. |
| Normal interval | The time period between pings when the device is reachable. This is set with the normal-interval command. |
| Fail count | The number of pings that must be unanswered, within the total number of pings specified by the sample-size command, for the polling instance to consider the device unreachable. This is set using the fail-count command. |
| Up count | The number of consecutive pings that the polling instance must receive a reply to before classifying the device reachable again. This is set using the up-count command. |
| Sample size | The total number of pings that the polling instance inspects when determining whether a device is unreachable. This is set using the sample-size command. |
| Length | The number of data bytes to include in the data portion of the ping packet. This is set using the length (ping-poll data) command. |
| Timeout | The time in seconds that the polling instance waits for a response to a ping packet. This is set using the timeout (ping polling) command. |
| Debugging | Indicates whether ping polling debugging is Enabled or Disabled . This is set using the debug ping-poll command. |

Examples To display the ping poll settings and the status of all the polls, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll
```

To display a summary of the ping poll settings, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll brief
```

To display the settings for ping poll 6, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll 6
```

To display a summary of the state of ping poll 6, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll 6 brief
```

To display the settings of ping polls that have reachable devices, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll state up
```

To display a summary of ping polls that have unreachable devices, use the command:

```
awplus# show ping-poll 6 state down brief
```

Related Commands [debug ping-poll](#)
[ping-poll](#)

source-ip

This command specifies the source IP address to use in ping packets.

By default, the polling instance uses the address of the interface through which it transmits the ping packets. It uses the device's local interface IP address when it is set. Otherwise, the IP address of the interface through which it transmits the ping packets is used.

The **no** variant of this command resets the source IP in the packets to the device's local interface IP address.

Syntax `source-ip {<ip-address>|<ipv6-address>}`

`no source-ip`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-address></code> | An IPv4 address in dotted decimal notation A.B.C.D |
| <code><ipv6-address></code> | An IPv6 address in hexadecimal notation X:X::X:X |

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To configure the ping-polling instance 43 to use the source IP address 192.168.0.1 in ping packets, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# source-ip 192.168.0.1
```

To configure the ping-polling instance 43 to use the source IPv6 address 2001:db8:: in ping packets, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# source-ip 2001:db8::
```

To reset the source IP address to the device's local interface IP address for ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no source-ip
```

Related Commands

- [description \(ping-polling\)](#)
- [ip \(ping-polling\)](#)
- [length \(ping-poll data\)](#)
- [ping-poll](#)
- [show ping-poll](#)

timeout (ping polling)

This command specifies the time in seconds that the polling instance waits for a response to a ping packet. You may find a higher time-out useful in networks where ping packets have a low priority.

The **no** variant of this command resets the set time out to the default of one second.

Syntax `timeout <1-30>`
`no timeout`

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code><1-30></code> | Length of time, in seconds, that the polling instance waits for a response from the polled device. |

Default The default is 1 second.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To specify the timeout as 5 seconds for ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# timeout 5
```

To reset the timeout to its default of 1 second for ping-poll instance 43, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 43
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no timeout
```

Related Commands

- critical-interval**
- fail-count**
- normal-interval**
- ping-poll**
- sample-size**
- show ping-poll**
- up-count**

up-count

This command sets the number of consecutive pings that the polling instance must receive a reply to before classifying the device reachable again.

The **no** variant of this command resets the up count to the default of 30.

Syntax `up-count <1-100>`

`no up-count`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code><1-100></code> | Number of replied pings before an unreachable device is classified as reachable. |

Default The default is 30.

Mode Ping-Polling Configuration

Examples To set the upcount to 5 consecutive pings for ping-polling instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# up-count 5
```

To reset the upcount to the default value of 30 consecutive pings for ping-polling instance 45, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# ping-poll 45
awplus(config-ping-poll)# no up-count
```

Related Commands

- [critical-interval](#)
- [fail-count](#)
- [normal-interval](#)
- [ping-poll](#)
- [sample-size](#)
- [show ping-poll](#)
- [timeout \(ping polling\)](#)

undebg ping-poll

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug ping-poll** command on page 78.6.

Chapter 79: sFlow Introduction and Configuration



| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| sFlow Introduction..... | 79.2 |
| The sFlow Agent..... | 79.3 |
| Sampling Methods..... | 79.3 |
| The sFlow Collector..... | 79.5 |
| Configuring sFlow on your Switch..... | 79.6 |
| Configuration Procedure..... | 79.7 |
| Configuration Example..... | 79.8 |
| sFlow Datagrams..... | 79.13 |
| The sFlow MIB..... | 79.14 |

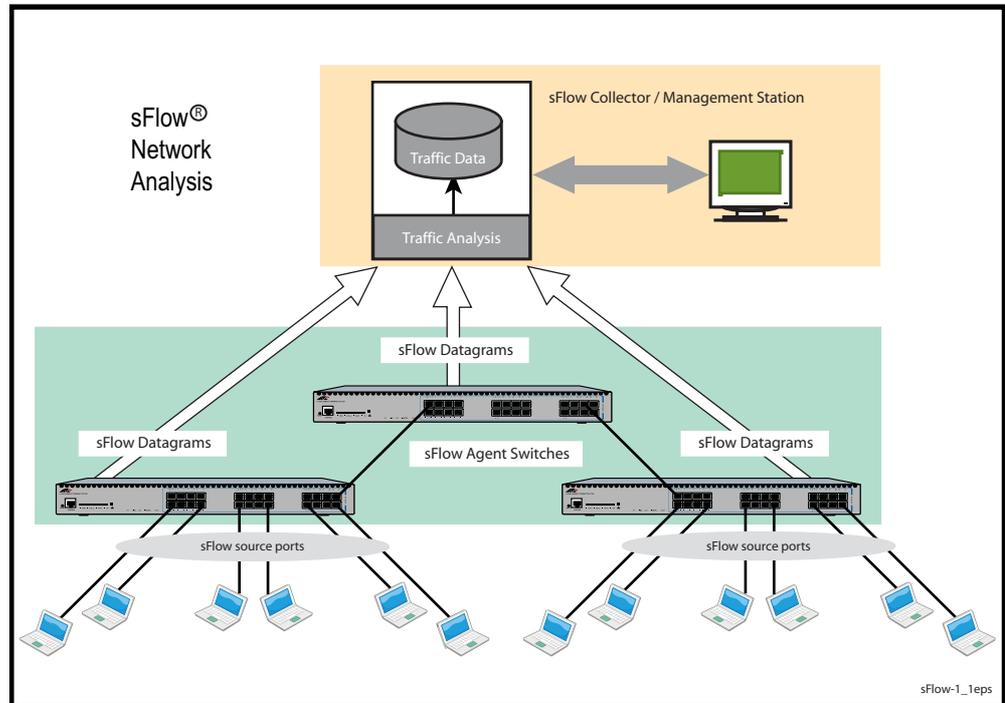
sFlow Introduction

sFlow^{®1} provides the ability to monitor traffic in data networks containing switches and routers. A network employing sFlow typically comprises a number of network (sFlow) agents that accumulate sampled data and traffic counter information. The agents then forward this data to a collector. The collector then analyses the information supplied by its agents in order to compile and display statistical profiles of the network and its traffic. The sFlow feature on your switch provides the sFlow Agent capability.

1. sFlow[®] is a registered trademark belonging to InMon Corp, San Francisco, CA.

Figure 79-1 shows a basic sFlow network structure. The three network switches also function as sFlow agents. Each agent switch captures samples of the traffic passing through its monitored ports, and sends these samples together with counter information back to the sFlow collector. The agents sample data from a number of switch ports, each acting as an sFlow data source.

Figure 79-1: Basic sFlow network



The sFlow Agent

Your switch can act as an sFlow agent. The key capabilities of the agent are to:

- sample frames as they pass through selected ports on the switch, and provide sampled extracts of the network traffic.
- periodically capture interface counter data.
- package together the sampled frame and counter information that can be sent to the collector for analysis and display.
- be configurable via SNMP MIB objects.
- communicate to heterogeneous collector devices by means of standard protocols.

Agent components and functionality

sFlow functionality on your switch is based on the requirements defined in of RFC 3176 and its updates defined in the sFlow version 5 memo dated July 2004. This memo can be found at the web site, www.sflow.org/sflow_version_5.txt.

The terms defined in **Table 79-1** are used to describe the agent and its functionality on your switch:

Table 79-1: sFlow terminology

| sFlow® Component | Definition |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Network Device | Typically either a network switch or router that has the ability to forward frames across an Ethernet network; or between Ethernet networks, in the case of a router. |
| Data Source (sFlow Source Port) | The location of a sampling point within the switch. This is typically a switch port. |
| Packet Flow | The path taken by the data (frames) as they traverse a network device. |
| Sampling Rate | The ratio of frames passing through the data source, to those captured and forwarded as sFlow data. See sflow sampling-rate command on page 80.13 . |
| Counter Sampling | The periodic polling of counters taken at the data source. |
| sFlow Datagram | A UDP datagram that contains details of sFlow captured data, and counters sent by the sFlow Agent to its Collector. |

The sFlow agent (switch) uses sampling technology to derive traffic statistics from its monitored ports. Samples are taken at the sFlow source ports. After collecting its information, the switch then packetizes its samples and statistical data, and sends both to a remote sFlow collector.

Sampling Methods

Two sampling methods are employed within the sFlow agent, frame sampling, and counter sampling. Both sample types are combined within the datagrams sent to the collector. The frame sample data will result in a relatively constant traffic stream, but the counter information is sent where it can fill available space within each datagram. Datagrams are normally sent to the collector at the rate of one each second. However, several datagrams can be sent in rapid succession, where more information exists than can be sent in a single datagram.

Frame sampling

As frames enter or leave an sFlow source port, they are sampled at a rate determined by the **sflow sampling-rate** command on page 80.13 for that particular port.

Sampling occurs every N frames (on average), where N is the rate value set via **sflow sampling-rate** command. The sampling rate applies to ingress and egress frames independently. For example, a value of 1000, will sample one frame in every 1000 frames received, one in every 1000 frames sent from the specified port.

Caution



Setting the sFlow sampling rate to a very low value (frequent sampling) can place a heavy load on the switch's CPU. The severity of this loading will increase with the number of ports configured for sampling, the port speeds, and their data sampling rates.

Data confidentiality

Sampling operates by capturing the initial portion of frames (statistically) selected. The portion sampled is set by the **sflow max-header-size** command on page 80.10, or SNMP. If the **maximum header size** is greater than the actual headers in the sampled frames, then portions of the user data (payload) will also be captured and encapsulated in the datagrams sent to the collector. The amount of user data captured can be minimized by careful selection of the maximum header size.

Counter polling

The function of counter polling is to provide snapshots of various system counters. This produces a series of data counter sets for each port, which can be independently polled at user defined rates, and sent (once a second or less) to the collector. Allied Telesis switches running AlliedWare Plus software support generic interface counters only. For more information on the data types included in the sampling count, see **"sFlow Datagrams"** on page 79.13.

The sFlow Collector

The sFlow collector receives traffic samples and counter information from a number of sFlow agents. These samples are received as a series of UDP datagrams. From the data contained within these datagrams, the collector is able to provide statistical and or graphical information of network traffic.

The sFlow agent application on your switch supports only a single collector configuration.

sFlow collectors are proprietary third party products. Your switch, running as an sFlow agent has been designed for interoperability with any sFlow collector that supports the sFlow Version 5 specification, including the inMon sFlow collector.

The sFlow Collector may also contain an SNMP Manager that is able to configure sFlow on its agent switches.

Configuring sFlow on your Switch

This section provides some guidelines for setting up the sFlow® agent on your switch. sFlow can be configured directly on your switch - using the CLI, or it can be configured via an SNMP manager. The SNMP management function can be carried out either by a the sFlow collector, or a separate SNMP manager. The configuration examples in this section are shown using the CLI.

Caution



The sFlow configurations are set either by the switch's CLI, or the sFlow collector. Sometimes the collector will override the sFlow settings that were initially configured by the CLI, in order to apply its own default settings.

If you want to apply the sFlow settings set by the CLI, or by an external network management system, then turn off network management at the collector.

We also advise that as part of your sFlow commissioning process, you review your security access procedures relating to sFlow access and its data traffic management.

sFlow configuration can vary greatly with your overall configuration, data profile, and monitoring intensity. Also, many interdependencies exist between parameter settings. For this reason, few firm configuration settings are recommended in this software reference, but instead these parameter relationships are explained and some typical configuration examples are shown.

The default settings on your switch have sFlow turned off for all ports.

The following commands are used to setup and configure sFlow on your switch. These are introduced in the order in which you would logically need to use them.

| sFlow Command | Functionality |
|--|---|
| sflow enable | enables sFlow on your switch (or stack). |
| sflow max-header-size | sets the maximum sFlow data capture size. |
| sflow collector max-datagram-size | sets the maximum size for the agent to collector datagrams. |
| sflow agent (address) | sets the sFlow agent IP address on the switch. |
| sflow polling-interval | sets the counter polling interval for specified ports. |
| sflow sampling-rate | sets the mean sampling rate for specified ports. |
| sflow collector (address) | the sFlow agent's collector IP address and/or UDP port. |

Configuration Procedure

The following process sets out a systematic procedure to configure sFlow on your switch:

Information gathering

sFlow configuration is dependent on your network structure and its data. Start by gathering together the following information.

- Obtain (or determine) the sFlow collector IP address.
- Select an appropriate UDP port for your sFlow datagrams. The recommended value is 6343, and is the default value preconfigured on your switch.
- Select an appropriate IP address for your sFlow agent. We recommend that you use the local IP address of your switch. For more information on local addresses and how to set them up, see the [interface \(to configure\) command on page 12.3](#).
- Assess the sensitivity of the data that your sFlow agent will be sampling.
- Obtain details of the protocols that your sFlow agent will be sampling. If you intend sampling unusual or proprietary protocols, obtain details of their header lengths.
- Calculate the most appropriate max-header-size for your sFlow sampling.
- Select the ports that you want to sample, and their sample rate.
These two factors vary (not quite) proportionally; so if you double the number of ports and double your sampling rate (i.e. sample half as many frames) then you will “almost” return to your earlier situation. Also note the speeds of the ports you have selected, because - for the same port utilization - the faster the port speed, the greater the load on the CPU.
- Review the speed of the port used to transport the sFlow datagrams to the collector. Unless configured to a specific port, the collector traffic will share the same network port with other traffic.
The capacity of the collector port should be sufficient to carry the volume of sFlow traffic. This topic is expanded on in the [“Configuration Example” on page 79.8](#).

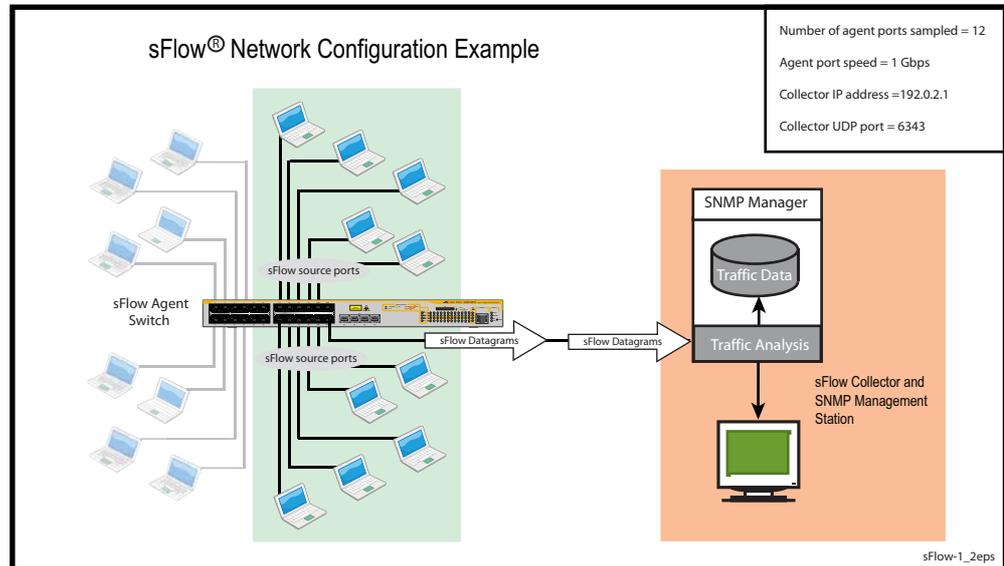
Managing the sFlow processing overhead

The sFlow data sampled on the ports converges into the CPU for processing and UDP packetizing. Therefore one of the major factors when configuring sFlow is to prevent the sFlow data volumes from placing a significant overhead on the CPU processing. The two most significant factors here are, the **number of ports sampled**, and the **sampling rate**. The other (and lesser) factors in this equation are the **frame size distribution** and the **maximum header size**. The shorter the frames are on the network, the heavier the sFlow processing load will be (for the same number of frames per second). Conversely the shorter the maximum header size selected, the lighter the sFlow processing load will be (because less data per frame is sent to the CPU).

Configuration Example

This section provides a configuration example based on the network shown below:

Figure 79-2: sFlow configuration example



Step 1: Determine the IP addresses and UDP ports.

Collector IP address is 192.0.2.65

sFlow UDP port uses the default of 6343

Agent (local) IP address 192.0.2.33. This is the address that the collector may use to configure the agent via SNMP.

Step 2: Determine the maximum sFlow datagram size.

Datagrams will be sent at one second intervals regardless of the amount of data they contain. If the amount of data to be sent is greater than the maximum datagram size, then several datagrams will be sent in quick succession - within the 1 second interval. The objective is to contain the sFlow information in a the minimum number of datagrams. That is, to fragment datagrams when necessary, but do it as little as possible.

Find the maximum datagram size that will pass through all network components without fragmenting. Then set the sFlow datagram size a little less than this value.

The maximum datagram size should be less than the MTU size.

For this example, the MTU is assumed to be set to its default of 1500 bytes. In this situation we could leave the maximum datagram size at its default of 1400 bytes; but in order to show this as a configuration step, we will change it to 1200 bytes.



Note sFlow datagrams are generally transmitted at 1 second intervals. However, where there is more information than can fit into one datagram, several datagrams are sent sequentially, within the 1 second time frame.

Step 3: Determine the max-header-size for the sampled data.

The maximum header size for the sampled data is set by the **sflow max-header-size** command. The optimum setting is to capture only the header portion of the frame and discard the user-data portion. This is especially important where the user data contains sensitive information.

Keeping the max-header-size as small as possible has the additional benefit of lightening the CPU load.

First, inspect the nature of the data to be sampled and the protocols used to carry it.

For this example we will assume that the network contains Ethernet II frames with the 4 byte 802.1Q header component, IP, TCP protocols. In this situation the following rules can be applied:

For an environment using standard TCP/IPv4 over Ethernet frames, consider the following protocol basics.

Ethernet header (including the 4 byte 802.1Q header component) = 18 bytes

IPv4 header = 24 bytes

TCP header = 24 bytes

Total = 66 bytes

A similar calculation can be made for an environment using IPv6 over Ethernet.

Ethernet header (including the 4 byte 802.1Q component) = 18 bytes

IPv6 header = 40 bytes

TCP header = 24 bytes

Total = 82 bytes

Caution In the above network scenarios:



- For IPv4 - any data existing between 66 bytes and the value set by this command will be included in the sFlow packet samples. For example, with the default of 128 applied, up to $128-66=62$ bytes of user data could be included in the sFlow datagram samples sent between the Agent and the Collector.
- For IPv6 - any data existing between 82 bytes and the value set by this command will be included in the sFlow packet samples. For example, with the default of 128 applied, up to $128-82=46$ bytes of user data could be included in the sFlow datagram samples sent between the Agent and the Collector.

For this example the **sflow max-header-size** will be set to 68 bytes (assuming an Ethernet - IPv4 - TCP environment).

Step 4: Select ports to sample.

Each sampled sFlow port speed is 1 Gbps

12 ports have been selected for sampling

Check that none of the ports selected have mirroring configured. sFlow will not operate if any port on the switch is configured for mirroring.

Step 5: Determine the sampling rate.

Selecting the sampling rate involves a trade-off between sFlow requirements, and system loading. The lower the sampling rate, the more samples will be taken, and the more accurate their results will be. Unfortunately, taking more samples

increases the load on the switch CPU and on the network connection to the collector.

For this particular configuration, the value of the sampling rate was set to 2750 to present a light load on the CPU.

Step 6: Review and adjust settings.

Because sFlow traffic loading will vary with the traffic profile, the following general assumptions are made. The following traffic profile is assumed.

- « 50 % of frames are <200 bytes long
- « 40 % of frames are >1400 bytes long

The following settings are:

- « 12 x 1 Gbps ports are being sampled
- « sFlow max-header size = 68 bytes
- « sampling rate (N = 2750)
- « average port utilization is assumed to be approximately 60 %
- « average data rate to the collector is assumed to be approximately 250 kbps

When setting the sampling rate, consider the following factors that will affect the CPU load. This load will increase (not necessarily linearly) as you:

- « increase the number of ports configured
- « increase the port speeds
- « decrease the sampling rate
- « increase the max-header-size

For this configuration the average sFlow collector traffic is expected to be approximately 250 kbps. In this example the agent-to-collector traffic will be shared with non-sFlow traffic. Although not described in this example, you can specifically configure the collector port to route only sFlow traffic. To do this you would need to assign a separate VLAN (and IP address) to the agent-to-collector interface and direct your sFlow traffic to this interface.

We advise that you ensure adequate bandwidth is provided for both the sFlow and general traffic that could share its network connection.

We will now use these settings to configure the network.

Configuration procedure

The following steps apply the settings obtained in the previous section.

Step 1: Enable sFlow switch-wide.

| | |
|---|--|
| <pre>awplus# configure terminal</pre> | Enter Global Configuration Mode. |
| <pre>awplus(config)# sflow enable</pre> | Enable the sFlow agent globally on the switch. |

Step 2: Configure the sFlow collector settings.

Step a. Set the sFlow collector max-datagram size

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# sflow collector max-datagram- size 1200</pre> | Set the maximum size of the sFlow datagrams to 1200 bytes. |
|--|--|

Step b. Set the sFlow collector (address)

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# sflow collector ip 192.0.2.65</pre> | Set the sFlow collector address to 192.0.2.65. |
|--|--|

Step 3: Configure the sFlow agent settings.

Step a. Set the sFlow agent (address)

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# sflow agent ip 192.0.2.33</pre> | Set the sFlow agent address to 192.0.2.33. |
|--|--|

Step b. Set the sFlow sampling rate on sFlow Source Ports

| | |
|---|--|
| <pre>awplus(config)# interface port1.0.11- port1.0.22</pre> | Select the port range to configure (ports 1.0.11 to 1.0.22). |
| <pre>awplus(config-if)# sflow sampling-rate 2750</pre> | Set the sampling rate on the selected ports. |

Step 4: Check the configuration.

```
awplus(config-if)#  
do sh running-config sflow
```

Validate that sFlow is enabled.

Note that the prefix “do” enables you to run an Exec Mode command from an Interface Mode prompt.

Figure 79-3: Output from the show running-config sflow command

```
awplus#sh run sflow  
!  
sflow agent ip 192.0.2.33  
sflow collector ip 192.0.2.65  
sflow collector max-datagram-size 1200  
sflow enable  
!  
interface port1.0.11-port1.0.22  
sflow sampling-rate 2750
```

sFlow Datagrams

After data sampling and counter information has been gathered, each sFlow agent packetizes the data and sends it to an sFlow collector where it can be analyzed and displayed in charts and tables.

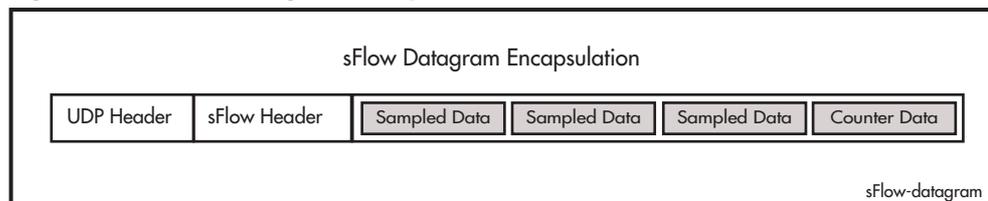
This packetized data is sent to the collector in UDP datagrams. These datagrams bear the IP address of the collector and the port number 6343. Using a standardized port helps to avoid configuration problems between the sFlow agents and collectors.

Although an analysis of the sFlow datagrams is outside the scope of this document, some basic information is provided here for those interested in knowing the basic components of the sFlow datagrams. The full specification of the sFlow protocol can be found at www.sflow.org/sflow_version_5.txt.

sFlow datagrams comprise three basic components:

- Datagram header information
- Flow sample information - may contain several samples
- Counter statistical information - fitted in where space permits

Figure 79-4: sFlow datagram encapsulation



The content of these datagram components is listed below:

sFlow Header Fields

- Version (The sFlow version being used)
- IP Address Type (Can be either an IPv4 or IPv6 address type)
- Source IP Address (The IP address of the sFlow agent)
- Sequence Number (The datagram sequence number)
- System Up-time
- Sample Count (The number of samples in the datagram)
- Sample Dataset

sFlow Flow Sample Fields

- Flow Sample 1 (The first sample)
- Sample Type (Flow Sample, 0x0001)
- Sample Sequence Number (of flow samples)
- Sampler ID
- Sampling Rate (as set by the “[sflow sampling-rate](#)” on page 80.13 or SNMP)
- Sample Pool (the total number of packets that could have been sampled)
- Packets Dropped (the number of packets dropped, due to a lack of resources)
- Input (the interface that the packet was received on - not supported)
- Output (the index number of the interface that the packet was sent from)
 - (Note that your collector should have the ability via SNMP to resolve index numbers to physical port numbers)
- Packet Type
- Header Protocol - Ethernet ISO 88023(1)
- Packet Size (Frame Length including the FCS)
- Header Length - The sampled portion of the frame as set by the “[sflow max-header-size](#)” on page 80.10. May be shorter for small frames.
- Header Bytes

- Extended Elements Number
- Extended Elements

Note that in practice the Ethernet header is usually followed by components for the IP, TCP, and user data.

sFlow Flow Sample Fields

- Counter Sample
- Sample Type (Counter Sample, 0x0002)
- 'Sample Sequence Number
- Sample ID (source ID index value)
- Sample Interval (as set by the **"sflow polling-interval"** on page 80.12)
- Counter Type (1=generic, 2=Ethernet)

Generic Interface Counters

- ifIndex
- ifType
- ifSpeed
- ifDirection (0=unknown, 1=full-duplex, 2=half-duplex, 3=in, 4=out)
- ifStatus
- InOctets
- InUcastpackets
- InMulticast packets
- InBroadcast packets
- InDiscarded packets (= 0)
- InPackets containing errors
- InPackets containing unknown protocols (= 0)
- OutOctets
- OutUcast packets
- OutMulticast packets
- OutBroadcast packets
- OutDiscarded packets
- OutPackets containing errors
- ifPromiscuous Mode

Ethernet Interface Counters

- dot3Stats Alignment Errors (= 0)
- dot3Stats FCS Errors
- dot3Stats Single Collision Frames (= 0)
- dot3Stats Multiple Collision Frames
- dot3Stats SQE Test Errors
- dot3Stats Deferred Transmissions (= 0)
- dot3Stats Late Collisions
- dot3Stats Excessive Collisions
- dot3Stats Internal Mac Transmit Errors
- dot3Stats Carrier Sense Errors (= 0)
- dot3Stats Frame Too Longs
- dot3Stats Internal Mac Receive Errors
- dot3Stats Symbol Errors (= 0)

The sFlow MIB

Your switch fully supports inMon's sFlow MIB. For more information, see **"sFlow-MIB"** on page 68.78, and the website www.sflow.org/SFLOW-MIB5.txt.

Chapter 80: sFlow Commands



| | |
|--|-------|
| Command List | 80.2 |
| debug sflow..... | 80.2 |
| debug sflow agent..... | 80.3 |
| sflow agent (address)..... | 80.4 |
| sflow collector (address)..... | 80.6 |
| sflow collector max-datagram-size..... | 80.8 |
| sflow enable | 80.9 |
| sflow max-header-size..... | 80.10 |
| sflow polling-interval..... | 80.12 |
| sflow sampling-rate..... | 80.13 |
| show debugging sflow | 80.14 |
| show running-config sflow..... | 80.15 |
| show sflow | 80.16 |
| show sflow interface | 80.17 |
| undebug sflow | 80.17 |

Command List

This chapter provides an alphabetical reference for sFlow commands.

debug sflow

This command enables sFlow® debug message logging, for sFlow sampling and polling activity on the specified ports. If no ports are specified, sampling and/or polling debug messages are enabled for all ports.

The **no** variant of this command disables sFlow sampling and or polling debug message logging on the ports selected. If no ports are specified, sampling and/or polling debug messages are disabled on all ports.

Syntax `debug sflow [interface <port-list>] [sampling][polling]`
`no debug sflow [interface <port-list>] [sampling][polling]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| interface | Interface information. |
| <port-list> | The ports for which sFlow debug is to be enabled. The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ a switch port (e.g. port1.0.12) ▪ a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-1.0.24 ▪ a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.1,port1.1.1-1.2.24. |
| sampling | Debug sFlow sampling for the specified port(s). |
| polling | Debug sFlow polling for the specified port(s). |

Default The sFlow sampling and or polling debug is disabled.

Mode Privileged Exec

Examples To enable sFlow debug message logging for polling and sampling on port1.0.1 and port1.0.7, use the commands:

```
awplus# debug sflow interface port1.0.1,port1.0.7 sampling
polling
```

To enable logging and polling of sFlow debug messages for polling and sampling on all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# debug sflow sampling polling
```

Related Commands [show debugging sflow](#)
[no debug all](#)

debug sflow agent

This command enables sFlow® debug message logging that is not specific to particular ports. For example, sending an sFlow datagram to the collector.

The **no** variant of this command applies the command default.

Syntax `debug sflow agent`

`no debug sflow agent`

Default The sFlow agent debug message logging (that is not port specific) is disabled.

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To enable logging of sFlow agent debug messages, use the following command:

```
awplus# debug sflow agent
```

Related Commands [show debugging sflow](#)
[debug sflow](#)

sflow agent (address)

This command sets the sFlow® agent IP address on the switch. This address is inserted into every sFlow datagram sent from the sFlow agent switch to the sFlow collector device. The sFlow collector can then use this address to uniquely identify and to access the switch, such as for SNMP. We therefore recommend that you change this address as little as possible.

Although the agent address can be set to any valid IPv4 or IPv6 address; we recommended that you set the sFlow® agent IP address to be the **local address**¹ that is configured on the switch. This ensures that the sFlow collector can maintain connectivity to the switch irrespective of the addition or deletion of VLAN interfaces (each of which will have its own specific IP address). Note that sFlow is rendered inactive whenever the agent address is not set.

The **no** variant of this command applies its default setting to remove a configured address.

1. For information on local addresses and how to set them up, see the [interface \(to configure\) command on page 12.3](#).

Syntax `sflow agent {ip <ip-address>|ipv6 <ipv6-address>}`
`no sflow agent {ip|ipv6}`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code><ip-address></code> | The IPv4 address of the switch that is acting as the sFlow agent. |
| <code><ipv6-address></code> | The IPv6 address of the switch that is acting as the sFlow agent. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |

Default The sFlow agent address is unset.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the sFlow agent (IPv4) address to 192.0.2.23, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow agent ip 192.0.2.23
```

To remove the sFlow agent (IPv4) address, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow agent ip
```

To set the sFlow agent (IPv6) address to 2001:0db8::1, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow agent ipv6 2001:0db8::1
```

To remove the sFlow agent (IPv6) address, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow agent ipv6
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow](#)

sflow collector (address)

This command sets the sFlow® agent's collector IP address and/or UDP port. This is the destination IP address and UDP port, for sFlow datagrams sent from the sFlow agent. The IP address can be any valid IPv4 or IPv6 address. Note that sFlow is rendered inactive whenever the collector address is set to 0.0.0.0 (for IPv4) or :: (for IPv6).

The **no** variant of this command returns the IP address and UDP port values to their defaults, which will result in sFlow being deactivated.

Syntax `sflow collector {[ip <ip-address>|ipv6 <ipv6-address>]| [port <1-65535>]}`
`no sflow collector {[ip|ipv6]| [port]}`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <ip-address> | IPv4 address of the remote sFlow collector. |
| <ipv6-address> | IPv6 address of remote sFlow collector. The IPv6 address uses the format X:X::X:X. |
| port | Destination UDP port for sFlow datagrams sent to the collector. |
| <1-65535> | UDP port number (default: 6343). |

Default The collector address is 0.0.0.0 (which renders sFlow inactive), and the UDP port is 6343.

Mode Global Configuration

Examples To set the sFlow collector address to 192.0.2.25 and UDP port to 9000, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow collector ip 192.0.2.25 port 9000
```

To remove the sFlow collector IPv4 address and leave the UDP port unchanged, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow collector ip
```

To remove the sFlow collector IPv4 address and to remove the UDP port, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow collector ip port
```

To set the sFlow collector address to 2001:0db8::1 and leave the UDP port unchanged, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow collector ipv6 2001:0db8::1
```

To remove the sFlow collector IPv6 address and leave the UDP port unchanged, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow collector ipv6
```

To remove the sFlow collector IPv6 address and to remove the UDP port, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# no sflow collector ipv6 port
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
 [show sflow](#)

sflow collector max-datagram-size

This command sets the maximum size of the sFlow® datagrams sent to the collector.

The **no** variant of this command resets the maximum-datagram-size to the default.

Syntax `sflow collector max-datagram-size <200-1500>`

`no sflow collector max-datagram-size`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code><200-1500></code> | The maximum number of bytes that can be sent in an sFlow datagram sent from the agent to the collector. |

Default 1400 bytes

Mode Global Configuration

Example To set the maximum datagram size to 1200, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow collector max-datagram-size 1200
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow](#)

sflow enable

This command enables sFlow® globally on the switch.

The **no** variant of this command disables sFlow globally on the switch.

Note that enabling sFlow does not automatically set its operational status to active. To activate sFlow the following conditions need to be met:

- sFlow is enabled.
- The sFlow agent address is set.
- The sFlow collector address is set to a valid (non zero) IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- Polling or sampling is enabled on the ports to be sampled or polled.

Syntax `sflow enable`

`no sflow enable`

Default sFlow is disabled globally on the switch.

Mode Global Configuration

Example To enable sFlow operation, use the command:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# sflow enable
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow](#)

sflow max-header-size

This command sets the maximum header size of the Ethernet frames sampled on a specified port. The maximum header size is measured in bytes, referenced from the first byte of the Ethernet destination address and excludes the Ethernet FCS fields.

If a sampled Ethernet frame is longer than the maximum header size set by this command, then the frame will be truncated to the first N bytes before being placed in the sFlow datagram, where N is the maximum header size set by this command.

The **no** variant of this command resets the max-header-size to its default.

Syntax `sflow max-header-size <14-200>`
`no sflow max-header-size`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code><14-200></code> | The maximum number of header bytes to be sampled. |

Default The max-header-size is 128 bytes.

Mode Interface Configuration

Usage The header size is measured from the first byte of the Ethernet frame MAC Destination Address.

For an environment using standard TCP IPv4 over Ethernet frames, consider the following basic protocol structure:

Ethernet header (including the 4 byte 802.1Q header component) = 18 bytes

IPv4 header = 24 bytes

TCP header = 24 bytes

Total = 66 bytes

See **“Determine the max-header-size for the sampled data.” on page 79.9** for more information on configuring this command.

A similar consideration can be made for an environment using TCP IPv6 over Ethernet:

Ethernet header (including the 4 byte 802.1Q header component) = 18 bytes

IPv6 header = 40 bytes

TCP header = 24 bytes

Total = 82 bytes



Caution In the above network scenarios:

- For IPv4 - any data existing between 66 bytes and the value set by this command will be included in the sFlow packet samples. For example, with the default of 128 applied, up to $128-66=62$ bytes of user data could be included in the sFlow datagram samples sent between the Agent and the Collector.
- For IPv6 - any data existing between 82 bytes and the value set by this command will be included in the sFlow packet samples. For example, with the default of 128 applied, up to $128-82=46$ bytes of user data could be included in the sFlow datagram samples sent between the Agent and the Collector.

Note that the agent-to-collector datagrams contain their own UDP headers, which are outside this calculation.

Example To set the maximum header size to 160 bytes for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.7, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.7
awplus(config-if)# sflow max-header-size 160
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow interface](#)
[sflow max-header-size](#)

sflow polling-interval

This command sets the sFlow® counter polling interval (in seconds) for the specified ports. A value of 0 disables polling. A counter sample is taken every N seconds where N is the value set by this command.

The **no** variant of this command applies the default.

Syntax `sflow polling-interval {0|<1-16777215>}`
`no sflow polling-interval`

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| 0 | Disable polling (the default). |
| <1-16777215> | The polling interval in seconds. |

Default The polling-interval is 0 (polling disabled).

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To set the polling interval to 60 seconds for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.7, use the following commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.7
awplus(config-if)# sflow polling-interval 60
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow interface](#)

sflow sampling-rate

This command sets the mean sFlow® sampling rate for the specified ports. Sampling occurs every N frames (on average), where N is the rate value set via this command. The sampling rate applies to ingress and egress frames independently. For example, a value of 1000 will sample one frame in every 1000 frames received, i.e. one in every 1000 frames sent from the specified port. A value of 0 disables sampling on the specified port(s).

The **no** variant of this command applies the default.

Syntax `sflow sampling-rate {0 | <256-16777215>}`

`no sflow sampling-rate`

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| 0 | Sets the default. |
| <256-16777215> | The sampling rate N, measured in Ethernet frames. |

Default The sampling-rate is 0 (sampling disabled).

Mode Interface Configuration

Example To set the sampling rate to 500 for ports 1.0.1 and 1.0.7, use the commands:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface port1.0.1,port1.0.7
awplus(config-if)# sflow sampling-rate 500
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow interface](#)

show debugging sflow

This command displays sFlow® debug settings for agent operation, and for sampling and polling on specific interface ports. If no interface ports are specified, sampling and polling will be applied to all ports.

Syntax `show debugging sflow [interface <port-list>]`

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| interface | The interface information. |
| <port-list> | The ports for which the sFlow debug settings are to be shown. The ports to display information about. The port list can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a switch port (e.g. port1.1.12) a continuous range of ports separated by a hyphen, e.g. port1.0.1-1.0.24 a comma-separated list of ports and port ranges, e.g. port1.0.1, port1.1.1-1.2.24. |

Mode User Exec and Privileged Exec

Example To display sFlow debug settings on the agent, and for sampling and polling on ports 1.0.1 to 1.0.9, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging sflow interface port1.0.1-1.0.9
```

Output **Figure 80-1: Sample obtained for an sFlow agent**

```
awplus# show debugging sflow interface port1.0.1-1.0.9
```

| sFlow Agent Debug: Enabled | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|---------------|
| Port | Sampling Debug | Polling Debug |
| 1.0.1 | Enabled | Enabled |
| 1.0.2 | Enabled | - |
| 1.0.3 | - | - |
| 1.0.4 | - | - |
| 1.0.5 | - | - |
| 1.0.6 | - | Enabled |
| 1.0.7 | - | - |
| 1.0.8 | - | Enabled |
| 1.0.9 | - | Enabled |

To display sFlow debug settings for all ports, use the command:

```
awplus# show debugging sflow
```

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow interface](#)

show running-config sflow

This command displays the running system information specific to the sFlow feature.

Syntax show running-config sflow

Mode Privileged Exec and Global Configuration

Example To display the sFlow running configuration information, use the command:

```
awplus# show running-config sflow
```

Output **Figure 80-2: Example output from the show running-config sflow command**

```
awplus#sh run sflow
!
sflow agent ip 192.0.2.33
sflow collector ip 192.0.2.65
sflow collector max-datagram-size 1200
sflow enable
!
interface port1.0.11-port1.0.22
 sflow sampling-rate 512
```

Related Commands [show running-config](#)

show sflow

This command displays non-port-specific sFlow agent configuration and operational status.

Syntax show sflow

Mode Privileged Exec

Example To display sFlow configuration and operational status, use the command:

```
awplus# show sflow
```

Output

Figure 80-3: Example output from the show sflow command

```
sFlow Agent Configuration:                               Default Values
sFlow Admin Status ..... Disabled                    [Disabled]
sFlow Agent Address ..... [not set]                  [not set]
Collector Address ..... 0.0.0.0                       [0.0.0.0]
Collector UDP Port ..... 6343                         [6343]
Tx Max Datagram Size ..... 1200                       [1400]

sFlow Agent Status:
Polling/sampling/Tx ..... Inactive because:
- sFlow is disabled
- Agent Addr is not set
- Collector Addr is 0.0.0.0
- Polling & sampling disabled
  on all ports
```

Table 80-1: Parameters in the output of the show sflow command

| Output Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| sFlow Admin Status | Whether sFlow agent operation is administratively enabled. |
| sFlow Agent Address | The sFlow agent IPv4 or IPv6 address for the device. sFlow is rendered inactive whenever the agent address is not set. |
| Collector Address | The IPv4 or IPv6 collector address to which sFlow datagrams are sent. sFlow is rendered inactive whenever the collector address is set to 0.0.0.0 or 0::0.0. |
| Collector UDP Port | The UDP port on the collector to which sFlow datagrams are sent. |
| Tx Max Datagram Size | The maximum size of the sFlow datagrams sent to the collector. |
| Polling/sampling/Tx | Whether sFlow sampling and/or polling (and hence sFlow datagram transmission) are active. If inactive the reasons are listed. |

Related Commands [show running-config sflow](#)
[show sflow interface](#)

show sflow interface

This command displays sFlow agent sampling and polling configuration for specified ports.

Syntax `show sflow interface <ifrang>`

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------------|
| <ifrang> | The interface range. |

Mode Privileged Exec

undebug sflow

This command applies the functionality of the **no debug sflow** command.

Appendix A: Command List

A

| | |
|---|-------|
| aaa accounting auth-mac default | 43.2 |
| aaa accounting auth-web default | 43.4 |
| aaa accounting commands | 43.6 |
| aaa accounting dot1x | 43.8 |
| aaa accounting login | 43.10 |
| aaa accounting update | 43.12 |
| aaa authentication auth-mac | 43.13 |
| aaa authentication auth-web | 43.14 |
| aaa authentication dot1x | 43.15 |
| aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+ | 43.16 |
| aaa authentication enable default local | 43.18 |
| aaa authentication login | 43.19 |
| aaa group server | 43.21 |
| aaa local authentication attempts lockout-time | 43.22 |
| aaa local authentication attempts max-fail | 43.23 |
| access-group | 33.4 |
| access-list extended (named) | 34.4 |
| access-list hardware (named) | 33.18 |
| access-list standard (named) | 34.27 |
| access-list (extended numbered) | 34.13 |
| access-list (hardware IP numbered) | 33.6 |
| access-list (hardware MAC numbered) | 33.15 |
| access-list (standard numbered) | 34.29 |
| accounting login | 43.24 |
| activate | 11.2 |
| active (ping-polling) | 78.3 |
| active (trigger) | 76.2 |
| arp log | 25.6 |
| arp opportunistic-nd | 25.9 |
| arp security violation | 54.3 |
| arp security | 54.2 |
| arp (IP address MAC) | 25.5 |
| arp-aging-timeout | 25.4 |
| arp-mac-disparity | 25.3 |
| atmf backup bandwidth | 59.5 |
| atmf backup delete | 59.6 |
| atmf backup enable | 59.7 |
| atmf backup now | 59.8 |
| atmf backup server | 59.10 |
| atmf backup stop | 59.12 |
| atmf backup synchronize | 59.13 |
| atmf backup | 59.4 |
| atmf cleanup | 59.14 |
| atmf distribute firmware | 59.15 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| atmf domain vlan | 59.17 |
| atmf enable | 59.18 |
| atmf group (membership) | 59.19 |
| atmf log-verbose | 59.21 |
| atmf management subnet..... | 59.22 |
| atmf management vlan | 59.24 |
| atmf master | 59.26 |
| atmf network-name | 59.27 |
| atmf provision node clone..... | 59.29 |
| atmf provision node configure boot config..... | 59.31 |
| atmf provision node configure boot system | 59.32 |
| atmf provision node create | 59.33 |
| atmf provision node delete | 59.35 |
| atmf provision node license-cert..... | 59.37 |
| atmf provision node locate | 59.39 |
| atmf provision | 59.28 |
| atmf reboot-rolling..... | 59.40 |
| atmf recover led-off..... | 59.45 |
| atmf recover | 59.44 |
| atmf remote-login | 59.46 |
| atmf restricted-login | 59.47 |
| atmf virtual-link id ip remote-id remote-ip..... | 59.48 |
| atmf working-set | 59.50 |
| attribute..... | 49.2 |
| auth auth-fail vlan..... | 41.3 |
| auth critical..... | 41.5 |
| auth dynamic-vlan-creation..... | 41.6 |
| auth guest-vlan..... | 41.8 |
| auth host-mode..... | 41.10 |
| auth log..... | 41.11 |
| auth max-supplicant | 41.13 |
| auth reauthentication | 41.14 |
| auth roaming disconnected..... | 41.15 |
| auth roaming enable | 41.17 |
| auth supplicant-mac | 41.19 |
| auth timeout connect-timeout | 41.21 |
| auth timeout quiet-period..... | 41.22 |
| auth timeout reauth-period | 41.23 |
| auth timeout server-timeout | 41.24 |
| auth timeout supp-timeout | 41.25 |
| auth two-step enable | 41.26 |
| authentication..... | 49.5 |
| auth-mac enable | 41.28 |
| auth-mac method..... | 41.29 |
| auth-mac password..... | 41.30 |
| auth-mac reauth-relearning..... | 41.31 |
| auth-web enable | 41.32 |
| auth-web forward | 41.33 |
| auth-web max-auth-fail | 41.35 |
| auth-web method..... | 41.36 |
| auth-web-server blocking-mode | 41.37 |
| auth-web-server dhcp ipaddress | 41.38 |
| auth-web-server dhcp lease..... | 41.39 |
| auth-web-server dhcp-wpad-option | 41.40 |
| auth-web-server gateway..... | 41.41 |
| auth-web-server http-redirect | 41.42 |
| auth-web-server intercept-port..... | 41.43 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| auth-web-server ipaddress..... | 41.44 |
| auth-web-server mode | 41.45 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll enable | 41.47 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll failcount..... | 41.48 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll interval | 41.49 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll reauth-timer-refresh..... | 41.50 |
| auth-web-server ping-poll timeout..... | 41.51 |
| auth-web-server port..... | 41.52 |
| auth-web-server redirect-delay-time | 41.53 |
| auth-web-server redirect-url..... | 41.54 |
| auth-web-server session-keep | 41.55 |
| auth-web-server sslport..... | 41.57 |
| auth-web-server ssl | 41.56 |
| autoboot enable..... | 7.5 |

B

| | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| backpressure..... | 15.2 |
| banner exec..... | 8.2 |
| banner login (SSH)..... | 52.2 |
| banner login (system)..... | 8.4 |
| banner motd..... | 8.5 |
| boot config-file backup | 7.8 |
| boot config-file | 7.6 |
| boot system backup..... | 7.11 |
| boot system..... | 7.9 |

C

| | |
|---|-------|
| cd | 7.12 |
| channel-group | 21.4 |
| class-map | 37.3 |
| class | 37.2 |
| clear aaa local user lockout..... | 43.25 |
| clear arp security statistics | 54.4 |
| clear arp-cache..... | 25.10 |
| clear atmf links statistics..... | 59.51 |
| clear counter ipv6 dhcp-client | 65.3 |
| clear exception log | 10.2 |
| clear ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.5 |
| clear ip dhcp snooping statistics | 54.6 |
| clear ip igmp group..... | 30.3 |
| clear ip igmp interface | 30.4 |
| clear ip igmp | 30.2 |
| clear ipv6 dhcp client..... | 65.3 |
| clear ipv6 mld group..... | 31.7 |
| clear ipv6 mld interface | 31.7 |
| clear ipv6 mld | 31.6 |
| clear ipv6 neighbors | 27.2 |
| clear lacp counters..... | 21.3 |
| clear line console..... | 5.2 |
| clear line vty | 5.3 |
| clear lldp statistics..... | 70.2 |
| clear lldp table..... | 70.3 |
| clear log buffered | 10.3 |
| clear log permanent..... | 10.3 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| clear log | 10.2 |
| clear loop-protection counters | 15.3 |
| clear mac address-table dynamic | 15.5 |
| clear mac address-table static | 15.4 |
| clear mls qos interface policer-counters..... | 37.4 |
| clear ping-poll | 78.4 |
| clear port counter | 15.7 |
| clear power-inline counters interface..... | 23.3 |
| clear radius local-server statistics..... | 49.6 |
| clear spanning-tree detected protocols (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.4 |
| clear spanning-tree statistics | 19.3 |
| clear ssh | 52.3 |
| clear test interface | 13.2 |
| clock set..... | 8.6 |
| clock summer-time date..... | 8.7 |
| clock summer-time recurring | 8.8 |
| clock timezone | 8.10 |
| commit (IPv4) | 33.34 |
| configure terminal | 4.2 |
| copy current-software..... | 7.12 |
| copy debug | 7.13 |
| copy fdb-radius-users (to file)..... | 49.7 |
| copy local-radius-user-db (from file)..... | 49.9 |
| copy local-radius-user-db (to file) | 49.10 |
| copy proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.58 |
| copy running-config | 7.14 |
| copy startup-config..... | 7.15 |
| copy web-auth-https-file | 41.58 |
| copy zmodem..... | 7.18 |
| copy (URL)..... | 7.16 |
| create autoboot..... | 7.19 |
| critical-interval | 78.5 |
| crypto key destroy hostkey | 52.4 |
| crypto key destroy userkey..... | 52.5 |
| crypto key generate hostkey | 52.6 |
| crypto key generate userkey..... | 52.7 |
| crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts | 52.8 |
| crypto key pubkey-chain userkey | 52.10 |
| crypto pki enroll local local-radius-all-users..... | 49.12 |
| crypto pki enroll local user | 49.13 |
| crypto pki enroll local | 49.11 |
| crypto pki export local pem | 49.14 |
| crypto pki export local pkcs12 | 49.15 |
| crypto pki trustpoint local..... | 49.16 |

D

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| day | 76.3 |
| deadtime (RADIUS server group) | 45.2 |
| debug aaa | 43.26 |
| debug arp security..... | 54.7 |
| debug atmf packet | 59.54 |
| debug atmf..... | 59.52 |
| debug crypto pki..... | 49.17 |
| debug dot1x | 39.2 |
| debug epsr | 56.3 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| debug igmp | 30.5 |
| debug ip dhcp snooping..... | 54.8 |
| debug ip packet interface..... | 25.11 |
| debug lacp..... | 21.6 |
| debug lldp | 70.4 |
| debug loopprot | 15.7 |
| debug mail | 71.2 |
| debug mld | 31.8 |
| debug mstp (RSTP and STP)..... | 19.5 |
| debug ping-poll..... | 78.6 |
| debug platform packet..... | 15.8 |
| debug power-inline | 23.4 |
| debug radius..... | 45.3 |
| debug sflow agent..... | 80.3 |
| debug sflow | 80.2 |
| debug snmp..... | 67.2 |
| debug ssh client | 52.12 |
| debug ssh server | 52.13 |
| debug trigger | 76.4 |
| default log buffered | 10.4 |
| default log console..... | 10.4 |
| default log email | 10.5 |
| default log host..... | 10.5 |
| default log monitor | 10.6 |
| default log permanent..... | 10.6 |
| default-action | 37.5 |
| delete debug | 7.21 |
| delete mail..... | 71.3 |
| delete..... | 7.20 |
| description (interface) | 12.2 |
| description (ping-polling)..... | 78.7 |
| description (QoS policy-map)..... | 37.6 |
| description (trigger) | 76.5 |
| dir | 7.22 |
| disable (Privileged Exec mode)..... | 4.2 |
| domain-style | 49.18 |
| dos | 34.35 |
| dot1x control-direction..... | 39.3 |
| dot1x eapol-version | 39.5 |
| dot1x eap | 39.4 |
| dot1x initialize interface | 39.6 |
| dot1x initialize supplicant..... | 39.7 |
| dot1x keytransmit..... | 39.8 |
| dot1x max-auth-fail..... | 39.9 |
| dot1x max-reauth-req | 39.11 |
| dot1x port-control | 39.12 |
| dot1x timeout tx-period..... | 39.14 |
| do | 4.3 |
| duplex | 15.10 |

E

| | |
|-----------------------|------|
| echo | 11.3 |
| ecofriendly led | 8.11 |
| edit (URL)..... | 7.25 |
| edit | 7.24 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| egress-rate-limit | 37.7 |
| egress-vlan-id | 49.19 |
| egress-vlan-name..... | 49.20 |
| enable password | 5.4 |
| enable secret | 5.7 |
| enable (Privileged Exec mode)..... | 4.4 |
| end..... | 4.6 |
| epsr configuration | 56.4 |
| epsr datavlan | 56.5 |
| epsr enhancedrecovery enable | 56.6 |
| epsr mode master controlvlan primary port..... | 56.7 |
| epsr mode transit controlvlan | 56.8 |
| epsr priority | 56.9 |
| epsr state..... | 56.10 |
| epsr trap | 56.11 |
| epsr..... | 56.4 |
| erase factory-default | 59.57 |
| erase proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.59 |
| erase startup-config | 7.26 |
| erase web-auth-https-file..... | 41.59 |
| exec-timeout..... | 5.10 |
| exit..... | 4.6 |

F

| | |
|--|-------|
| fail-count..... | 78.8 |
| findme..... | 8.12 |
| flowcontrol hardware (asyn/console)..... | 5.11 |
| flowcontrol (switch port)..... | 15.11 |

G

| | |
|------------|-------|
| group..... | 49.21 |
|------------|-------|

H

| | |
|----------------|------|
| help | 4.7 |
| hostname | 8.13 |

I

| | |
|---|-------|
| instance priority (MSTP)..... | 19.8 |
| instance vlan (MSTP) | 19.10 |
| interface (to configure) | 12.3 |
| ip address dhcp..... | 63.3 |
| ip address..... | 25.13 |
| ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.10 |
| ip dhcp snooping database..... | 54.11 |
| ip dhcp snooping delete-by-client | 54.12 |
| ip dhcp snooping delete-by-linkdown | 54.13 |
| ip dhcp snooping max-bindings | 54.14 |
| ip dhcp snooping trust..... | 54.15 |
| ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address | 54.16 |
| ip dhcp snooping violation | 54.17 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| ip dhcp snooping | 54.9 |
| ip gratuitous-arp-link..... | 25.15 |
| ip igmp snooping fast-leave | 30.7 |
| ip igmp snooping querier | 30.8 |
| ip igmp snooping report-suppression | 30.9 |
| ip igmp snooping tcn query solicit..... | 30.10 |
| ip igmp snooping..... | 30.6 |
| ip igmp static-group | 30.12 |
| ip igmp version | 30.13 |
| ip name-server | 25.16 |
| ip radius source-interface | 45.4 |
| ip route..... | 28.3 |
| ip rrp snooping | 57.3 |
| ip source binding | 54.18 |
| ip (ping-polling)..... | 78.9 |
| ipv6 access-list standard (named)..... | 35.4 |
| ipv6 address autoconfig | 27.5 |
| ipv6 address dhcp..... | 65.4 |
| ipv6 address | 27.3 |
| ipv6 enable..... | 27.7 |
| ipv6 forwarding | 27.8 |
| ipv6 mld access-group | 31.9 |
| ipv6 mld limit..... | 31.10 |
| ipv6 mld snooping fast-leave | 31.14 |
| ipv6 mld snooping mrouter | 31.15 |
| ipv6 mld snooping querier | 31.17 |
| ipv6 mld snooping report-suppression | 31.18 |
| ipv6 mld snooping..... | 31.12 |
| ipv6 mld static-group | 31.20 |
| ipv6 nd minimum-ra-interval | 27.9 |
| ipv6 nd rguard | 27.11 |
| ipv6 nd ra-interval..... | 27.10 |
| ipv6 nd suppress-ra..... | 27.13 |
| ipv6 neighbor | 27.14 |
| ipv6 opportunistic-nd..... | 27.15 |
| ipv6 route..... | 27.16 |

J

L

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| lACP port-priority | 21.7 |
| lACP system-priority..... | 21.8 |
| lACP timeout..... | 21.9 |
| length (asyn) | 5.13 |
| length (ping-poll data)..... | 78.10 |
| line | 5.14 |
| linkflap action | 15.13 |
| lldp faststart-count | 70.5 |
| lldp holdtime-multiplier | 70.6 |
| lldp management-address | 70.7 |
| lldp med-notifications | 70.8 |
| lldp med-tlv-select..... | 70.9 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| lldp non-strict-med-tlv-order-check | 70.11 |
| lldp notification-interval..... | 70.12 |
| lldp notifications..... | 70.13 |
| lldp port-number-type..... | 70.14 |
| lldp reinit..... | 70.15 |
| lldp run..... | 70.16 |
| lldp timer..... | 70.17 |
| lldp tlv-select | 70.18 |
| lldp transmit receive | 70.20 |
| lldp tx-delay | 70.21 |
| location civic-location configuration..... | 70.22 |
| location civic-location identifier | 70.26 |
| location civic-location-id..... | 70.27 |
| location coord-location configuration..... | 70.28 |
| location coord-location identifier | 70.30 |
| location coord-location-id..... | 70.31 |
| location elin-location-id | 70.33 |
| location elin-location..... | 70.32 |
| log buffered size..... | 10.11 |
| log buffered (filter) | 10.8 |
| log buffered | 10.7 |
| log console (filter) | 10.13 |
| log console | 10.12 |
| log email time..... | 10.20 |
| log email (filter)..... | 10.17 |
| log email..... | 10.16 |
| log host time..... | 10.26 |
| log host (filter)..... | 10.23 |
| log host..... | 10.22 |
| log monitor (filter) | 10.28 |
| log permanent size..... | 10.33 |
| log permanent (filter) | 10.31 |
| log permanent | 10.30 |
| login authentication | 43.27 |
| logout..... | 4.7 |
| log-rate-limit nsm | 10.34 |
| loop-protection action..... | 15.15 |
| loop-protection timeout | 15.16 |
| loop-protection | 15.14 |

M

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| mac address-table acquire | 15.17 |
| mac address-table ageing-time..... | 15.18 |
| mac address-table static..... | 15.19 |
| mac address-table thrash-limit | 15.20 |
| mail from..... | 71.5 |
| mail smtpserver | 71.6 |
| mail..... | 71.4 |
| match access-group..... | 37.8 |
| match cos..... | 37.9 |
| match dscp..... | 37.10 |
| match eth-format protocol..... | 37.11 |
| match ip-precedence | 37.14 |
| match mac-type | 37.15 |
| match tcp-flags..... | 37.16 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| match vlan | 37.17 |
| max-fib-routes | 8.15 |
| maximum-access-list | 34.39 |
| max-static-routes | 8.16 |
| mirror interface | 15.21 |
| mkdir | 7.27 |
| mls qos cos | 37.18 |
| mls qos enable | 37.19 |
| mls qos map cos-queue to | 37.20 |
| mls qos map premark-dscp to | 37.21 |
| move debug | 7.29 |
| move | 7.28 |
| mru | 12.5 |
| mtu | 12.7 |

N

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| nas | 49.22 |
| no debug all | 8.17 |
| no police | 37.23 |
| normal-interval | 78.11 |
| ntp access-group | 61.2 |
| ntp authenticate | 61.3 |
| ntp authentication-key | 61.4 |
| ntp broadcastdelay | 61.5 |
| ntp master | 61.6 |
| ntp peer | 61.7 |
| ntp server | 61.9 |
| ntp source | 61.11 |
| ntp trusted-key | 61.12 |

P

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| ping ipv6 | 27.17 |
| ping-poll | 78.12 |
| ping | 25.17 |
| platform load-balancing | 15.23 |
| platform stop-unreg-mc-flooding | 15.24 |
| polarity | 15.26 |
| police single-rate action | 37.24 |
| police twin-rate action | 37.26 |
| policy-map | 37.28 |
| port-vlan-forwarding-priority | 17.4 |
| power-inline allow-legacy | 23.5 |
| power-inline description | 23.6 |
| power-inline enable | 23.7 |
| power-inline max | 23.8 |
| power-inline priority | 23.10 |
| power-inline usage-threshold | 23.12 |
| priority-queue | 37.29 |
| private-vlan association | 17.3 |
| private-vlan | 17.2 |
| privilege level | 5.16 |

pwd7.30

R

radius-server deadline45.5
radius-server host45.6
radius-server key45.10
radius-server local49.23
radius-server retransmit45.11
radius-server timeout45.12
reboot8.18
region (MSTP)19.11
reload8.18
remark new-cos37.32
remark-map37.30
repeat76.6
revision (MSTP)19.12
rmdir7.31
rmon alarm73.2
rmon collection history73.4
rmon collection stats73.5
rmon event73.6

S

sample-size78.13
script76.7
security-password forced-change5.18
security-password history5.17
security-password lifetime5.19
security-password minimum-categories5.20
security-password minimum-length5.21
security-password reject-expired-pwd5.22
security-password warning5.23
server auth-port49.24
server enable49.25
server (Server Group)45.14
service advanced-vty5.24
service dhcp-snooping54.19
service http5.25
service password-encryption5.26
service power-inline23.13
service ssh52.14
service telnet5.27
service terminal-length5.28
service test13.3
service-policy input37.34
sflow agent (address)80.4
sflow collector max-datagram-size80.8
sflow collector (address)80.6
sflow enable80.9
sflow max-header-size80.10
sflow polling-interval80.12

| | |
|---|-------|
| sflow sampling-rate..... | 80.13 |
| show access-list (IPv4 Hardware ACLs) | 33.35 |
| show access-list (IPv4 Software ACLs) | 34.40 |
| show arp security interface | 54.22 |
| show arp security statistics..... | 54.23 |
| show arp security | 54.21 |
| show arp | 25.18 |
| show atmf backup | 59.62 |
| show atmf detail..... | 59.64 |
| show atmf group members..... | 59.68 |
| show atmf group..... | 59.66 |
| show atmf links detail..... | 59.70 |
| show atmf links statistics..... | 59.76 |
| show atmf links | 59.69 |
| show atmf memory | 59.79 |
| show atmf nodes..... | 59.81 |
| show atmf provision nodes | 59.82 |
| show atmf tech | 59.83 |
| show atmf working-set | 59.85 |
| show atmf | 59.58 |
| show auth two-step supplicant brief..... | 41.60 |
| show auth-mac diagnostics | 41.62 |
| show auth-mac interface | 41.63 |
| show auth-mac sessionstatistics | 41.65 |
| show auth-mac statistics interface | 41.66 |
| show auth-mac supplicant interface | 41.68 |
| show auth-mac supplicant | 41.67 |
| show auth-mac | 41.61 |
| show auth-web diagnostics | 41.71 |
| show auth-web interface | 41.72 |
| show auth-web sessionstatistics | 41.75 |
| show auth-web statistics interface..... | 41.76 |
| show auth-web supplicant interface | 41.78 |
| show auth-web supplicant..... | 41.77 |
| show auth-web-server | 41.79 |
| show auth-web | 41.69 |
| show autoboot..... | 7.32 |
| show banner login..... | 52.16 |
| show boot..... | 7.33 |
| show class-map | 37.35 |
| show clock..... | 8.19 |
| show counter dhcp-client..... | 63.4 |
| show counter ipv6 dhcp-client | 65.5 |
| show counter log | 10.35 |
| show counter mail | 71.7 |
| show counter ntp..... | 61.13 |
| show counter ping-poll | 78.14 |
| show counter snmp-server..... | 67.4 |
| show cpu history | 8.23 |
| show cpu | 8.20 |
| show crypto key hostkey..... | 52.17 |
| show crypto key pubkey-chain knownhosts | 52.18 |
| show crypto key pubkey-chain userkey | 52.19 |
| show crypto key userkey | 52.20 |
| show crypto pki certificates local-radius-all-users | 49.28 |
| show crypto pki certificates user..... | 49.29 |
| show crypto pki certificates | 49.26 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| show crypto pki trustpoints | 49.30 |
| show debugging aaa | 43.28 |
| show debugging arp security..... | 54.25 |
| show debugging atmf packet | 59.87 |
| show debugging atmf..... | 59.86 |
| show debugging dot1x | 39.15 |
| show debugging epsr | 56.11 |
| show debugging igmp | 30.14 |
| show debugging ip dhcp snooping..... | 54.26 |
| show debugging ip packet..... | 25.19 |
| show debugging lacp..... | 21.11 |
| show debugging lldp | 70.34 |
| show debugging loopprot | 15.27 |
| show debugging mld | 31.23 |
| show debugging mstp..... | 19.13 |
| show debugging platform packet | 15.27 |
| show debugging power-inline | 23.14 |
| show debugging radius..... | 45.16 |
| show debugging sflow | 80.14 |
| show debugging snmp..... | 67.7 |
| show debugging trigger | 76.9 |
| show debugging | 8.25 |
| show dhcp lease | 63.5 |
| show diagnostic channel-group..... | 21.12 |
| show dos interface | 34.42 |
| show dot1x diagnostics | 39.18 |
| show dot1x interface | 39.19 |
| show dot1x sessionstatistics | 39.24 |
| show dot1x statistics interface..... | 39.25 |
| show dot1x supplicant interface | 39.28 |
| show dot1x supplicant..... | 39.26 |
| show dot1x..... | 39.16 |
| show ecofriendly | 8.26 |
| show epsr common segments | 56.15 |
| show epsr config-check | 56.16 |
| show epsr counters | 56.18 |
| show epsr summary | 56.19 |
| show epsr <epsr-instance> | 56.17 |
| show epsr | 56.12 |
| show etherchannel detail | 21.14 |
| show etherchannel summary | 21.15 |
| show etherchannel..... | 21.13 |
| show exception log | 10.36 |
| show file systems | 7.36 |
| show file | 7.35 |
| show flowcontrol interface..... | 15.28 |
| show history..... | 4.8 |
| show interface access-group | 33.37 |
| show interface brief | 12.12 |
| show interface memory | 8.27 |
| show interface status..... | 12.13 |
| show interface switchport | 15.29 |
| show interface | 12.9 |
| show ip access-list | 34.44 |
| show ip dhcp snooping acl | 54.28 |
| show ip dhcp snooping binding | 54.30 |
| show ip dhcp snooping interface | 54.31 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| show ip dhcp snooping statistics..... | 54.33 |
| show ip dhcp snooping | 54.27 |
| show ip igmp groups..... | 30.15 |
| show ip igmp interface | 30.16 |
| show ip igmp snooping statistics..... | 30.19 |
| show ip interface..... | 25.20 |
| show ip route database | 28.6 |
| show ip route summary..... | 28.7 |
| show ip route..... | 28.4 |
| show ip rrp snooping..... | 57.4 |
| show ip sockets..... | 25.21 |
| show ip source binding | 54.35 |
| show ip traffic..... | 25.23 |
| show ipv6 access-list (IPv6 Software ACLs) | 35.8 |
| show ipv6 dhcp interface..... | 65.7 |
| show ipv6 dhcp..... | 65.6 |
| show ipv6 forwarding | 27.18 |
| show ipv6 interface brief..... | 27.19 |
| show ipv6 mld groups..... | 31.24 |
| show ipv6 mld interface | 31.25 |
| show ipv6 mld snooping mrouter | 31.26 |
| show ipv6 mld snooping statistics | 31.27 |
| show ipv6 neighbors | 27.20 |
| show ipv6 route summary | 27.23 |
| show ipv6 route..... | 27.21 |
| show lacp sys-id..... | 21.17 |
| show lacp-counter | 21.16 |
| show lldp interface | 70.37 |
| show lldp local-info..... | 70.39 |
| show lldp neighbors detail..... | 70.45 |
| show lldp neighbors | 70.43 |
| show lldp statistics interface..... | 70.50 |
| show lldp statistics | 70.48 |
| show lldp..... | 70.35 |
| show location | 70.52 |
| show log config | 10.39 |
| show log permanent..... | 10.42 |
| show log | 10.37 |
| show loop-protection..... | 15.30 |
| show mac address-table thrash-limit | 15.33 |
| show mac address-table..... | 15.31 |
| show mail..... | 71.8 |
| show memory allocations..... | 8.31 |
| show memory history..... | 8.32 |
| show memory pools | 8.34 |
| show memory shared..... | 8.35 |
| show memory..... | 8.29 |
| show mirror interface | 15.35 |
| show mirror | 15.34 |
| show mls qos interface policer-counters | 37.37 |
| show mls qos interface queue-counters | 37.38 |
| show mls qos interface storm-status | 37.39 |
| show mls qos interface | 37.36 |
| show mls qos maps cos-queue | 37.40 |
| show mls qos maps premark-dscp | 37.41 |
| show ntp associations | 61.14 |
| show ntp status | 61.15 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| show ping-poll | 78.16 |
| show platform classifier statistics utilization brief | 15.37 |
| show platform port | 15.37 |
| show platform | 15.36 |
| show policy-map | 37.42 |
| show port etherchannel | 21.18 |
| show port-security interface | 15.44 |
| show port-security intrusion | 15.45 |
| show port-vlan-forwarding-priority | 17.7 |
| show power-inline counters | 23.18 |
| show power-inline interface detail | 23.22 |
| show power-inline interface | 23.20 |
| show power-inline | 23.15 |
| show privilege | 5.31 |
| show process | 8.36 |
| show proxy-autoconfig-file | 41.80 |
| show radius local-server group | 49.31 |
| show radius local-server nas | 49.32 |
| show radius local-server statistics | 49.33 |
| show radius local-server user | 49.34 |
| show radius statistics | 45.19 |
| show radius | 45.17 |
| show reboot history | 8.38 |
| show rmon alarm | 73.7 |
| show rmon event | 73.8 |
| show rmon history | 73.9 |
| show rmon statistics | 73.10 |
| show router-id | 8.39 |
| show running-config access-list | 7.39 |
| show running-config as-path access-list | 7.40 |
| show running-config atmf | 59.88 |
| show running-config dhcp | 7.41 |
| show running-config full | 7.42 |
| show running-config interface | 7.43 |
| show running-config ipv6 access-list | 7.45 |
| show running-config key chain | 7.46 |
| show running-config lldp | 7.47 |
| show running-config log | 10.43 |
| show running-config power-inline | 7.48 |
| show running-config router-id | 7.49 |
| show running-config security-password | 7.50 |
| show running-config sflow | 80.15 |
| show running-config snmp | 67.8 |
| show running-config ssh | 52.21 |
| show running-config trigger | 76.9 |
| show running-config | 7.37 |
| show security-password configuration | 5.29 |
| show security-password user | 5.30 |
| show sflow interface | 80.17 |
| show sflow | 80.16 |
| show snmp-server community | 67.9 |
| show snmp-server group | 67.10 |
| show snmp-server user | 67.10 |
| show snmp-server view | 67.11 |
| show snmp-server | 67.9 |
| show spanning-tree brief | 19.17 |
| show spanning-tree mst config | 19.19 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| show spanning-tree mst detail interface | 19.22 |
| show spanning-tree mst detail interface | 19.27 |
| show spanning-tree mst detail | 19.20 |
| show spanning-tree mst instance interface | 19.25 |
| show spanning-tree mst instance..... | 19.24 |
| show spanning-tree mst interface | 19.26 |
| show spanning-tree mst..... | 19.18 |
| show spanning-tree statistics instance interface | 19.31 |
| show spanning-tree statistics instance | 19.30 |
| show spanning-tree statistics interface | 19.32 |
| show spanning-tree statistics | 19.29 |
| show spanning-tree vlan range-index | 19.34 |
| show spanning-tree | 19.14 |
| show ssh client..... | 52.23 |
| show ssh server allow-users..... | 52.25 |
| show ssh server deny-users..... | 52.26 |
| show ssh server | 52.24 |
| show ssh | 52.22 |
| show startup-config | 7.51 |
| show static-channel-group | 21.19 |
| show storm-control..... | 15.46 |
| show system environment | 8.41 |
| show system interrupts | 8.42 |
| show system mac..... | 8.43 |
| show system pluggable detail | 8.46 |
| show system pluggable diagnostics..... | 8.49 |
| show system pluggable..... | 8.44 |
| show system serialnumber..... | 8.51 |
| show system | 8.40 |
| show tacacs+ | 47.6 |
| show tech-support | 8.52 |
| show telnet..... | 5.32 |
| show trigger..... | 76.10 |
| show users..... | 5.33 |
| show version..... | 7.52 |
| show vlan classifier group interface..... | 17.10 |
| show vlan classifier group..... | 17.9 |
| show vlan classifier interface group..... | 17.11 |
| show vlan classifier rule | 17.12 |
| show vlan private-vlan | 17.13 |
| show vlan | 17.8 |
| show <epsr-instance> counters..... | 56.17 |
| shutdown..... | 12.15 |
| snmp trap link-status suppress | 67.13 |
| snmp trap link-status..... | 67.12 |
| snmp-server community | 67.16 |
| snmp-server contact | 67.17 |
| snmp-server enable trap | 67.18 |
| snmp-server engineID local reset | 67.22 |
| snmp-server engineID local | 67.20 |
| snmp-server group..... | 67.23 |
| snmp-server host | 67.24 |
| snmp-server location..... | 67.26 |
| snmp-server source-interface..... | 67.27 |
| snmp-server startup-trap-delay..... | 67.28 |
| snmp-server user..... | 67.29 |
| snmp-server view..... | 67.31 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| snmp-server | 67.15 |
| source-ip | 78.20 |
| spanning-tree autoedge (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.35 |
| spanning-tree bpdu | 19.36 |
| spanning-tree cisco-interoperability (MSTP) | 19.38 |
| spanning-tree edgeport (RSTP and MSTP) | 19.39 |
| spanning-tree enable | 19.40 |
| spanning-tree errdisable-timeout enable..... | 19.42 |
| spanning-tree errdisable-timeout interval | 19.43 |
| spanning-tree force-version..... | 19.44 |
| spanning-tree forward-time | 19.45 |
| spanning-tree guard root | 19.46 |
| spanning-tree hello-time | 19.47 |
| spanning-tree link-type | 19.48 |
| spanning-tree max-age | 19.49 |
| spanning-tree max-hops (MSTP)..... | 19.50 |
| spanning-tree mode | 19.51 |
| spanning-tree mst configuration | 19.52 |
| spanning-tree mst instance path-cost | 19.54 |
| spanning-tree mst instance priority..... | 19.56 |
| spanning-tree mst instance restricted-role | 19.57 |
| spanning-tree mst instance restricted-tcn | 19.58 |
| spanning-tree mst instance | 19.53 |
| spanning-tree path-cost..... | 19.59 |
| spanning-tree portfast bpdu-filter | 19.62 |
| spanning-tree portfast bpdu-guard..... | 19.64 |
| spanning-tree portfast (STP) | 19.60 |
| spanning-tree priority (bridge priority) | 19.66 |
| spanning-tree priority (port priority) | 19.67 |
| spanning-tree restricted-role..... | 19.68 |
| spanning-tree restricted-tcn | 19.68 |
| spanning-tree transmit-holdcount..... | 19.69 |
| speed (asyn) | 8.55 |
| speed | 15.47 |
| ssh client..... | 52.29 |
| ssh server allow-users..... | 52.33 |
| ssh server authentication | 52.35 |
| ssh server deny-users | 52.37 |
| ssh server resolve-host..... | 52.38 |
| ssh server scp..... | 52.39 |
| ssh server sftp..... | 52.40 |
| ssh server..... | 52.31 |
| ssh..... | 52.27 |
| static-channel-group | 21.20 |
| storm-action..... | 37.43 |
| storm-control level | 15.49 |
| storm-downtime | 37.44 |
| storm-protection | 37.45 |
| storm-rate | 37.46 |
| storm-window | 37.47 |
| switchport access vlan | 17.14 |
| switchport atmf-crosslink | 59.89 |
| switchport atmf-link..... | 59.91 |
| switchport enable vlan | 17.15 |
| switchport mode access | 17.16 |
| switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous..... | 17.20 |
| switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary | 17.18 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| switchport mode private-vlan | 17.17 |
| switchport mode trunk | 17.22 |
| switchport private-vlan host-association | 17.23 |
| switchport private-vlan mapping | 17.24 |
| switchport trunk allowed vlan | 17.25 |
| switchport trunk native vlan | 17.28 |
| switchport voice dscp | 17.29 |
| switchport voice vlan priority | 17.32 |
| switchport voice vlan | 17.30 |
| system territory | 8.56 |

T

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| tacacs-server host | 47.2 |
| tacacs-server key | 47.4 |
| tacacs-server timeout | 47.5 |
| tcpdump | 25.29 |
| telnet server | 5.35 |
| telnet | 5.34 |
| terminal length | 5.36 |
| terminal monitor | 8.57 |
| terminal resize | 5.37 |
| test interface | 13.4 |
| test | 76.15 |
| thrash-limiting | 15.50 |
| time (trigger) | 76.16 |
| timeout (ping polling) | 78.21 |
| traceroute ipv6 | 27.24 |
| traceroute | 25.30 |
| trap | 76.18 |
| trigger activate | 76.20 |
| trigger | 76.19 |
| trust dscp | 37.48 |
| type atmf node | 59.92 |
| type card | 76.21 |
| type cpu | 76.22 |
| type interface | 76.23 |
| type memory | 76.24 |
| type periodic | 76.25 |
| type ping-poll | 76.26 |
| type reboot | 76.26 |
| type time | 76.27 |

U

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| undebg aaa | 43.28 |
| undebg all | 8.58 |
| undebg dot1x | 39.30 |
| undebg epsr | 56.19 |
| undebg igmp | 30.19 |
| undebg lacp | 21.22 |
| undebg loopprot | 15.51 |
| undebg mail | 71.8 |
| undebg mstp | 19.69 |
| undebg ping-poll | 78.22 |
| undebg platform packet | 15.51 |

| | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| undebbug radius | 45.19 |
| undebbug sflow | 80.17 |
| undebbug snmp | 67.31 |
| undebbug ssh client | 52.41 |
| undebbug ssh server | 52.41 |
| undebbug trigger | 76.27 |
| up-count..... | 78.22 |
| user (RADIUS server) | 49.36 |
| username | 5.38 |

V

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| vlan classifier activate..... | 17.34 |
| vlan classifier group | 17.35 |
| vlan classifier rule ipv4 | 17.36 |
| vlan classifier rule proto..... | 17.37 |
| vlan database | 17.40 |
| vlan (RADIUS server) | 49.38 |
| vlan..... | 17.33 |

W

| | |
|---|-------|
| wait..... | 11.4 |
| write file..... | 7.53 |
| write memory | 7.53 |
| write terminal | 7.53 |
| wrr-queue disable queues | 37.49 |
| wrr-queue egress-rate-limit queues..... | 37.50 |
| wrr-queue weight queues | 37.51 |

Z

| | |
|---|-------|
| (access-list extended ICMP filter) | 34.16 |
| (access-list extended IP filter) | 34.18 |
| (access-list extended IP protocol filter) | 34.21 |
| (access-list extended TCP UDP filter) | 34.25 |
| (access-list hardware ICMP filter) | 33.20 |
| (access-list hardware IP protocol filter) | 33.23 |
| (access-list hardware MAC filter) | 33.29 |
| (access-list hardware TCP UDP filter) | 33.31 |
| (access-list standard named filter) | 34.31 |
| (access-list standard numbered filter) | 34.33 |
| (ipv6 access-list standard filter)..... | 35.6 |

Appendix B: GUI Reference

| | |
|--|------|
| Introduction | B.3 |
| Install the GUI and set the switch | B.4 |
| System Requirements | B.4 |
| Install the GUI to your switch using an SD card | B.4 |
| Install the GUI to your switch via TFTP server | B.5 |
| Set up your switch and log into the GUI | B.6 |
| Using the GUI | B.10 |
| System > Status | B.10 |
| System > Status > System Details | B.12 |
| System > Status > System Date and Time | B.12 |
| System > Status > Top Ten Utilised Ports | B.13 |
| System > Identity | B.14 |
| System > Environment Monitoring | B.15 |
| System > File Management | B.16 |
| System > File Management > Copy File | B.19 |
| System > File Management > Move File | B.19 |
| System > File Management > Download File | B.20 |
| System > File Management > Upload File | B.21 |
| System > File Management > Delete File | B.22 |
| System > File Management > Delete Folder | B.22 |
| System > License Management | B.23 |
| System > License Management > Add Feature License | B.24 |
| System > License Management > Delete Feature License | B.25 |
| Switching > Ports | B.26 |
| Switching > Ports > Monitor Port | B.28 |
| Switching > Ports > Configure Port | B.29 |
| Switching > VLANs | B.30 |
| Switching > VLANs > Add VLAN | B.32 |
| Switching > Link Aggregation | B.33 |
| Switching > FDB Table | B.36 |
| Switching > Power over Ethernet | B.37 |
| Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE | B.39 |
| Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port | B.40 |
| IP > IP Interfaces | B.42 |
| IP > IP Interfaces > Configure Primary IP Address | B.43 |
| IP > IP Interfaces > Add Secondary IP Address | B.44 |
| IP > Static Routes | B.45 |
| IP > Static Routes > Add Static Route | B.46 |
| IP > ARP | B.47 |
| IP > DNS | B.49 |
| IP > DNS > Add DNS Server | B.50 |
| IP > IGMP Snooping | B.51 |
| IP > IGMP Snooping > Configure Interface | B.52 |
| Resiliency and High Availability > STP | B.53 |
| Resiliency and High Availability > EPSR | B.56 |
| Management > Device Utilities | B.58 |
| Management > NTP | B.59 |
| Management > NTP > Add NTP Association | B.61 |
| Management > Remote CLI Access | B.62 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Management > Remote CLI Access > Telnet Settings..... | B.64 |
| Management > Remote CLI Access > SSH Settings | B.64 |
| Management > Logs..... | B.65 |
| Management > Logs > Export Logs..... | B.66 |

Introduction

This appendix describes how to install, configure and use the Graphical User Interface (GUI) on switches running the AlliedWare Plus™ OS. The GUI provides extensive monitoring and essential configuration functionality for Allied Telesis switches via a web browser. This document explains how to install the GUI using either an SD card or via a TFTP server.

The GUI functionality is provided via a Java applet file. Before you can use the GUI to manage your switches, you must download the Java applet file, and install it to your switch's Flash file system.

Once the Java applet file is present in your switch's Flash, no specific commands are required to enable the GUI, or to inform the switch which Java applet file to use. Instead, when an incoming browser connection is established with the switch, the switch will automatically send the most recent compatible Java applet file that is present in its Flash file system.

Different versions of the Java applet file will be compatible with different versions of the AlliedWare Plus™ OS. The AlliedWare Plus™ OS automatically determines if a Java applet file is compatible, so the Java applet file that is delivered to your browser will always be compatible with the AlliedWare Plus™ OS version running on the switch to which you have connected.

Note which products and software version the GUI works with, along with PC and browser specifications listed. You may need to install and run the latest Java Runtime Environment that you can download from the Sun site so your browser can fully support the GUI Java applet.

Install the GUI and set the switch

This section shows you how to install and setup the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI on your switch.

System Requirements

To install and run the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI you will require the following system products and setup:

- PC Platform:
Windows XP SP2 and up / Windows Vista SP1 and up
- Browser: (must support Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 6)
Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 and up / Mozilla Firefox 2.0 and up

Install the GUI to your switch using an SD card

Step 1: Download a GUI Java applet

The GUI Java applet file is available in a compressed (zip) file with the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System software from the Software Download area of the Allied Telesis Website: www.alliedtelesis.com/support/software/restricted. Login using your assigned Email Address and Password.

Download the Java applet file. This file will have a .zip file name extension. You need to extract the Java .jar file from the compressed .zip file. The version number of the software applet file (.jar) gives the earliest version of the software file (.rel) that the GUI can operate with.

Step 2: Copy the GUI Java applet .jar file on an SD card to flash memory

Insert the SD card in the SD slot on the front of your switch. Connect to the management port, then log into the switch.

Copy the GUI Java applet to your switch, using the below commands:

```
awplus# copy card:<filename.jar> flash:/
```

Where <filename.jar> is the GUI Java applet file you downloaded in Step 1.

Install the GUI to your switch via TFTP server

Step 1: Download a GUI Java applet file from the support site:

The GUI Java applet file is available in a compressed (.zip) file with the AlliedWare Plus™ Operating System software from the Support area of the Allied Telesis Website: www.alliedtelesis.com. Download the Java applet file. This file will have a .zip file name extension. You need to extract the Java .jar file from the compressed .zip file. The version number of the software applet file (.jar) gives the earliest version of the software file (.rel) that the GUI can operate with.

Step 2: Copy the GUI applet

Copy the GUI applet .jar file onto a TFTP server. Ensure this TFTP server is enabled and ready for the switch. Connect to the management port of the switch, then login to the switch. Do not connect to the management port of the TFTP server

Step 3: Copy the GUI Java applet to your switch

Use the following commands to copy the GUI Java applet to your switch:

```
awplus# copy tftp://<server-address>/  
      <filename.jar> flash:/
```

where *<server-address>* is the IP address for the TFTP server, and where *<filename.jar>* is the GUI Java applet file you downloaded in Step 1.

Set up your switch and log into the GUI

Step 1: Assign the IP addresses:

Use the following commands to configure your switch with an appropriate IP address:

```
awplus# configure terminal
awplus(config)# interface vlan1
awplus(config-if)# ip address <address>/<prefix-length>
```

where *<address>* is the IP address that you will subsequently browse to when you connect to the GUI Java applet. For example, to give the switch an IP address of 192.168.2.6, and a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0, use the following command:

```
awplus(config-if)# ip address 192.168.2.6/24
```

Step 2: Configure the Default Gateway

If necessary, use the following commands to configure the default gateway.

```
awplus(config-if)# exit
awplus(config)# ip route 0.0.0.0/0 <gateway-address>
```

where *<gateway-address>* is the IP address for your gateway device. Note that you do not need to define a default gateway if you browse to the switch from within its own subnet.

Step 3: Create a user account

In order to log into the GUI, you must first create a user account. Use the following commands to set up a user account

```
awplus(config)# username <username> privilege 15
password <password>
```

Note that you can create multiple users to log into the GUI. See the AlliedWare Plus Software Reference for information about the **username** command. The switch must be configured with a local database user, or the switch must be configured to remotely authenticate users with either TACACS+ or RADIUS.

Step 4: Ensure HTTP service is enabled

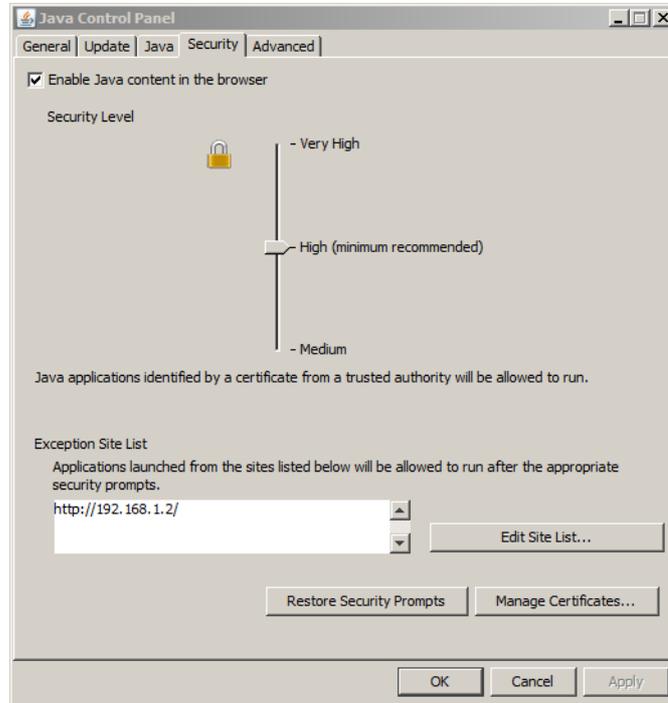
The HTTP service needs to be enabled on the switch before it accepts connections from a web browser. The HTTP service is enabled by default. However, if the HTTP service has been disabled then you must enable the HTTP service again. If the HTTP service is disabled then use the following command to enable the HTTP service:

```
awplus(config)# service http
```

See the AlliedWare Plus™ Software Reference for information about the **service http** command.

Step 5: Start the Java Control Panel to enable Java within a browser

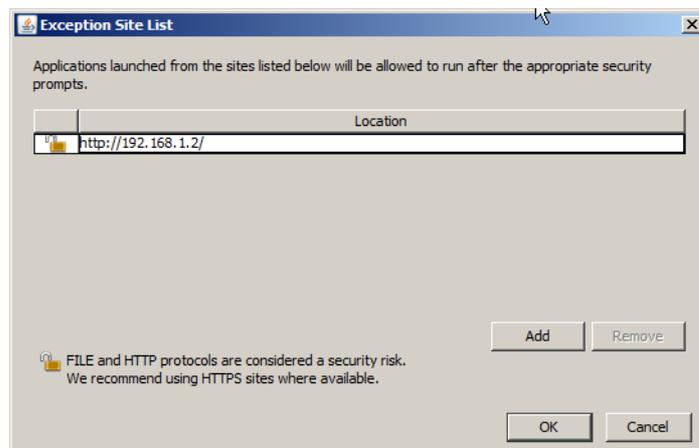
On your PC, start the 'Java Control Panel' by opening the 'Windows Control Panel' from the 'Windows Start menu'. Then enter 'Java Control Panel' in the 'search' field to display and open the 'Java Control Panel'. Next, click on the 'Security' tab as below:



Ensure the 'Enable Java content in the browser' checkbox is selected on this tab.

Step 6: Enter the URL in the Java Control Panel Exception Site List

Click on the 'Edit Site List' button in the 'Java Control Panel' dialog 'Security' tab to enter a URL in the below 'Exception Site List' dialog. Enter the IP address you configured in Step 1 with an http:// prefix in the 'Exception Site List' dialog below:



After entering the URL click on the 'Add' button then click OK to start the GUI next.

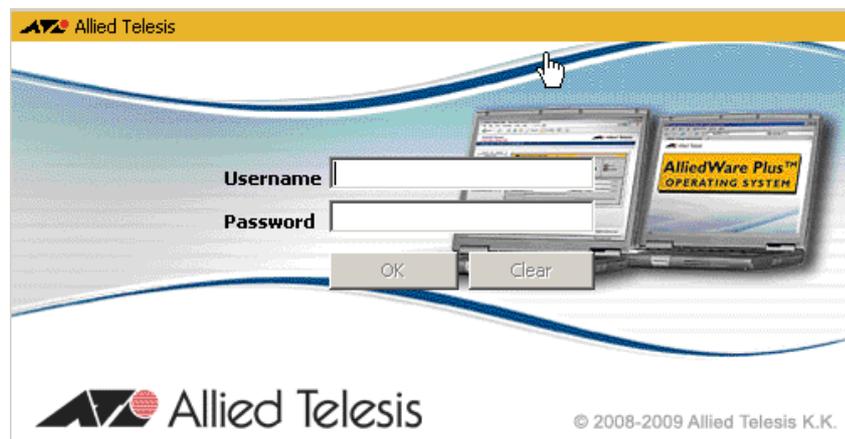
Step 7: Starting the GUI in a browser

Start a browser then enter the IP address you configured in Step 1 as the URL. You will then be presented with a 'Security Warning' before you can run the GUI Java applet. Click on the checkbox and click on 'Run' to continue to log into the GUI applet:



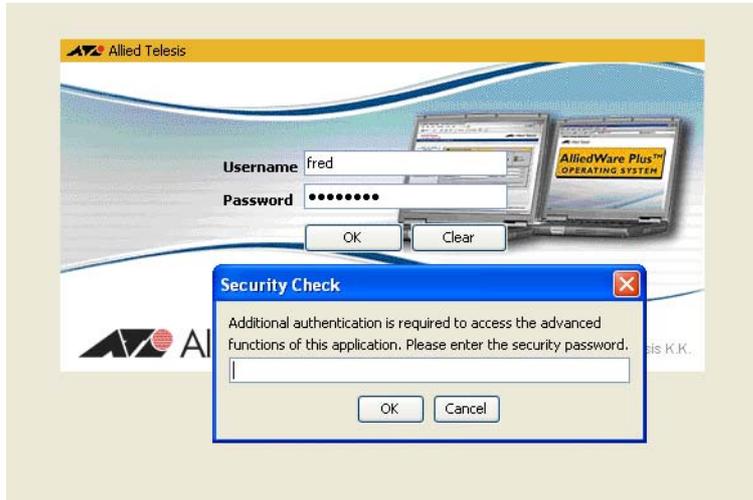
Step 8: Log into the GUI

You will then be presented with a login screen after the GUI Java applet has started. You can then log in with the username and password that you defined in Step 3.

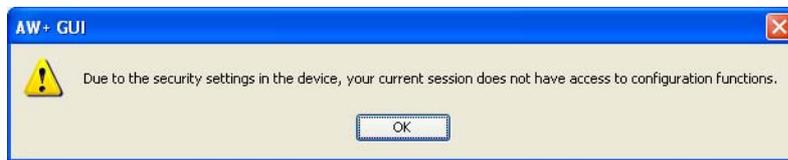


Step 9: Security Check

You may also be presented with a security check password prompt. This will occur when you have logged into the GUI with a user that is configured on the switch and has a privilege level of less than 15, or if the switch has been configured to authenticate enable passwords via TACACS+ using the **aaa authentication enable default group tacacs+** command.



You must enter the privilege level 15 enable password configured on the switch to access GUI configuration dialogs. If you enter an incorrect enable password, or no privilege level 15 enable password has been configured, then a message is shown stating you can use the GUI to monitor the switch, but not to configure the switch.



Using the GUI

This section explains how to use the AlliedWare Plus™ GUI. It assumes that you have installed the GUI on your switches and have the setup the browser on your PC. This procedure is covered in “Install the GUI and set the switch” on page B.4.

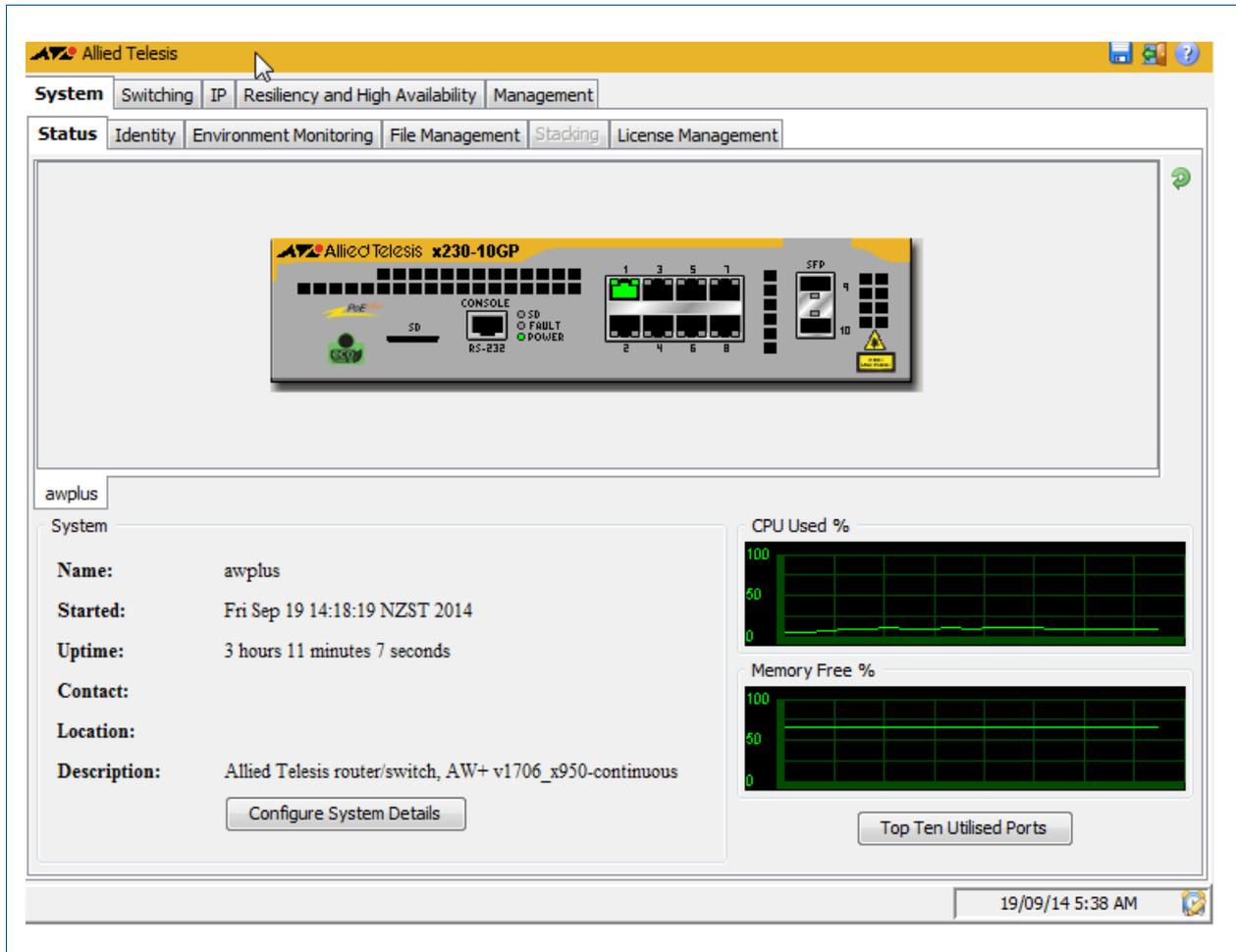
In this section each screen is presented by its tab name and explains the content of the screen components.

System > Status

The **System > Status** menu tab enables you to display and configure basic system information.

The **CPU Used %** and **Memory Free %** graphs provide a brief history of CPU and memory usage.

Menu Tab Example showing the **System > Status** menu tab:



Description

| Display Label / Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| View Rear Panel (icon) | Displays view of the rear panel of the chassis. |
| View Front Panel (icon) | Displays view of the front panel of the chassis. |

| Display Label / Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| System / Name | Specifies the network name of the system, as set with the 'hostname' command in the CLI. |
| System / Started | Date and time the switch was last booted. |
| System / Uptime | Elapsed time since the last boot. |
| System / Contact | Contact details for system maintenance. |
| System / Location | Location of the switch |
| System / Description | Description of the switch, including manufacturer, model, and software version. |

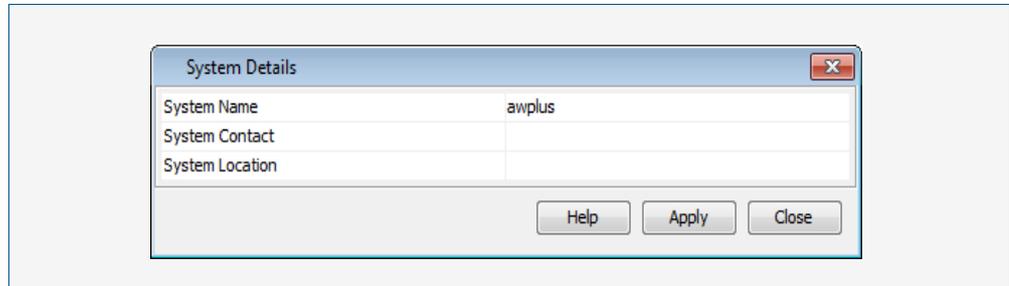
Description

| Configuration Button / Field | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| System Time & Date (icon) | Add or modify System Date, System Time, UTC Time Zone Offset. |
| Configure System Details | Add or modify System Name, System Contact, System Location. |
| Top Ten Utilised Ports | Displays the top ten port numbers and their utilization by percentage. |

System > Status > System Details

The **System > Status > System Details** dialog allows you to configure basic system information.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > Status > System Details** dialog:



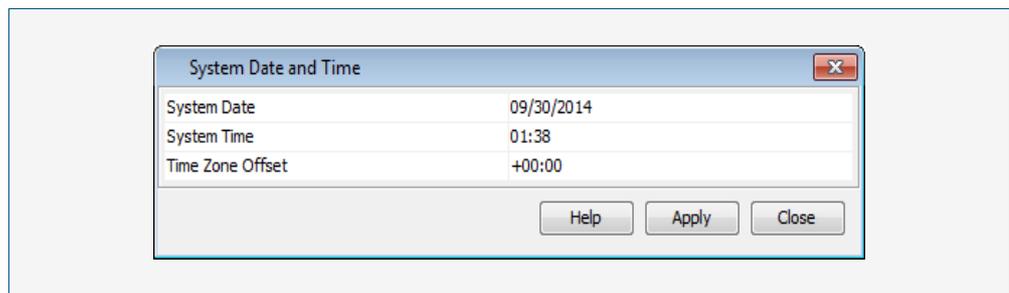
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| System Name | Enter the network name of the system. |
| System Contact | Enter the contact information for the system, from 0 to 255 characters long. Valid characters are any printable characters and spaces. |
| System Location | Enter the location of the system, from 0 to 255 characters long. Valid characters are any printable characters and spaces. |

System > Status > System Date and Time

The **System > Status > System Date and Time** dialog allows you to configure the date and time for the switch.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > Status > System Date and Time** dialog:



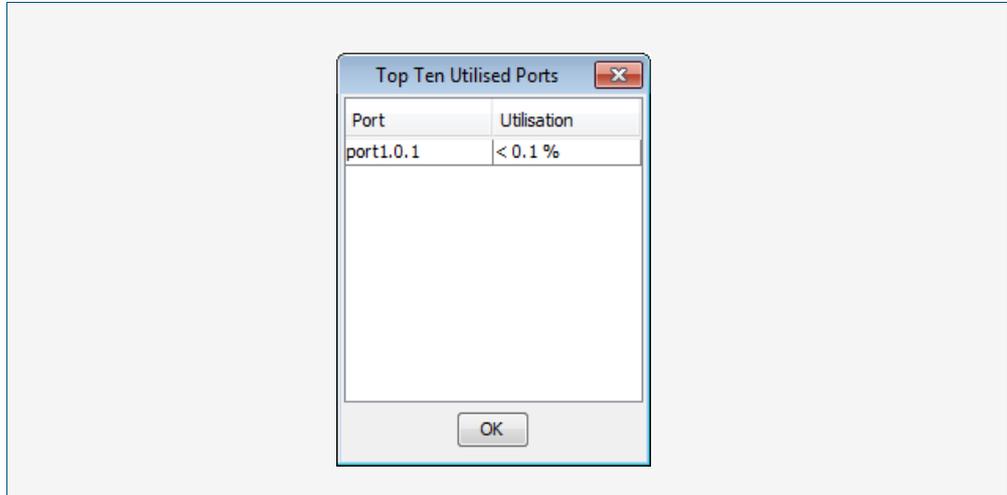
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| System Date | Enter the current system date in month, day, and year format. |
| System Time | Enter the local time for the system clock in hours and minutes. |
| Time Zone Offset | Enter the offset to the UTC (Coordinated Universal Timezone) for a local timezone in hours and minutes. |

System > Status > Top Ten Utilised Ports

The **System > Status > Top Ten Utilised Port** dialog allows you to monitor port utilization on the switch.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > Status > Top Ten Utilised Ports** dialog:



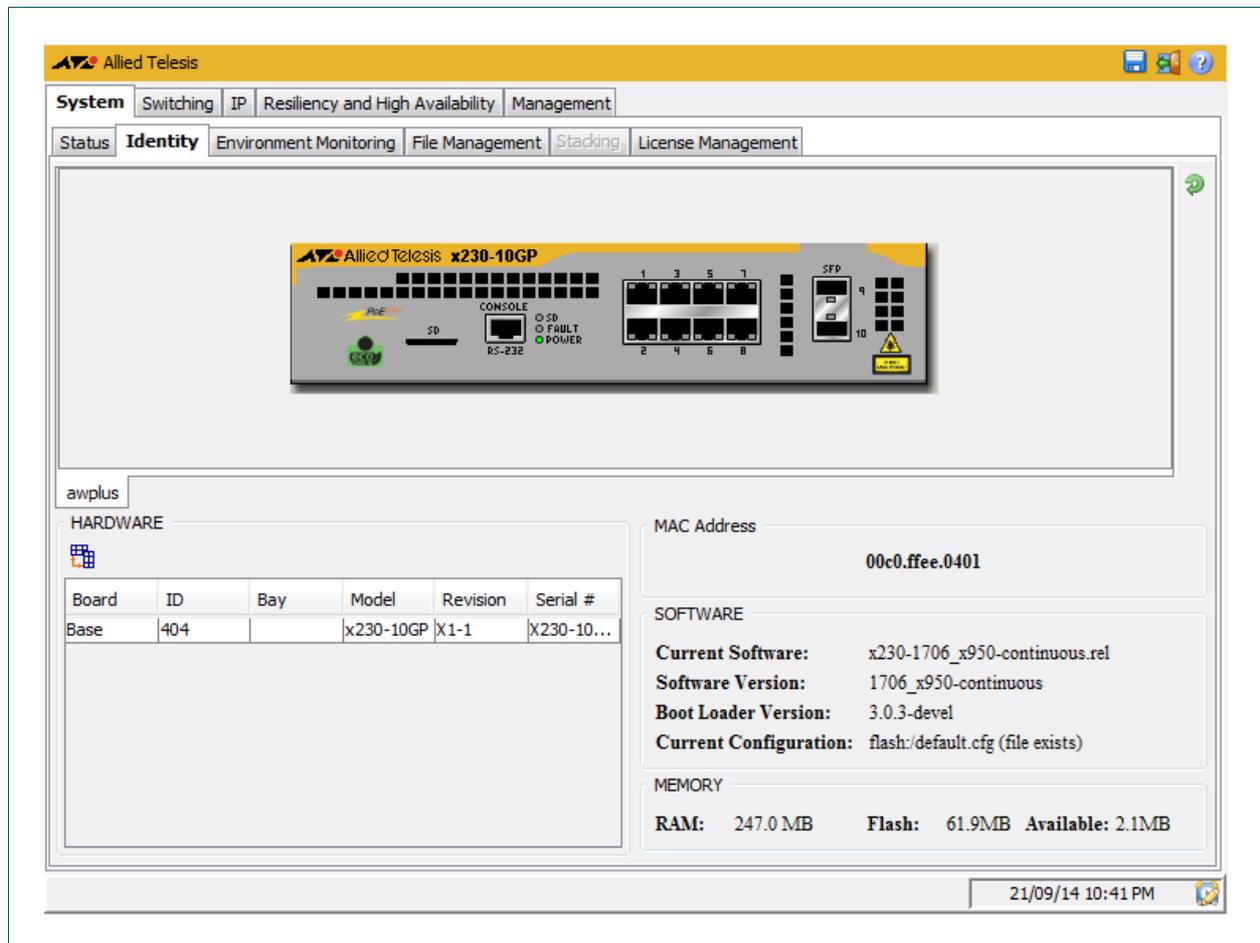
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Port | Displays up to ten ports that are used the most on the switch. You can sort by ascending or descending port order. |
| Utilization | Displays the utilization percentage for the port. You can sort by ascending or descending utilization percentage. |

System > Identity

The **System > Identity** menu tab displays physical properties, software version and configuration file name.

Menu Tab Example showing the **System > Identity** menu tab:



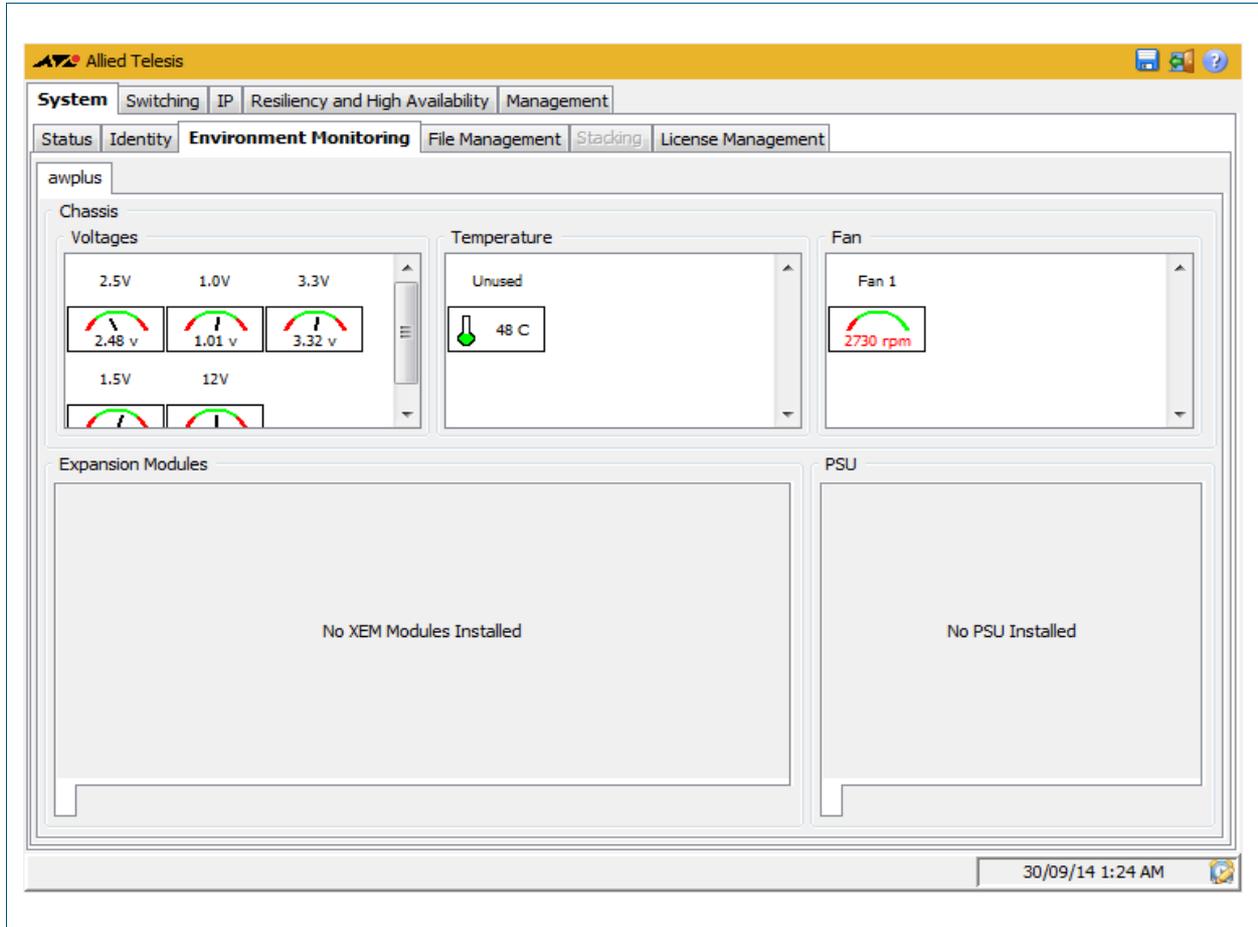
Description

| Label / Field / Button / icon | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| View Rear Panel (icon) | Displays view of the rear panel of the switch. |
| View Front Panel (icon) | Displays view of the front panel of the switch. |
| HARDWARE | Displays the board, ID, bay, model, revision and serial number of the switch main board. |
| MAC Address | Displays the MAC Address of the switch in hexadecimal in the format HHHH . HHHH . HHHH. |
| SOFTWARE | Displays the software release file name, software version, boot loader version, and configuration file name loaded on the switch. |
| MEMORY | Displays the amount of installed RAM and Flash, plus the remaining Flash available on the switch. |

System > Environment Monitoring

The **System > Environment Monitoring** menu tab allows you to display the status of the environmental properties, such as all voltages and temperatures, which the system monitors.

Menu Tab Example showing the **System > Environment Monitoring** menu tab:



Description

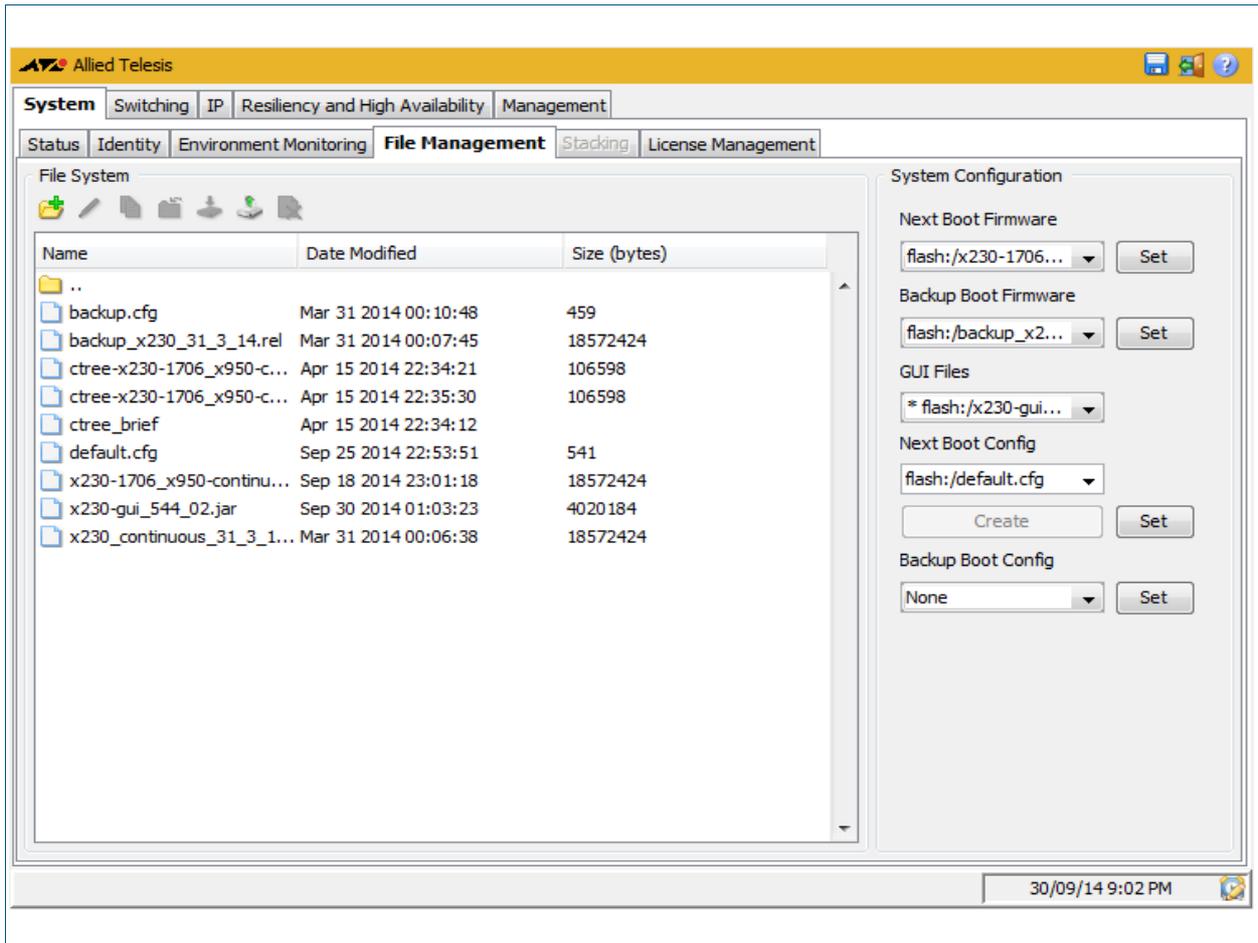
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Voltages | Displays the operational status of chassis voltages and temperatures for the switch. |
| Temperature | Displays the chassis temperature of the switch. |
| Fan | Displays the operational status of the switch fans. |
| Expansion Modules | This switch has no expansion modules. |
| PSU | Displays the operational status of temperatures and fans for any installed pluggable PSUs. |

System > File Management

The **System > File Management** menu tab allows you to create, copy, delete, upload or download boot and backup release and configuration files to and from the switch.

You can specify fallback or backup release and configuration files in case the boot release or configuration files become corrupted. You can also specify the boot release and configuration files to boot directly from SD card or to boot from flash.

Menu Tab Example showing the **System > File Management** menu tab:



Description: File System

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| File System | <p>Displays file names, file dates, and file sizes of files in Flash, NVS or SD card. Files that have a total URL length of 112 characters or less are displayed. The URL is the path to the file and is of the form <hostname>/<filesystem>:/<pathname>, for example, awplus-1/flash:/test.cfg.</p> <p>The GUI will immediately show all file changes to the NVS and Flash filesystems, regardless of how they have been made, either via the GUI or CLI. However, the SD card filesystem is treated differently as it is not permanently mounted. The GUI will only update SD card files when the card is inserted/deleted, or when the changes are made via the GUI. They are not updated if modified via the CLI.</p> <p>The buttons shown below the File System label also allow you upload, download, move, copy, and delete files respectively.</p> |
| File System / Add Folder | Select the folder you want to create a new sub-folder in then click on the Add Folder button located directly below the File System label. |
| File System / Rename File | Select the file you want to rename then click on the Rename File or Folder button located directly below the File System label. |
| File System / Copy File | Select the file you want to copy then click on the Copy File button located directly below the File System label. Choose the Destination Folder from the drop down list in the Copy File dialog then select OK to copy the file to the chosen destination. |
| File System / Move File | Select the file you want to move then click on the Move File button located directly below the File System label. Choose the Destination Folder from the drop down list in the Move File dialog then select OK to move the file to the chosen destination. |
| File System / Download File | Select the file you want to download then click on the Download File button located directly below the File System label. |
| File System / Upload File | Click on the Upload File button located directly below the File System label then select the file you want to upload. |
| File System / Delete File | Select the file or folder you want to delete then click on the Delete File button located directly below the File System label. |

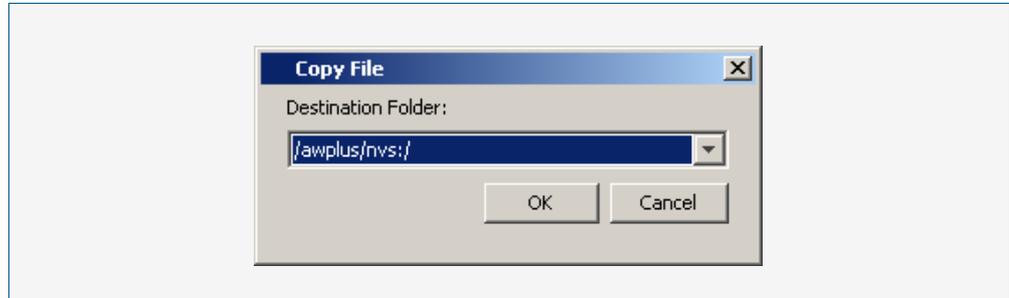
Description: System Configuration

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|---|--|
| System Configuration | Configures running and backup software, GUI software, and configuration files in Flash or card (or storage device) memory available on the switch. |
| System Configuration / Next Boot Firmware | Choose the Next Boot Firmware .rel file and path from the drop down list then click Set to make this file the firmware that starts after reboot. From 5.4.4 release onwards, you can set a Next Boot Firmware .rel file to boot directly from an SD card. |
| System Configuration / Backup Boot Firmware | Choose the Backup Boot Firmware .rel file and path from the drop down list then click Set to boot from this file at reboot. A Backup Boot Firmware .rel file is used instead of the Next Boot Firmware .rel file if the Next Boot Firmware .rel file is corrupted. |
| System Configuration / GUI Files | Displays the GUI file name and file location on the switch and indicates the currently running GUI file with a prefixed asterisk (e.g. * flash:/x230-gui_544_04.jar). Note that you cannot set the GUI version from within the GUI itself. See the GUI installation instructions in <i>Appendix C: GUI Reference</i> of the current <i>AlliedWare Plus Software Reference</i> to install GUI files. The latest version of the GUI .jar file loaded is run by the switch automatically. |
| System Configuration / Next Boot Config | Choose the Next Boot Config .cfg file and path from the drop down list then click Set to make this file the Config .cfg file that the switch uses at reboot. From 5.4.1 release onwards, you can set a Next Boot Config .cfg file to load directly from an SD card. |
| System Configuration / Backup Boot Config | Choose the Backup Boot Config Files .cfg file and path from the drop down list then click Set to make boot from this file at reboot. A Backup Boot Config .cfg file is used instead of the Next Boot config .cfg file if the Next Boot Config .cfg file is corrupted. |

System > File Management > Copy File

The **System > File Management > Copy File** dialog allows you to copy files (e.g. release and configuration files). Select the 'Copy File' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Copy File** dialog:



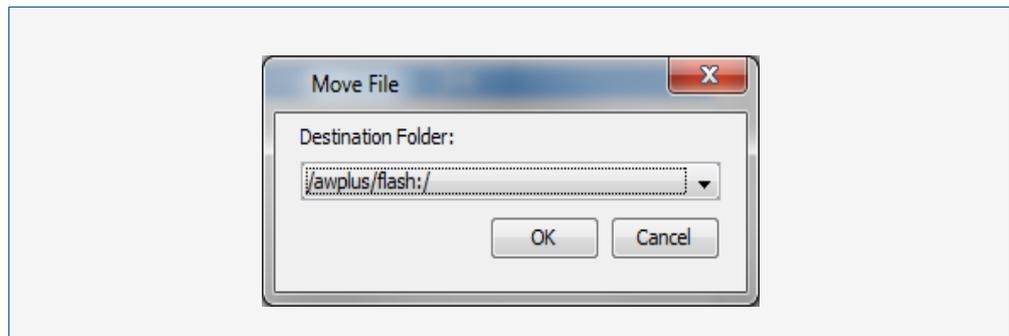
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Destination Folder | Select the destination folder to copy the selected file to. A copying progress bar displays after clicking the OK button. |

System > File Management > Move File

The **System > File Management > Move File** dialog allows you to move files (e.g. release and configuration files). Select the 'Move File' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Move File** dialog:



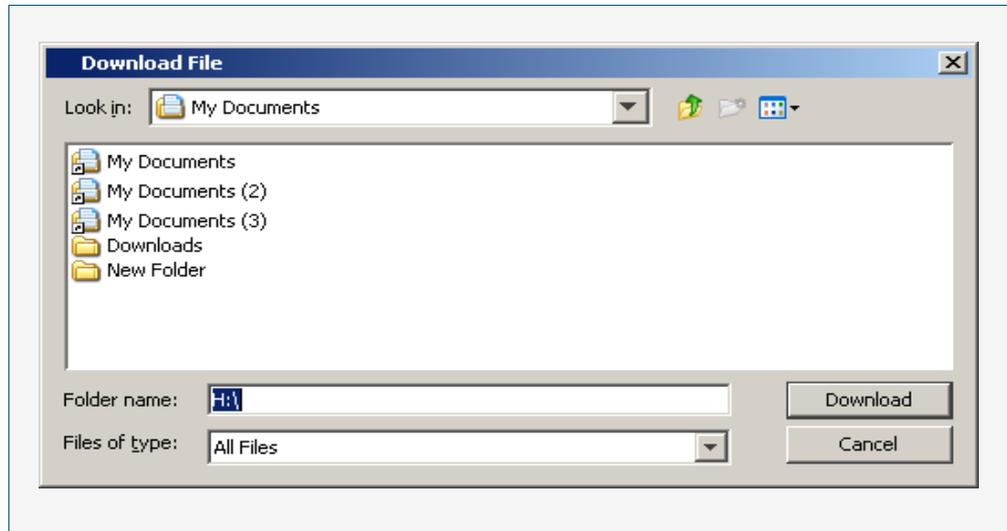
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Destination Folder | Select the destination folder to move the selected file to. A moving progress bar displays after clicking the OK button. |

System > File Management > Download File

The **System > File Management > Download File** dialog allows you to download files (e.g. release and configuration files) from the switch to a client device. Select the 'Download File' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Download File** dialog:



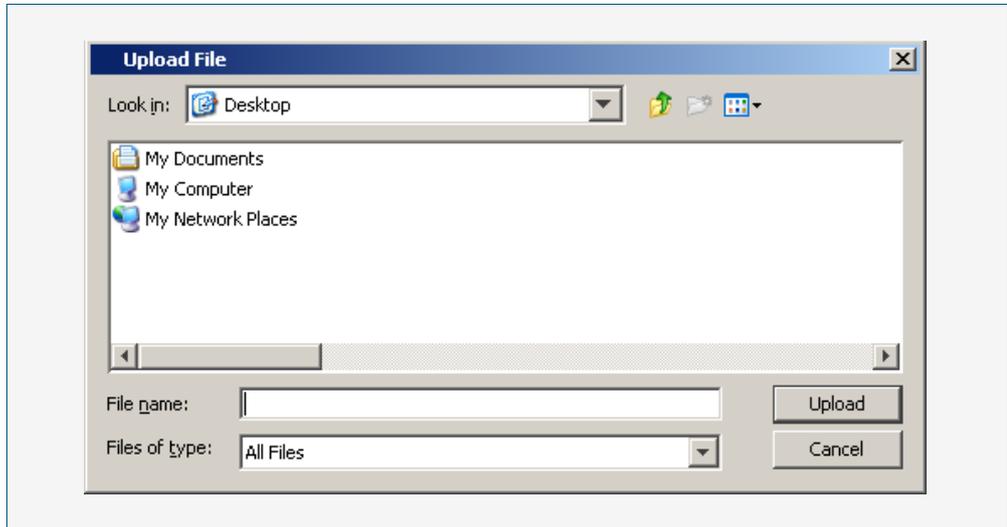
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Destination Folder | Select the destination folder to download the selected file to. A downloading progress bar displays after clicking the Download button. |

System > File Management > Upload File

The **System > File Management > Upload File** dialog allows you to upload files (e.g. release and configuration files) from a client device to the switch. Select the 'Upload File' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Upload File** dialog:



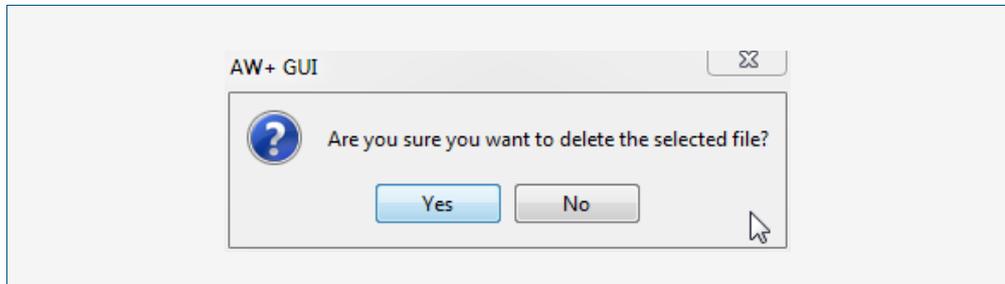
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Destination Folder | Select the destination folder to upload the selected file from. An uploading progress bar displays after clicking the Upload button. |

System > File Management > Delete File

The **System > File Management > Delete File** dialog allows you to delete files (e.g. release and configuration files). Select the 'Delete File' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Delete File** dialog:



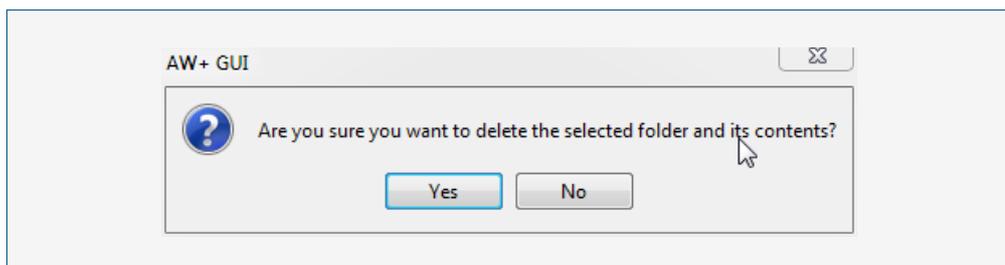
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Yes | Confirm selected file deletion operation. |
| No | Cancel selected file deletion operation. |

System > File Management > Delete Folder

The **System > File Management > Delete Folder** dialog allows you to delete folders in the flash or SD card file system containing files (e.g. release and configuration files). Select the 'Delete Folder' button below the 'File System' label to access this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > File Management > Delete Folder** dialog:



Description

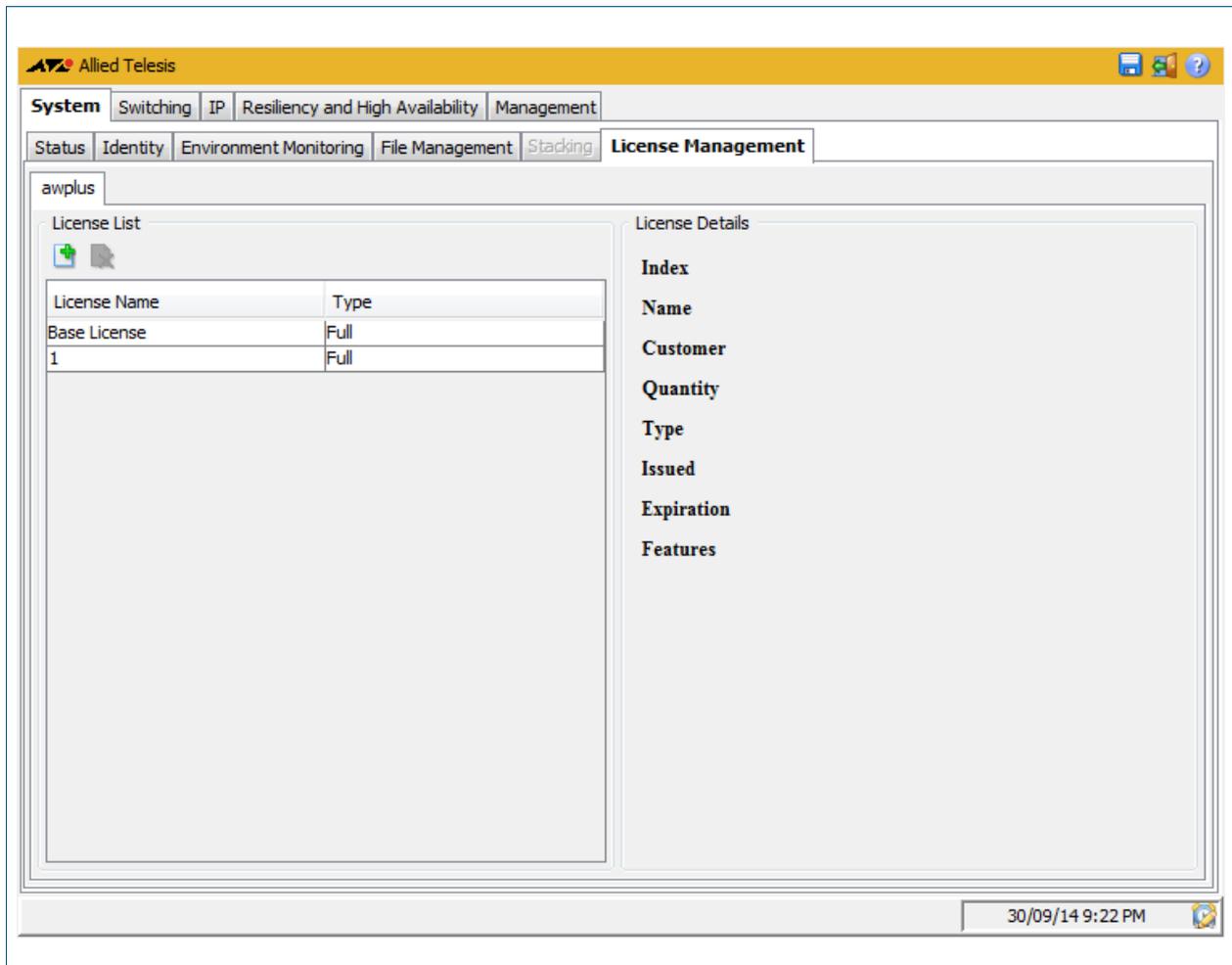
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Yes | Confirm selected folder deletion operation. |
| No | Cancel selected folder deletion operation. |

System > License Management

The **System > License Management** menu tab allows you to view, add and delete feature licenses.

- Selecting the + icon allows you to add a feature license.
- Selecting the x icon allows you to delete a feature license.

Menu Tab Example showing the **System > License Management** menu tab:



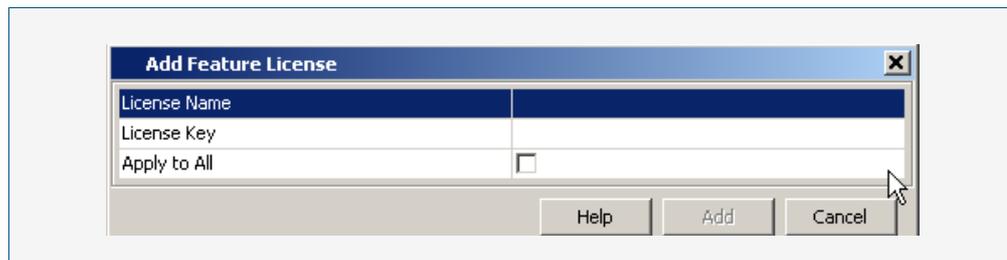
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| License List / License Name | Name of the license bundle. |
| License List / Type | The type of license activated on the switch: full or temporary. |
| License Details / Index | Index identifying entry. |
| License Details / Name | Name of the license bundle. |
| License Details / Customer | Customer name. |
| License Details / Quantity | Quantity of licenses included in the feature key. |
| License Details / Type | Full or temporary license types. |
| License Details / Issued | Date the key was generated. |
| License Details / Expiration | Expiry date for a temporary license. |
| License Details / Features | List of features enabled by the license. |

System > License Management > Add Feature License

The **System > License Management > Add Feature License** dialog allows you add feature licenses by specifying the license name and the license key.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > License Management > Add Feature License** dialog:

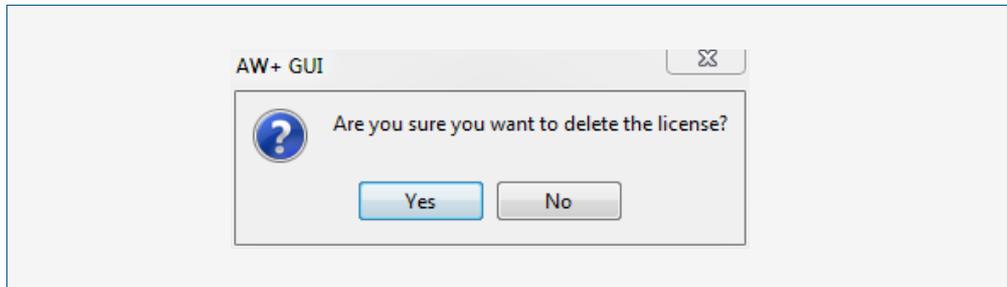
**Description**

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| License Name | Enter the license name of the software feature. |
| License Key | Enter the encrypted license key to enable this software feature. |
| Apply to All | Select the checkbox to apply the license. |

System > License Management > Delete Feature License

The **System > License Management > Delete Feature License** dialog allows you delete feature licenses by specifying the license name and the license key.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **System > License Management > Delete Feature License** dialog:



Switching > Ports

The **Switching > Ports** menu tab allows you to view, and configure Layer 1 properties:

- Right-clicking a port allows you to select monitoring or configuration dialogs for the selected port.
- The monitoring dialog displays port status, statistics and a brief utilization history.
- The configuration dialog allows you to configure Administrative State, Auto Negotiation, Speed and Duplex settings for the port.

Note Speed and Duplex settings can only be changed if Auto Negotiation is disabled.



Menu Tab Example showing the **Switching > Ports** menu tab:

The screenshot shows the Allied Telesis GUI with the following structure:

- System** (selected) | Switching | IP | Resiliency and High Availability | Management
- Ports** (selected) | VLANs | Link Aggregation | FDB Table | Power over Ethernet
- Visual representation of the **x230-10GP** switch with port status indicators.
- Ports** table below:

| Interface | Description | Link State | Admin State | Duplex | Speed | Uptime |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|--------|-----------|---------------------|
| port1.0.1 | port1.0.1 | up | up | full | 1000 Mbps | 3 hrs 45 mins 6 sec |
| port1.0.2 | port1.0.2 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.3 | port1.0.3 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.4 | port1.0.4 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.5 | port1.0.5 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.6 | port1.0.6 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.7 | port1.0.7 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.8 | port1.0.8 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.9 | port1.0.9 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |
| port1.0.10 | port1.0.10 | down | up | auto | auto | 0 millisecond |

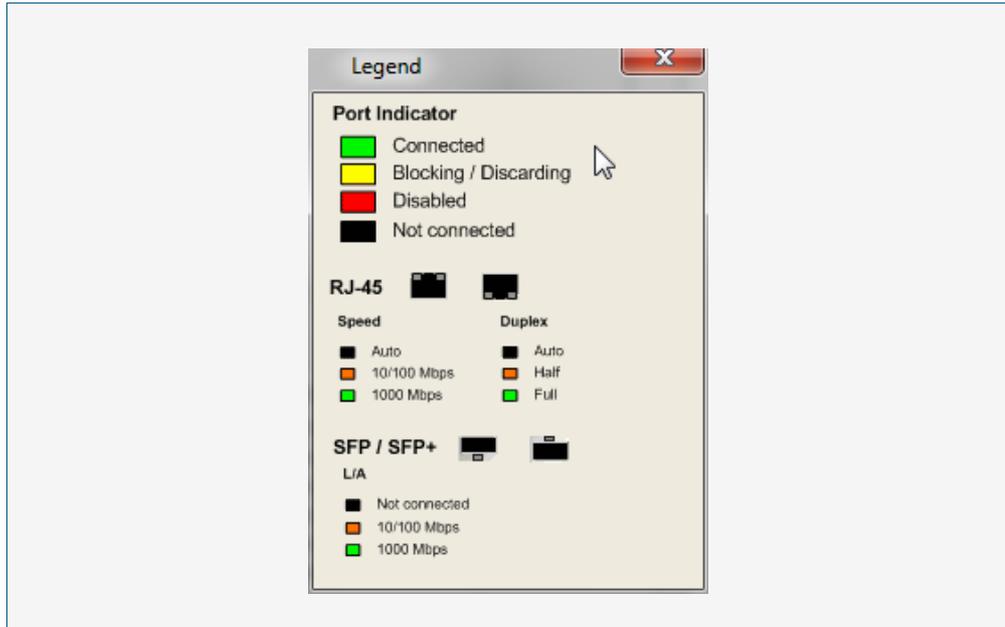
awplus

22/09/14 12:41 AM

Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Ports | Displays port number, description of the port, link and administrative status, duplex mode, speed and uptime (in milliseconds) for the selected port. |

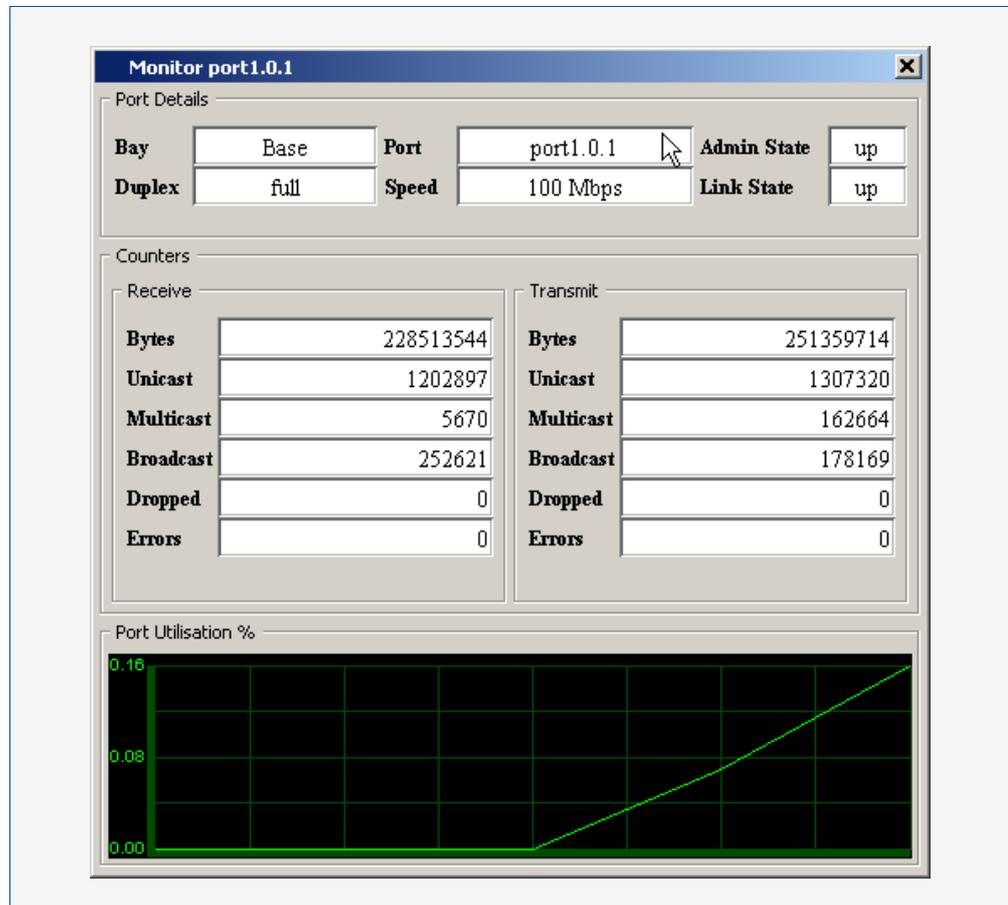
Legend Example showing **Switching > Ports > Legend:**



Switching > Ports > Monitor Port

The **Switching > Ports > Monitor Port** dialog allows you to monitor port counters.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Switching > Ports > Monitor Port** dialog:



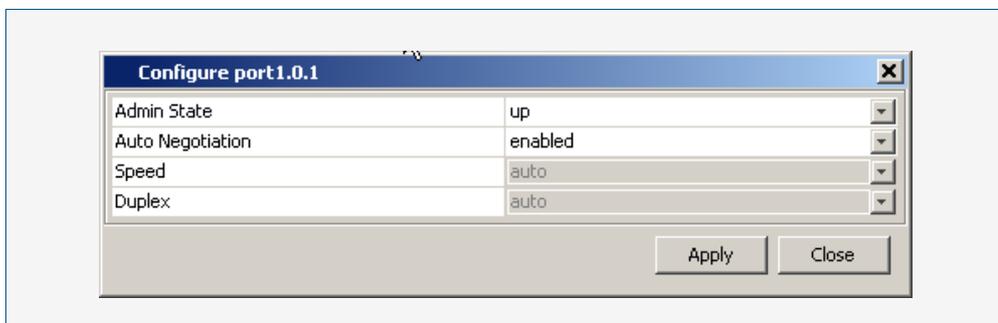
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Port Details | Monitors the bay, port, duplex, speed, administrative state and link states for the selected port. |
| Counters | Monitors the counters for bytes received/transmitted, unicast packets received/transmitted, multicast packets received/transmitted, broadcast packets received/transmitted, dropped packets received/transmitted, and errors received/transmitted for the selected port. |
| Port Utilisation% | Monitors and graphs the usage percentage for the selected port. |

Switching > Ports > Configure Port

The **Switching > Ports > Configure Port** dialog allows you to configure Administrative State, Auto Negotiation, Speed and Duplex settings for the selected port.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Switching > Ports > Configure Port** dialog:



Description

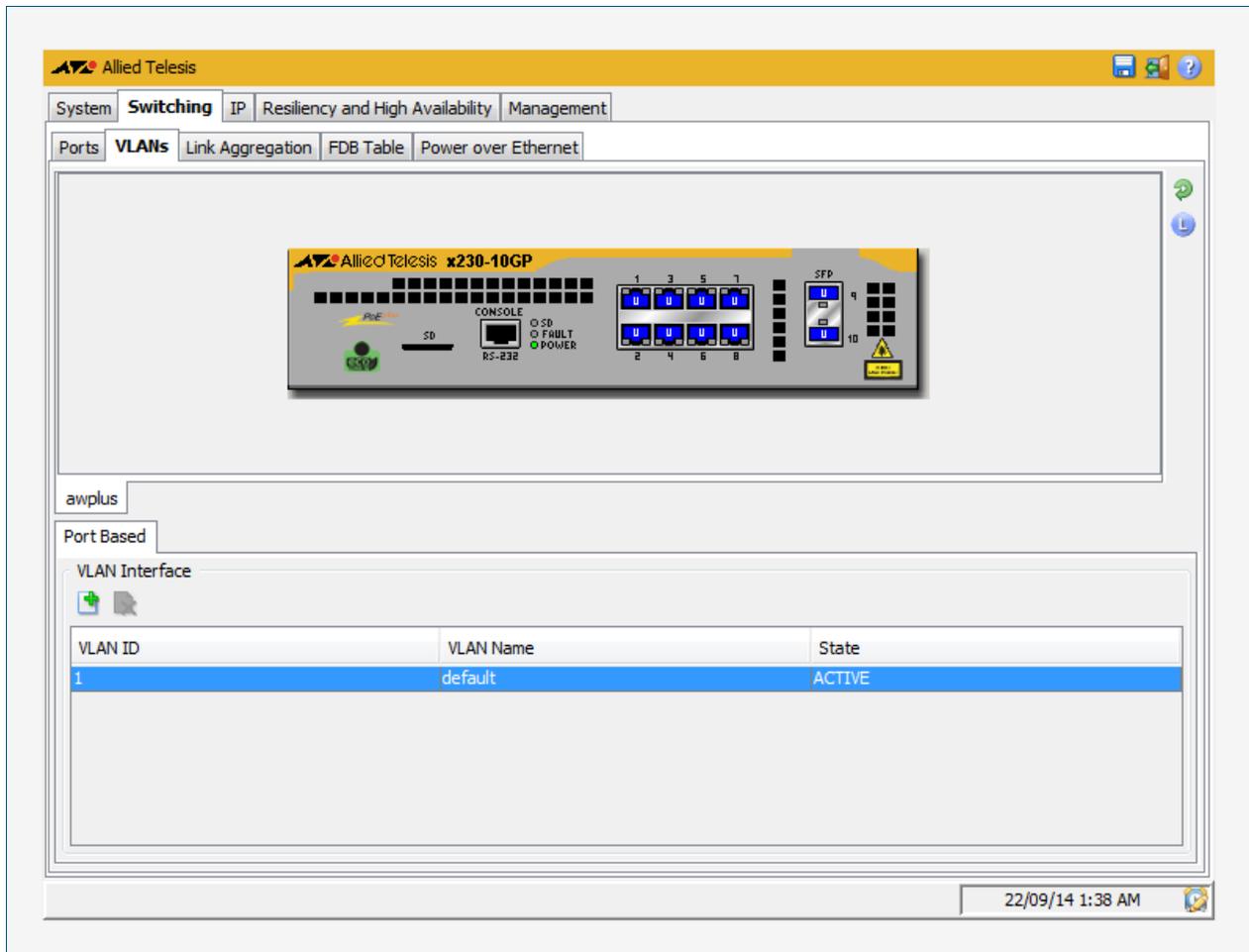
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Admin State | Select up or down from the drop down list in this dialog to specify the administrative state for the selected port. |
| Auto Negotiation | Select disabled or enabled from the drop-down list in this dialog to specify auto negotiation for the selected port. Note that selecting enabled to enable Auto Negotiation will disable Speed and Duplex options, indicated by greyed out options. |
| Speed | Select 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps, 1000 Mbps, 10 Gbps, or auto from the drop down list in this dialog to specify the speed setting for the selected port. Note that the options for speed settings are only available if Auto Negotiation has been disabled for the selected port. |
| Duplex | Select full, half, or auto from the drop down list in this dialog to specify the duplex setting for the selected port. Note that the options for duplex settings are only available if Auto Negotiation has been disabled for the selected port. |

Switching > VLANs

The **Switching > VLANs** menu tab allows you to view and configure Layer 2 properties:

- Right-clicking a port allows you to select a VLAN to be tagged or untagged for the port, or to remove a port from the VLAN.
- Define VLANs before assigning VLANs to ports on the front panel of the switch.
- Selecting the + icon (under the VLAN Interface label on the VLAN tab below the front panel illustration) allows you to add a VLAN by specifying the VLAN ID and VLAN Name.
- Selecting the x icon (under the VLAN Interface label below the front panel illustration) allows you to delete a VLAN (except for the default VLAN 1 that is assigned to all ports).

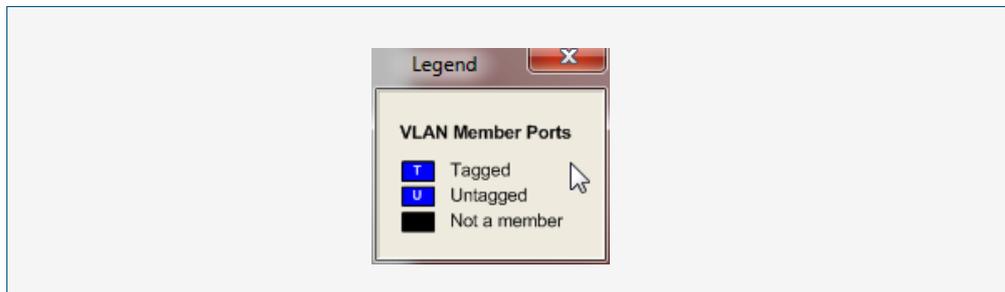
Menu Tab Example showing the **Switching > VLANs** menu tab:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Port Based / VLAN ID | The VID of the VLAN that is enabled or disabled in the range 1-4094. |
| Port Based / VLAN Name | The ASCII name of the VLAN with a maximum length of 32 characters. |
| Port Based / State | The state of the VLAN, either enabled ('ACTIVE' displayed) or disabled ('INACTIVE' displayed). |

Legend Example showing **Switching > VLANs > Legend:**



Switching > VLANs > Add VLAN

The **Switching > VLANs > Add VLAN** dialog allows you add a VLAN by specifying the VLAN ID and VLAN Name.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Switching > VLANs > Add VLAN** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| VLAN ID | Enter the VID of the VLAN that is enabled or disabled in the range <1-4094>. |
| VLAN Name | Enter the ASCII name of the VLAN with a maximum length of 32 characters. |

Switching > Link Aggregation

The **Switching > Link Aggregation** menu tab allows you to view, and configure Layer 2 properties:

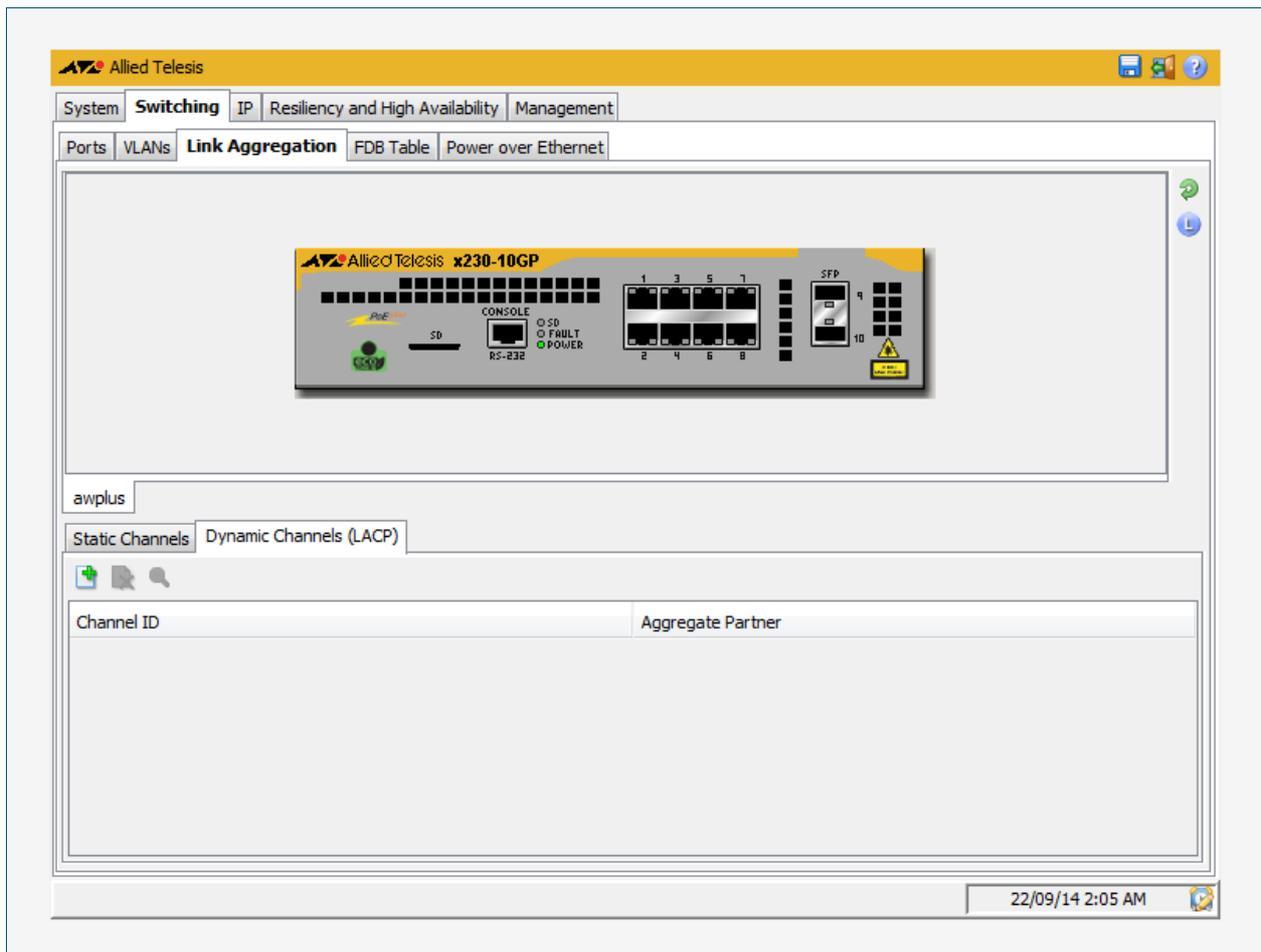
- Right-clicking a port allows you to select, assign or remove the port to a Static Channel or a Dynamic Channel (LACP - Link Aggregation Control Protocol) group.
- Define Static Channel or Dynamic Channel (LACP) groups before assigning them to ports on the front panel of the switch.
- Selecting the + icon (located below the front panel illustration of your switch) allows you to add a Static Channel or Dynamic Channel (LACP) group by specifying the Channel ID.

Note Up to 4 Static Channel groups and up to 4 Dynamic Channel (LACP) groups can be defined on a switch.



- Selecting the x icon (located below the front panel illustration of your switch) allows you to delete a Static Channel or Dynamic Channel (LACP) group.

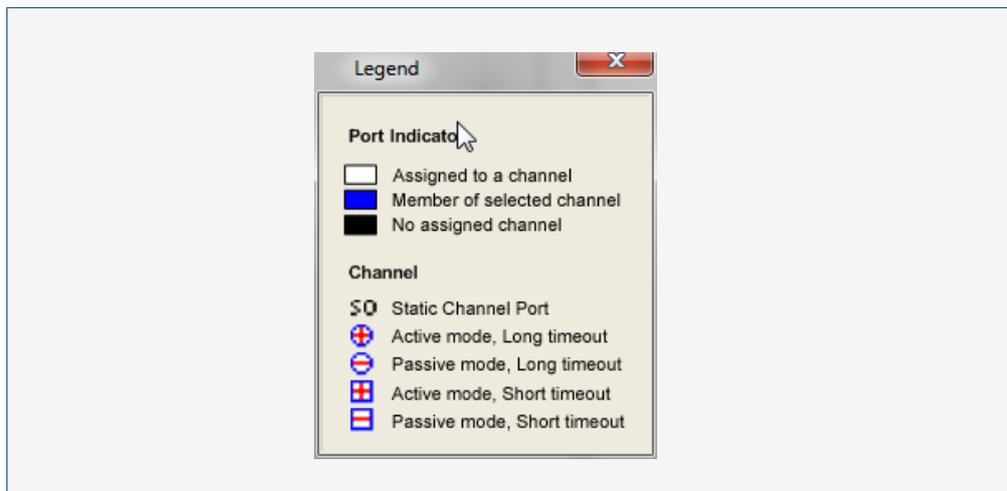
Menu Tab Example showing the **Switching > Link Aggregation** menu tab:



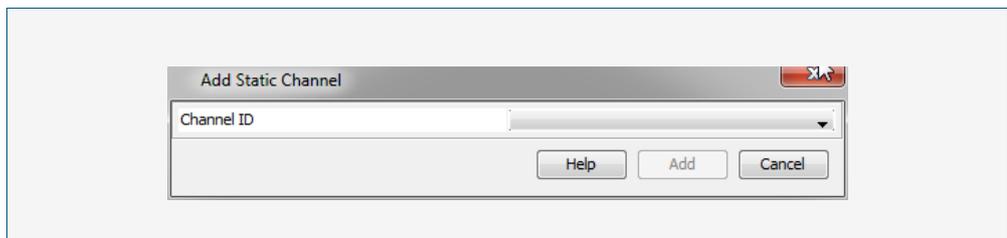
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Static Channels | Display or specify a static channel group number for an aggregated link. Up to 4 static channel groups can be created on the your switch. |
| Dynamic Channels (LACP) | Display or specify a dynamic channel group number for an LACP link. Up to 4 dynamic channel groups can be created on your switch. |

Legend Example showing **Switching > Link Aggregation > Legend:**



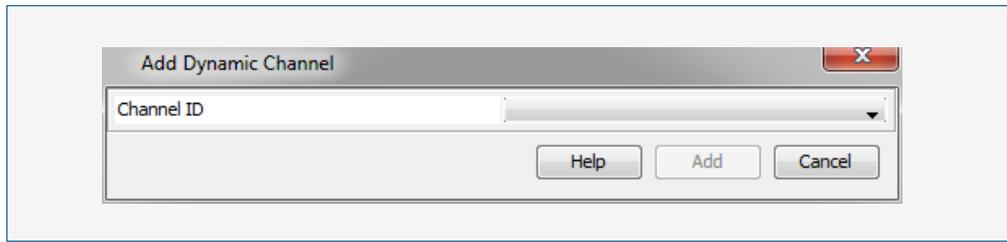
Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Switching > Link Aggregation > Add Static Channel** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Channel ID | Specify a static channel group number for an interface. Up to 4 static channel groups can be created on the switch. |

Configuration Dialog Example showing **Switching > Link Aggregation > Add Dynamic Channel** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Channel ID | Specify a dynamic (LACP) channel group number for an interface. Up to 4 dynamic (LACP) channel groups can be created on the switch. |

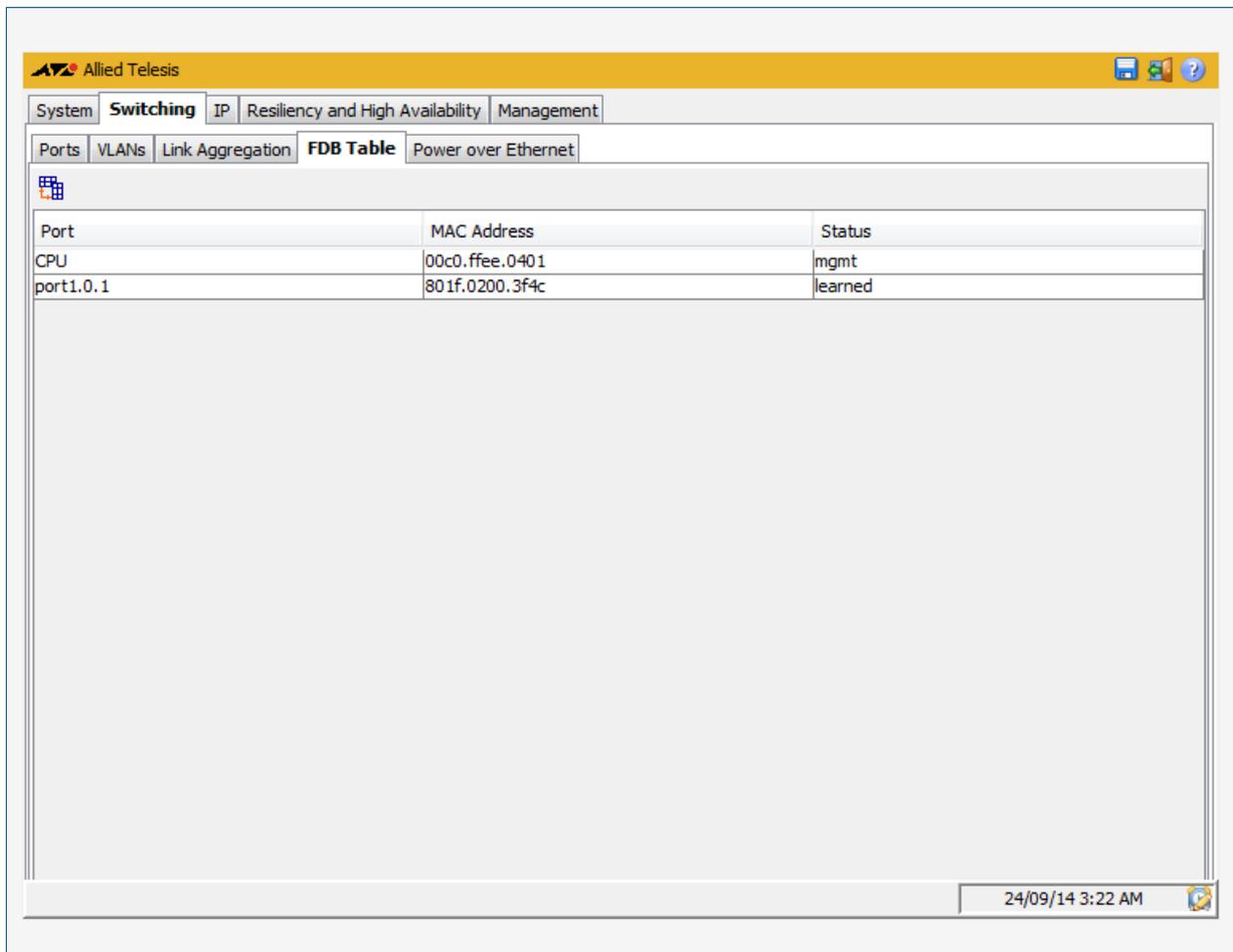
Switching > FDB Table

The **Switching > FDB Table** menu tab allows you to view the contents of the Layer 2 Forwarding Database Table.

You can change the FDB Table view to display horizontally or vertically by selecting the table view icon above the FDB Table.

You can also sort or rearrange the display of the FDB Table by Port, MAC Address, or Forwarding Status by selecting the relevant column or by dragging the relevant column respectively.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Switching > FDB Table** menu tab:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| FDB Table | Displays the FDB (Forwarding Database) table for the switch that shows all the available ports, MAC addresses, and port status. |

Switching > Power over Ethernet

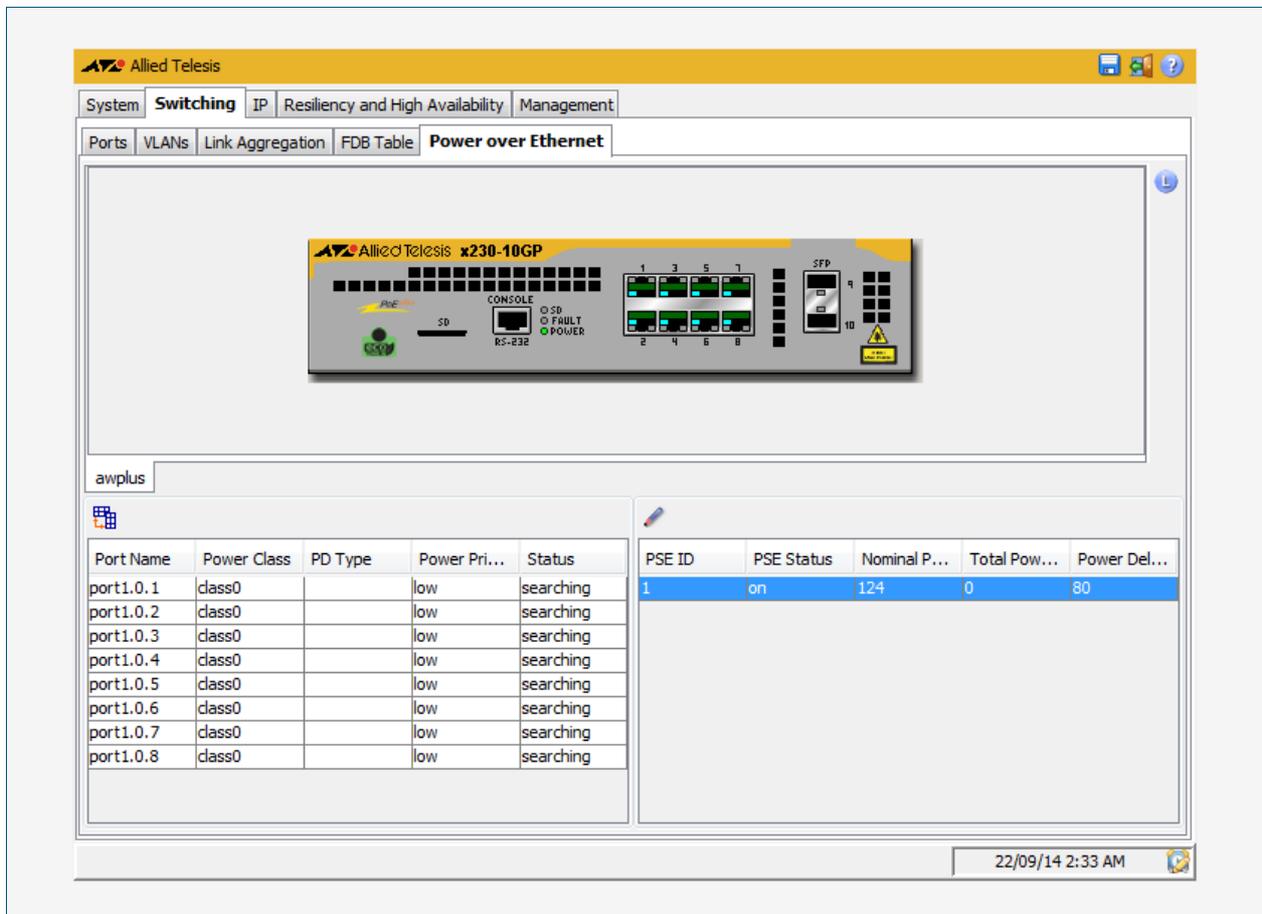
The **Switching > Power over Ethernet** menu tab allows you to monitor and configure PoE on your PoE switch. You can monitor PoE status, configure PoE ports and set the PSE power for your switch.

To configure PoE on a port, right-click on the port to view the configuration dialog as shown here **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port** to enable or disable PoE on a port, set the power priority, and add or edit a PD description.

To configure PoE on the PSE click on the pen icon above the PSE ID label to view the configuration dialog as shown here **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE** to set the power delivery threshold for the PSE as a percentage of total nominal power available.

For introductory information about the Power over Ethernet feature on AlliedWare Plus™ see **Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction**.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Switching > Power over Ethernet** menu tab:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Port Name | Displays the PoE port(s) in the format <code>portx.y.z</code> , where <code>x</code> is the device number, <code>y</code> is the module number within the device, and <code>z</code> is the PoE port number within the module. |
| Power Class | <p>class0, class1, class2, class3, class4 may be shown according to the class of PD discovered and classified to the IEEE802.3af PD classifications:</p> <p>class0 devices have 15.4W of power supplied from the PSE. class1 devices have 4.0W of power supplied from the PSE. class2 devices have 7.0W of power supplied from the PSE. class3 devices have 15.4W of power supplied from the PSE. class4 devices have 30W of power supplied from the PSE (PoE+).</p> |
| PD Type | Adding a PD (Powered Device) description allows the PoE switch to display its function, name, or type of PD connected to the PoE port. Knowing the PD is useful to confirm PD Class power usage. |
| Power Priority | <p>There are three priority levels: Critical, High, and Low.</p> <p>Critical is the highest priority level. Ports set to this level are guaranteed power before any ports assigned High or Low priority.</p> <p>High is the second highest priority level. Ports set to this level receive power only if all the ports set to Critical are receiving power.</p> <p>Low is the lowest priority level. This is the default priority setting. Ports set to this level only receive power if ports set to Critical and ports set to High are receiving power. Note that if there is not enough power for all ports set to the Low priority level then power is provided to the ports based on port number, in ascending order.</p> |
| Status | <p>Displays the current PSE PoE port state, as listed below:</p> <p>disabled displays when PoE has been disabled for the PoE port</p> <p>searching displays when PoE has been enabled for the PoE port</p> <p>delivering power displays when there is a PD connected to a PoE port and power is being supplied from the PSE to the PD via the PoE port</p> <p>fault displays when a problem is detected with the PoE device</p> <p>test displays when the PoE port is in test mode</p> <p>other fault displays when the switch is unable to supply power to the PoE port</p> |
| PSE ID | The ID of the PSE is displayed. The PSE ID is the same number as the stack member number assigned to the PSE for VCStack operation. |

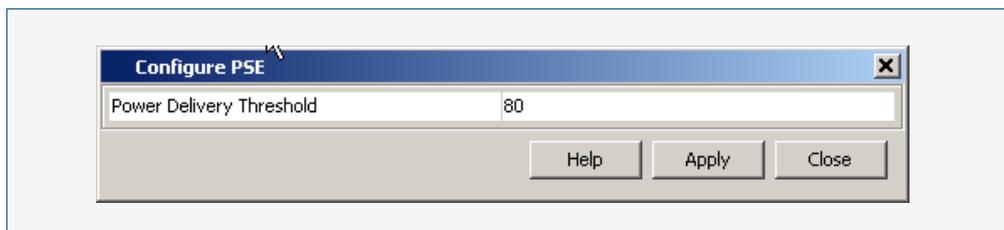
| Label / Field / Button(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|-------------------------------|---|
| PSE Status | Displays the operational status of the PSU hardware on the PSE (Power Sourcing Equipment): On is the PSU as installed in the PSE is switched on. Off when the PSU as installed in the PSE is switched off (note that an RPS (Redundant Power Supply) may be connected to the PSE to power PoE instead of the PSE PSU when Off and power is supplied). Fault when there is an issue with the PSE PSU hardware. |
| Nominal Power | Displays the nominal power available from the PSE in watts (W). |
| Total Power Consumption | Displays the current total power consumption in watts (W) drawn by any connected Powered Devices (PDs) and updates every 5 seconds. |
| Power Delivery Threshold | This is the level at which the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) details that power supplied to all Powered Devices (PDs) has reached a critical level of the nominal power rating for the PSE. The default power delivery threshold is 80% of the nominal PSE power rating. |

Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE

The **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE** dialog allows you to configure the power delivery threshold level for the PSE.

For introductory information about the Power over Ethernet feature on AlliedWare Plus™ see [Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction](#).

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure PSE** dialog:



Description

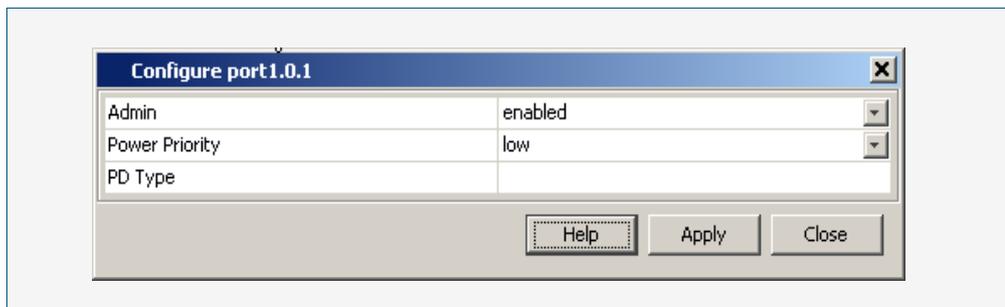
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Power Delivery Threshold | This is the level at which the Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) details that power supplied to all Powered Devices (PDs) has reached a critical level of the nominal power rating for the PSE. The default power delivery threshold is 80% of the nominal PSE power rating. |

Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port

The **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port** dialog allows you to enable or disable PoE on ports, set the power priority for ports, and add or edit PD descriptions.

For introductory information about the Power over Ethernet feature on AlliedWare Plus™ see [Chapter 22, Power over Ethernet Introduction](#).

Configuration Dialog Example showing **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Configure Port** dialog:

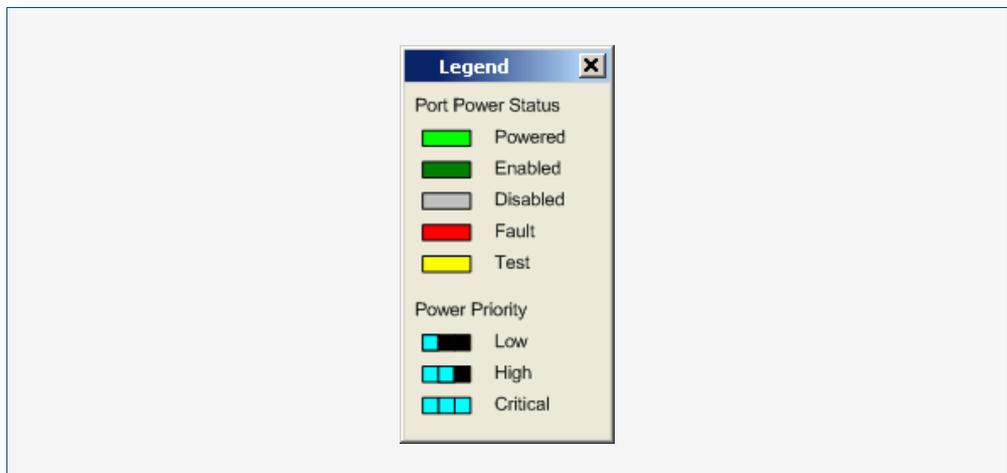


To display the Configure port sub screen, select a port from the front panel image, then right-click your mouse on this port.

Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Admin | Displays the administrative state of PoE on a PoE port, either Enabled or Disabled . |
| Power Priority | There are three priority levels: Critical , High , and Low . Critical is the highest priority level. Ports set to this level are guaranteed power before any ports assigned High or Low priority. High is the second highest priority level. Ports set to this level receive power only if all the ports set to Critical are receiving power. Low is the lowest priority level. This is the default priority setting. Ports set to this level only receive power if ports set to Critical and ports set to High are receiving power. Note that if there is not enough power for all ports set to the Low priority level then power is provided to the ports based on port number, in ascending order. |
| PD Type | Adding a PD description allows the PoE switch to display its function, name, or type of PD connected to the PoE port. Knowing the PD is useful to confirm PD Class power usage. |

Legend Selected by **Switching > Power over Ethernet > Legend** the legend shows the PoE status for each port. The following example shows the **Port Power Status and Power Priority for ports on the switch front panel LEDs** :



To display the Legend, select - from the top right hand side of the front panel display - the small icon that has a white L within a blue background.

IP > IP Interfaces

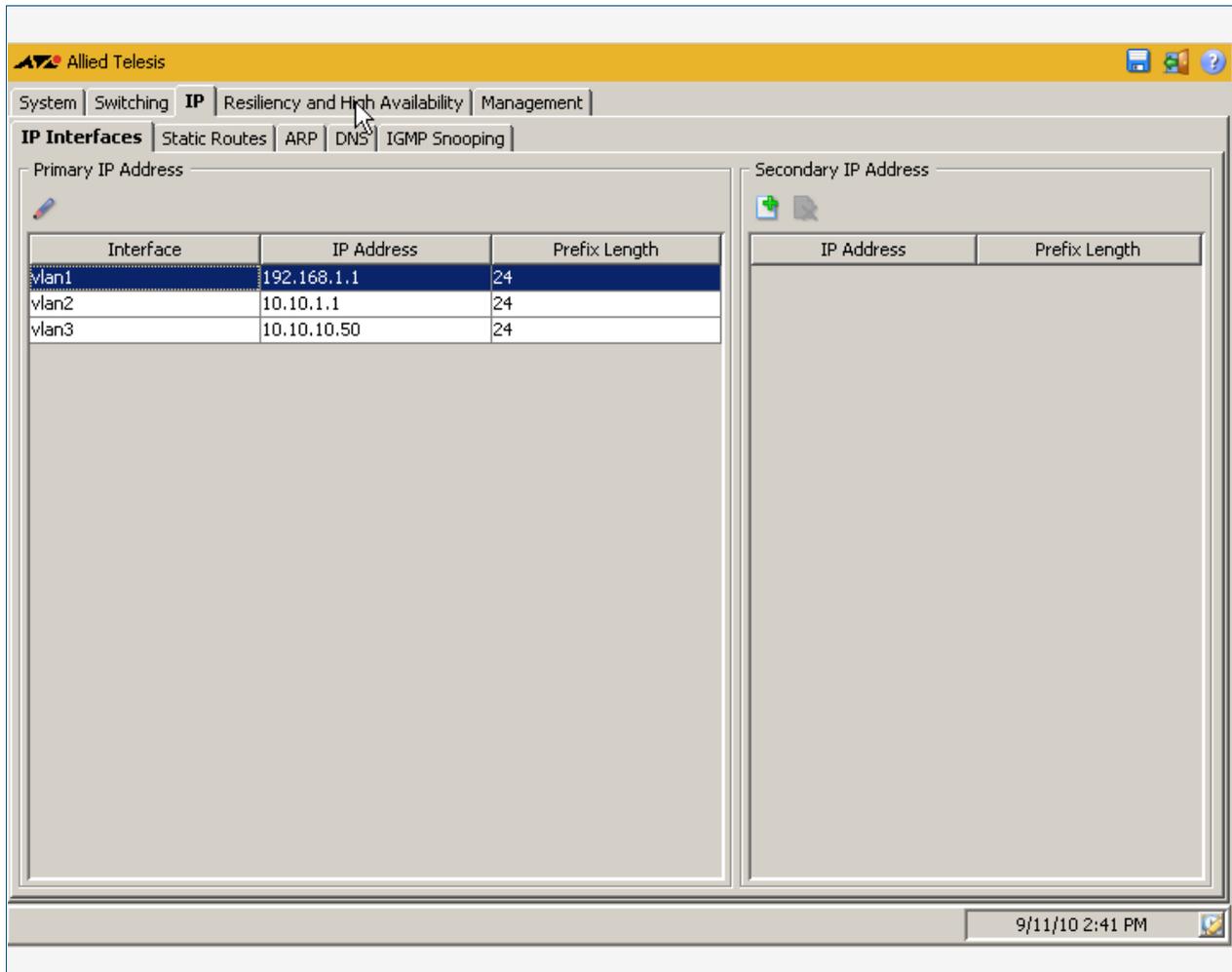
The **IP > IP Interfaces** menu tab allows you to view and specify the Primary and Secondary IP Addresses for VLAN and management port interfaces.

Note You may only define a Secondary IP Address for an interface after first defining its Primary IP Address.



- Select an interface then use the pen shaped icon under the Primary IP Address label to configure an IP address. You can delete an assigned Primary IP Address in the Configure Primary IP Address dialog as displayed after selecting the icon under Primary IP Address.
- Select an interface with a Primary IP Address already defined to configure a Secondary IP Address, using the + icon under the Secondary IP Address label.
- Remove a selected Secondary IP Address using the x icon under the Secondary IP Address label.

Menu Tab Example showing the **IP > IP Interfaces** menu tab:



The screenshot shows the Allied Telesis GUI with the **IP > IP Interfaces** menu tab selected. The interface is divided into two main sections: **Primary IP Address** and **Secondary IP Address**.

Primary IP Address Table:

| Interface | IP Address | Prefix Length |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| vlan1 | 192.168.1.1 | 24 |
| vlan2 | 10.10.1.1 | 24 |
| vlan3 | 10.10.10.50 | 24 |

Secondary IP Address Section:

| IP Address | Prefix Length |
|------------|---------------|
| | |

The bottom right corner of the window shows the date and time: 9/11/10 2:41 PM.

Description

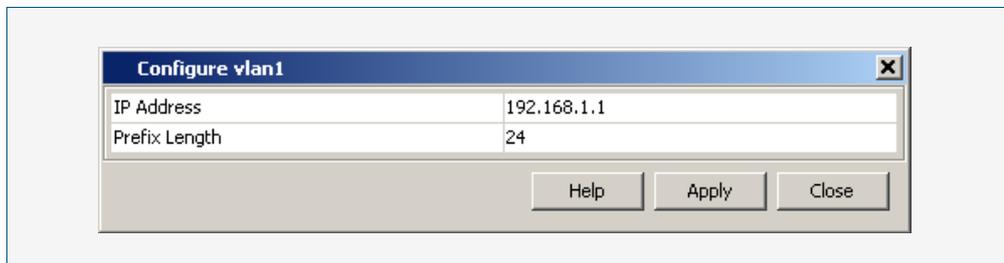
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Primary IP Address | Displays and configures primary IP addressing for VLANs and management port interfaces that are defined on the switch and assigned to ports. |
| Secondary IP Address | Displays and configures secondary IP addressing for VLANs and management port interfaces that are defined on the switch and assigned to ports. |

IP > IP Interfaces > Configure Primary IP Address

The **IP > IP Interfaces > Configure Primary IP Address** dialog allows you to configure a primary address with an IP address and a prefix length for the selected interface.

Configuration Dialog

Example showing the **IP > IP Interfaces > Configure Primary IP Address** dialog:



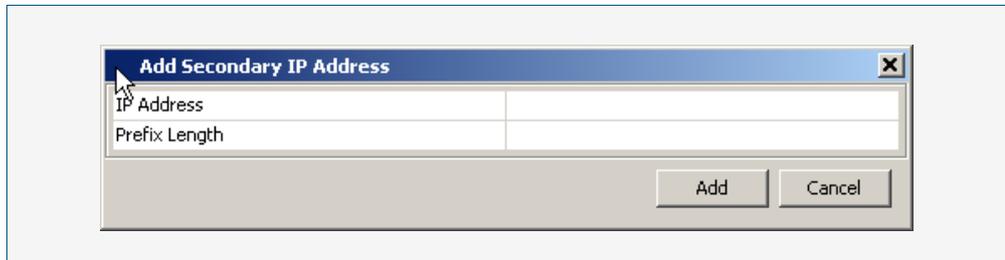
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| IP Address | Enter or remove an IPv4 Address in dotted decimal notation (i.e. A.B.C.D) |
| Prefix Length | Enter the Prefix for the IPv4 Address with the integer as used for slash notation (i.e. 24 instead of /24), not dotted decimal notation (i.e. 255.255.255.0) |

IP > IP Interfaces > Add Secondary IP Address

The **IP > IP Interfaces > Add Secondary IP Address** dialog allows you to add a secondary address with an IP address and a prefix length for the selected interface (only if the selected interface already has a primary address configured).

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **IP > IP Interfaces > Add Secondary IP Address** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| IP Address | Enter an IPv4 Address in dotted decimal notation (i.e. A . B . C . D). |
| Prefix Length | Enter the Prefix for the IPv4 Address with the integer as used for slash notation (i.e. 24 instead of /24), not dotted decimal notation (i.e. 255 . 255 . 255 . 0). |

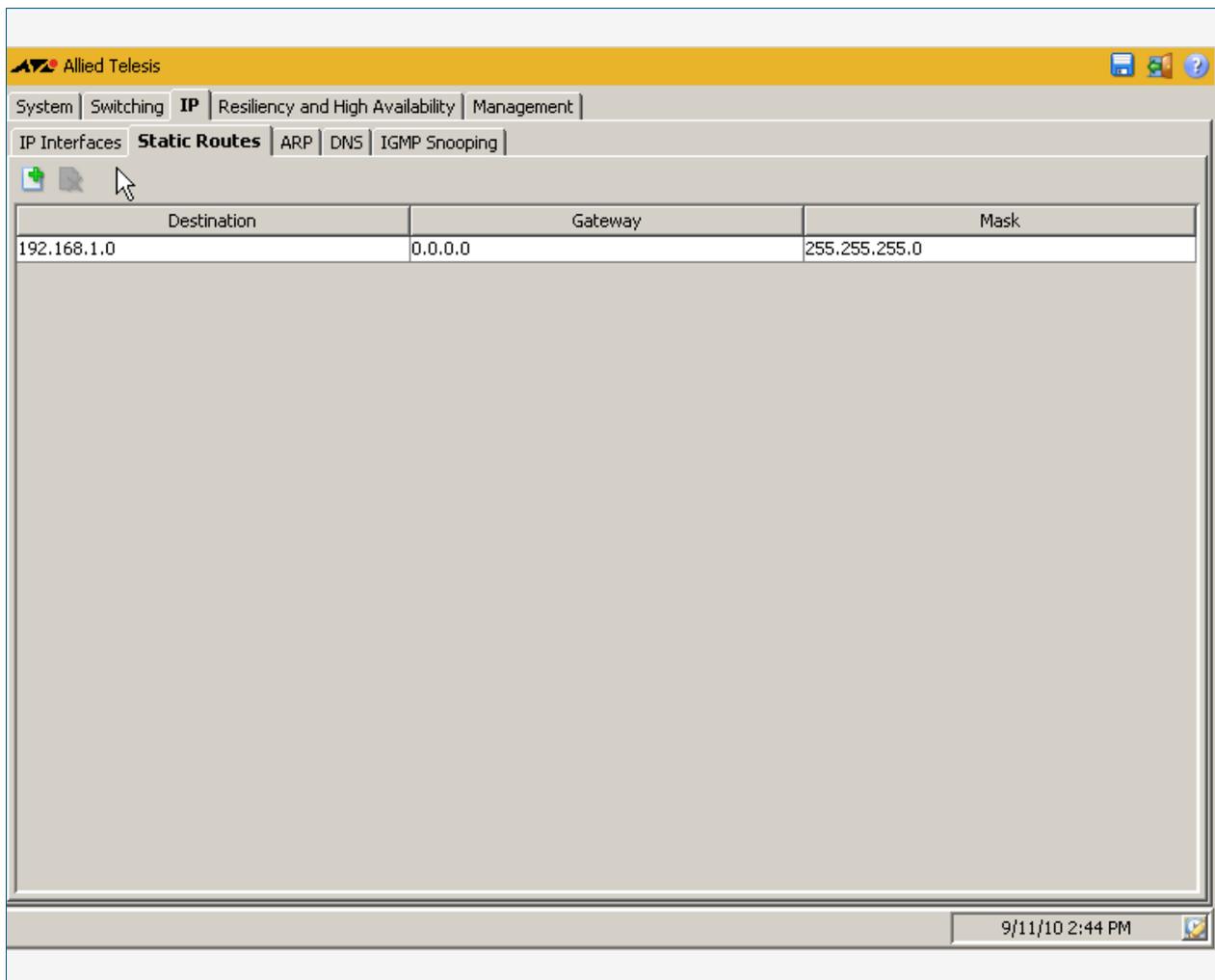
IP > Static Routes

The IP > **Static Routes** menu tab allows you to view, add, and delete static IP routes configured on the switch. Static routes are specified using destination IP addresses, masks, and gateways.

You can also sort or rearrange the display of the Static Routes by Destination, Gateway, or Mask by selecting the relevant column or by dragging the relevant column respectively.

- Selecting the + icon allows you to define a Static Route specifying destination and gateway IPv4 addresses with a dotted decimal format subnet mask.
- Selecting the x icon allows you to delete a defined Static Route.

Menu Tab Example showing the **IP > Static Routes** menu tab:



Description

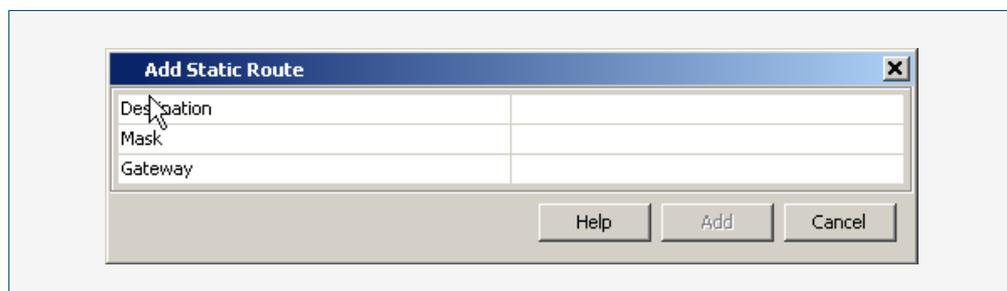
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Static Routes / Destination | The IPv4 address of the destination subnet address. |

| Label / Field / Button | Description(cont.) |
|-------------------------|--|
| Static Routes / Gateway | The IPv4 address of the gateway device. |
| Static Routes / Mask | The subnet mask in dotted decimal notation (e.g. 255.255.255.0 instead of the slash notation /24). |

IP > Static Routes > Add Static Route

The **IP > Static Routes > Add Static Route** dialog allows you to add a static IP routes on the switch. Static routes are specified using destination IP addresses, masks, and gateways.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **IP > Static Routes > Add Static Route** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Destination | Enter the IPv4 address of the destination subnet address. |
| Mask | Enter the subnet mask in dotted decimal notation (e.g. 255.255.255.0 instead of the slash notation /24). |
| Gateway | Enter the IPv4 address of the gateway device. |

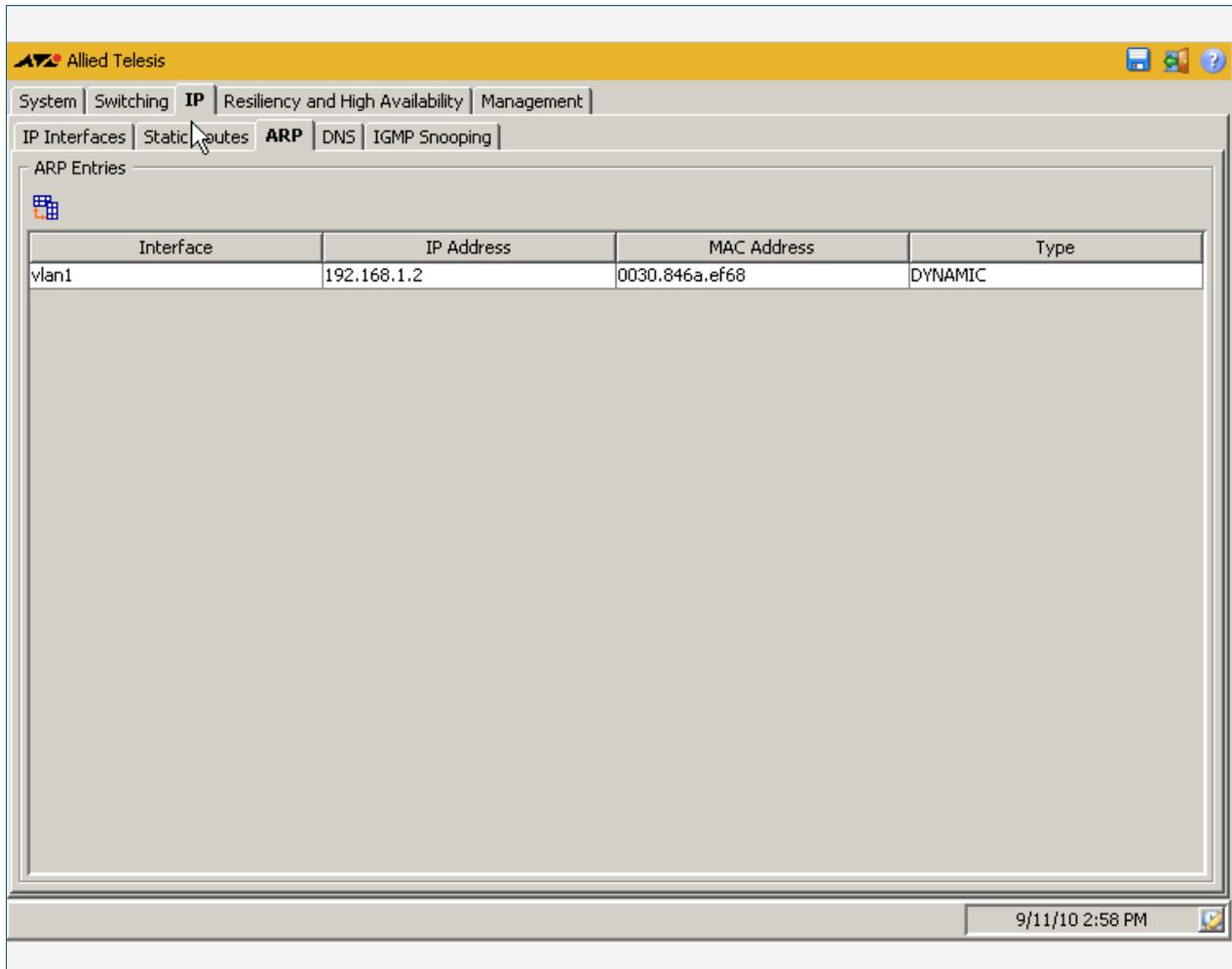
IP > ARP

The **IP > ARP** menu tab allows you to view the contents of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) Table.

You can change the ARP Entries view to display horizontally or vertically by selecting the table view icon above the ARP Entries.

You can also sort or rearrange the display of the ARP Entries by Interface, IP Address, MAC Address, or Type by selecting the relevant column or by dragging the relevant column respectively.

Menu Tab Example showing the **IP > ARP** menu tab:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| ARP Entries / Interface | Interface over which the switch is accessed, usually a VLAN. |
| ARP Entries / IP Address | IP address of the network device this ARP entry maps to. |

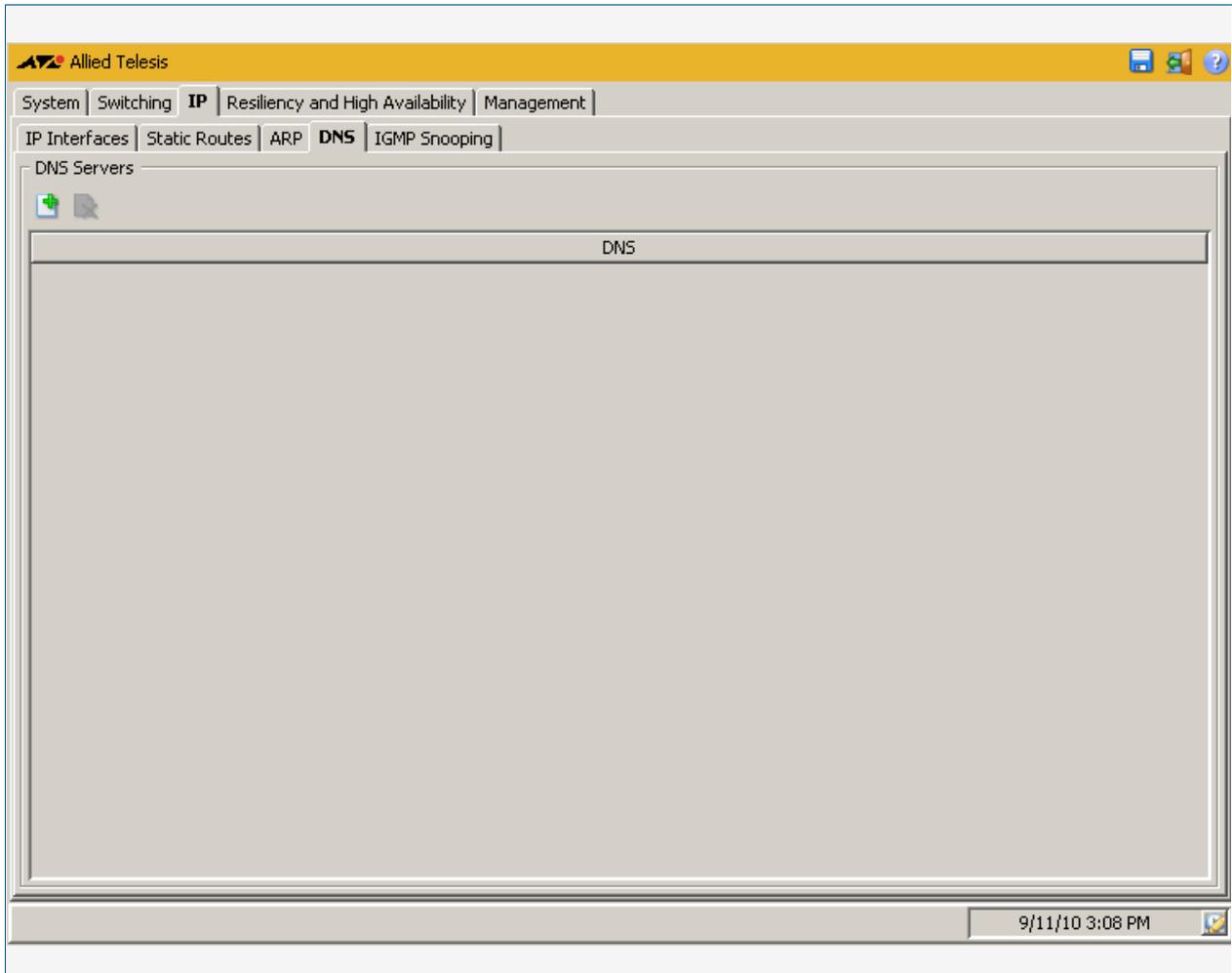
| Label / Field / Button | Description(cont.) |
|------------------------------|---|
| ARP Entries / MAC Address | Hardware address of the switch in hexadecimal format HHHH . HHHH . HHHH. |
| ARP Entries / Type | Indicates whether the ARP entry is a Static or Dynamic ARP entry. Static ARP entries are added and dynamic ARP entries are learned. |

IP > DNS

The **IP > DNS** menu tab allows you to display and configure DNS (Domain Name System) server entries for the switch.

- Selecting the **+** icon allows you to define a DNS Server specifying the IPv4 address.
- Selecting the **x** icon allows you to delete a defined DNS Server.

Menu Tab Example showing the **IP > DNS** menu tab:



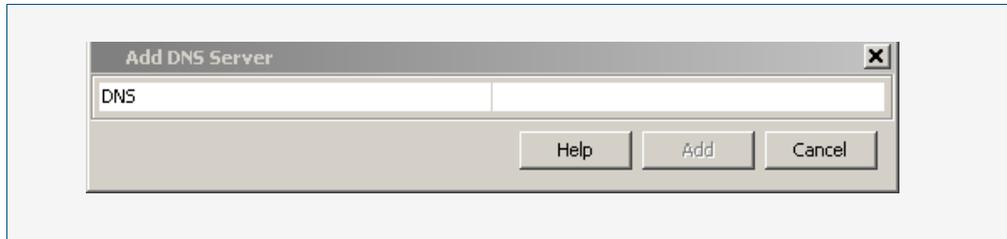
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| DNS | DNS Server IPv4 address. |

IP > DNS > Add DNS Server

The **IP > DNS > Add DNS Server** dialog allows you to add DNS (Domain Name System) server entries for the switch.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **IP > DNS > Add DNS Server** dialog:



Description

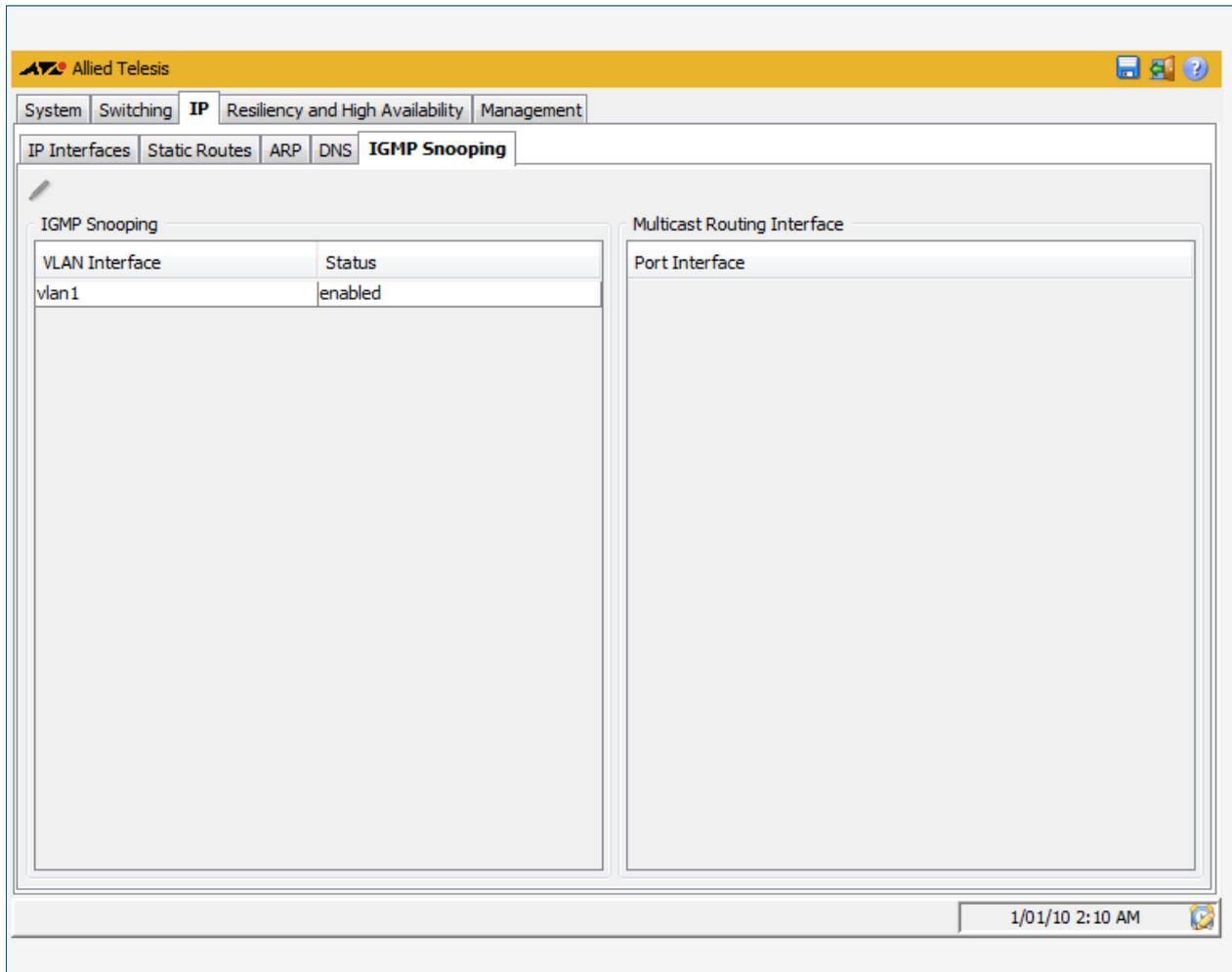
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| DNS | Enter an IPv4 address in dotted decimal notation (i.e. A.B.C.D) for the DNS (Domain Name System) Server you want to specify. |

IP > IGMP Snooping

The **IP > IGMP Snooping** menu tab displays basic IGMP Snooping and Multicast Routing Interface information.

You can also configure IGMP Snooping on individual ports by selecting the VLAN interface that the port is a member of then clicking on the pen shaped icon to display the Configure IGMP Snooping dialog, where you can enable or disable IGMP snooping on desired ports.

Menu Tab Example showing the **IP > IGMP Snooping** menu tab:



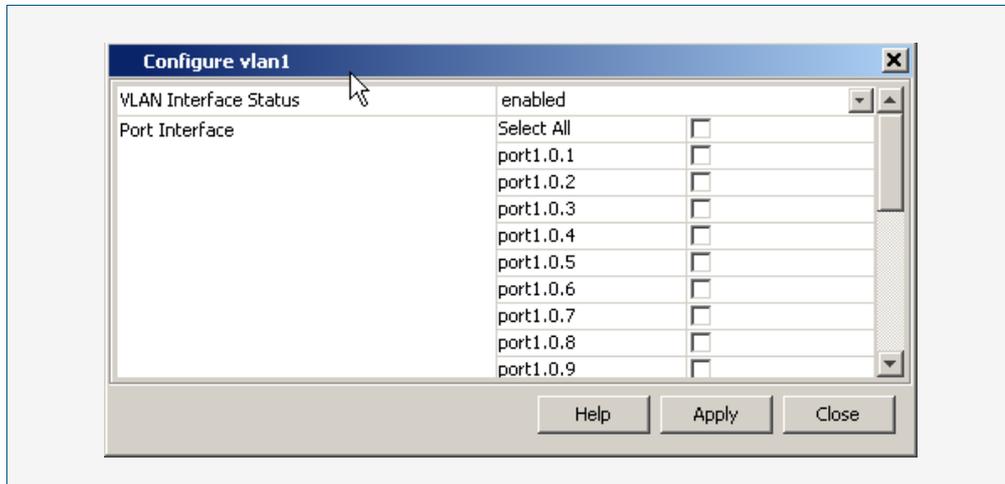
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|---|---|
| IGMP Snooping / IGMP Snooping | Displays and configures IGMP Snooping for a specified VLAN interface. |
| IGMP Snooping / Multicast Routing Interface | Displays and configures the specified port in the VLAN as a multicast router for IGMP Snooping. |

IP > IGMP Snooping > Configure Interface

The **IP > IGMP Snooping > Configure Interface** dialog allows you to configure IGMP Snooping on individual ports. First select the VLAN interface that the port is a member of then enable or disable IGMP snooping on desired ports from this dialog.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **IP > IGMP Snooping > Configure Interface** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| VLAN Interface Status | Displays whether the selected VLAN is enabled or disabled. |
| Port Interface | Select the 'check box' for a given port to allocate it to the VLAN. |

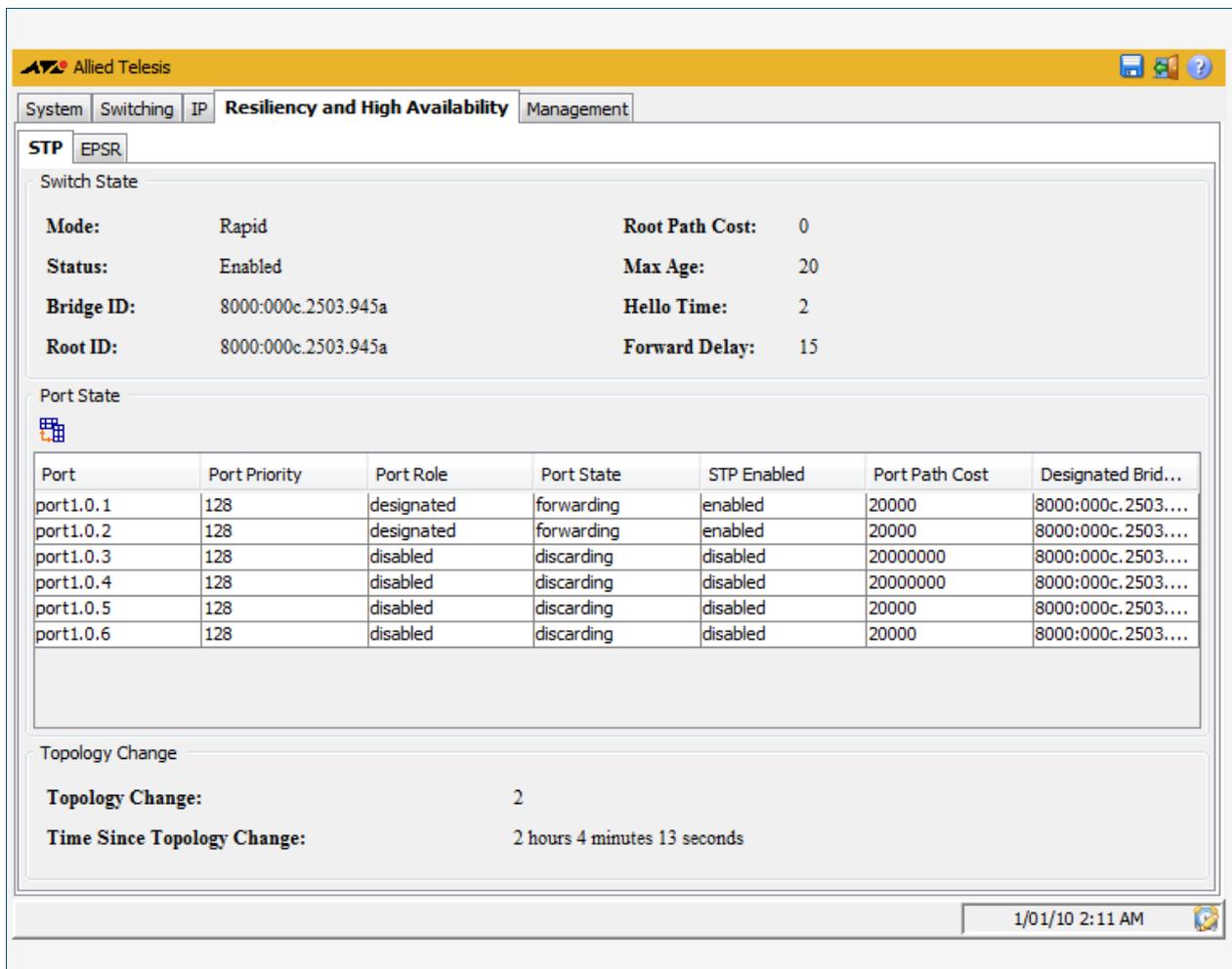
Resiliency and High Availability > STP

The **Resiliency and High Availability > STP** menu tab allows you to view the configuration and status of spanning tree data: for the switch as a whole and for each port.

You can also sort or rearrange the display of the Port State table by Port, Port Priority, Port State, Port Role, STP Enabled, Port Path Cost, or Designated Bridge ID by selecting the relevant column or by dragging the relevant column respectively.

Note  STP is not configurable through the GUI. Refer to the relevant STP chapters in the AlliedWare Plus™ Software Reference to configure STP using the CLI instead.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Resiliency and High Availability > STP** menu tab:



The screenshot shows the GUI for the STP configuration. The breadcrumb trail is System > Switching > IP > Resiliency and High Availability > Management > STP. The STP configuration is shown for the EPSR interface.

Switch State

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------|----|
| Mode: | Rapid | Root Path Cost: | 0 |
| Status: | Enabled | Max Age: | 20 |
| Bridge ID: | 8000:000c.2503.945a | Hello Time: | 2 |
| Root ID: | 8000:000c.2503.945a | Forward Delay: | 15 |

Port State

| Port | Port Priority | Port Role | Port State | STP Enabled | Port Path Cost | Designated Brid... |
|-----------|---------------|------------|------------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|
| port1.0.1 | 128 | designated | forwarding | enabled | 20000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |
| port1.0.2 | 128 | designated | forwarding | enabled | 20000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |
| port1.0.3 | 128 | disabled | discarding | disabled | 20000000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |
| port1.0.4 | 128 | disabled | discarding | disabled | 20000000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |
| port1.0.5 | 128 | disabled | discarding | disabled | 20000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |
| port1.0.6 | 128 | disabled | discarding | disabled | 20000 | 8000:000c.2503.... |

Topology Change

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Topology Change: | 2 |
| Time Since Topology Change: | 2 hours 4 minutes 13 seconds |

The bottom right corner of the window shows the date and time: 1/01/10 2:11 AM.

Description: Switch State

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Switch State / Mode | Spanning Tree Mode displayed: STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) or Rapid (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol - RSTP) or Multiple (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol - MSTP) |
| Switch State / Status | Status of the Spanning Tree Mode: enabled or disabled. |
| Switch State / Bridge ID | Bridge ID, comprising the port priority followed by its MAC address. |
| Switch State / Root ID | Root Bridge ID, comprising the root priority followed by its MAC address. |
| Switch State / Root Path Cost | Sum of the costs for each path between the bridge port and the root bridge. |
| Switch State / Max Age | Time in seconds that the dynamic spanning tree configuration information is stored in the switch before it is discarded. |
| Switch State / Hello Time | Time in seconds between the transmission of switch spanning tree configuration information, when the switch is the Root Bridge of the spanning tree or is trying to become the Root Bridge. |
| Switch State / Forward Delay | Time in seconds to control how fast a port changes its spanning tree state when moving towards the forwarding state. This value is used only when the switch is acting as the root bridge. Note that Forward Delay, Max Age, and Hello Time are interrelated. |

Description: Port State

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Port State / Port | Switch port number in the format 'portX.Y.Z' where X is the switch, Y is the XEM, and Z is the individual switch port number. |
| Port State / Port Priority | The lower the port priority, the higher the likelihood of the port becoming part of the active network topology. |
| Port State / Port Role | Displays the port role as configured in the CLI with 'spanning-tree' commands, and shows either 'rootport', 'backup', 'disabled' or 'designated' port roles. |
| Port State / Port State | Displays the spanning tree state for the port as configured in the CLI with 'spanning-tree' commands. Indicates spanning tree states of: disabled, blocking, listening, learning, and forwarding. |
| Port State / STP Enabled | Displays whether spanning-tree is enabled or disabled. Spanning tree is enabled by default. |
| Port State / Port Path Cost | The cost of a path for the port that determines the total cost path. The lower the total cost, the higher the priority of the path. |
| Port State / Designated Bridge ID | The unique parent for each bridge that connects it to the next LAN on the path towards the root bridge. |

**Description:
Topology Change**

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|--|--|
| Topology Change / Topology Change | The number of STP Topology Changes that have occurred since the switch was rebooted. |
| Topology Change / Time Since Topology Change | The time in hours and seconds since the previous STP Topology Change occurred. |

Resiliency and High Availability > EPSR

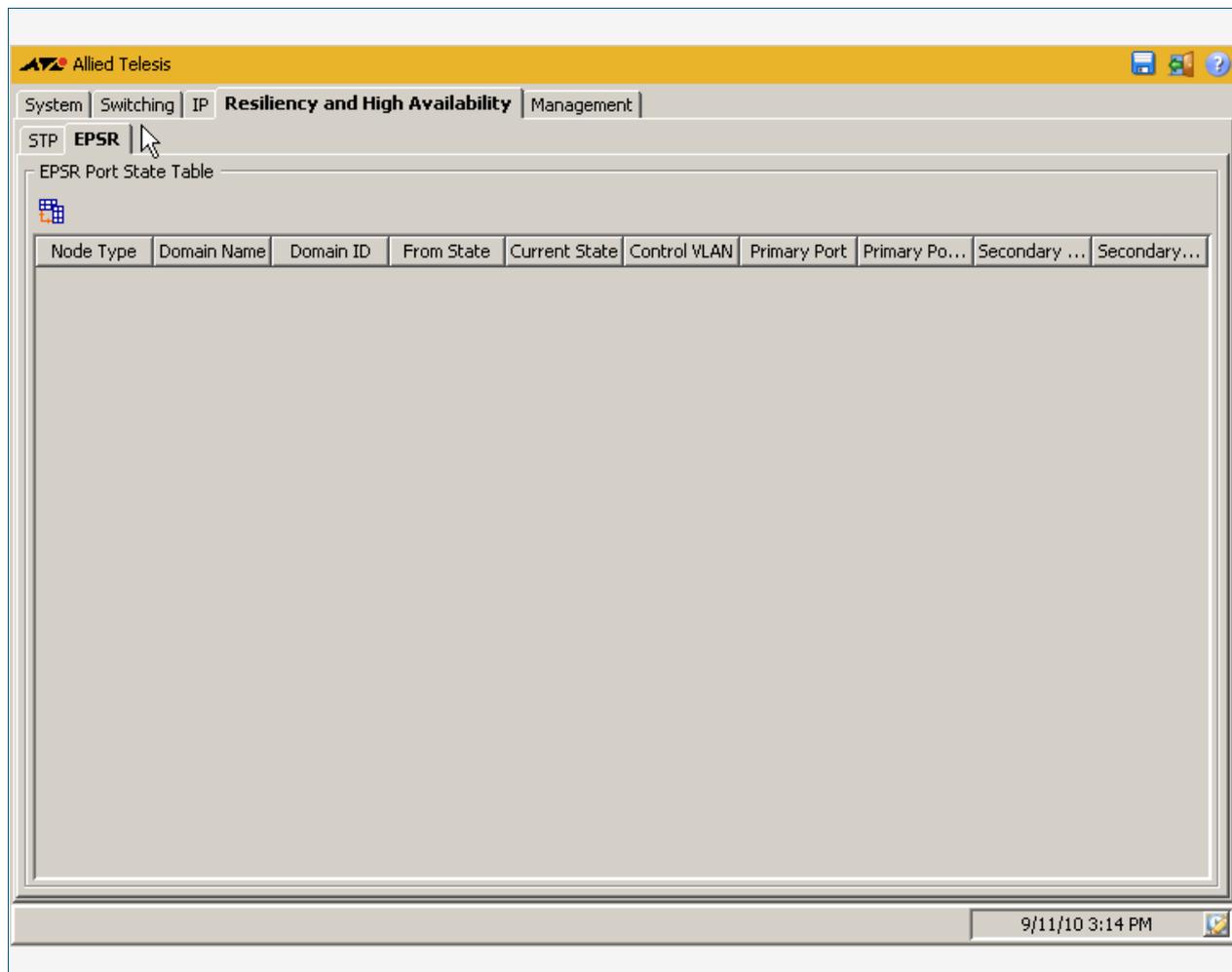
The **Resiliency and High Availability > EPSR** menu tab allows you to display the properties and status of any EPSR domains configured on the switch.

You can also sort or rearrange the display of the EPSR Port State table by Node Type, Domain Name, Domain ID, From State, Current State, Control VLAN, Primary Port, Primary Port Status, Secondary Port, or Secondary Port Status by selecting the relevant column or by dragging the relevant column respectively.

Note EPSR is not configurable through the GUI. Refer to the relevant EPSR chapters in the AlliedWare Plus™ Software Reference to configure EPSR using the CLI instead.



Menu Tab Example showing the **Resiliency and High Availability > EPSR** menu tab:



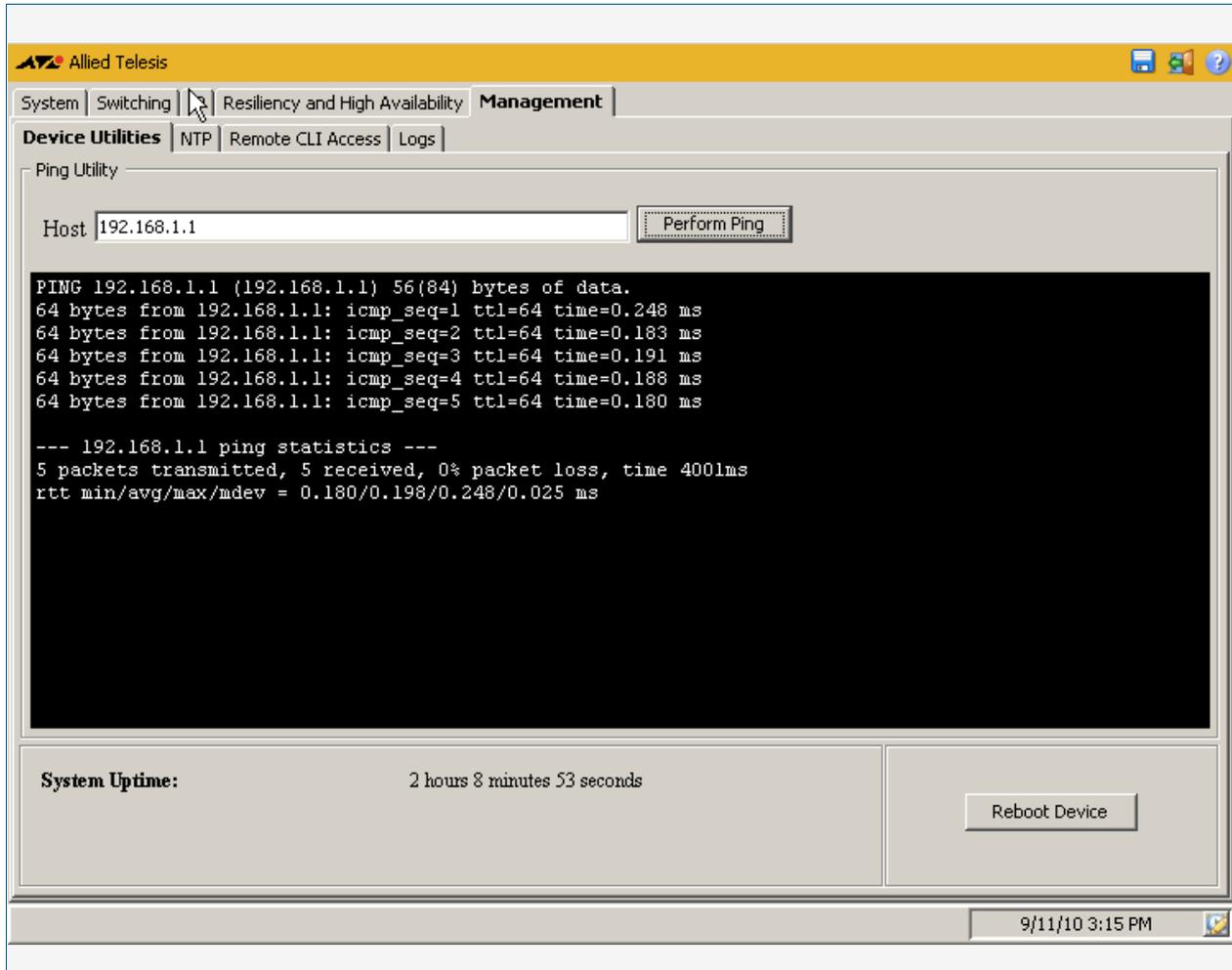
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|---|--|
| EPSR Port State Table / Node Type | Displays master or transit node as configured in the CLI with the ' epsr mode ' command. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Domain Name | Displays the domain name. A set of instances across a ring is called a domain. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Domain ID | Displays the assigned domain number for the domain name. |
| EPSR Port State Table / From State | Displays the From EPSR state as configured in the CLI with the ' epsr state ' commands. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Current State | Displays the Current EPSR state as configured in the CLI with the ' epsr state ' commands. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Control VLAN | Displays the control VLAN as configured in the CLI with the ' epsr mode controlvlan ' command. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Primary Port | Displays the master node primary port interface name as configured in the CLI with the ' epsr mode primaryport ' command. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Primary Port Status | Displays the master node primary port interface status: up or down. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Secondary Port | Displays the assigned secondary port interface name. |
| EPSR Port State Table / Secondary Port Status | Displays the assigned secondary port interface status: up or down. |

Management > Device Utilities

The **Management > Device Utilities** menu tab allows you to perform pings and reboot the switch from the GUI.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Management > Device Utilities** menu tab:



Description

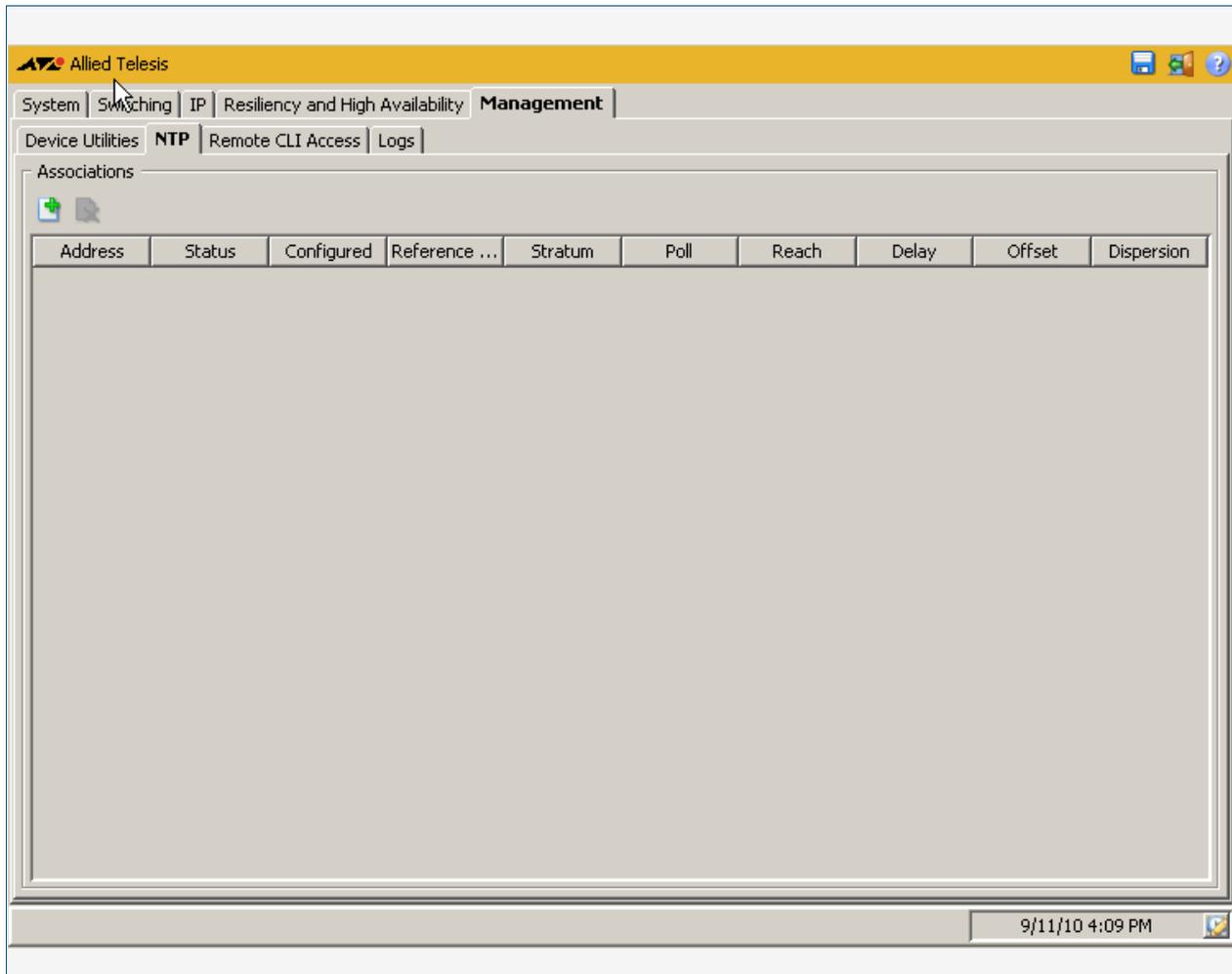
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Ping Utility / Host | Enter the IPv4 address or the URL that you want to ping in this field. |
| Ping Utility / Perform Ping | Select this button to ping the IPv4 address or URL that you entered in the Host field. |
| System Uptime | Displays the elapsed time since the last reboot in hours, minutes, and seconds. |
| Reboot Device | Select this button to reboot your switch. You will need to login to the GUI again after you reboot your switch. Rebooting closes all Telnet / SSH / SNMP sessions on your switch. |

Management > NTP

The **Management > NTP** menu tab allows you to display and configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) peer configurations on the switch.

- Selecting the + icon allows you to add an NTP association.
- Selecting the x icon allows you to delete an NTP association.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Management > NTP** menu tab:



Description

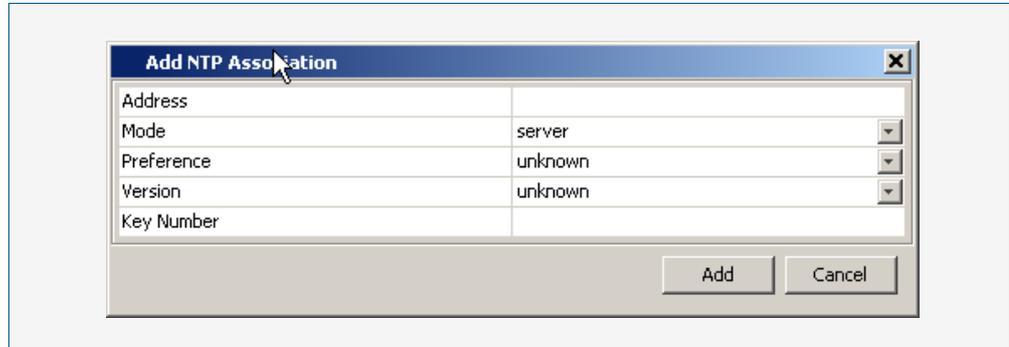
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Associations / Address | The NTP peer or NTP server IPv4 address. |
| Associations / Status | Indicates association status, and displays 'master(synced)', 'master(unsynced)', 'selected', 'candidate', 'configured', or 'unknown'. |
| Associations / Configured | Indicates if the association is configured or not, and displays 'configured' or 'dynamic'. |

| Label / Field / Button(cont.) | Description(cont.) |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Associations / Reference Clock | The IPv4 address for the reference clock. |
| Associations / Stratum | The number of hops between the server and the accurate time source. |
| Associations / Poll | The time between NTP requests from the device to the server. |
| Associations / Reach | Shows whether or not the NTP server responded to the last request, which indicates the reachability of the NTP peer. |
| Associations / Delay | The round trip delay between the device and the server. |
| Associations / Offset | The difference between the device clock and the server clock, relative to the server clock, in milliseconds. |
| Associations / Dispersion | The lowest measure of error associated with peer offset based on delay. |

Management > NTP > Add NTP Association

The **Management > NTP > Add NTP Association** dialog allows you configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) peer configurations on the switch.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Management > NTP > Add NTP Association** dialog:



Description

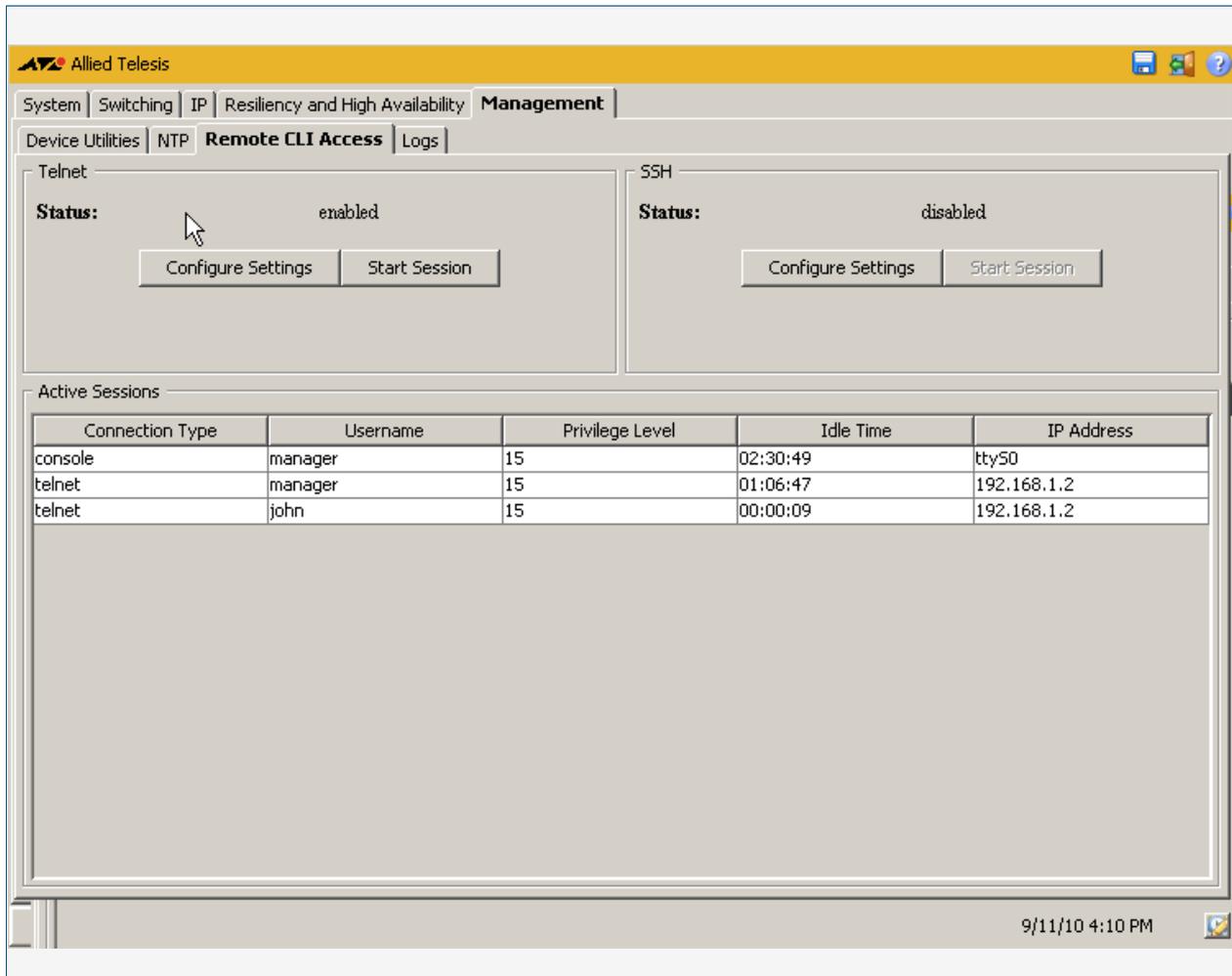
| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Address | Enter the NTP IPv4 address for the NTP peer or NTP server used. |
| Mode | Select one of the <code>server</code> or <code>peer</code> options from the drop down list to specify the NTP Mode used. When using NTP server mode, the NTP server will not accept updates from clients for updates to the server's time settings. The NTP server is configured to synchronize the NTP clients. When using NTP peer mode, each device shares its time information with the other, and each device can also provide time synchronization to the other. |
| Preference | Select one of the <code>unknown</code> , <code>not preferred</code> , or <code>preferred</code> options from the drop down list to specify the NTP Preference used. NTP Preference is used to configure an NTP server, so the NTP server is given preference to synchronize the NTP clients. |
| Version | Select one of the <code>unknown</code> , <code>version 1</code> , <code>version 2</code> , <code>version 3</code> , or <code>version 3, version 4</code> options from the drop down list to specify the NTP Version used. |
| Key Number | Enter the NTP Key Number for NTP authentication, which allows NTP to authenticate the associations with other systems for security purposes. The NTP Key Number is an integer in the range <1-4294967295>. The MD5 (Message-Digest algorithm 5) key type is supported to encrypt the NTP Key Number used for authentication. |

Management > Remote CLI Access

The **Management > Remote CLI Access** menu tab allows you to enable, disable and configure Telnet and SSH.

You can create Telnet or SSH connections to the switch, and you can view a list of all current active CLI sessions on the switch from this tab.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Management > Remote CLI Access** menu tab:



Description Telnet

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Telnet / Status | Displays the current Telnet status, either 'enabled' or 'disabled'. |
| Telnet / Configure Settings | Configures the Telnet Status. Select 'enabled' or 'disabled' to configure the status of the Telnet server on the switch. |
| Telnet / Start Session | Starts a Telnet session to use the CLI. After starting a Telnet session you will need to login to the switch to use the CLI. |
| SSH / Status | Displays the current SSH status, either 'enabled' or 'disabled'. |
| SSH / Configure Settings | Configures the SSH Status. Select 'enabled' or 'disabled' to configure the status of the SSH server on the switch. Note that relevant certificates must be installed to initiate an SSH session. |
| SSH / Start Session | Starts a secure SSH session to use the CLI. After starting an SSH session you will need to login to the switch to use the CLI. |

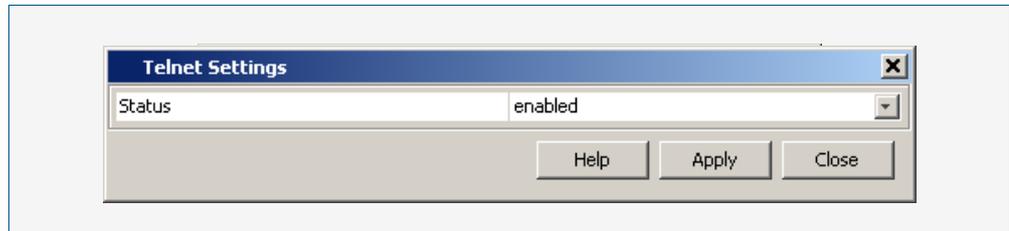
Description Active Sessions

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Active Sessions / Connection Type | A Console connection or a VTY connection. |
| Active Sessions / Username | Login name for a user. |
| Active Sessions / Privilege Level | The privilege set for a user for VTY or console connection. Privilege levels range from 0-15 with 15 the highest privilege level. Privilege levels are used in the CLI to enable or disable access to different configuration modes and commands. Privilege levels 0-14 only enables users to view system configuration and system behavior. Privilege level 15 enables users to globally configure all the interfaces on a switch. |
| Active Sessions / Idle Time | Time in seconds that the SSH Server waits to receive data from the SSH Client. The SSH Server disconnects when the Idle Time limit is reached. |
| Active Sessions / IP Address | The IPv4 address for the VTY connection. |

Management > Remote CLI Access > Telnet Settings

The **Management > Remote CLI Access > Telnet Settings** dialog allows you to enable or disable Telnet.

Configuration Dialog Example showing **Management > Remote CLI Access > Telnet Settings** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Status | Select <i>enabled</i> or <i>disabled</i> from the drop down list on this dialog to enable or disable Telnet respectively on the switch. |

Management > Remote CLI Access > SSH Settings

The **Management > Remote CLI Access > SSH Settings** dialog allows you to enable or disable SSH.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Management > Remote CLI Access > SSH Settings** dialog:



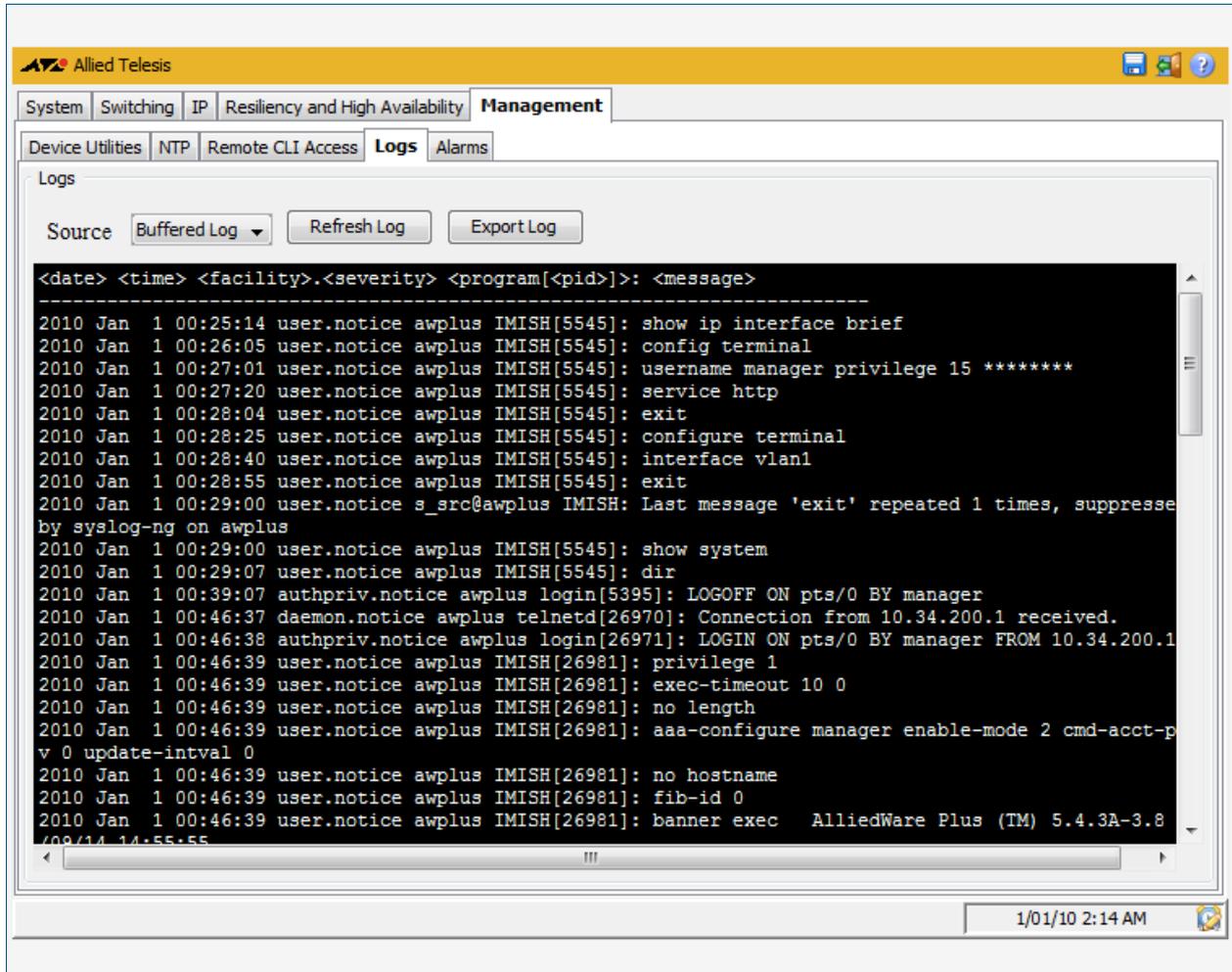
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Status | Select <i>enabled</i> or <i>disabled</i> from the drop down list on this dialog to enable or disable SSH respectively on the switch. |

Management > Logs

The **Management > Logs** menu tab allows you to view the switch logs, and export the switch logs as .csv format files.

Menu Tab Example showing the **Management > Logs** menu tab:



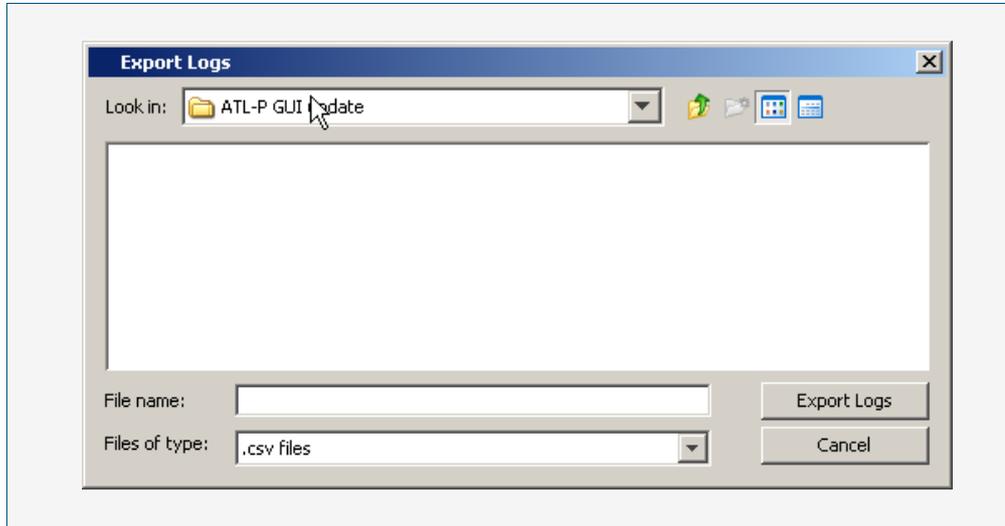
Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Logs | Display, select and export the available switch log files for troubleshooting use. |
| Source | Select the buffered log or the permanent log available on the switch to display or export to a .csv format file for use in a spreadsheet. |
| Source / Refresh Log | Select this button to display an updated buffered or permanent log. |
| Source / Export Log | Select this option to export the log to a .csv format file for use in a spreadsheet. |

Management > Logs > Export Logs

The **Management > Logs > Export Logs** dialog allows you to export the switch logs as .csv format files.

Configuration Dialog Example showing the **Management > Logs > Export Logs** dialog:



Description

| Label / Field / Button | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| File name: | Enter the file name for the exported log file. |
| Files of type: | Select .csv files to export the log file as a comma separated file, so each column of the log file can be formatted in a spreadsheet. |

Appendix C: Glossary



| | |
|----------------|------|
| Numerics | C.2 |
| A | C.2 |
| B | C.5 |
| C | C.6 |
| D | C.7 |
| E | C.9 |
| F | C.10 |
| G | C.11 |
| H | C.11 |
| I | C.11 |
| L | C.13 |
| M | C.15 |
| N | C.17 |
| P | C.17 |
| Q | C.19 |
| R | C.20 |
| S | C.21 |
| T | C.25 |
| U | C.26 |
| V | C.27 |
| W | C.28 |

Numerics

10BaseT

10 Mbps/baseband/twisted pair. The IEEE standard for twisted pair Ethernet.

802.1X

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control (**NAC**). It is part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism to devices wishing to attach to a LAN, either establishing a point-to-point connection or preventing it if authentication fails. It is used for securing wireless 802.11 access points and is based on the Extensible Authentication Protocol (**EAP**). Authentication is required on a per-port basis. The main components of an 802.1X implementation are:

- The authenticator - the port on this device that wishes to enforce authentication before allowing access to services that are accessible behind it.
- The supplicant - the port that wishes to access services offered by the authenticator's system. The supplicant may be a port on a PC or other device connected to this device.
- The authentication server - a device that uses the authentication credentials supplied by the supplicant, via the authenticator, to determine if the authenticator should grant access to its services.

See **AAA** and **Tri-authentication**.

For a configuration example see "**Configuring 802.1X**" on page 38.7. For a sample configuration script see "**Sample 802.1X-Authentication Configuration**" on page 42.7.

A

AAA

AAA is the collective title for the three related functions of Authentication, Authorization and Accounting. These function can be applied in a variety of methods with a variety of servers.

Authentication is performed in the following contexts:

- Login authentication of user shell sessions on the console port, and via telnet/SSH.
- **802.1X** authentication of devices connecting to switch ports.
- **MAC authentication** of devices connecting to switch ports.
- **Web-authentication** of devices connecting to switch ports.

Accounting is performed in the following contexts:

- Accounting of console login sessions.
- Accounting of 802.1x authenticated connections.
- Accounting of MAC authenticated connections.
- Accounting of Web authenticated connections.

There are two types of servers that can be used:

- Local user database.
- **RADIUS** servers.

When 802.1X authentication, MAC authentication and Web-authentication are configured to run simultaneously on a switch port this is called tri-authentication.

For more information see [Chapter 42, AAA Introduction and Configuration](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring AAA Login Authentication” on page 42.5](#). For sample 802.1x, MAC authentication and Web-authentication configuration scripts see [“Sample Authentication Configurations” on page 42.7](#).

Access-list

See [ACL](#).

ACL

Access Control List. An ACL is one filter, or a sequence of filters, that are applied to an interface to either block, pass, or when using QoS, apply priority to, packets that match the filter definitions. ACLs are used to restrict network access by hosts and devices and to limit network traffic. See [ACL sequence numbers](#) and [ACL types](#).

For more information see [Chapter 32, Access Control Lists Introduction](#).

ACL sequence numbers

To help manage [ACLs](#) you can apply sequence numbers to filters. This allows you to remove filters from named and numbered ACLs without having to reconfigure an ACL. The ability to add sequence numbers to filters simplifies updates through the ability to position a filter within an ACL. When you add a new filter, you can specify a sequence number to position the filter in the ACL and you can also remove a current filter in an ACL by specifying a sequence number.

For more information see [“ACL Filter Sequence Numbers” on page 32.14](#).

ACL types

[ACLs](#) are separated into two different types, software ACLs and hardware ACLs.

Hardware ACLs are applied directly to an interface, or are used for QoS [Classifications](#). They can be either named, or can use the following numeric ranges:

- 3000-3699 for Hardware IP ACLs
- 4000-4699 for Hardware MAC ACLs

For more information see [“Defining Hardware IP ACLs” on page 32.6](#) and [“Defining Hardware MAC ACLs” on page 32.5](#).

Software ACLs can be either named ACLs, using the standard or extended keyword followed by a text string, or they can use the following numeric ranges:

- 1-99
- 100-199
- 1300-1999
- 2000-2699

Software ACLs are used in features such as SNMP, IGMP, BGP and OSPF.

Address resolution

The process of resolving and mapping hardware MAC addresses into their corresponding network layer IP addresses. Depending on the underlying network, address resolution may require broadcasts on a local network.

For more information see [“ARP” on page C.4](#).

Adjacency

A state existing between two OSPF routers. These routers build their routing databases by exchanging link state advertisements, often termed hello messages. When a pair has completed the process, the routers are said to be “adjacent.”

AMF (also shown as ATMF in commands and output)

AMF (Allied Telesis Management Framework) is a suite of features that combine to simplify network management across all supported network switches from the core to the edge. Its major features are:

- Unified Command Line
- Configuration Backup and Recovery
- Rolling-Reboot Upgrade
- Node Provisioning

For more information see [“AMF Introduction and Configuration” on page 58.1](#).

ARP

Address Resolution Protocol. ARP is used by your device to dynamically learn the Layer 2 address of devices in its networks. Most hosts also have a MAC physical address in addition to the assigned IP address. For Ethernet, this is a 6-byte, globally unique number. ARP enables your device to learn the physical address of the host that has a given IP address.

For more information see [“Address Resolution Protocol \(ARP\)” on page 24.3](#).

ASCII

The *American Standard Code for Information Interchange*. A standard character-to-number encoding widely used within the computer industry.

ASIC

Application Specific Integrated Circuit. An integrated circuit (chip) manufactured to perform a specific function.

Asynchronous

Transmission in which each character is sent individually. The time intervals between transmitted characters may be of unequal length. Transmission is controlled by start and stop elements before and after each character. See [“Synchronous” on page C.24](#)

Autonegotiation

Autonegotiation lets the port adjust its speed and duplex mode to accommodate the device connected to it. When the port connects to another autonegotiating device, they negotiate the highest possible speed and **Duplex mode** for both of them.

B

BIST

Built In Self Test. A mechanism that permits the device to test itself.

B-MAC

Backbone MAC address.

BPDU

Bridge Protocol Data Unit. A **Spanning tree** protocol initializing packet sent at configurable intervals to exchange information among bridges in the LAN.

For information on the standardized format for MSTP BPDU messages see **“MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)” on page 18.17.**

Bridge

A device that connects two or more networks and forwards packets between them. Bridges function at the data link layer or Layer 2 of the OSI reference model. A bridge will filter, send or flood an incoming frame, base on the MAC address of that frame.

Broadcast

One device sends out data that is intended to be received and processed by every device that it reaches.

Broadcast domain

A section of an Ethernet network comprising all the devices that will receive broadcast packets sent by any device in the domain. Separated from the rest of the network by a Layer 3 switch.

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. BOOTP is a UDP-based protocol that enables a booting host to dynamically configure itself without external interventions. A BOOTP server responds to requests from BOOTP clients for configuration information, such as the IP address the client should use.

B-TAG

Backbone TAG Field.

B-VID

Backbone VLAN ID (tunnel).

B-VLAN

Backbone VLAN (tunnel).

C

CHAP

Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol. CHAP is an authentication method used by PPP servers to validate the identity of clients. CHAP verifies the identity of the client by using a three-way handshake, and the verification is based on a shared secret by the client and the server, such as the client's password.

CIST

Common and Internal Spanning Tree. The CIST is the default spanning tree instance of **MSTP**, i.e. all VLANs that are not members of particular **MSTIs** are members of the CIST. Also, an individual MST region can be regarded as a single virtual bridge by other MST regions. The spanning tree that runs between regions is the CIST. The CIST is also the spanning tree that runs between MST regions and Single Spanning Tree (SST) entities.

For more information see [“Common and Internal Spanning Tree \(CIST\)” on page 18.15](#).

Classification

In **ACLs** and **QoS**, classification is the process of filtering and marking. Filtering involves sorting your data into appropriate traffic types. Marking involves tagging the data so that downstream ports and routers can apply appropriate service policy rules. There are two reasons to classify data:

- To provide network security (security ACLs).
- To apply service quality criteria QoS.

The main application of security ACLs is to block undesired traffic. When using ACLs though QoS, the same classification and action abilities are available, but QoS has some additional fields that it can match on and also provides the ability to perform metering, marking and remarking on packets that match the filter definitions.

For more information on QoS classification see [“Classifying Your Data” on page 36.8](#).

Class maps

Class maps are among the pivotal **QoS** components. They provide the means that associate the classified traffic with its appropriate QoS actions. They are the linking elements for the following functions:

- **Classification.**
- policy mapping. See [Policy maps](#).
- **Premarking.**

The relationship between a class map and a policy map can be one-to-one or many-to-one.

For more information see [“Class Maps” on page 36.8](#).

CLI

Command Line Interface. With three distinct modes, the CLI is very secure. In User exec mode you can view settings and troubleshoot problems but you cannot make changes to the system. In Privileged exec mode you can change system settings and restart the device. You can only make configuration changes in Global configuration mode, which reduces the risk of making accidental configuration changes.

For more information see [“How to Work with Command Modes” on page 1.7](#).

C-MAC

Customer MAC Address.

Collision domain

A physical region of a local area network (LAN) in which data collisions can occur.

Control VLAN

In **EPSR**, the VLAN over which all control messages are sent and received. EPSR never blocks this VLAN.

For more information see **“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2.**

CoS

Class of Service. CoS is a method for classifying traffic on a packet by packet basis using information in the type-of-service (ToS) byte to provide different service levels to different traffic. See **QoS**.

For more information see **“CoS to Egress Queue Premarking” on page 36.12.**

Cost

An indication of the overhead required to send packets across a certain interface.

C-TAG

Customer VLAN TAG.

C-VID

Customer VLAN ID.

C-VLAN

Customer VLAN.

D

Data VLAN

In **EPSR**, a VLAN that needs to be protected from loops. Each EPSR domain has one or more data VLANs.

For more information see **“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2.**

Designated bridge

Each bridge or LAN in the **Spanning tree**, except the **Root bridge**, has a unique parent, known as the designated bridge. Each LAN has a single bridge, called the designated bridge, that connects it to the next LAN on the path towards the root bridge.

For an overview of spanning tree operation see **“Spanning Tree Operation” on page 18.2.**

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A method of automatically allocating IP addresses. A DHCP server holds a pool of IP addresses from which it draws individual ones as it allocates them to users when they log on.

For more information see [Chapter 62, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol \(DHCP\) Introduction](#).

DHCP snooping

DHCP snooping provides an extra layer of security on the switch via dynamic IP source filtering. DHCP snooping filters out traffic received from unknown, or 'untrusted' ports, and builds and maintains a DHCP snooping database.

With DHCP snooping, IP sources are dynamically verified, and filtered accordingly. IP packets that are not sourced from recognized IP addresses can be filtered out. This ensures the required traceability.

For more information see [Chapter 53, DHCP Snooping Introduction and Configuration](#). For a configuration example see ["Configure DHCP Snooping" on page 53.8](#).

Digital Diagnostics Monitoring (DDM)

Modern optical SFP transceivers support Digital Diagnostics Monitoring (DDM) functions. This feature allows you to monitor real-time parameters of the SFP, such as optical output power, optical input power, temperature, laser bias current, and transceiver supply voltage. Additionally, RX LOS (Loss of Signal) is shown when the received optical level is below a preset threshold. Monitoring these parameters allows you to check on the health of all installed SFPs or a specific SFP transceiver. See also [Trouble-shoot Fiber and Pluggable Issues](#) in [Getting Started](#).

SFP transceivers that support DDM display the following output from the [show system pluggable detail](#) and the [show system pluggable diagnostics](#) commands for monitoring SFPs:

- **Diagnostic Calibration:** Specifies whether the pluggable supports DDM Internal Calibration. **Internal** is displayed if the pluggable supports DDM Internal Calibration.
- **Power Monitoring:** Displays the received power measurement type, which can be either **OMA** (Optical Module Amplitude) or **Avg** (Average Power) measured in μW .

For further information about the DDM feature on the switch for installed SFP transceivers, see the [show system pluggable detail](#) command and the [show system pluggable diagnostics](#) command in [Chapter 8, System Configuration and Monitoring Commands](#).

DLF

Destination Lookup Failure. DLF is the event of receiving a unicast Ethernet frame with an unknown destination address.

DNS

Domain Name System. DNS allows you to access remote systems by entering human-readable device host names rather than IP addresses. DNS works by creating a mapping between a device name, such as www.alliedtelesis.com, and its IP address. These mappings are held on DNS servers. The benefits of DNS are that domain names:

- Can map to a new IP address if the host's IP address changes.
- Are easier to remember than an IP address.
- Allow organizations to use a domain name hierarchy that is independent of any IP address assignment.

DNS relay

DNS Relay provides the presence of a local virtual DNS server on your AlliedWare Plus™ device which can service DNS lookup requests sent to it from local hosts. The DNS Relay will usually relay the requests to an external, or upstream, DNS server.

DoS

Denial of Service. A generic term for attacks that reduce or stop the operation of a network.

DSCP value

The Differentiated Services Code Point within the TOS field of an IP packet header. This is a 6-bit number in the range 0-63.

Duplex mode

See [Full duplex](#) and [Half duplex](#).

Dynamic channel group

A dynamic channel group also known as a LACP channel group, an etherchannel, or a LACP aggregator, enables a number of ports to be dynamically combined to form a single higher bandwidth logical connection. See [LACP](#).

For an more information see [“Link Aggregation Control Protocol \(LACP\)” on page 20.3](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring an LACP Channel Group” on page 20.5](#).

Dynamic Link Failover

Dynamic Link Failover (Host Attach) is a versatile feature that enables devices that do not support link aggregation to form multiple active links by using [Triggers](#) and [Scripts](#). You can customize Dynamic Link Failover to suit almost any situation, from a simple redundant backup link to multiple active links capable of basic load-sharing.

E

EAP

Extensible Authentication Protocol. EAP carries out the authentication exchange between the supplicant and the authentication server.

Etherchannel

See [Dynamic channel group](#).

Ethernet Protection Switching Ring

See [EPSR](#).

EPSR

EPSR (Ethernet Protection Switching Ring) operates on physical rings of switches (note, not on meshed networks). When all nodes and links in the ring are up, EPSR prevents a loop by blocking data transmission across one port. When a node or link fails, EPSR detects the failure rapidly and responds by unblocking the blocked port so that data can flow around the ring. The EPSR components are:

- [EPSR domain](#)
- [Master node](#)
- [Transit node](#)
- [Ring port](#)
- [Primary port](#)
- [Secondary port](#)
- [Control VLAN](#)
- [Data VLAN](#)

For more information and example configurations see [Chapter 55, EPSR Introduction and Configuration](#).

EPSR domain

A protection scheme for an Ethernet ring that consists of one or more data VLANs and a control VLAN.

For more information see [“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2](#).

Egress

Outgoing packet process.

F

FDB

Forwarding Database.

FIB

Forwarding Information Base. The [RIB](#) (Routing Information Base) populates the FIB with the best route to each destination. When your device receives an IP packet, and no filters are active that would exclude the packet, it uses the FIB to find the most specific route to the destination. If your device does not find a direct route to the destination, and no default route exists, it discards the packet and sends an ICMP message to that effect back to the source.

Full duplex

When a port is in full duplex mode, the port transmits and receives data simultaneously. See [Half duplex](#).

G

Guest VLAN

If **802.1X** authentication has been configured on access ports in the network, you might still want to provide limited network access to those users whose devices do not have 802.1x supplicant enabled, or who have unrecognized authentication credentials. The mechanism to achieve this is known as a Guest VLAN. The idea is that if the users device fails 802.1X authentication, or is not even performing any 802.1X authentication, then its connection port can be put into the guest VLAN.

For more information see [“Configuring a Guest VLAN” on page 2](#) and the [auth guest-vlan command on page 41.8](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring a Guest VLAN” on page 40.2](#).

H

Half duplex

When a port is in half duplex mode, the port transmits or receives but not both at the same time. See [Full duplex](#).

Hardware ACLs

See [ACL types](#).

I

ICMP

Internet Control Message Protocol. ICMP allows networking devices to send information and control messages to other devices or hosts.

For more information see [“Internet Control Message Protocol \(ICMP\)” on page 24.6](#).

ICMPv6

Internet Control Message Protocol Version 6. ICMPv6 is an implementation of **ICMP** for IPv6.

For more information see [“The Internet Control Message Protocol \(ICMPv6\)” on page 26.7](#).

IGMP

Internet Group Management Protocol. IGMP is a communications protocol that hosts use to indicate that they are interested in receiving a particular multicast stream.

IGMP querier or router

A device in a subnetwork that is the coordinator for all multicast streams and IGMP membership information. Each subnet only has one active querier.

IGMP snooper

A device that spies on IGMP messages to create flow efficiencies by ensuring that multicast data streams are only sent to interested ports. A snooper can decide on the best path to send multicast packets at Layer 2 but does not initiate any IGMP communications.

For a configuration example see [“IGMP Snooping Configuration Example” on page 29.6.](#)

Ingress

Incoming packet process.

IP directed broadcast

An IP directed broadcast is an IP packet whose destination address is a broadcast address for some IP subnet, but originates from a node that is not itself part of that destination subnet. When a directed broadcast packet reaches a switch that is directly connected to its destination subnet, the packet is flooded as a broadcast on the destination subnet. IP directed broadcast is enabled and disabled per VLAN interface. When enabled a directed broadcast packet is forwarded to an enabled VLAN interface if received on another subnet.

IP Helper

The IP Helper feature allows the switch to receive UDP broadcasts on one subnet, and forward them as broadcasts or unicasts into another subnet, so a client can use an application which uses UDP broadcast (such as Net-BIOS) when the client and server are located in different subnets. The IP Helper feature forwards UDP broadcast network traffic to specific hosts on another subnet and/or to the broadcast address of another subnet. When the IP Helper feature is enabled on a VLAN interface, the UDP broadcast packets received on the interface are processed for forwarding out through another interface into another subnet.

I-SID

Extended Service ID.

ISP

Internet Service Provider. An organization that offers its customers access to the Internet. The ISP connects its customers using a data transmission technology, such as dial-up or DSL.

I-TAG

Extended Service TAG.

L

LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol. LACP allows bundling of several physical ports to form a single logical channel providing enhanced performance and redundancy. The aggregated channel is viewed as a single link to each switch. The spanning tree views the channel as one interface and not as multiple interfaces. When there is a failure in one physical port, the other ports stay up and there is no disruption. LACP does not interoperate with devices that use Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP).

For an more information see [“Link Aggregation Control Protocol \(LACP\)” on page 20.3](#).

LACP aggregator

See [Dynamic channel group](#).

LACP channel group

See [Dynamic channel group](#).

LAG

See [Link aggregation group](#).

Layer 3 switch

A Layer 3 switch is an optimized combination of routing software and specialized hardware. The software uses traditional methods (static routing commands, and routing protocols) to build up a table of the best routes to network destinations, and then writes them into a set of registers in the specialized forwarding hardware. The hardware then forwards packets, based on their Layer 3 address content, at very high data rates, using the values that are written into the registers.

LED

Light Emitting Diode (LED). An LED is a semiconductor that emits light by converting electrical energy. Power lights on switches and status lights on switch ports are LEDs. You can save power used by switch LEDs with the [ecofriendly led command on page 8.11](#).

For more information and configuration examples see the section [“Save Power with the Eco-Friendly Feature” on page 1.31](#). For command information and examples see the [ecofriendly led command on page 8.11](#).

Link aggregation group

A Link Aggregation Group is a collection of bundled switch ports for an aggregated link. Link aggregation is the bonding together of two or more data channels into a single channel that appears as single logical link of higher bandwidth increasing link performance and reliability.

For an more information see [“Link Aggregation Control Protocol \(LACP\)” on page 20.3](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring an LACP Channel Group” on page 20.5](#)

Link-local addresses

A link-local address is an IP (Internet Protocol) address that is only used for communications in the local network, or for a point-to-point connection. Routing does not forward packets with link-local addresses. IPv6 requires a link-local address is assigned to each interface, which has the IPv6 protocol enabled, and when addresses are assigned to interfaces for routing IPv6 packets.

LLDP

Link Layer Discovery Protocol. LLDP is a Layer 2 protocol that enables Ethernet network devices, such as switches and routers, to transmit and/or receive device-related information to or from directly connected devices on the network, and to store such information learned about other devices. LLDP is a link level (“one hop”) protocol; LLDP information can only be sent to and received from devices that are directly connected to each other, or connected via a hub or repeater. Advertised information is not forwarded on to other devices on the network.

For more information see [Chapter 69, LLDP, LLDP-MED and Voice VLAN Introduction and Configuration](#).

For configuration examples see [“Configuring LLDP” on page 69.11](#).

LLDPDU

LLDP Data Unit. See [LLDP advertisements](#).

LLDP advertisements

LLDP transmits advertisements as packets called LLDP Data Units (LLDPDUs). An LLDPDU consists of a set of Type-Length-Value elements (TLV), each of which contains a particular type of information about the device or port transmitting it.

LLDP-MED

Link Layer Discovery Protocol Media Endpoint Discovery. LLDP-MED is an enhancement to IEEE’s 802.1AB LLDP, adding media and IP telephony-specific messages that can be exchanged between the network and endpoint devices.

For more information see [“LLDP-MED” on page 69.3](#), [“LLDP-MED: Location Identification TLV” on page 69.7](#) and [“LLDP-MED Operation” on page 69.9](#). For the procedure to configure LLDP-MED see [“Configure LLDP-MED” on page 69.14](#).

Local RADIUS server

The local RADIUS Server enables you to create a RADIUS server on the switch.

For more information and configuration examples see [Chapter 48, Local RADIUS Server Introduction and Configuration](#).

LSA

Link State Advertisement. OSPF sends link-state advertisements (LSAs) to all other routers within the same hierarchical area. Data on attached interfaces, metrics used, and other variables, are included in OSPF LSAs. As OSPF routers accumulate link-state data, they use the Shortest Path First (SPF) algorithm to calculate the shortest path to each node.

M

MAC address learning

A key optimization in Ethernet switching is that the flooding of unicast traffic is minimized. This is based on switches knowing which port to forward traffic to for given destination MAC addresses. Switches achieve this by the simple process of noting on which ports packets arrive from given MAC addresses, as those will be the ports to which return packets to those MAC addresses will need to be forwarded. This process is referred to as MAC address learning.

MAC authentication

The way that MAC-based authentication works is that when the supplicant device starts sending packets, the authenticating switch will extract the source MAC address from the packets, and send a RADIUS request that uses this MAC address as the username and password in the request. See [AAA](#) and [Tri-authentication](#).

For a sample configuration script see [“Sample MAC-Authentication Configuration” on page 42.8](#).

Master node

In [EPSR](#), the controlling node for a domain, responsible for polling the ring state, collecting error messages, and controlling the flow of traffic in the domain.

Master node states are:

- Complete - the state when there are no link or node failures on the ring.
- Failed - the state when there is a link or node failure on the ring. This state indicates that the master node received a Link-Down message or that the failover timer expired before the master node's secondary port received a Health message.

For more information see [“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2](#).

MD5

Message Digest 5 authentication algorithm.

Metering

See [Policing](#).

Metric

The sum of all the costs along the path to a given destination. See [Cost](#).

MLD

Multicast Listener Discovery. MLD is used to exchange membership status information between IPv6 routers that support multicasting and members of multicast groups on a network segment. Host membership in a multicast group is reported by individual member hosts, and membership status is periodically polled by multicast routers.

MLD snooping

MLD snooping is a feature whereby a Layer 2 switch listens to or “snoops” the MLD messages passing through the switch or from member hosts and multicast routers. The purpose of MLD snooping is to provide efficient Layer 2 multicast forwarding, by sending only to hosts that have expressed an interest in receiving the multicast data.

For more information see [Chapter 31, MLD Snooping Introduction and Commands](#).

MSTI

Multiple Spanning Tree Instance. **MSTP** enables the grouping and mapping of VLANs to different spanning tree instances. An MST Instance (MSTI) is a particular set of VLANs that are all using the same spanning tree.

For more information see [“Multiple Spanning Tree Instances \(MSTI\)” on page 18.12](#).

MSTP

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol. MSTP is similar to Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (**RSTP**) - it provides loop resolution and rapid convergence. However it also has the extra advantage of making it possible to have different forwarding paths for different multiple spanning tree instances. This enables load balancing of network traffic across redundant links. A device running MSTP is compatible with other devices running RSTP or **STP**.

For more information see [“Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol \(MSTP\)” on page 18.11](#).

For a configuration example see [“Configuring MSTP” on page 18.19](#).

MSTP regions

An MST region is a set of interconnected switches that all have the same values for the following MST configuration identification elements:

- MST configuration name - the name of the MST region.
- Revision level - the revision number of configuration.
- Configuration Digest - the mapping of which VLANs are mapped to which MST instances.

Each of the MST instances created are identified by an **MSTI** number. This number is locally significant within the MST region. Therefore, an MSTI will not span across MST regions.

For more information see [“MSTP Regions” on page 18.13](#).

Multicast

One device sends out data that is intended to be received and processed by a selected group of the devices it reaches.

N

NAC

Network Access Control. NAC provides unprecedented control over user access to the network in order to mitigate threats to network infrastructure. NAC uses **802.1X** port-based authentication with standards-compliant dynamic VLAN assignment, to assess a user's adherence to the network's security policies, and either grant authentication or offer remediation. NAC also supports alternatives to 802.1x port-based authentication, such as **Web-authentication** to enable guest access, and **MAC authentication** for end points that do not have an 802.1x supplicant. Furthermore, if multiple users share a port then multi-authentication can be used and a **Guest VLAN** can be configured to provide a catch-all for users without an 802.1x supplicant.

For more information see [Chapter 38, 802.1X Introduction and Configuration](#) and [Chapter 40, Authentication Introduction and Configuration](#).

NAS

Network Access Server. A NAS is a single point of access to a remote resource. The client connects to the NAS. The NAS then connects to another resource asking whether the client's supplied credentials are valid. Based on that answer the NAS then allows or disallows access to the resource. The NAS contains no information about what resources clients can connect to or what client credentials are valid. The NAS sends the credentials the client supplied to a resource which then validates the client.

Next hop

IP routing involves forwarding packets from one router to the next, until they reach their destination. Routers do not need to know the full path to a packet's destination, they just need to know the next router to forward the packet on to. This 'next router' is referred to as the next hop of an IP route.

Nested VLAN

See [VLAN double tagging](#).

NTP

Network Time Protocol. NTP is a protocol for synchronizing the time clocks on a collection of network devices using a distributed client/server mechanism.

For more information see [Chapter 60, NTP Introduction and Configuration](#).

P

PAP

Password Authentication Protocol. PAP is an authentication protocol that uses a password and is used by PPP to validate users before allowing them to access server resources. PAP transmits plain text ASCII passwords over the network so it is not secure.

Ping

Ping tests the connectivity between two network devices to determine whether each network device can "see" the other device.

Ping-of-death attack

A type of attack on a computer that involves sending a malformed or otherwise malicious ping to a network device.

Ping polling

Ping polling is used to ensure that a device is still present, live, and contactable in the network by periodically sending a packet to an IP address and waiting for a response. Configurable actions can be performed if responses are no longer arriving.

For more information see [Chapter 77, Ping Polling Introduction and Configuration](#). For how to configure ping polling see [“Configuring Ping Polling” on page 77.4](#).

Policing

In **QoS**, once you have set-up your **Classification** and created your **Class maps**, you can start conditioning your traffic flows. One tool used for traffic conditioning is the policer (or meter). The principle of policing is to measure the data flow that matches the definitions for a particular class-map; then, by selecting appropriate data rates, allocate the flows into one of three categories, Red Yellow or Green. You then decide what action to apply to the Red, Yellow and Green data.

For more information see [“Policing \(Metering\) Your Data” on page 36.16](#).

Policy maps

Policy maps are the means by which you apply your **Class maps** to physical switch ports. A policy map can be assigned to several ports, but a port cannot have more than one policy map assigned to it. See **QoS**.

For more information see [“Policy Maps” on page 36.10](#).

Port bit map

An efficient method for the storage of a list of ports. Each port is represented by a single bit in a 32-bit or 64-bit value.

Port mirroring

Port mirroring enables traffic being received and transmitted on a switch port to be sent to another switch port, the mirror port, usually for the purposes of capturing the data with a protocol analyzer. The mirror port is the only switch port that does not belong to a VLAN, and therefore does not participate in any other switching. Before the mirror port can be set, it must be removed from all trunk groups and all VLANs except the default VLAN.

PPP

Point-to-Point Protocol. A data link protocol used to establish a direct connection between two networking nodes. PPP can provide connection authentication and transmission encryption. PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) is used over broadband connections as is PPPoA (Point-to-Point Protocol over ATM) with DSL.

Premarking

In **QoS**, premarking relates to adding QoS markers to your incoming data traffic before it is metered. QoS markers can be applied at both the link layer (within the CoS field), and at the network layer (within the DSCP field). See **Policing**.

For more information see [“Premarking and Remark Your Traffic” on page 36.12](#).

Primary port

In **EPSR**, a ring port on the master node. This port determines the direction of the traffic flow, and is always operational.

For more information see [“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2](#).

Proxy ARP

Proxy ARP allows hosts that do not support routing (i.e. they have no knowledge of the network structure) to determine the physical addresses of hosts on other networks.

PSU

Power Supply Unit.

Q

Query Solicitation

Query Solicitation minimizes the loss of multicast data after a topology change on networks that use **EPSR** or spanning tree (**STP**, **RSTP**, or **MSTP**) for loop protection. Without Query Solicitation, when the underlying link layer topology changes, multicast data flow can stop for up to several minutes, depending on which port goes down and how much of the IGMP query interval remained at the time of the topology change. Query Solicitation greatly reduces this disruption.

For more information see [“Query Solicitation” on page 29.8](#).

QoS

Quality of Service. QoS enables you to both prioritize traffic and limit its available bandwidth. The concept of QoS is a departure from the original networking protocols, in which all traffic on the Internet or within a LAN had the same available bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic types are equally likely to be dropped if a link becomes oversubscribed. This approach is now inadequate in many networks, because traffic levels have increased and networks often carry time-critical applications such as streams of real-time video data. QoS also enables service providers to easily supply different customers with different amounts of bandwidth. Configuring Quality of Service involves two separate stages:

- Classifying traffic into flows, according to a wide range of criteria. Classification is performed by the switch's **Class maps**.
- Acting on these traffic flows.

For more information see [Chapter 36, Quality of Service \(QoS\) Introduction](#).

Quality of Service

See [QoS](#).

R

RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service. RADIUS is a networking protocol that provides centralized **AAA** (Authentication Authorization and Accounting) management for clients to a network. RADIUS is a client/server protocol that runs in the application layer, using UDP (User Datagram Protocol) for data transport. RADIUS authenticates users before granting them access to network resources and can account for the usage of network resources.

For more information see [Chapter 44, RADIUS Introduction and Configuration](#). For configuration examples see [“RADIUS Configuration Examples” on page 44.15](#).

Redistribute

Advertise routes learned from one routing protocol into another routing protocol.

Remarking

In **QoS**, remarking relates to adding QoS markers to your incoming data traffic after it is metered. QoS markers can be applied at both the link layer (within the CoS field), and at the network layer (within the DSCP field). See [Policing](#).

Remote network MONitoring

See [RMON](#).

RIB

Routing Information Base. The RIB records all the routes that your device has learned. Your device uses the RIB to advertise routes to its neighbor devices and to populate the **FIB** (Forwarding Information Base).

Ring port

In **EPSR**, a port that connects the node to the ring. On the master node, each ring port is either the primary port or the secondary port. On transit nodes, ring ports do not have roles.

For more information see [“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2](#).

RMON

Remote Network MONitoring. RMON was developed by the IETF to support monitoring and protocol analysis of LANs with a focus on Layer 1 and 2 information in networks. RMON is an industry standard that provides the functionality in network analyzers. An RMON implementation operates in a client/server model. Monitoring devices (or ‘probes’) contain RMON agents that collect information and analyze packets. The probes are servers and the Network Management applications that communicate with them are clients.

For more information see [Chapter 72, RMON Introduction and Configuration](#). For a configuration example see [“RMON Configuration Example” on page 72.3](#).

Roaming Authentication

Roaming Authentication improves the usability of network security by enabling users to move within the network without requiring them to re-authenticate each time they move. If a supplicant (client device) moves from one wireless access point to another wireless access point, and the wireless access points are connected to different ports, then the switch (authenticator) recognizes that the supplicant has been authenticated and accepts the supplicant without requiring re-authentication.

For more information see [“Web-Authentication” on page 40.4](#).

Root bridge

A single **Bridge** is selected to become the **Spanning tree’s** unique root bridge. This is the device that advertises the lowest Bridge ID. Each bridge is uniquely identified by its Bridge ID, which comprises the bridge’s root priority (a spanning tree parameter) followed by its MAC address.

For an overview of spanning tree operation see [“Spanning Tree Operation” on page 18.2](#).

Root path cost

A **Spanning tree** property. Each port connecting a **Bridge** to a LAN has an associated cost, called the root path cost. This is the sum of the costs for each path between the particular bridge port and the **Root bridge**. The **Designated bridge** for a LAN is the one that advertises the lowest root path cost. If two bridges on the same LAN have the same lowest root path cost, then the switch with the lowest bridge ID becomes the designated bridge.

For an overview of spanning tree operation see [“Spanning Tree Operation” on page 18.2](#).

RSTP

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol. RSTP is an evolution of the Spanning Tree Protocol (**STP**) which provides for faster spanning tree convergence after a topology change. A device running RSTP is compatible with other devices running STP.

For more information see [“Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol \(RSTP\)” on page 18.8](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring RSTP” on page 18.9](#).

S

SCP

Secure Copy Protocol. SCP allows for secure file transfer to and from the switch, protecting your network from unwanted downloads and unauthorized file copying.

For more information see [“Copying with Secure Copy \(SCP\)” on page 6.16](#).

Script

A script is a sequence of commands stored as a plaintext file on a file subsystem accessible to the device, such as Flash memory. Each **Trigger** may reference multiple scripts and any script may be used by any trigger. When an event activates a trigger, the trigger executes the scripts associated with it in sequence. One script is executed completely before the next script begins.

See **Dynamic Link Failover**.

Secondary port

In **EPSR**, a second ring port on the master node. This port remains active, but blocks all protected VLANs from operating unless the ring fails. Similar to the blocking port in an STP/RSTP instance.

For more information see **“Ring Components and Operation” on page 55.2**.

sFlow

sFlow^{®1} is an industry standard technology for monitoring high speed switched networks. It provides the ability to monitor traffic in data networks containing switches and routers.

For more information see **Chapter 79, sFlow Introduction and Configuration**. For how to configure sFlow see **“Configuring sFlow on your Switch” on page 79.6**.

sFlow agent

A network employing sFlow typically comprises a number of network (sFlow) agents that accumulate sampled data and traffic counter information. The agents then forward this data to a collector. The collector then analyses the information supplied by its agents in order to compile and display statistical profiles of the network and its traffic. The sFlow feature on your switch provides the sFlow agent capability.

For more information see **“The sFlow Agent” on page 79.3**.

sFlow collector

The sFlow collector receives traffic samples and counter information from a number of sFlow agents. These samples are received as a series of UDP datagrams. From the data contained within these datagrams, the collector is able to provide statistical and or graphical information of network traffic.

For more information see **“The sFlow Collector” on page 79.5**.

SFTP

SSH File Transfer Protocol. SFTP provides a secure way to copy files onto your device from a remote device.

For more information see **“Copying with SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP)” on page 6.16**.

Software ACLs

See **ACL types**.

1. **sFlow[®] is a registered trademark belonging to InMon Corp, San Francisco, CA.**

Spanning tree

A loop free portion of a network topology. The network topology is dynamically pruned to provide only one path for any packet. See [STP](#), [RSTP](#) and [MSTP](#).

Spanning Tree Protocol Root Guard

See [STP root guard](#).

SSH

Secure Shell. SSH is a network protocol that uses strong authentication and encryption for remote access across a nonsecure network. SSH provides sessions between a host running a SSH server and a machine with a SSH client.

For more information see [Chapter 50, Secure Shell \(SSH\) Introduction](#). For how to configure a SSH server see [“Configuring the SSH Server” on page 50.4](#). For how to configure a SSH client see [“Configuring the SSH Client” on page 50.9](#).

S-TAG

Service VLAN TAG.

Static aggregator

See [Static channel group](#).

Static channel group

A static channel group, also known as a static aggregator, enables a number of ports to be manually configured to form a single logical connection of higher bandwidth. By using static channel groups you increase channel reliability by distributing the data path over more than one physical link.

Storm-control

Storm-control enables you to specify the threshold level for broadcasting, multicast, or destination lookup failure (DLF) traffic for a port. Storm-control limits the specified traffic type to the specified threshold.

For more information see [“Storm Control” on page 14.12](#).

Storm protection

Storm protection uses [QoS](#) mechanisms to classify on traffic likely to cause a packet storm (broadcast and multicast). With QoS storm protection, several actions are possible when a storm is detected:

- You can disable the port physically.
- You can disable the port logically.
- You can disable the port for a particular VLAN.

For more information see [“Storm Protection” on page 36.24](#).

STP

Spanning Tree Protocol. STP is the original bridge protocol defined by IEEE standard 802.1D-1988. It creates a single spanning tree over a network.

For more information see [“Spanning Tree Protocol \(STP\)” on page 18.5](#). For a configuration example see [“Configuring STP” on page 18.6](#).

STP root guard

Spanning Tree Protocol Root Guard. STP Root Guard designates which devices can assume the role of **Root bridge** in an STP network. This stops an undesirable device from taking over this role, where it could either compromise network performance or cause a security weakness.

See the **spanning-tree guard root** command on page 19.46.

Subnet address

A subnet portion of an IP address. In a subnetted network, the host portion of an IP address is split into a subnet portion and a host portion using an address or subnet mask.

Subnet mask

A bit mask used to select bits from an Internet address for subnet addressing. The mask is 32 bits long and selects the network portion of the Internet address and one or more bits of the local portion. Sometimes called address mask.

Superloop

Within an EPSR ring configuration, a superloop is a data loop whose path traverses more than a single EPSR ring. This occurrence is a fault condition that is usually do to a break in a physical segment that is shared by the two rings. For a superloop condition to occur, the two physical rings must share one or more data VLANs. Superloops can be prevented by employing Superloop Protection. For more information, See **“Superloop Protection” on page 55.17**.

Switch instance

A single switch chip with its associated ports, internal data interfaces, hardware tables, and packet buffer memory.

S-VID

Service VLAN ID.

S-VLAN

Service VLAN.

Synchronous

Transmission in which the data characters and bits are transmitted at a fixed rate with the transmitter and receiver synchronized. This eliminates the need for start-stop elements, as in asynchronous transmission, but requires a flag character to be transmitted when there is no data to transmit. See **“Asynchronous” on page C.4**

T

TACACS+

TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) provides a method for securely managing multiple network access points from a single management service. TACACS+ is a TCP-based access control protocol that allows a device to forward a user's username and password to an authentication server to determine whether access can be allowed. In addition to this authentication service, TACACS+ can also provide authorization and accounting services. One of the features of TACACS+ is the ability to separate authentication, authorization and accounting so that these functions can be provided independently on separate servers.

For information on the AlliedWare Plus implementation of TACACS+, see [Chapter 46, TACACS+ Introduction and Configuration](#) and [Chapter 47, TACACS+ Commands](#).

TCN

Topology Change Notification.

Thrash limiting

MAC address thrashing occurs when MAC addresses move rapidly between one or more ports or trunks, for example, due to a network loop. Thrash limiting enables you to apply actions to a port when thrashing is detected. It is supported on all port types and also on aggregated ports.

For more information see [“Thrash Limiting” on page 14.14](#)

TLV

Type-Length-Value. A single **LLDPDU** contains multiple TLVs. TLVs are short information elements that communicate complex data, such as variable length strings, in a standardized format. Each TLV advertises a single type of information, such as its device ID, type, or management addresses. See [LLDP advertisements](#).

Traceroute

Traceroute is used to discover the route that packets pass between two systems running the IP protocol. Traceroute sends an initial UDP packets with the Time To Live (TTL) field in the IP header set starting at 1. The TTL field is increased by one for every subsequent packet sent until the destination is reached. Each hop along the path between two systems responds with a TTL exceeded packet (ICMP type 11) and from this the path is determined.

Transit node

In **EPSR**, nodes other than the master node in the domain.

Transit node states are:

- Idle - the state when EPSR is first configured, before the master node determines that all links in the ring are up. In this state, both ports on the node are blocked for the data VLAN. From this state, the node can move to Links Up or Links Down.
- Links Up - the state when both the node's ring ports are up and forwarding. From this state, the node can move to Links Down.
- Links Down - the state when one or both of the node's ring ports are down. From this state, the node can move to Preforwarding.
- Pre-forwarding - the state when both ring ports are up, but one has only just come up and is still blocked to prevent loops. From this state, the transit node can move to Links Up if the master node blocks its secondary port, or to Links Down if another port goes down.

For more information see **"Ring Components and Operation" on page 55.2.**

Tri-authentication

Authentication commands enable you to specify three different types of device authentication: **802.1X** authentication, **MAC authentication**, and **Web-authentication**. All three types can be configured to run simultaneously on a switch port. The simultaneous configuration and authentication of all three types on a port is called tri-authentication.

For a configuration example see **"Tri-Authentication Configuration" on page 40.18.**

Trigger

A trigger is an ordered sequence of scripts that is executed when a certain event occurs. Each trigger may reference multiple scripts and any **Script** may be used by any trigger. When an event activates a trigger, the trigger executes the scripts associated with it in sequence. One script is executed completely before the next script begins.

See **Dynamic Link Failover**.

Type-Length-Value

See **TLV**.

U

Unicast

Two individual devices hold a conversation just between themselves.

V

VID

VLAN Identifier or VLAN ID. When you create a VLAN you give it a numerical VID which is included in VLAN-tagged Ethernet frames to and from this VLAN.

VLAN classification

A packet can be allocated VLAN membership based on its protocol, subnet, or port.

VLAN ID

See **VID**.

VLAN identifier

See **VID**.

VLAN stacking

See [VLAN double tagging](#).

VLAN tag

IEEE standard 802.1q defines an additional 4 byte tag field that can be inserted immediately following the MAC address, plus any routing fields present. This field contains a 12 bit VLAN identifier, commonly referred to as the VLAN tag. The VLAN tag is used to determine which VLAN a given frame should be forwarded to.

Other tags included in the 802.1q tag field is a Tag Protocol Identifier tag, and a Type of Service tag used to determine data priority.

Voice VLAN

Voice VLAN automatically separates voice and data traffic into two different VLANs. This automatic separation places delay-sensitive traffic into a voice-dedicated VLAN, which simplifies QoS configurations.

For more information see [“Voice VLAN” on page 69.3](#).

VoIP

Voice over Internet Protocol. Enables the delivery of voice communications over IP networks such as the Internet or other packet-switched networks instead of over traditional telephony circuits.

VRID

Virtual Router Identifier.

VRRP

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol. VRRP combines two or more physical switches into a logical grouping called a virtual router. The physical switches then operate together to provide a single logical gateway for hosts on the LAN. If the master fails, the other devices assume the virtual IP address.

For more information see [Chapter 85, VRRP Introduction and Configuration](#). For configuration examples see [“VRRP Configuration Examples” on page 85.15](#).

W

Web-authentication

The switch sends a login screen to the client webbrowser which must be authenticated before access is granted to the network. See [AAA](#) and [Tri-authentication](#).

For a sample configuration script see [“Sample Web-Authentication Configuration” on page 42.9](#).

Wildcard mask

A subnet mask in which bits set to 0 indicate an exact match and bits set to 1 indicate ‘don’t care’.